

**MICROCOPY**

**892**

**ROLL**

**80**

# NATIONAL ARCHIVES MICROFILM PUBLICATIONS

Microfilm Publication M892

RECORDS OF THE UNITED STATES

NUERNBERG WAR CRIMES TRIALS

*UNITED STATES OF AMERICA v. CARL KRAUCH ET AL. (CASE VI)*

AUGUST 14, 1947-JULY 30, 1948

Roll 80

Defense Document Books

Ambros, IA-Loose Copies

Buergin(part), 1-5



THE NATIONAL ARCHIVES  
NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS SERVICE  
GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION

WASHINGTON: 1976

## INTRODUCTION

On the 113 rolls of this microfilm publication are reproduced the records of Case VI, *United States of America v. Carl Krauch et al.* (I. G. Farben Case), 1 of the 12 trials of war criminals conducted by the U.S. Government from 1946 to 1949 at Nuernberg subsequent to the International Military Tribunal (IMT) held in the same city. These records consist of German- and English-language versions of official transcripts of court proceedings, prosecution and defense briefs and statements, and defendants' final pleas as well as prosecution and defense exhibits and document books in one language or the other. Also included are minute books, the official court file, order and judgment books, clemency petitions, and finding aids to the documents.

The transcripts of this trial, assembled in 2 sets of 43 bound volumes (1 set in German and 1 in English), are the recorded daily trial proceedings. Prosecution statements and briefs are also in both languages but unbound, as are the final pleas of the defendants delivered by counsel or defendants and submitted by the attorneys to the court. Unbound prosecution exhibits, numbered 1-2270 and 2300-2354, are essentially those documents from various Nuernberg record series, particularly the NI (Nuernberg Industrialist) Series, and other sources offered in evidence by the prosecution in this case. Defense exhibits, also unbound, are predominantly affidavits by various persons. They are arranged by name of defendant and thereunder numerically, along with two groups of exhibits submitted in the general interest of all defendants. Both prosecution and defense document books consist of full or partial translations of exhibits into English. Loosely bound in folders, they provide an indication of the order in which the exhibits were presented before the tribunal.

Minute books, in two bound volumes, summarize the transcripts. The official court file, in nine bound volumes, includes the progress docket, the indictment, and amended indictment and the service thereof; applications for and appointments of defense counsel and defense witnesses and prosecution comments thereto; defendants' application for documents; motions and reports; uniform rules of procedures; and appendixes. The order and judgment books, in two bound volumes, represent the signed orders, judgments, and opinions of the tribunal as well as sentences and commitment papers. Defendants' clemency petitions, in three bound volumes, were directed to the military governor, the Judge Advocate General, and the U.S. District Court for the District of Columbia. The finding aids summarize transcripts, exhibits, and the official court file.

Case VI was heard by U.S. Military Tribunal VI from August 14, 1947, to July 30, 1948. Along with records of other Nuernberg

# NATIONAL ARCHIVES MICROFILM PUBLICATIONS

and Far East war crimes trials, the records of this case are part of the National Archives Collection of World War II War Crimes Records, Record Group 238.

The I. G. Farben Case was 1 of 12 separate proceedings held before several U.S. Military Tribunals at Nuernberg in the U.S. Zone of Occupation in Germany against officials or citizens of the Third Reich, as follows:

<u>Case No.</u>	<u>United States v.</u>	<u>Popular Name</u>	<u>No. of Defendants</u>
1	<i>Karl Brandt et al.</i>	Medical Case	23
2	<i>Erhard Milch</i>	Milch Case (Luftwaffe)	1
3	<i>Josef Altstoetter et al.</i>	Justice Case	16
4	<i>Oswald Pohl et al.</i>	Pohl Case (SS)	18
5	<i>Friedrich Flick et al.</i>	Flick Case (Industrialist)	6
6	<i>Carl Krauch et al.</i>	I. G. Farben Case (Industrialist)	24
7	<i>Wilhelm List et al.</i>	Hostage Case	12
8	<i>Ulrich Greifelt et al.</i>	RuSHA Case (SS)	14
9	<i>Otto Ohlendorf et al.</i>	Einsatzgruppen Case (SS)	24
10	<i>Alfried Krupp et al.</i>	Krupp Case (Industrialist)	12
11	<i>Ernst von Weizsaecker et al.</i>	Ministries Case	21
12	<i>Wilhelm von Leeb et al.</i>	High Command Case	14

Authority for the proceedings of the IMT against the major Nazi war criminals derived from the Declaration on German Atrocities (Moscow Declaration) released November 1, 1943; Executive Order 9547 of May 2, 1945; the London Agreement of August 8, 1945; the Berlin Protocol of October 6, 1945; and the IMT Charter.

7

Authority for the 12 subsequent cases stemmed mainly from Control Council Law 10 of December 20, 1945, and was reinforced by Executive Order 9679 of January 16, 1946; U.S. Military Government Ordinances 7 and 11 of October 18, 1946, and February 17, 1947, respectively; and U.S. Forces, European Theater General Order 301 of October 24, 1946. Procedures applied by U.S. Military Tribunals in the subsequent proceedings were patterned after those of the IMT and further developed in the 12 cases, which required over 1,200 days of court sessions and generated more than 330,000 transcript pages.



Formation of the I. G. Farben Combine was a stage in the evolution of the German chemical industry, which for many years led the world in the development, production, and marketing of organic dyestuffs, pharmaceuticals, and synthetic chemicals. To control the excesses of competition, six of the largest chemical firms, including the Badische Anilin & Soda Fabrik, combined to form the Interessengemeinschaft (Combine of Interests, or Trust) of the German Dyestuffs Industry in 1904 and agreed to pool technological and financial resources and markets. The two remaining chemical firms of note entered the combine in 1916. In 1925 the Badische Anilin & Soda Fabrik, largest of the firms and already the majority shareholder in two of the other seven companies, led in reorganizing the industry to meet the changed circumstances of competition in the post-World War markets by changing its name to the I. G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, moving its home office from Ludwigshafen to Frankfurt, and merging with the remaining five firms.

Farben maintained its influence over both the domestic and foreign markets for chemical products. In the first instance the German explosives industry, dependent on Farben for synthetically produced nitrates, soon became subsidiaries of Farben. Of particular interest to the prosecution in this case were the various agreements Farben made with American companies for the exchange of information and patents and the licensing of chemical discoveries for foreign production. Among the trading companies organized to facilitate these agreements was the General Anilin and Film Corp., which specialized in photographic processes. The prosecution charged that Farben used these connections to retard the "Arsenal of Democracy" by passing on information received to the German Government and providing nothing in return, contrary to the spirit and letter of the agreements.

Farben was governed by an Aufsichtsrat (Supervisory Board of Directors) and a Vorstand (Managing Board of Directors). The Aufsichtsrat, responsible for the general direction of the firm, was chaired by defendant Krauch from 1940. The Vorstand actually controlled the day-to-day business and operations of Farben. Defendant Schmitz became chairman of the Vorstand in 1935, and 18 of the other 22 original defendants were members of the Vorstand and its component committees.

Transcripts of the I. G. Farben Case include the indictment of the following 24 persons:

Otto Ambros: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief of Chemical Warfare Committee of the Ministry of Armaments and War Production; production chief for Buna and poison gas; manager of Auschwitz, Schkopau, Ludwigshafen, Oppau, Gendorf, Dyhernfurth, and Falkenhagen plants; and Wehrwirtschaftsfuehrer.

Max Brueggemann: Member and Secretary of the Vorstand of Farben; member of the legal committee; Deputy Plant Leader of the Leverkusen Plant; Deputy Chief of the Sales Combine for Pharmaceuticals; and director of the legal, patent, and personnel departments of the Works Combine, Lower Rhine.

Ernst Buergin: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief of Works Combine, Central Germany; Plant Leader at the Bitterfeld and Wolfen-Farben plants; and production chief for light metals, dyestuffs, organic intermediates, plastics, and nitrogen at these plants.

Heinrich Bueteftisch: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; manager of Leuna plants; production chief for gasoline, methanol, and chlorine electrolysis production at Auschwitz and Moosbierbaum; Wehrwirtschaftsfuehrer; member of the Himmler Freundeskreis (circle of friends of Himmler); and SS Obersturmbannfuehrer (Lieutenant Colonel).

Walter Duerrfeld: Director and construction manager of the Auschwitz plant of Farben, director and construction manager of the Monowitz Concentration Camp, and Chief Engineer at the Leuna plant.

Fritz Gajewski: Member of the Central Committee of the Vorstand of Farben, Chief of Sparte III (Division III) in charge of production of photographic materials and artificial fibers, manager of "Agfa" plants, and Wehrwirtschaftsfuehrer.

Heinrich Gattineau: Chief of the Political-Economic Policy Department, "WIPO," of Farben's Berlin N.W. 7 office; member of Southeast Europe Committee; and director of A.G. Dynamit Nobel, Pressburg, Czechoslovakia.

Paul Haeffliger: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; member of the Commercial Committee; and Chief, Metals Departments, Sales Combine for Chemicals.

Erich von der Heyde: Member of the Political-Economic Policy Department of Farben's Berlin N.W. 7 office, Deputy to the Chief of Intelligence Agents, SS Hauptsturmfuehrer, and member of the WI-RUE-AMT (Military Economics and Armaments Office) of the Oberkommando der Wehrmacht (OKW) (High Command of the Armed Forces).

Heinrich Hoerlein: Member of the Central Committee of the Vorstand of Farben; chief of chemical research and development of vaccines, sera, pharmaceuticals, and poison gas; and manager of the Elberfeld Plant.

- Max Ilgner: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief of Farben's Berlin N.W. 7 office directing intelligence, espionage, and propaganda activities; member of the Commercial Committee; and Wehrwirtschaftsfuehrer.
- Friedrich Jaehne: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; chief engineer in charge of construction and physical plant development; Chairman of the Engineering Committee; and Deputy Chief, Works Combine, Main Valley.
- August von Knieriem: Member of the Central Committee of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief Counsel of Farben; and Chairman, Legal and Patent Committees.
- Carl Krauch: Chairman of the Aufsichtsrat of Farben and Generalbevollmaechtigter fuer Sonderfragen der Chemischen Erzeugung (General Plenipotentiary for Special Questions of Chemical Production) on Goering's staff in the Office of the 4-Year Plan.
- Hans Kuehne: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief of the Works Combine, Lower Rhine; Plant Leader at Leverkusen, Elberfeld, Uerdingen, and Dormagen plants; production chief for inorganics, organic intermediates, dyestuffs, and pharmaceuticals at these plants; and Chief of the Inorganics Committee.
- Hans Kugler: Member of the Commercial Committee of Farben; Chief of the Sales Department Dyestuffs for Hungary, Rumania, Yugoslavia, Greece, Bulgaria, Turkey, Czechoslovakia, and Austria; and Public Commissar for the Falkenau and Aussig plants in Czechoslovakia.
- Carl Lautenschlaeger: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief of Works Combine, Main Valley; Plant Leader at the Hoechst, Griesheim, Mainkur, Gersthofen, Offenbach, Eystrup, Marburg, and Neuhausen plants; and production chief for nitrogen, inorganics, organic intermediates, solvents and plastics, dyestuffs, and pharmaceuticals at these plants.
- Wilhelm Mann: Member of the Vorstand of Farben, member of the Commercial Committee, Chief of the Sales Combine for Pharmaceuticals, and member of the SA.
- Fritz ter Meer: Member of the Central Committee of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief of the Technical Committee of the Vorstand that planned and directed all of Farben's production; Chief of Sparte II in charge of production of Buna, poison gas, dyestuffs, chemicals, metals, and pharmaceuticals; and Wehrwirtschaftsfuehrer.



Heinrich Oster: Member of the Vorstand of Farben, member of the Commercial Committee, and manager of the Nitrogen Syndicate.

Hermann Schmitz: Chairman of the Vorstand of Farben, member of the Reichstag, and Director of the Bank of International Settlements.

Christian Schneider: Member of the Central Committee of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief of Sparte I in charge of production of nitrogen, gasoline, diesel and lubricating oils, methanol, and organic chemicals; Chief of Central Personnel Department, directing the treatment of labor at Farben plants; Wehrwirtschaftsfuehrer; Hauptabwehrbeauftragter (Chief of Intelligence Agents); Hauptbetriebsfuehrer (Chief of Plant Leaders); and supporting member of the Schutzstaffeln (SS) of the NSDAP.

Georg von Schnitzler: Member of the Central Committee of the Vorstand of Farben, Chief of the Commercial Committee of the Vorstand that planned and directed Farben's domestic and foreign sales and commercial activities, Wehrwirtschaftsfuehrer (Military Economy Leader), and Hauptsturm-fuehrer (Captain) in the Sturmabteilungen (SA) of the Nazi Party (NSDAP).

Carl Wurster: Member of the Vorstand of Farben; Chief of the Works Combine, Upper Rhine; Plant Leader at Ludwigshafen and Oppau plants; production chief for inorganic chemicals; and Wehrwirtschaftsfuehrer.

The prosecution charged these 24 individual staff members of the firm with various crimes, including the planning of aggressive war through an alliance with the Nazi Party and synchronization of Farben's activities with the military planning of the German High Command by participation in the preparation of the 4-Year Plan, directing German economic mobilization for war, and aiding in equipping the Nazi military machines.<sup>1</sup> The defendants also were charged with carrying out espionage and intelligence activities in foreign countries and profiting from these activities. They participated in plunder and spoliation of Austria, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Norway, France, and the Soviet Union as part of a systematic economic exploitation of these countries. The prosecution also charged mass murder and the enslavement of many thousands of persons particularly in Farben plants at the Auschwitz and Monowitz concentration camps and the use of poison gas manufactured by the firm in the extermination

<sup>1</sup>The trial of defendant Brueggemann was discontinued early during the proceedings because he was unable to stand trial on account of ill health.



of millions of men, women, and children. Medical experiments were conducted by Farben on enslaved persons without their consent to test the effects of deadly gases, vaccines, and related products. The defendants were charged, furthermore, with a common plan and conspiracy to commit crimes against the peace, war crimes, and crimes against humanity. Three defendants were accused of membership in a criminal organization, the SS. All of these charges were set forth in an indictment consisting of five counts.

The defense objected to the charges by claiming that regulations were so stringent and far reaching in Nazi Germany that private individuals had to cooperate or face punishment, including death. The defense claimed further that many of the individual documents produced by the prosecution were originally intended as "window dressing" or "howling with the wolves" in order to avoid such punishment.

The tribunal agreed with the defense in its judgment that none of the defendants were guilty of Count I, planning, preparation, initiation, and waging wars of aggression; or Count V, common plans and conspiracy to commit crimes against the peace and humanity and war crimes.

The tribunal also dismissed particulars of Count II concerning plunder and exploitation against Austria and Czechoslovakia. Eight defendants (Schmitz, von Schnitzler, ter Meer, Buergin, Haeffliger, Ilgner, Oster, and Kugler) were found guilty on the remainder of Count II, while 15 were acquitted. On Count III (slavery and mass murder), Ambros, Bueteftisch, Duerrfeld, Krauch, and ter Meer were judged guilty. Schneider, Bueteftisch, and von der Heyde also were charged with Count IV, membership in a criminal organization, but were acquitted.

The tribunal acquitted Gajewski, Gattineau, von der Heyde, Hoerlein, von Knieriem, Kuehne, Lautenschlaeger, Mann, Schneider, and Wurster. The remaining 13 defendants were given prison terms as follows:

<u>Name</u>	<u>Length of Prison Term (years)</u>
Ambros	8
Buergin	2
Bueteftisch	6
Duerrfeld	8
Haeffliger	2
Ilgner	3
Jaehne	1 1/2
Krauch	6
Kugler	1 1/2
Oster	2
Schmitz	4
von Schnitzler	5
ter Meer	7

All defendants were credited with time already spent in custody.

In addition to the indictments, judgments, and sentences, the transcripts also contain the arraignment and plea of each defendant (all pleaded not guilty) and opening statements of both defense and prosecution.

The English-language transcript volumes are arranged numerically, 1-43, and the pagination is continuous, 1-15834 (page 4710 is followed by pages 4710(1)-4710(285)). The German-language transcript volumes are numbered 1a-43a and paginated 1-16224 (14a and 15a are in one volume). The letters at the top of each page indicate morning, afternoon, or evening sessions. The letter "C" designates commission hearings (to save court time and to avoid assembling hundreds of witnesses at Nuernberg, in most of the cases one or more commissions took testimony and received documentary evidence for consideration by the tribunals). Two commission hearings are included in the transcripts: that for February 7, 1948, is on pages 6957-6979 of volume 20 in the English-language transcript, while that for May 7, 1948, is on pages 14775a-14776 of volume 40a in the German-language transcript. In addition, the prosecution made one motion of its own and, with the defense, six joint motions to correct the English-language transcripts. Lists of the types of errors, their location, and the prescribed corrections are in several volumes of the transcripts as follows:

- First Motion of the Prosecution, volume 1
- First Joint Motion, volume 3
- Second Joint Motion, volume 14
- Third Joint Motion, volume 24
- Fourth Joint Motion, volume 29
- Fifth Joint Motion, volume 34
- Sixth Joint Motion, volume 40

The prosecution offered 2,325 prosecution exhibits numbered 1-2270 and 2300-2354. Missing numbers were not assigned due to the difficulties of introducing exhibits before the commission and the tribunal simultaneously. Exhibits 1835-1838 were loaned to an agency of the Department of Justice for use in a separate matter, and apparently No. 1835 was never returned. Exhibits drew on a variety of sources, such as reports and directives as well as affidavits and interrogations of various individuals. Maps and photographs depicting events and places mentioned in the exhibits are among the prosecution resources, as are publications, correspondence, and many other types of records.

The first item in the arrangement of prosecution exhibits is usually a certificate giving the document number, a short description of the exhibits, and a statement on the location of the original document or copy of the exhibit. The certificate is followed by the actual prosecution exhibit (most are photostats,

# NATIONAL ARCHIVES MICROFILM PUBLICATIONS

but a few are mimeographed articles with an occasional carbon of the original). The few original documents are often affidavits of witnesses or defendants, but also ledgers and correspondence, such as:

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Doc. No.</u>	<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Doc. No.</u>
322	NI 5140	1558	NI 11411
918	NI 6647	1691	NI 12511
1294	NI 14434	1833	NI 12789
1422	NI 11086	1886	NI 14228
1480	NI 11092	2313	NI 13566
1811	NI 11144		

In rare cases an exhibit is followed by a translation; in others there is no certificate. Several of the exhibits are of poor legibility and a few pages are illegible.

Other than affidavits, the defense exhibits consist of newspaper clippings, reports, personnel records, Reichgesetzblatt excerpts, photographs, and other items. The 4,257 exhibits for the 23 defendants are arranged by name of defendant and thereunder by exhibit number. Individual exhibits are preceded by a certificate wherever available. Two sets of exhibits for all the defendants are included.

Translations in each of the prosecution document books are preceded by an index listing document numbers, biased descriptions, and page numbers of each translation. These indexes often indicate the order in which the prosecution exhibits were presented in court. Defense document books are similarly arranged. Each book is preceded by an index giving document number, description, and page number for every exhibit. Corresponding exhibit numbers generally are not provided. There are several unindexed supplements to numbered document books. Defense statements, briefs, pleas, and prosecution briefs are arranged alphabetically by defendant's surname. Pagination is consecutive, yet there are many pages where an "a" or "b" is added to the numeral.

At the beginning of roll 1 key documents are filmed from which Tribunal VI derived its jurisdiction: the Moscow Declaration, U.S. Executive Orders 9547 and 9679, the London Agreement, the Berlin Protocol, the IMT Charter, Control Council Law 10, U.S. Military Government Ordinances 7 and 11, and U.S. Forces, European Theater General Order 301. Following these documents of authorization is a list of the names and functions of members of the tribunal and counsels. These are followed by the transcript covers giving such information as name and number of case, volume numbers, language, page numbers, and inclusive dates. They are followed by the minute book, consisting of summaries of the daily proceedings, thus providing an additional finding aid for the transcripts. Exhibits are listed in an index that notes the



type, number, and name of exhibit; corresponding document book, number, and page; a short description of the exhibit; and the date when it was offered in court. The official court file is summarized by the progress docket, which is preceded by a list of witnesses.

Not filmed were records duplicated elsewhere in this microfilm publication, such as prosecution and defense document books in the German language that are largely duplications of the English-language document books.

The records of the I. G. Farben Case are closely related to other microfilmed records in Record Group 238, specifically prosecution exhibits submitted to the IMT, T988; NI (Nuernberg Industrialist) Series, T301; NM (Nuernberg Miscellaneous) Series, M-936; NOKW (Nuernberg Armed Forces High Command) Series, T1119; NG (Nuernberg Government) Series, T1139; NP (Nuernberg Propaganda) Series, M942; WA (undetermined) Series, M946; and records of the Brandt case, M887; the Milch Case, M888; the Altstoetter case, M889; the Pohl Case, M890; the Flick Case, M891; the List case, M893; the Greifelt case, M894; and the Ohlendorf case, M895. In addition, the record of the IMT at Nuernberg has been published in the 42-volume *Trial of the Major War Criminals Before the International Military Tribunal* (Nuernberg, 1947). Excerpts from the subsequent proceedings have been published in 15 volumes as *Trials of War Criminals Before the Nuernberg Military Tribunal Under Control Council Law No. 10* (Washington). The Audiovisual Archives Division of the National Archives and Records Service has custody of motion pictures and photographs of all 13 trials and sound recordings of the IMT proceedings.

Martin K. Williams arranged the records and, in collaboration with John Mendelsohn, wrote this introduction.



NATIONAL ARCHIVES MICROFILM PUBLICATIONS

Roll 80

Target 1

Ambros

1A-Loose Copies

NATIONAL ARCHIVES MICROFILM PUBLICATIONS

Case 6  
Defense

TRIBUNAL VI  
CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK I A

for

Dr. phil. Dr. h.c.rer.nat.

Otto A M B R O S

Personal

Presented by  
the Defense Counsel  
Carl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law



Index for Document Book No. I A

for Dr.phil. Dr.h.c. rer. nat. Otto AMBROS

Doc.No.	Edh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
CA-101		Affidavit dated 12.1.1948 by Otto Ambros " My Curriculum Vitae , from 1911-1947".	1 - 10
CA-102		Geographical Survey of the Province of Work of Otto Ambros from 1936-1945.	11
CA-103		Affidavit dated 18 March, 1947 by Dr. phil.Dr.Ing.e.h. Dr.d.Landwirtschaft ( Agriculture ) Alwin HITTLER on the entry of Otto Ambros into the I.G. Farbenindustrie on the recommendation of his teacher Prof. Dr. Willstaetter, Munich.	12 - 13
CA-104		Affidavit dated 9. December 1947 by Prof. Dr. Ernst FICKENDEY on Dr. Otto Ambros' activity in the Rubber Cultuur Maatschappij "Amsterdam" in Sumatra in 1931.	14 - 15
CA-105		Letter dated 4. September 1934 from Prof. Dr. Richard WILLSTAETTER, Munich. Willstaetter congratulates Ambros on his taking over the management of all the laboratories and plants of the Inter- mediates Group, Ludwigshafen.	16
CA-106		Affidavit dated 2. January, 1948 by Dr. Otto SEIDEL. Seidel describes how Otto Ambros entered the I.G. and his career until his appointment as member of the Vorstand of the I.G. Farbenindustrie on 1st January, 1938.  " During the entire period for which I can pass an opinion upon the career of Dr. Ambros ( until 1 January 1938 ) his activity was not, however, such as to	

Index for Document Book No. I A  
for Dr. phil. Dr. h.c. rer.nat. Otto AMBRGS

---

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
---------	---------	-----------------	------

---

		enable him to exert an influence or obtain an insight into the overall situation of the Ludwigshafen Works, let alone into the overall situation of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktien-gesellschaft. First of all, he had no insight into the guiding line of the I.G. policy - as far as such existed at all. The fact that Dr. Ambrgs was appointed so young to the Vorstand of the I.G. is undoubtedly to be explained only by his technical abilities and talents as an organizer; the appointment had nothing whatever to do with the political events since 1933."	17 - 19
65-107		Letter dated 12. January 1938 written by Prof. Dr. Richard WILLSTAETTER to Otto Ambrgs. Willstaetter congratulates Ambrgs on his appointment as youngest member of the Vorstand of the I.G. Farbenindustrie.	21
66-108		Affidavit dated 21. January, 1948 by Director Dr. Walter REPPH, Director Dr. Wolfgang BUELOW, Dr. Heinrich KUPFF and Dr. Berthold SCHNELL on the achievements and talents of Otto Ambrgs as a chemist. Summary: " All these achievements have made Dr. Ambrgs one of the greatest chemists of German industry, and as such he was and will always remain an inspiring ideal to us, his closest co-workers."	21 - 26
66-109		Affidavit dated 21. August 1947 by Dr. Richard LINDE on Otto Ambrgs as a Chemist.	



Index for Document Book No. I A

for Dr. phil. Dr.h.c. rer. nat. Otto AMERKS

Doc.No.      Exh.No.      C o n t e n t s      Page

" Dr. Ambrs' basic disposition is that of a real scientist and technician."

27 - 28

CA-11C

Affidavit dated 15. December, 1947 by Dr. Hermann BUSCHER on Otto Ambrs' career.

Dr. Hermann Buscher says:

" In the course of the following years Dr. Ambrs became one of the foremost specialists of the I.G. Farbenindustrie in the field of polymerization. By virtue of the high order of his technical talent and the confidence which he enjoyed with his superiors, especially with Carl Bosch, he acquired executive positions at an early age, which is exceptional even in the case of talented people and is only possible if the respective field of work acquires such great economic significance as was the case with Buna manufacture and polymerisates.

On the question of the employment of poison gas:

" In the spring of 1943, Dr. Ambrs called on me in Berlin and told me that he was under orders to report to Hitler at his headquarters. On that occasion, the question of the use of poison gas was to be discussed. We discussed this problem and agreed that the use of poison gas would be the greatest misfortune for friend and foe . . . . . After his interview with Hitler - I do not remember any more if it was immediately thereafter or later on - Dr. Ambrs called on me again and assured me that, on the part of Germany, there was no intention to wage a poison gas war. I am convinced that Dr.

Index for Document Book No. I A  
for Dr. phil. Dr.h.c., rer.nat. Otto AMERCS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		Amercs rendered humanity a great service by his conduct. It must only be imagined what would have happened if he had simply said, as was customary at that time, " Jawohl, mein Fuehrer".	29 - 31
CA-111		Affidavit, dated 2. September, 1947 by Dott.Franco GROTIANELLI, at present Vice Chairman of the Soc. per Az. Industria Gomma Sintetica on the work of Otto Amercs in the construction of the Buna Plants at Ferrara and Terni.	32 - 33
CA-112		Affidavit dated 5. January, 1948 by Dott.Franco GROTIANELLI, at present Vice Chairman of the Soc.per Az. Industria Gomma Sintetica, giving an account of the work done by Otto Amercs with reference to Italy.	34 - 36
CA-113		Affidavit dated 17 January, 1948 by Dr. Hans KELLER, father-in-law of Otto Amercs. Dr. Keller describes how his resignation from the Social Welfare Department of the Ludwigshafen Plant in 1938 came about.	
		" The attitude of my family, including my son-in-law, to National Socialism was anything but favorable."	37 - 39
CA-114		Affidavit dated 17. January 1948 by Josef BAUER, Prelate and Honorary Prebendary.	40
CA-115		Affidavit dated 2. January 1948 by Dr. Hugo STURCH on the circumstances which led to Otto Amercs' entry into the NSDAP in 1938. Storch was Ortsgruppenleiter of the Ortsgruppe Ludwigshafen-Hemshof of the NSDAP. He says:	

Index for Document Book No. I A

for Dr. phil. Dr. h.c. rer. nat. Otto AMER'S

Doc.No. Exh.No. Contents Page

" The Gauleiter of the NSDAP responsible for Ludwigshafen, Essekkel, and the NSDAP Kreisleiter responsible for Ludwigshafen, Klemm, did their utmost in the years after Hitler's seizure of power to persuade men occupying important positions in industry to join the Party, in the hope of thus increasing Party influence in industry. When Dr. Amers became a member of the Vorstand of I.G. on 1. January 1938, but failed to join the Party voluntarily even then, I received one fine day during the latter half of 1938 - I cannot remember the exact date - in my capacity as responsible Ortsgruppenleiter an order from the Gauleitung via the Kreisleitung to hand to Dr. Amers an official notification to the effect that he had been admitted to the Party. I am therefore in a position to state that there can be no doubt at all that Dr. Amers did not join the NSDAP voluntarily or from conviction."

41 - 42

CA-116

Affidavit dated 9. January, 1948 by Dr. Heinz von LEIBITZ-PIWICKI, Deputy Werksleiter and Production Chief of the Buna Chemical Works in Schkopau in the Russian (occupied) Zone of Germany. Dr. v. Leibitz-Piwicki, in his capacity as present Werksleiter gives a survey of Otto Amers' activity in Schkopau.

" From 1937 to the summer of 1939 or thereabouts Dr. Otto Amers was Betriebsfuhrer at Schkopau. In that capacity he was responsible for the whole plant in accordance with the laws of the Third Reich. He was succeeded in the summer of 1939 or thereabouts by Dr. Wulff. In accordance with the laws of the Third Reich the latter then became responsible for the whole of the Schkopau plant."



Index for Document Book No. I A

for Dr. phil. Dr. h.c. rer. nat. Otto LEBRUCH

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		Dr. v. Leibitz-Piwinski says that he has heard nothing in the nature of a reproach against Otto Lebruch originating from the time when he was in charge of Schkopau, although during the two years which have elapsed since the collapse and in view of his position as Production Chief he would have been sure to hear of any complaints.	43 - 45
CA-117		Affidavit dated 26 September 1947 by Dr. Robert H. SENCLEVER. Senclever was the Betriebsfuehrer of the Zweckel Plant of the I.G. Farben. He describes how Otto Lebruch conducted himself as member of the Vorstand of I.G. in special reference to this plant.	46 - 47
CA-118		Affidavit dated 17 September, 1947 by Dr. Max WITTWER. Wittwer was appointed by Otto Lebruch as Betriebsfuehrer of the Gendrf Plant which was being constructed in 1939 and which later on was known as the Anorgana G.m.b.H. He continued as Betriebsfuehrer after the plant had been completed. Wittwer gives an account of Otto Lebruch's position and conduct as Geschaeftsfuehrer (Manager) of the Anorgana G.m.b.H.	48 - 49
CA-119		Affidavit dated 3 July 1947 by Dr. Albert P. LHM. Dr. Palm says: "On the 6th June 1941, I went to Dyhernfurth in my capacity as a chemist in connection with the preliminaries for putting into operation the Dyhernfurth Works of the Anorgana G.m.b.H. With the putting into operation of the Works, which was carried out gradually from the autumn of 1941, I assumed the management of the Anorgana Works, Dyhernfurth. As Dr. Lebruch, the business manager of the Anorgana G.m.b.H. was in Dyhernfurth only three or four times a year for one day at a time,	

Index for Document Book No. I A  
for Dr. phil. Dr. h.c. rer. nat. Otto AMBROS

Doc.No.	Bch.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		He appointed me in his stead as "Fuehrer of the Works", in the sense of the law for the Regulations of National Labor. I kept this post until the evacuation of the Works on 24 January, 1945."	50 - 51
CA-120		Affidavit dated 21. January, 1948 by Dr. Albrecht WEISS concerning Otto Ambros' work in the field of social welfare. Weiss was an adviser ( Referent ) of the Central I.G. Social Bureau and as such took care of the social welfare side of the I.G. Farben. He states: " Dr. Ambros, the builder of these Works, was often in consultation with me regarding the social scheme. Even when it only concerned questions of principle or questions in my special field ( Old Age Care, Housing System, Works' Sick Insurance), I could observe that Dr. Ambros placed the greatest value on having the social tradition of the Works of the I.G. incorporated in these new plants."	52 - 53
CA-121		Review of the scientific publications of Otto Ambros up to the year 1929.	54 - 55
CA-122		Lecture on the formation of latex in the plant, by Otto Ambros at the Paris World Exhibition in 1937 given before the International Rubber Congress.	56 - 60
CA-123		Otto Ambros is awarded the Gold Medal for his work in the field of Buna Synthesis on the occasion of his lecture before the International Rubber Congress	

Index for Document Book No. I A

for Dr. phil. Dr. h.c. rer. nat. Otto MÜLLER

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		at the Paris World Exhibition in 1937.	61
CA-124		Lecture on synthetic rubber given by Otto MÜLLER on 26.May, 1939 before the Société des Ingénieurs Civils de France et la Société de Chimie Industrielle in Paris. Otto MÜLLER expounds the experimental data and results of German research work on Buna.	62 - 76
CA-125		Lecture given by Otto MÜLLER on 9.6.1943 in the University of Freiburg/Br. on "Chemistry and Science of Synthetic Macromolecular Substances."	77 - 108
CA-126		Affidavit dated 12. January 1948 by Prof. Dr. Hermann STAUDINGER of the University of Freiburg/Br. concerning the honorary doctor's degree conferred on Otto MÜLLER for the lecture given by him on 9. June 1943 on "Chemistry and Science of Synthetic macromolecular substances," and for his scientific work in this field. The text of the deed awarding this honorary doctor's degree reads:  " Albert-Ludwig- University, Freiburg/Br. The Faculty of Natural Science and Mathematics, under the rectorship of Professor of Mathematics, Dr. Wilhelm Süss and under the deanship of Professor of Physical Chemistry, Dr. Reinhard Mecke, confers on Dr. phil. Otto MÜLLER Member of the Vorstand of I.G. Farbenindustrie of Ludwigshafen, on Rhine the degree and title of Doctor rerum naturalium honoris causa	



Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
---------	---------	-----------------	------

The faculty hereby honors his outstanding merit in promoting chemical technology in the macromolecular field, the introduction of new polymerization methods, and the development of plastics and Buna. In witness whereof the faculty issues for him this document and affixes its seal to it.

Freiburg/Br., 15 November, 1944.

(signed) Guess (Rector)"

"Political factors, for example Party membership, were not taken into consideration for this honor; it was conferred merely on the strength of Dr. Amros' merits in the field of macromolecular chemistry."

109 - 111

CA-127

Affidavit dated 15. January 1948 by Dr. Philipp BARCHARDT which tells of the support given to him by Otto Amros in his work as Chief Engineer of the Gesellschaft fuer Lindes Eismaschinen A.G. (Refrigerator Company).

112 - 113

CA-128

Affidavit dated 18. January 1948 by Hans SCHELLENBERG which tells of the support given him by Otto Amros in the I.G. Works at Ludwigshafen-Opau.

114

CA-129

Affidavit dated 23. August 1947 by Karl LERMMANN which tells of the support given him by Otto Amros after his arrest.

115 - 117

CA-130

Affidavit dated 6. September 1947 by Johann HERMANN describing how Otto Amros prevented the blowing up of the Als-Bridge near Burgkirchen in April 1945.

118

Index for Document Book No. I A

for Dr. phil. Dr. h.c. rer. nat. Otto AMERCS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
CA-131		Affidavit dated 16. May 1947 by Dr. Wolfgang GRUBER describing how Otto Amercs intervened at an SS Court Martial in April 1945.	119 - 120
CA-132		Affidavit dated 16. September 1947 by Josef SANNIG, Sonntag was condemned to death by a Court Martial on 29. April 1945. Three of his co-defendants were shot; Sonntag was rescued from death by shooting.	121
CA-133		Affidavit dated 19. January 1948 by Dr. Johannes HESS describing how Otto Amercs prevented the execution of a Court Martial sentence in April 1945.	122 - 123
CA-134		Affidavit dated 17. September 1947 by Dr. Max WITTMER concerning the measures taken by Otto Amercs to save valuable production centers and goods in defiance of Hitler's order for the complete destruction of those installations and goods.	124
CA-135		Affidavit dated 4. June 1947 by Dr. Johannes HESS Josef RABANK Dr. Max WITTMER and Dr. Wolfgang GRUBER. Comprehensive account of Otto Amercs' efforts to save production centers and utility enterprises in Upper Bavaria in April 1945.	125 - 126

Affidavit

by the Defendant Dr. phil. Dr. h.c.,rer.nat. Otto AMBROS  
-----

I, Dr. phil. Dr. h.c.,rer.nat. Otto Ambros, Euerberg, Palace of Justice, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal VI in Euerberg, Palace of Justice.

My curriculum vitae for 1901 - 1947.  
-----

I was born on 19 May 1901 as the only son of Professor Karl Ambros, who died in 1932, and his wife Elsa, nee Probst, in Weiden/Bavaria.

My father was a Professor of Agriculture at several agricultural schools, lastly in Lendehut Schoenbrunn/Bavaria.

I received the customary school education and took my final examination (Abitur) at the Oberrealschule in Munich in 1920.

In 1920 I began to study chemistry at the University in Munich, as well as agriculture



at the Technical High School. My decision to study natural sciences was the outcome of the pleasure my father took in the practice of his profession and the intellectual stimulus which he exerted in this respect.

Richard Willstaetter, certainly the most eminent German Professor of Chemistry at Munich University at that time, was the decisive factor in the trend my education took. He awakened my interest in biochemistry and took me into his private laboratory. In 1935 I took my Dr. phil. degree with him with a thesis dealing with the field of enzyme chemistry.

In 1936, on the recommendation and advice of Richard Willstaetter, I took a post as a chemist with the IG Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft in Ludwigshafen on Rhine. I kept in touch with Richard Willstaetter all his life, even when he had to leave Germany in 1939 and found refuge in Switzerland.

After entering the IG Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft in Ludwigshafen I began on biochemical studies on enzyme and vitamin research in the Biochemical Laboratory newly founded in Oppau at that time.

Both technical and purely chemical problems arose from this, such as the synthetic manufacture of rubber, new resins and other substances of organic chemistry, which I later pursued as my life's work.

Such men as Carl Bosch and Hermann Buecher directed my attention to further technical problems, such as the industrial cultivation of yeast for the natural synthesis of alcohols and the administration of the tropics as a source of new industrial raw materials.

In the development of my studies on natural and synthetic rubber I took an educational trip abroad in 1930 for almost a year, to Ceylon, Malacca and the Netherlands East Indies. I worked for about half a year in Sumatra in the plants and laboratories of the Rubber Cultuur Mij. "Amsterdam" under Prof. Pickensley.

After my return, I lectured on the result of my impressions on 8 January 1931 in the Technical Committee of the IG Farbenindustrie and eventually in most of the IG works.

At that time, I pleaded the view that in a world economy on a large scale the chemist can find a wide and profitable field in the refinement of natural materials.

After 1930 I was employed as a chemist in a large number of IG works and also in many fields.

In 1934, when I was not quite 34 years of age, the production department for solvents and plastics in Ludwigshafen was handed over to me as chemist.

It was during this period that the rapid progress was made in acetylene and ethylene chemistry which had been scientifically prepared for by Kurt H. Meyer at the end of the twenties and which then developed in Germany and the USA, above all in the field of plastics, solvents, gun-lac and crude detergents.

For the promotion of this development in Germany, I alternated between work in the laboratory, experimental work in the pilot plants and the construction of many factory plants.

In 1935 I was appointed as responsible chemist for the technical development of Buna synthesis and the setting up of the first Buna factory of the IG Farbenindustrie AG in Schkopau. The foundation stone of this factory was laid on 25 April 1936. The Schkopau Buna factory belonged to the Buna-Werke G.m.b.H. Schkopau, an IG firm whose deputy business manager I was from 1936 onwards.

Once during the period of my employment in IG I was a Betriebsführer within the meaning of the law of that time for the regulation of national labor, and that was in Schkopau from 1937 to May 1939.

The setting up of the second Buna works in Huls followed as early as 1938. This factory belonged to the IG and Hibernia under the title Chemische Werke Huls G.m.b.H., of which I was business manager from May to November 1938, and to the Aufsichtsrat of which I was eventually appointed.

The foundation and construction of 4 more Buna factories followed in Germany and abroad. The value of all the Buna works, for the technical setting up of which I was responsible, amounted to about 2 billion RM. Besides this, I handled other Buna works projects in almost every large State.

My spiritual home was in my original factory at Ludwigshafen, now once more Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik with its research workshops.

In 1936, in addition to the products of acetylene and ethylene chemistry, I took over the Department of Intermediate Products, in which the many hundreds of intermediate products for dyestuffs and pharmaceuticals, as well as tannin and textile auxiliaries and numerous organic chemicals for many different purposes were produced.

At the same time, the IG Farbenindustrie appointed me Chairman of the biggest and most interesting production committee, from the chemical point of view, which was called the Intermediate Products Committee ("Zetko").

In 1937 I gave a scientific lecture in Paris on the occasion of the World Exhibition at the International Rubber Congress on the cultivation of latex in the plant, *Kopra*.

I made use in particular of my experimental results, collected in the tropical laboratory in Sumatra.

On 1 January 1938 I was appointed to the Vorstand of the IG Farbenindustrie and the so-called Technical Committee (Kon.). At the same time I took over the management of all organic chemistry plants in the IG factory Ludwigshafen.

Up to 1938 I did not belong to the NSDAP. I refused requests to enter the Party. In October 1938, having made no personal application, I was informed by the appropriate local group (Ortsgruppe) of the NSDAP in Ludwigshafen that I had been admitted to the Party.



As a result of my appointment to the Vorstand I came into contact with the industry of the rest of the world. I fostered these contacts, not only for business reasons, but also because of my personal attitude, which had meanwhile been further strengthened through my trip abroad in 1930 and my otherwise friendly relations abroad.

Negotiations were conducted with Standard Oil of New Jersey on Buna, with Roehm & Haas, Philadelphia, on plastics and with Dupont, Wilmington, on Nylon.

In the first half of 1939 I went to London and conferred there, at the request of Imperial Chemical Industries Ltd. on the construction of a plant for the manufacture of the plastic Polystyrol.

On 26 May 1939, I lectured in Paris to the Société des Ingénieurs Civils de France and the Société de Chimie Industrielle on synthetic rubber.

In this lecture, I openly exhibited, with lantern slides, the results of the German Buna research in broad outline.

In August 1939 I conferred with Shawinigan Co. of Canada on the handing over of a new IG process for the manufacture of ethylene from acetylene. A trip to the USA was planned for 1939, to conduct discussions on the installation of the first Buna plant in the United States. I was subsequently to go to Canada as the guest of Shawinigan.

Before my journey to America, which I had reason to look upon as a certainty, I went to the Italian Dolomites for a rest with my family in August 1939, and was there surprised by the war, in which I had not believed.

For me, as for every other German, the war meant a tremendous change, from a professional as well as a personal viewpoint.

After the outbreak of war I, as a civilian, was also subject to military law and I had to accommodate myself to the swift succession of decrees and instructions of controlled military economy.

Even before the war there were compulsory duties for the IG, such as the construction of Reich-owned stand-by plants. After the war began, almost all planning took place under the auspices of war economy. Even the IG factory at Auschwitz had to be built on such a compulsory order from the Reich, like the Gendorf, Dycarnfurth and Falkenhagen works.

Attempts to work unhindered were in vain. The war, which in the course of the years came to rule every commission and omission in every sphere, naturally harnessed chemistry too in Germany, as in every other country, for its own ends.

Substitute materials took the place of natural raw materials in Germany as a result of the blockade, for armament purposes as well as to supply the civil sector.

Thus I too was charged with the production of raw materials for artificial fibre, synthetic tannin, crude detergents and textile auxiliaries, dyestuffs, intermediate products for pharmaceuticals, resin, lacquers, plastics and above all Buna, as well as making the preliminary products for gunpowder and some chemical warfare agents in Reich-owned Army plants.

The chemical warfare agents were not used, however. There was no lack of efforts in political circles to have them used.

In 1942 I was appointed business manager of the Luramil-Baugesellschaft m.b.H. and of the Anorgana G.m.b.H. and in 1943 I became chief of Special Committee C.

In May 1943, in my capacity as Chief of Special Committee C, I was summoned by Hitler and had to report to him on the position of German armament in the field of chemical warfare agents. My report was objective and showed clearly the weakness of the German position. Chemical warfare agents were not used.

Independently of this work, which the State required of me as of each of its citizens, I remained in close touch with the progress of Chemistry in science and technique. My work in this sphere was recognized.

In the autumn of 1944 I was awarded the Fritz Todt Prize for the synthesis of Buna, on the recommendation of the German Technical Association.

Seven years earlier I had received the Grand Prix with the Golden Medal, for the building up of Buna synthesis, from the Board (Gremium) of the International Exposition in Paris.

On 9 June 1943, at the invitation of Freiburg University, I lectured on plastics. This lecture was the occasion for my receiving the degree of Dr. h.c.rer.nat. from Freiburg University in November 1944. It was conferred at the suggestion of Professor Hans Staudinger, a scientist with a world-wide reputation, who is now Dean of his faculty in Freiburg.

Since the occupation of Germany by the Allies, they have not failed to interrogate me most thoroughly on my work, in view of my professional position in Germany. The French occupation authorities in particular examined my conduct in the war most searchingly, but then authorized me to work as a chemist within their Zone.

In September 1945 I lectured on many different fields of chemical research to the heads of the French chemical industry.

My wife still lives with my two children in Ludwigshafen, our permanent home, which I did not leave because I am not conscious of having committed<sup>a</sup> dishonorable, much less a criminal act.

Muenberg, 12 January 1946.

signed: Otto Ambros



I herewith certify and witness the above signature of  
Dr. Otto Ambros, Muenberg, Palace of Justice, which was  
made before me, Rechtsanwalt Karl Hoffmann, Defense Counsel.

Muenberg, 12 January 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel

This is to certify that the above copy is correct and  
complete.

Muenberg, 21 January 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law

GEOGRAPHICAL SURVEY

of the  
Province of Work

of

Dr. OTTO MEROZ

1930-1945

Products :

EUNA

ETHYLENE CHEMICALS

OTHER CHEMICALS

Negotiations on Projects

EUNA




ETHYLENE CHEMISTRY

OTHER CHEMISTRY




*Räumliche Übersicht  
des  
Arbeitsgebietes  
von  
DR. OTTO AMBROS  
1930-1945*

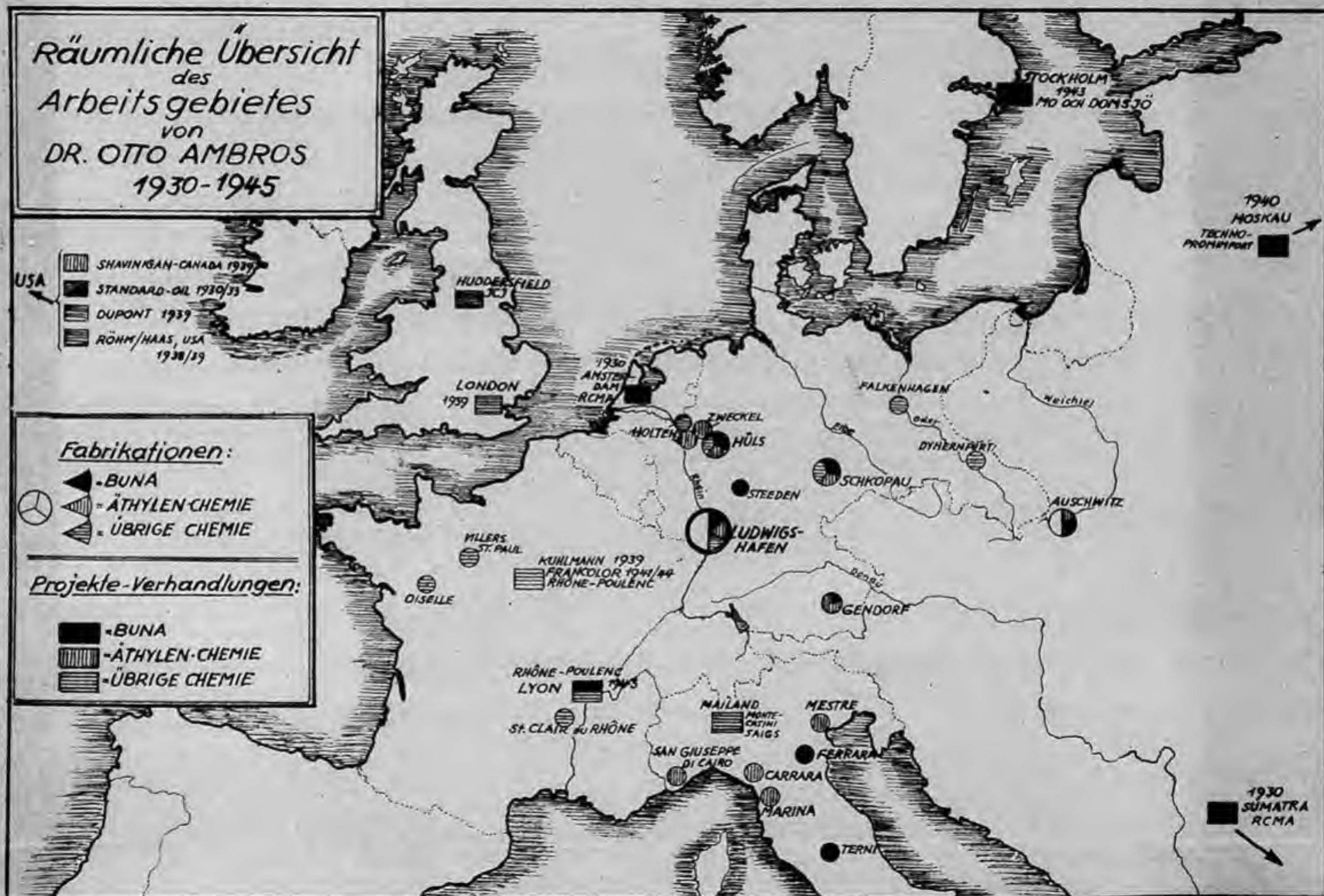
USA  
 SHAWINGAN-CANADA 1939  
 STANDARD-OIL 1930/33  
 DUPONT 1939  
 RÖHM/HAAS, USA 1938/39

Fabrikationen:

 -BUNA  
 -ÄTHYLEN-CHEMIE  
 -ÜBRIGE CHEMIE

Projekte-Verhandlungen:

 -BUNA  
 -ÄTHYLEN-CHEMIE  
 -ÜBRIGE CHEMIE



Dr.phil. (Ph.D.) ALWIN MITTASCH

Dr.Ing., h.c., Dr.agr., h.c. (honoris causa).

I, Alwin MITTASCH, have been duly warned that I make myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. 6 in the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

Dr.Otto AMBROS of Ludwigshafen a/Rh., many years ago joined as a chemist the research laboratory OPPAU of the Badische Aniline and Soda Works, which was formerly under my supervision. He had been recommended very strongly by his teacher, Prof. Dr. WILLSTAETTER in Munich. In the laboratory he distinguished himself not only by his precise, diligent and resourceful activity, but also by his agreeable character. Consequently we very soon entered into a friendly relation, which continued after he had left my laboratory and also after my retirement in 1934. In the interests of industrial progress, I warmly welcomed his rapid rise.

Also in later times, right into the war years, I met Dr.AMBROS on occasion, without ever hearing from or about him anything which would have changed my conviction of his strict morality and his unimpeachable humanitarian conduct. I have never heard of his manifesting National-Socialistic tendencies, concerning racial questions.

I would like to add that I am myself not affected by the denazification law. (Spruchkammer Heidelberg, File no. 59/3/925, decision of 15 August 1946)

signed: Alwin MITTASCH

I herewith witness the signature of Dr.Alwin MITTASCH, who is personally known to me, and certify that it was made before me, Notary Public, Justizrat Richard FUCHS.

Heidelberg, 18 March 1947  
Heidelberg Notary Public II

signed: Justizrat FUCHS  
as Notary Public



Stamp of the Notary Public in Heidelberg

Value: under 1000 Marks  
Costs: under Par.39 KO 2 Marks  
Paid in cash  
Stamp and billstamp

I herewith certify that the above is a true and  
correct copy:

Nuremberg, 9 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang ALT,  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Affidavit

I, Professor Dr. Ernst Fickendey, living in Ludwigsburg, Vordero  
Schlosstr. 17, have been duly warned that I shall make myself  
liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on  
oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order  
to be submitted as evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI in the  
Munich Palace of Justice.

As regards my own person: from 1906 until the First World War  
I worked in the tropics as a colonial official in the Cameroons,  
and then from the end of 1919 until the end of 1938 in Sumatra  
as a scientific consultant to the Dutch plantation company "Rubber  
Cultuur Maatschappij Amsterdam". When I returned from Sumatra  
in 1938, I was asked by the Auslandsorganisation to join the  
National Socialist Party as "I would enjoy advantages by so  
doing". I turned down the request once and for all. During the  
last war, I worked as a scientific consultant to the Group of  
German Colonial Economic Enterprises.

Dr. Otto Lehmke worked in 1930 for about six months in the labora-  
tories of my company, the Rubber Cultuur Mij. "Amsterdam" in Suma-  
tra. His outstanding humanitarian qualities quickly gained for him  
the confidence, affection and respect, not only

of the white men, but also of all the colored men (Chinese, Japanese and Javanese), with whom he came into contact through his work. The natives have an extraordinary instinct for distinguishing between genuine sympathy with their fate, which comes from one's heart, ~~and sympathy which is calculating,~~ or friendliness which is based on spiritual ethics. Moreover Dr. Ambros went in the native quarters, the children ran after him to receive a greeting or a friendly word from him. After his departure, the Javanese (also the Chinese) kept asking whether he would return. My Javanese laboratory assistant even wrote him one or two letters to show him his respect. In any event, all who were connected with him, white and colored, felt his departure to be a loss.

Ludwigsburg, 9 December 1947

Signed: Prof. Ernst Fickenday.

I hereby witness the above signature of Prof. Dr. Ernst Fickenday, living in Ludwigsburg, Verdere Schloastr. 17, and certify that it was made before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel.

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Ludwigsburg, 9 December 1947

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy:

Nuremberg, 21 January 1948

Signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel

Professor Richard Willstätter

Munich 27, 4 September 1934  
Hochstrasse 29

Dear Doctor Ambros,

I learned with great pleasure from your letter that you have been appointed as head of all the laboratories and plants of the Intermediates Group in Ludwigshafen. It is a wonderful field of activity. Allow me to express my very best congratulations on your successful career (it has been so rapid that the fresh impulse of your drive and energy has remained completely unimpaired) and on your important new position. I am convinced that in spite of the manifold and distracting claims on your time, you will manage to reserve sufficient leisure and inventiveness to give full rein to the productive possibilities and tasks in your field of activity - a thing which is not easy.

The paper concerning "The new cleansing agents" which you sent me, is very welcome; it gives me a good idea of the developments and I thank you very much for it.

I am also very obliged to you for your kind invitation; but I feel, especially at the present time, that I am doing the right thing in keeping myself aloof. But your frequent journeys will bring you to Munich. Do come and see me. My writing desk can be used not only for writing about crayones, but also for drinking a bottle of old wine. Why don't you come one evening.

With best regards to your wife and my heartiest greetings to yourself.

Yours very sincerely,

signed: Richard Willstätter



I herewith certify that this photocopy is a true and correct  
copy of the original which is in my hands.

Ludwigshafen a/Rh., 19 December 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy:

Ludwigshafen a/Rh., 12 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

AFFIDAVIT

I, the undersigned, Dr.Otto SEIDEL, living in Heidelberg, Schloss-solfsbrunnen-Weg 5, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal, Case 6, in the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

1. In 1901 I entered as a chemist the service of the then Badische Aniline and Soda works in Ludwigshafen a/Rh. and in 1918 was appointed to the Vorstand of the company. When the I.G. was founded in 1926, I was taken into its Vorstand; my task still remained in addition the technical management of the Ludwigshafen Works. On 31 December 1937, I reached the age-limit and retired. I was never a member of the NSDAP or of any of its affiliated associations.

2. Dr. Otto AMBROS has been personally known to me for many years. Dr.Ambros started his career as a chemist in the Oppau Works of the I.G.Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft; during his activity there, he was not my subordinate, so that I cannot pass any opinion upon him for that period. When my colleague in the Vorstand, Dr.Wilhelm Gaus, after the transfer of Prof.Bosch into the Aufsichtsrat, took over the head management of the Works Combine Upper Rhine and for this reason transferred his office from Oppau to the Ludwigshafen Works, he brought Dr.Ambros along to Ludwigs-hafen as his technical colleague. From that time on, I became better acquainted with Dr.Ambros.

3. Since the management of the Ludwigshafen-Oppau Works recognized in Dr. Ambros an outstandingly promising young executive, we appointed him to manage the Intermediate Products Division of the Ludwigshafen Works, so that he could prove himself in this position and prepare himself for the greater tasks. Since the manufacturing of synthetics also belonged to the section of the Ludwigshafen Works which was under the supervision of Dr. Ambros, his position enabled him to get used to the problems which came up with the establishment of the new Buna plants.
4. During the entire period, for which I can pass an opinion upon the career of Dr. Ambros (until 1 January 1938), his activity was not however such as to enable him to exert an influence or obtain an insight into the overall situation of the Ludwigshafen Works, let alone into the overall situation of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft. First of all, he had no insight into the guiding line of the I.G. policy - so far as such existed at all. The fact that Dr. Ambros was appointed so young to the Vorstand of the I.G., is undoubtedly to be explained only by his technical abilities and talents as an organizer; the appointment had nothing whatever to do with the political events since 1933. This is evident even from the following connection: Prof. Carl Bosch who was then chairman of the Aufsichtsrat of the I.G. and whose sharp opposition to National Socialism was generally known, certainly would never have given his assent to the appointment of Dr. Ambros, if he had been aware of any political coloring of Dr. Ambros in the way of national socialism.

Heidelberg, 2 January 1948

signed: Dr. Otto Seidel

I herewith witness the above signature of Dr.Otto SEIDEL,  
and certify that it was made before me, Dr.Wolfgang Heintzeler  
Ludwigshafen a/Rh., Bruckstr.13.

Heidelberg, 2 January 1948  
signed: Dr.Wolfgang Heintzeler  
Attorney-at-Law

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy:

Nuremberg, 12 January 1948  
Dr.Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



Professor Richard Willstaetter

Munich 27, 12 January 1938  
Hochstrasse 29

Dear Doctor Ambros,

On my return from a journey abroad, I find the kind letter you wrote me at the end of December, for which I thank you very much. I sincerely reciprocate your good wishes and heartily congratulate you on your important new position as well as on the remarkable progress and results of your pioneering work on the most important problems confronting the chemical industry today. It is with great pleasure that I follow closely your tasks and successes, as well as the achievements of your industry, about which you gave me such an interesting account.

Should your contemplated journey to Munich afford you the opportunity to visit me (I know what terrible claims are made on your time and energy in these years), I would be very glad to see again the member of the Vorstand of the I.G. Farbenindustrie, who has gone such a long way in so few years.

With my best greetings,

Yours very truly

signed: Willstaetter.

I herewith certify that this photocopy is a true and correct copy of the original which is in my hands.

Ludwigshafen a/Rh., 19 December 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above  
is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen a/Rh., 11 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

A f f i d a v i t .

We, the undersigned,  
Director Dr. Walter R e p p e , Chief of the Main Laboratory  
of the Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik Ludwigshafen on Rhine,  
residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wechlerstrasse 24a,

Director Dr. Wolfgang B a e l - w , Chief of the Production  
Department for Solvents and Synthetic Substances (IX Abteilung)  
of the Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik Ludwigshafen on Rhine,  
residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wechlerstrasse 3,

Dr. Heinrich H o p f f , Chief of the Research Laboratory for  
Intermediate Products and Synthetic Substances (ZK-Laboratory)  
of the Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik Ludwigshafen on Rhine,  
residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wechlerstrasse 14,

Dr. Berthold S c h n e i l l , Chief of the Production Department  
for Intermediate Products (ZV-Abteilung) of the Badische Anilin-  
und Soda-Fabrik Ludwigshafen on Rhine, residing in Ludwigshafen  
on Rhine, Wechlerstrasse 23,

have first been warned that we shall render ourselves liable to  
punishment if we make a false affidavit. We declare under oath  
that our statements are true and were made in order to be  
produced in evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of  
Justice in Nurnberg, Germany.

We have been working in the Works in Ludwigshafen on Rhine for  
more than 20 years and we have known Dr. Otto Ambros since his  
transfer from the Oppau Works to Ludwigshafen on Rhine in 1932.  
We can make the following statements regarding Dr. Ambros:

Trained in the science of chemistry by Willstaetter, whose pupil and assistant he had been, Dr. Ambros had the basic prerequisites for his later career, namely, passionate love of and enthusiasm for chemistry, a wealth of knowledge of its principles and an imaginative talent for the handling of chemical problems. Dr. Ambros belonged to the few chemists who, despite the overwhelming pressure of other tasks imposed on them in their later career, remained chemists first and last. He maintained regular contact with the University. By giving lectures at the university, he was not only able to maintain contact with the professors, but also was in a position to become acquainted with the younger generation and its trends of work.

It was one of his habits to visit a laboratory at least once a week, in order to exchange opinions with the research staff at their place of work. He took the keenest interest in the progress of research work, which he was able to promote by his own suggestions and proposals. Dr. Ambros was the Chief of the most important committees for organic production of the I.G., such as the Intermediate, Plastic, and Washing Raw Materials Committee.

Only such men were appointed as chairmen of these committees as had a comprehensive expert knowledge in the respective fields, as otherwise they would not have been able to make the numerous decisions necessary concerning production and research.

Dr. Ambros was always particularly anxious not only to deal with production problems in the committee meetings, but also to discuss purely scientific and research questions.

Thus it was the duty of the undersigned, Dr. Berthold SCHNELL, in his capacity as secretary of the Intermediate Products Committee to summarize comprehensively and to report annually, on instructions by Dr. Ambros, on the results of the research work in the large field of intermediate products chemistry, data which were mostly contained in more than 100 reports of the various I.G. Works.

The lectures which Dr. Ambros held regularly at the end of each year, in which he reviewed the research and production results of the past year, will always be remembered by us and all the chemists of the Works in Ludwigshafen.

In 1943 Dr. Ambros held a lecture on the chemistry of Plastics in the Chemical Institute of the University in Freiburg, before an assembly of Professors, students and representatives of scientific associations. The undersigned, Dr. Berthold SCHNELL, attended this lecture. The applause which was rendered, not only to the factual contents of Dr. Ambros' lecture, but to his open declaration of allegiance to the old university as an "ideal institution of intellectual life founded by our ancestors", exceeded anything ever heard in a university.

Of the approximately 100 million Reichsmark of the annual research budget of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, about one third was at the disposition of Dr. Ambros. We can say without boasting that our research laboratories in Ludwigshafen, which were managed by Dr. Ambros, belonged to the most important



of the I.G. laboratories and that our efforts were of decisive importance for many modern developments in the field of organic technical chemistry.

It is the merit primarily of Dr. Ambros that the experience gained by the undersigned, Dr. Walter Reppe, in the field of acetylene chemistry, which today is included in its entirety in the term "Reppechemistry", is being utilized on a large technical scale.

On the occasion of the construction of the Buns plant in Ludwigshafen, on the lines of the Reppeprocess, in 1941 and 1942, Dr. Ambros proved clearly his great ability to utilize research results for large scale operations.

Dr. Ambros showed an astounding mastery in handling problems of apparatus design, of the functions of these apparatus, their specific adaptability, and practical arrangement, as well as problems pertaining to surface and underground construction, of power supply and transportation, in short, of everything which is of decisive importance for the planning and construction of factories. All essential planning and designs for the numerous factories erected by him were thoroughly discussed by him with his assistants, and the installations in his Works show the proof of his great practical talent. Next to the laboratories, the designing office was his favorite spot.

The construction design of the continuously-operating carbide furnace, the most modern of its kind in the world, and its utilization on a large technical scale, are likewise inseparably linked with the name of Dr. Otto Ambros. When the first furnaces of this type were put into operation in the first Buns plants erected by him, he met initially with

disappointments and reverses, and yet he adhered to the type which he considered the right one, and finally succeeded, through his perseverance, in developing the continually-operating furnace to the present stage of technical perfection. All these achievements have made Dr. Ambros one of the greatest chemists of German industry and as such he was and will always remain an inspiring ideal to us, his closest co-workers.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 21 January 1948

Dr. J. Walter Bappe  
Dr. Wolfgang Buelow  
Dr. Heinrich Hopff  
Dr. Berthold Schnell

I hereby certify and confirm that the above signatures of

Director Dr. Walter Bappe, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wehlerstrasse 24a,

Director Dr. Wolfgang Buelow, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wehlerstrasse 3,

Dr. Heinrich Hopff, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wehlerstrasse 14, and

Dr. Berthold Schnell, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wehlerstrasse 23,

were this day affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4,

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 21 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

It is hereby certified that the above is a true and complete copy.

Wuerzburg, 23 January 1948.

Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel

Affidavit.

I, Dr. Richard Lind a, residing at Munich, have been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit.

I declare under oath that my statement was made in accordance with the truth, in order to be produced in evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nurnberg, Germany.

I met Dr. Ambros personally on several occasions in connection with technical developments for the decomposition of gas mixtures.

These developments involved first of all the construction of ethylene plants in Herten (Ruhr area) and then the great task of the acetylene and ethylene production following the electrical arc process in Huelz. An additional new field was the production of ethylene from acetylene through partial hydrogenation. Finally, we met in connection with various projects which Dr. Ambros carried out in Ludwigshafen and in his other domestic and foreign plants.

I must emphasize in advance that I highly esteem Dr. Ambros for his broadminded attitude towards technical developments. He belonged, to my knowledge, to those men who were to be credited with the decisive progress made in the field of modern aliphatic chemistry.

Dr. Ambros' basic disposition is that of a real scientist and technician.

Thanks to his frank and friendly manner, Dr. Ambros was everywhere received with confidence. I must emphasize that Dr. Ambros also adopted the same attitude towards those of our specialists who were of Jewish descent, such as Dr. Pollitzer, Diplom Ingenieur Borchard and Dr. Schuffen. I also know that Dr. Ambros maintained friendly relations with his teacher, Professor Richard Willstaetter, who was last living in Switzerland as a Jewish emigrant. Dr. Ambros has always been opposed to anti-Semitism.

Dr. Ambros belonged to those industrialists who remained faithful up to the very end to their plants and their employees, but who at the same time dared to voice criticism against the Party, the Wehrmacht and the State, thereby preventing much harm. Without being able to offer any proof, I have heard that Dr. Ambros' attitude was decisive in preventing a poison gas war.



I am putting down these thoughts in the hope that they will contribute to his early release.

Munich, 21 August 1947

signed : Dr. Richard Linde

(Costs)

Document Roll No. 4356 I hereby certify the authenticity of the above signature of Herr Dr. Richard Linde, Director in Munich, Poessenbacherstr. 11, personally known to me.

(Notary stamp)

Munich, 21 August 1947

The Notary  
signed : Justiarat Heinrich Hippner

It is hereby certified that the above is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 18 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Affidavit.

I, Dr. Hermann Baecher, residing in Niederwalluf im Rheingau, know that I shall render myself liable to punishment, if I make a false affidavit. I declare under oath, that my statement was made in accordance with the truth in order to be produced in evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

During my activities with the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, from April 1925 to the end of January 1928, I had dealings with Dr. Otto Ambros. He was at that time one of the younger chemists in Ludwigshafen/Rhein and was generally considered to be one of the most talented and most promising. He worked together with me on the development of a process furnished by me for the continuous production of albumen out of yeast, and during that time I learned to know him better. The process had to be abandoned, because the raw material prices prevailing at that time rendered this process unprofitable.

However, I remained in contact with Dr. Ambros. At that time, the solution of the problem of producing synthetic rubber played an important part. I was informed on the stage of the I.G. efforts in this field, and was convinced that it would be possible to make progress in this respect, if the characteristics of natural rubber were studied, not only on the latex supplied from the countries of origin, but also at the point of origin itself, i.e. on the very trees supplying the rubber.

I suggested to Carl Bosch to send Dr. Ambros to India for the purpose of carrying out these studies. Carl Bosch agreed with this proposition. I was able to recommend Dr. Ambros to a friend of mine, a plantation manager in Sumatra, Geheimen Regierungsrat Professor Dr. Ernst Fickendey, at present residing in Ludwigshafen, Vorderer Schlossstrasse 17.

The India trip of Dr. Ambros was also intended for obtaining information on the competitiveness of synthetic rubber as against that of natural rubber, by means of determining the costs of production. Herr Fickendey will be able to confirm that Dr. Ambros' journey served only these two purposes.

In the course of the following years Dr. Ambros became one of the foremost specialists of I.G. Farbenindustrie in the field of polymerisation. By virtue of the high order of his technical talent and the confidence he enjoyed with his superiors, especially with Carl Bosch, he acquired executive positions at an early age, which is exceptional even in the case of talented people and is only possible if the respective field of work acquires such great economic significance as was the case with the Buna manufacture and polymerisates.

After I left the I.G., I maintained personal contact with Dr. Ambros. He visited me from time to time, told me of his work and often turned to me confidentially whenever he was confronted with difficult or important problems. Owing to this acquaintance, which has lasted for many years, and the confidential relations existing between us, I believe myself to be in a position to judge of his personality.

His pleasure in creative work and his complete devotion to his duties are characteristic of him. He developed an unusual personal initiative, took pleasure in assuming responsibility and also had a profound sense of responsibility. He resented exaggerated personal ambition, just as he despised any kind of intrigue. I remember that he often spoke with me of resigning from I.G. and contenting himself with a more modest, but independent position capable of development. I always considered him one of the most decent and promising men of the younger German generation and I regretted the fact that circumstances forced him into a sphere of work which was beyond his physical and spiritual strength. During the war years, he gave the impression of a greatly over-burdened man, able to keep up only thanks to his youthful elasticity and strong willpower. He suffered under the conflict arising from the dictatorial demands made on him on the one hand and the technical limitations of which he was completely aware on the other hand.

I clearly recall the following incident :  
In the spring of 1943, Dr. Ambros called on me in Berlin and told me that he was under orders to report to Hitler at his headquarters. On that occasion, the question of the use of poison gas was to be discussed. We discussed this problem and agreed that the use of poison gas would be the greatest misfortune for friend and

for. We particularly agreed on the point that he should limit himself in his report to facts, by comparing frankly the small German production with the enormous poison gas production capacity of the Americans and Russians. I remember he also gave me hints as to new German developments, which, however, he assumed were also known to the other side.

I remember that I supported Dr. Ambros in his intention to remain in this decisive stage also the honest true technician, who, if necessary, felt bound to carry through his point of view against other intentions in the matter of poison gas.

After his interview with Hitler - I do not remember any more if it was immediately thereafter or later on - Dr. Ambros called on me again and assured me that, on the part of Germany, there was no intention to wage a poison gas war.

I am convinced that Dr. Ambros rendered humanity a great service by his conduct. It must only be imagined what would have happened if he had simply said, as was customary at that time, "Jevchl, mein Fuehrer".

Niederwalluf, 15 December 1947

signed : Dr. Hermann Buecher

I, Hanne Gierlich, Assistant Defense Counsel at the Military Tribunal in Nuernberg, hereby certify and confirm the above signature of Herr Dr. Hermann Buecher, residing at Niederwalluf/Rheingau.

Niederwalluf, 15 December 1947

signed : Hanne Gierlich

It is hereby certified that the above is a true and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 22 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.



Stamp:  
Dr. Teodoro Valagussa  
Notary  
Milan - Via Manzoni, 19 (Stamp)  
Telephone 26840

I, the undersigned, Dr. FRANCO GROTTANELLI, domiciled in Milan, Foro Bonaparte, 65, Director General of the SOC. PER AZ. INDUSTRIA GOMMA SINTETICA (Head Office in Milan - Corso Porta Nuova, 24) from 1939 to 1945, and at present Vice Chairman of the same Company, depose the following on behalf of Dr. AMBROS of the I.G. Farbenindustrie in the matter of the criminal proceedings now being held by the Nuremberg Tribunal (Germany):

"The contacts which I myself, my technical assistants and my Company had with Dr. Ambros concerning the construction and putting into operation of Italian factories for the production of synthetic rubber produced from alcohol and carbon led to the establishment between us of friendly relations lasting over a long period. Our joint work concerned the technical side of the big problems of European economy.

We were in a position to judge objectively, and came to appreciate how, in keeping with the perfectly fair and generous manner in which the I.G. Farben associated themselves with us, not only his vast scientific knowledge, but also his extreme friendliness - I could say humaneness - assisted our joint effort to extend the industrial activity of the Continent to the international plane.

We were also able to judge of the results of this work in the Ludwigshafen plants of which he was in charge.

It is therefore my belief and hope that the Nuremberg judgment will be for him an entirely favorable one, and that he will soon be able to return and play his part as a good European in the work of general reconstruction which all men worthy of the name so heartily desire."

Milan, 2.9.1947.

(signed) Count Dr. Franco Grottanelli

Milan, 2 September 1947.

I, the undersigned, Dr. Teodoro Valagussa, Notary at Milan, hereby certify the authenticity of the signature of Count Dr. Franco Grottanelli, son of Ruggero, born in Florence, domiciled in Milan, formerly Director General, and at present Vice Chairman of the Societa per Azioni Industria Gomma Sintetica, with a capital of Lire 500,000,000 fully paid, which signature was made in my presence.

(signed: Dr. Teodoro Valagussa

Stamp of Notary

Stamp

(signed) Signature  
(illegible)

3 Revenue Stamps  
with imprinted stamp

I hereby certify that the above  
is a true and complete copy.

Nuremberg, 29 December, 1947.

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I, the undersigned, in my capacity as Director General of the Società Anonima Italiana Gomma Sintetica from 1939 to 1945, hereby testify as follows:

My statement is made in connection with the trial by the Military Tribunal now sitting in Nuremberg, Germany, against the officials of the firm I.G. Farbenindustrie, and I declare it to be a true and correct statement in the same way as I would declare it if I were called upon to do so in Nuremberg under oath with all the consequences prescribed by law.

In 1938 the first contacts were established between the I.G. Farben and the SAIGS (Società per Azioni Industria Gomma Sintetica) with a view to collaborating for the production of Buna S in Italy in two plants, one at Ferrara, where Butadiene produced from alcohol was to be used, and the other at Terni, which was to use Butadiene produced from calcium carbide.

In 1939 agreements were concluded, and a team of Italian technicians was sent to Mannheim, where with a group of German personnel, a complete technical office was set up for the special purpose of carrying out the detailed project of the Terni plant.

At first it was planned that the Ferrara plant was to produce 3000 tons per year, then 6000 (it did produce 9000 tons per year). In the same way Terni was equipped to produce 12,000 tons per year, and afterwards, during construction, it was enlarged to produce 18-20,000 tons per year.

The enormous amount of work on research and development which this involved was constantly supervised by Dr. Otto Ambros, who in spite of his heavy technical tasks and the large number of works which he controlled and directed, took a special interest also in the Italian plants and followed their development in all its details. On the occasion of my visits to Germany during those years I had long talks with Dr. Ambros, and he too came to Italy many times to visit the plants under construction. Notwithstanding the crushing load of his other work, he himself discussed, modified and perfected all the plans. The same applied to the processing methods as well as to the physical conditions under which the skilled men were to work, a point in which he was specially interested. He himself supervised the technical arrangements in order to ensure that the workers

would have the best working conditions.

In this connection I would point out that the welfare services of our Company followed the lines adopted by the I.G. in their latest factories, and were models of their kind; for instance, Dr. Ambros gave us plans for dwelling houses for the head technicians, a large number of which were built in our own establishments and proved to be a great success.

In our relations with Dr. Ambros over a long period we had ample occasion to assess the high qualities which he displayed in his discussions with us on synthetic rubber and on general technical problems connected with the chemical industry, also when he interested himself, as did also his fellow directors, in the working conditions, catering and accommodation of the many voluntary workers who were sent from Italy to work under the I.G. Farben at Ludwigshafen, all of whom returned to their country in splendid physical condition when the term of employment ended.

We consider him to be a complete man, highly cultured, with warm feelings towards humanity, a technical expert of a stature worthy of the great problems which he solved, and it is my hope that he will soon be able to return to the tasks which await him, and play his part in the reconstruction of Germany and of Europe.

It is in this certainty that I voice these words, which are corroborated by the facts as I know them to be.

del Belagajo - Torniola. Grosseto  
Count Dr. Franco Grottanelli



5 January 1948

I hereby certify the above signature as that of H.V. Conte Dr.  
Franco Grottanelli son of Ruggaro, who is personally known to me.

Grosseto, this fourth day of January, 1948.

signed: Dr. Achille Ordini - Notary.

I hereby certify that the above is the signature of  
Dr. Achille Ordini,  
Notary at Grosseto.  
Court of Grosseto II. 4 January 1948  
Deputy Clerk to the Court.

I hereby certify that the above is a true and complete copy.

Nuremberg, 25 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Hans Keller, born 6 September 1877, of 96 Bergstr., Heidelberg, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement, herewith depose on oath that my statement is true. It was made to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal at Nuernberg, Germany.

I became a chemist at the Badische Anilin- & Soda-Fabrik in Ludwigshafen/Rhine in 1903. Later I took part in the construction and operation of the nitrogen plant at Oppau. In 1920, at a time of violent socialist agitation, I was asked by Geheimrat Bosch to take charge of social problems in the Ludwigshafen and Oppau plants. He told me at the time that he wished to entrust that task to one of his oldest colleagues who would be in a position, because of the practical experience he had gained in the plant, to mediate between employer and employee and to negotiate successfully with political organizations, trade unions etc.

Thus I became the head of the social welfare department of the Badische Anilin- & Soda-Fabrik, which later became the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Ludwigshafen/Rhine. I received the title of director. My chief was the factory manager,

subsequently called Betriebsführer, of the Badische Anilin- & Soda-Fabrik, or I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Ludwigshafen/Rhine.

I think I can say that I succeeded in accomplishing my task, and I am in a position to state that the social welfare arrangements of the Badische Anilin- & Soda-Fabrik, which subsequently became the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Ludwigshafen plant, were considered exemplary by the whole of the German industry.

The advent of National Socialism in 1933 brought to the Ludwigshafen plant nothing but parades and flagwaving, the paraphernalia of National Socialism. It was impossible to improve upon the social services of the plant as far as the factories themselves, or billets and settlements, accident insurance and old age pension schemes, or medical treatment etc. were concerned.

I have always openly professed that point of view, and eventually incurred the displeasure of the National Socialist party by doing so.

I did not join the party nor one of its affiliated organizations, which was of course considered intolerable by the NSDAP in the head of the social welfare department of such a large works combine.

By 1938 the then Gauleiter Buerckel had succeeded in poisoning the atmosphere to such an extent, that I was forced to take the consequences by terminating my activity at Ludwigshafen.

I resigned with effect from 31 December 1938, left the Gau "Sarpfels" and retired to Heidelberg.

In 1928 my only daughter Liselotte was married to Dr. Otto Ambros. The attitude of my family, including my son-in-law, to National Socialism was anything but favorable.

Heidelberg, 17 January 1948

signed Dr. Hans Koller

I herewith witness and certify that Dr. Hans Koller, of 96 Bergstr., Heidelberg, appended his signature to the above document before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, of 4 Bunsenstr. Ludwigshafen/Rhine.

Heidelberg, 17 January 1948.

signed Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

This is to certify that the above is a complete and accurate copy of the original document.

Nuernberg, 21 January 1948.

signed Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel



Archiepiscopal Borough  
Diocesan Office  
of the Mannheim Ecclesiastical District

Mannheim, 17 January 1948  
D 7.5

STATEMENT

I, Joseph Bauer, prelate and honorary prebendary, of D 7.5, Mannheim, am making this statement to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

I have known Otto Ambros, of 12 Kochlerstr., Ludwigshafen/Rhine, very well for many years. He comes from a good Catholic family. His father was a school friend of the Archbishop of Freiburg, His excellency Dr. Conrad Groeber. His excellency will remember the father of Otto Ambros as a faithful son of the church.

I myself know Otto Ambros to be a man of religious convictions. I married him and baptised his two children.

The religious convictions of Otto Ambros alone were sufficient to prevent him from becoming an ardent National Socialist or to join the NSDAP of his own accord. I consider him to be absolutely incapable of doing harm to his fellow men.

Thus I am in a position to plead his case with a clear conscience and to ask that he be acquitted.

Mannheim, 17 January 1948.

(Stamp: Parochia Cath. ad SS  
Ignat.Lo & Franc.Xc.Mannheim)

signed: Joseph Bauer  
Prelate and honorary prebendary

This is to certify that the above is a complete and accurate copy of the original document.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 19 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, the undersigned, Dr. Hugo STORCH, of 48 Hauptstr., Waldhilsbach, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement, herewith depose on oath, that my statement is true. It was made to be submitted to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg/Germany as evidence in case VI.

1. From 1935 until 1939 I was Ortsgruppenleiter of the Ortsgruppe Ludwigshafen-Ramshof of the NSDAP and from 1939 to the end of the war I served in the Army. The district for which the Ortsgruppe Ludwigshafen-Ramshof was responsible included inter alia the workers' settlements of the Ludwigshafen plant of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft.
- 2) I have known Dr. Otto Ambros for many years. Having been the competent Ortsgruppenleiter I know all the facts relating to his admission to the Party and am in a position to furnish precise information thereon.
- 3) I know that Dr. Ambros repeatedly refused to make an application for admission to the NSDAP, when he was asked to do so. I cannot remember exactly what were the reasons given by Dr. Ambros for his refusal at the time; but I believe that the real reason is to be found in his Christian convictions, Dr. Ambros having always been known to be a good Catholic.

4) The Gauleiter of the NSDAP responsible for Ludwigshafen, Buerckel, and the NSDAP Kreisleiter responsible for Ludwigshafen, Kneemann, did their utmost in the years after Hitler's seizure of power, to persuade men occupying important positions in industry to join the party, in the hope of thus increasing party influence on industry. When Dr. Labros became a member of the Vorstand of I.G. on 1 January 1938, but failed to join the party voluntarily even then. I received one fine day during the latter half of 1938 - I cannot remember the exact date - in my capacity as Ortsgruppenleiter responsible an order from the Gauleitung via the Kreisleitung to hand to Dr. Labros an official notification to the effect that he had been admitted to the party. I am therefore in a position to state that there can be no doubt at all that Dr. Labros did not join the NSDAP voluntarily or from conviction.

Waldhilsbach, 2 January 1948

signed Dr. H. Storch

I herewith witness and certify that Dr. Hugo Storch appended his signature to the above document before me Dr. Wolfgang Haintzoler, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Brunckstr. 13.

Waldhilsbach, 2 January 1948

This is to certify that the above is a true and accurate copy of the original document.

Nuernberg, 20 January 1948.

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Heinz von LEIBITZ-PEDWICKI of 6 Hoechststr., Schkopau, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement, herewith depose on oath that my statement is true. It was made to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI in the Palace of Justice, Luernberg, Germany.

I am at the moment assistant factory manager and production manager of the chemical factory Buna at Schkopau.

I have not been a member of the NSDAP or of one of its affiliates organizations. I have been an employee of the Schkopau plant since 6 January 1939.

In my capacity as assistant factory manager and production manager I am in a position to draw a fairly accurate picture in retrospect of the attitude and the activity of Dr. Otto Ambros with reference to the Schkopau plant.

On account of my present position any complaints made about Dr. Otto Ambros during the two years following the collapse of Germany in connection with his earlier activity in Schkopau would have come to my notice.

From 1937 to summer 1939 or thereabouts Dr. Otto Ambros was Betriebs-fuehrer at Schkopau. In that capacity he was responsible for the whole plant in accordance with the laws of the Third Reich.



He was succeeded in the summer of 1939 or thereabouts by Dr. Wulff. In accordance with the laws of the Third Reich the latter then became responsible for the whole of the Schkopau plant.

After the Summer of 1939 Dr. Ambros represented partly in his capacity as member of the Vorstand of I.G. and partly as assistant business manager of the Buna Werke G.m.b.H. the interests of the proprietors of the Schkopau plant, which was owned in accordance with the industrial organization of the I.G. partly by the I.G. direct, and was in part via the Buna Werke G.m.b.H. indirectly a component of the I.G. concern, as against the Betriebsfuehrer of Schkopau.

In view of the fact that Dr. Ambros was a chemist whose interests in the field of chemical developments were wide and varied, the chemico-technical development of Schkopau claimed most of his time as far as I could make out.

When he became a member of the Vorstand and the business manager of the Buna-Werke G.m.b.H. Dr. Ambros' work was decisively influenced by the demands of chemistry and technology. It was one of his tasks to keep pace with technical developments as far as the Schkopau plant as a whole was concerned. Thus it was his duty in his capacity as assistant business manager

of the Buna-Werke G.m.b.H. or as member of the Vorstand of the I.G. to make applications for the funds required to expand new plants at Schkopau, and to justify these applications from the points of view of chemistry and technology.

This work, which Dr. Ambros carried out when he was no longer Betriebsfuhrer, precluded him, by its very nature, from direct interference with internal plant affairs, the Betriebsfuhrer also being responsible for the latter.

Nor has anything been brought to my notice which happened during that time in connection with problems relating to employees or workers for which Dr. Ambros could possibly be blamed.

Dr. Otto Ambros has never been politically active in the National Socialist sense. On the contrary I can say that it was widely known far beyond the confines of the Schkopau plant that all his actions were carried out in accordance with humanitarian and moral principles.

Schkopau, 9 January 1948

signed: Dr. Heinz v. Leibitz-Piwnicki

I herewith certify and witness that the above signature was appended to the above document by Dr. Heinz von Leibitz-Piwnicki, of 6 Hoechststr., Schkopau, before me, Fritz Neumann, assistant defense counsel, the Military Tribunal VI, Nuernberg.

Schkopau, 9 January 1948

signed: Fritz Neumann

This is to certify that the above is a true and accurate copy of the original document.

Nuernberg, 21 January 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Robert Hasenclever, of Langerwehe, Kreis Dueren, Kreis Herberich, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement, herewith depose on oath, that my statement is true. It was made to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal, Palace of Justice, Nurnberg, Germany.

I entered the services of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Ludwigshafen in 1926 at about the same time as Dr. Otto Ambros, who has been a friend of mine ever since. From 1931 to 1936 I was employed as a chemist by the firm Chemnyco INC., New York. On account of administrative changes I was recalled to Germany in 1936. Having done some administrative work at Frankfurt under Dr. ter Meer, and having been trained as Betriebsfuehrer at Ludwigshafen, I took over, in the Autumn of 1938, the management of the I.G. plant Zweckel in the Ruhr area, which Dr. Ambros had founded some years previously.

I should like to point out that I did not belong either to the NSDAP or to one of its affiliated organizations. The fact that my predecessor as Betriebsfuehrer at Zweckel was a party member, whose method of managing the plant did not satisfy Dr. Ambros, whereas he knew of my negative attitude to the Party, shows clearly that Dr. Ambros did not care whether his assistants were party members or not. I could therefore always count on his assistance in the inevitable tussles with party representatives. Dr. Ambros never allowed political considerations to influence him in the choice of factory managers; what mattered to him were technical knowledge and the ability to solve satisfactorily problems of social welfare.

The most important product of the Zweckel plant was ethylene oxide. In spite of the fact that during the war far larger plants for the production of ethylene oxide were erected, Dr. Ambros persisted in favoring the Zweckel plant and the neighbouring Holten. In his opinion there was no future

in war-time foundations (Kontan-plants); he favored free competition in industry. Zweckel and Holten were the cheapest and the most economical factories for the production of ethylene oxide, because they used as raw material coke furnace ethylene which was cheap.

Not only was Dr. Ambros on friendly terms with me, but he maintained close personal contact with my assistants and the foremen of the Zweckel plant in spite of the fact that he was an extremely busy man. Immediately after the foundation of the plant he succeeded in the face of opposition on the part of the authorities in having good billets put up for the employees of the plant. It was due to such measures that Zweckel succeeded in maintaining an adequate staff in spite of general manpower shortage in the Ruhr area.

Langerwehe, 26 September 1947.

Dr. Robert Hasenclever.

UR No. 1067, 1947.

(Solicitor's  
stamp)

This is to certify that the above signature is that of Dr. Robert Hasenclever, farmer of Langerwehe, Kreis Dueren, Haus Werberich.

Aachen, 26 September 1947

Notary:  
Dr. Grevon.

This is to certify that the above is a true and accurate copy of the original document.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 11 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Max WITTMER, residing in Altoetting, Carl Boschstr. 14, have been warned that if I make a false declaration on oath I shall render myself liable to punishment. I declare on oath that my statements are in accordance with the truth and are made in order to be produced as evidence before the Military Court in Nuremberg, Germany.

In 1939, I was appointed by Dr. Ambros as Betriebsführer of the new Gendorf Works, which afterwards became the Anorgana G.m.b.H., and were then in course of construction. I remember that this appointment was in special recognition of my basic work in the field of Ethylene-oxide. Besides this, Dr. Ambros wanted to bring to an end my honorary work in the Reich Office for Economic Expansion, in order to give this into the hands of a non-I.G. employee.

I was not a Party Member, and belonged neither to the SA, the SS nor any other such organisation.

This circumstance and my attitude towards party questions soon produced a certain tension with the local party agencies. I felt myself fully covered however on account of my previous work, in which I could always rely on the support of Dr. Ambros.

During the first weeks of 1945, when full power was given to the Party, the situation became more and more acute, until on Sunday, 11 Feb. 1945, under an Order of the Gauleiter I was dismissed from my office as Betriebsführer and turned out of my works.

I telephoned immediately to Dr. Ambros in Ludwigshafen/Rh., who by telephone protested to the Kreisleiter and threatened to enter a complaint. As this opposition naturally led to a breach, Dr. Ambros went at once to Munich and asked to see the then Gauleiter Gieseler and the chief of the DPF (German Labor Front), in order to lay his complaint.

This swift counter-action on the part of Dr. Ambros led to the cancellation of the Gauleiter's order and my restoration as Betriebsführer. Dr. Ambros demanded a public vindication of my personal honour. To this end, he called the personnel together in the hall of the Apprentices' Workshops and announced in the presence of the Kreisleiter that I was reinstated. It was no doubt due to the comradely spirit of my

personnel that, in spite of the awkwardness of the situation, they broke into rousing applause.

This action against the Kreisleiter and the Gau Chief of the DAF led to a diminution of the authority of the two agencies in the whole of the District.

During the following weeks and up to the final collapse, the atmosphere was particularly heavy. It was possible, however, to protect the works from further interference and so to keep them in full production capacity.

I consider myself, in giving him this factual statement, under an obligation, to express my thanks to Dr. Ambros for his at that time very daring action.

The certified copy concerning these events is contained herewith.

(Signed) Dr. M. Wittwer

Altoetting, 17 September 1947

Document Book No. 1068. I certify the genuineness of the above signature of Dr. Max Wittwer, of Altoetting, Carl Roschstrasse 14.

Altoetting, 17 September 1947

(Signed) Scheidler  
Notary

(Notarial  
Stamp)

The correctness and completeness of the above copy are hereby certified.

Ludwigshafen a. Rh., 18 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Albert P/IM, residing in Ludwigshafen-Rhein, Hindenburgstr. 45, have been warned that, if I make a false statement under oath, I shall render myself liable to punishment. I hereby declare on oath that my statements are in accordance with the truth and were made in order to be produced as evidence before the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

On the 6 June, 1941, I went to Dyhernfurth in my capacity as a chemist in connection with the preliminaries for putting into operation the Dyhernfurth Works of the Inorgane G.m.b.H. With the putting into operation of the works, which was carried out gradually from the autumn of 1941, I assumed the management of the Inorgane Works, Dyhernfurth. As Dr. Ambros, the business manager of the Inorgane G.m.b.H., was only in Dyhernfurth three or four times a year for one day at a time, he appointed me in his stead as "Fuehrer of the Works", in the sense of the law for the Regulation of National Labour. I kept this post until the evacuation of the works on 24 January 1945.

to/  
I can testify on oath/the following :

1. No prisoner of war or foreign worker was ever employed as plant worker in the manufacturing plants for the finished Tabun product or in the manufacture of the preliminary, auxiliary and by-products which were under my management. The French prisoners of war assigned during the construction period for building work and levelling of woodland were withdrawn from Dyhernfurth at the express request of Dr. Ambros, before the first operational trials were started for the production of the intermediate products which were to be first produced.
2. No concentration camp prisoner was ever employed as plant worker for the current operational work in the factory plants for the finished Tabun product or in the manufacture of the preliminary, auxiliary and by-products.
3. The Inorgane G.m.b.H. delivered the entire production of Tabun to the filling stations of the OKH (High Command of the Army) or the RLM (Reich Air Ministry), immediately adjoining the works.
4. No kind of chemical development-research in the field of poison gas was carried on in the Dyhernfurth Inorgane Works. The laboratory and technical experiments carried out were solely for the purpose of control and improvement of the manufacture. No kind of experiments either were carried out for the testing of chemical warfare agents on human beings or animals.

I also know nothing whatsoever of the carrying out of experiments on human beings in other places.

Ludwigshafen/Rhein, 30 July 1947.

(Signed) Dr. Albert Palm

The above signature of Dr. Albert PALM, Ludwigshafen/Rh., Hindenburgstr. 45, was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler, Ludwigshafen, Rh., Brunckstr. 13, and is hereby certified and attested by me.

Ludwigshafen, Rhein, 30 July 1947

(Signed) Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler  
Attorney

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is hereby certified  
Ludwigshafen/Rh., 29 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel.



A f f i d - v i t .

I, Dr. Albrecht WEISS, resident in Heidelberg, Moltkestrasse 21, have been first warned that I make myself liable to punishment if I render a false statement under oath. I declare on oath that my declaration is in accordance with the truth and was made in order to be produced as evidence before the Military Court in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

At Ludwigshafen, I was manager of the personnel department; as advisor of the Central I.G. Social Bureau, I was occupied with old-age care, housing and a number of other questions embracing the whole of the I.G. In this capacity, I also acquired a certain insight into the social conditions of the new works, such as, for example, the Buna works and the new plant of the Amorgana G.m.b.H. In all of these new establishments, the social questions were managed along the same lines as in the parent works of the I.G.; just as in the I.G. itself, the individual works had a far-reaching independence within the limits of these directives for the framing of the social conditions; in this way, more and better work could be done in these new works in the social field than in the old ones, as the new plants were erected on the most modern principles and received preferential treatment with regard to financing and allocation of material.

As it was at that time forbidden to <sup>establish/</sup> new Works' Sick Fund Insurance, the Ludwigshafen Works' Sick Fund Insurance, of which I was the manager, was extended to the personnel of the new works, until finally we were able to establish their own Works' Sick Fund Insurance for Schkopau and Pöhlitz. On the other hand, the personnel of the Amorgana Works, as well as those for Heydebreck and Auschwitz, were up to the end insured with the Ludwigshafen Works' Sick Fund Insurance. The position of sickness in these new works was nearly always and sometimes considerably lower than at the Ludwigshafen works. This was due to various reasons: the personnel of the building works was on the average younger than that of the parent works. They lived exclusively in hutment camps and were therefore easily controllable; also these works stood up to the end were spared from air attacks.

Dr. Ambros, the builder of these works, was often in consultation with me regarding the social scheme.

Even when it only concerned questions of principle or questions in my special field (Old Age Care, Housing system, Works' Sick Insurance), I could observe that Dr. Ambros placed the greatest value on having the social tradition of the works of the I.G. incorporated in these new plants.

Dr. Ambros was of course not <sup>even</sup> the Betriebsfuehrer, let alone the Social Advisor, of these works. Nevertheless, during the latter war years, he interested himself in the social scheme of his works, often took part in the Betriebsfuehrer conferences, especially as the Betriebsfuehrers of the building works were themselves not members of this conference, which, for technical reasons, had to be kept comparatively small.

I do not remember that on these occasions Dr. Ambros took <sup>part</sup> in the debates, especially as in these meetings, the discussion followed comparatively closely on the heels of the technical lectures given by Dr. Schneider, Dr. Bertram or myself. Dr. Ambros, whose burden of work I was to some extent able to judge, since he had his head office in Ludwigshafen, could not possibly have added to his building tasks in all parts of the Reich that of a Betriebsfuehrer in one or even in several of the works, for which local residence was a condition. His whole natural disposition would have been against such an activity, binding him to one place and involving many details.

Nuremberg, 19 September 1947

(Signed) Dr. Albrecht WEISS

(Signature)

The above signature of Dr. Albrecht Weiss, Heidelberg, Moltkestr. 21, affixed before . . . . ., is hereby certified and attested by me.

Nuremberg, 19 September 1947

(Signed) Dr. Dr. Gernot Gether

(Signature)

The correctness and completeness of the above copy are hereby certified :

Ludwigshafen a. Rh., 31 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

Lipshutz et al. 1971

Publications of Dr. Otto Ambros  
in the University of Munich and in the Biological Laboratories of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G., Oppau.

No.	Title	Author	Periodical	Vol.	Page	Year
1	Hydrocyanic acid - Activation and hindrance of Plant Protease	R. Willstaetter W. Grassmann O. Ambros	Mag. Physiol. Chem.	151	286	1926
2	Substratum & Activation optimum in some proteolytic Reactions	R. Willstaetter W. Grassmann O. Ambros	"	151	307	1926
3	On the ereptic components of some plant protease	R. Willstaetter W. Grassmann O. Ambros	"	152	160	1926
4	On the uniformity of some plant protease	R. Willstaetter W. Grassmann O. Ambros	"	152	164	1926
5	On the effects of Protease of plant Latices (Review)	Lecture by O. Ambros 90th Meeting of the Assn. of German Natural Scientists & Physicians Hamburg 16-22 Sept. 1928	Periodical of Applied Chemistry	41	1109	1928
6	On the effects of Protease of plant Latices	O. Ambros Anna Harteneck	Periodical of Physiological Chemistry Hoppe-Seyler	181	24	1929
7	On the Protease of higher plants	O. Ambros Anna Harteneck	"	184	93	1929

I, Dr: Otto v. SCHÖNEBECK, resident in Ludwigshafen/Rh., Oppen have been warned that, by making a false affidavit, I shall render myself liable to punishment. I declare on oath, that my statement is in accordance with the truth and was made in order to be produced as evidence before the Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice at Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that I have made the foregoing extract in accordance with the truth.

Ludwigshafen/Rhein, 20 January 1948.

(Signed) Dr. Otto v. SCHÖNEBECK

The above signature of Dr. Otto v. Schönebeck, Ludwigshafen/Rhein-Oppen, given before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, is hereby certified and attested by me.

(Signed) Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Ludwigshafen/Rhein, 20 January 1948.

The correctness and completeness of the foregoing copy is hereby certified.

Nuremberg, 26 January 1948.

(Signed) Karl Hoffmann.

Herrn F.R. MATTIS  
Hackerbusch.  
Tel. 326.

Lecture for the Paris World Exhibition

--- by Dr. O. MERS. ---

The beginnings of the chemical study of caoutchouc go back to WILLIAMS, who decomposed caoutchouc and isolated isoprene. The view held by him that isoprene was an essential constituent of caoutchouc gained support sometime later in the research of a Frenchman - Bouchardat.

Observing how isoprene changed into a resinous substance when exposed to the air, he correctly interpreted the process as a polymerization of the unsaturated hydrocarbon under the influence of the oxygen of the air.

This theory found confirmation about the beginning of the present century when EMMES succeeded in identifying the pentadienyl group present in the laevulinaldehyde obtained by his method of splitting ozonid. Since then, the results of x-ray analysis have further strengthened the conception of caoutchouc being an aggregate of thousands of long chains of unsaturated hydrocarbon, built up from the basic isoprene.

How this reactive hydrocarbon, isoprene, comes about in the plant cell as a productive metabolism is unexplained by physiology, as is also the purpose, for which the latex is formed.

A view currently held is, that the latex serves to protect the plant against injury. More intelligible seems to me the view advanced by D. SPENCE in an article published in 1908 according to which the caoutchouc hydrocarbon acts as a reserve substance in the plant



- 2 -

economy, very much like starch. It is conceivable, that a system of oxidizing enzymes splits up the latex into carbohydrates, to make them available <sup>to</sup> again the plant whenever <sup>it</sup> needs them.

In keeping with this trend of ideas is HARRIES' assumption that the building up of caoutchouc proceeds from pentoses by way of the isoprene in question.

However this may be, certain is that in the course of the caoutchouc synthesis in the plant isoprene <sup>occurs</sup> as an intermediate product.

Now, the question now is, does caoutchouc result from it?

Biochemical processes that take place in the plant at normal temperature and under the biological conditions of the cell are usually attributed by Chemists to the action of some enzyme. Polymerases, however, are unknown. Well-known on the other hand is the phenomenon that in the case of dienes and their polymers a slight impulse suffices to induce polymerizations, which, once started, run on to violent reaction, owing to their exothermic nature.

Under biological conditions however the synthesis of caoutchouc proceeds evenly and the impulse to the polymerization, as may safely be assumed, is given continuously by some enzyme.

What has been said I base on the hypothesis that in the cell of the caoutchouc plant <sup>there</sup> is present in the form of a milk a finely balanced system of the hydrocarbon to be polymerized. The plant has at its disposal most efficient emulsifying agents such for instance, as Saponins. As a consequence of the most minute dispersion a catalysis at the points of contact is ideally facilitated. The enzymatic catalysis sets in as the catalyst which occurs in every cell liberates the oxygen from the hydrogen peroxide that results from respiration. The oxygen, aided by other oxidases, oxidizes a small amount of the

- 3 -

hydrocarbon, and thus develops energy in the cell and, consequently impels the polymerization of the large part of isoprene.

In the watery emulsion the hydrocarbon is too much diluted to run away in the chain reaction of the polymerization. The cell cautiously goes on supplying all reaction components, constrained by the enzyme system: Catalase - oxidase, which ultimately, regulated the polymerization.

In support of this hypothesis I carried out a series of experiments in a laboratory in Sumatra. My guiding principle was to imitate the cell as far as possible, and to this end I first produced a stable neutral emulsion from isoprene, water, and emulsifying agent. In tightly closed flasks the milk was violently shaken at the average daily temperature of 28-30° C. To this was added a small dose of diluted hydrogen peroxide.

The caoutchouc was removed by admixing alcohol to the whole contents of the bottle and drying the coagulated mass to the point of consistency.

The adequacy of the method was demonstrated by the result of a double check test.

The next thing to be shown was the effect of the natural enzyme system as assumed to exist in the latex. To this end it was necessary to separate the latex from its caoutchouc content under conditions that would leave the enzyme solution unchanged.

I consequently applied a biochemical method of caoutchouc precipitation. Mixing the freshly tapped latex with a few drops of a papain solution, I thus gained a neutral serum free from caoutchouc.

In a check test the caoutchouc precipitation was effected by means of acetic acid and the serum neutralized.

The first series of experiments produced the following results:

- 4 -

I.)	Isoprene	Polym.
	water	5.76 g
	emulsifying agent	
II.)	hydrogen peroxide	5.95 g
III.)	the same with neutral latex serum from papain precipitation	14.9 g
IV.)	the same with neutral latex serum from acetic acid precipitation	7.4 g

These figures show, that the caoutchouc serum gained by biochemical methods has the strongest influence upon polymerization.

In order to test the specific effect of the enzymes a series of experiments were made with the same components but in shorter times, the results being as follows:

I.)	Isoprene	Polym.
	water	0.4
	emulsifying agent	
II.)	hydrogen peroxide	0.32
III.)	the same with latex serum from acetic acid precip. not neutralized	0.5
IV.)	" " but neutralized serum	8.-
V.)	" " with neutral papainserum	10.2
VI.)	" " with neutral " " and HCN	0.4
	Isoprene	
	water	
	Emulsifying agent	
	Papainserum, but no hydrogen-peroxide	0.0

After this quantitative test qualitative investigations were made to show the effect of the system of oxidation as follows.

The latex is exposed to the open air. A few hours later the colouring darkens as a result of the cooperation of oxidation ferments except where the latex is acid or poisoned with hydrocyanid.

Conclusions:

Hypothetically the natural polymerization of isoprene in the plant cell is initiated and accelerated by an oxydation started by a system of enzymes. Investigations made in a tropical laboratory demonstrate that the serum of the latex has an accelerating effect upon the polymerization of isoprene emulsified with water and hydrogen peroxide, and that this effect is nullified on the enzyme reaction being stopped by acid or hydrocyanid poisoning.

I deem it my duty in this connection to acknowledge my indebtedness to the Rubber Cultuur-Matschappij Amsterdam for the kind assistance rendered me especially through their Messrs: Pickensley and Arens.

I, Dr. Otto Ambros, at present at Nuremberg, Military Court, have been warned that I shall make myself liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is in accordance with the truth and was made in order to be submitted as evidence before the Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I hereby confirm that this document is a true copy of the lecture delivered by me in 1937 at the Paris International Exhibition on the formation of Rubber-Latex in Plants.

Nuremberg, 15 January 1948.

(Signed) Otto Ambros

The above signature of Dr. Otto Ambros, at present at Nuremberg, Military Court, before me, Attorney Karl Hoffmann, Defense Counsel, is hereby certified and attested by me.

(Signed) Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel.

Nuremberg, 15 January 1948

The correctness and completeness of the foregoing copy is hereby certified.

Nuremberg, 26 January 1948.

(Signed) Karl Hoffmann.

FRENCH REPUBLIC

Ministry of Commerce and of Industry

International Exhibition  
of Arts and Sciences

Paris 1937

DIPLOME D'HONNEUR

Awarded to Director Dr. Otto /mhrea  
Ludwigshafen a.Rhein, I.G. Farbenindustrie /ktionge-  
sellschaft Germany

Class I G  
The Commissioner General  
(Signed) (Signature  
illegible)

Germany  
25 November, 1937  
The Ministry of Commerce  
(Signed) (Signature  
illegible)

Group 1 bis  
The President of the  
Higher Jury  
(Signed) (Signature  
illegible)

Seal:  
International Bureau  
of the Exhibitions

The agreement of this copy with  
the original laid before me is  
hereby certified.  
Ludwigshafen/Rhein, 9 January 1948

(Signed) Dr. Wolfgang /lt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness  
of the foregoing copy is hereby  
certified.  
Munich, 26 January 1948

(Signed) Karl Hoffmann



AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Otto AMBROS, at present appearing before the Military Tribunal, Nuernberg, have been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I herewith declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to Military Tribunal VI, Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

"Le Caoutchouc Synthétique Buna", the document attached to this affidavit, a document of 21 pages, is the original of the lecture which I delivered on 26 May 1939 to the Société des Ingénieurs Civils de France and la Société de Chimie Industrielle in Paris.

Nuernberg, 15 January 1946.

Signed: Otto Ambros

The above signature of Dr. Otto Ambros, at present appearing before the Military Tribunal, Nuernberg, was appended in my presence and is herewith certified and attested by me.

Nuernberg, 15 January 1946

Signed: Karl Hoffmann

## The Synthetic Rubber

### "BUNA"

by Dr. Otto Ambrose, Ludwigshafen am Rhein.

Lecture delivered to the Société des Ingénieurs Civils de France  
and the Société de Chimie Industrielle in Paris on 26 May 1939.

Mr. President, Ladies and Gentlemen,

When you assumed the presidency of the Société des Ingénieurs Civils de France, M. BIER, you gave, with your customary broadness of vision a survey of the existing state of industrial chemistry in all countries. You indicated the broad lines which characterize the development of technical catalysis from Frederic KUHNMAN to Carl BASCH. You mentioned, among other things, the problems of mineral chemistry and, full of hope for the future, you spoke of the Chemistry of Acetylene and its numerous derivatives. It was BERTHELOT who recognized the importance of acetylene when he said:

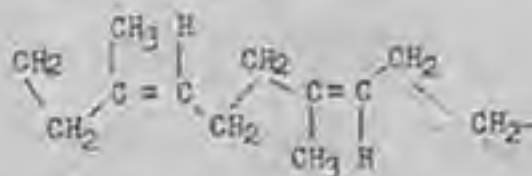
"It is the most simple and the most effective base of organic synthesis today. Acetylene is, in fact, not a single fixed substance, but produces, in its turn, by means of immediate transformations, a vast number of other compounds."

These words will serve today, sixty years later, as the introduction to my lecture.

I am very happy to be able, in this circle composed of the flower of French technical experts, to present to you the scientific and technical foundations on which rests the production of BUNA and, having done so, to describe the characteristics of this product.

It is a significant fact for organic chemistry that the research work of the last few years has been concerned mainly with natural substances. These problems were tackled voluntarily in the process of improving the methods of

chemistry, the aid of Physics being enlisted in order to throw light on the composition of these complex substances. In these scientific results, the expert finds the principles of composition which he will utilize to achieve practical results in industrial synthesis. Thus it was that the problem of synthetic rubber was tackled, the work being based, at first, on working hypotheses on the composition of natural rubber as yielded by the HEVEA tree. Chemical analysis of this product after the resins and proteins have been removed by a process of purification, gives the rough formula,  $C_5H_8(n)$ . On dry distillation, the molecules of rubber disintegrate, forming, among other products, ISOPRENE, a liquid the boiling point of which is not very high. We may consider this product as one of the basic constituents of natural rubber. Thanks to the chemical research work carried out by HARRIES, and thanks, above all, to X-ray analysis, it has been possible to ascertain the precise structure of the rubber molecule. HARRIES showed that isoprene molecules are linked to each other in the form of chains, and, as MEYER and MARK have proved, the chain conforms to the following pattern:



In other and more simple words, as far as our present knowledge goes, there are, in a molecule of rubber, thousands of molecules of isoprene, linked in the form of chains which gather together in clusters. Working on this theory of the composition of rubber, one can deduce all the physical characteristics of rubber, especially its malleability, solidity and durability. One of the outstanding characteristics of natural rubber is that it becomes malleable and elastic when cut through a rolling-mill. In this state, it can be moulded into any shape whatsoever. We suppose that the links between the chains stretch and that it is as a result of this lengthening that the rubber becomes plastic. By means of vulcanization, that is to say, by means of the treatment of rubber with sulphur, in fact, the pre-masticated rubber again loses a great number of its plastic qualities;

In this way, one can give the desired form to the article to be made of rubber. To assume that the stretched chains are joined in two or more places by sulphur links, so that, united into a complex, they can no longer slide over one another or detach themselves from one another to form separate chains.

These hypotheses on the structure of the rubber molecule have acted as guiding principles for much of the research work carried out by I.G. Farbenindustrie, work which was begun at Elberfeld in 1906 under the direction of Fritz HOFMANN and which led to the foundation, in 1934, of the first Buna factory.

In connection with the development of Buna, the scientist found himself faced with two major problems:

- 1) The production of a basic material suitable for synthesis.
- 2) The problem of inducing chain formation within the basic material, in order to render it suitable for use, and, if possible, superior to natural rubber.

To the best of our knowledge, only chemical substances which are capable of reaction and which, by virtue of their composition, present a linear growth in the form of chains, are suitable for synthesis. These prerequisites are fulfilled by the "DIEN" compounds, that is, the non-saturated, di-valent compounds. This is the principle underlying the composition of ISOPRENE, the basic constituent of natural rubber. The production of this substance is still very difficult. A similar compound, BUTADIENE, is therefore preferred for the industrial production of Buna. It is a hydro-carbide the boiling point of which is less than 5° and which, according to its chemical composition, consists of a system of four atoms of carbon with which are united 6 atoms of hydrogen. The whole is bound together by extremely weak forces, thanks to which the substance is highly reactive. The basic material for the synthesis of the substance is ACETYLENE which is composed of 2 atoms of carbon and 2 atoms of hydrogen. With a triple bond which holds together the structure of the 2 atoms of carbon, the chemist obtains the greatest reactive force. In speaking of acetylene, BERTHELOT says:

"From this stage onwards, it contains excess energy which is used at gradually in the formation of other compounds; such is one of the principal secrets of synthesis."

In order to synthesize the structure of the 4 atoms of Butadiene, we obtain butadiene by means of the aldolization of 2 molecules of acetaldehyde, which are the product of the catalytic hydration of the acetylene. This compound is, however, not reactive; it must be transformed into butadiene in several stages. By means of hydrogenation, one obtains butyleneglycol, which yields butadiene by means of the decomposition of two molecules of water.

So much for the rapid description of this synthesis. But in order to reach a solution which was satisfactory from the financial point of view, it was necessary to introduce the most modern methods of catalysis. Today, in order to manufacture very pure butadiene, a series of reactive compounds are passed through high pressure furnaces and catalysts to the last distillation tower. Only a few men are required for the direction of this operation; with the help of very sensitive instruments, they control the path of the reactions, regulate production and supervise safety measures.

Given the important role played by acetylene in the production of synthetic rubber, one has naturally endeavored to produce this basic material as economically as possible. In the SUMA factory at SCHNOOPAU, acetylene is produced from carbide. Lime and coke are melted together in 25,000 KW electric furnaces, and transformed into carbide.

In such important processes, it is advisable to use a continuous method of work. The liquid carbide runs out in an almost uninterrupted stream from an outlet in a revolving cooling tube specially constructed for the purpose. One of the well-known advances made in the carbide industry consists in collecting above the carbide furnaces, and drawing off the reaction gases given off in accordance with the following formula:



One of the main problems of a carbide factory, the sole purpose of which is the production of acetylene,



arises out of the technicalities involved in the handling of enormous quantities of lime. At Schkopau we have adopted the well-known method of dry gasification, according to which a reaction is obtained from the finely ground carbide, purely by the addition of as much water as is necessary to separate the acetylene completely. Thus we obtain slaked lime in dry powder-form, which can be used for either industrial or agricultural purposes. Having been calcined beforehand in a frit vat, the greater part is brought back to the carbide furnace in the form of return lime. In producing butadiene, it was not only necessary to find the most economical method, but also to produce the best quality. Thus it is only this linking of the molecules into chain formation, known to the chemist as "the polymerization of butadiene" which can be effected in such a way as to obtain at will the formation of the giant molecules at which we aim. Even the slightest traces of impurity hinder polymerization or deflect it from its course.

The Polymerization of butadiene takes place today according to a method similar to the biological process occurring in the cell of the rubber tree. Contrary to the usual chemical practice, heat, strong acids or caustic alkalis are not used. The molecule of synthetic rubber is developed by a carefully regulated system involving the use of butadiene, water, catalysts etc. To this process which produces an emulsion, we have given the name "Polymerization in Emulsion".

In industry, this process is carried out in vast rotary boilers, under pressure. In a few hours, the emulsion produces Buna Latex. In its solid form, this is identical with natural latex in appearance and content.

We believe the theory of the transformation of the emulsion into Buna latex to be as follows: polymerization probably takes place at the surface limit between the dispersed stage of butadiene and the aqueous dispersed stage. This process is exothermic, but requires an impetus. A number of molecules must be stimulated in order to provoke

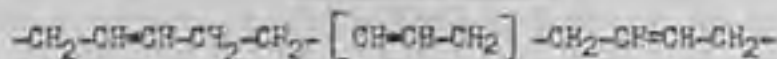
a reaction on other molecules. The primary reactive product thus obtained is likewise active; thus it reacts at the same time on a molecule of monomeric butadiene in such a way that polymerization continues to take place by way of a series of typical chain reactions.

The initial stimulus for these chain reactions can be given by heat. The activating energy is diminished by the presence of certain catalysts, such as oxygen, ozone, and the peroxides. The growth in chain form is interrupted again, for example, as a result of loss of the quantity of energy or of the transfer of this quantity of energy to another molecule which itself becomes a new energy cell. It is apparent that these series of reactions which occur simultaneously give rise to a variety of chains of varying lengths.

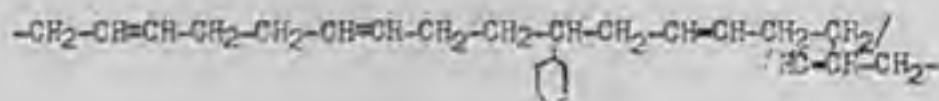
Although this method of polymerization in emulsion makes it possible to polymerize butadiene and to obtain a good yield in a short time, the practical result was still unsatisfactory. The technical value of these polymerized products was far from sufficient to make of them rivals of natural rubber. A considerable step forward was taken in the problem of the polymerization of butadiene in emulsion, however, when it was discovered that by introducing other polymerizable compounds into the chain of butadiene to be polymerized, new products, similar to rubber and of high industrial value, were obtained. This technique, known as "Interpolymerization" represented a decisive advance towards the goal at which we were aiming, that of producing new types of RUBBER, superior to natural rubber. The type and quantity of the component parts of substances introduced into the butadiene admit of numerous variations in the production of a certain type of RUBBER. Thus it is that we now possess types of rubber having entirely new characteristics, and have succeeded in realizing the possibility of developing a type of RUBBER superior to the natural product. It is not necessary to mention that in each case, our first task, in order to make the system effective and to establish certain rules for its operation, was to find suitable substances for the emulsion and new catalyst combinations.

The practical results so far obtained in the manufacture of BUNA on an industrial scale are contained in BUNA S, an interpolymarized compound of butadiene and styrolene, and Perbunan, an interpolymarized compound of butadiene and nitrile of acrylic acid, which are both important from the industrial point of view. The formulas for these two types are as follows:

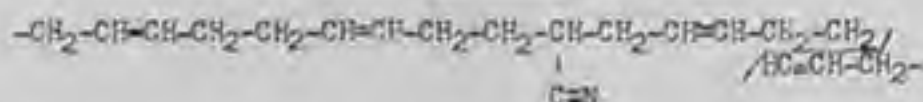
## Estadione Polymari:



Barro S



## Portbarnon t



The two compounds, styrolene and nitrile of acrylic acid are those developed and are known through the Chemistry of plastics. They are capable of polymerization and can be easily adapted to the polymerization of butadiene.

Styrolene is the product of benzene and ethylene and results from the catalytic dehydrogenation of the ethyl-benzene obtained. As for nitrile of acrylic acid, it is produced from ethylene oxide and hydrocyanic acid by the decomposition of water in the intermediate product, ethylene hydrocyanic acid.

Buna Latex, whether it be the product of interpolymerization of butadiene with styrolene or with nitrile of acrylic acid, is coagulated by acetic acid and becomes solid Buna. Today, all types of Buna are on the market, in the form of fine rolled sheets.

The manufacture of the different types of BUNA within the rubber industry presented various difficulties in its initial stages. It is a known fact that natural rubber has to be rolled in preparation for vulcanization, thus becoming plastic and adhesive, in order that the active charges and the substances upon which the vulcanization process will act, may be thoroughly mixed.

Buna does not give this effect of aestivation. . Thanks to a new process called degradation, which consists of treating the Buna sheets with air and heat, the same degree of plasticity is achieved. In addition it is possible once more to use the usual technique of vulcanising natural rubber, so that finally, in the present-day rubber industry, both Buna and the natural product may be treated in the same way and by the same methods.

In the last part of my lecture I would like to make a résumé of the main qualities of the different kinds of Buna and their technical uses.

In the first table we will compare for their experimental value different qualities of vulcanized flexible rubber products produced from natural rubber and Buna.

( Table 2 : Constants of various kinds of rubber ).

You will see that by reason of these properties, Buna S as well as Perbunan have the qualities of the vulcanized products of natural rubber. It is also possible to note the progress made since the wartime synthetic "methyl" rubber.

One of the outstanding properties of Buna is its age-resisting quality. The table below shows the phases in an artificial aging process.

( Table 3 : Artificial deterioration through age. )

In vulcanized rubber only a small number of the chains are saturated in a sulphur fixation process. If the rubber is stored in a warm place, and the mixture has not been effected properly, subsequent vulcanization may take place, and with it a diminution in the physical values of the vulcanized product. In addition, the oxygen in the air and the light act on the un-saturated molecule of the rubber, thus forming oxidized products, a phenomenon which also brings about a diminution in physical

properties. All these reactions can be expressed in the single phrase: deterioration through age. A process of age acceleration has been set up technically by means of clearly determined control methods. The latter consist in subjecting the substance to a pressure of 21 atmospheres of oxygen at a high temperature, or in letting a current of warm air come into contact for a certain time with the substance being tested. The curves you see on the diagram show the effect of aging by means of oxygen on natural rubber and on Buna vulcanized products. Buna vulcanized products age much more slowly than the vulcanized products of natural rubber. The results of the methods of abridged control have been entirely confirmed in practice.

(Tables 4 and 5 :  
-----  
Resistance to heat.)

There is a close connection between the resistance of vulcanized rubber products to age, and their resistance to heat. Rubber may be deteriorated under the effect of heat applied artificially, or heat can be produced in the rubber itself when the latter becomes hot because of disintegration processes which are constantly recurring. Nowadays technical practice demands more and more a substance that is more resistant to heat than the pliable rubber that comes from natural rubber, whether it is made into tires, or rubber industrial articles (conveyors, belts, joints, shock absorbers etc.) The various kinds of Buna, Buna S and Perbunan have a greater resistance to heat than the corresponding vulcanized products of natural rubber.

(Table 6 : Percentage of  
-----  
Permanent Disintegration ).

This table shows a particular use to which can be put the high resistance to heat which is a characteristic of the vulcanized products



derived from Buna. It is a question here of resistance to pressure (permanent stability) under the influence of high temperatures, a quality required in industry for the joints and shock absorbers in apparatus and machines. It can be seen from this table how rubber, the natural product, rapidly deteriorates at high temperatures, becomes soft, and completely loses its stability.

( Table 7 :  
-----

Comparison between resistance of natural rubber and Buna S to tire abrasion).

By introducing active carbon black in the tread of a tire made of natural rubber, a very high resistance to abrasion is observed which is much greater than that of steel, and which in the modern tire means greater mileage. The growing speed of the tire and the resultant ever-increasing heat produced very rapidly weakens its resistance to abrasion, natural rubber having very little resistance with regard to heat. The vulcanized products made from Perbunan and Buna S have much more resistance to abrasion than the vulcanized products of natural rubber. The picture (reproduction) shows the phases in a trial run made with tires of natural rubber and Buna tires under identical conditions. The high resistance to wear and tear shown by vulcanized Buna products proves the increasing value of their use not only for tires, but also for numerous industrial purposes ( conveyor belts, technical tubing, flooring, soles and heels, etc.)

( Tables 8 and 9  
-----

Percentage dilation in relation to volume; diminution of resistance by dilation).

Pliable vulcanized rubber products made of natural rubber offer no resistance to dilation in the presence of organic liquids which are of importance from the industrial point of view. When in contact with fuels (gasoline), lubricants, animal and vegetable fats they absorb many times their own volume.

They swell very considerably, thus destroying the whole structure of the vulcanized product and at the same time its industrial qualities (resistance etc.) That is why it has proved impossible to make use of the very valuable qualities possessed by pliable rubber in many important industrial spheres (as conduits, pipes, joints, shock absorbers etc.)

On the other hand, a special type of rubber called Perbunan is extremely resistant to dilation in the presence of fuels, lubricants, and animal and vegetable fat. As a result of this minimum dilation in the presence of these substances, the excellent mechanical qualities of Perbunan vulcanized products cannot be affected in any way. At the same time very many important industrial possibilities are opened up for this product in pliable form.

In addition to these qualities of vulcanized Buna products - less permeability with regard to gas and steam -, their greater resistance to the elements, and greater stability play an important part in certain industrial spheres. In electro-technics, Buna S vulcanized products have the same insulating qualities as the vulcanized natural product. However, in the long run, Buna S vulcanized products are superior to natural vulcanized products, by reason of their more active resistance to age, as in the process of aging the insulating properties of pliable rubber deteriorate. In addition, the vulcanized products of Perbunan must be considered from the point of view of electricity as semi-conductors.

Finally let us mention that the Buna product - hardened rubber - has more resistance to heat and deterioration in presence of numerous chemical products important from the industrial point of view, than hardened natural rubber. This property is particularly important when encasing chemical apparatus with hardened rubber.

What, from the practical point of view, is the present state of Buna manufacture in Germany?

Several months ago, industrial production started at Schkopau. The quality of the Buna is always able to be reproduced and confirms to a high degree the results I have just shown. The bulk of the Buna produced is used in the tire industry which uses this new substance alongside natural rubber in current production. A large number of firms have adapted Buna for the manufacture of various types of tires. The fact that all German factories today are in a position to produce Buna tires of a quality equal to natural rubber tires or even superior, is surely a result of the highest importance for us. Several firms are already supplying Buna tires whose durability is 10 - 30 % better than that of natural rubber tires. Whereas in the beginning we only used Buna for making small types of tires, we now have the same success in the use of truck tires.

It is perhaps a deciding factor for the future of Buna production that automobile technique as a result of a continued increase in speed averages demands constantly higher quality especially for tires. Buna will be able to keep pace with this evolution.

The manufacture of numerous industrial articles has opened up a vast and lucrative field of utilization.

The high degree of resistance of Buna S to heat and pressure has revealed new uses for elastic joints at temperatures varying between 80° and 100°. Joints made from Buna S have proved their usefulness for steam and hot water pipes, and for boilers. Buna S is also used for sealing the joints of mobile sections in hot water pumps.

In trains, brake tubes made of Buna have proved their stability in the face of cold and heat.

For the improvement of conveyor belts, the extraordinary resistance to heat and abrasion of Buna S has been a valuable help.

Cable technique has made use of Buna S for its purposes because of its insulating properties and its resistance to heat. Buna S is used in the construction of submarine cables because of its very slight absorptive power where water is concerned.

Perbunan is an indispensable complement of Buna S in the industrial sphere, where resistance to dilation in the presence of gasoline, oil, grease and numerous organic compounds is essential. In relation to aromatic and chlorinated hydrocarbons Perbunan reacts in the same way as natural rubber.

Constructors today use Perbunan as a first class construction element for machines and apparatus. It is only with this product and with the Neoprene of Dupont that it is possible to obtain an elastic support impermeable both to oil and gasoline. In this connection I could also mention new construction elements in metal covered with vulcanized Perbunan. Driving bolts made of Perbunan have given proof of resistance to swelling through oil, as well as of their very great value in mechanics. For the same reason it is easy to understand the various uses of Perbunan in the manufacture of pipes, cables, & printing presses which resist dilation through oil.

One of the most attractive tasks of practical technique is surely that of introducing the different kinds of Buna where they can be useful, thanks to their superior properties. That was the original idea which, from the economic point of view, guided our research work on synthetic rubber. Even if at the present moment the problem of making the German economy self-sufficient overrides everything, German technicians have always been imbued with the idea that while the Four Year Plan allows some protection for research into big problems, it does not for all that remove the obligation to work for economic ends.

Thanks to its numerous advantages, in the long run Buna will be bound to find a basis on which to compete with natural rubber. We know what possibilities are opened up by rubber cultivation in tropical countries and we know that by improving the rubber plant

GA-Document No. 124  
cont'd

production can still be increased. But on the other hand we hope that with the progress of science and technique we shall always manage to keep up with the progress achieved in the plantations and to place beside the natural article, this other new and most valuable product: Buna.

End of copy.

The above copy is herewith certified to be correct and complete.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 14 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel.



Affidavit.-  
-----

I, Dr. Otto Ambros, at present at the Military Court at Nuremberg, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I herewith state on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted in evidence before Military Tribunal No. VI in the Nuremberg Palace of Justice, Germany.

The document "Chemistry and Technology of the Synthetic Macromolecular Substances", 30 pages, appended to this affidavit, is the original of the lecture which I gave at the Freiburg University on 9 June 1943.

signed: Otto Ambros

Nuremberg, 15 January 1948.

I herewith witness the above signature of Dr. Otto Ambros, at present at the Military Court at Nuremberg, and certify that it was made before me, Karl Hoffmann, Defense Counsel.

signed: Karl Hoffmann

Nuremberg, 15 January 1948.

CHEMISTRY AND TECHNOLOGY  
OF THE SYNTHETIC MACROMOLECULAR SUBSTANCES

=====

Lecture by Dr. Ambros, given on 9 June 1943  
at the University at Freiburg.

### I n t r o d u c t i o n

It is really presumptuous to lecture on the chemistry of the complex molecular or macromolecular substances in this famous lecture room, in the room where you, dear Professor Staudinger, in a thoroughgoing way have established the basis of macromolecular chemistry, not by relying on the laws of classical chemistry but with the aid of experiments, creating the well-defined rules applying to this newest branch of chemistry.

When we industrialists want to show to our academic youth that everything taught by you here, Professor Staudinger, has a decisive influence on the eventful advances in industry and on the development of new synthetic materials, then we do it as the result of the deliberation that it is necessary to demonstrate again and again how the fight for pure science which takes place in the universities influences the development of whole industries. The apparently insignificant observations and seemingly simple experiments of the research scientist develop into the mightiest technological achievements which, on their part, must never be allowed to lose their close contact with pure science, and, - as is shown by to-day's lecture - shall never be permitted to do so.

By means of this lecture on the chemistry of macromolecular substances I should like to give you some insight into this combination of research and technology.

In consideration of the composition of my audience, I should first like to state a few fundamental facts on our subject:

Chemistry, the science of substances, divides these substances into two groups according to their make-up, their construction:

- 1) compounds having a simple molecular structure and low molecular weight and

- 2 -

2) complex molecular compounds, the macromolecular substances, in which, for example, more than 1000 atoms are joined into one molecule through their main valencies, resulting in molecular weights ranging from several thousand to several hundred thousand. This second group was formed from the structure elements which are found in the small molecules of the first group; by means of chemical bonding these are combined into multiple three-dimensional structures such as threads, spirals, bundles etc.

I shall enlarge on these points experimentally. Here, for example, we have naphthalene, a compound containing carbon and hydrogen in the following arrangement:

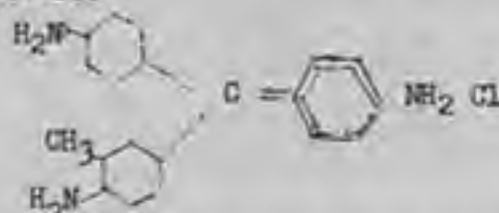


10 C-atoms, to which are joined  
8 H-atoms.

A well-defined constitution, the existence of which the chemist can prove by definite analytic methods.

This glass contains many similar naphthalene molecules, the structures of which are identical, and this collection of identical molecules will always melt at 79°C and boil at 216°C.

Organic compounds of a simple molecular composition can, however, have a more complicated construction, as, for example, that of the following dyestuff:



This constitution was determined analytically by the researchers E. and C. Fischer. This dye can be reproduced synthetically.

We finally have a dyestuff with a complicated structure, heliogen-blue, a phthalocyanin-

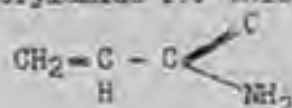


Its construction resembles that of haemin and chlorophyll, where haemin contains iron and chlorophyll magnesium in a complex form of composition.

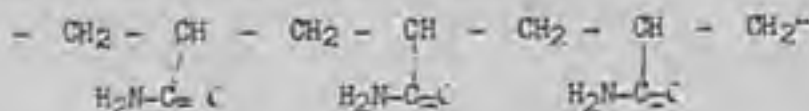
These substances, and with them the other 25 - 3000 organic compounds which have been described, are constructed on similar principles, and the arrangement of the individual parts is fixed and can be reproduced.

All these compounds, whether they are built up of 18 atoms with a molecular weight of 128, such as naphthalene, or of 40 atoms with a molecular weight of 333, such as fuchsin, or even of 59 atoms with a molecular weight of 576, such as heliofen-blue, are definite compounds with accurately definable properties, such as, for example, melting point, boiling point, molecular weight etc.

In order clearly to demonstrate to you the difference between substances of simple and of complex molecular composition I shall demonstrate the transformation of a well-defined simple substance with a definite melting point (85°C) into a complex compound. I have chosen acrylamide for this purpose:



Under the influence of heat and through a trace of catalyst we allow this molecule to grow into a substance consisting of complex molecules, i.e. polyacrylamide:



A viscous mass results which no longer has a well-defined melting point,



having, instead, a broad region of softening, perhaps 30-40°C.

We now have a collection of many large individual molecules of varying shapes and lengths.

Complex molecular substances are divided according to the following structural principles.

- 1) linear - rods, threads, spirals -
- 2) ramified - up to spherocollid - fir tree -
- 3) reticulated - network -

8  
May I now tell of this system, of its aims and successes and of the technical application resulting from this.

According to their method of construction we differentiate between two types of compounds of a complex molecular construction:

A. Polycondensates

B. Polymerisates.

With the polycondensates we join chemical compounds by removing simple molecules such as water, hydrochloric acid, ammonia, alcohols etc.

In the case of the polymerisates, however, we construct complex molecular substances, retaining the whole formula of the monomeric basic substance.

While growth is caused in condensation due to a straightforward chemical reaction, polymerisation employs an energy impulse in order to build giant molecules from monomeric substances. I shall purposely limit myself to the synthetic substances having a complex molecular structure.

I.

The Polycondensates.

-----

A. I shall begin with the simplest polycondensates  
the

Poly-carbonic acid esters.

As early as 1856 Baerlon produced a resin upon esterifying succinic acid and glycerine. Modern methods mainly employ two types:

- |                             |   |                         |
|-----------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| a) Diols + dicarbonic acids | → | non-solidifiable resins |
| b) Triols + " "             | → | solidifiable resins.    |

One builds up long chains in the polyesters which, in a) lie next to each other like a loose bundle. This description permits an explanation as to why such polycondensates are not solidifiable, i.e., why they always become soft when heated. In case b), however, it is possible that secondary reactions take place between the individual chains which lie side by side in the form of bundles, thus creating bridges which result in reticulation.

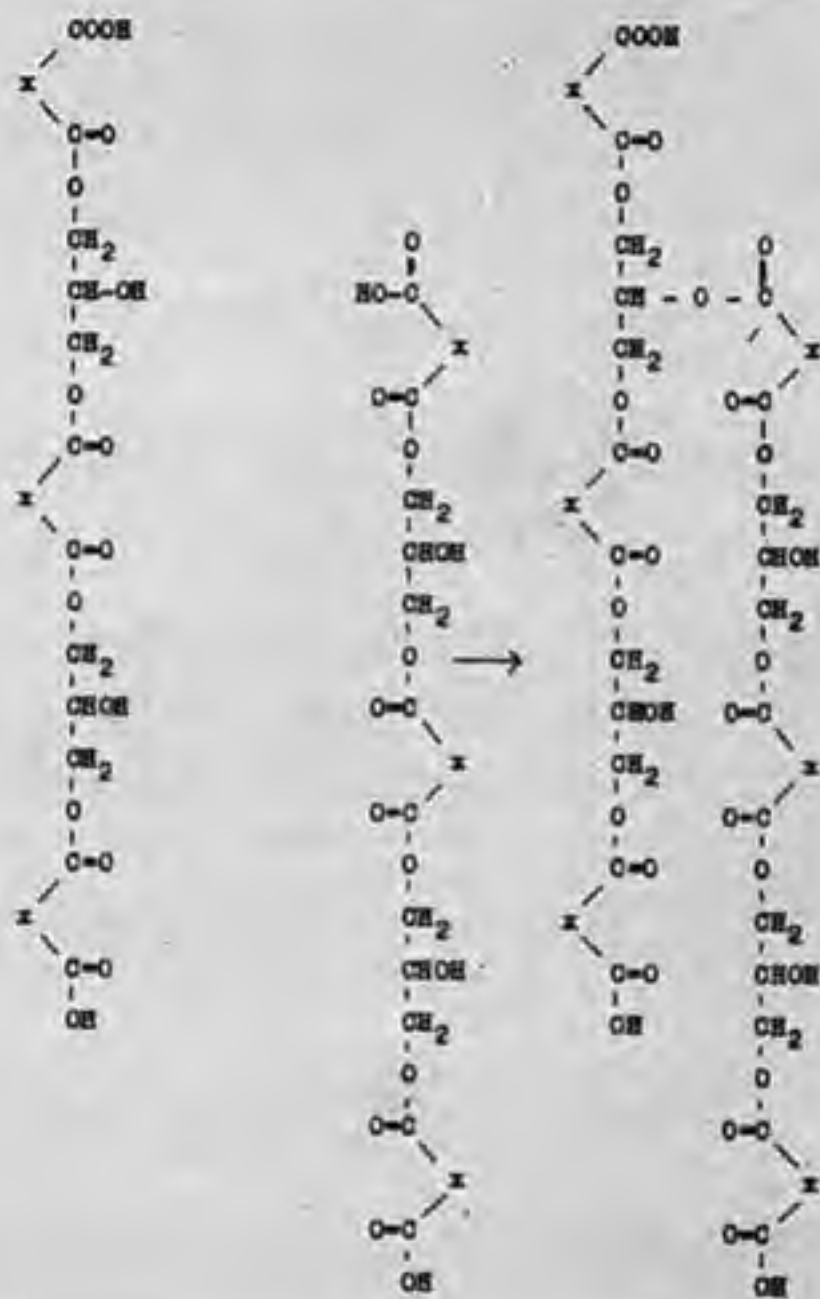
As the picture shows, when triol is esterified with dicarboxylic acid a hydroxyl remains free, which, when employing the gum-lac process, is joined with either saturated or unsaturated fatty acids.

A suitable and important example of this process is alkydal, a polycondensate made of

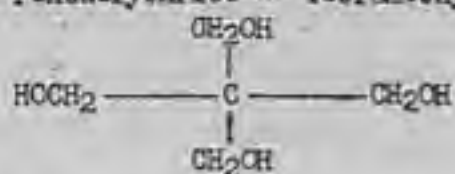
phthalic acid + glycerine + fatty acid.

When a shortage of glycerine occurred in the last few years the chemist had the interesting task of expanding the chemistry of the polyols. I should like to point out the following types.

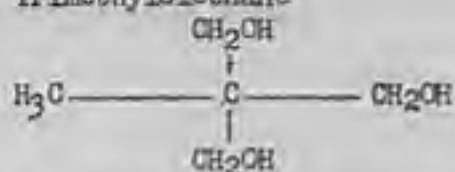
Reaktion von Polymeren Alkoholen.



- 1) Pentaerythrite = Tetraerythritol



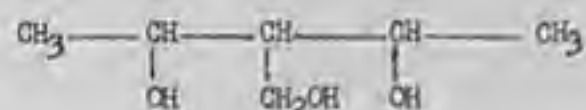
- 2) Trimethylololthane



- 3) Trimethylolpropane



- 4) Hexantriol



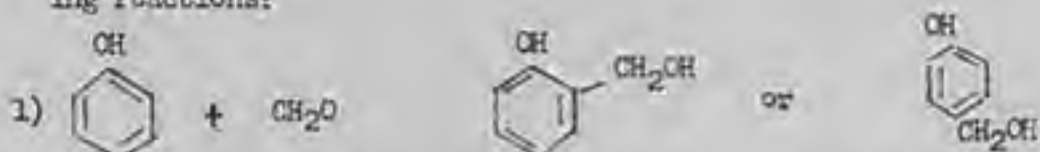
It is obvious that these so-called substitute products offer new opportunities for the production of synthetics.

In the condensation of dicarbonic acids ramification is even more intense than in the esterification of glycerine. This extends the spatial construction of the polycondensates; especially since these compounds contain more primary OH-groups than glycerine.

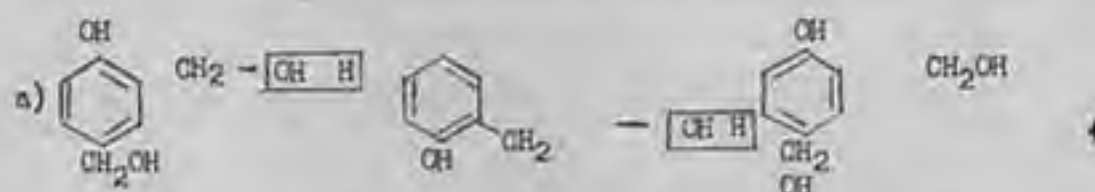


The alkydals, which have long aliphatic chains, are soft, not very scratch-proof gun-lags.

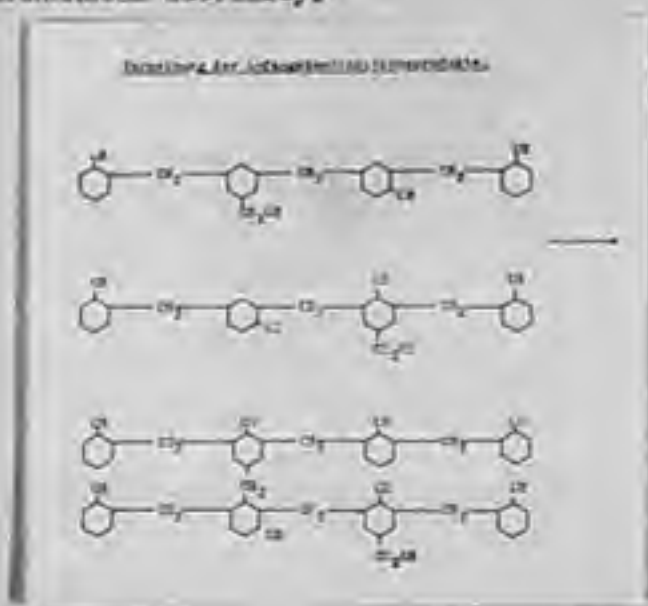
Another type of polycondensate is that of the bakolitus which are made from phenol and formaldehyde by means of the following reactions:



2) These isomeric oxy-benzyl alcohols react with more formaldehyde, becoming dioxybenzylalcohols which condense into chains:



3) During roasting these chains ramify and a rigid molecule develops, which, although resistant to chemicals, has lost its mechanical ductility.



Continuation

This dependence of mechanical ductility on the length of the connecting bridges can already be recognized from the models of the two types of polycondensates.

The rigidity of the phenol-formaldehyde condensates can be resolved again if one includes long molecules, i.e. bridges similar to those described in the case of the alkydals. If one does this one sacrifices some of their resistance against chemical attacks but softer types of material result.

The Diphences or Durophthals, among others, are constructed in this fashion. Into this bakelite type we build esters of trimethylolpropane by means of adipic acid. These lacquers are so ductile that lacquered sheet-metal can be punched and drawn without ripping the lacquer from the sheet. (Cf. Ericson sheeting and food cans; breaking tests on sprayed sheeting.)

Before the war Germany consumed more than 100 000 tons of linseed oil per year. The so-called "Lackplan" which we drew up between ourselves and both the gum-lac and the lacquer industries reduced this item to 10 000 tons of linseed oil, yet retaining the same quantity of lacquer binding media.

But that is not the whole story!

By means of synthesis we can now produce better and more durable lacquers which are much more suitable for meeting the increased demands of the industries, industrial coatings, spraying technique, than were the lacquers made from natural substances.

## 2.2. Polymerisation

### 2.2.1. Polymerisation

Die Polymerisation ist ein Prozess, bei dem kleine Moleküle (Monomere) zu einem großen Molekül (Polymer) verknüpfen. Es gibt zwei Haupttypen der Polymerisation: die radikalische Polymerisation und die anionische Polymerisation. In der radikalischen Polymerisation wird ein Radikal als Initiator verwendet, um die Polymerkette zu starten. In der anionischen Polymerisation wird ein Anion als Initiator verwendet. Die Polymerisation kann auch durch Katalysatoren beschleunigt werden. Die Polymerisation ist ein wichtiger Prozess in der Chemie und in der Industrie, um Kunststoffe, Fasern und andere Materialien herzustellen.

#### Lineare Polymerisation

Typen:  $R-R-R-R$  und  $R-R-R$   
 Beispiel:  $-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-$

#### Lineare Polyelektrolyte

Reaktionsverhältnisse:  $R-R-R$  und  $R-R-R$

Beispiel:  $R-R-R$  und  $R-R-R$

Beispiel:  $R-R-R$  und  $R-R-R$

Beispiel:  $R-R-R$  und  $R-R-R$

Beispiel:  $R-R-R$  und  $R-R-R$

#### Molekulargewichte in g/mol

-CH <sub>2</sub>	14	-O-	16	-CH <sub>2</sub>	14
-CH-	15	-CH-	15	-COOH	88
-CH <sub>2</sub> -	14	-CO-	44	-COOCH <sub>3</sub>	88
-NH-	14	-NO <sub>2</sub>	46	-COOCH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub>	100
-Cl	35.5	-CONH <sub>2</sub>	75	-CONHCH <sub>3</sub>	101

### Lineare Polymerisation.

Typus - R - R - R - R -

Beispiel:  $-CH_2-\overset{\alpha}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_2-\overset{\alpha}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_2-\overset{\alpha}{\underset{|}{CH}}-\dots$

### Lineare Polykondensation.

Bifunktionelle Verbindungen:  $x-R-x$  und  $x-R-y$

Reaktion:  $x-R-y \rightarrow \text{Produkt} - R-z-$

Bi-  $x-R-x + y-R'-y \rightarrow \text{Produkt} - R-z-R'-z-$

Beispiele: Perluran  $-NH-(CH_2)_5-CO-NH-(CH_2)_5-CO-NH-(CH_2)_5-CO-$

Polyamid  $-CO-NH-(CH_2)_6-NH-CO-(CH_2)_4-CO-NH-(CH_2)_6-NH-CO-(CH_2)_4-CO-NH-$

Seidenfibroin  $-NH-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CO-NH-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CO-NH-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CO-NH-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CO-NH-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CO-$

### Molkohäsionen in cal pro Mol.

-CH <sub>3</sub>	1780	-O-	1630	-CHO	4700
-CH <sub>2</sub>	"	-OH	7250	-COOH	8970
-CH <sub>2</sub> -	990	-CO	4270	-COOCH <sub>3</sub>	5600
-NH <sub>2</sub>	3530	-NO <sub>2</sub>	7200	-COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub>	6230
-Cl	3400	-CONH-	10600	-CONH <sub>2</sub>	13200

### The Polyamides.

A problem of polycondensation which is far more pressing to the chemist is contained in the newest branch of chemistry, that of the so-called linear polyamides.

The polyamides are members of that large group of linear polycondensation products which arise from the transference of compounds with two functional groups, either within themselves or with other bifunctional substances. The basic substances which are normally used, are those having the general formula  $x - R - y$  or  $y - R - y$ ,  $x$  and  $y$  stand for any kind of transferable groups of atoms, in the case of polyamides  $NH_2$  - or  $COOH$ -groups.

The opening up of this new field we owe to Mr. Carothers, now unfortunately deceased, who was the chief of an important research laboratory belonging to Dupont at Wilmington. Staudinger's school must receive especial praise for creating the theoretical basis for this work. Carothers pointed out the analogy between our products and the polyoxymethylenes.

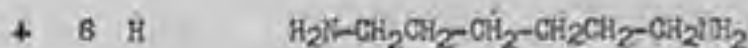
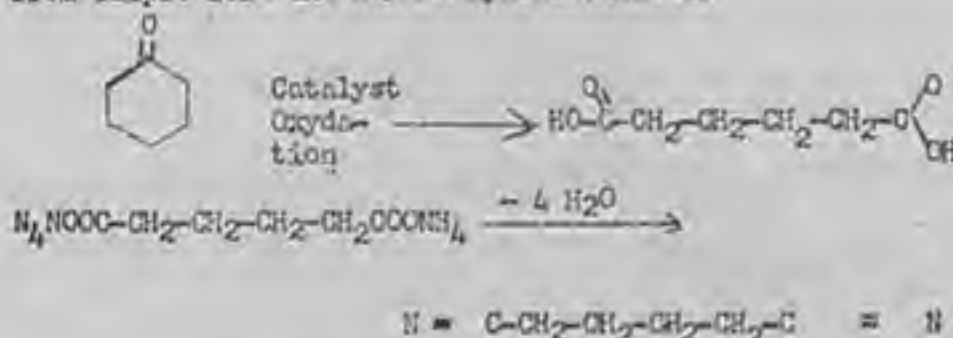
To-day, the following methods of synthesizing the polyamides are available:

- 1) Polycondensation of end-substituted dicarbonic acids with end-substituted diamines, e.g. Hexamethylenediamine with adipic acid.
- 2) Polycondensation of end-substituted  $\omega$ -aminoaldehydicarbonic acid, e.g.  $\epsilon$ -aminocaproic acid.
- 3) O. Bayer, Leverkusen, opened up a new and very promising field of research by making use of the reaction between Diisocyanates and diols or diamines. This reaction can be used to produce polyurethane from hexamethylenediisocyanate and 1,4-butanediol.



A requirement for this linear condensation is the presence of at least 4 CH<sub>2</sub>-groups between the two functional groups, since otherwise ring formation predominates and polycondensation recedes into the background. As the number of CH<sub>2</sub>-groups increases, polycondensation becomes the chief reaction since the primary rings, which were formed temporarily, unfold and turn into thread-molecules. In accordance with this principle of construction the polyamides appear as synthetic albumens, as can be seen in the comparison with fibroine (see photograph No.3). As opposed to our synthetic methods the silk-worm employs small amino acid molecules, i.e. α-amino acid.

The method is based on polyamide A, Dupont's polyamide 66, made from adipic acid and hexamethylenediamines.



Condensation is preceded by a definite salt formation. Then the solutions of adipic acid and hexamethylenediamines in methyl alcohol are mixed, the so-called AH-salt is deposited in the form of snow-white crystals. Polycondensation is carried out with a 60% solution of this AH-salt in highly polished pressure chambers at a temperature of nearly 300°C. The polycondensate is then forced out from the melt in ribbon-form.

Another method employs the lactam of aminocarbonic acid, e.g.  $\epsilon$ -caprolactam, which can be produced in quantity via cyclohexylanoxim by means of Beckmann's transposition method.



Condensates of varying chain lengths are produced according to whether they are intended for use as silk or plastics etc. Means have been found of interrupting chain formation at any given point. We consider that the size of the polyamide molecule is somewhere between 10,000 and 15,000. In consideration of the great strength of the polyamides this is an extraordinarily low number. As you can see from the photograph, molecular cohesion, i.e. *Van der Waals*'s forces, are particularly great between the CONH-groups, many times greater than between the C-C bonds.

These thoughts have developed into hypotheses which have led to the most interesting results of the last few years. We know that the mechanical strength of the polyamides depends almost entirely on mechanical orientation. Unorganized polyamides have very low tensile strength. However, if one stretches a polyamide thread one achieves a maximal strength at a certain stretching point, which is generally found at quadruple extension.

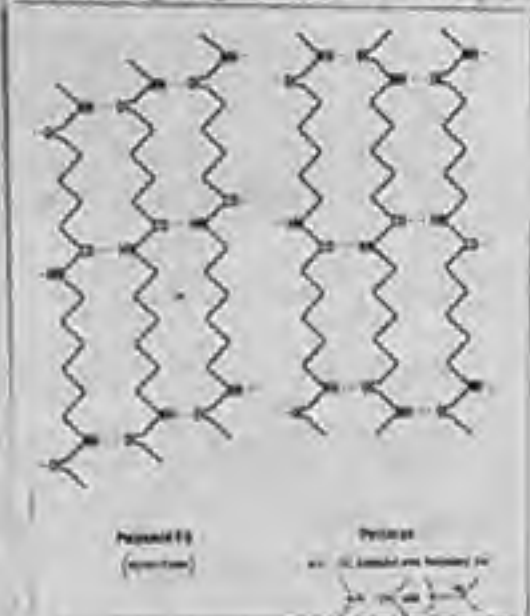
Gruppe	Molkohäsion in cal pro Mol	Gruppe	Molkohäsion in cal pro Mol
— CH <sub>3</sub>	1780	— NH <sub>2</sub>	3530
= CH <sub>2</sub>		— Cl	3400
— CH <sub>2</sub> —			
= CH —			
— CH —	990		sowie unsicherer
— O —	— 380	— F	2060
— OH	1630	— Br	4300
= CO	7250	— J	5040
— CHO	4270	— NO <sub>2</sub>	7200
— COOH	4700	— SH	4250
— COOCH <sub>3</sub>	8970	— CONH <sub>2</sub>	13200
— COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> *)	5600	— CONH —	10600
	6230		

\*) Die COOC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>-Gruppe ist dann normal um 990 cal. größer.

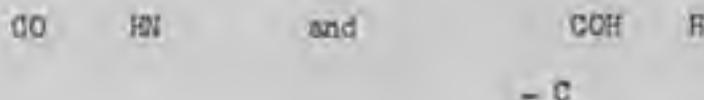
Due to the latest results of the X-Ray tests on polyamides, carried out by Dr. Brill at Oppau, we know that the molecules align themselves systematically in the direction of expansion when polyamide threads are stretched. One can recognise this phenomenon from the fact that the solid thread, when stretched, produces a so-called X-Ray fiber diagram.

Dr. Brill's work demonstrates something of the structure of the polyamides, not only of the molecular arrangements, one can also make deductions about the forces playing between the groups of atoms of adjacent molecules.

In stretched superpolyamides the zig-zag chains of the polycondensates lie parallel.



The CO and NH-groups of adjacent molecules are in opposition while the oxygen atom of the CO-group is deformed to such an extent that a hydrogen bond appears between the CO and NH-groups, i.e.



The result is the same as that achieved by the reticulation of polycarbonates of the polyesters and acetates: the linear chain molecules of the polyesters reticulate via the hydrogen bridge into two or three-dimensional bodies. These forces of reticulation can be made as strong as desired if one ensures, by means of mechanical expansion, that the density of the adjacent CO-OH particles is optimal. Identically we now achieve this stretching by means of roller work.



If one treats a polymeric ribbon with formaldehyde, the reaction between the C-OH-groups and formaldehyde removes their strong auxiliary valency forces. The polymeric ribbon acquires the elasticity of rubber, which, by the way, proves that the elasticity of rubber is not dependent on the presence of double bonds.

For the sake of the radical nature of the problem I should like to add that these facts provide new evidence for the earlier hypothesis of Mullik and American scientists of the constitution of albumen. Taken far enough, the fixation of the myosin molecules in extended muscles in their contraction might be connected with the formation and dissolution of intermolecular hydrogen connections, controlled, perhaps, by changes in pH.

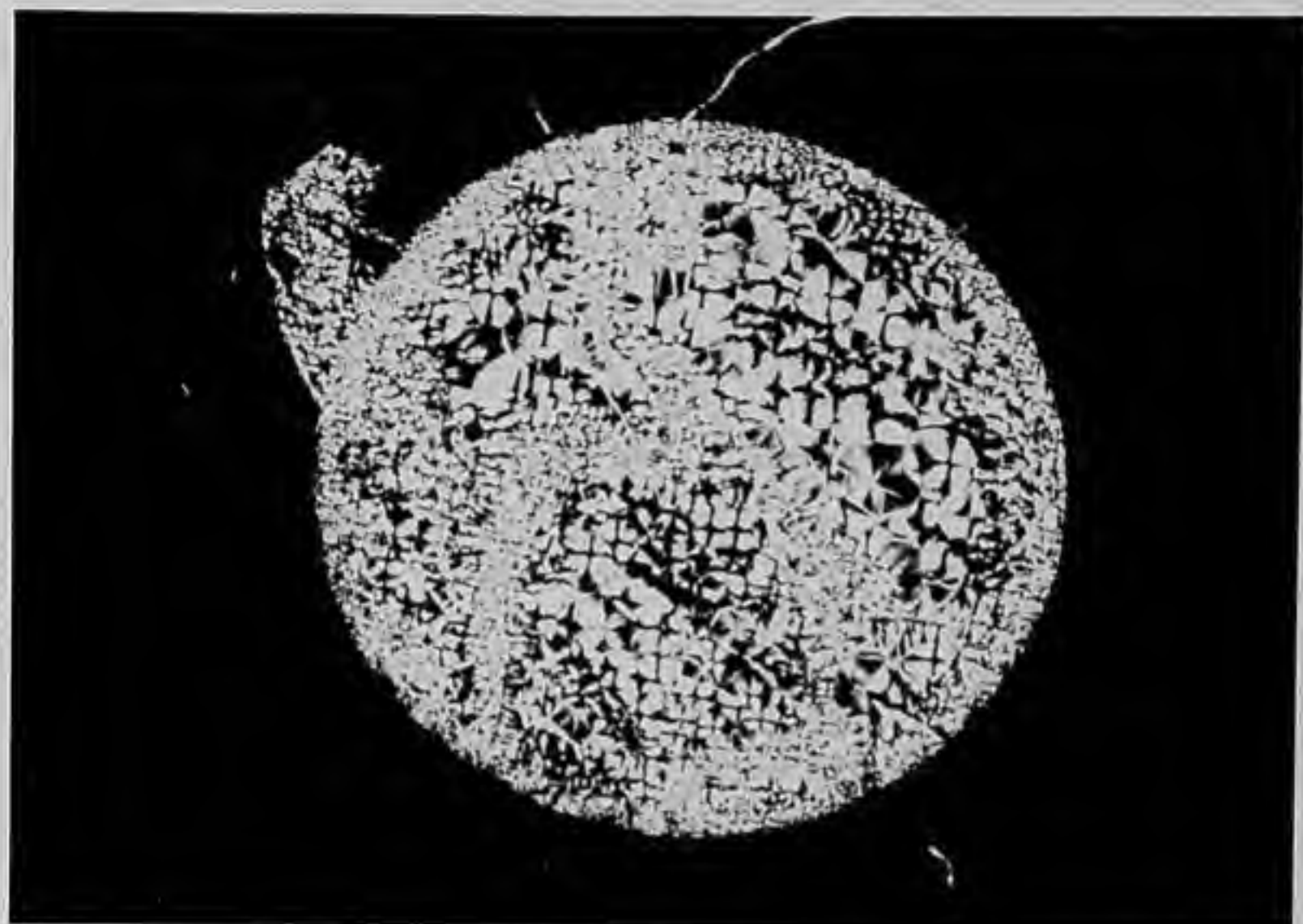


Danielski had some interesting results when making structural examinations with a polarisation microscope. Fine sections, of pressure die-cast rods for example, revealed a crystalline structure even in the unorganized state.

An Igamid A melted in the oil-bath and cooled slowly.

Please note the spherulite which was removed in the next photograph.





Crystalline needles are emanating in all directions from a center of crystallization.

Herbst's X-Ray examinations reveal the texture of these formations. These are real superpolyamide spherulites, not residual basic material. The arrangement of the reflexes reveals the position of the molecular chains and that of the plane surfaces of the crystals, which are arranged vertically to the radii of the spherulites.

Pictures 9 and 10 show the effects of cold distortion through stretching on a test rod made by the pressure die-casting method.



The ignids are therefore materials of a crystalline structure which greatly influences their properties. There is a certain analogy between these facts and the conditions found in alloys.

I need not emphasize that the discovery of the polyanides has opened up a vast new field of industry. We are engaged in a -I should like to term it thrilling- competition with American chemists, whether it be in the discovery of basic materials or, most important, in the development of the techniques used in making intermediates, or in condensation methods -intermittent, direct-, or, finally in the application of these products in new cases. The fact that we are ahead in the field of intermediates and that we are in the lead in the polyanide branch of plastics gives us much satisfaction.

I should finally like to give you some comparative figures on the mechanical properties of the polyanides.

Table:

	Tensile strength (kg/cm <sup>2</sup> )			Elongation (%)	Modulus (kg/cm <sup>2</sup> )
	20°C	100°C	150°C		
Polyanide	6.5	5.5	4.5	2.5	15
Polycarbonate	4.5	3.5	2.5	2.5	15
Polystyrene (PS)	3.5	2.5	1.5	1.5	15
Polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA)	4.5	—	—	1.5	15
Polymethylacrylate (PMA)	3.5	—	—	1.5	15

IG

Physikalische Eigenschaften von Kopolyamiden

Beispiele	Dichte in g/cm <sup>3</sup>	Dehnung in %	Stärke in kg/cm <sup>2</sup> nach 90 s	Wärme- dehnungskoeff. (1/min)
Igamid A wenig orientiert stark orientiert	100 100	20 22	1000 —	220 bis 230° —
Igamid B wenig orientiert stark orientiert	700 800	300 70	500 —	180 bis 190° —
Igamid B A wenig orientiert stark orientiert	600 500	100 80	300 —	140 bis 150° —
Igamid B B wenig orientiert stark orientiert	600 500	800 —	500 —	ca. 120° —
Schmelz . . . . .	500	40	500	40 bis 60°
Cellulose . . . . .	500	20 bis 40	300	40 bis 60°
Igall POU Hart	600	10	1200	60°
Polypyrrol III	400	—	1100	80 bis 90°
Polystyrolsch. verformt (Schmelzspinnung)	100	200 bis 300	—	—
Streckfäden (Seile)	600 bis 650	10 bis 20	—	—



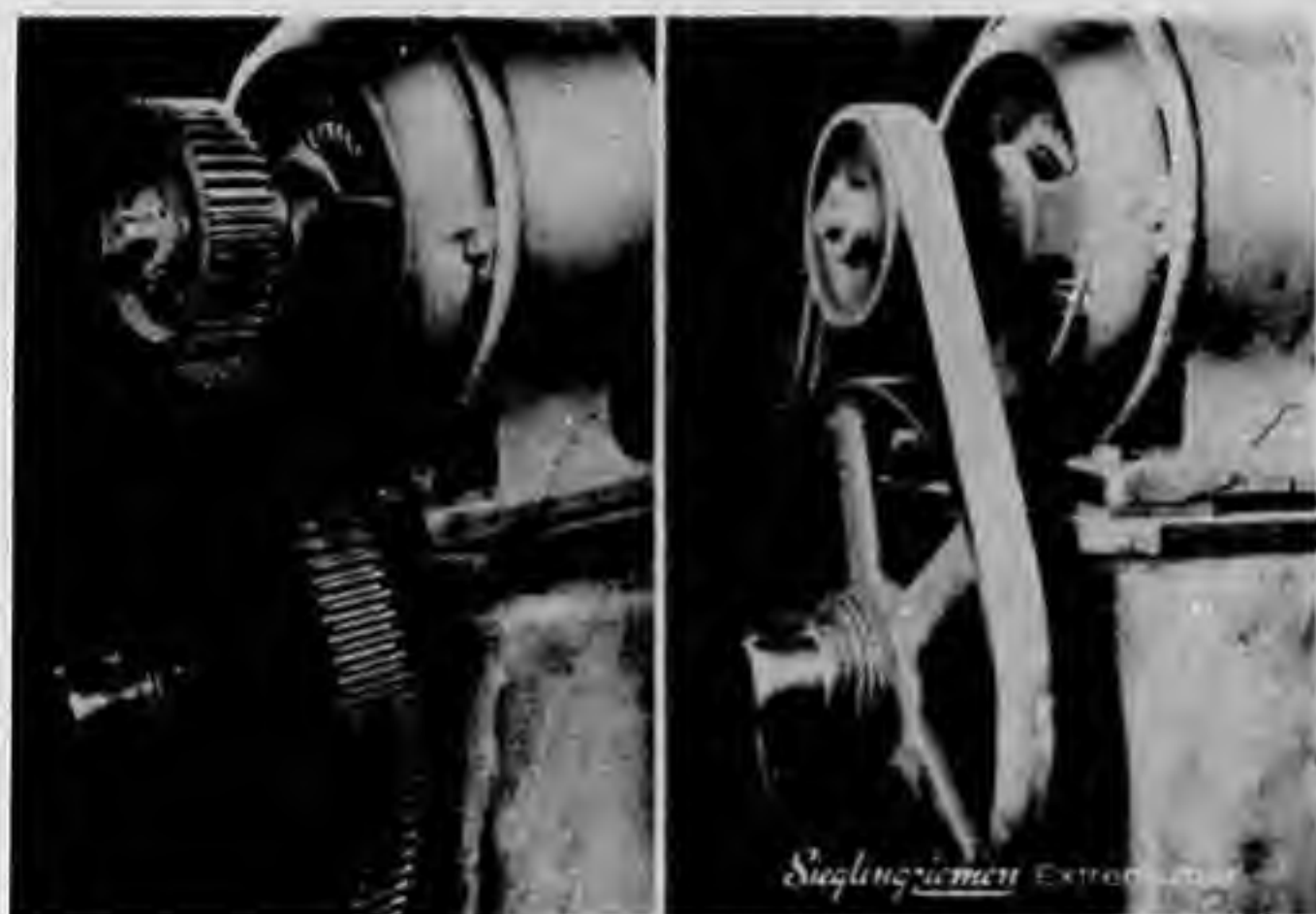


# Physikalische Eigenschaften von Superpolyamiden

Erzeugnis	ZerreiBfestigkeit		Härte in kg/cm <sup>2</sup> nach 60 s	Wärme- beständigkeit (Vicat)
	in kg/cm <sup>2</sup>	Dehnung in %		
Igamid A wenig orientiert stark orientiert	800 4000	500 25	1000 —	220 bis 230° —
Igamid B wenig orientiert stark orientiert	700 2000	500 70	500 —	165 bis 180° —
Igamid 8 A wenig orientiert stark orientiert	600 2000	600 80	300 —	140 bis 160° —
Igamid 85 B wenig orientiert stark orientiert	600 2000	600 —	357 —	≈ 100° —
Zelluloid . . . . .	650	40	650	45 bis 50°
Cellon . . . . .	500	25 bis 40	500	40 bis 50°
Igelit PCU hart . .	600	15	1200	80°
Polystyrol III . .	400	—	1100	85 bis 90°
Naturkautschuk- vulkanisiert (Reifenqualität)	300	500 bis 600	—	—
Blankleder (lobgar)	400 bis 430	40 bis 45	—	—



(Reifenqualita)	300	500 bis 600	—	—
Blankleder (lobgar)	400 bis 420	40 bis 45	—	—



*Sieglungsmaschinen* Extruder

## II.

### The Polymerisation.

I shall now turn to the chemistry of these complex molecular compounds which result from polymerisation, i.e., through the construction of chains on the general scheme.

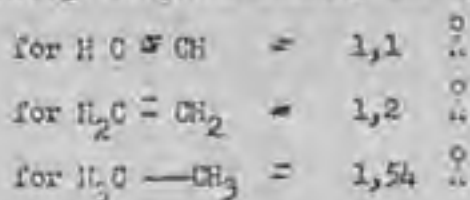


where "R" stands for the structural unit. In contrast to polycondensation, no smaller molecules, such as water, split off in polymerisation. The macromolecules do not arise as a result of a balanced reaction, such as commonly used in the normal chemistry dealing with simple molecules, e.g., the esterification reaction; they arise from direct coalescence of the molecules in the basic materials. The energy impulse which causes the reaction to take place is supplied by the monomeric molecules. The basic substances must therefore contain energy.

My explanations can thus be divided into two distinct parts:  
A) The production of suitable compounds containing considerable amounts of energy,  
B) The polymerisation of these substances and the technical control of the energy liberated thereby.

#### A) MONOMERIC "EQUATES."

It does not matter which term we choose for the energy charge contained in the molecules of the basic substance, whether we indicate it through the usual lines standing for valency, whether through diagrams showing the spacing of the atoms, i.e.,



according to which the C atoms are compressed as closely as possible in the case of acetylene and therefore liberate the most energy when released from their position of compression,

or through the electron formula of the catello theory; all these schematic demonstrations are based on

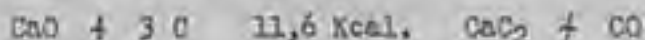
the data gathered by the chemist in working with these reactive compounds.

The modern chemistry of polymerisates derives its basic material mainly directly from acetylene, the hydrocarbon which is richest in energy. Only rarely need one make chemical detours, such as dehydration or splitting off water, in order to produce the unsaturated monomeric molecules.

An expression used to indicate the energy potential of acetylene is its heat of formation, 55,4 Cal./Mol.

In consideration of the fundamental importance of acetylene it is obvious that science did everything possible during the last few years to develop the production of acetylene both quantitatively and qualitatively. Especially in Germany, which is leading in the field of carbide production and which will soon produce more than 2 million tons per year, the greatest efforts were made to compensate for the disadvantages of having expensive raw materials by working as efficiently as possible.

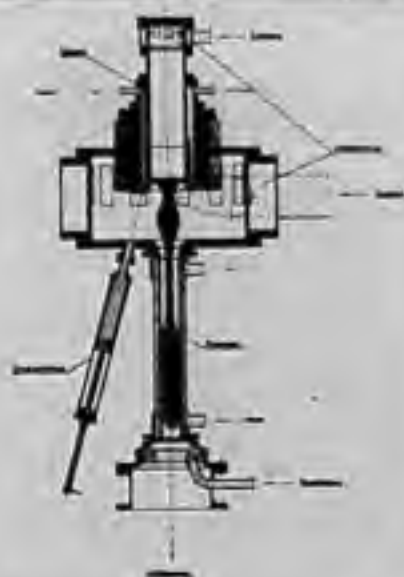
It was in the Bunsen factory at Schkeppen that we first ventured to build a furnace having continuous operation. The charges and the electrodes enter in series and the hot melt pours out into rotating cooling drums at the foot of the furnace.



The next picture shows another modern method of producing acetylene.

This is the electric arc which we are operating at our second buns factory in a large scale plant.

After many years of theoretical and experimental preparatory work at Ludwigshafen/Oppau, at Leuna, in Laisiana we ventured to build this large-scale plant with a furnace consumption of 7000 K<sup>W</sup>, using hydrogenation gases as fuel. This small apparatus produces almost half as much as one of the big, present-day carbide furnaces.



7000 KW Lichtbogenofen Halle.

I shall now show some of the means of obtaining acetylene reaction products.

- 1.) Cuprene ( $C_{21,5} \text{---} 1,8$ ) n

an aromatic substance of no industrial importance;  
no solvent is available.

- 2.) Vinylacetylene  $HC \equiv CH + HC \equiv CH \longrightarrow CH_2 = \overset{H}{C} - C \equiv CH$

this extraordinarily interesting reaction was discovered by Peter Nickland and employed industrially by Dupont by means of  $CuCl/NH_3$ -solvent. Of the very greatest industrial importance is the conversion of Vinylacetylene with hydrochloric acid into 3-chlorobutadiene which can be polymerised into an excellently oil-resistant rubber.

We chemists, however, are far more excited about the partial hydrogenation into butadiene.



Apart from laboratory hydrogenation via hydrogen zincate, nobody has as yet succeeded in this.

- 3.) Ethylene  $H-H + HC \equiv CH \longrightarrow H_2C = CH_2$

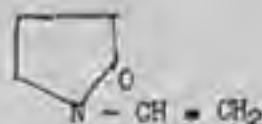
- 4.) Vinylchloride  $H-Cl + CH \equiv CH \longrightarrow CH_2 = CHCl$

- 5.) Vinylacetate  $H-O-\overset{\underset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-CH_3 + CH \equiv CH \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH-\overset{\underset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-CH_3$

- 6.) a new synthesis of vinyl ethers according to Reppe



- 7.) N-vinyl compounds, such as, for example vinylcarbazole and vinylpyrrolidone.



After these vinylisations I should like briefly to mention those methods of synthesis which lead to the following monomeric molecules via detours in which splitting-off reactions take place:





### Polymerisation.

Many of these monomeric substances start thickening at room-temperatures, especially under the influence of light, and turn into complex molecular bodies. The best-known example of all these preparations is styrene.

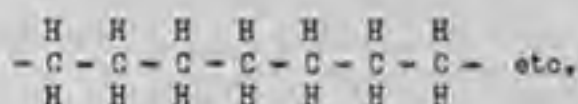
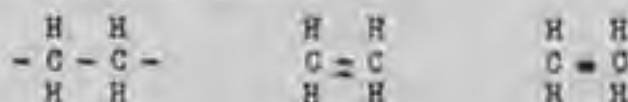
What do we imagine happens in this growing which, from simple monomeric substances, creates complex molecules which, just as is the case with poly-condensation, are rods or long chains which can be linear, ramified and reticulated.

I purposely limit myself to the conditions occurring in the polymerisation of monomeric substances which turn into complex materials as a result of a C-C-double bonding process.

As a result of thermomotion a constant struggle goes on in these molecules between the movements of the atoms against each other and the valencies. It sometimes happens - increasingly at higher temperatures - that a double bond is split as a result of this thermic movements:



This type of diradical we term a "core". The valencies tear open the double bonds of other monomeric molecules and unite them into a macromolecule:



until this growth ceases at a certain medium molecular size which is dependent on test conditions.

Polymerisation reactions are thus clearly divided into three stages:

- 1) Formation of the "cores" - initial reaction.  
In addition to raising the temperature, core-formation is also aided by the application of light and suitable catalysts.
- 2) Formation of the macromolecule - chain growth reaction
- 3) Interruption of growth reaction.

A general rule for this is that an acceleration of the initial reaction, other conditions remaining the same, results in an earlier interruption of growth, i.e. in shorter molecules.

k-value series with polyvinylisobutyl ether:

k-value	25	"	"	"	oil
	60	"	"	"	viscous mass
	120	"	"	"	solid sheet

In order to be able to control polymerization reactions industrially a variety of methods have been developed in the course of the last few years. These are adapted to the chemical and physical characteristics of the monomeric and polymeric substances, and their purpose is the manufacture of reproducible polymerisates with certain properties at a rate of many hundreds and thousands of tons per month.

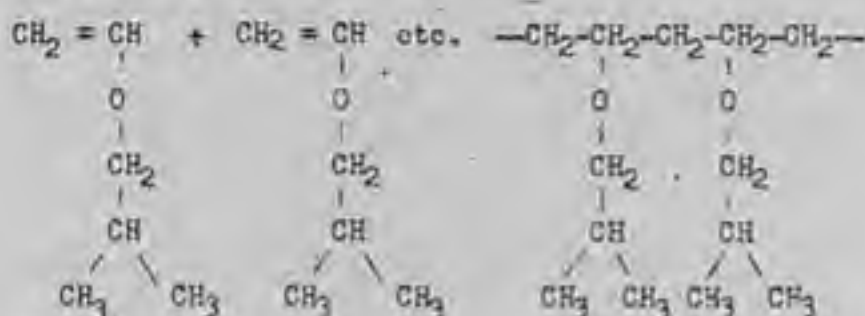
Today, the factory technician employs the following polymerisation methods which I should like to describe in outline:

#### 1) Bloc polymerisation.

The basic material is polymerised in the pure state. The course of polymerisation is controlled by heat and certain catalysts. An industrial example is the manufacture of polystyrene, which we now produce at Ludwigshafen at the rate of many hundreds of tons per month and from which we make this lovely crystal-clear material. The reason for the presence on the market of three clear types of polystyrene lies in the fact that we have succeeded in varying the average chain-length in these three types. The effect of this is the raising of the softening point and simultaneously an improvement of its mechanical rigidity. Since, conversely, this increases the difficulties of processing it because polystyrene melts less easily and demands higher die casting temperatures etc., there is still a demand for all three types in various fields.

A few years ago we faced the difficult problem of carrying out this polymerisation in a reproducible form. The presence of traces of monomeric molecules caused the appearance of cracks in the finished polystyrene article after a few months. All we could do at the time was to start with the basic material in its purest form and to examine every stage of the polymerisation process as accurately as possible, which we achieved by splitting up the process of chain formation in several vats. I remember that, years ago, difficulties occurred in production due to the presence of traces of divinylbenzene which, as you have stated in one of your publications, Professor Staudinger, has a reticulative effect on the polystyrene chains.

In order to give you an idea of the exothermic reactions of polymerisation I shall show the bloc polymerisation process of Vinylisobutylether.



The latest achievements of my colleague, Dr. Hopff, and his assistants have also made it possible to employ the bloc polymerisation technique industrially, using the high pressure of several thousand atmospheres. A well-known example is polyethylene, which, according to the degree of polymerisation applied, appears in the form of a viscous oil, a waxy substance and, in extreme cases, in the form of elastic films. In this sphere we are competing with the British group ICI which, as is well known, marketed the polythones and introduced them into the cable industry.

Ethylene polymerisation is strongly exothermic. 1900 calories are liberated per kilogramme of polythene.

Ethylene - simple structure	- lubricating oil
Molecular weight 2.000-5.000 medium	- wax
" " 10-30.000 complex	- a plastic in the form of films

Partly in order to control the temperature of polymerisation, but also for operational reasons we are employing the solution technique as well. The experiment with acrylic acid which follows is an example of an uncontrolled reaction.

The method which is of the greatest practical importance, however, is polymerisation in the form of an emulsion. This method was found at the time when an attempt was made to polymerise butadiene after the manner of the biological processes occurring in the hevea cells.

As an introduction I shall describe the following experiment.

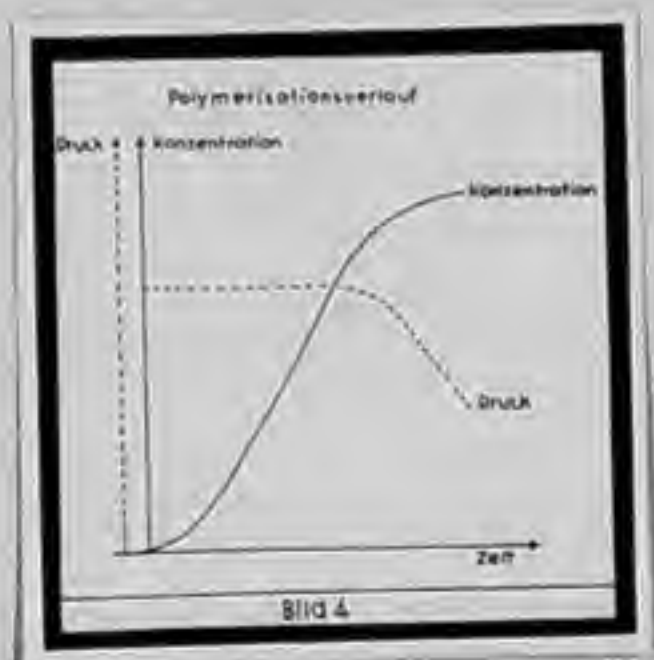
Mix the monomeric substance (in this case it is acrylic acid methyl ester) with water; no reaction is visible. Two definite layers form when it is allowed to stand.

We activate the mixture by adding a soluble catalyst and shortly afterwards note that the aqueous portion becomes turbid.

We deduce from this that the part of the monomeric molecules which had dissolved in the water was free to react by polymerisation. The two layers, one aqueous and the other organic, remain separate, however.

If one now adds an emulsifier one does not only achieve increased solubility of the monomeric molecules in water but, as a result of the emulsion, a closer mixing takes place between the aqueous and the organic parts, i.e. one meets the requirement of delivering the monomeric molecules needed for polymerisation through the solution. You can note that polymerisation has quickly spread over the whole content of the vessel and that a uniform milkiness - or, to put it more accurately - a dispersion of the polymeric acrylic acid methyl ester results, which is then precipitated by the usual coagulants such as acetic acid, aluminum sulphate, salts etc.

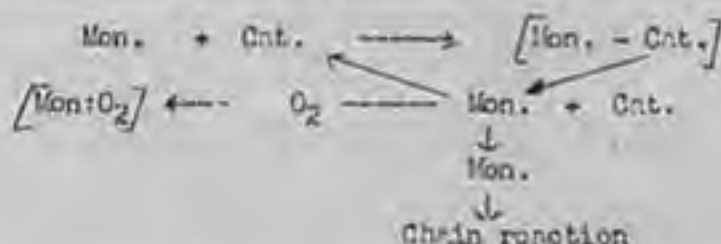
If one makes a time-reaction graph of an emulsion polymerisation such as, for example, vinyl chloride, one receives the following result:





After a certain starting period, which I shall return to later, polymerisation continues at a constant speed until about 85% of the substance has reacted. Since the total concentration of the monomeric molecules decreases as the reaction progresses, since, however, the speed of polymerisation remains constant, Fikentscher deduced that only a part of the monomeric molecules, i.e. the part which is dissolved in the water of emulsion, is available for polymerisation. As long as undissolved drops of the monomeric substance are still present in the water the concentration of the portion dissolved in water, and therefore the speed of polymerisation, remain constant. The break in the time-reaction curve above 85% reaction can be explained by the reduction in the concentration of the aqueous monomeric solution after all the undissolved parts of the monomeric substance have been used up. A neat proof for this hypothesis, especially in the case of emulsion polymerisation of vinyl chloride, is the simultaneous drop in the time-pressure curve.

The slow start of the polymerisation is caused by the inhibitory effect of the molecular oxygen in the air. We imagine that it influences the starting reaction in the following manner:



I can demonstrate experimentally this "poisoning" of the polymerisation through molecular oxygen.

Since these examples deal with the polymerisation of one certain monomeric substance, I must draw your attention to the fact that this technique has been expanded and has become more complicated through the introduction of the so-called mixed polymerisation method. We build up systems employing two or three substances, which must be most carefully adjusted to each other, and we must arrange the physical conditions in such a manner that a second monomeric substance rhythmically enters the chain of a polymer, thus giving it certain physical characteristics or, perhaps, providing the reticulating links. Thus, polymeric vinyl methyl ether is soluble in water.

If, however, one includes a few percent of diethyleneglycol-divinyl ether, reticulating links result in the following manner :

and the substance is no longer soluble in water.

Vinylisobutyl ether / butadiolvinyl ether.

(Soluble in benzene)

This idea of employing mixed polymerisation has had a tremendous effect on the production of synthetic rubber. The most important examples are Buna S and Perbunan which are mixed polymerisates made from butadiene and styrene or acryl nitrile. As I illustrated by means of this experiment, production of thousands of tons of these substances is carried out in big vats of a certain design with biologically adjusted mixtures. We are copying the biological process which takes place in the cells of the rubber plant.



The hydrocarbons - butadiene and styrene - are mixed in a certain ratio, emulsified in water, the pH is adjusted, activators are added and the whole is raised to a certain temperature.

In a series of polymerisation vats the monomeric substances then develop into chains of Buna molecules.

When polymerisation is interrupted at a certain molecular size, the Buna milk is piped into a central tank where small faults balance out and is then coagulated and dried.







Buna-Werke  
1940

# Kontinuierliche Destillationen

Schko: Ansicht von Norden

Bild 3a





Without entering into a technical appreciation of Buna I should still like to mention one of its properties which is not only of practical but also of theoretical importance. If you process natural rubber with rollers it becomes plastic, soft and tacky. Shortly afterwards it recovers and the soft sheet again becomes elastic.

Buna, on the whole, lacks this masticative property. It objects to being rolled and thus at present presents great difficulties in processing.

A few years ago the thermic disintegration process was invented and introduced into the plants. The sheets of Buna undergo heat-treatment and hot air is violently circulated through them which makes them become soft and tacky.

We imagine that the reticulation links break in this process; linear fragments develop.

The processing method functions by first disintegrating the materials and then filling the fragments with carbon black and sulphur, finally reestablishing the connecting links by means of the well-known vulcanisation process.

I have reached the end of my talk which led you straight through the research and methods of macromolecular chemistry. I was unfortunately not able to cover the subject exhaustively.

In spite of that I hope to have given you an idea of our tasks, of our problems and difficulties and even more, of our joys.

This development has progressed mightily in the last few years. Should its speed moderate, we shall still have to meet the vaster task, that of improving techniques, in order to meet all the demands set by the application of the new materials.

We do not merely desire to build up a chemistry of substitutes by means of our Buna and our plastics, on the contrary, we desire that our labor shall be of lasting effect.

I herewith certify that the above is a true and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 15 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel.

Affidavit

I, Prof. Dr. Hermann Staudinger of Freiburg i.Br., Lagostrasse 14, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nurnberg, Germany.

I am a Professor at the University of Freiburg i. Br. and Director of the chemical laboratory at this University. In this capacity I became acquainted with Dr. Ambros of Ludwigshafen quite a long time ago by meeting him at chemists' conferences and by visits to the Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik of Ludwigshafen.

I reported several times on the results of my work in the field of macro-molecular chemistry in lectures at Ludwigshafen, which were followed by lengthy discussions. Dr. Otto Ambros showed great interest in this work, because he himself was a leader in this field and especially in its industrial development in Germany.

At my suggestion, Dr. Ambros then received in the Summer of 1943 an invitation to lecture on plastics from the Dean of Freiburg University. This lecture made a great impression upon the entire audience.

so that my suggestion to honor the great scientific merits of Dr. Ambros by conferring on him the title of honorary doctor, was unanimously accepted by the Faculty of Natural Science and Mathematics and by the Board (Senat).

The text of this document which was then drafted by myself together with the Dean, reads as follows:

Albert - Ludwig - University  
Freiburg/Breisg.

The Faculty of Natural Science and Mathematics, under the rectorship of the Professor of Mathematics, Dr. Alhohu Saess and under the deanship of the Professor of Physical Chemistry, Dr. Reinhard Mecke, confers on

Dr. phil. Otto Ambros

Member of the Vorstand of I.G. Farbenindustrie of Ludwigshafen on Rhine

the degree and title of a

Doctor rerum naturalium honoris causa.

The faculty hereby honors his outstanding merit in promoting chemical technology in the macro-molecular field, the introduction of new polymerisation methods, and the development of plastics and Buna.

In witness whereof the faculty issues for him this document and affixes its seal to it.

Freiburg/Breisg., 15 November 1944

signed: Saess (Rector)

Political factors, for example Party membership, were not taken into consideration for this honor; it was conferred merely on the strength of Dr. Ambros' merits in the field of

macro-molecular chemistry.

Freiburg/Breg., 12 January 1948

signed: Prof. Dr. Hermann Staudinger

The above signature of Prof. Dr. Hermann Staudinger, domiciled at Freiburg/Breg., Lugstr. 14, made before me, Dr. Gernot Gather, Assistant Defense Counsel at the Vth Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, is herewith certified by me.  
Freiburg/Breg., 12 January 1948

signed: Dr. Gernot Gather

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is herewith certified.

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel

Nuernberg, 21 January 1948



Direktor Philipp Borchardt  
München-Solln, Strobelstr.3

- Affidavit -

I, Philipp Borchardt, domiciled at München-Solln, Strobelstrasse 3, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nürnberg, Germany.

During my work as senior engineer (Oberingenieur) of the Gesellschaft fuer Linde's Eismaschinen A.G. I several times had occasion to meet Dr. Otto Ambros. The fact of my Jewish origin was known to Dr. Ambros. In his attitude towards me, however, he never showed any anti-Semitic tendencies, but always treated me in the same friendly way as any other person of non-Jewish origin.

signed: Ph. Borchardt

Document Scroll No. 432

I herewith certify the genuineness of the above signature, acknowledged before me, by Herr Philipp Borchardt, Direktor in München-Solln, Strobelstrasse 3, who is personally known to me.

Munich, 15 January 1948

The Notary:

signed: Justizrat Heinrich Hippler.

I herewith certify the correctness and completeness of  
the <sup>above</sup> / copy.

Nuernberg, 21 January 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Diplom-Ingenieur Hans Schellenberg, resident of Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Leuschnerstrasse 34, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

On 1 January 1927 I entered the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft Oppau Works as works engineer for the steam-power plant. I am now chief of the Designing office for Power.

I am half Jewish and therefore suffered greatly under National Socialism. Amongst other things, I was imprisoned in a concentration camp at the end of 1944 because of my origin.

I corroborate Dr. Otto Ambros' affirmation that - in contrast to many of his colleagues - he never let me feel my origin either in business or personal relations. On the contrary, he has always treated me and my family in a particularly friendly way.

I know that various attempts were made on the part of the National Socialists to remove me from my post. Together with Dr. Carl Wurster, Dr. Otto Ambros succeeded despite all these attempts in enabling me to remain in the works - though in a subordinate position - and not to become unemployed.

While I was in the Concentration Camp, these two men managed to see that my wife was regularly paid my full salary, and that she was assisted by both word and deed.

Dr. Ambros did everything for me personally to alleviate as much as possible the suffering imposed on me by National Socialism.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 18 January 1948

signed: Hans Schellenberg.

I herewith certify and witness the above signature by Dipl. Ing. Hans Schellenberg, domiciled in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Leuschnerstrasse 34, made before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4,  
Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 18 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

This copy is herewith certified complete and correct.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 19 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

No. 381 of the Register for the Year 1947

1st Copy.

Transacted  
at Wernigerode on 23 August 1947  
Ingenieur Karl Laermann of Rueschland/Harz  
who is known to me personally, appeared today  
before me, the undersigned Notary  
Dr. jur. Willy Voigt  
in Wernigerode.

Herr Laermann presented pass No. 2762, dated 14 June 1946,  
issued by the President of the Province of Saxony, Dept.  
"Victims of Fascism", according to which he had been recog-  
nized by the Provincial administration of Saxony as a victim  
of Fascism. The pass bore a photograph and Herr Laermann's  
signature, in his own hand, as well as the stamp of the Pre-  
sident of Saxony, Provincial Office of Labor and Social Wel-  
fare in Halle/Saxony.

Herr Laermann stated that he wished to make a declaration  
on oath. After he had been thoroughly instructed by the Notary  
as to the meaning of a declaration on oath, Herr Laermann  
deposed the following :

I, Engineer Karl Heinrich Laermann of Rueschland/Harz, born  
on 27 March 1900 in Georgsmarienhütte Osnabrueck district,  
have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to  
punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath  
that the following statement is true and was made in order to  
be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. 1 in the  
Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

Dr. Otto Ambros of Ludwigshafen/Rhine, was formerly a  
member of the Vorstand of I.G. Farben in Ludwigshafen; I  
have known him well since 1938. Until the collapse of  
Germany, I worked as an employee in the I.G. Farben Konzern.

In 1943 I was imprisoned by the Gestapo on a charge of  
undermining military potential and of high treason, and  
after six months' imprisonment on remand I was sentenced  
by the People's Court Berlin to five years' penal servitude  
and five years' loss of civil rights. Dr. Ambros exerted  
himself greatly on my behalf during my imprisonment.

I owe it mainly to Dr. Ambros' intervention that, despite the gravity of the charge, not the death sentence, but this sentence, a mild one for the People's Court, was pronounced.

He never hesitated to use every means and any opportunity for a personal, candid word to have me set free. Thus he repeatedly saw the Reich Attorney General and even the then Reichsfuehrer Himmler, in order to effect my release, or at least a postponement of the sentence.

At the time of my sentence, a letter had arrived from Reich Minister Speer, in which he asked, on the grounds of Dr. Ambros' representations to him after my sentence, for me to be released for industry or possibly discharged on probation.

In order to ease my life in prison, Dr. Ambros succeeded in obtaining from the Reich Attorney General permission for me to continue work in my cell on the theme "Escapes of Gas from a Carbide Furnace". This helped me over many a difficult hour.

The pains Dr. Ambros took for me, a mere employee in one of the works under his charge can be attested by the remark of Rechtsanwalt Jarand in Halle/Saxony, who repeatedly said to me :

" I am afraid that if Dr. Ambros continues to intervene on your behalf in this way the Gestapo will one day come to fetch him, too."

Onecopy of the transection should be made for Dr. Otto Ambros of Ludwigshafen/Rhein, at present imprisoned in Nuernberg on remand.

The record was read aloud by the Notary in the presence of Herr Laermann, approved by him and signed by him in his own hand as follows :

Karl Laermann

Dr. Voigt,  
Notary

The above transaction, entered in the register as No. 381, 1947, is herewith duplicated for the first time for Dr. Otto Ambros of Ludwigshafen/Rhine, at present imprisoned on remand in Nuernberg.

Wernigerode, 23 August 1947

signed : Dr. Voigt,  
Notary

(Notary's stamp).



Estimate of costs

- Value: 3,000 FM

Charge in accordance with Sections 16.00 FM  
144, 26,43 of the Tariff for fees.

Turnover tax 0.48 FM  
16.48 FM

signed : Dr. Voigt  
Notary

The above copy is herewith certified complete and correct :

Ludwigshafen, 19 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

A f f i d a v i t .

I, the undersigned Johann Oberauer, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal in Nuernberg.

At the end of the war, I was deputy Mayor of the district of Burgkirchen on Alz, and I learned that the works management of the Gondorf factory received from the appropriate Wehrmacht office through Dr. Ambros' and Dr. Wittwer's mediation, the assurance that the Burgkirchen bridge over the Alz would not be blown up. Nevertheless, on the last day before the occupation the bridge was prepared for blasting by a demolition party. A quarter of an hour before the time set for the explosion, I myself attempted to prevent the blasting, but my protests were rejected by the leader of the demolition party with the words "He had been ordered to blast". To my great surprise, the demolition was not carried out, which we owe to the fact that Dr. Ambros had once more intervened personally.

Burgkirchen, 5 September 1947

signed : Johann Oberauer.

This is to certify the above signature of Johann Oberauer.

Burgkirchen on Alz, 6 September 1947

(Official stamp)

signed : Biebmair

(Stamp : District Council Burgkirchen  
on Alz).

The above copy is herewith certified complete and correct.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 18 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel.

Affidavit

I, Dr. Wolfgang Gruber, living in Burghausen, Upper Bavaria, Marienbergerstr.1, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. 6 in the Nuremberg Palace of Justice.

On 28 April 1945, some brave men of the Ickker Works in Burghausen, in response to an appeal of the Bavarian Freedom Movement (Freiheitsaktion), arrested the active Nationalsocialists in the plant, in order to save the plant from threatened destruction. An SS Court-Martial, which was summoned by an unknown party, sentenced 3 men to death and shot them immediately after the trial. This was done in spite of the fact that the action had been declared as having been cleaned up already several hours before the SS arrived, the weapons handed over to the regional defense unit and the arrested men to the police. Two more men, the former Sonntag and I, came very near to experiencing the same fate on the following day. Herr Sonntag had already been sentenced to death. Dr. Lehrs of Ludwigshafen, who was at that time in Genlorf near Burghausen, was asked to come at once to Burghausen to give his help. This he did most willingly. By negotiating with the members of the Court Martial, he prevented the execution of the death sentence. Even although Dr. Lehrs was supported by other people belonging to the plant, it was due to his personal efforts that Herr Sonntag and myself were saved.

By making this declaration I hope to be able to repay a small part of the debt of gratitude which I owe to Dr. Lehrs.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Gruber

Q1-Document No. 131  
Continuation

I hereby witness the above signature of Herr Dr. Wolfgang Gruber,  
living in Burghausen, Upper Bavaria, Marienbergerstr.1, and  
certify that it was made before me, Kolber, Town-Pastor.

Burghausen, (Stamp of the Pastorate)

16 May 1947

Protestant Lutheran Town  
Pastorate  
Burghausen, Upper Bavaria.  
signed: Kolber  
Town-Pastor

OS-Document No. 131  
Continuation

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct  
copy:

Ludwigshafen, 18 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assisting Defense Counsel



Affidavit

I, Josef Sonntag, living in Burghausen, Upper Bavaria, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement, herewith declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Nuremberg Palace of Justice.

As participant in the action for freedom (Freiheitsaktion) in the Wacker Works in Burghausen on 23 April 1945, I was sentenced to death by a Court Martial on 29 April 1945. The action was to have saved the Works from the dreaded destruction through Nazi henchmen. Three men who had taken part in this action were shot on the 28 April by an SS-Sturmführer right after the Court Martial had taken place. I was threatened by the same fate. Dr. Ambros, who at that time was staying in Gendorf near Burghausen, was then called for help. He negotiated with the members of the Court Martial and succeeded in preventing the execution of the sentence. I owe it to his intercession that I remained alive.

Burghausen, 10 September 1947

I herewith certify the  
above signature:

signed: Jos. Sonntag

Burghausen/Upp.Bav.

City Council

in Commission: Signature (illegible)

(Seal of the Office)

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct

copy:

Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense  
Counsel

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 18 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Affidavit

I, Dr. Johannes Hoss, of Munich 27, Schumannstr.1, having been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement, herewith declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI in the Nuremberg Palace of Justice.

During the last weeks of the Second World War, I stayed in Burghausen in the original plant of the Dr. Alexander Wackar Gesellschaft fuer elektrochemische Industrie m.b.H., in my capacity as the senior member of the Vorstand of said company, so as to stand by the side of my employees during these turbulent days.

On 25 April, in connection with the movement "Free Bavaria", a spontaneous revolt of my employees against the local Nazi authorities took place, which was however suppressed by the force of arms. A Court Martial which was convened immediately executed three of my best men by shooting them in the courtyard of the plant. A second Court Martial followed; the deputy plant manager Dr. Gruber and a foreman by the name of Sonntag would have been the next victims.

I called Dr. Otto Labros for help, who was at that time staying at the neighboring Amorgene Werke Gendorf. He came at once and intervened directly at the Court Martial which had just pronounced the death sentence on foreman Sonntag. But Dr. Labros as a civilian did not get scared and descended from the commander of the local garrison Breitenwieser, an SS-officer, that the death sentence should be cancelled. In order to make a greater impression, Dr. Labros put on his knight's cross as I desired and bluffed with a phone call which he was to carry on with Minister Spoor.

It was the only time during the many years I know Dr. Ambros,  
that he wore a decoration.

His presence of mind saved the lives of my men.

A third Court Martial which was to follow, did not take place.

Four days later Burghausen was occupied by the Americans.

Dr. Ing. hon. causa Johannes Hoss

Munich, 19 January 1948

Stamped Form      The signature of Dr. Hoss  
Sharp      is certified:  
Munich      , 19 January 1948  
10th Police District  
Signature

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct  
copy:

Karl Hoffmann,  
Defense Counsel

Munich, 22 January 1948.

Affidavit

I, Dr. Max Wittwer, living in Altoetting, Carl Boschstr. 14, have been duly warned that I shall make myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Nuremberg Palace of Justice.

From 1939 until 7 July 1945 I was Plant Manager of the Gendorf Works of the Inorgana G.m.b.H.. At that time Dr. Ambros from Ludwigshafen a.Rh. was Geschäftsführer.

I feel it is my duty to make some statements about the behavior of Dr. Ambros during the last period of the war.

Already in 1944, Dr. Ambros caused measures to be taken for switching over the Gendorf Works to peacetime production. These reconversion measures were intensified in 1945, and when the plant was occupied on 4 May 1945, some installations were already manufacturing cleansing agents, pharmaceuticals, lacquers and synthetics.

A necessary condition for this reconversion was of course, that the plant should not be included in the "last ditch" stand which the NSDAP had planned to make. It was to be expected that the Inn-Salzach district would be turned into a redoubt, and that the Volksturm, industrial police, tank obstacles and blown-up bridges would all combine to carry out a military action.

Dr. Ambros succeeded at that time in reconverting the plant, which had been originally equipped for the making of armaments to peacetime production.

signed: Dr. M. Wittwer

Altoetting, 17 September 1947

Continuation

No. 1069 in the Register

I herewith certify the above signature of Dr. Max Wittwer,  
living in Alttetting, Carl Boschstr. 14.

Alttetting, 17 September 1947

(Stamp of the Notary  
Public)

signed: Schneider,  
Notary Public

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct  
copy:

Dr. Wolfgang Alt,  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Ludwigshafen a. Rh., 16 December 1947.



29 May 1947  
17 June 1947

Affidavit

We, Dr. Johannes Hess; Munich, Schumannstr.1; Dipl. Ing. Josef Rambausch, Burghausen, Karl Stocholstr.4; Dr. Max Wittwer, Altoetting, Carl Boschstr.14; Dr. Wolfgang Gruber, Burghausen, Marionbergerstr.1. have been duly warned that we shall make ourselves liable to punishment by making a false statement. We declare on oath that our statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No.VI in the Nuremberg Palace of Justice.

In the period from February to April 1945 on the initiative of Dr. Ambros (Ludwigshafen), who was at that time in Gendorf, strong resistance was organized against the encroachments of the Party and of individuals in the works of the Amorgana in Gendorf, Saeddeutsche Kalkstickstoffwerke A.G. in Hart and Trostberg, Dr. Alexander Mackor Gesellschaft in Burghausen, as well as in Aschau, Kreibitz, St. Georgen, here in the Inn, and Salsach Districts. The emergency shifts were increased and supplemented in order to be able to deal at any time with saboteurs, looters and fanatics. Dr. Ambros' tenacious and constant efforts were successful in dissuading the National Socialist in power in Upper Bavaria from carrying out the senseless destruction and the blowing up of bridges as they had planned. He obtained several orders forbidding the blowing up of bridges and other destruction. For this the above named plants, including the towns, communities and settlements owe him a great debt of gratitude.

The following signatures are herewith certified and witnessed.

Signed:	Signed:	Signed:	Signed:
Dr. Johannes Hess	Josef Rambausch	Dr. Max Wittwer	Dr. Wolfgang Gruber

No. in the Register: 606

I herewith certify the above signature of Dr. Max Wittwer,  
Altoetting, Carl Boschstr.14. (Charge for the Costs)

Altoetting, 4 June 1947 signed: Schoedler  
(Stamp of the Notary Public)

OA-Document No. 135  
Continuation

The above signature of Dr. Wolfgang Gruber is certified  
herewith by the Pastorate.

Protestant Lutheran Town  
Pastorate Office  
Burgheusen, Upper Bavaria.

Burgheusen,  
10 June 1947 (Stamp of Office) signed: Kelber  
(Pastor)

I herewith certify the signature of Dipl. Ing. Josef Rarbaueck.

Burgheusen, 11 June 1947 City Council (Charge for the  
I.A. Costs)  
(Signature illegible)  
(Stamp of the  
Office)

No. in the Register: 2655

I herewith certify the signature of Dr. Johannes Hoss, Tech-  
nical Director in Munich, Schumannstr. 1, who has identified  
himself with his German Identity Card.

Munich, 17 June 1947 Notary Public  
signed: Dr. Hans Nobis

(Stamp of the Notary Public) (Charge for the Costs)

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy:

Ludwigshafen a/Rh., 18 December 1947  
Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Document Book I A AMBROS

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

6 February 1948

We,

Victoria ORTON, ETO # 20 129,  
 Anne MARTIN, ETO # 20 144,  
 Beryl C. BESWICK, ETO # 20 183,  
 Patricia E.C. WOOD, ETO # 20 139,  
 Phyllis RAY, ETO # 36 287,  
 Arthur C. MACHAMARA, ETO # 20 191,  
 Leonard J. LAWRENCE, ETO # 20 138,  
 Julius J. STEUER, AGO-A - 442 654,  
 Eugene R. KUN, D - 429 798,

hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document Book I A AMBROS.

.....  
 Victoria ORTON  
 ETO # 20 129  
 pages I-X, 82-85,  
 109 - 113

.....  
 Patricia E.C. WOOD  
 ETO # 20 139  
 pages 114 - 118  
 1 - 10

.....  
 Anne MARTIN  
 ETO # 20 144  
 pages 11, 48-55, 60-61

.....  
 Eugene R. KUN  
 D - 429 798  
 pages 12-20, 119-126

.....  
 Julius J. STEUER  
 AGO-A-442 654  
 pages 21 - 31

.....  
 Leonard J. LAWRENCE  
 ETO # 20 138  
 pages 37 - 47

.....  
 Beryl C. BESWICK  
 ETO # 20 183  
 pages 52 - 59

.....  
 Phyllis RAY  
 ETO # 36 287  
 pages 70 - 76

.....  
 Arthur C. MACHAMARA  
 ETO # 20 191  
 pages 77 - 108.

Case 6  
Defense

TRIBUNAL VI  
CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK 1B

for

Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c.

Otto AMBROS

Personal Data

Submitted by  
the Defense Counsel

Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney at Law

Young



Table of Contents to Document Book IB  
for Dr. phil./rer. nat.h.c. Otto AMBROS  
Dr.

Doc.No:	Exh.No:	C o n t e n t s	Page
0A-136		<p>Affidavit by Eng. Emil Heck of 15 December 1947</p> <p>Eng. Heck is Director of the carbide factory in the I.G. Ludwigshafen plant. The carbide factory in the I.G. Ludwigshafen plant was under Otto Ambros.</p> <p>Eng. Emil Heck and 41 workers and employees with him describe Otto Ambros as an upright, intelligent and thoughtful man and superior both towards Germans and non-Germans.</p> <p>The shop stewards of the CDU, the SPD and the KPD have likewise made impartial statements about Otto Ambros in this affidavit at the same time. The shop steward of the SPD, Joseph Spiess, states literally: "As chief, Dr. Ambros had made his workers contented with their personal treatment. He was always honest with us. He was on a friendly footing with the foreign workers."</p> <p>The shop steward of the KPD, Jacob Haage, states literally: "Dr. Ambros was an exemplary chief, devoted to our social welfare."</p> <p>The shop steward of the CDU, Paul Dick, made a statement together with members of his party in the following affidavit 0A-137.</p>	1-8
0A-137		<p>Affidavit of 20 January 1948 by Paul Dick, shop steward of the CDU in the diol plants in the Ludwigshafen factory.</p> <p>Paul Dick makes a statement about the behavior of Otto Ambros and his attitude in the plant. At the same time 32 more workers and employees from the diol plants of the Ludwigshafen factory make statements with him. The diol plants in the Ludwigshafen factory under Otto Ambros; he is described as moral and of good character.</p>	9-17
0A-138		<p>Examination of Otto Ambros on 26 April 1947 by Randolph H. Newman of the Prosecution staff in the I.G. trial concerning Otto Ambros' knowledge in the question of the Eastern companies and the general policy of the I.G. with respect to the rubber factories in Russia.</p>	18-20



A f f i d a v i t  
-----

I, Dr. Otto Ambros, after having been duly warned that I will render myself liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit, state the following on oath, voluntarily and without constraint;

Concerning the question of the Eastern companies (monopoly companies) I was engaged with the problems of the Russian factories for synthetic rubber; on the other hand I can no longer recall clearly the structure of other companies. After the beginning of the Russian war conferences took place in the Reich Ministry of Economics (R.M.) which were convened there by Fuhrert, Hofmann and Schell. As far as rubber questions were concerned, the I.G. was represented by ter Meer and myself; I participated in my capacity as engineer. I do not know whether other conferences were also held in which I did not participate.

Insofar as the Synthese Kautschuk Ost GmbH, which was never definitely created, comes under consideration among the Eastern companies there was probably talk of introducing the Buna process in the Russian factories as thought out in accordance with our ideas. The basic question as how the Russian plants could be kept in operation and how they could be modified so that a practical rubber could be produced.

-2-

In connection with the whole synthetic rubber question in Russia one must distinguish 2 different projects. One concerned the procurement of engineers from the I.G. for the Russian factories which we expected to capture.

The request that such engineers be obtained from the I.G. came from the Reich Ministry of Economics. I was concerned with selecting the men.

Then a later stage involved discussions about the creation of the Eastern Rubber Company (Kautschuk Ost G.m.b.H.). I played no decisive role in this second question. Ter Meer dealt with the problems connected with making reports, whereas I was in charge of all the engineering questions connected with them.

Whether I.G. Farben was supposed to take part in other Russian enterprises later, in case we captured them are problems which were dealt with by the Business Committee or someone else, but which had no particular importance for myself. I was not a member of the Business Committee.

I want to state the following insofar as the I.G.'s general policy with respect to the rubber factories in Russia is concerned: Since the Reich Ministry of Economics had requested and also obtained engineers from the I.G. for the purpose of conservation and conceivably operating or continuing the Russian plants, as the only German firm which was expert in this field, I considered it important that if any technical improvements were secured through our men the I.G. should also be able to dispose of them within the German Reich. On the other hand, I know nothing about the question as to whether there were plans to acquire

-3-

the Russian plants (that is, to seize ownership or acquire property rights). However, a discussion did take place concerning a right to sell Russian plants in case they were captured and the German Reich should plan to sell them. My explanation for the reason of such a sales right in favor of the I.G. is that the I.G. had the general idea: If a factory is sold which uses our processes in its work, even if this process constitutes only a part of the whole, we want to be asked about it and we want to have an option of purchase. This is the conclusion which I draw, without remembering the details. In my opinion the Russian factories, as we had found them, were not interesting, but if the I.G. had been able to improve the factories they might perhaps have become interesting.

I have carefully read through each of the three pages of this affidavit and signed it in my own hand, have made the necessary corrections in my own handwriting and countersigned them with my initials, and I hereby declare on oath that I have told the whole truth in this statement according to the best of my knowledge and belief.

signed Otto Ambros

(Signature of deponent)

Sworn to and signed before me this 26 day of April 1947  
at Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany, by Dr. Otto Ambros,  
known to me to be the person making the above affidavit.

Mister Randolph H. Newman, attorney  
U.S. Civilian # 397712,  
Office of Chief of Counsel for  
War Crimes, U.S. War Department .

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is  
hereby certified.

Nuernberg, 7 February 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney at Law)

Document Book I B Ambros  
-----

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

16 April 1948

I, John B. Robinson, X-046350 hereby certify that  
I am a duly appointed translator for the German and  
English languages and that the above is a true and  
correct translation of the Document Book I B Ambros.

John B. Robinson  
X-046350

Case 6  
Defense

TRIBUNAL VI

CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK II A

for

OTTO AMEROS

SCHKOPAU WORKS

Presented by  
Defense Counsel

Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney-at-Law

gang





rubber production by way of a synthesis of Buna."

1-2

OA-202

17 Photographic Plates of the Schkopau Works, taken from a series of pictures of the Schkopau Works in 1942.

3-11

OA-203

Affidavit dated 15 January 1948 by Dipl.Ing. Leonhard REINHARDT.

Reinhardt took over the management of the Building Department of the Schkopau Works in the spring of 1935. He describes the structures and equipment for the use of the German and foreign workers at the Schkopau Works. The buildings for accommodating the staff comprised among other things:

Index to Document Book II A  
for Otto AMEROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		a) a community camp for 6000 German and foreign workers;	
		b) the former Polish housing camp;	
		c) the women's camp;	
		f) the Elisabethhoehe Community Camp and	
		5) the sports grounds	12-22
OA-204		14 Photographic Plates showing the living and working conditions of the foreign workers at Schkopau.	23-30
OA-205		Letter dated 12 March 1941 addressed by GEPETEX to I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. Ludwigshafen, concerning a circular on the employment of foreign (French and Belgian) assembly worker teams within the framework of the Chemical Production Plan. A draft specification for the erection work is attached.	31-38
OA-206		Contract between BUNA WERKE G.m.b.H. SCHNOPAU and the firm IRON HEQZ, Brussels, concerning the execution of assembly work.	
		"1) The Commissioner (Auftraggeberin) entrusts to the Assembly Firm the carrying out of assembly work, especially the assemblage of apparatus and pipe systems, the laying of pipe systems in the power plants and the installation of power and lighting systems.	
		2) For the fulfilment of the work entrusted to it, the Assembly Firm undertakes to make available at first 136 Belgian workers, composed as follows:	

Index to Document Book II A  
for Otto AMBROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		1 head fitter 36 mechanics 15 plumbers 18 gas and arc welders 46 assistant mechanics and, if possible, 20 high frequency electricians.	
		The parties reserve the right to adjust this number in accordance with the requirements of the work, or to alter the composition in regard to trades."	39-45
OA-207		Affidavit dated 10 February 1948 by Dr. Aden Boes, Consultant in the Social Welfare Department of the Buna Works at Schkopaau from September 1941 to August 1944. Boes gives his opinion on the question of the recruitment of French workers in the Departments of Eure and Orne in 1944. He describes the preparations to be made for cutting recruitment on a voluntary footing. "Owing to the invasion, we can no longer put our intentions into practice."	46-48
OA-208		Communication No. 50/42 dated 7 May 1942 from BUNA WERKE G.m.b.H. SCHKOPAU. This communication deals with the regulations for leave of the foreign workers. The communication mentions the <u>Reich Regulations dated 20 March 1942 for leave granted to foreign workers in works run by private enterprises</u> , which regulations are attached to Communication No. 50/42. According to the Reich Regulations foreign workers have a right to leave or compensation in lieu of leave.	49-54

Index to Document Book II A for  
Otto AMEROS

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	page
OA-209		Report from Buna-Werke G.m.b.H. Schkopau No. 51/43 of 12 May 1943. This report contains the announce- ment of special trains for men on furlough which, for the foreign workers, run to FRANCE, HOLLAND, BELGIUM, CROATIA PROTECTORATE and SLOVAKIA.	55-56
OA-210		Report from the Buna-Werke G.m.b.H. Schkopau No. 128/43 of 9 November 1943 about a Vitamin- Drive in 1944. "The Vitamin-Drive 1944 is to be carried out in the same manner as in 1943 for all employees of our plant (salaried employees and wage-earners including foreigners) for the months of January up to and including April".	57-58
OA-211		Report from the Buna-Werke G.m.b.H. Schkopau No. 8/44 of 17 January 1944, on granting additional food rations to PoVs and Italian Military Internees. According to this report the rations of meat, bread and fat for a rationing period (four weeks) are given as follows (in grams):	

Index to Document Book II A for

Otto AMEROS

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	page
----------	----------	-----------------	------

"Prisoners-of-war of all kinds,  
excepting Eastern workers.

Meat	Bread	Fat
	normal workers	
1000	9700	875
	recognized long-hour workers	
1000	9700	875
<u>520</u>	<u>1900</u>	<u>35</u>
1520	11600	930
	heavy workers	
1000	9700	875
<u>920</u>	<u>3700</u>	<u>255</u>
1920	13400	1130
	heaviest workers	
1000	9700	875
<u>1320</u>	<u>6400</u>	<u>455</u>
3320	16100	1330

Of the French prisoners-of-war employed  
here there are approximately  
23 % receiving additional rations as  
long-hour workers  
34% as heavy workers  
27 % as heaviest workers in the first  
and third week of each rationing  
period. In the second and fourth  
week 10 % of these are long-hour  
workers and 17 % normal workers.  
The rest of them amounting to approxi-  
mately 16 % are without additional  
rations".

59-62

OA-212

Circular letter of the Buna-forke  
G.m.b.H. Schkopau of 19 October 1944  
to all shops.

"Special rooms are provided in the  
concrete air-raid shelters for the  
plants and firms' employees - includ-  
ing aliens, for prisoners-of-war,  
for the civilian population, as well  
as for schools and kindergartens.  
These rooms are marked with suitable  
signs".

63-64



Index to Document Book II A for

Otto AMEROS

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	page
CA-213		<p>Letter of the Chemischen Werke Buna (formerly Buna-Werke G.m.b.H.) dated 16 December 1947.</p> <p>The copy of a report to the Central Administration of Public Health Welfare in Berlin, dated 24 February 1947, was sent with this letter. The report to the Central Administration of Public Health Welfare in Berlin deals with statistics on illness and the assistance rendered by the Schkopau plant in the field of sickness relief during the war.</p> <p>The letter from the Chemische Werke Buna dated 16 December 1947 reads as follows:</p> <p>"Everybody knows here that up to the end of the war the foreigners did not receive any other or worse treatment than the German workers".</p>	65-76
CA-214		<p>Affidavit of Dipl.Ingl.Hilde DOERR, certified on 9 February 1948.</p> <p>Hilde DOERR states that in 1944 she went to the sick-bay for foreign female workers of the Buna Werk Schkopau, in order to obtain a cure for neuritis and to undergo the necessary medical treatment there.</p> <p>"The sick-bay was in charge of a Russian lady doctor who also took charge of my treatment and who was authorized to fix the time of my release after my recovery. A Russian nurse was employed as sick-bay attendant who was extremely conscientious in attending to her duties. A young Frenchwoman, who was no longer confined to bed, shared the room with me.</p>	

Index to Document Book II a for

Otto AMBROS

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	page
		"Once I was no longer confined to bed I talked with many female foreigners at the sick-bay and ascertained that nobody was obliged to leave the sick-bay before having fully recovered".	77-78
CA-215		Affidavit of Dr. Bernhard JACOBI of 28 October 1947. JACOBI was plant leader of the Buna-Werk Schkopau. On the attitude of 4 Frenchwomen who were employed by him he reports as follows: "I often had a private talk with these people. Naturally political controversy could not be bridged over, however, these men - perhaps with the exception of Russenot - accepted their personal position as workers in Germany as their fate and they never complained of unnecessary aggravation of the situation by any possible harshness or negligence on the part of the plant- and camp-management. They often told me of the entertainments they were allowed to organize in the camp according to their own wishes".	79-80
CA-216		Affidavit of Dr. Philipp ORTH of 28 October 1947, plant manager of the Buna-Werke, Schkopau, from 1 July 1938 up to 31 June 1945. ORTH describes his relations with French workers, and the attitude they maintained while in the plant Schkopau. "Since on the basis of my knowledge of French, I was able to make myself understood among the Frenchmen of whom I was in charge I was thus enabled to consider their personal wishes and requirements, in each individual case applying the same standards as were used in the case	

Index of Document Book II A

for Otto AABROS

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	page
		of German workers. The German foremen were advised to establish their official and private relations with the Frenchmen in a spirit of comradeship and to straighten out the possible divergencies caused by the difference in nationality."	81-83
QA-217		Affidavit of Karl SCHAEFFER of 1 July 1947 concerning his discussion with Monsieur Jean Marie LECHEF who, after the conclusion of war operations in 1945, was elected by the foreign workers as camp-leader of the camp occupied by them and confirmed as such by the American military authorities. "On this occasion Monsieur LECHEF told me in effect that the Buna-Jerke dwelling camp for foreigners had to be described as a model camp."	84-85

Excerpt from the  
Berliner Borsenzeitung, Berlin  
of 10 June 1937

ON THE MANUFACTURE  
AND USE OF BUNA.

Dr. C. A m b r e s , Director of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.,  
Ludwigshafen, gave a lecture in the " House of Technical  
Science" in Essen on the

problems of synthetic rubber.

At first he dealt with the technical and economic development of  
natural rubber, and defined rubber as an industrial material  
which by reason of its thermoplasticity can be easily extruded,  
and which by vulcanization can be stabilized in every desired  
form, while retaining its elasticity. Owing to these unique  
qualities rubber became an indispensable industrial material.  
The motor car industry, in particular, which in Germany and  
America accounts for about 60 to 70% of the rubber consumption,  
came to be dependent on it and its whole development.

In view of the key position which this industry is gradually  
coming to hold in the economic life of every modern state, it is  
understandable that every country is endeavoring to secure  
its rubber supply. The new Germany, which considers  
motorization a decisive factor for economic revival, must be  
independent in its actions. The State, therefore, decided, as the  
safest means to solve this problem, to develop its own rubber  
production by way of a synthesis of Buna. The chemist sees his  
task of the synthesis of rubber from a wider angle. He does not  
want merely to produce " natural rubber" and win the battle of  
prices under the protection of national guarantees, but he tries

consciously and by working on theoretical ideas on the  
structure of the substance to invent various  
kinds of Buna with specific  
qualities



most suited to the various fields of practical use. Today the process starts from a basic substance capable of reaction, the name of which is Butadien, and which is produced by combining two acetylene molecules via catalytic processes which bind these molecules in their hundreds of thousands in a delicately adjusted system. By influencing the conditions of reaction, or by building other suitable molecules to form the long chains of polymerized Butadien molecules the chemist varies the qualities of Buna. Thus the I.G. Farbenindustrie today produces four kinds of Buna which have been tested by the German rubber industry for the most varied uses. The tire industry affords the largest market. This industry has now succeeded, in closest cooperation with the producers of Buna in overcoming to a large extent the initial difficulties in the processing and applying to Buna the method of processing natural rubber. The Buna Plant has now been running for several months and has been turning out a product of uniformly good quality.

On the strength of these satisfactory results the plant is already being expanded to a capacity which will cover one third of the German requirements.

I herewith certify that the above is a true and complete copy of an article of the Berliner Börsenblatt, dated 10 June 1937.

Nuremberg, 10 February 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law.



The Reich road to the works.



Partial view of the works with power station



Construction of an underground shelter.



Partial view 1942.



By the main work-shop.



Hydrogenation ethylene and carbide factory.



den

Otto Ambros Settlement under construction



Hutted camp.





Power plant Power Station I



PARTIAL VIEW OF PYROLYTIC ACID FURNACE  
Partial view of pyrolytic acid furnace



Styrene furnaces.



Buna Polymerization.



Buna processing.



Buna



- 10 -

Drawing Office of the Technical Department for Construction



Apprentices' work-shop



Apprentices' forge

I herewith certify that the above 17 photographs were taken from  
a series of pictures on the Schkopau works in 1942.

Nuremberg, 14 February 1948

Signed Hoffmann

( Hoffmann )

Rechtsanwalt

I herewith certify that the above copy  
is complete and correct.

Nuremberg, 14 February 1948

Signed: Hoffmann

( Rechtsanwalt )



Affidavit

-----

I, Leonhard Reinhardt, Diplom-Ingenieur, residing in Schkopau, Leunastrasse 13, having been warned that I render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit, declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be produced in evidence before the Military Tribunal No. 1 in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

In the spring of 1936, at the start of the construction work for the Buna Works in Schkopau, I was entrusted by Director Dr. Ambros with the construction management for the works. I organized the construction department and am still in charge of it. The construction department is subdivided into several surface construction sections, an underground construction section, a railway construction section, a woodworkshop section, including carpenter shop and joinery, a painting section, an insulation and furnace construction section, a dwellings building section and a heavy transport section. Until recently, the construction department was also in charge of the railway section. In addition, there also belonged to the construction department the office of the commercial department, a construction office, an office for survey and real estate affairs and a photographic section. In 1937, I was appointed Oberingenieur and authorized agent (Handlungsvollmacht) for the Buna Werke G.m.b.H. and the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G., Schkopau Works, and in 1941 I was appointed head clerk (Prokurist) of the Buna Werke G.m.b.H. in Schkopau.

In the following statements, I shall describe broadly the principal construction works for social purposes in the Buna Werke in Schkopau.

During the first years of the works expansion, the construction office of the I.G. Farben Werk in Ludwigshafen/Rhine was also responsible for the construction planning. Approximately since 1939, all construction planning work was done in the construction department of the Buna Werk in Schkopau. The construction work for special purposes was, therefore, carried out in accordance with the directives issued by the construction department of the I.G. Works in Ludwigshafen.

In general, it may be said that the construction work for social purposes was planned and carried out by the Works in accordance with the intentions of the chief management of the construction project and particularly in accordance with the intentions of Director Dr. Ambros, which were based on his social minded attitude. This work was carried out with the aid of the latest research results and experiences, without any special restrictions as to building costs, with the result that it was considered absolutely first class. Enclosed photographs will prove this point.

The following are some of the construction works for social purposes:

- 1.) Sanitary installations consisting mainly of bath and toilet facilities,
- 2.) buildings for medical control and treatment of the employees,
- 3.) messing facilities and buildings for cultural purposes, i.e. club, community houses, kitchens, recreation halls, and theater facilities,
- 4.) buildings for accommodation of the employees i.e. community camps and flats,
- 5.) sport facilities,
- 6.) facilities for the vocational training of young people.

ad 1.) Sanitary Buildings:

Three solid factory bath houses, comprising several floors are constructed within the works. The two larger ones have an accommodation capacity for approximately 2000 persons. The smaller one serves for specialists employed in plants dealing with mercury. The buildings are most modernly furnished with tiled floors and walls and the best Majolika installations for basins and showers. The workers using these baths generally have one iron locker, workers from particularly dirty plants have even two lockers, one for street clothes and one for working clothes. In the special bath, the lockers are constructed of white ceramic glazed tiles in order to preserve absolute cleanliness. Separate dressing rooms are used for street clothes and working clothes, and the wash and shower rooms are located between these two rooms. Special care was taken in lighting and heating.

The young people are accommodated in special rooms. One or more toilets are attached to these bath rooms.

Apart from these general factory baths, the various factories where the workers are exposed to exceptional dirt or heat or chemical agents (furnace houses, boiler houses, carbide factory, chlorine plants and others), have special bath installations and dressing rooms, furnished in the same superior manner as the general baths. Wherever it is necessary to preserve absolute cleanliness of the lockers, these are likewise made of white glazed ceramic material. Each worker has two lockers, one for street clothes and one for working clothes.

ad 2.) Buildings for medical control and treatment of the employees.

For medical control and treatment of the employees there is a clinic, as well as a hospital for men and one for women, the latter with a confinement ward and an infants' ward attached, and various dispensaries in the community camps.

The clinic, which has a staff of several physicians, assistants and nurses, is furnished with various treatment rooms equipped with excellent medical and sanitary installations. Even a modern X-Ray apparatus was set up. A separate clinic was built for women.

The hospitals which are established in <sup>bata</sup> each have a fully equipped consultation room with adjoining waiting rooms, and several wards holding 2 - 4 beds. There are separate wards for infectious and non-infectious diseases. Each of the two sections has a special sunny day-room with arm chairs and recreation facilities. Despite the fact that the bata are built of wood, the entire equipment of the hospitals fulfills fully the sanitary and hygienic requirements of a modern hospital.

ad 3.) Dining facilities and buildings for cultural purposes.

The so-called Fellowship House serves for the feeding of the employees, and there are other equally well-equipped buildings in various parts of the works serving the same purpose, as well as various canteens for the foreign employees and, in addition, community mess huts in the community camp. The Fellowship House is a modern building which consists mainly of a large hall with high windows, which includes stage facilities for concerts and social parties. A lobby, checking room and sanitary installations are located in front of the hall. Furthermore, in one of its wings the building holds several modern guest rooms. As the main rooms are also used for serving the noon meal to 300 people, the main kitchen of the works is annexed to the Fellowship House, and contains all installations necessary for the operation of a modern kitchen (sculleries, special rooms for the preparation of vegetables and potatoes, refrigerating chambers, recreation halls, staff dressing-rooms and bathrooms, offices, store rooms for food and beverages and so on). In addition, the basement houses a tastefully furnished beer hall and two bowling alleys. The above-mentioned three mess buildings in the works each contain a mess hall for 250 people, a checking room, a serving room, a room for the sale of beverages, cigarettes etc., and toilets. The two community mess huts with the adjoining modern kitchen installations in the community camp are intended for the simultaneous feeding of 1000 and 2000 employees respectively. Like the Fellowship House, they also each have a stage, on the larger of which operas, plays, and particularly variety shows are given.

Apart from the afore mentioned facilities for the cultural and feeding requirements of the employees, all plants have their own recreation rooms, which are generally capable of holding the entire day shift and



a part of the next shift. The rooms serve for the serving of meals, for the assembly of the employees, for instructional, educational and training purposes, for the exchange of opinions etc.. Food brought along by the employees may be kept in special lockers which are placed in special rooms. In addition, there are heating and cooling boxes, wash facilities, facilities for rinsing the dishes and toilets. The set-up of these rooms is remarkable from a hygienic and aesthetic point of view.

ad. 4.) Buildings for the accommodation of the employees.

I. Community Camps:

Whereas, in the first years following the erection of the works, the building of accommodation kept pace with the erection of the works proper, the increasing number of employees and transfers at the end of 1939 necessitated construction of community camps, which subsequently accommodated a considerable part of the workers.

There were created:

a) The community camp at the Korbethaer Weg for the accommodation of 6000 workers.

Besides the two above-mentioned community mass huts with all their necessary facilities, it contains several blocks of dwellings, an infirmary, an administration hut, a hut for craftsmen (tailor, shoemaker, barber, pressing shop), grocer shops, a library, a post office, a disinfection hut and others. The dwelling blocks consisted mostly of three wings with a centrally located wash room, shower room, and drying room for clothes. Each block contains approximately 15 living rooms, each holding 16 beds, the necessary lockers, a table and chairs. One or two rooms of each block, intended as recreation halls, are furnished with a radio set, periodicals and games. In the wash rooms, there is running warm water available in ceramic wash basins, one faucet for five men, and footbath facilities. The walls are provided with mirrors.



Next to the wash room there is a shower room equipped for ten persons and provided with an ante-room. There is a special drying room for clothes which enables one to dry clothes and washing quickly and hygienically through the introduction of hot air and suitable airing. So that the staff need not leave the huts - which are steam-heated throughout - during the night, a night latrine has been built next to the wash room. The day latrines have been arranged between the wings of the individual blocks in such a way that they can be reached by the shortest possible route. These face the doors of the huts. They consist of white glazed china flush basins, are provided with hinged seats and flushing devices, hand basins and are also steam heated. Each latrine contains sixteen seats in individual compartments. The majority of the roads and paths in the camp are plastered and surfaced with sandstone and the whole area is landscaped and surrounded by low polygon fencing. The chief occupants of this camp were German and foreign workers and their accommodation was identical. Whenever German military prisoners or French prisoners of war were billeted there, the parts of the camp in question were merely divided off in accordance with existing regulations.

b) Former Polish accommodations at the Korbethaer Heg:

Immediately next to the so-called community camp there was the so-called Polish camp which was similarly equipped, especially as regards sanitary and hygienic facilities. The camp was merely divided off with a wire fence in accordance with existing regulations and was under a special guard while it was being used to accommodate Poles and at times also French prisoners of war.

c) Women's Camp.

The equipment and furnishing of the rooms in the women's camp corresponds to that of the large community camp; the construction of the buildings, however, is more substantial. About 500 female workers could be accommodated there.

d) Community Camp for Eastern Workers in the South-west of the Camp.

The eastern workers were accommodated in a separate, fenced camp which was guarded and which had its own kitchen, dining hall, sick-bay, wash huts and latrines and a hot water plant.

The camp was fitted <sup>with</sup> stoves. In the course of operations an additional hut was fitted out as day-nursery and school house. The latrines, which were fitted with water closets, were equipped with central heating. The sick bay of the eastern workers' camp was intended solely for light cases; the seriously ill were transferred to the plant hospital.

e) Camp for Russian Prisoners of War.

Immediately next to the eastern workers' camp there were two huts for Russian prisoners of war. As regards water supply, drains and latrines, the sanitary facilities of the huts conformed to requirements. They were heated by stoves.

f) Community Camp Elisabethhoche.

After the regulations relating to the accommodation of Poles had been relaxed, a solidly constructed community camp was built for these at the suburb settlement Herssburg-Elisabethhoche. This consisted of 26 smaller buildings with 4 rooms each and each room accommodated 10 to 12 men.

Each of the buildings also contained a common wash-room with running water and had an air raid shelter in the cellar.

## II. Plant-owned and Plant-sponsored Houses.

The building of houses for the staff was started simultaneously with the construction of the Buna plant and the following were built:

- a) plant-owned houses,
- b) plant-sponsored houses, owned by third parties,
- c) settlements including plots, which became the property of the workers.

By the end of 1944, a total of 2193 houses had been built.

### ad a) Plant-owned houses:

These houses, which were built for chemists, engineers, business employees, foremen and workers, consisted mainly of one-family houses but in part also of two storied and apartment houses. These were specially equipped and furnished and were built because it was realized that the home is one of the fundamental requirements of the human being and is therefore of especial importance. All houses, including workers' houses, contain a modern bath, which as a result of Dir. Dr. ALBERS' special request, was included in the workers' houses as well, and was fitted with a built-in white ceramic wash basin and running water. Judging by design and furnishing, these houses are among the most modern in Germany. All these houses and settlements are surrounded by gardens, mainly ornamental, which were designed by special landscape gardening firms and architects. Living area per head fluctuates between 15 to 30 square meters.

### ad b) Plant-sponsored Houses:

According to their style and equipment, the plant-sponsored houses must also be considered to be of excellent quality and modern design.

ad c) Settlements including plots, which become the property of the workers.

The so-called Otto-Ambros-Settlement was a special type of housing estate consisting of 87 houses and the individual was enabled and entitled to buy his own house at low cost either by working for it or by expending capital (about R. 500.--). The one-family home, which included a plot of land of about 600 to 1000 square meters, cost about RM 7400.-- to 8000.-- to build. After some years, and provided the settlers prove reliable, the property is to be transferred to them. The following was further provided when the settlers moved in: fruit-trees, shrubs, the necessary gardening implements, seed potatoes and fertiliser, a pig or a sheep or a goat, also two rabbits and five chickens. These were intended to serve as a basis for the settlement's economic needs. The rent was between RM 32.-- to 34.50. The settlement home contains a combined living room and kitchen, 3 bedrooms (5 bedrooms for families with 6 or more children), cellar, combined laundry and fodder room, toilet, stable and shed. Living space available is 56 or 70 square meters.

This Otto-Ambros-Settlement, which was named after Dir. Dr. AMBROS in honor of his services to social welfare, bears this name still.

The plant administration intended to house about one third of the total staff in plant-owned, plant-sponsored or settlement homes.

Up to 1944 the following sums were spent on housing:

a) on plant-owned houses	RM 9.764.000.--
b) on plant-sponsored houses through plant loans	RM 4.173.000.--
lost contributions	292.000.--

The total expenditure for housing was RM 27.000.000.--. As a result of the low rent the rate of interest on works-owned homes can be put down at 1 1/2 to 2 1/2 %.



To 5) Sports Grounds:

As a first step in the laying out of generously planned sports grounds an open-air swimming pool was built with all the latest improvements. Football grounds were also planned, with space for contests, tennis-courts, playing grounds for hockey, volley ball etc. The grounds were to be laid out like a park and were to have a restaurant.

To 6) Grounds for the vocational training of Youth:

For carrying out this training and for occupying male youth an extensive building, with classrooms, chemistry laboratories and three workshops for metal and wood work, as well as for electrical engineering was erected with all welfare, hygienic and sanitary installations.

The cost of the above mentioned welfare work amounted to approx. RM 24,500,000.- up to March 1945; this amount does not include the cost of improvements to dwellings sponsored by the firm, and the settlement houses of the Otto-Ambros-settlement. It should be mentioned that the plant received special recognition for its welfare institutions, such as

- 1) the community camp,
- 2) the housing scheme and maintenance of the houses,
- 3) the medical equipment and medical care,
- 4) the workshops for training purposes.

Another special proof that the plant management had at heart the welfare of all the workers, was the fact that at the time of the

collapse not only the welfare and plant installations were, apart from some minor damage, spared destruction; but most of the works' property was preserved, and order maintained through the intervention of a committee of French workers. Any plundering which took place in the plant and in the stores was mostly of essential objects needed by the foreign staff. The plants' extensive housing settlements remained almost untouched.

Schkopau, 15 January 1948

Kr.

signed: Leonhard Reinhardt.



I herewith certify that the above signature of Diplom-Ingenieur  
Leonhard Reinhardt, domiciled at Schkopau, Leunastr. 13, was  
made before me, Notary Johannes Grobe, Merseburg.

Merseburg, 15 January 1948

signed: Johannes Grobe  
Notary

Stamp.

(Costs)

I herewith certify that the above is a true  
and complete copy.

Nuremberg, 12 February 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law.



Housing barracks in a camp street.



Hairdresser's shop in a camp street.



Dormitory



Sitting-room



Dining-room



Distribution of additional food cards

to foreign workers.



Interior of a beauty parlor



Religious society.





Interior of a cobbler's work-shop.



Foreign designers at work.



Football game



French spectators at a sports meeting

C.-Document No. 204  
( Continued )



Sports meeting.



Visit from the boxer Schmeling

Cl.-Document No. 204  
( Continued )

I herewith certify that the above 14 photographs were  
handed over to me as original photos of the Schkopau  
works.

Nuremberg, 14 February 1948

signed: Hoffmann  
( Hoffmann )

Rechtsanwalt

I herewith certify that the above copy is  
correct and complete.

Nuremberg, 14 February 1948

signed: Hoffmann

Rechtsanwalt.

C o p y

The Plenipotentiary for the Four Year Plan  
The Plenipotentiary General  
for Special Questions of the Chemical Production

Berlin W 9, 12 March 1941  
Saarlandstrasse 128  
Telephone : 12 00 48  
Teletype : K 1-113  
Telegram address : Gebechem

Initials : I T le Dr. Sdl/De

Diary No. 30469/41

Reference :

Subject : Assignment of Foreign Assembly Worker Teams.

To the

I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.

L u d w i g s h a f e n - O p p a u

Enclosed herewith I send you my circular letters concerning the assignment of foreign - French and Belgian - assembly worker teams. As the carrying out of your building and assembly work projects could be speeded up by the assignment of such teams, it is recommended that you give your fullest attention to this matter.

Heil Hitler :

By commission :  
signed : Kirscher

The Plenipotentiary for the Four Year Plan  
The Plenipotentiary General  
for Special Questions of the Chemical Production 3 March 1941

Subject : Assignment of Foreign Assembly Worker Teams within  
the Framework of the Chemical Production Plan.

For the assignment of French and Belgian assembly worker teams, documental data are required which show exactly the extent and type of the work. The enclosure offers an outline as to how these data should be given.



For the preliminary negotiations, the data must, apart from the exact composition of the teams & the beginning and duration of the work, show particularly what tools, apparatuses (for instance, welding apparatuses) etc., are to be brought by the workers. Without such detailed data, it is impossible to organize in the preliminary negotiations teams that are suitable for assignment, or to submit practical suggestions to the foreign contractor firms concerning the organization of such teams.

In the preliminary negotiations already conducted, considerable importance <sup>was</sup> attached to the question of the accommodation and feeding of the workers. It is therefore advisable to give on these points also as precise data as possible.

In order to eliminate misconceptions which have occurred in several instances, I again emphasize that this operation only includes the assignment of working teams as units in a clearly defined working field or several such fields, but is by no means, however, a question of assigning individual workers or specialists, who, as hitherto, will be requisitioned through the Labor Assignment Administration (Arbeitseinsatzverwaltung).

The assignment of foreign assembly worker teams on work-hire basis analogous to the assignment of German assembly firms to your plants has the great advantage that foreign assembly firms guarantee you, in a contract to be concluded between you, faultless assembly work and its completion in time, the costs as a rule being slightly lower than would be the case with the corresponding German firms. Another advantage is that the foreign assembly firms, in their own best interests, will only assign highly qualified workers on a work-hire basis to work which has to be performed on their own responsibility.

In view of the fact that a large number of recruitments for the Wehrmacht are to be anticipated this year - simultaneously with accelerated expansion - it is in your own best interests that you give your fullest attention to this method proposed by me and make the best of certain inconveniences.

Heil Hitler !

signed : Dr.G.Krauch

E n c l o s u r e

P - r e f

cf - specification describing the manner in which  
installations are to be set up.

-----

Re: Enlarging an aluminum factory.

1.) Erecting a Rectifier Installation.

The work consists mainly of handling aluminum and steel bars, that is the filing, drilling and joining with screws of profiled steel parts and aluminum bars having medium and large cross sections. ( The largest cross section is 180 by 22 cm). The work also consists of finishing sheet metal plates and duct-material. The purely electrical work consists of the laying of conduits and the erection of electrical equipment, such as power-switches, operation-switches, protecting devices, measuring instruments, transformers, through-loaders and similar items.

For the installation of the power supply, the work mainly consists of laying the control and power cables. Next to the laying of the cables themselves, the most important work is the cutting off and the preparation of the terminal pieces for the cables. When laying the conduits, the switchboards must also be wired, and here the work mainly consists of connecting through a clamp bracket the boards which hold the measuring instruments and which have been mounted in the factory, with the cables mentioned above. This work will require:

20 mechanics, 20 electricians for about 4 months, although  
the full team cannot be fully employed before about the  
1. April 1941.

2. Erection of the Furnace Framework.

There are 160 furnace frames to be erected for the electrolysis of aluminum.

The work consists in fitting and joining with screws the individual constructional parts. The frame is about 4 meters high. This work requires:

10 mechanics, 3 arc welders, 5 unskilled fitters.

The job will take approximately 3 months.

Work starts on 1. March 1941.

3. Erection of the Gaswashing Installation:

There are 12 tanks of 6 m diameter and 16 m in height which have to be riveted, and the staircases as well as the catwalks have to be mounted.

This job requires:

12 mechanics, 3 riveters, 2 caulkers, 2 carpenters,

1 arc welder, 12 unskilled fitters.

Work starts on 1. March 1941. Duration of the work:

approximately 5 months.

4. Laying of Piping.

There are large sheet metal pipes to be laid with diameters ranging between 120 and 200 mm. About 1500-1800 m length of pipes has to be laid. The work must be carried out at a height of approximately 20 m.

This job requires:

3 mechanics, 2 welders, 13 unskilled workers.

All workers must be able to work at a great height.

The work starts 10. February 1941. Duration: approximately

4 months.

5. Installation of Current Conductors.

Aluminum bars, measuring 220 by 22 mm have to be drilled, welded, bent, and the contact-locations polished clean. The bars have to be fitted for length and joined with screws. Also centrifugal pumps, air pumps together with pipes of up to 250 mm inside diameter have to be mounted.

This work requires:

3 mechanics, 5 welders, 40 unskilled fitters. The requested welders must be able to carry out the usual welding work required on the building site. They must also be skilled aluminum welders.

The work starts: 15 February 1941. Completion of the work:  
1 September 1941.

6.) Erection of the Soederberg Equipment.

The steel construction for a coke milling installation is to be erected, together with the complete equipment for the installation.

This will require: 20 mechanics, 20 welders, 18 unskilled fitters. Of the workers required, at least one half must be free from giddiness and be able to move about on steel scaffolding at a height of 35 meters.

Start of the work: 1 April 1941; duration: approximately 4 months.



The Plenipotentiary for the Four Year Plan  
The Plenipotentiary General for Special  
Questions of Chemical Production

Berlin W 9, 11 March 1941  
Saarlandstrasse 128  
Telephones : 12 00 48  
Teletype : K 1-113  
Cable Address : Gobechem

Reference : I T lc Dr. Sdl/De  
Diary No. 24301/41 - II. ang.

Reference :

Subject : Employment of foreign assembly teams within the  
framework of the Chemical Production Plan.

On each occasion when preliminary conferences have been concluded between my agents in Paris or in Brussels on the employment of foreign assembly teams, immediately on receipt of my orders you are to send a representative to Paris or to Brussels to conclude the contract. This representative must be accurately informed as to the technical and social conditions under which the foreign teams are to be employed. (Type and scope of the work, with plans and diagrams, necessary hand tools, wages, conditions of housing and messing). In order not to delay the departure of your representative after the receipt of my notification, you are to obtain a visa upon the offer of the mediation proposal, or an entry permit for the occupied territories which is valid for a longer period. In addition, at the offer of a mediation proposal, the permit of the responsible Abwehrstelle for the Employment of Foreigners has to be obtained in order that the final conclusion of the agreement is not be delayed by this office.

Concerning the payment of the foreign firms and of the employees, the following rules apply :

- a) from the wages received, the married French and Belgian workers may transfer up to 125 Marks per month, and the single workers up to 80 Marks per month.
- b) The profit of the foreign company represents payment for a service, which may be transferred within the framework of the German - French or German - Belgian clearing agreement. The transfer is effected through the Foreign Exchange Office which is responsible for your district.

Heil Hitler!

I.K.

signed : Kirscher

I certify that the above is a true and correct copy of the original :

Dr. Wolfgang A l t ,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948

(3,2) 13, 14, 50, 81, 86, 109

(Stamp) Director Riedenkopf  
(Stamp) Technical Department  
Received 10 Sept. 1941 Initialled: B

The following agreement is concluded between :

The German firm : Buna-Werke Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung (limited liability company) Schkopau-über-Merseburg (hereinafter called the "Commissioner" (Auftraggeberin) and the foreign firm of Leon Heq of Brussels (hereinafter called the "Assemblage Firm").

1. The Commissioner entrusts to the Assemblage Firm the carrying out of assemblage work, especially the assemblage of apparatus and pipe systems, the laying of pipe systems in the power plants and the installation of power and lighting systems.

2. For the fulfilment of the work entrusted to it, the Assemblage Firm undertakes to make available at first 136 Belgian workers, composed as follows :

1 head fitter  
36 mechanics  
15 plumbers  
18 gas and arc welders  
46 assistant mechanics and, if possible,  
20 high frequency electricians.

The Parties reserve the right to adjust this number in accordance with the requirements of the work or to alter the composition in regard to trades.

Of the workers to be installed, a proportion of 10% shall if possible have an adequate knowledge of the German language, so as to render possible a proper understanding between the foreign workers and the Germans working with or supervising them. Each of the assemblage worker teams proposed must have one worker capable of acting as interpreter.

If for any reason workers fall out permanently from the assemblage team, the Assemblage Firm is obliged to provide substitute workers as soon as possible, in order to avoid delays in the work.

3. The assignment of the assemblage team is directed according to the instructions by the Commissioner. The Assemblage Firm will appoint as building supervisor a head fitter, who will also work with the others. It will carry out the building supervision, in accordance with the directions of the building management of the Commissioner, or respectively that of the firm delegated by the latter. The relationship of the Assemblage Firm to the workers assigned by them is that of their employer.

4. The work will be given to the Assemblage Firm <sup>if possible,</sup> for a lump sum based on the number of working hours, as calculated by the Commissioner, or on an estimate, if necessary, based on work already carried out on other sites by firms employed by the Commissioner.

Where orders are carried out for a lump sum based on a calculated number of working hours, the workers assigned thereto shall participate in the piece-work arrangement.

The hours normally gained in piece-work shall be fully paid by the Commissioner. Any minus hours that may occur shall be for the charge of the Assemblage Firm, unless extra time is allowed by the Commissioner on account of special circumstances - for example, difficulties in assemblage - which are not the fault of the Assemblage Firm.

In so far as fixed sums cannot be determined for the work to be given, payment is to be made to the workers assigned by the Assemblage Firm according to the number of hours worked.

The following are fixed as rates of payment for the Assemblage Firm :

Head fitter	RM 2.10 per hour
Mechanic and Plumber	RM 1.70 per hour

Gas and arc welders	RM 1.85 per hour
Electricians	RM 1.65 per hour
Assistant mechanics	RM 1.35 per hour

5. The Assemblage Firm undertakes to allow the workers assigned by it to work up to 60 hours a week. For over-time exceeding 48 hours in the week, it will receive for every further hour, an addition to the rates named under No. 4 of 25%, for Sunday and holiday work a supplement of 50%, in so far as other supplementary payments have not been laid down in accordance with legal regulations, or tariff regulations specially applicable for the Assemblage site.

The usual working hours on the building site of the Commissioner are applicable to the foreign workers. The workers must regularly use the clocking-in machines for control of working time.

6. The Commissioner will pay the costs of the first journey of the workers of the Assemblage Firm to take up their job and also the return journey home after completion. The Commissioner will compensate the Assemblage Firm at the rate of RM 1.20 per worker per hour for the days taken up by the journey and for the working days that of necessity elapse before the work is started, with a maximum, however, of 8 hours per day. Supplements for Sundays and holidays are not paid on this account.

7. The Commissioner shall pay to the Assemblage Firm the following rates of remuneration per worker per calendar day :

Head fitter	RM 4.50
All others	RM 3.50



From this will be subtracted the costs for board and lodging, leaving pocket money in amount of RM 1.- to the worker and RM 2.- to the head fitter per calendar day.

When leave days are directly adjoined by a Sunday, remuneration is not payable for the Sunday. In cases of illness, remuneration will be paid up to 3 days, provided a doctor is consulted and his certificate is produced. In cases of absence from the Assemblage work without good reason, remuneration will not be paid.

8. Board and lodging for the workers will be found by the Commissioner. For this purpose, RM 2.50 will be reckoned per day per man. Food distribution will take place in accordance with the prevailing German regulations.

9. In the case of prolonged absence of workers (leave, illness of long duration etc.), the following is applicable: The Assemblage Firm undertakes to further the work entrusted to it with all the means at its disposal; if as a result of any measures the Assemblage Firm temporarily loses any of its workers, it can be obliged, in order to avoid delays, to install substitutes.

The foreign workers assigned are subject during their term of assignment to the German laws prevailing in Reich territory regarding labor, social insurance and taxes. In particular, they are subject to

a) the German tariff regulations applicable to the building site of the Commissioner; allotments over and above these which are not approved by the Reich Trustee for Labor may not be accorded to foreign workers or other authorized recipients even in their homeland. Furthermore, settlement of wages with the

individual foreign workers must take place at the works location in accordance with the German regulations applicable thereto;

b) the German regulations regarding sick insurance, disability insurance and employees' insurance. The contributions to these branches of insurance are to be paid in by the Commissioner to the German insurance agent concerned for account of the Assemblage Firm. The foreign workers are further subject to Reich accident insurance; however, the workers sent to Germany by the Assemblage Firm will remain insured for the first six months in the Belgian accident insurance (C. 1912 - Belgian Agreement concerning Accident Insurance - 6 July 1912 - Reich Legal Gazette 1913, page 23);

c) all other German legal regulations concerning labor and social welfare;

d) the German legal tax regulations; the taxes are to be paid in by the Commissioner to the German agencies concerned for account of the Assemblage Firm.

The foreign workers are therefore to be treated in the same way as comparable German workers, in so far as the German law does not provide special regulations for foreign workers; they are also to be paid in accordance with the decisions applicable for German workers during air raid alarms.

10. Wages settlements for the individual foreign workers, including all the preliminary work, such as reporting, involved therewith, are effected at the works location in accordance with the German regulations applicable thereto by the Assemblage Firm, with the help of the personnel of the Commissioner, which will be placed at their disposal for this purpose.

These employees will work exclusively in accordance with the directions of the Commissioner, and the salaries of the personnel required in this connection will be for the charge of the Assemblage Firm.

The Assemblage Firm shall hand to the Commissioner within 5 days after arrival of the workers at the Assemblage location, and thereafter periodically by the 5th of each month, a list showing the family relationship of the employee. The employer's proportion of the social welfare contributions payable by the Assemblage Firm will be placed to the account of the Assemblage Firm by the Commissioner.

11. By the payment of the rates as set forth under No. 4, all sums due to the Assemblage Firm, such as share of profits, personal costs, administration costs of the parent house and of the assemblage site, building inspection, social welfare contributions, as well as all other costs arising from the carrying out of the assigned work, are settled. On the other hand, materials, lighting, water and heating facilities will be furnished by the Commissioner.

12. The workers to be installed by the Assemblage Firm shall begin work with the Commissioner as quickly as possible.

This contract shall be at first for a duration of 3 months. It is intended to be prolonged after expiry of this term for an indefinite period. Both Parties, after the expiry of the three months, have the right to determine the contract at one month's notice from the end of any calendar month.

Any disputes that may arise out of this contract shall be determined by reference to the Lower Court of Merseburg or the Upper Court of Halle/Saale.

Schkopau, 8 September 1941.

BUNA-WERKE

Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung

signed: BIEDENKOPF signed: ppa. SCARIUS

signed: L. HECQ

The correctness and completeness of the foregoing copy  
are hereby certified.

Nuremberg, 11 February 1948

signed : Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Affidavit

I, Dr. Adam B O E S, of Leverkusen-Wiesdorf, Zeppelinstrasse 10, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit, herewith declare on oath that my statement is true and was made to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal, Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

From September 1941 until August 1944 I worked as consultant ("Referent") in the Social Welfare Department at Schkopau.

At the beginning of 1944 the Departments of *E u r e* and *O r n e* in France were assigned to the Schkopau Plant by the Allocation of Labor Office, District Labor Office at Erfurt, in order to recruit labor. It was the first time that plants were to recruit their labor in France. Until then it had been a matter reserved exclusively to the Allocation of Labor Office.

It was our intention from the very beginning not to conscript labor but to recruit labor on an entirely voluntary basis. We wanted the workers who came to us to be content and to have confidence in us. I suggested therefore that Social Welfare Offices be set up in the departments assigned to us, which were to cooperate closely with the French social service organization.

These social welfare offices were mainly to attend to the following tasks:

- 1) To ensure that only such workers were assigned to the Schkopau plant by the German Labor Offices, who had volunteered.
- 2) To ensure in cooperation with the plant that French workers who wanted to terminate their employment when their contracts had expired, were repatriated and were not directed to other work by the Labor Offices.



They were to be allowed to give notice before termination of contracts if adequate reasons could be given. These reasons were to be investigated by the social welfare offices in cooperation with the French Social Welfare Office.

- 3) To look after the families of the workers of the Schkopau Plant and to transmit wishes of, and information given by the families or members of the factory in the quickest possible way. In cases of need direct aid was to be provided by the Social Welfare Office in the form of financial assistance.

By that means we hoped to establish an atmosphere of mutual confidence between the plant on one hand and the French workers and their families on the other, from which in our opinion a balanced labor supply would have developed automatically. On account of the invasion our plans could not be carried out.

The problems mentioned above were thoroughly discussed with the French Labor Allocation Offices and with Monsieur Joky Pierre FROSSARD before action was taken.

In 1944 I went to Normandy three times for a week or a fortnight on each occasion in order to set up the projected social welfare offices. Herr Max REIMANN, a man who was much concerned with the social welfare of foreign workers, was to carry out recruitment in accordance with the above policy.

I was on very good terms with Monsieur FROSSARD. For that reason I tried after the war - albeit unsuccessfully - to find out his address in France.

Leverkusen, 10 February 1948

signed: Dr. Adam BOES

I, Rechtsanwalt Dr. Hugo SCHRAMM, herewith certify that the above signature is that of Dr. Adam BOES, of Leverkusen-Wiesdorf, Zoppelinstrasse 10, and that it was appended in my presence.

Leverkusen, 10 February 1948.

signed: Dr. Hugo SCHRAMM  
(Dr. Hugo SCHRAMM)

Barriater

The correctness and completeness  
of the above copy is herewith certified.  
Nuremberg, 13 February 1948

signed: Karl ROE MANN

Barriater

BUNA - WERKE

Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung  
Legal and Welfare Section

Schlössen, 7 May 1942.  
Pa/Zo.

Communication No. 50/42  
-----

To Section chiefs and plant managers of the Buna plant,  
and to firms employed on sites belonging to the plant.

Subject: Settlement of leave questions for foreign workers.

A special Reich regulation governing leave of foreign workers in private firms has now been issued (28 March 1942, Reich Law Gazette S IV a 460) in addition to the regulation governing family visits for foreign workers (our communication No. 23 of 6 October 1941, B). It came into force on 1 May 1942. The new Reich tariff regulation adapts the former law governing leave to the special circumstances of the employed foreigners and permits the continued application to foreign workers also of the leave regulation formerly applicable to factories or firms.

The leave regulation first of all repeats the principle that the foreign worker in his own interests should combine his annual leave with the family visit that is his right. In order to achieve this, the ruling governing the waiting period has been altered and arranged so that the claim on annual leave accrues at the same time as the right to a family visit. If the foreigner has a claim to two family visits per year, then he has also the right to combine family and annual leave twice a year. The foreigner can naturally not claim the whole of his annual leave twice, in that case. Instead, for each full working month in the factory he accrues 1/12 of the annual leave due to him according to the factory or scheduled leave regulation applicable.

Example:

Entry of a married foreigner into the factory on 10 January 1941.

a) First annual and home leave accrued on 10 July 1941

Actual departure on family leave for example on 15 March 1941

Allowance for family leave for example 10 calendar days.  
for annual leave 7/12 of, for example, 6 working days, = 3 1/2 working days, which, according to para. 3 of the regulation will be brought up to the round figure of 4 working days. Thus for family and annual leave he has 14 days due to him.

b) Second annual and home leave accrued on 10 January 1942.

Actual departure on family leave for example on 12 February 1942.

to the allowance for the home journey is added leave for 6 further working months, thus, in our example 6/12 of six working days = 3 working days.

If the journey home is taken in a special train, the time taken by the special train will not always coincide with the leave allowance due to the foreign workers out of family leave and annual leave. If leave claims cannot be met in full, an arrangement will be made on the occasion of the next journey, and in the event of the special train taking a longer time, an advance allowance on leave will be credited to the next annual and home leave.

A claim for annual leave can also be made without a simultaneous claim on home leave, and this can happen when the foreigner finally leaves the factory. In that case leave is calculated for those full working months in the factory for which the foreigner has as yet received no leave. It can also happen under certain circumstances that a foreigner receives 1/12 of his annual leave after one month's work in the factory, if he is leaving the factory. Admittedly there will be no claim to leave in a case of immediate discharge for misconduct, or

when the foreigner breaks his contract, thus ending his working relationship.

For firms connected with the building industry and associated industries:

Special regulations apply to foreigners falling under the regulation governing leave on the stamp system for the building industry and associated industries. According to these no further leave stamps will be attached for foreign workers. In this case one half day's leave can be claimed for every four full working weeks. As compensation for leave 2 percent of the salary due to him for leave stamps which the foreigner has earned in the factory. This leave compensation may be paid by means of weekly salary payments.

Date of coming into force.

The new regulation comes into force on 1 May 1942. It does not apply to any period for which the foreigner has already had annual leave. In these cases the amount of leave is only to be calculated from the day after the expiration of this period.

We attach the text of the new regulation.

Enclosure 1

Legal and Welfare Section

signed: LCARTUS .

Not for publication !



Reich Regulation governing leave for

Foreign Workers in private firms.

Article 1.

The leave regulations, together with divergencies arising out of Articles 1-5, apply to foreign workers, and those belonging to the Protectorate of Bohemia and Moravia, who are employed by private firms and live either abroad, or in the Protectorate.

Article 2.

Foreign workers have the right to claim leave,

- a) if any claim to family leave accrues or has accrued to them as a result of the regulation governing family leave in war time for foreign workers in the German Reich, whenever the regulation applies to them,
- b) if they leave the factory.

There will be no claim to leave in the case of immediate discharge for misconduct, or when the foreigner breaks his contract, thus ending his working relationship.

Rulings in leave regulations relating to waiting periods when accruing the right to leave are not applicable.

Article 3.

For each full working month in the factory, leave will amount to 1/12 of the annual leave. If fractions of days arise in the calculation of the total amount of leave, half days or more will be counted as complete days. Smaller fractions of days will be ignored.

However the regulation governing leave applies to leave on the store as such in the building and associated industries, there will be claim to leave of one half day only, every four full working weeks, one day in the case of the polishers and shaft for men mentioned in Article 2, No. 2 of the above regulations, and 1 1/2 days in the case of juveniles up to

their 18th year. Para 1 sentence 2 applies accordingly.

Article 4.

As compensation for leave, the amount to be paid is that which is to be reimbursed for the day of leave, according to the leave regulation applicable.

However the regulation governing leave applies to leave on the stamp system in the building and associated industries, compensation for leave will be paid at the rate of 2 percent of the wage due in leave stamps, earned by the foreigner in the factory, 4 percent in the case of the polishers and shaft foremen mentioned in article 2, No. 2 of the above regulation, 6 percent in the case of juveniles up to the age of 18, all without reference to whether and to what extent there is any claim to free time according to article 3, Para. 2. Leave stamps will not be attached.

Article 5.

As far as possible, leave is to be granted in combination with home leave. If the journey home (there and back) is made by a special train and if the amount of leave, and the time allowed for the journey home exceed the time taken by the special train, the surplus days are to be credited for the next journey home, wherever the foreigner does not renounce his claim to this free time. Surplus leave days may also be paid for in compensation by the employer. If the amount of leave and the free time due for the home journey do not amount to the travel time of the special train, the employer should grant leave or free time in advance for the missing days on account of the next leave, or next journey home, or else allow unpaid free time in addition.

Article 6.

The regulation comes into force on 1 July 1942. It does not apply to a period for which the foreigner has already had leave. In those cases the amount of leave is only to be calculated from the day after the expiration of this period.

The Special Trustee for Labor and the Reich Trustee for Labor  
may permit exceptions to this regulation.

I certify that the above copy is correct and complete.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948.

signed: HOFFMANN

Attorney at law.

B U H A - W E R K E  
Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung  
Personnel-Department

Schkopau, 12 May 1943.  
Pr/Guo

R e p o r t No. 51/43

to all departments, plants and firms.

Subject: Special trains to foreign countries for July 1943.

It is intended to run the following special trains in July 1943  
for men on furlough:

(pencil note: 28 July - 13 August)

to France (Paris) Furlough from 12 July to 25 July 1943

(applications and passes to be handed in at the latest by 5 June  
1943)

to Holland (Utrecht) Furlough from 16 July to 29 July 1943

(applications and passes to be handed in at the latest by 9 June 43)

to Belgium (Brussels) Furlough from 13 July to 26 July 1943

(applications and passes to be handed in at the latest by  
7 June 1943)

To Croatia (Agram) Furlough from 26 July to 14 August 1943

(applications and passes to be handed in at the latest by  
19 June 1943)

to the Protectorate (Prague) Furlough from 29 July to 13 August 43

(applications and passes to be handed in at the latest by  
22 June 1943)

to Slovakia (Kornia Studna) Furlough from 11 July to 25 July 1943

(applications and passes to be handed in at the latest by  
5 June 1943)

We request that the travel permits, together with the applications  
of employees entitled to furlough and who - taking into conside-  
ration the working demands - can be allowed to travel home, be  
handed into our travel office in accordance with the final dates  
for submission indicated above.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

20 February 1948

No,

Victoria CRON, ETC No. 20129,  
Brigitte TURK, ETC No. 35130,  
Patricia E.G. WOOD, ETC No. 20139,  
Julius J. STEUER, AGC No. A 442654,  
Anne MARTIN, ETC No. 20144,  
Leonard J. LAWRENCE, ETC No. 20138,  
Phyllis RAY, ETC No. 36287

heroby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document Book II A Ambros ( cover page and index I-III, pages 1-54).

Victoria CRON  
ETC No. 20129  
( Pages I-IV)

Brigitte TURK  
ETC No. 35130  
( pages 1,2,21,22)

Patricia E.G. WOOD  
ETC No. 20139  
( pages 3-11, 23-30)

Julius J. STEUER  
AGC No. A 442654  
( pages 12-20)

Anne MARTIN  
ETC No. 20144  
( pages 31-33, 39-45 )

Leonard J. LAWRENCE  
ETC No. 20138  
( pages 46-48)

Phyllis RAY  
ETC No. 36287  
( pages 49-54 )



DOCUMENT BOOK II, AMBROS

We again request the offices responsible for granting the furlough, to ask for the travel permits of the workers in good time, since the deadlines given must be adhered to at all costs.

Passes which are received after the deadline will in future be earmarked for the following month only.

Personnel Department  
signed: signature

NOT TO BE DISPLAYED!

Certified true copy,  
Suernberg, 14 February 1948  
signed: HOFFMANN  
Attorney

Bund-Torke

Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung      Schkopau, 9 November 1943  
(limited liability company)                      /Li.

Communication No. 128/43.

To all Department- and Works-managers.

Subject: Vitamin campaign 1944.

The vitamin campaign 1944 will be carried out for all employees of our plant (personnel receiving salaries, or wages by the month or by the hour, including foreigners) from the months upto and including April 1944, in the same way as for 1943. According to the number of our employees we are to receive from Leverkusen the Priovit tablets necessary for our plant. It is requested that each factory section submit a complete application through the department offices.

From 4 January 1944 onwards, all our employees will receive every working day, two tablets to be taken together. They will be given out in the factories at the beginning of working-hours at the clocking-in machine, and in the offices at the beginning of working-hours by a delegate appointed by the works manager.

No tablets will be given out for Sundays and holidays which are not working-days, or for days of sick-leave or leave of absence.

Dr. KOLBE, as medical superintendent of our medical department, will give explanatory talks to our employees over the transmitter of our plant on 3, 4 and 5 January 1944 at lunch time, and will point out the importance of this campaign, which is also advocated by the DAF (German Labor Front).

DOCUMENT BOOK IIa AMEROS  
AMEROS DOCUMENT No. 210

---

We are confident that all colleagues, male and female, will take part in this campaign, which is in the interests of everyone's health.

The distribution will take place in B 13 room 14a. You will be informed, in due course, of the date.

Employees Department

Signed: ECIRIUS

I hereby certify that the above copy is correct and complete.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948.

Signed: Karl HOFFMANN  
(attorney-at-law)

DOCUMENT BOOK II: MEMOS  
MEMOS DOCUMENT No. 211

(handwritten)

To:  
Herr HORNBOGEN

To be classified page 34: supplements for prisoners-of-war and Italian Military internees 6/4

To be cancelled page 34: supplements for Italian Military internees XIII, 3

B U N L - W E R K E  
Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung  
Distribution A II, IV/5

Schkopau, 17 January 1944  
Pa/Zo

Communication No. 6/4b.

To: Department- and Works Managers and  
the firms working on the Buna-Werke building sites  
Subject: The allocation of supplementary food for prisoners of war  
and Italian Military internees.

Like German employees and free foreign workers, prisoners-of-war and Italian military internees, too, (referred to below as: I.M.) can get supplementary food if they can be considered as workers working long hours or heavy workers or very heavy workers. It is therefore possible to reward adequate work by better food.

The supplements provided for prisoners-of-war and I.M. are, however, a little smaller than those for Germans and free foreigners. Below we give a list of the quantities of meat, bread and fat (in grammes) available at present for one ration period (4 weeks):

DOCUMENT BOOK ILa AMEROS  
AMEROS DOCUMENT No. 211

	German and civilian foreigners excluding Eastern workers			All prisoners-of-war excluding Eastern workers		
	meat	bread	fat	meat	bread	fat
Ordinary workers	1000	9700	875	1000	9700	875
Food in camps	1600	13000	950	-	-	-
Recognized overtime workers	1000	9700	875	1000	9700	875
	+ 800	+ 2800	+ 80	+ 520	+ 1900	+ 55
	1800	12500	955	1520	11600	930
Heavy workers	1000	9700	875	1000	9700	875
	+ 1400	+ 5600	+ 400	+ 920	+ 3700	+ 255
	2400	15300	1275	1920	13400	1130
Very heavy workers	1000	9700	875	1000	9700	875
	+ 2400	+ 9600	+ 1175	+ 1320	+ 6400	+ 455
	3400	19300	2050	2320	16100	1330

Of the French prisoners-of-war working here,

about 23% receive overtime-workers' supplements,

" 34% receive supplements for heavy workers

" 27% receive supplements for heavy workers  
in the first and third weeks of each ration period.  
In the second and fourth weeks 10% of these are  
considered as overtime-workers and 17% as ordinary  
workers.

The remainder (about 16%) do not receive any supplements.

The corresponding figures for the I.M. are: about 12% overtime workers, 12% heavy workers and 1% very heavy workers; about 75% receive no supplement.

These figures are probably partly due to the fact that the work performed by the prisoners-of-war frequently does not come up to what is required of them, and that in particular that of the I.M. is entirely inadequate. On the other hand, their objections to the effect that their food is not sufficient at present, to enable them to make any greater exertion, cannot be disregarded altogether.

The I.M., some of whom come from Southern Italy,



are not accustomed to the working speed usual in this country, and in this climate, which is strange to them, they are able to meet the requirements only if they receive adequate food.

So that all requirements for normal work can be met, all French prisoners-of-war and I.M. are to be checked again according to the following directives:

1. Prisoners-of-war and I.M. performing work of overtime workers (average physical work) and fulfilling the requirements of overtime workers as regards the number of working hours (net working-hours on the working-days of the week at least 55 hours), will receive the overtime workers' supplements. This excludes those who are obviously not willing to work. These will not receive supplements.
2. Prisoners-of-war and I.M., who have to work as heavy or very heavy workers (heavy physical work or work under difficult conditions), if they are willing to work, but do not come up to normal work requirements, will receive appropriate smaller supplements i.e. supplements for heavy workers instead of supplements for very heavy workers, or only overtime-workers' supplements instead of supplements for heavy workers.

If they come up to normal work requirements, they will receive the full supplements due to them.

3. Supplements will not be granted or will be withdrawn in cases where workers neglect their work contrary to their duty or are refractory. If supplements are cancelled written reports, specifying names, must be made to the Legal Department, which will see to it

that supplements are cancelled or reduced.

Prisoners-of-war and I.M. who, owing to bad health or a bad physical constitution, are not able to do certain types of work, will be utilized according to their physical abilities.

All factories and firms are requested to submit to the Legal Department, by 24 Inst., lists - in quadruplicate - of all prisoners-of-war and I.M. employed by them.

The lists will contain:

DOCUMENT BOOK II: MEMOS  
MEMOS DOCUMENT No. 211

Name of the firm and/or designation of the enterprise and of  
the account number,

personal data of all prisoners-of-war and I.M. (name, first name,  
birthday)

and type of their work (e.g. underground constructional worker) or,  
instead, number on the job list.

There must be separate lists for workers receiving ordinary rations,  
overtime workers, heavy workers and very heavy workers.

Factories will submit their lists to the Legal Department <sup>via</sup> the depart-  
ments, firms will submit them via the competent department of the  
plant in the district where the work is being done. -

Decrease or increase in numbers, changes in the type of work as well  
as reduction in work performed etc., entailing the allotment of more  
or less food, will be reported correctly, also in writing, to the  
Legal Department. -

Care has been taken that the prisoners-of-war and I.M. receive, per-  
sonally in their camps, the food supplements allotted to them. Thus,  
discrimination in food allocation is an incentive to work that  
should not be underestimated.

The above regulations will be made known to the prisoners of war  
and I.M. at roll-calls, in the presence of the military supervisors,  
and it will be pointed out that the granting or cancellation of  
food supplements will depend on their will to work and the work  
they perform.

For information enquire of Herr RE: SCHE, tel.: 2032.  
Not to be put on the notice-board.

LEGAL DEPARTMENT

Signed: Esarius

I hereby certify that the above copy is correct and complete.

Munich, 12 February 1948

Signed: HOFFMANN  
(attorney-at-law)

DOCUMENT BOOK II: AMBROS  
AMBROS DOCUMENT No. 211

Name of the firm and/or designation of the enterprise and of  
the account number,

personal data of all prisoners-of-war and I.M. (name, first name,  
birthday)

and type of their work (e.g. underground constructional worker) or,  
instead, number on the job list.

There must be separate lists for workers receiving ordinary rations,  
overtime workers, heavy workers and very heavy workers.

Factories will submit their lists to the Legal Department <sup>via</sup> the depart-  
ments, firms will submit them via the competent department of the  
plant in the district where the work is being done. -

Decrease or increase in numbers, changes in the type of work as well  
as reduction in work performed etc., entailing the allotment of more  
or less food, will be reported currently, also in writing, to the  
Legal Department. -

Care has been taken that the prisoners-of-war and I.M. receive, per-  
sonally in their camps, the food supplements allotted to them. Thus,  
discrimination in food allocation is an incentive to work that  
should not be underestimated.

The above regulations will be made known to the prisoners of war  
and I.M. at roll-calls, in the presence of the military supervisors,  
and it will be pointed out that the granting or cancellation of  
food supplements will depend on their will to work and the work  
they perform.

For information enquire of Herr RICHARD SCHNE, tel.: 2032.  
Not to be put on the notice-board.

LEGAL DEPARTMENT

Signed: Esarius

I hereby certify that the above copy is correct and complete.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948

Signed: HOFFMANN  
(attorney-at-law)

Dani Werke  
Gesellschaft mit  
beschränkter Haftung

Schkopau, 19 October 1944  
Zf./-Zu/Jk.

The Werke Chief Air Raid Warden  
(Werkluftschutzleiter)

Circular

to all Factories,  
and to the construction and installation firms engaged at our  
building sites.

Subject: Use of the surface shelters.

The shelter signs designed for the factories  
have in the meantime been distributed. You will give instructions  
for the removal of the old, now invalid shelter signs, which  
will be replaced by these new ones. However, those of the  
factory's and the firms' employees who are entitled to take  
cover in the shelters may only use the one assigned to their  
particular firm. Employees working in the factory on various  
building projects, or in the open, i.e. who have a mobile occupation,  
must go to the shelter assigned for the respective building  
or district, as the case may be.

Your attention is drawn to the fact that no one is allowed  
to take cover before the "alarm" (warning sound) and that no  
employee may leave his place of work before, unless the  
Chief Air Raid Warden of the works requires him for tasks in  
connection with air raid protection before the alarm.

Special rooms marked by individual identification signs,  
have been designated in the shelters for the employees -  
and  
including foreigners - of the factory/of the firms, for the  
prisoners of war, for the civilian population, as well as for  
schools and nurseries. The ushers appointed by the factories  
and firms will therefore be instructed that only the rooms marked



- 2 -

"Factory and Firms" will be used. For the smooth coordination of traffic in the shelters, shelter ushers will be appointed whose instructions must be implicitly obeyed.

There will be no smoking in the shelters.

No factory or private bicycles may be used for riding to the shelters, unless they are required by those in charge.

Effective immediately, it is forbidden to leave the factory during an air raid alarm, except for those employees, who are assigned by the factory as warrens for the settlements, for service with the voluntary fire-fighters Sokolov and Kerkotha, or other units. Those employees were issued a special pass by the Chief Air Raid Police of the works authorizing them to leave the factory. As all employees are now being accommodated in the newly erected surface shelters, the passes issued for 1942 by Dr. SIM SHAW and for 1943 by Prokurist SHAWING become void with immediate effect.

For the Notice Board:

(Distribution list: III, IV, V

The Chief Air Raid Police  
of the works  
signed signature

Certified True Copy.

Moscow, 10 February 1943

signed Dr. GINGERSALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

- 3 -



## CHEMICAL FACTORIES LUNJ

Chemische Werke Buna  
(19a) Schkopau, Post Marienburg

Telegrams: Berk Sokopou  
Telephone numbers: 3671

Accounts: Postal Check Berlin 39  
" " Landover: 100

To: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Luftwaffen/Kreise

reference No. 48/340/CC31

Your reference

Your letter of  
6 December 1947

Our reference  
L-33: Department  
F4/20  
(124) Schoppa, Post  
Korseburg, 18 Dec. 1943

DEY LF. 2LT.

In reply to your above mentioned letter I forward you the copy of a report which we submitted to the German Central Health Administration, Berlin, on 24 February 1947. It deals with sickness statistics and the accomplishments of our factory in the field of medical care during the war. I hope you can use some of the material for the desired purposes. I am unfortunately unable to give you separate sickness figures for German and foreign employees.

Here everybody knows that until the end of the war the medical care provided for foreigners was no different and no worse than that given to German employees. The foreigners attended our mobile hospital more than the Germans, and they had special consultation hours. The reason was not that their sickrate was higher, but that the foreigners in particular wanted to benefit by our model equipment. Anybody who was really sick was given the same attention and treatment as the German workers.

DOCUMENT BOOK II - AMEROS  
On DOCUMENT No. 213

The German authorities reportedly acknowledged after inspections that our medical equipment and the medical care of our employees was exemplary. I hope you will find these details useful, and I remain

Yours very respectfully

signed Alfred PASSHAUER

Enclosure.

I, Dr. Heinz RECH JLEB, residing in Schkopau, have been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I depose that my statement is true and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Neumarkt, Germany.

I hereby identify the signature on the reverse page as that of our Dr. Alfred PASSHAUER, acting chief of the Legal Department of Buna Werke Schkopau.

Neumarkt, 11 February 1945

signed Heinz RECH JLEB

Above signature was given today before me, by Dr. Heinz

RECH JLEB.

Neumarkt, 11 February 1945

signed Dr. Kurt WERTMANN  
Assistant Defense Counsel in Case V

Copy

1.348, Betr. Ret. 237

To the German Central Health Administration  
Department VII/3  
(1) Berlin 7 6

Leipzig Str. 5/7

Local Department  
I-Pa/2c

24 February 1947

Sickness statistics.

Reference: Letter of the German Administration for Labor and  
Social Welfare in Berlin, dated 13 January 1947.

At the instigation of the provincial Government Saxony-  
Anhalt - Minister for Labor and Social Welfare - Provincial  
Department for Labor and Social Welfare in Halle/S., we forward  
to you the following report on the medical care of our employees  
during the last years:

1. Our factory was erected as Wassil-Jerke Gesellschaft mit  
beschränkter Haftung between 1936 and 1937 and was  
extended in the subsequent years. Our own health  
insurance was not established until 1 May 1942. In the  
absence of more complete data, we include only the following  
details in our report on the sickness statistics:

a) The average sickrate of our compulsory insured employees  
was

1939 1,86%

and then increased slowly but steadily to

1941 3,25%

1942 3,57%

and 1943 4,12%.

The average sickrate of the Administrative Department Fund  
of the Social Insurance Fund for the Landkreis Merseburg  
was 7,16% in 1943.

At present it is 11.9%.

## b) Incidence of Sickness.

In 1939 we had 3 162 cases of sickness among 4 213 compulsorily insured employees. That is 75.1 out of every 100. In 1943 the number of sickness cases dropped to 66.4 out of 100 employees, and was thus far below the average of most sick funds.

## a) Duration of Sickness.

From the total number of sickness cases (inability to work), the figures for 1961 were:

Male employees	35	366	days	away	from	work	due	to	sickness;
Female	"	6	343	"	"	"	"	"	"

This is an award of  
19.16 days per sickness case, male employees;  
20.16 " " " " , female employees.

In 1943 the average duration dropped to 10.1 days per case.

Whilst the sickrate was thus mounting steadily - mainly due to wartime causes - the development in the incidence and duration of sickness presents a not unfavourable picture. By shortening the duration of sickness, we succeeded in keeping the rising sickrate down.

Great efforts were made to preserve the health and energy of the workers and to assist those unfit for work to regain their capacity to work as speedily as possible. We shall report on this in the following Part 2.

2. We have always been extremely particular regarding the  
medical care of our staff.

a) Organization and equipment of our Medical Department.

During the last years the Medical Department of our works, when  
medical care is given to our staff, employed besides the directing  
plant physician, some further 2 - 3 plant doctors and the necessary  
number of certified nurse-nurses, certified nurses, medical orderlies,  
female laboratory assistants and other auxiliary personnel, all on  
a full-time basis.

Our Medical Department includes an ambulance for men, an ambulance  
for women, a dental clinic and a private hospital, which were built  
and gradually enlarged during the past years.

The following rooms i.e., are available at our works for medical  
services:

- Registry office with card-index
- Various waiting-rooms
- Various consulting-rooms
- Large dressing-room
- Separate rest-rooms for men and women
- Room for preliminary examinations
- Room for medical case-examinations
- Several rooms for X-ray examinations.

Medical statistics:

- A room entirely covered with metal for the drawing-  
up of cardiograms (tracing the heart's movement).
- Large room for physiotherapy and medicinal baths.
- Room containing the medical laboratory.
- Laboratory for urine examinations.
- Dental laboratory.

The necessary medical equipment is available.



b) Private hospital.

Up to 56 sick persons confined to bed could be accommodated at our hospital erected in 1940 in the immediate neighborhood of our plant, supplemented in 1946 by a special hospital for women. There is a special ward for infectious diseases. The equipments of our private hospital is in no way inferior to that of a public one.

In 1941:	969	people	were	sent	to	the	hospital
1943:	1056	"	"	"	"	"	"
1946:	700	"	"	"	"	"	"

Because of overcrowded conditions in public hospitals, our private hospital could not confine itself to the reception of non-serious cases but also had to receive seriously ill people and a large number of observation cases who could not be accommodated elsewhere. By immediate treatment at the hospital, the health of many staff members was restored within a very short time. This is proved by the short stay which, e.g., in 1943 was on the average only 9.1 days.

c) First aid in accident cases.

Two ambulances owned by the plant are ready for the transportation of the sick. During the war when they had to be transferred to the German Red Cross, they were also stationed at the plant. With these ambulances the following transportations of sick people were carried out:

In 1939 within the plant	227	
from the plant to hospitals	174	401
In 1940 within the plant	302	
from the plant to hospitals	391	693
In 1946 within the plant	432	
from the plant to hospitals	249	681

As can easily be seen from the above, enough trained personnel and all equipment necessary for first aid are available at the place of work in cases of accident and sudden illness.

d) Entrance examinations.

Before joining the staff everyone is being examined with regard to physical ability, and the job assignment is effected according to the state of health and the capacity for work (medical entrance examination).

e) Factory examinations.

According to the principle "Prevention is better than cure", our factory doctors have from the beginning - apart from routine mass examinations - carried through examinations of young workers and of workers in jobs which are dangerous to health at short intervals, so that measures for the prevention of occupational diseases can be taken in good time. In this, the factory doctors lay great stress on the diagnosis and prevention of diseases in their early stages.

Already since 1941, an analysis of urine sulfate is being made with all workers in contact with benzole or who are working in styrol plants. In 1941, one female laboratory assistant was occupied with taking blood counts only.

f) X-ray serial pictures - diagnosis of pulmonary diseases in the plant.

The installation of a serial X-ray machine has shown excellent results. In many cases, during these examinations diseases of the lungs and the heart otherwise not recognizable were discovered, among them also acute tuberculosis of the lung.

The discovery of a relatively high number of people with tuberculosis since the installation of a plant welfare department for the treatment of people suffering from pulmonary diseases necessary. The patients were registered in a special index and examined at certain intervals. Our factory doctors take care that they work at places suitable to their state of health.

All people with acute tuberculosis are reported to the competent health office so that the rest of kin of the workers fallen ill can be supervised by the official welfare for the treatment of tuberculosis. In cases where treatment at a sanatorium was necessary, the question of expenses was arranged in collaboration between the lung specialists and our industrial sickness insurance funds, and the regional Public Insurance Institute.

Medical statistics,  
-----

With the help of the measures described above, we were able to provide treatments which promised success to a larger number of new cases of tuberculosis. Apart from that, several workers were diagnosed as carriers of infection so that the necessary precautionary measures could be taken in good time.

g) Service by the panel doctors.

In order to reduce the number of sick people, the greatest efforts were made by the industrial sickness insurance funds. Besides the visit by welfare workers which also covered members of the substitute sickness insurance funds, the panel doctor was called in as soon as possible wherever necessary. From 1 September 1939 until the end of the war, our directing plant physician was at the same time panel doctor of the regional Public Insurance Institute. The appointment of the plant physician as panel doctor has proved successful because of his special knowledge of the conditions at the plant.

In 1940 altogether 4 373 insured people were asked to see the panel doctor for re-examination.

Out of this number

1 975 were declared fit for work before  
205 were fit for work at home  
1 328 were declared still unfit for work  
708 were able to work in a few days  
401 were able to travel  
58 were transferred to hospital for treatment.

In 1943, out of 8 109 insured people who were asked to see the panel doctor for re-examination

1 977 - 24,35% were fit to work before  
323 - 3,9% were able to work at home  
2 413 - 29,75% were declared still unfit for work  
2 307 - 28,44% were able to work in a few days  
923 - 11,38% were unable to travel  
36 - 0,44% were transferred to hospital for treatment.

Panel service, however, was not confined to determining fitness for work, it rather assisted the work of the health insurance physician by the application of modern diagnostic methods. Thus above all it served the health of the workers.

#### b) Medical treatment in the plant.

In view of the relatively long working hours during the war, the often long journeys to work by our staff members and the calling-up of many doctors for air service, the medical treatment of our staff members by the Public Health Insurance became more and more difficult during the war and took up very much time.

In order to prevent this, we introduced medical treatment in the plant. Thus staff members who fell ill but were nevertheless able to work, could receive medical treatment by our plant doctors without causing much absenteeism.

i) Injections of vitamins.

In view of the shortage of fresh fruit and vegetables as caused by the season - February to May - and to strengthen the body's powers of resistance against diseases, esp. influenza, a large proportion of our workers received vitamin tablets during the war, e.g., in 1942 500,000 tablets.

k) Other tasks.

Other tasks of our plant doctors not mentioned before are: Supervision of the plants for the purpose of carrying out all industrial hygienic measures necessary for the prevention of industrial diseases, medical advice of the Industrial Sickness Insurance Funds, care for the treatment of staff members in hospitals, examination of the food prepared in the plant kitchens, etc.

Members of building and assembly firms working at our building sites are medically cared for in the same way as the staff of our plant.

l) Type and number of cases treated by the plant doctors:

In conclusion of our report we submit a survey of the type and number of cases treated during the last years by our plant doctors:

1939 Entrance examination	4 107
First aid in sicknesses	6 947 cases
First aid in accidents	3 561 cases
Supervisory and other measures	1 512 cases
total	13 617 individual treatments.

Approximately 4000 members of building and assembly firms working at the building sites of the plant received individual treatment.



Medical Statistics

1941: Medical examinations performed on workers at time of engagement	3 171
Medical examinations performed on workers at time of re-engagement	149
Medical examinations performed on staff personnel at time of engagement	379
Medical examinations performed on staff personnel at time of re-engagement	20
Medical examinations performed on dismissal	133
Medical examinations in cases of transfer	477
Medical examinations of workers in controlled enterprises	718
Other medical mass examinations	498
Individual medical examinations in plants	265
Medical examinations before the transfer to recuperation homes	58
Lung observation treatment	170
Heart observation treatment	14
First aid in cases of sickness (adults)	10 534
" " " " " (juveniles)	761
" " " " " accidents (adults)	5 593
" " " " " (juveniles)	325
First treatment at the plant (adults)	6 135
" " " " " (juveniles)	367
Further " " " " " (adults)	7 762
" " " " " (juveniles)	495
Examinations by the plant physician	2 437
Other medical examinations	427
	<hr/> 40 878 <hr/>

Add to this medical attention in approximately 20 000 individual cases, where workers of building and fitting firms employed by us and inhabitants of the community camps, were concerned;

DOCUMENT BOOK IIa, AMBROS  
AMBROS DOCUMENT No. 213

furthermore there were 8 600 cases of X-ray examinations.

1943: Medical examinations at time of engagement (adults)	3 797
" " " " " (juveniles)	176
Changes from one working place to another for health reasons	75
Changes of working place for other than health reasons	705
Medical mass examinations (adults)	886
Medical mass examinations (juveniles)	615
Individual medical examinations at plants (adults)	5 573
First aid in case of sickness (adults)	28 435
" " " " " (juveniles)	1 120
" " " " " accidents (adults)	9 076
" " " " " (juveniles)	421
Treatment at the plant (adults)	41 339
" " " " (juveniles)	1 039
Medical examinations performed by panel doctors	3 782
Other cases	218
	<u>97 254</u>
Further: X-ray pictures taken	2 185
X-ray examinations	996
X-ray pictures (Schirmbildaufnahmen)	7 097

Our report does not make any claim to absolute completeness; however, we hope that the data given will be of use to you.

Yours respectfully

CHEMISCHE BERGWERKE

signed: DOLLE signed: FASSHAUER

I hereby certify the above to be a true copy of the original.

Munich, 12 February 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dipl.-Ing. Hilde DOSER, resident in Karlsruhe-Rueppel, Graf Eberstein Str. 36, have been cautioned that I render myself liable to punishment by giving a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement conforms to the truth and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal VI at the Palace of Justice.

I worked as a chemist at the Leunawerk during the war from 1941 to 1945; I lived in Schkopau Oppau-Strasse 2. In spring 1944 I was taken ill with nephritis. As I was bedridden and nobody looked after me, it was impossible for me to go to the air-raid shelter during the air-raids, it was 25 minutes away from the workers' settlement of the Banawerk, where I was living. On the physician's advice I, therefore, decided to go to the sick bay for foreign female workers at the Banawerk, in order to receive the necessary medical treatment there. Besides, this sick bay was approximately 2 minutes distant from a bomb proof surface air raid shelter and had in addition a covered trench shelter for patients unable to walk, immediately next to the station. The sick bay was under the direction of a Russian female doctor, who also attended to me and who was authorized to fix the date for my release after my recovery. The medical personnel consisted of a Russian nurse, who performed her duties extremely conscientiously. My room mate was a young French woman, who was already out of bed.

The food was good and plentiful and better than the normal food of the German civilian population.

The first breakfast, for instance, consisted of warm full cream milk and white bread.

Care, cleanliness and hygiene were in no way inferior to comparable German hospitals.

After I had recovered sufficiently to get out of bed I talked to many of the foreign women at the sick bay and was able to convince myself that nobody had to leave the sick bay before having fully recovered.

During the air raids those who were seriously ill were taken to the bomb proof trenches on stretchers, so that their safety was ensured as far as this was possible.

signed: Hilde DOERR

I hereby testify to the authenticity of the above signature of

Alzenau, 9 February 1948

The Baergermeister

stamp: Bavaria, Markt Alzenau

by order

signed: signature

Fee RM -.60  
additional  
charge RM .....

Total RM -.60

I hereby certify the above to be a true copy of the original.

Muornberg, 11 February 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Dr. Bernhard JACOBI  
MARL/District RECKLINGHAUSEN  
Kampstrasse 88

Marl, 28 October 1947

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Bernhard JACOBI, resident at Marl/District Recklinghausen, Kampstrasse 88, born 23 February 1898, have first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare that my statement conforms to the truth and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. 1 at the Palace of Justice, Muensterberg, Germany.

During the war I was manager of the Polyvinylchlorid production at the Dunawerk in Schkopau.

4 Frenchmen worked in my production shop. I remember the names of three of them, Toulat, Russenet, Gounaris whilst in the case of the fourth I only recollect his Christian name Emile, by which he was always addressed.

Thanks to their intelligence and loyal conduct these Frenchmen were of considerable help in the occasionally difficult production.

I have often talked with these men personally. Naturally the political contrasts could not be bridged, however, they - perhaps with the exception of Russenet - accepted their being workers in Germany as their fate and never complained of their situation being unnecessarily aggravated for instance through severity or neglect on the part of the plant or the camp management. They often talked of the social gatherings, which they were able to organise in the camp when and how they wished to do so.

Toulat was twice given permission - during a time when traffic conditions had already become very trying - to visit his brother who was a prisoner-of-war in the Black Forest.

I have always had the feeling that these Frenchmen considered themselves to be correctly and humanely treated at the plant and in the camp and my feeling was confirmed by the fact that - apart from their conduct at the plant - they always showed their readiness to help during and after air raids. After the end of the war I met some of them on the road passing the works. They jumped off their bicycles in order to say good bye in a very nice manner considering the changed conditions.

signed: Bernhard JACOBI  
(Dr. Bernhard JACOBI)



DOCUMENT BOOK IIa, AMEROS  
AMEROS DOCUMENT No. 215

---

I hereby certify and attest the above signature, affixed  
before me, to be that of Dr. Bernhard JACOBI of Marl/District  
Becklinghausen, Kampstrasse 88.

No. 505 of the Document Register for 1947

(stamp of the Notariate)

Marl, 28 October 1947  
signed Dr. Hermann LAPPE  
Notary public

I hereby certify the above to be a  
true copy of the original.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 31 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Mr. Philipp ORTH  
Marl/Kreis Recklinghausen  
Leverkusenerstrasse 8

Marl, 20 October 1947

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Mr. Philipp ORTH, Marl/Kreis Recklinghausen, Leverkusenstrasse 8, born on 14 January 1907, have first been cautioned that I render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. 1 at the Palace of Justice, Munster, Germany.

From 1 July 1933 to 21 June 1945 I was manager of the numbered gun production (Zahlenbrenn-Fabrikation) of the Luna Plant Schkopau near Magdeburg.

With regard to the relations between the Frenchmen who were assigned to my factory under labor service, and the management and vice versa I am able to make the following statements:

In accordance with instructions of my superior officers, the Frenchmen were treated just like the German workers in every respect. Their assignment to working places of the factory were exclusively dependent on their mental qualities, and before every enlistment I convinced myself of this fact by personal examination. As on account of my knowledge of the French language I was able to talk to the Frenchmen entrusted to me, it was possible for me in each single case to attend to their personal wishes and troubles, applying the same rules to them as towards Germans. The German foremen were advised to adopt a friendly attitude in their official and private relations with the Frenchmen and to reconcile possible differences originating from the difference in nationality. The Frenchmen, almost without exception, were conscientious workers; the relations between them and the German workers gave practically no cause for complaints.

The French foreman (Chefman) was Mr. Andre Bonvilain, whose home at that time was Lyon, Chemin du Loupin a Vent 47. I often talked to him about labor service in general and the conditions in the camp, in particular with respect to housing conditions, food and care offered by the German administration. Mr. BONVILAIN assured me quite often that the Frenchmen had no reason to complain of anything. He said that

they were content with the housing conditions in the camp, that the huts were clean and well heated in winter and that there were bathing facilities for everybody. Appreciation was frequently expressed of the attention given to the Frenchmen in cases of sickness. Any predisposition to illness of the individual Frenchman was taken into consideration in all cases known to me. A change of working place was effected, for instance, if by reason of draughts, the health of a person was endangered. It also happened that some people expressed the wish to work in their former profession, as for instance Mr. Marcel Grélu (Paris, Rue Spaux), who was given a job in the carpenter's shop. The fact that some workers were unfamiliar with the work sometimes had the result that particularly those Frenchmen who were used to mental work requested a transfer or repeated transfers to another place of work so that they might more easily overcome the monotony of their work. Greatest attention was also paid to the organization of leisure time, on the part of the firm in general and by the factory in particular. As Mr. DEWILDE took a leading part in the French theater group, (first tenor), his repeated applications for exemption from work were granted in each case, in order to support the preparation of the performances as far as possible. The same applied to the other Frenchmen also employed in my factory, Capella (step-dancer), Calman (theater) and Ducloux (dancer).

The fact that all the Frenchmen gained the impression and were convinced that they were treated humanely in every respect and were not placed at a disadvantage as compared to the German workers under labor service - with the exception of the granting of leave, on which the plant however had no influence - is shown by the fact that the main agent of the plant and the leaders of the factories received written invitations for their performances. I attended these performances whenever my time permitted me to do so. They gave me the impression that the Frenchmen were always in high spirits and that on the part of the plant every assistance had been given to them with respect to the procurement of scenery, paint and costumes required for these performances.

The air-raids on the plant which started in 1944 resulted in the establishment of emergency crews and fire watchers, who during the air-raids had to be in the factory, or in its immediate surroundings in order to keep the plant going, according to existing directives of the Reich Air Raid Protection, foreigners could also be assigned to this job. Actually, the Frenchmen were allocated according to their number and equipped with steel-helmets,

DOCUMENT "DOCK III AMERICA"  
CA DOCUMENT No. 216

gas-masks and first-aid kits. For purely humane considerations they were given the chance of retiring to the large shelters of the plant during an air-raid. Nevertheless I know of a case when a Frenchman stayed with me during an air-raid, though I repeatedly offered him the chance of retiring to the shelter.

That the relationship between the works management and the Frenchmen and vice versa, in agreement with the requirements and needs of the time, went on almost without any frictions is best shown by the fact that at my factory, Frenchmen were working in responsible positions and that in spite of extensive opportunities for acts of sabotage, they never made use of them.

Finally, I wish to point out that Mr. REVILLAIN, the foreman of the Frenchmen, called me over the telephone before departing for France, in order to be able to take leave of me at the gate in the name of the French workers.

signed: Mr. Philipp RATH  
(Mr. Phil : RATH)

The above signature, affixed before me, of Mr. Philipp RATH, Karl/Kreis Becklinghausen, Iserkusestr. 3, is herewith certified.

Seal of a notary

Marl, 26 October 1947  
signed: Mr. Hermann LARKE  
Notary Public

(Calculation of costs)

I herewith certify the above copy to be correct and complete.

Luwigshafen am Rhein, 23 December 1947.

Mr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Karl SCHAEFER  
19a Schkopau near Merseburg,  
Lamastrasse 14

A f f i d a v i t .

Since 1 June 1933 I have been head of the Transportation department of the Luma Werke G.m.b.H., Schkopau near Merseburg, now called Chemische Werke Luma, Schkopau near Merseburg, and I have held the same position ever since without interruption.

In my official capacity as head of the Transportation department and immediately after the end of the fighting, I had to discuss technical questions of transportation with the French camp commander of the housing camp,

Mr. Jean Marie Lecerf, born on 1 June 1910,

at Maroilles, Department Seine inferieure,

who had been elected by the foreign workers housed in the housing camp of the Luma plant and confirmed in his post by the American Military authorities. I can no longer indicate the exact date of that discussion.

After having settled the official questions, I talked to M. Lecerf about private matters; what he thought about the housing of the foreigners employed at the Luma plant in the housing camp, the social and cultural welfare services and the food position in the camp. On this occasion M. Lecerf said to me something to the effect that the housing camp of the Luma plant for foreigners could be regarded as a model camp.

From the entry in the personnel card index I ascertained the address of M. Lecerf's parents as

Lyon, 8 rue d'Isly.

This card index gives 25 May 1943 as the date when M. Lecerf entered the plant; the day of dismissal is 6 May 1945.



I have made the above statement on oath and am aware  
that it will be treated as an affidavit when it is submitted  
to a German, foreign or International Tribunal.

Schkopau, 1 July 1947

signed: Karl SCHLEPER

I herewith certify the above signature affixed before me, to  
be that of Department Chief Karl SCHLEPER, of Schkopau,  
Lounastr. 14, identified by identity card No. 2052 issued by  
the community of Schkopau on 23 May 1946.

Merseburg, 1 July 1947

signed: signature  
Notary Public

Document register No. 765/47

(stamp)

I herewith certify the above to be <sup>a</sup> correct and complete copy  
of the original.

Munich, 10 February 1948

signed: Karl RUFFEN  
Attorney

DOCUMENT BOOK IIA AMTRAC  
OR DOCUMENT No  
-----

-----  
CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION  
-----

20 February 1948

We, AURLEY DVEY, MONICA SILLCOCK, RUTH SCHLESINGER, ABELIA  
WISER and ANNETTE JACOBSON, hereby certify that we are duly  
appointed translators for the English and German languages and  
that the above is a true and correct translation of the  
Document Book IIA Amtrac.

pages IV-VIII; 55-56

AURLEY DVEY  
ETC No. 20115

" 57 - 62

MONICA SILLCOCK  
ETC No. 20148

" 63 - 66  
67 - 68

RUTH SCHLESINGER  
ETC No. 20031

" 69 - 74

ABELIA WISER  
ETC No. 25067

" 75 - 82

ANNETTE JACOBSON  
ETC No. 20146

" ETC "

Defense  
Case 6

TRIBUNAL VI  
CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK II B  
for  
Otto A M B R O S  
SCHKOPAU PLANT

submitted by  
the Defense Counsel

Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney at Law



Aug 1

Table of Contents to Document Book II B

for 948 A n b f g g

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
QA-218		Affidavit by Graduate Engineer Leonhard Reinhardt of 27 February 1948. Leonhard Reinhardt certifies that the pictures reproduced in QA-Document No. 202 represent reduced photographs which show the Schkopau plant during its construction.	1
QA-219		Affidavit by Graduate Engineer Leonhard Reinhardt of 27 February 1948. Reinhardt certifies that the pictures reproduced in QA-Document No. 204 are photographic copies of photographs which were taken during the war in the Schkopau Buna Plant by the Photographic Department, which was under Reinhardt's direction.	2
QA-220		Affidavit by Assistant Judge Alfred Fasbender of 8 March 1948. Assistant Judge Fasbender certifies that Document QA-No. 213 submitted to him in mimeographed form is a literal copy of a report which the Legal Department of the Schkopau Buna Plant sent to the German Central Administrative Office for Public Health VII/3, Berlin W 8, Leipzigerstrasse 5/7, on 24 February 1947. The report deals with the amount of sickness and with the achievements of the Schkopau Buna Plant in the field of caring for the sick during the war years.	3- 4

Affidavit.

I, Leonhard Reinhardt, graduate engineer, residing in Schkopau, Leunastr. 13, have first been duly warned that I will render myself liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement represents the truth and was made for the purpose of being submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

I have been Director of the Construction Department of the Schkopau Buna Plant since early in 1936. In this capacity I also had charge of the Photographic Department. The Photographic Department had orders from me to make a regular photographic record of the construction of the Schkopau Buna Plant and also of parts of the factory. A selection of these photos was made up into an album and were given to Herr Otto Ambros as a gift in an album even before the outbreak of the war. This picture album was regularly supplemented by new photographs even during the war.

I hereby certify that the pictures reproduced in QA-Document 202 represent reduced photographs from this gift album, that is, are photographs which show the Schkopau Plant during its construction. The description of the objects represented is correct.

Nuremberg, 27 February 1948

signed: Leonhard Reinhardt

The preceding signature of Herr Leonhard Reinhardt, graduate engineer, residing in Schkopau, Leunastr. 13, was executed today in Nuremberg, before me, Attorney at Law Karl Hoffmann, and is witnessed by me.

Nuremberg, 27 February 1948

signed: Hoffmann

(Attorney at Law)

The correctness and completeness of the preceding copy is herewith certified by me.

Nuremberg, 1 March 1948

signed: Hoffmann

(Attorney at Law)



Affidavit.

I, Leonhard Reinhardt, graduate engineer, residing in Schkopau, Leunastr. 13, have first been duly warned that I will render myself liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement represents the truth and was made for the purpose of being submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

I have been Director of the Construction Department of the Schkopau Buna Plant since early in 1936. In this capacity I also had charge of the Photographic Department. The Photographic Department had orders from me to make a regular photographic record of the construction of the Schkopau Buna Plant and also of parts of the factory.

I hereby certify that the pictures reproduced in Q4-Documents No. 204 are photographic copies of photographs which were taken during the war in the Schkopau Buna Plant by my Photographic Department. The description of the objects represented from the Schkopau Buna Plant is correct.

Nuernberg, 27 February 1948

signed: Leonhard Reinhardt

The preceding signature of Herr Leonhard Reinhardt, graduate engineer, residing in Schkopau, Leunastr. 13, was executed today in Nuernberg before me, Attorney at Law, Karl Hoffmann, and is witnessed by me.

Nuernberg, 27 February 1948

signed: Hoffmann  
(Attorney at Law)

The correctness and completeness of the preceding copy is hereby certified.

Nuernberg, 1 March 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney at Law)

Affidavit.

I, Assistant Judge Alfred Fasshauer, residing in Schkopau, Pistoritz St. 3, have first been duly warned that I will render myself liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement represents the truth and was made for the purpose of being submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI in the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

During the war I was a legal assistant in the Legal and Social Welfare Department of the Schkopau Buna Plant. In actual fact I still hold the same position today.

I hereby certify that OA-Documant No. 213; submitted to me in mimeographed form, is a literal copy of a report which the Legal Department of the Schkopau Buna Plant sent to the German Central Administrative Office for Public Health VII/3, Berlin W 9, Leipzigerstrasse 5/7, on 24 February 1947. The report deals with the amount of sickness and the achievements of the Schkopau Buna Plant in the field of caring for the sick during the war years.

From my own work during the war and from my personal knowledge I can confirm that up to the end of the war foreigners were not treated differently or worse than the German employees. The foreigners were especially frequent guests in the infirmary of the Schkopau Buna Plant and special consultation hours were arranged for them. This was not because the sickness figures were higher among the foreigners, but because the foreigners were especially glad to make use of the exemplary medical facilities in Schkopau. Everybody who was really sick was given the same care and attention as a German worker.

It was repeatedly acknowledged by German authorities during inspections and on other occasions that the

- 2 -

Schkopau Buna Plant's medical care and attention to health was  
exemplary.

Schkopau, 8 March 1948

signed: Alfred Fasshauer

Registry No. 129 Year 1948  
-----

I hereby certify the preceding signature of Assistant  
Judge Alfred Fasshauer from Schkopau near Merseburg,  
Plosteritz-Strasse 5.

Halle a.S., 8 March 1948

The Notary

signed: Paul Cheer

Stamp of the Notary's Office

Bill of costs:

The correctness and completeness of the  
preceding copy is hereby certified

Nuernberg, 20 March 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney at Law)

DOCUMENT BOOK II B AMBROS  
-----

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

15 April 1948

I, John B. Robinson, AGO No. X 046350, hereby certify that I am a duly appointed translator for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document Book II B Ambros.

John B. Robinson  
AGO No. X 046350

*Case 6  
Defense*

TRIBUNAL VI

CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK III A

for

OTTO AMEROS

The

Foundation of the AUSCHWITZ Werke

submitted by  
Karl HOFFMANN,  
Defense Counsel  
Attorney at Law

*Strong*





Index to Document Book III A  
for  
Otto A M B R O S

Doc/No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
OA-301		Memorandum on the inspection of the site in Upper Silesia on 12 October 1939. Sites within the 1 September 1939 frontiers of the Reich, suitable for the erection of a third Buna works are inspected.	1 - 6
OA-302		Letter from Otto AMBROS to various Government offices, dated 9 July 1940. In this letter, AMBROS informs his correspondents that it had been decided at a conference held on 5 July 1940, at the premises of the Reich Office for Economic Development : "that the conditions upon which the execution of this project (Buna works, Breslau/Rattwitz) formerly depended have changed and a continuation of work cannot be justified."	7 - 8
OA-303		Memorandum on a visit paid to BRUCHT, Deputy Gauleiter of Silesia, on 11 July 1940. "Dr. Ambros enumerated the reasons which had led to the discontinuation of construction work in Rattwitz, and drew particular attention to the fact that the production plants which it had hitherto been intended to erect at Rattwitz would not be re-erected elsewhere, and especially not in the West."	9 - 10
OA-304		Excerpt from the Reich Legal Gazette, Part I, page 867. "Decree for the Execution of the Four Year Plan, dated 18 October 1936." "Ministerpräsident Generaloberst GOERING will take the measures necessary for the fulfilment of the task assigned to him and is authorized	

Index to the Document Book III A

for  
Otto A M B R O S

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		to issue such legal ordinances and general administrative regulations as are necessary to the execution of these duties. He is authorized to receive reports from all authorities, including the supreme Reich authorities, all Party Offices and the offices of all branch organizations and unions affiliated to the Party, and to issue instructions to the said authorities."	11 - 12
QA-305		Excerpt from the Reich Legal Gazette for 1936, Part I, page 936. "Second Decree for the Execution of the Four Year Plan, dated 5 November 1936." "Any violations of such orders and regulations will be punished by imprisonment and a fine, the amount of the latter to be unlimited, or by imprisonment or a fine."	13 - 14
QA-306		Excerpt from the Minutes of the 77th Meeting of the Chemicals Committee held in Frankfurt on Main on 11 November 1940. "Dr. AMBROS gave particulars of the anticipated completion dates of the individual production stages in the Buna works at Schkopau and Huls, and gave a report on the erection of a third Buna plant at Ludwigshafen and of an additional plant in the East, <u>as ordered by the Reich.</u> "	15
QA-307		Photostatic copy of an original map described as the former map of the Austrian General Staff, which "was one of the first documents to play a decisive role in the choice of the site and the planning of the Buna Works, Auschwitz."	16
QA-308		Letter from the Mayor of Auschwitz to I.G., Ludwigshafen, dated 9 January 1941.	

Index to Document Book III A

for Otto MERES

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		Following an enquiry from I.G. Ludwigshafen, the mayor writes: "A good and suitable building site of the required size is available in the immediate neighborhood, to the east of Auschwitz. The site lies in the general direction of Dwory. It is flat and above flood level, and offers exceptionally favorable rail communication facilities. Facilities for communication with the Vistula are also very favorable."	17-19
OA-309		Letter from I.G. Ludwigshafen (MERES, Santo) to the Hydraulics Office (Wasserbauamt) Teschen, dated 15 January 1941, together with a sketch. The I.G. Ludwigshafen writes: "On the instructions of the Reich Office for Economic Development, Berlin, and the Supreme Command of the Wehrmacht, we are to examine the possibility of setting up a new industrial plant for large-scale chemical production in the Auschwitz area."	20-22
OA-310		Affidavit by Cecill SAUTO dated 3 January 1946 on a document consisting of two pages, on the carbon copy typed with the original of a document dictated and signed by Santo, dated 25 January 1941, on a telephone conversation with Chief Engineer FAUST held on 25 January 1941. The memorandum on the telephone conversation between Santo and Faust contains the following information on the site inspected. Faust gives a report on the site: "The site is enormous and completely flat, with the result that very little grading would have to be undertaken. Population of Inowice and Dwory purely Polish, to be evacuated by 1 April 1942, ditto Polish and Jewish population of Auschwitz."	23-25

Index to Document Book III A  
for Otto AMBROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
OA-311		Map showing sources of raw materials for the I.G. works, AUSCHWITZ.	26
OA-312		<p>Excerpt from the Minutes of the 5th Meeting of the K Plastics Committee (Kommission K, K = Kunststoffe = Plastics) held on 30 January 1941, written up on 17 February 1941.</p> <p>The consent of the Reich authorities to the erection of the Buna plant at Ludwigshafen was qualified by the condition that preparations be made for the building of another Buna plant in Silesia. The local conditions of the sites at Ratibitz, Groschowitz near Oppeln and Eschenschhof near Czepelin were investigated, but in each case, the lack of coal in the neighbourhood was found to be a disadvantage. Auschwitz offers the most favorable conditions. It is situated at the confluence of the rivers Vistula, Sola and Przemsza in the former Austrian Upper Silesia. There are also several square kilometres of flat land, lying above flood-level. Coal can be obtained from the Puorsten pits 18 km. away, electric power from Lask (30 km), lime from Kressendorf (25 km), coke from Karwin (59 km), benzene from Kattowitz (31 km) and naphthalene from Heydebreck (95 km), rock-salt from Wieliczka (73 km). Kressendorf and Wieliczka, however, are situated in the Government General. Much more difficult is the manpower situation. It will be necessary to contact the Reich Commissioner for the Consolidation of Germanies in connection with the procurement of labor. Considerable funds will also be required for the building of settlements.</p> <p>....</p> <p>An inspection of the Auschwitz site was made during the period 1-4 February. This confirmed the truth</p>	

Index to Document Book III A

for Otto AMEROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		of all these assumptions. At a conference with the RWA (Reich Office for Economic Development) and the RM (Reich Ministry of Economics) in Berlin, Auschwitz was finally chosen as the site for Buna plant IV, and the I.G. was ordered to draw up the plans."	27-31
OA-313		Affidavit by Dr. Wolfgang Alt, dated 16 July 1947, on the course of the 5th. Meeting of the Plastics Committee (Kommission K) held on 30 January 1941. Alt states: "I can state with complete certainty that the existence of the Auschwitz concentration camp played no part whatsoever in the discussion of the Auschwitz project during the meeting of the Plastics Committee held on 30 January 1941. The camp was, in fact, not even mentioned; at the time of the discussion of the Auschwitz project, I myself - and I am convinced that this applies to the other members of the Committee also - was totally unaware of the existence of the camp."	32-35
OA-314		Affidavit by Dr. Walter BEPPE, dated 8 October 1947.	36-37
OA-315		Affidavit by Dr. Wolfgang BUELOW, dated 30 July 1947.	38-39
OA-316		Affidavit by Dr. Heinrich HOPFF, dated 7 October 1947.	40-41
OA-317		Affidavit by Dr. Georg NIEMLIN, dated 30 July 1947.	42-43
		OA-Documents 314-317 are affidavits deposed by participants in the 5th Meeting of Committee K, held on 30 January 1941. (OA-Document 312).	



Index to Document Book III A

for Otto AMEROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		The deponents make the following statement: "that no mention whatsoever was made during the Committee's discussion of the choice of the Auschwitz site, of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz or of the possibility of employing the inmates of this camp in the building of the new works."	
OA-318		Affidavit by Leo SKRZIPCZYK, dated 10 January 1948. Skrzypczyk took part in the conference held on 31 January 1941 at the premises of the Regional Planning Office, Katowitz (Exh. 1412, AI-11785, Volume 22 of the Prosecution). On the subject of labor, Skrzypczyk makes the following statement: "As far as I remember, not only was the town of Auschwitz to be expanded for the accommodation of the workmen and employees of the new I.G. works, but new blocks of flats to accommodate several thousand people were to be built in a place (Inielin?) about 10 kms. to the north-west of Auschwitz."	44-45
OA-319		Letter dated 17 February 1941 from the Technical Department of Ludwigsafen to the Amtskommissar and Mayor of Auschwitz town, on the subject of the "Industrial project". The writer informs his correspondent that the Reich Office for Economic Development and the Reich Ministry of Economics "have made the general decision during the past week that a Buna plant is to be built in the Auschwitz area".	46-47
OA-320		Letter from the Gauleiter and Oberprasident of Upper Silesia to Otto AMEROS, dated 6 March 1941.	

Index to Document Book III A

for Otto AMEROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		Brecht states the following: "In my capacity as Commissioner for the Consolidation of Germany, I have decided, in the meantime, that Poles living in Auschwitz and its vicinity, who might be considered as potential man-power for the Buna works, will not, for the time-being, be evacuated in the course of our present resettlement program. This precaution will, I think, ensure that sufficient Polish workers will be available, especially for the period during which the works themselves are being built."	48-49
OA-321		Letter from Bauinspektor Saffo to Dr. KERPKE, Building Department, Leuna, dated 15 March 1941. This letter states that the I.G. has come to an agreement with the mayor of Auschwitz, whereby the latter will provide "from among the local Jews and/or Poles people suitable to assist in work of surveying".	50-53
OA-322		Letter from the Plenipotentiary General for Special Questions related to Chemical Production (Gebeck) to I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G., Ludwigshafen, dated 8 March 1941, on the subject of "Allocation of Labor for the AUSCHWITZ Buna project." The Plenipotentiary General offers 2,000 or more men from March 1941 onwards, and requests information as to the total number of men required for the entire period during which building will be in progress (this period to be divided into 6 building phases).	54-55
OA-323		Letter of reply from I.G. Ludwigshafen, (VDFOS, Rulow) to the Reich Office for Economic Development (Gebeck), dated 18 March 1941. Labor requirements for the AUSCHWITZ Buna project, to be divided into 6 building phases, for construction and assembly work, are given in detail.	56-57

Index to Document Book III A

for Otto JEROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
DA-324		Letter from the Technical Department of Ludwigshafen, dated 17 March 1941, to the Plenipotentiary General for Special Questions related to Chemical Production (Gebecken), on the position as far as hutments for AUSCHWITZ are concerned. "In order that work may be started as quickly as possible on the Buna works to be set up in the Auschwitz area, a large number of skilled and unskilled building workers will have to be accommodated in hutments in the very near future, as there are no facilities available in the neighboring residential district for the immediate housing of this staff of building workers. We therefore request you to grant permission for the erection of a residential camp to accommodate approximately 2,300 men."	58-59
DA-325		Data submitted in support of the application for a building permit for the Buna Works, AUSCHWITZ, dated 15 May 1941, compiled by Dr. Erich LECH, Ludwigshafen. The following is stated on the subject of the choice of the site: "The following were the decisive factors in the choice of the site: 1. The extensive, almost flat tract of land, lying above flood level, between Auschwitz, Dvory and Morawice. 2. Proximity to the Upper Silesian coal center, a factor which is the more important since coal is important not only as a source of electricity and steam, but also, - and this latter to an ever-increasing extent - as a basic substance in work of a chemical nature; 3. Adequate water supplies from the Vistula and the Sola, and 4. Good communications."	60-70

Index to Document Book III A.

for Otto MERTS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
DA-326		<p>Report by Regierungsbaumeister H. LICH, dated 29 April 1942 on a conference held on 27 April 1942 at the premises of the Reich Ministry for Armaments and Munitions, Berlin-Charlottenburg on "Simplification of Work involved in the Establishment of Auschwitz." "Drs. ROEFKE and LICH stated that Auschwitz had been chosen for the following reasons:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) The Army Planning Board had requested that the fourth Army plant be built in Upper Silesia.</li> <li>2) Good lines of communication with the coal mines (25 km).</li> <li>3) Proximity to the lime stone quarries (25 km) and to salt supplies (15 km).</li> <li>4) The necessity, for reasons of water supply and drainage, for erecting the plant in the im- mediate vicinity of a major river (Vistula).</li> </ol> <p>A total of 10 million RM. had been spent to date on the work at Ausch- witz. In view of the delays which were bound to occur in the course of building, it was imperative to avoid a suspension of building operations. The transfer of the plant to another site was out of the question."</p>	71-74

T./Construction

Ludwigshafen, 20 October 1939

3/8

File Memorandum

on the

Site Inspection in Upper Silesia

on 12 October 1939.

Participants: Herr Director Dr. ter Meer,  
I.G. Frankfurt on Main  
" " Dr. Ambros, I.G. Ludwigshafen,  
" Obering. Santo, I.G. Ludwigshafen.

1.) Gogolin Site.

The site is located 3 km north-west of Gogolin, west of the Heydebrock-Breslau main railroad tracks. Site is comparatively level, so that in levelling the ground no change in the elevation of the building site is to be expected. The site is being used for agricultural purposes and is free from woods. (Müllenhof) The two square kilometers of ground required for a plant can be easily cut out and can even be enlarged by using Müllenhof. Value of the soil can be considered as medium. It is possible to connect with the main tracks at Gogolin station. The length of the trunk-line between the Gogolin station and the plant-station would be approximately 2.5 km. The distance from the Oder to the nearest point of the terrain is 1.5 km. The trackage of a port railroad has to overcome considerable differences of height (in the terrain approximately plus 180, or plus 1.58). Water supply would come from the Oder, which carries at low water approx. 11 cm per second, below Regau lock and drainage of the waste water would be possible downstream. The water of the Oder is badly polluted by the Trappitz cellulose plant, the waste water from which carries numerous fine wood fibres, in addition to soda and resin compounds, into the river. The river does not clear between influx of this waste water and where we take it out below Regau. Consequently we should have to consider drawing off the water above the cellulose factory in order to eliminate this difficulty, which would, however, mean that the pipe line would have to be longer by approximately 1.5 km. The height of the water at Regau or at km 131 of the Oder amount to:



Highest Flood of 1903	plus 161.59 m NN
dressed up average flow	" 155.97 m NN
undressed average flow	" 155.71 m NN
undressed average low water	" 154.88 m NN

In view of the altitude of the terrain, one can assume that ground water could be found at a normal depth of approximately 2-3 meters below the grading.

Housing settlements would be possible at Bogolin, Karlshorst, and Ottmuth. Distance from the Waldenstein lime-stone works (limestone quarry) approx. 2 km,  
distance from Odertal (cooking plant Schaffgolsch) " 15 "  
distance from Oppeln " 23 "

Advantages: The terrain is comparatively level, without forests, and could be easily graded. Railroad connections are good; area of the terrain sufficiently large. Very good location as regards limestone and coal.

Disadvantages: The distance from the Oder, for the construction of a port railway which must overcome changes of level, is several km. Pollute water from the Oder, or 3 km-long water pipes. No large town in the close vicinity.

## 2.) Doebern site.

The terrain is situated approximately 4 km northwest of the confluence of the Halapane and the Oder. It is bordered in the east by the main line Oppeln-Breslau, in the west by the Berreck-Doebern road. The terrain is a level plateau whose highest point is in Schmuckenberg. The terrain is not wooded and is used for agriculture by the inhabitants of the adjoining villages. The area which could be cut out for the terrain would amount at most to 1.4 qm, which moreover would not be a rectangle. The quality of the soil is about that of average arable land. The ground-water level is probably not deep. The building plot is composed of sand with layers of clay. Connection to the railway at Doebern-Lapp station easily feasible. The trunk-line between the State railroad station and the factory would be approximately 1.5 to 2 km long. The distance from the Oder - which is, however, separated by the road and the village Klein-Doebern - would be approximately 300 meters. Construction of a port-railway to the Oder easily feasible. The area is free from floods. The Halapane carries at average water

level, approximately 3 cms per second, which would make it easy to draw off water for the plant. Also drainage is feasible. The height of the Oder at Doeborn = approximately km 164 is at:

Highest high water	1903	plus 146.80 m N.M.
dammed up average flow		" 146.70 " "
undammed average flow		" 144.94 " "
undammed average low level		" 143.85 " "

The distance from Oppeln approximately 13 km (railway line).

Advantages: The terrain is close to the Oder, so that connection with water transport as well as the water supply and drainage, can be built comparatively easily.

Disadvantages: Site squeezed in between road and railway line which does not offer any possibility for development. Besides, the immediate proximity of the villages Doeborn and Klein-Doeborn is intolerable from the point of view of air raid protection. In my opinion the terrain should be completely eliminated from the selection on these grounds.

### 3.) Schoenau site.

The terrain lies 6 km south-east of Brieg, south of the Oder and the Kopon-Schoenau canal, north-east of the Oppeln-Brieg main line. The territory is rather undulating, but free from woods and is used for agriculture. The quality of the ground is average arable soil. The building plot is presumably sand with single layers of clay. The villagers say the ground-water level is very high, approximately 1 m underneath the terrain. The area would give a usable plant site of approximately 2 qkm. The connection to the main line of the State railroads is easily feasible. The trunk-line between Reich railroad station Brieg and the factory station would amount to approximately 3 km. If the factory line could branch off from the spur-line of the Reich railroad to Laippe, then the length of the trunk line would be only 1.5 km. The location with regard to the river is good; the closest point to the navigation canal is approximately 500 m., the distance to the Oder for water supply or drainage is approximately 1 km. Port railroad and resignment center on the canal easily feasible.

Water supply, even up to 3 cfm per second, is immediately available. Under certain conditions, this can be drawn from the canal since the water level is dammed up and always contains the same volume of water. A slight current is caused in the canal by the water from the machinery of the Schwanowitz electrical works. The output of the electrical works is said to amount to 6 million kilowatt hours. High water level of the flood of 1903 of the Oder at km 195 was 138.16 m M.N.

Advantages: The terrain is very close to the Oder with a good position for connection with waterway as well as short pipe-lines for water supply and drainage. The traffic situation is good owing to the proximity of the road and the railway. The near-by city of Brieg represents a favorable center for settlements.

Disadvantages: The terrain is undulating and probably has a high ground-water level. A bad point is that the village of Schoenau, which would lie rather close to the area of the plant, restricts the expansion of the plant area towards the south-east. The acquisition of the land is certain to entail difficulties.

#### 4.) Linden site.

The terrain is south of the Oder, approximately 8 km north-west of Brieg and is bordered in the south-west by the main line Brieg-Brosch. The terrain is comparatively flat, without woods and is used for agriculture. The quality of the soil is that of average arable land, the building plot is probably sand with deposits of clay. A plant area of 2 qkm and more can be cut out easily as a usable site with a good sub-soil formation. Track connection to the railroad line is easily feasible at Reich railroad station Heidau. The distance by trunk-line to the plant-station is less than 1 km. The distance from the Oder to the nearest point of the area, is approximately 800 m. Water supply from and drainage into the Oder is feasible without any difficulties. The construction of a port railroad to the Oder as well as that of a wharf or port is practicable. Highest high water level of 1903 of the Oder at Linden = km. 210, was plus 132.35 m M.N. The ground-water is said to be approx. 1.0 - 1.5 m below the terrain, part of it under pressure from the Oder.

Advantages: The terrain is comparatively flat and offers good possibilities for development. The location with relation to the railroad and river is convenient. Good possibilities for settlements in the city of Brieg and vicinity.

Disadvantages: No essential ones. The acquisition of ground will be somewhat difficult owing to the village of Linden.

Notes on the Oder:

(Report of the Office for Hydraulics in Oppeln, Raurat Assmussen).

The fish stocks in the Oder are almost completely destroyed by the waste-water from the Upper Silesian mines which contains phenol, as well as that of the paper and sugar-factories which are located on the upper reaches of the Oder. The volume of water in the Oder amounts approximately to:

	<u>Low water level</u>	<u>Average flow</u>
at Ratibor	10 cbm/sec.	80 cbm/sec.
at Oppeln	13 "	100 "

These statements, however, are not binding.

The slope of the river is 1 : 3000. The highest water level was determined in 1903. Navigation on the Oder, which is canalized in its central course, is maintained by the so-called Flauen barges which hold 700 tons, and are 67 meters long and 8.20 m wide. The river should however be reconstructed for navigation with 1000 - ton barges whereby all the existing locks will have to be re-built owing to their insufficient width. Provided that the main body of water is retained, it should be possible to take out 2-3 cbm at all four different points. For the drainage of the waste water, the authorities will demand good pre-cleaning and clarification. The sufficient dredging of the navigational channel, which is approximately 1.70 m deep at Breslau, creates difficulties primarily in the middle course, between Breslau and Fuerstenberg, and at low water level, navigation has to be interrupted there. The Ottmachau reservoir with 95 million cbm of water reserve and the Turann with approximately 90 million cbm water reserve, cause a rise in the water level of only 20 cm over 70 days.



The responsible authority for the approval of the water supply as well as for individual questions on water is the Oder River Administration, Breslau, whose director is Wasserstrassendirektor STANTZIG.

signed: SANTO.

To be distributed:

Direktor Dr. ter Meer, Frankfurt,  
" Dr. Ambros, Leverkusen,  
" Dr. Lymann, " ,  
Dr. Bach, Kusel,  
Dr. Rohde, " .  
TA/Bau 2 x.

A F F I D A V I T .

I, Baudirektor Camill SANTO, living in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hanserstr. 5 a, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that this document, consisting of five sheets, is a correct and true copy of "Memorandum on the terrain inspection in Upper Silesia on the 12 October 1939" which I wrote on 20 October 1939. I have marked each of the five sheets with my signature and today's date.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 3 January 1948.

signed: Camill SANTO

I herewith certify and witness the above signature of Baudirektor Camill SANTO, living in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hanserstr. 5a, which was made before me, Dr. Wolfgang LIT, Assistant Defense Counsel, living in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hanserstr. 4.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang LIT  
Assistant Defense Counsel .

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 3 January 1948.

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen, 19 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang LIT  
Assistant Defense Counsel.



I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
Dr. A/Fr.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine , 9 July 1940  
Chief Engineer (Obering.) Santo

To the Gauleitung of the NSDAP  
for the attention of the Gau-  
leiter's deputy Bracht

To the Burgomaster  
of Eattwitz

To the Gauamt for Technical Science., To the Kreisleiter of Ohlau  
for the attention of Director Dr.  
Rienacker

To the German Labor Front  
Gauverwaltung Breslau

To the Directorate of the  
Reich Railroads in Breslau

To the Oberpraesident of  
Breslau

To the Regional Waterways  
Directorate in Breslau

To the Regierungspraesident  
of Breslau

Labor Office in Brieg

To the Chief Burgomaster  
of Breslau

Military Economy Inspection  
(Wehrwirtschaftsinspektion)  
VIII in Breslau

District Air Command VIII in Breslau

Regional Farmers' Association in Breslau  
District Farmers' Association in Ohlau  
Sub-Distribution Office in Breslau  
Branch Office of the Organization Todt  
in Breslau  
Regional Planning Silesia, Breslau  
Plant Air-Raid Protection-Area /Ver-  
trauensstelle, Breslau

On 5 July 1940 a meeting took place at the Reich Office for Econo-  
mic Development in regard to the present situation of our vari-  
ous building projects. The Breslau/Eattwitz Buna-Plant project  
was dealt with specially.

The conclusion was reached that the assumptions regarding this  
project were not feasible and that it would be irresponsible  
to continue the building work.

It was therefore decided to discontinue for the time being  
the building project Breslau/Eattwitz and to leave it to  
later decisions as to how far this project might be resumed.

This difficult decision has yet to be made, despite our extensive planning work, as the opening up of the terrain is only in its first stages, and the work can be broken off.

This letter is to inform you immediately of this decision. As soon as we have a clear view as to how far our immediate measures can go we shall take the liberty of letting you know verbally the details of this decision and explaining its consequences.

At present we are still detained here, as we have to arrange for the carrying out of the orders already given. But we hope soon to have the opportunity of coming to Breslau for this discussion.

Heil Hitler !

I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELL-  
SCHAFT

signed : Ambros    signed : ppe.Santo

I herewith certify that the above is<sup>d</sup> true and complete copy.

Nuernberg, 7 February 1948

signed : Karl Hoffmann

(Attorney-at-law)

I.G.FARBENINDUSTRIE AGTIENGESELLSCHAFT, BRESLAU 1.

Breslau, 12 July 1940

File Memorandum in the

Visit of Deputy-Gauleiter BRACHT, on 11 July 1940

Participants:

of the I.G.:  
Deputy-Gauleiter BRACHT  
Director Dr. AMBROS  
Oberingenieur SAUTO  
Herr v. DEHN-ROTFELSER.

Dr. AMBROS stated the reasons which had led to the cessation of the construction work in Bittwitz and particularly pointed out that the productions hitherto intended for Bittwitz would not be reconstructed in any other place, especially not in the west.

Should a third Buna works be built for a new process, it is probable that it would be in Silesia; whether it would then come to Bittwitz, however, or, on account of other basic products, would be erected in reference to another works in Upper Silesia, cannot yet be determined. The immediate requirements in Buna, as well as the technical and economic considerations described by us, compel a final closing down of the building site.

We point out that up to the present no resettlements have taken place and that the agricultural damage caused by the excavations can be comparatively easily remedied. We would endeavour so to arrange the matter on the spot, that nobody concerned would suffer.

Deputy-Gauleiter BRACHT replied that he must recognise our point of view and that he would inform the agencies that approached him on the matter, as well as his subordinate agencies, accordingly.

(Signed) v. DEHN.

cc. to Dr. AMBROS  
O.I. SAUTO  
Building Management Bittwitz.

3 January 1948 (signed) Camill SAUTO

AFFIDAVIT

I, Building Director Camill SAUTO, residing in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hanserstrasse 5a, having been first informed that I render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit, hereby declare on oath that my statement is in accordance with the truth and has been made in order to be laid as evidence before the Military Court in the Palace of Justice, in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that this document represents a true photostat of the carbon copy of the memorandum from Herrn von DEHL-ROTFELSER of 13th July 1940, received by me and furnished with my mark.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

(Signed) Camill SAUTO

The above signature of Building Director Camill SAUTO, resident in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hanserstrasse 5a, affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, resident in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hanserstrasse 4, is hereby certified and attested by me.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948.

(Signed) Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the foregoing copy is herewith certified.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 20 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

## Reich Legal Gazette

## Part I

1936	Published at Berlin, the 19 October 1936	No. 96
Date	Contents	Page
18 Oct 36	Decree for the Execution of the Four Year Plan	887
14 Oct 36	Decree of the Fuehrer and Reich Chancellor to the Law concerning Wehrmacht Supply	888

-----

Decree for the Execution of the Four Year Plan,  
of 18 October 1936

The realization of the new Four Year Plan announced by me at the Party Congress of Bonn requires a uniform direction of all forces of the German nation and the strict co-ordination of all the relevant authorities in Party and State.

I entrust the execution of the Four Year Plan to Minister-President Generaloberst GÖRING.

Ministerpräsident Generaloberst GÖRING will take the necessary measures for the fulfilment of the task assigned to him and has authority in this respect to issue legal ordinances and general administrative regulations. He is empowered to receive reports from all governmental agencies, including the highest authorities of the Reich, and all agencies of the Party, its affiliations and attached organizations, and to issue orders to them.

Berchtesgaden, 18 October 1936

THE FUEHRER AND REICH CHANCELLOR

ADOLF HITLER



The agreement of this copy with the original produced  
before me is hereby certified.

Nuremberg, 30 January 1948 \*

(Signed) HOFFMANN  
Attorney

The correctness and completeness of  
the foregoing copy are hereby certified.

Nuremberg, 4 February 1948

HOFFMANN  
Attorney

Extract from the Reich Legal Gazette, Year 1936, Part I, page 936.

SECOND ORDINANCE FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE FOUR YEAR PLAN

of 5 November 1936

By virtue of the Decree of the Fuehrer and Reich Chancellor for the Execution of the Four Year Plan of 18 October 1936 (Reich Legal Gazette I, page 887) it is hereby ordered as follows:

I.

Those of my regulations for the execution of the Four Year Plan which have to be made public, in so far as they do not appear in the Reich Legal Gazette, will be published in the German Reich Newspaper and Prussian State Newspaper (Deutsche Reichsanzeiger and Preussische Staatsanzeiger).

II.

(1) Any violation of the orders and prohibitions contained in such regulations will be punished with imprisonment and fine, the latter to an unlimited extent, or with one or other of these punishments.

(2) Par. 4 of the Law for the Execution of the Four Year Plan - Appointment of a Reich Commissioner for Price Control - of 29 October 1936 (Reich Legal Gazette I page 927) remains unaffected.

III.

No compensation will be payable for any damage arising as a result of an order published in accordance with Par. I. hereof.

Berlin, 5 November 1936

The Ministerpräsident

GOEBBES

Plenipotentiary for the Four Year Plan.

The agreement of this copy with the original produced before me is hereby certified.

Nuremberg, 30 January 1948

(Signed) HOFFMANN  
Attorney

The correctness and completeness of the above copy are herewith certified.

Nuremberg, 5 February 1948.

HOFFMANN  
Attorney

EXTRACT FROM THE MINUTES OF THE  
27th SITTING OF THE CHEMICALS COMMITTEE  
in FRANKFURT a.M. on 11 November 1940

Opening: 15 hours

Close: 20 hours

Present: WEBER-ANDREAS  
Dr. AMBROS  
Dr. BUHL  
Dr. BUEHNER  
HAEFLINGER  
Dr. KUEHN  
Dr. ter MEER - part of the time  
BOESWART  
v. HEIDER  
HORSTMANN  
OHLIGER - secretary

Excused: Dr. WURSTER

.....  
Dr. AMBROS gives particulars regarding the prospective completion of the individual production stages in the Buna-Werke Schkopau and Guelz and reports on the execution of a third Buna-Werke in Ludwigshafen and a further works in the East, as ordered by the Reich.

.....  
(signed) WEBER-ANDREAS (signed) OHLIGER (secretary)

The agreement of this photostat ( 13 pages ) with the original produced before me of the Minutes of the Chemicals Sitting of 11 November 1940 is hereby certified.

Ludwigshafen a/Rh., 19 December 1947 (Signed) Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense  
Counsel

The correctness of the foregoing extract is hereby certified.

Nuremberg, 11 February 1948

(Signed) Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney

AFFIDAVIT

I, Baudirektor Camill SANTO, domiciled in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, Hanserstrasse 5a, have had my attention drawn to the fact that I shall render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare upon oath that my statement corresponds to the truth, and that it was made in order to be presented as evidence before Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

I declare that the map which is attached to my affidavit and which bears my signature and today's date, represents a faithful photostatic copy of an original which was described to us as the former Austrian General Staff map, and which has served us as one of the first bases for choice of site and plan of the Buna Factory, Auschwitz.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Camill SANTO

I, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, Bunsenstrasse 4, hereby certify and witness the above signature of Herr Baudirektor Camill SANTO, domiciled in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, Hanserstrasse 5a, who signed in my presence.  
Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt -  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The above copy is herewith certified  
to be accurate and complete.

Nuernberg, 7 February 1948

Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney



The Bürgermeister  
(Antskommissar)

Auschwitz, 9 January 1941  
Kreis Bielitz

Stamp: Technical Dept. 8  
(rest illegible)

To  
The I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.

LUDWIGSHAFEN am Rhein

Subject: Industrial Project.  
Letter of 23 December 1940 - Dr.H./St.

In reply to the above-mentioned communication I beg to state the following:

1. There is a good and suitable site of the required size for building purposes in the immediate neighbourhood, to the east of Auschwitz. The site is in the direction of Dwory. It is flat and above flood level, and also offers favorable rail connections such as are seldom found. A very favorable connection with the Weichsel is also possible.
2. The following communities belong to the Antskommissar district of Auschwitz:

Auschwitz	with	11,209 inhabitants
Birkenau	"	4,450 "
Babitz	"	2,260 "
Broschkowitz	"	400 "
Klutaschnikowitz	"	813 "
Dwory	"	2,219 "
Wlosienitz	"	813 "
Poromba-Wiolka	"	965 "
Stare-Stawy	"	735 "
Zaborze - Ost	"	465 "
Monowitz	"	1,178 "

25,507 inhabitants

Apart from about 7,000 Jews concentrated in the town of Auschwitz, the rest of the population of the town is still predominantly Polish.

3. With regard to the volume of the Weichsel, Sola and Przemsza rivers I have no reliable information. I assume however that the TESCHEN Hydraulics Office will give you all necessary information on the subject.
4. Auschwitz had had a large elementary school (Volkschule) up to now. The question of whether to open one of a higher denomination (in Polish times there was a Grammar School (Gymnasium) here) will be taken up as soon as

the preliminary condition is fulfilled, that is, as soon as sufficient numbers of Reich Germans arrive.

Any further questions could be discussed on the occasion of a visit of inspection, which I would ask you to arrange soon. In this connection I would, however, make the express request that you get in touch first of all with the Silesian Provincial Planning Association, Kattowitz Office in Kattowitz, Regional Government, to avoid overlapping with other plans. The above-mentioned Planning Office has been working for a long time on the question of the opening up of the local industrial area, so that their co-operation will also be of the greatest importance in connection with local planning.

Heil Hitler!

signed: Gutschke

AFFIDAVIT

I, Baudirektor Camill SANTO, domiciled in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, Hanserstrasse 5a, have had my attention drawn to the fact that I shall render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare upon oath that my statement corresponds to the truth, and that it was made in order to be presented as evidence before the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

I declare that this document represents a true copy of the letter sent by Biervermeister of Luschwitz (Lustakommissar) Gutsche on 9 January 1941, to I.G. Ludwigshafen. As can be seen from the stamp on the first page of the photostat, this letter went to the Technical Section of the Ludwigshafen am Rhein plant. It was forwarded to me for further attention.

I have also marked page 1 of this photostat on the reverse side with my signature and today's date.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Camill Santo

I, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, Bunsenstrasse 4, hereby certify and witness the above signature of Herr Baudirektor Camill SANTO, domiciled in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, Hanserstrasse 5a, who signed in my presence.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The above copy is hereby certified to be correct and complete.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 20 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

188. 57. II.Dr. Eisfeld.

Registered !

To the  
Hydraulics Office  
Teschen (Upper Silesia)

TA/Bau 15 January 1941 5/B

New Industrial Plant

/and the Supreme Command of the

On the instructions of the Reich Office for Economic Reconstruction /  
Wehrmacht, Berlin, we have to examine the possibility of setting up a new in-  
dustrial plant for large scale chemical production in the region of  
Auschwitz.

One of the most important preliminary conditions in the choice of  
a site, is the presence of sufficient waterpower for refrigeration  
purposes and manufacturing processes, as well as the possibility  
of draining off all the waste products of manufacture in the plant.  
In addition to the necessary rail connection, it is also desirable  
to have immediate or at least indirect access to water communica-  
tions. A further condition is that the site should lie above flood  
water level.

On the suggestion of the Buergermeister (Amtskommissar) of Auschwitz  
we are writing to you to request you for information on hydraulic  
data relative to the Weichsel, Sola, and Przemsza rivers. We are  
enclosing a sketch-map on which we have marked with a red rectangle,  
areas that may be considered as possible sites for the industrial  
plant. We should be grateful to you, if you could enlighten us on  
the following points:

- 1) Water volume of the Przemsza at Dzietskowitz for Site I,  
" " " " " Gross-Chelm " " II,  
" " " " Weichsel " Berlin " " II,  
" " " " " Dwory " " III,  
" " " " Sola " Auschwitz " " III.

Please give the volume of water in liters or cubic meters per second  
or hour, at the lowest and at normal water level (average level).

- 2) Water level of the Przemsza, Weichsel and Sola at the points  
named in 1) at low water, normal water level and high water. We  
should be glad of the maximum quotations above normal low water  
level (NN). As it is possible that you do not have a record of  
water levels at the points named, data referring to places in  
the neighbourhood of these points would also suffice.

- 3) Are sites I - III indicated by us above flood water level ?

TA/Bau 15 January 1941

To the Teschen Hydraulics Office (Upper Silesia)

- 4) Do the rivers mentioned carry enough water throughout the year to be able to serve as a flushing device for the factory waste?
- 5) What possibilities exist for connecting the industrial plant to the Weichsel water-course or canal for the various sites?

For your information we will add what volume of water we shall be using, and what volume will be returned.

For refrigeration and manufacturing processes we shall be using 3 cbm/sec. = about 10,000 cbm/h. Of this water 85% will be returned to the rivers in a completely clear state, 10% will return in the form of waste, which, according to modern methods will be purified before entering the flushing device, while only about 5% will be lost through evaporation etc. We hope to secure drinking water by means of well installations. The places for the removal and return of the water have been arranged so that the water is taken from the river above each individual site, and returned to the river below the site, making the distance between removal and return as large as possible.

We are aware that it will cause you no inconsiderable trouble answering the questions we require, since we assume that the Polish authorities will not have kept such careful records as German hydraulics offices are accustomed to do. However, we would like to request you to let us have these data as soon as possible, as the construction of the plant is of the greatest urgency for the war economy, and, as we mentioned at the outset, the choice of site will be decisively influenced by the water question. We would appreciate it if above all you would reply to Question 1) water volume, by return if possible, as this question is the most important for determining the site. We would therefore request you with the utmost courtesy to answer this question before all the others.

In view of the importance of the plant to the war economy, we would ask you to treat this matter as confidential. Please reply to the

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
Construction Department, for the attention of  
Herr Oberingenieur Santo,  
Ludwigshafen a/Rh.

Thanking you in anticipation for your trouble

I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

signed Ambros      Signed pp. Santo

1 Sketch-map



AFFIDAVIT

I, Baudirektor Camill SANTO, domiciled in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hansestrasse 5a, have had my attention drawn to the fact that I shall render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare upon oath that my statement corresponds to the truth, and that it was made in order to be presented as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg.

I declare that this document, consisting of 3 pages and 1 sketch-map, represents a carbon copy of the original letter dated 15.1.1941, which was signed by myself on the right and addressed to the Teschen Hydraulics Office.

The attached sketch-map is also identical with the one attached to the original letter.

I have also marked the first two pages of the carbon copy and the sketch-map with my name and today's date.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Camill Santo

I, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Bunsenstrasse 4, herewith certify and witness the above signature of Herr Baudirektor Camill SANTO, domiciled in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hansestrasse 5a, who signed in my presence.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The above copy is herewith  
certified true and correct.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 16 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Beaudirektor Camill S a n t o , living in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hansestrasse 5a, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence at the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that this document, consisting of two sheets, is an original copy of a memorandum which I wrote and signed on 25 January 1941 and refers to a telephone conversation with Oberingenieur F a u s t in which he described to me the results of his investigatory trip in the Upper Silesian area. I have also marked the first sheet of this memorandum with my name and today's date.

Ludwigshafen, a.Rh., 3 January 1948.

signed : Camill S a n t o

I herewith certify and witness the above signature of Beaudirektor Camill S a n t o , living in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hansestrasse 5a, made before me, Dr. Wolfgang A l t , Assistant Defense Counsel, living in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Bunsenstr. 4.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 3 January 1948

signed : Dr. Wolfgang A l t ,  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 16 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang A l t  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Telephone conversation with Obering. Faust on  
25 January 1941.

The Volume of water carried by the  
 Little Vistula amounts to 2.3 cubic meters per second,  
 S o l a " 2.1 " " " "  
 Przemsza " 2.5 " " " "

These data are uncertain, in reality the volumes should rather be assumed to be smaller. In addition to the 2.5 cbm per second of river water, the Przemsza carried approximately 5 - 5.5 cbm per second of waste water from the coal-mining district of Dombrowa.

The total volume of river water of the Vistula east of Auschwitz amounts therefore at low-water to 6.9 cbm per second (with-out-mine waste water). According to the data of the Office of Waterways in Gliwicz, however, one can count on a steady volume of 7 - 7.5 cbm per second including the mine waste water.

The Sola has been dammed up by the Poles south of Porabka and forms an artificial lake. The contents of this artificial lake, which however is made use of only at high water, amounts to 31 million cbm. Outside the high water period, the permanent contents are one and a half to three million cbm. In the case of a serious water shortage, this reservoir can be used to supply water for the rivers.

A large-scale construction program has been set up for the development of the Vistula, which envisages 14 dams in the Vistula and provides an ideal water supply. The period for the construction program is estimated ten years. The authorities count on a partial defrayment of the cost of these dams etc. by the industrial works which are interested in the supply of water. The Vistula is navigable up to the mouth of the Przemsza. The Przemsza is navigable by flat-bottomed barges holding 100 tons. On account of the mine waste water, the Przemsza does not freeze up and neither does the Vistula down to Dwory. Waste water drainage into the Vistula is possible. The waste water, however, must be carefully cooled and cleaned so as to preserve the large stocks of fish in the Upper Vistula.

Mineral Oil Production specified their water demand at 3 - 4 cbm per second, with a steady loss of one cbm per second. There is a project for a navigable canal along the Birewa with the following approximate layout: joining the Oder 10 km south of Gosal. It crosses the Rybnik-Gliwicz road at Nibarowit, passes north of Mikolai, crosses the Auschwitz-Myslowitz railroad line at Sosnowine and the Vistula east of Dwory and joins the Vistula at Cracow. A branch canal is planned, traveling north in the direction of Moschajow with a fair-sized port there. A reshipment center for industry could be erected in Dwory. In accordance with information

from the Regional Planning Board Breslau (Dr. Graiff), there are two possibilities for connection with the railroads:

- a) direct from Auschwitz - Dwory line.
- b) branching off south of Auschwitz from the Dzieditz - Auschwitz line, flanking the works territory on the south side and joining the Auschwitz - Cracow line.

Faust has inspected the land. The territory is enormous and completely flat so that very little grading would have to be done. The population of Monowice and Dwory is purely Polish and is to be evacuated by 1 April 1942; as also is the Polish and Jewish population of Auschwitz. The countryside is pretty but the villages, houses and population terrible. Auschwitz is a filthy hole. The responsible authority for water problems is the Office of Waterways in Gleiwitz, Menzelstr. The chief of the Office is Raurab Hilfer, his representative Dipl. Ing. Jambor.

signed : Santo

English Key to OA-Document No. 311

German:

English:

Standorte der wichtigsten  
Rohstoffe des I.G. Werkes  
Auschwitz C.S.

Location of the most important  
raw materials of the I.G.  
factory Auschwitz Upper Silesia.

Schmelgas

Low temperature distillation gas.

Kohle

Coal

Strom

Electric current

Kalk

Lime

Salz

Salt.



I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
"K" Commission  
(Kunststoffe - Plastics)

Ludwigshafen on Rhine,  
17 February 1941/C

Director Dr. ter Meer  
Upper-Rhine Works Combine  
Dir. Dr. Wurster

Frankfort on Main  
Ludwigshafen

Main Valley (Maingau) Works Combine  
Professor Dr. Lautenschlaeger

Hoechst

Lower Rhine Works Combine  
Dir. Dr. Kuehne

Leverkusen

Central Germany Works Combine  
Dir. Dr. Buerger

Bitterfeld

Chairman of the Lacko (Loesungs-  
mittelkommission - Solvents  
Committee)  
Dir. Dr. Roth

Hoechst

Chief of the Technical Application  
Department (branch)  
Dir. Dr. Kesseler

Ludwigshafen

Chairman of the Kuko (Kunststoff-  
kommission - Plastics Scientific  
Committee)  
Dir. Dr. Kraenzlein

Hoechst

Chairman of the Lacko (Anwendungstech-  
nische Kommission fuer Lackrohstoffe  
Committee for the Industrial Application  
of raw materials for paints and varnishes)  
Dr. Jordan  
Dir. Weber-Andreas

Ludwigshafen  
Frankfort on Main

To the members of the "K" Commission:

Dir. Horstmann  
Dir. Bergwardt  
Dir. Dr. Hoffmann  
Dir. Dr. Wulff  
    Dr. Ludwig  
    Dr. Moeller  
    Dr. Schoenburg  
Dir. Dr. Konrad  
    Dr. Kollek

Frankfort on Main  
Frankfort on Main  
Huels  
Schkopau  
Leverkusen  
Hoechst  
Bitterfeld  
Leverkusen  
Ludwigshafen  
Frankfort on Main

Office of the Technical Committee (Tes)

Enclosed we beg to hand you the minutes of  
the 5th Conference of the "K" Commission  
held on 30 January 1941 at Ludwigshafen.

Enclosure: 1

signed: Eisfeld (as deputy)

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL

MINUTES

of the 5th Conference of the

"K" COMMISSION

on 30 January 1941

at Ludwigshafen on Rhine.

I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
Ludwigshafen on Rhine

18 February 1941  
Dr. At/C

Present:	ter Meer	Frankfort on Main
	Roth	Hoechst
	Bachmann	Knipsack
	Weibezahn	Knipsack
	Gorr	Berlin
	Hoyer	Frankfort on Main
	Albrecht	Schkopau
	Wurster	Ludwigshafen
	Reppe	"
	Buelow	"
	Hopff	"
	Roell	"
	Wassermann	"
	Ebel	"
	Teisweiler	"
	Alt	"
	Mach	) part of the time
	Rohde	
	Lorenz	
	Ambros (Chairman)	"
	Horstmann	Frankfort on Main
	Borgwardt	Frankfort on Main
	Hoffmann	Biele
	Julff	Schkopau

Konrad	Leverkusen
Ludwig	"
Moeller	Hoechst
Schoenburg	Bitterfeld
Kollek	Ludwigshafen
Eisfeld (Recorder)	"

.....

2) Buna, Ludwigshafen

a) Planning and plan of site (Consultant: Eisfeld)

In September 1940 the Reich agencies ordered that the annual Buna capacity of 100,000 tons be increased to 150,000 tons. In order to be able to comply with the wishes of the Reich agencies as quickly as possible, I.G. suggested adding a third Buna plant to one of the plants in the West, since any new building in the East would necessarily require a much longer time. The site chosen was Ludwigshafen, where for the first time the Rappe process was now being applied in a large-scale industrial plant with a capacity of 24,000 tons a year.

The advantages of the Rappe process are as follows:

- 1) The quantities of acetylene (and thus of carbide) required amount to practically 1/3 of those required for the 4-step method.
- 2) Plant is already available for producing the required quantity of methanol for the second component, formaldehyde.
- 3) The construction of a large-scale industrial plant for this process will lay the foundations for a promising branch of chemistry capable of expansion.

.....

Buna IV

The consent of the Reich agencies for the Buna plant at Ludwigshafen

hafen was given on condition that plans were completed to construct another Buna plant in Silesia. The local conditions of the sites at Rattwitz, Groschowitz near Oppeln and Eilichenhof near Gogolin, were investigated, but in every case no coal was found in the neighbourhood. Auschwitz offers the most favorable conditions. It is situated at the confluence of the rivers Vistula, Sola and Przemsza in former Austrian Upper Silesia.

There are also several square kilometres of high-lying land. Coal can be obtained from the Paersten pits 18 kilometres away, power from Lenzisk (30 km.), lime from Kressendorf (25 km.), coke from Karwin (69 km.), benzene from Kattowitz (31 km.), and methanol from Heydebreck (95 km.), rock-salt from Wieliczka (73 km.). Kressendorf and Wieliczka, however, are situated in the Government General.

Much more difficult is the manpower situation. For the procurement of manpower it will be necessary to contact the Reich Commissioner for the Consolidation of Germanism. Also substantial funds will be required for the building of settlements. x)

.....

- x) An inspection of the Auschwitz site was made from 1 to 4 February. This confirmed the suppositions in every respect. At a conference with the RWA (Reichsstelle fuer Wirtschafts-ausbau - Reich Office for Industrial Extension) and RWM (Reich Ministry of Economics) in Berlin Auschwitz was chosen as the site for the Buna plant IV, and I.G. was ordered to start the planning work.

.....

I herewith certify the conformity of this photostatic copy, consisting of 22 pages, with the original of the minutes of the 5th Conference of the "K" Commission (including cover sheet and distribution list).

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 19 December 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
(Dr. Wolfgang Alt)  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the above excerpt is herewith certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 6 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



A F F I D A V I T .

I, Wolfgang ALT, Dr. Ing. of Chemistry, residing in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, Bunsenstrasse 4, after having been warned that I render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit, declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be produced in evidence before the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

On 15 February 1935, I entered the employ of the former I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft in the Works in Ludwigshafen/Rhein, as a chemist and, since the beginning of 1941, I have worked in the Technical Directorate of the Works in Ludwigshafen. I was present at the meeting of the Committee K (plastics) in Ludwigshafen, on 30 January 1941, when this Committee decided to suggest Auschwitz to the competent Reich agencies as the location for the Buna Works which were to be constructed. I recall precisely the details of this committee meeting, because it was the first one in which I took part and because I contributed to the drafting of the official record of this meeting, which was distributed by Dr. Bisfold and shows my dictation initials.

From previous discussions and from the meeting of Committee K, I am aware of the following events leading to the establishment of the plant in Auschwitz. In connection with the permit for the establishment of a Buna plant in Ludwigshafen, the Government Agencies in Berlin demanded the construction of additional (fourth) Buna plant in the Eastern area, which was safe from air attacks. Eastern localities under discussion were originally Rattwitz near Breslau, where preliminary work for the construction of a Buna plant had once been started in 1940, Grosschowitz near Opatowitz and Eichenhof near Gogolin. Detailed investigations showed that all these locations were too far away from the coal basin and it was of decisive importance for the profitability of the Works to have the plant located as near as possible to the Upper-Silesian coal. After this point had been clarified, investigations made especially by construction manager Sante, in Ludwigshafen, with the aid of available maps of the Upper-Silesian coal area, disclosed the fact that the technical requirements for the construction of a new plant, particularly the decisively important water conditions, could only be fulfilled favorable

in the area south of Kattowitz. Of the 3 locations under discussion, namely

Location I, near Dziatkowitz,  
Location II, near Gross-Cheln,  
Location III, near Auschwitz,

Auschwitz proved the most favorable, as was ascertained by Oberingenieur Faust on an inspection tour conducted in the middle of January 1941, by order of Dr. Ambros and Construction Manager Santo. Oberingenieur Faust telephoned the results of his inspection tour to Construction Manager Santo shortly before the meeting of Committee K on 30 January; Construction Manager Santo made a file memorandum of Oberingenieur Faust's telephone report and this file memorandum served as basis for the decision of Committee K on 30 January to suggest the Auschwitz location to the Berlin central agencies for the establishment of the new works.

I attach to this affidavit a photostatic copy of the official record covering the meeting of Committee K on 30 January 1941 and declare explicitly that this copy is a complete and correct reproduction of the original. Moreover, I declare that the statements made in this record concerning the selection of the Auschwitz location correctly reproduce the result of the discussions of Committee K. I can state with all certainty that the existence of the Concentration Camp Auschwitz did not play any part whatsoever when the project Auschwitz was discussed in the meeting of Committee K on 30 January 1941. The concentration camp was not even mentioned. Neither I nor, I am sure, the other members of the Committee were aware of the existence of the concentration camp, when the project of Auschwitz was discussed. The labor question was discussed and in this connection it was only mentioned that the local population should be induced to work at the building site and, that in addition, workers should be transferred from the old Polish territory to the building site. Nothing was known of the existence of the concentration camp and, therefore, nobody or course thought of any allocation of concentration camp prisoners when the decision was made in favor of Auschwitz.

On page 9 of the record, the result of the committee meeting concerning the Auschwitz Project is stated as follows:

"Buna IV:

The approval of the Reich agencies for the Buna plant in Ludwigshafen was granted on condition that the construction of an additional Buna plant should be prepared in Silesia. The local conditions were investigated in Kattowitz, Groschowitz near Oppeln, and Mollathof

near Gogolin, all of which, however, were too far away from the coal area. Auschwitz which was located in the formerly Austrian Upper Silesia at the junction of the Vistula, Sola and Przemska offered the best conditions.

A level site is available, located above the high water mark, measuring a few square km. Coal can be obtained from the Puerstengrube at a distance of 18 km, outside power from Laisk (30 km), lime from Kressendorf (25 km), coke from Karwin (69 km), benzene from Kattowitz (31 km), methanol from Heydebreck (95 km) and common salt from Wieliczka (73 km). However, Kressendorf and Wieliczka are located in the Government General.

The manpower situation is less favorable. In order to procure labor, it will be necessary to establish close connection with the Reich Commissioner for the Strengthening of German Folkdom (Befestigung des deutschen Volkstums). Large investments will also be necessary for the construction of settlements."

As can be seen from the heading of the record, it was drawn up as late as 18 February 1941. For that reason, a footnote was made on page 10 to the contents of the record quoted above, referring to Burn IV:

"During the period from 1 February to 4 February, the Auschwitz site was inspected and the previous assumptions were confirmed in all points. In a conference in Berlin with the Reich Office for Economic Development (RWA) and the Reich Ministry for Economy (RM), Auschwitz was fixed as the location for Buna plant IV and I.G. received the order to take up the planning work."

This footnote in the record of 18 February 1941 made it clear that the local inspection carried out by Dr. Labros, Construction Manager Santo, Oberingenieur Biedenkepf and Dr. Diefeld, from 1 to 4 February, confirmed the existence of the technical prerequisites for a suitable location, which were the basis for the decision of the Committee in the meeting on 30 January 1941. It also confirms that thereupon the responsible Berlin agencies (the Reich Office for Economic Development and the Reich Ministry for Economy) agreed to the location of the plant and instructed the I.G. to take up the planning work.

To summarize, I am, therefore, able to confirm that the existence of the Auschwitz Concentration Camp and the

possible allocation of concentration camp prisoners as workers for the building site did not play the slightest part whatsoever in the selection of the plant location, because, as stated above, the existence of the Auschwitz Concentration Camp was entirely unknown when the decision was reached.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 18 July 1947.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT

The above signature of Dr. Ing. of Chemistry Wolfgang Alt, residing in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler, attorney at law, residing in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, which is hereby certified and attested by me.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 18 July 1947.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang HEINTZELER  
Attorney at Law

The correctness and completeness of above copy are hereby certified.

Munich, 30 December 1947.

Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney at Law.



AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Walter REPP, resident at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Woehlerstrasse 24a, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false statement. I herewith declare under oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice at Nurnberg, Germany.

On 16 March 1921 I started work as a chemist in the main laboratory of the Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, later on called the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft. From 1923 on I worked in the Indigo Laboratory of this plant, and from 1924 until 1934 as laboratory chemist in the Solvents Laboratory and as plant-chemist in the Indigo Department. From 1934 until 1937 I was in charge of the extension of the 2K-laboratory (2 - intermediates, K - plastics). On 1 January 1938 I took over the management of the main laboratory at Ludwigshafen/Rhine.

As expert on the Buna synthesis I was invited by the K-Committee (plastics) of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft to attend their fifth meeting held on 30 January 1941 at Ludwigshafen/Rhine. On this occasion the Committee passed a resolution suggesting Auschwitz to the government authorities in Berlin for the new Buna plant to be set up in the Upper-Silesian district. I am acquainted with the official minutes of this meeting, which are dated 18 February 1941, and bear the reference Dr.St/C. I herewith confirm that the minute concerning the decision to choose Auschwitz for the new Buna-Plant, contained on page 9 of the minutes of the meeting of the Committee, is correct and that the Committee did make this decision. Furthermore, I confirm that when, during the Committee meeting, the choice of Auschwitz was under discussion, no mention whatsoever was made of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz and the possible utilization of prisoners from this camp for building the new plant. I can even state that I myself, and I believe I can say the same for the others present at the meeting, did not know of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz at the time of the meeting on 30 January 1941.

What really motivated the resolution of the Committee suggesting Auschwitz to the authorities in Berlin, was the fact that previous investigations had disclosed that Auschwitz offered the most favorable conditions as regards terrain and technical requirements for the setting up of the new plant; the Committee was especially informed of this by Chief Engineer Faust, who



had inspected the building site shortly before the Committee meeting and had reported his very favorable findings to Building Director Santo over the telephone.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 8 October 1947

Signed: Dr. Walter Reupe

I, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, herewith certify that the above signature of Dr. Walter REUPE, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, was made before me in Ludwigshafen/Rhine.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 8 October 1947

Signed: Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a true and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 5 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Wolfgang BUEHLER, resident at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Weehlerstrasse 3, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false statement. I herewith declare under oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

On 1 November 1924 I joined the Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, later on called the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft. In 1940 I became manager of the LK-department (manufacturing department for solvents and plastics) at the Ludwigshafen/Rhine plant.

At the invitation of the K-Committee (plastics) of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft I attended their fifth meeting on 30 January 1941 at Ludwigshafen/Rhine. On this occasion the Committee passed a resolution suggesting Auschwitz to the government authorities in Berlin for the new Buna plant to be set up in the Upper-Silesian district. I am acquainted with the official minutes of this meeting, which are dated 13 February 1941, and bear the reference Dr.At/C. I herewith confirm that the minute concerning the decision to choose Auschwitz for the new Buna-Plant, contained on page 9 of the minutes of the meeting of the Committee, is correct and that the Committee did make this decision. Furthermore, I confirm that when, during the Committee meeting, the choice of Auschwitz was under discussion, no mention whatsoever was made of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz and the possible utilization of prisoners from this camp for building the new plant. I can even state that I myself, and I believe I can say the same for the others present at the meeting, did not know of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz at the time of the meeting on 30 January 1941.

What really motivated the resolution of the Committee suggesting Auschwitz to the authorities in Berlin, was the fact that previous investigations had disclosed that Auschwitz offered the most favorable conditions as regards terrain and technical requirements for the setting up of the new plant; the Committee was especially informed of this by Chief Engineer Faust, who had inspected the building site shortly before the Committee meeting and had reported his very favorable

findings to Building Director Santo over the telephone.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 30 July 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Buelow

I, Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, herewith certify that the above signature of Dr. Wolfgang Buelow, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, was made before me.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 30 July 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler  
Attorney at Law

I herewith certify that the above  
is a true and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 6 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Heinrich Hopff, resident at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Moehlerstrasse 14, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false statement. I herewith declare under oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

On 1 April 1921 I joined the main laboratory of the Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, later on called the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, and was employed as a chemist until the end of 1937. At the beginning of 1938 I became manager of the ZK-laboratory (Z - intermediates, K - plastics) of the Ludwigshafen plant.

At the invitation of the K-Committee (plastics) of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft I attended their fifth meeting on 30 January 1941 at Ludwigshafen/Rhine. On this occasion the Committee passed a resolution suggesting Auschwitz to the government authorities in Berlin for the new Buna plant to be set up in the Upper-Silesian district. I am acquainted with the official minutes of this meeting, which are dated 18 February 1941, and bear the reference Dr. At/C. I herewith confirm that the minute concerning the decision to choose Auschwitz for the new Buna-Plant, contained on page 9 of the minutes of the meeting of the Committee, is correct and that the Committee did make this decision. Furthermore, I confirm that when, during the Committee meeting, the choice of Auschwitz was under discussion, no mention whatsoever was made of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz and the possible utilization of prisoners from this camp for building the new plant. I can even state that I myself, and I believe I can say the same for the others present at the meeting, did not know of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz at the time of the meeting on 30 January 1941.

What really motivated the resolution of the Committee suggesting Auschwitz to the authorities in Berlin, was the fact that previous investigations had disclosed that Auschwitz offered the most favorable conditions as regards terrain and technical requirements for the setting up of the new plant; the Committee was especially informed of this by Chief Engineer Faust, who had inspected the building site shortly before the Committee meeting and had reported his very favorable findings to Building Director Santo over the telephone.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 7 October 1947

signed: Dr. Heinrich Hopff

I, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, herewith certify that the above signature of Dr. Heinrich HOPFF, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, was made before me in Ludwigshafen/Rhine.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 7 October 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 5 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel



AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Georg NIEMANN, resident at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, IV. Gartenweg 9a, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false statement. I herewith declare under oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice at Nurnberg, Germany.

On 1 May 1925 I joined the Badische Asilin- und Soda-Fabrik at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, later on called the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, and have been continuously employed there ever since.

At the invitation of the Committee K (plastics) of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft I attended their fifth meeting on 30 January 1941 at Ludwigshafen/Rhine. On this occasion the Committee passed a resolution suggesting Auschwitz to the government authorities in Berlin for the new Buna plant to be set up in the Upper-Silesian district. I am acquainted with the official minutes of this meeting, which are dated 1<sup>st</sup> February 1941, and bear the reference Dr.At/G. I herewith confirm that the minute concerning the decision to choose Auschwitz for the new Buna-Plant, contained on page 9 of the minutes of the meeting of the Committee, is correct and that the Committee did make this decision. Furthermore, I confirm that when, during the Committee meeting, the choice of Auschwitz was under discussion, no mention whatsoever was made of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz and the possible utilization of prisoners from this camp for building the new plant. I can even state that I myself, and I believe I can say the same for the others present at the meeting, did not know of the existence of a concentration camp at Auschwitz at the time of the meeting on 30 January 1941.

What really motivated the resolution of the Committee suggesting Auschwitz to the authorities in Berlin, was the fact that previous investigations had disclosed that Auschwitz offered the most favorable conditions as regards terrain and technical requirements for the setting up of the new plant; the Committee was especially informed of this by Chief Engineer Faust, who had inspected the building site shortly before the Committee meeting and had reported his very favorable findings to Building Director Santo over the telephone.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 30 July 1947

signed: Dr. Georg Niemann

I, Dr. Wolfgang HEINTZELER, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, herewith certify that the above signature of Dr. Georg NIEMANN, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, was made before me.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 30 July 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler  
Attorney at Law

I herewith certify that the above  
is a true and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 6 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Affidavit.

I, Leo SKRZIPCZYK, residing in Regensburg, Flato Wild-Strasse 3, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I herewith declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to Military Tribunal 6 in Nuernberg, Germany.

I am a political economist by profession and took my diploma at Breslau University in March 1940. After I had passed my examination I took a post with the Regional Planning Association Silesia, District Office Kattowitz. I was a specialist there. My immediate superior was Diplomingenieur FROESE.

The District Planning Office in Kattowitz was subordinate to the Regional Planning Board in Breslau. The same organizations were in existence for the whole Reich.

The introduction of these Planning Offices goes back to Associations of Common Interests which were founded in about 1926 to support the interests of agriculture, to make the necessary adjustment in the case of conflicting interests with regard to the utilization of a tract of land. The District Planning Office in Kattowitz worked in accordance with the aims described above.

The tasks of the Regional Planning Board were known to industry, as it belonged to the Regional Planning Association.

It was therefore a matter of course that we participated in all the area planning to be carried out in our district.

I therefore also knew that my office, the Kattowitz District Planning Office, was consulted as to the choice of a site for a new IG works which was to be built. As far as I can remember, there was a considerable choice of sites at the time, and they were also inspected by a committee. The IG's choice was Auschwitz, since in view of the high water requirements for the new works this area at the confluence of the Vistula, Sola and Przemsza seemed particularly suitable. From the point of view of the Kattowitz District Office there were objections, since other interests were represented as regards this area and it was particularly fine agricultural land. After consultation with all the other offices interested in the area, as prescribed for all planning, a decision was eventually made in the IG's favor. I do not know, however, whether the proceedings were actually carried out by the Kattowitz District Office or by the Regional Planning Board Breslau.

On the other hand I do know that amongst the offices consulted were, for instance, the State Farm Association, Reich railroad, Water Board, District Magistrate, Agricultural Board, Regional Labor Office, Chambers of Industry and Commerce etc.

As far as I remember, not only was the town of Auschwitz to be expanded for the accommodation of the laborers and employees for the new IG works, but new blocks of flats for several thousand people were to be built in a place (Imielin?) about 10 km north-west of Auschwitz. I do not remember the IG's taking any interest in the employment of Concentration Camp inmates, especially as the expansion of Auschwitz and of the smaller place mentioned was planned for the accommodation of German workers. I cannot say anything about the expansion of the IG works itself and the allocation of labor in the works, since the work of the Regional Planning Board ended with the selection of the site.

I did not belong to the NSDAP and I am now chief of the District Planning Office Niederbayern/Oberpfalz with the Regional Government in Regensburg, an office which is subordinate to the Regional Planning Board in the Bavarian State Ministry of Economics.

Regensburg, 10 January 1948

signed: Leo SERZIPCZYK

I herewith certify the above signature of Leo SERZIPCZYK, who was questioned by me.

signed: HOFFMANN  
Rechtsanwalt

Regensburg, 10 January 1948

The above copy/herewith certified complete and correct.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 15 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

D.188. Dr. EISENBERG

To the

Amtskommissar and  
Mayor of the town of Auschwitz.

Auschwitz  
(Upper Silesia)

7 February 1941

TA/Bau

17 February 1941 S/B.

Industrial Project.

In answer to your question referred to above, we are able to state that the basic decision<sup>was</sup> reached in the past week by the Reich Office for Industrial Expansion and the Reich Ministry of Economics for the erection of a Buna plant in the Auschwitz area.

We shall now investigate the essential data still needed for the planning, especially rail connections etc., so that we can make a final ground plan for the site of the works.

Since the commencement and execution of the construction work depends entirely on the progress of the planning, for which a lot of problems remain to be solved, nothing can as yet be said as to the period needed for the actual work. We imagine, however, that by the Spring a small advance guard of our construction management will move to Auschwitz to start on the surveying work etc. It would therefore be expedient to make available one or two houses suitable for offices with altogether 10 - 12 rooms for the accommodation of the construction management. We should for the time being, moreover, require suitable quarters for about 5 - 6 engineers and administrative staff who would naturally be sent to Auschwitz without their families.

We should be grateful if you would give some thought to the accommodation of the construction management in offices and living quarters now and would send us your suggestions. Our Engineer MURR will probably come to Auschwitz this week to discuss these and other questions with you.

The solution of the other problems - in particular the construction plan for the settlements - will then be dealt with in the closest cooperation with the Regional Planning Board, District Planning Officer FROESE and yourself.

IG FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESellschaft

signed: EYMANN signed: pps SAITO



Affidavit

I, Baudirektor Camill SANTO, resident in Ludwigshafen a. Rh., Hanserstrasse 5a, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I herewith declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal, Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

I declare that this document consisting of 2 pages is a true photo copy of the original copy of the letter composed and signed by me, dated 17 February 1941, to the Amtskommissar and Mayor of Auschwitz.

I have also appended my signature and today's date, on the back of the first sheet.

Ludwigshafen, a.Rh., 3 January 1948

signed: Camill SANTO

I herewith certify and witness the above signature of Baudirektor Camill SANTO, resident in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Hanserstrasse 5a, made before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, resident in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Sonnenstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The above copy is herewith certified complete and correct.

Ludwigshafen, 19 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The Gauleiter and Oberpräsident of Upper Silesia.

Kattowitz, 5 March 1941  
(Copy) Auschwitz (Handwritten)

To  
Dr. Otto A M B R O S  
Member of the Vorstand of the  
IG Farbenindustrie AG.

Copy Dir. Dr. ter MEER  
Dir. Dr. BUEFELSCH  
Obering. SANTO  
D.I. DUERRFELD No  
Obering. FAUST  
Dr. SISFELD

Ludwigshafen a. Rh.

Dear Herr AMBROS,

First of all, I should like to thank you for your letter of 27 February 1941, in which you let me know that a tract of land to the east of Auschwitz has now been decided on as the site of the next Buna works.

I have learned of these plans in the meanwhile and welcome their realization most heartily. In my capacity as Commissioner for the Consolidation of German Folkdom, I have decided that Poles who live in Auschwitz and its vicinity and who might come under consideration as workers for the Buna works will not be evacuated for the present in the process of our current resettlement. I think that this precaution will ensure that especially during the construction period enough Polish workers will be able to be made available.

I realize that in the course of time and with as little delay as possible these Polish workers will have to be replaced by German workers, since only in this way will the new works make the desired contribution to the Germanizing of the area round Auschwitz. Naturally, I shall always lend my fullest support to the solution of this problem.

I have also heard meanwhile from Herr FALKENHAGEN that the IG Farbenindustrie has established contact with the Pless Mining Group, with the object of ensuring the supplies of coal required for the new Buna works. At his very first talk several weeks ago I told President FALKENHAGEN that I was in complete sympathy with these efforts of the IG Farbenindustrie.

I should be glad if you would call on me on your next visit to Upper Silesia.

Heil Hitler !

signed: BRACHT.

Affidavit.

I, Baudirektor Camill SANTO, resident of Ludwigshafen a. Rh., Hanserstrasse 5a, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment for making a false Affidavit. I herewith declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal, Palace of Justice, Nurnberg, Germany.

I declare that this document consisting of 3 sheets is the original copy of the letter addressed by the Gauleiter and Oberpraesident of Upper Silesia BRACHT to Dr. AMBROS on 6 March 1941.

I have also appended my signature and today's date to the first sheet of this original copy.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Camill SANTO

I herewith certify and witness the above signature of Baudirektor Camill SANTO, resident in Ludwigshafen a. Rh., Hanserstrasse 5a, made before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, resident in Ludwigshafen a. Rh., Bunsenstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 3 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The above copy is herewith certified complete and correct.

Ludwigshafen, 19 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Technical Department

Louna Works

for the attention of Dr. Hoepke

- Building Section -

Technical Department/Building

15 March 1941 S/B.

Surveying work for the B-4 Plant at Auschwitz.

First of all we wish to thank you for your promise to assign to us an engineer-surveyor for a period of 4 to 6 weeks.

Further to yesterday's conversation over the telephone between Santo and Dr. Hoepke, we beg to advise you of the following :

At the beginning of this week we sent engineer-surveyor Bauer from the Heydebreck Plant, together with surveyor Zeidler, from the Ludwigshafen Plant, to Auschwitz, with the order to make on the site :

- a) 4 cross-sections.
- b) 2 smaller cross-sections on the site which is likely to be chosen for the staff camp,
- c) 1 longitudinal section of the roads, as well as of railroad track passing the grounds on the northern side.

These surveys are for the purpose of establishing at least the roughest details for ascertaining the conditions as regards elevation and for drawing up a factory plan. This is the first thing that is needed to enable us to solicit tenders for the excavation work.

We are also negotiating with the Special Aerial Photograph Section of the Reich Air Ministry in Berlin, and intend having pictures taken from the air and having them clearly reproduced with the aid of the Zeiss-instrument, to be able thus to plan the whole area.

We are pleased to hear that you are placing a technician at our disposal, the more so since this will enable the three men working there, to produce within the next fortnight not only the 4 cross-sections required, but also to make a lay-out of the entire network of elevations for the grounds in question. As the engineer surveyor Bauer is urgently needed at Heydebreck for the panel construction work (Priority class O), and therefore is able to work at Auschwitz for only 12 days, at the very utmost, we should be grateful if you would immediately send your engineer-surveyor, Herr Mueller, to Auschwitz. Since we have not sufficient instruments at our disposal at Auschwitz and there are no firms from whom we might borrow

then, Herr Mueller should take with him to Auschwitz as passenger goods

- 1 Levelling instrument
- 1 Theodolite
- 1 Levelling is the
- a sufficient number of levelling rods,
- measuring band, etc.

We have made arrangements with the Burgomaster of Auschwitz, Herr Gutschke, who at the same time is commissioner in charge, to make available from among the local Jews and/or Poles suitable people to help in the surveying work. We cannot yet tell to what extent this will be possible, since we have not yet received a report from Herr Bauer. If, therefore, you could get an assistant who has some knowledge of surveying work to accompany your engineer-surveyor, this would be much welcomed by us, and we would strongly advise you to do so.

As regards the actual journey, may we give you the following hints:

Your engineer-surveyor, Herr Mueller, as well as the surveyor's assistant accompanying him must obtain from the police authorities at the place where he is domiciled a pass for crossing the frontier of the Eastern Territories. For this purpose it is necessary to have a passport or an official identity-card, and, best of all, a letter from the firm stating that the person in question is being sent to the Eastern Territories for carrying out important work. If your Herr Mueller possesses such an identity-card, he should travel to Auschwitz and arrange his journey in such a way that he will arrive in the evening at Kattowitz and stay there overnight. We recommend the Eichendorff Hotel in the Eichendorffstrasse in the neighbourhood of the railway station. But it is necessary to reserve a room beforehand, because many people stop at Kattowitz. The following morning Herr Mueller should proceed to Auschwitz by railroad. It would then be the best for Herr Mueller to call at the Burgomaster's office, where he will meet Herr Bauer, or find a note giving the place where they will meet. We might possibly be able to call for your engineer-surveyor at his hotel, if by that time we have a car at Auschwitz. In this case our temporary chief in charge of the construction work, engineer Murr, would fetch your Herr Mueller from Kattowitz. It would be well if your Herr Mueller could send a telegram to Herr



Bauer through Burgomaster Gutsche, advising him of the date of his arrival. Herr Bauer will then acquaint Herr Mueller with the task to be carried out by him. Presumably our Senior Engineer Santo will also be at Auschwitz from 24 to 28 March 1941, so that essential questions might eventually be discussed there.

We wish to make it clear that these arrangements may possibly have to be changed, that is, if we can let your men at Leuna know in time of any better arrangements as regards time and place of meeting or fetching him, and thus avoid all risk of any misunderstanding. If this should be the case we have instructed our engineer Bauer to inform Herr Mueller by telegram.

We would ask you to arrange, if possible, for the immediate departure of your Herr Mueller, as the actual work cannot be proceeded with until the surveying work is carried out. Unfortunately there are no ordnance survey maps or plans on this area, so that we have to rely on the photographs.

Please charge your man's travelling expenses and work to account 64175.

signed : Santo

Copies to :  
Herr Murr, Herr Bauer.

End of Copy.

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Baudirektor (Director of construction work) Camill Santo, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wenzelstrasse 5a, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that this document, consisting of 3 pages, and which was signed by me, is the copy of my letter of 15 March 1941 addressed to Dr. Hoepke of Leuna and which was left in my files.

O/-Document No. 321

I also have marked the first two pages of this document with my signature and to-day's date.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 3 January 1948

signed : Camill Santo

I herewith certify that the above signature of Herr Baudirektor Camill Santo, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Mensenstrasse 5a, was made before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Ronsenstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 3 January 1948

signed : Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is herewith certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 16 January 1948

signed : Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel.

The Commissioner for the  
Four Year Plan

OA-Document No. 322  
12. March 41 V. IV.  
Berlin, 9, 8 March 1941  
Saarlandstrasse 128

The Plenipotentiary General  
for Special Questions of  
Chemical Production

Copy to Dr. Bisfold,  
Chief Engineer Santo  
(handwritten note)

Reference: Labor Allocation Dr. Fl./Hu.  
Journal No. 28474/41  
Ref: - - - - -  
Subject: Labor Allocation for the Buna Project  
at Auschwitz - - - - -

To I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
Ludwigshafen - -

With reference to my teletype message of 21 February 1941  
addressed to Direktor WURSTER, in which I informed you that  
we would be able to allocate 2000 or more workers to the Buna  
project from the end of March onwards, I request you to let  
me know approximately how many skilled and unskilled building  
workers, and later, how many skilled and unskilled metal workers  
you need for Auschwitz for the following building periods:

Required:

- |    |                  |                              |   |
|----|------------------|------------------------------|---|
| 1) | during the first | sixth of the building period | (handwritten<br>entries, please<br>see below) |
| 2) | "                | " second " " " " "           |   |
| 3) | "                | " third " " " " "            |   |
| 4) | "                | " fourth " " " " "           |   |
| 5) | "                | " fifth " " " " "            |   |
| 6) | "                | " sixth " " " " "            |   |

To Dr. Mach on 17 March 1941.

I realize of course that you can give me only approximate  
estimates.

In consideration of the present labor situation it is, however,  
essential that I receive at least approximate figures so that I can  
make my arrangements, especially since the workers in question are  
foreigners, mainly Italians as you know.

Please also let me know whether I might put down March as the  
starting date, that is, if you have the manpower available.

By order signed: Baasch

	Foreign workers (Fremdarbeiter)	Indigenous workers (Heimische Arbeiter)
--	------------------------------------	--

1)	800	320	480
2)	2000	800	1200
3)	2000	800	1200
4)	4000	1600	2400
5)	5000	2200	2800
6)	3000	1400	1600

of whom 40% are skilled and 60% are unskilled  
workers.

Affidavit.

I, Baudirektor Carl SANTI, living at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Hanserstrasse 5a, have been duly warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that this document is my valid file copy of the Gobeck's letter, dated 8 March 1941, addressed to the I.G. at Ludwigshafen.

The handwritten notes were made by me personally at the time. They represent the estimated numbers of skilled and unskilled workers required for the building sector. As it is also shown by handwritten notes on the letter, these figures were passed on to Dr. Mach on 17 March 1941, so that he would be able to insert them into his answer to the Gobeck's.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 3 January 1948

signed: Carl SANTI.

I herewith certify and witness that the above signature of Baudirektor Carl SANTI, living at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Hanserstrasse 5a, was made before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, living at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Buschenstrasse 4. Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 3 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

The above copy is herewith certified true and correct.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 15 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

To the  
Reich Office for Economic Development  
Attention: Herr Haasch

BERLIN W 9  
Saarlandstrasse 128

Assignment of Labor Dr. Fl/Ma 8 March 1941 TB/Bu-Mch/As 18 March 41 I  
Diary No. 28474/41

Assignment of Labor for the Auschwitz Buna Project.

In so far as we can at present judge of the future development of the Auschwitz Buna plant construction, we estimate that the following workers will be required:

Sixths of Construction Period	I	II	III	IV	V	VI
Construction workers, skilled	320	900	800	1600	2200	1400
Construction workers, unskilled	480	1200	1200	2400	2800	1600
Metal workers, skilled	30	120	250	500	800	1000
Metal workers, unskilled	20	80	150	300	600	700
	850	2200	2400	4800	6400	4700

Of course we cannot assume any guarantee for keeping to these figures as the demand in labor partly depends on circumstances over which we have little or no control, such as the supply of construction material, cement, stones, apparatus, furnishing of cars by the Reich Bahn, freight, etc. Moreover, the figures apply only if a plant for the exclusive production of Buna is set up. They increase as soon as plants for other products are to be constructed within the framework of this plant.

Inasmuch as at present we have not yet received any information from the Reichsbahn Directorate at Oppeln as to which is the appropriate office at the Reich Traffic Ministry for decision on the railroad junction line, but as the question of establishing a connection between the works and the Reich Bahn network is of decisive importance for plotting the lay-out plan, we are not in a position to assign any large number of workers before the middle of April. The setting-up of workers' hutments will be started very shortly, but we should like you to enter the middle of April as the date on which the work begins.

I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

signed: Ambros

signed: Buelow

cc: Dir. Dr. Ambros  
Dr. Einfeld  
Oberingenieur Santo  
Dr. Mach



AFFIDAVIT

I, Oberingenieur Dr. Erich MACH, residing at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Engelhornstrasse 3, have first been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented in evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Suernbert, Germany.

I declare that this document, consisting of two pages, is an original carbon copy of the letter, composed by me and signed by Dr. Ambros and Dr. Puelow, which was addressed to the Plenipotentiary General for Chemistry (Gabechem)/Reich Office for Economic Development (RWA) and was dated 18 March 1941.

I have also affixed my signature and today's date to the first page of this document.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 2 January 1948

signed: Dr. Erich Mach

The above signature of Herr Oberingenieur Dr. Erich Mach, residing at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Engelhornstrasse 3, was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, residing at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Sonnenstrasse 4, which is herewith certified and attested by me.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 2 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the above copy are herewith certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 15 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

D. 1, 57, 120

Registered 1

To the  
Plenipotentiary General for Special  
Questions of Chemical Production  
Attention: Herr Dr. Eckell,

BERLIN W 9  
Saarlandstrasse 128

TA/Muc/H. 17 March 1941 Hr.

Subject: Auschwitz

In order that work may be started on the Buna works to be set up with the greatest expedition possible in the Auschwitz area, a large number of construction workers and laborers will have to be accommodated in a hutment camp in the very near future inasmuch as in the neighboring residential area there are no facilities available for the immediate housing of this construction personnel. We therefore ask you to grant permission for the erection of a residential camp for the accommodation of approximately 2,300 men. There are four living hutments, one wash-hut and one latrine at our disposal for a total of 288 men from the former Rattwitz building project. The hutments at Rattwitz are to be removed from there and are to be set up at Auschwitz, so that the following new items would have to be furnished:

28 Labor Service hutments, of which there are  
4 wash-huts, type HL XVIII/3  
3 latrines " " Xa  
1 canteen hutment, and  
6 office hutments

For these hutments which are still to be provided, the following is required:

2,566 cu. sawn timber  
140 " round timber  
60 tons of iron and steel  
3,750 kg. of zinc

In future, the residential camp will have to be further enlarged according to requirements. We shall in each instance submit the appropriate applications in time.

Heil Hitler !

I.G. FARBEWINDUSTRIE ANTIENGESELLSCHAFT

signed: Santo

signed: (? illegible)

Enclosure: 1 Todt questionnaire

AFFIDAVIT

I, Diplom-Ingenieur Hans NOLZE, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Schuckertstrasse 39, have first been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented in evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare on oath that this document, consisting of two pages, is an original copy of the letter composed by me and signed on the left by Baudirektor Santo, dated 17 March 1941, addressed to the Plenipotentiary General for Special Questions of Chemical Production, Attention: Herr Dr. Eckell, Berlin 79.

I have affixed my signature and today's date on the first page of this document.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 15 January 1948

signed: Hans Nolze

The above signature of Herr Diplom-Ingenieur Hans NOLZE, residing at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Schuckertstrasse 39, was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Punsenstrasse 4, which is hereby certified and attested by me.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 15 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is hereby certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 19 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

On the Application for the Granting of a  
Building Permit for the Buna Works, Auschwitz.

A. General Particulars: -

1. Name and Description of the Plant: Buna Works Auschwitz  
Code name: Plant B IV  
Exact address: I.G. Farbenindustrie  
Aktiengesellschaft  
Works Auschwitz  
Upper Silesia
- Present Telephone: Auschwitz 36
2. Locality of Plant: Land between Auschwitz,  
Dwory and Monowice
3. Construction owners: I.G. Farbenindustrie  
Aktiengesellschaft  
Frankfurt a/Main
4. In charge: Dr. Mach, I.G. Ludwigshafen,  
Dr. Duerffeld, Ammonia  
Works, Merseburg.

B. Reasons for the Building Project: -

The Buna Works will be newly erected on hitherto unopened ground. The decisive factors in the choice of the locality were the following:

1. The large, almost level land above high water mark, lying between Auschwitz, Dwory and Monowice;
2. nearness to the Upper Silesian coal centre, which is the more valuable as the coal is important not only as source for power and steam, but also, to an ever increasing extent, as chemical basic substance;
3. Adequate water supply from the Vistula and the Sola, and
4. Favourable position for traffic.

Production of the Plant: -

30,000 tons a year Buna S

about 8,000 tons a year Alcohols (ethyl and butyl alcohols).

Reason :

As the Buna plants hitherto erected cannot cover the expected demand and cannot even be enlarged for a quantity beyond a certain limit, the erection of this fourth Buna plant is urgently necessary.

C. Description of the Process to be used :

1. The same process will be used as in Buna works Schkopau. Lime and coal are melted to carbide in an electric oven, the carbide will be gasified into acetylene, the latter by conversion into acetic aldehyde by addition of water. Acetic aldehyde is converted into acetaldo by effect of alkali and the latter is catalytically hydrated with hydrogen into 1.3 butylene glycol under a pressure of 300 atmospheres. Butadiene is obtained out of the 1.3 butylene glycol by the splitting off of 2 moles of water. Ethylene, which is obtained by the partial hydrogenation of acetylene, is added to benzene for the production of the 2nd polymerisation component, i.e. styrene. The ethyl benzene thus formed is converted into styrene in a catalytic process by the splitting off of hydrogen. The desired final product, Buna, results from the polymerisation of butadiene and styrene (see attached diagram).

2. Basic, auxiliary, final and by-products.

a) Basic products :

150,000 tons a year lime (calcinated) or the corresponding amount of limestone

75,000 tons a year coke (as high temperature coke or 60,000 tons a year low temperature carbonisation coke)

17,000 tons a year anthracite

10,000 tons a year benzene

1,000 tons a year rock salt

b) Auxiliary products :

about 10,000 tons a year various raw materials and chemicals, such as aluminium chloride, emulsifier, sebacic acid, etc.

c) Final and by-products :

30,000 tons a year Buna S

6,500 tons a year ethyl alcohol



about 1,500 tons a year butyl alcohol  
4,000 tons a year various residue oils

D. Extent of the building project :

1. Plant installations to be newly built

- a) Principal plant : Carbide factory  
Carbide gasification plant  
Acetic aldehyde factory  
Alcoholisation plant  
Butylene glycol factory  
Butadiene factory  
Ethylene factory  
Ethyl benzene factory  
Styrene factory  
Buna-S Polymerisation and  
processing plant
- b) Auxiliary plants : Steam and Power works with outside  
electricity connection and power  
distribution  
Gas factory  
Waterworks  
Workshops  
All necessary welfare installations

(the plant divisions erected under b. were used  
jointly by Buna works and synthesis works).

E. Permits.

- 1. The agreement in principle of the Air Gau Command concerned was obtained at a meeting on 7 April 1941 in Kettowitz. The Air Gau Command was at the same time authorised with the representation of the Reich Air Ministry, Inspectorate 13. The details concerning instructions and building will be further discussed verbally with Inspectorate 13 of the Reich Air Ministry with production of lay-out plans, and building designs.
- 2. The Reich Agency for Area Allocation, or the competent Land Planning Community respectively, also declared their agreement in the meeting on 7 April 1941.

- 3) At the said meeting there were also present all the other authorities concerned in the matter of the permit; no objection was raised in principle from any quarter.

F. Dates:

Prospective date for beginning work at the building site:

"	"	"	assembly	May 1941
"	"	"	commencement of operation	Apr 1942
"	"	"	full production	End 1943
"	"	"	completion of all building work	May 1944

G. Requirements for carrying out of the Building Project:

1. Statement of Costs:

a) Total investments	RM 150,000,000.-
b) Proposed Plant costs for technical construction approximately :	RM 50,000,000.-
Apparatus approximately :	RM 100,000,000.-

Of the construction costs, there will prospectively be used up to

30 September 1941	RM 2,000,000.-
1 Oct. 1941 - 31 Mar. 1942	RM 3,000,000.-
1 Apr. 1942 - 30 Sept. 1942	RM 10,000,000.-

c) Financing will be effected out of funds of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft.

2. Materials Requirements:

a) Iron	
Machine iron (W.G)	100,000 tons
Building iron	60,000 "
	<u>160,000 tons</u>

The iron requirements are prospectively divided as follows :

II. Quarter 1941	10,000 tons
III. " 1941	25,000 "

IV. Quarter 1941	35,000 tons
I. " 1942	22,000 "
II. " "	18,000 "
III. " "	15,000 "
IV. " "	12,000 "
I. " 1943	8,000 "
II. " "	5,000 "
III. " "	3,000 "
IV. " "	2,000 "
1944	5,000 "

## b) Non-ferrous metals (including alloy ingredients)

Aluminium	1,250 tons
Lead	850 "
Copper	1,000 "
Zinc	60 "
Tin	30 "
Chromium	110 "
Nickel	40 "
Quicksilver	14 "
Molybdenum	17 "
Magnesium	14 "

## c) Building materials

Cement	70,000 tons
Gravel	500,000 cfm

## d) Bricks 20,000,000

e) Wood	25,000 cbm
Sawn timber	20,000 cbm
Round timber	5,000 cbm

## f) Rubber 50,000 kg

### 3. L a b o r:

Belonging to Firm : Outside.

Building labor	200	5000
Assembly workers	600	1500
Days of work required for building:	1,900 000	from May 1941 to middle of 1944
Assembly work	1,200 000	days from April 1942 to middle of 1944.

### 4. Fuel for construction machinery and transportation

a) Diesel fuel	1000 t
b) Carburettor fuel	300 cubic meters.

### H. Requirements after the plant has commenced production.

#### 1. Electric current requirements of the Buna plant and its auxiliary installations is

75 000 - 95 000 kilowatts.

The whole factory, Buna plant and fuel plant together, will require

120 000 to 145 000 kilowatts.

#### 2. Steam requirement of the Buna plant and its auxiliary installations is

150 - 190 tons per hour,  
(10-13 tons per hour for steam at a pressure of 100 atmospheres; 20-27 tons per hour at 15 atmospheres; 120-150 tons per hour at 2.5 atmospheres).

The whole factory, Buna plant and fuel plant together - allowing for its own steam production by means of waste heat boilers etc. - will require

250 to 350 tons of steam per hour.

In order to meet this demand, a common power plant with an output of about 500 tons of steam per hour, maximum pressure of 100 to 120 atmospheres, is to be built.

From the fuel steam to be provided for the plant

40 000 to 60 000 kilowatts

of contra-flow current can be produced. From the remaining maximal pressure steam

55 000 to 17 000 kilowatts

of condensation current can be produced, so that, with the intended quantity of steam

95 000 to 77 000 kilowatts of electricity

can be produced.

35 000 to 60 000 kilowatts

of outside current must therefore be obtained according to load and season.

### 3. Water requirements.

The Bunk plant requires about 10 000 to 15 000 cubic meters of water per hour or 240 to 260 000 cubic meters of water per day.

The whole plant requires about 28 000 to 40 000 cubic meters of water per hour or 700 000 to 950 000 cubic meters per day.

Of this quantity about 1000 to 1500 cubic meters per hour or 24 000 to 36 000 cubic meters per day are to be supplied from a series of new wells, 6000 to 9000 cubic meters per hour or 140 000 to 220 000 cubic meters per day from the Sala or Vistula, and the remainder, i.e. 21 500 to 29 500 cubic meters per hour or approximately 540 000 to 700 000 cubic meters per day is to be reclaimed through re-cooling systems.

Most of the water taken from the wells and rivers is returned to the Vistula; if it is clean cooling water it is returned direct, otherwise it first goes through sedimentation beds etc. Only a small part, about 300 to 400 cubic meters per hour or 70 000 to 95 000 cubic meters per day is lost by evaporation in the re-cooling towers.

### 4. Fuel gas requirements.

The fuel gas requirement of the Bunk plant is about 1500 to 2000 cubic meters per hour; that of the whole plant 10 000 to 12 000 cubic meters per hour at a thermal value of 2000 caloric units per cubic meter.



Part of this requirement is to be met from the carbide furnace waste gases, part from the excess gas obtained in the synthetic gas production plant and part from special fuel gas generators.

Part of this gas will be used for direct or indirect fueling of catalytic furnaces, part for workshops etc.

5. Coal requirements.

Furnace coal for steam and electricity.

A total of 700 000 tons per year in the form of dust and nut coal from the plant-owned Fuerstengrube.

A pit coal low temperature distillation plant is to be erected, mainly in order to meet the requirement of the fuel gas plant. A part of the low temperature distillation coke is to be delivered to the carbide plant and some is to be used in the production of the hydrogen required in the aldol hydrogenation plant.

The total requirement of coal for the low temperature distillation plant is about 650 000 tons per year. This is to be supplied from the plant-owned Fuerstengrube.

If the Fuerstengrube cannot produce sufficient coal, additional supplies would perhaps have to be obtained in the first few years from some of the neighboring mines.

6. Catalysts.

Total requirement of catalysts is about 600 tons. Most of this will be produced by the plant itself. Main substances: coke, phosphoric acid. For some of the other catalysts small quantities of mercury, nickel and copper are required.

7. Labor.

About 600 employees, 2500 workers, 900 of those being trained, 1600 untrained workers.

Settlements are to be built for 1500 employees and permanent workers.

For the construction period a hatted camp accommodating about 5000 workers is to be built as well.

8. Operational schedule.

The plant will normally operate day and night, three shifts being provided for this purpose.

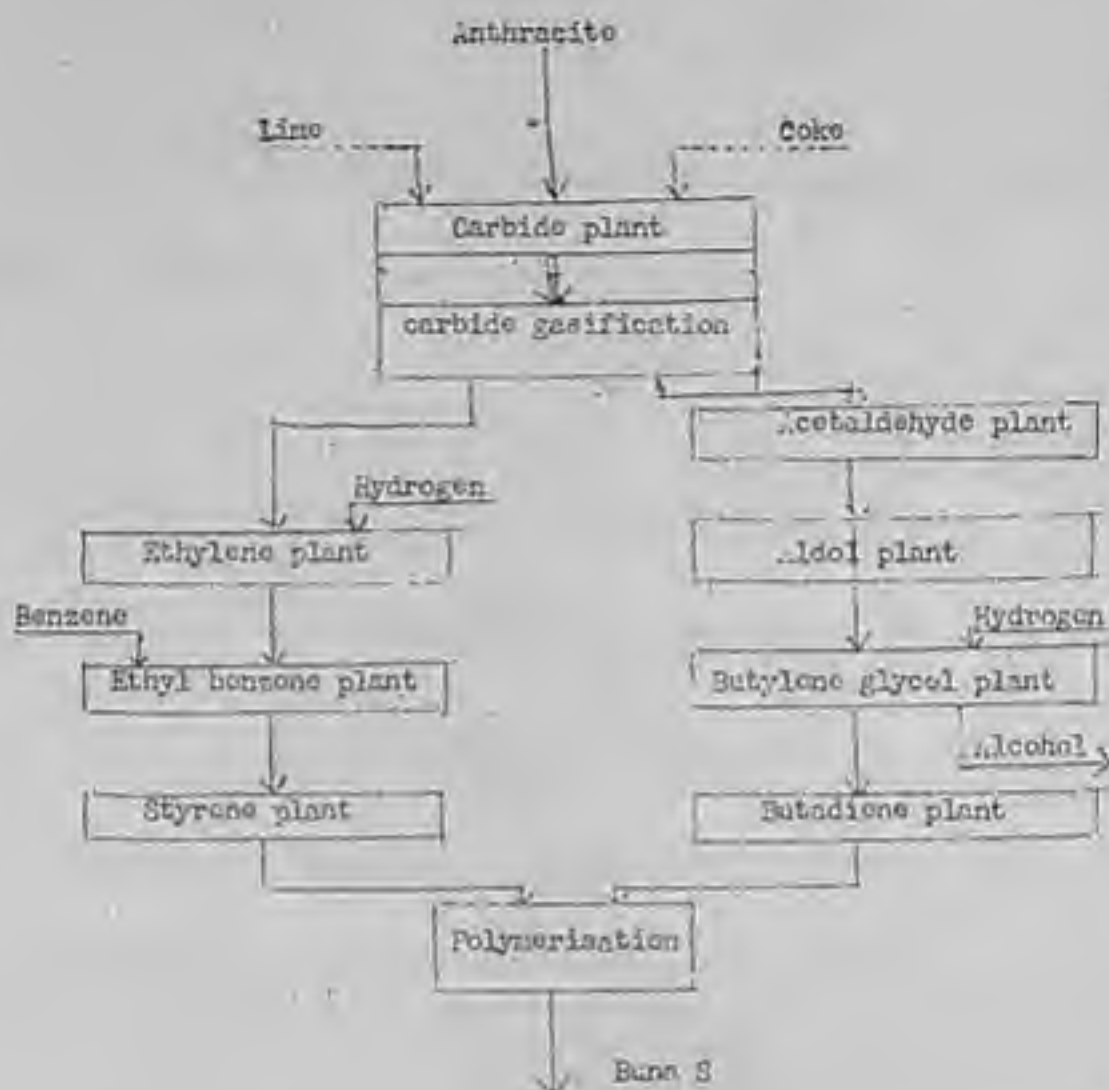
In case of breakdowns or interruptions the plant has been designed so as to permit the desired production to be carried out in 8000 working hours (about 333 working days).

9. Traffic and transportation problems.

1. A spur line to the Reich Railroad, starting from Dwory station, is to be built.
2. The number of freight cars - arriving and departing - required to supply the Buna plant at its present projected size will be about 90 per day; the number for the whole plant will be about 110, i.e. 2 to 3 pairs of trains per day. In addition, an overhead conveyor is to be built for transporting coal from the Fuerstengrube to the Auschwitz plant. If this conveyor breaks down the number of trains might rise to 5 to 6 pairs per day.
3. No waterways connection is planned.

4. Transportation requirements.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a) For transporting building materials:<br>(about 10 of these plant owned) | 20 trucks   |
|  | 40 freight cars<br>for a construction<br>period of 2 1/2<br>years |
| b) For transporting raw materials<br>after production has commenced:       | 45 cars per day   |
| c) For transporting finished products:                                     | 5 cars per day  |



I.G. Farbenindustrie Akt. Ges. Ludwigshafen/Rhine	Scale	Flow-sheet Buna plant Ludwigshafen
Date: 15 May 1941 Name: Mach		

A F F I D A V I T .

I, Chief Ingenieur Dr. Erich MACH, living at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Engelhornstrasse 3, have been duly warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice at Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that this document, consisting of 10 pages, is an exact copy of the application for a building permit for the Buna plant at Auschwitz, dated 15 May 1941, which I drew up together with Herr Bauinspektor SANTO and Herr Dr. EISELID.

I have appended my signature and today's date to each of these pages .

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 2 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Erich MACH.

I herewith certify and witness that the above signature is that of Chief Engineer Dr. Erich MACH, living at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Engelhornstrasse 3, and that it was made before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, living at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 2 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant Defense Counsel.

The above copy is herewith certified true and correct.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 20 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Office of Technical committee/building commission Ludwigshafen,  
29 April 1942  
Hal/Sch.

Minutes

of the discussion on the simplification of preparatory work at  
Auschwitz held in the Reich Ministry for armaments and munitions,  
1 Jochenstrasse, Berlin-Charlottenburg, on 27 April 1942.

The following were present:

Oberreg. Rat TISCHER	Reich Ministry for armaments	Berlin
Baurat SCHIEBELER	"	"
Dr. WIRPE	Plenipotentiary General for chemistry	
Dr. STEPHAN	"	
Dipl. Ing. DRESCHER	"	
Baurat ROLTER	Plenipotentiary General for Building	Breslau
" MAHLENDORF	"	"
" RACHMANN	"	Halle/Saale
Regist. RACHMANN	"	Frankfurt/Main
Dipl. Ing. SCHMIDT	"	"
Dipl. Ing. SIEDEK	O.B.R. Hamburg	
Professor Dr. LOOS	College of Technology	Berlin
Dr. MUELLER	Waggon G.m.b.H.	
Dipl. Ing. MATSCHKE	High Command of the Army	
Obering. FAUST	I.G. Auschwitz	
Obering. Dr. KEMPKE	Leuna	
Dipl. Ing. SIEBERT	"	
Regist. RAISCH	I.G. Ludwigshafen	

The meeting had been called by Oberregierungsrat TISCHER at the  
instance of Ministerialrat SCHIEBELER, in order to investigate  
the possibility of considerably simplifying preparatory work  
for the Auschwitz plant, i.e. of dispensing with a pile  
foundation. At the very beginning of the discussion Oberbaureg.  
TISCHER or Baurat RACHMANN questioned the choice of site.  
What were the reasons it was asked why Auschwitz had been chosen;  
was it too late to discuss the possibility of choosing a new  
site on better building land.



Dr. ROEPKE and Dr. WIRTH stated that Auschwitz had been chosen for the following reasons:

- 1) The area planning board had requested that the fourth Buna plant be constructed in Upper Silesia
- 2) Good connexions with coal mines (25 km)
- 3) Location close to lime stone quarries (25 km) and to salt supplies (15 km)
- 4) It was necessary for purposes of water supplies and draining to construct the plant in the immediate vicinity of a major river (Vistula).

10 million Rs had been used to date on work at Auschwitz.

In view of the delays which were bound to occur it was impossible to stop building operations. A transfer of the plant to another site was out of the question. Prof. LOOS and Dr. MUELLER of the Baugrund G.m.b.H. supported the speakers and stated that it was impossible to find in the vicinity of Auschwitz a site on better building land. The ground at Auschwitz was not ideal for building purposes, but it could be worse. The level nature of the site, making large scale excavation operations unnecessary, the uniform nature of the soil, the stratum, 30 m in diameter, of gravel, at a depth of 10 m, and favourable underground water conditions, all spoke in favour of the Auschwitz site. There was moreover a certain guarantee in the collaboration between I.G. and the building experts that pile foundations would only be used if absolutely necessary. It was impossible to transfer the plant elsewhere because far more money had already been spent on building operations than could be saved by eliminating piles. Pile foundations were only necessary for major buildings and for machines which were decisive to settling. Economic considerations alone were decisive in the choice of a site for the plant.

The representatives of the plenipotentiary general for building were persuaded that it was impossible at that stage to transfer the plant.

It must however be insisted upon that building operations be carried out as economically as possible. The following questions would have to be investigated for that purpose:

- 1) Could not building operations be reduced considerably by transferring to another plant in Upper Silesia the synthetic sector of the project? The representatives of the Plenipotentiary General for chemistry unfortunately were not in a position to answer the question whether Buna and synthetic production were interdependent and, for that reason, inseparable. Obering. FAUST on the other hand maintained that a separation was out of the question as the two plants were very much interdependent.

Transfer from Auschwitz of synthetic production would involve drawing up plans all over again. Dr. WIRTH suggested that Dr. OBENHAUS be asked to attend the meeting so that the question could be settled satisfactorily. The discussion between Baurat RACHMANN, Dr. OBENHAUS and Dipl. Ing. BREZCHER took place in the afternoon of 27 April.

- 2) Plenipotentiary General for building requested that construction of air raid shelters be reduced considerably. Building operations could be reduced considerably if external walls were not as requested by air raid precaution authorities made 51 cm thick, if roofs were not made bomb-proof against incendiaries, and if buildings on the factory site were built closer together. Baurat SCHNEIDER pointed out that the decision on that question rested solely with the General Plenipotentiary for building. In view of the absence of Baurat SCHNEIDER of inspectorate No. 13 who had also been asked to attend, Oberbaurat TISCHNER called a meeting at 6 Koenigsplatz at 1030 hrs Thursday 30th inst for the purpose of settling these air raid precaution questions.

- 3) It was requested that each individual building project be inspected to determine whether pile foundation was necessary or not. This would be ensured as mentioned above by close collaboration with building experts. In conclusion it should be said that the only positive result of the meeting was the hope that ABF requirements would at long last be brought into line with necessary building economy measures.

signed: HAISSCH

Director Dr. ANGELOS  
Baudir. SANTO  
Dr. DUERNFELD

Obering. FAUST      Obering. Dr. NACH  
Dr. HOEFER      " HEIDENROCK  
Obering. HAISSCH      Dr. EISEL  
Registrator. THURN

Technical committee/building commission.

Affidavit.

I, Baudirektor Camill SANTO, of 5a Kaiserstrasse, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit, herewith depose on oath that my statement is true. It was made to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice Wiesbaden, Germany.

I herewith declare on oath that the above document, consisting of 2 sheets, is a carbon copy of a report made and signed by Registrator Baumelster HAISSCH on 29 April 1942 on the meeting held on 27 April 1942 in the Reich Ministry for Armaments and Munitions, 1 Jochenstrasse, Berlin Charlottenburg for the purpose of discussing the possibility of simplifying preliminary work at Auschwitz. My initials "Sa" appear in the bottom left hand corner of the first sheet.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 15 January 1948

signed: Camill SANTO

I, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, of 4 Dunsenstrasse, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, herewith witness and certify that the above is the signature of Baudirektor Camill SANTO, of 5a Kaiserstrasse, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, and that it was appended in my presence.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 15 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The above copy is herewith certified complete and correct.  
Ludwigshafen 31 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT      Assistant Defense Counsel.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

19 February 1948

We,	VICTORIA ORTON,	ETO No. 20129
	PATRICIA E.C. WOOD,	ETO No. 20139
	EUGEN KUN,	AGO No. D-429798
	BRIGITTE TURK,	ETO No. 35130
	ANNE MARTIN,	ETO No. 20144
	PHYLLIS RAY,	ETO No. 36287
	JULIUS J. STEUER,	AGO No. A 442654
	ARTHUR MACNAMARA,	ETO No. 20191
	LEONARD J. LAWRENCE,	ETO No. 20138
	BERYL C. BERNICK,	ETO No. 20183

hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of DOCUMENT BOOK III A AMBROS.

VICTORIA ORTON,  
ETO No. 20129,  
Pages 27-31, 50-53

PATRICIA E.C. WOOD,  
ETO No. 20139;  
Pages 1-6, 26, 44-49,  
56-59

EUGEN R. KUN,  
AGO No. D-429798,  
Pages 23-25

BRIGITTE TURK;  
ETO No. 35130,  
Pages 7-8, 36-43

ANNE MARTIN,  
ETO No. 20144,  
Pages 9-15, 60-64

PHYLLIS RAY,  
ETO No. 36287,  
Pages 16 - 22

JULIUS J. STEUER,  
AGO No. A-442654,  
Pages 32 - 35

ARTHUR MACNAMARA,  
ETO No. 20191,  
Pages 54, 55, 65-70

LEONARD J. LAWRENCE,  
ETO No. 20138,  
Pages 71 - 74

BERYL C. BERNICK,  
ETO No. 20183,  
Pages I - X.

Case 6  
Defense

TRIBUNAL VI  
CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK III B

for

Otto A m b r o s

Plant Auschwitz

Founding.

Submitted by  
Defense Counsel  
Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney at Law





Table of Contents to Document Book III B

for Otto Ambrose

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
QA-327		<p>Affidavit by Gerhard Ziegler, former manager of the Land-Planning Community (Landesplanungsgemeinschaft) of Silesia/Upper Silesia, of 22 January 1948 concerning the choice of location for the Buna Plant IV. Ziegler writes literally:</p> <p>"The grounds at Auschwitz were marked in our plans (Landesplanung) as particularly fit for a possible chemical factory already prior to the planning of Buna Plant IV and the existence of a concentration camp. Especially for a Buna - plant did the territorial requirements concur at Auschwitz in a most favorable constellation."</p> <p>..... "also sufficient local working force was available" ..... "At any rate for the choice of location the neighbourhood of the concentration camp played no part at all resp. a negative part at the most."</p>	1 - 6
QA-328		<p>Affidavit by Dr. Johann Schaefer, of 10 July 1947.</p> <p>With letter of 13 February 1943 Schaefer was charged in conformity with the contract of 1940 and the purchase of the grounds for the plant Rattwitz "to carry out the entire purchasing procedures for the grounds of our plant Auschwitz and the estate Dwory".</p> <p>Schaefer in his affidavit describes the conditions and his activity in detail.</p>	6 - 11

Affidavit.

I, Gerhard Z i e g l e r, Tübingen, Goethestr. 14,  
was at first duly warned that I make myself liable to  
punishment by rendering a false affidavit. I declare in  
lieu of oath that my statement is true and was made to be  
presented in evidence before the Military Tribunal at the  
Palace of Justice in Nuremberg.

I was manager of the Land Planning Community (Landesplanungs-  
gemeinschaft) of Silesia / Upper Silesia from 1940 - 1945.  
At that time and in his function I learned to know Dr. Otto  
Ambros personally at the occasion of conferences, and  
because of my official activities there I can make  
statements regarding the choice of location for the  
Buna-Plant IV at Auschwitz.

It belonged to the agents of the Land Planning Offices to draw  
up development plans for the land, that is also to investigate  
and suggest possible locations for new industrial  
enterprises. So Auschwitz as well as Blochhammer-Heydobreck  
were marked down as particularly favorable  
locations for industry. Concerning the choice of location  
for the Buna Plant IV the Reichamt fuer Wirtschaftsaufbau  
(Reich Office for industrial development) over the  
Reichsstelle fuer Raumordnung (Reich Office for Industrial  
Planning) approached my Land Planning Office around the end  
of 1940. After careful survey only the grounds at Auschwitz  
could be seriously considered for the I.G. plant within the  
Silesian area, since within Silesia on the Vistula for  
reasons of water supply and communications there was no  
other location available except for a location <sup>near</sup> on the Oder only  
location<sup>which</sup> <sup>was</sup> unfavorable with respect to coal. The locality  
Blochhammer-Heydobreck was already occupied. The grounds at  
Auschwitz were marked in our plans as particularly favorable for  
a possible chemical factory already prior to the  
planning of the Buna Plant IV and the existence of a  
concentration camp. Especially for a Buna Plant all the  
territorial requirements concurred at Auschwitz in a most  
favorable constellation.

- 2 -

The grounds to the East of Auschwitz were preferably fit for construction. It was uncultivated in large plains and required only minor ground movements. It consisted, as a matter of fact, of fertile loam-soil and on the part of the Land Planning Office there was the tendency to spare agricultural production, still the location at Auschwitz was finally chosen for industrial planning because no other suitable location could be found. In particular the grounds permitted without difficulty further extension of the in itself already quite favorable (3 two-track railways met at railway station Auschwitz) communications network and the establishment of a new shunting-station in the South of the planned I.G. plant. Also there were no serious obstacles to large scale settlements around the vicinity of the planned plant. The coherent area was large enough to accommodate such a modern plant with all tracks and necessary buildings and the town belonging to it, which after completion was to house 100,000 souls.

Furthermore, coal as the most important raw material was within close railway distance, cheap and of the right composition. For this the neighboring pits came in question, with some million tons per year Brzezoz-Jawischowitz were newly developed and very productive. The Auschwitz shunting station offered the possibility of delivery from the Jaworzno district, the central district and as far as I know also from the pit Silesia in the Ples district.

Equally favorable conditions existed with respect to the second raw material chalk. It was close for transport, within the communications network and available in sufficient quantities.

Of particular importance were the water conditions. Required were several ckm (cubic meter) of water per second according to development. These requirements could be met throughout Upper-Silesia and favorably located to coal and chalk only at the confluence of Vistula, Sola and Przemsza. The mountain waters and also the Przemsza

- 2 -

- 3 -

were somewhat reliable water providers, which even at the critical low could still provide together 5 - 6 cm of water. The water experts worked out detailed opinions at that time.

Also there was a sufficient locally tied labor force available. Everywhere in the Reich there was then already a shortage of workers. The area around Auschwitz, however, was according to German standards to be considered as strongly overpopulated (small agricultural farms at low living standard). Only through industrialization could the wage-working and living conditions and therewith the total standard of living be improved. Indeed there was talk of removing the Poles living there. This was one of the most senseless and most inhumane plans of the rulers of that time. The whole development of the eastern Upper Silesian industrial district would have been jeopardized by moving out the Poles there. All authorities endeavored to render impossible all plans for moving them out (see the figure of grouping into Ethnic Group 3 /Volksgruppe/) It may be assumed for certain that the I.G. also has supported these endeavors not only in their own interest, but also for reasons of humaneness and reasonableness. As a matter of fact no Poles were moved out from the environs of Auschwitz.

Therefore also at the so-called founding meeting in Kattowitz on 7.4. 41, in which I participated as a representative of the Land Planning, the labor procurement situation was considered not unfavorable by the competent gentlemen of the local employment office. However, compared to other requirements of the locality the problem of labor procurement was of subordinated importance. It could have been solved, as at other war plants, during the course of construction.

- 4 -

by work settlements or barrack camps. At the conference in question the decision in regard to the locality Auschwitz had already been made on the part of industry and the Berlin Economic Authorities. The meeting at Kattowitz was intended merely for giving the Land Authorities an opportunity to express their opinion, to impose taxes etc..

As far as there was any talk at the meeting of 7.4.41 about support of the Buna Plant through the neighbouring KZ-Camp, this happened so casually, that I do not remember this circumstance anymore today. At any rate the neighbourhood of the KZ-Camp played no part at all in the choice of the locality resp. a negative part at the most. The KZ was at such a distance from the plant that a daily march to and from work could not very well be considered. Therefore if prisoners were to go to work at the plant, a camp would have had to be built for them at the plant. Besides the KZ-Camp Auschwitz there was only in the earliest phase of construction.

To determine the selection of a locality for so big an industrial enterprise as Buna Plant IV and the hydration-plant of the I.G. by the accidental neighbourhood of a KZ-Camp, the existence of which was at any rate to be of only short duration, would have been nothing less than absurd.

To the contrary the existence of the KZ-Camp was felt by the local authorities and the works management of the I.G. to be an impediment, with the latter in regard to the recruitment of personnel as well as in consideration to the reputation of the plant. Furthermore, the fact that tax reductions were granted there (to attract industries) and that the wages were low may have played a certain part also in situating the plant in Upper Silesia.

Tübingen, 22 January 1948

signed: Z i e g l e r

- 4 -



DOCUMENT BOOK III B AMBROS  
DOCUMENT No. 327  
-----

- 5 -

The above signature of Herr Gerhard Z i o g l o r,  
Head of Department V at the Ministry of the Interior  
in Tübingen, residing there, Goethestrasse 14, is,  
herewith, certified.

Tübingen, 22 January 1948

signed: Signature

Government employee

Stamp:  
Ministry of the Interior  
Württemberg - Hohenzollern

The correctness and completeness of above copy is  
certified.

Munich, 26 January 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney at Law

- 5 -

Dr. Johann Schaefer  
Graduat. Agriculturist

A f f i d a v i t  
-----

I, the undersigned Dr. Johann Schaefer, residing at Mehlem/Rhine, District Bonn-Land, have been made aware of the fact that I make myself liable to punishment by submitting a false affidavit. I declare in lieu of oath, that my statements are true and that they were made in order to serve as evidence before the Military Tribunal at the Place of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

My statements refer to the purchase of land for the plant Auschwitz, and the compensation connected with it. According to the enclosed certified copy of a letter by the I.G. Farbenindustrie dated 13 February 1943, the order given to me orally already in 1941 was confirmed in writing - after the land purchase at Rattowitz, which had been started in 1940, had been dropped again.

I am very well informed about the happenings and details of the land purchase at Auschwitz, and I am therefore able to make incontestable statements. I am able to give to the penny exact information as to the payments made by the I.G., because I was able to bring these records safely over here in my personal notes.

The entire Upper Silesian area had been confiscated by law in behalf of the Reich of that time, before endeavors for purchase of the tract were begun. Those who had owned the land so far, were to be considered as dispossessed. The Central Landoffice in Berlin and its Branch Office in Rattowitz acted right from the start as the contracting party, as agency of the former Reichsfuehrer SS, Plenipotentiary for the Strengthening of German Folkdom in the East - or something similar. The Ostland Gesellschaft (Eastern German Agricultural Company Ltd) in Rattowitz disposed as trustee over the live stock, other property and crops and in turn accounted to the Land Office (Bodenamt). While so negotiations were carried on with the Land Office regarding the purchase of the land and the buildings, investigations pertaining to injury to the fields and the unplanted resp. tilled acres taken over, and evaluations of the live stock and other property acquired by the I.G., were made together with the Ostland, which also received the appropriate compensations.

-2-

In all cases, as well as in the assessment of value for land and buildings, as in compensation payments for inventory, proper assessments were made, and paid by the I.G. according to the full amount of the value established by the investigations. Regarding public property, i.e. streets, roads, schools, and cooperative property not subject to dispossession, sales contracts were concluded with the Regierungspräsident in Cottbus. In all other cases of the dispossessed real estate the Land Office acted as seller.

Concerning partial areas, that is parts of land preempted for plant purposes previous to the fixed date at which the respective area was purchased by sales contract, lease contracts were concluded with the Ostland.

The latter also collected the rent. The Ostland received from the I.G.

1.) out of lease contracts	28,546.06 RM
2.) as compensation for injury to the land	53,142.35 RM
3.) for inventory and stock turned over	<u>493,360.10 RM</u>
altogether	<u>575,348.53 RM</u>

As sales contracts were concluded:

a) on 26 January 1943 regarding the sale of lots out of public property, to the Regierungspräsident	546,259.00 RM
b) on 15 September 1943	71,370.20 RM
c) on 12 March 1944 sale of dispossessed lots, to Land Office	<u>4,062,000.00</u>
altogether	<u>4,679,629.20 RM</u>

Ready for contract agreement were at the end of 1944 still the rest of the real estate property from Dwory I and II, Nonowitz and Rosinitz with a sales price of 68,564.80 RM.

To this there would have yet been added the share from the city sector Legehitz, with approximately 170 Hektar at 5.000.-- RM, <sup>each</sup> together about 850,000.-- RM. As the surveying in this area had not been concluded, the documents for this contract could not yet be prepared.

-3-

It is a definite fact that the I.G. purchased the land, the buildings, and all the inventory and supplies turned over to it, by contract at their full value, after it had been assessed by experts in regular proceedings. The leases and compensations for the injury caused to the land, as well as the payments for the inventories turned over, were made in every instance immediately after the conclusion resp. surrender or transfer; the amounts mentioned under 1-3 above represent the entire amount of the respective column (parts). Payment of the sales price took place shortly after the contract had been concluded.

The concluded contracts were turned over to the District Court (Amtsgericht) for real estate recording with all necessary proofs of land registration etc. The management of the I.G. Farbenindustrie has therefore not in a single instance petitioned for a dispossession to the advantage of the plants needs (this was unnecessary as the act of dispossession in this area had been concluded as a measure of the Reich for the entire Upper Silesian territory before the I.G. appeared on the plan).

The I.G. has instead laid greatest stress on an unobjectionable, correct accomplishment of the entire purchasing procedure, and ordered that by employment of its own surveying office - aside from the authorized surveyors, by aid to the Land Register Office and by making available assistance to the Real Estate Register Office, everything was done to facilitate the orderly accomplishment and to bring it to a speedy conclusion.

The fate of the land had been decided without any influence on it by the I.G. It was different with the human beings who suffered under the fate of the land, the local population which consisted almost entirely of Polish nationals. According to orders the former inhabitants should have left the plant area. But according to the expressed desire of Director Ambros none of the inhabitants could be ordered to leave, if possible all of the old settlers were to remain instead in their home area. Resettled were the railway workers and miners to the vicinity of their working places. These groups had to be taken out, as the large village of Monowitz, located right in the center of the plant area, had to be completely evacuated and settlement of its inhabitants, even after the buildings in the village bordering on it had been rebuilt and extended and a nice new settlement had been built, could not be accomplished. Furthermore, all who reported voluntarily for work at the construction site of the plant - no coercion was used by the plant - were also employed by agreement with Dir. Ambros, irrespective of the doubts arising in regards to theft, espionage and sabotage.

-8-



-4-

It was only natural for the plant management at Auschwitz that everything in their power was done to ease the lot of the local population and supply them with a sufficient basis of existence. I have repeatedly experienced in conferences, that Director Ambros backed the management up in this care for their welfare, and that he also approved and backed with his responsibility all such measures, as for instance the making available of building materials for the construction of houses for the population, which was strictly prohibited according to the severe regulations of war (Scarce goods).

Mehlem, 10 July 1947  
signed: Dr. Johann Schaefer

Doc.Reg. No. 556/1947

I certify hereby the above signature of the graduate agriculturist Dr. Johann Schaefer of Bad Godesberg, Beckenheimerstrasse 9, identified by Identification Card AL 893499 BCh, Godesberg.

Bonn, 11 July 1947  
the Notary  
signed: Hermann Hache.

Correct and complete copy of the above document is hereby certified.

Muenberg, 15 March 1948

signed: Carl Hoffmann  
(Attorney-at-law.)



-5-

Enclosure:  
Copy

Dr. Joh. Schaefer  
Graduate Agriculturist

I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. Technical Department

17, 57, 68, 400, 401, 416

Dr. Johann Schaefer  
Breslau  
Briskestrasse 28

Techn.Dept./Construction Auschw.  
Ludwigshafen/Rhine 13./2.1943 Sa/E.

Subject: Purchase of the Auschwitz area  
Order No. 680012/43

Referring to the negotiations held with you, and referring to the contract which we entered into with you in the year 1940 and to the purchase of the real estate for the Auschwitz plant, we assign to you

the accomplishment of the entire purchase  
proceedings for the area of our plant  
Auschwitz and the Dwory estate,

as well as the work connected with this, such as resettlement of the inhabitants and assistance in the re-alignment of the remaining agricultural sector.

Valid for the accomplishment of this order are the same arrangements upon which we orally agreed with you in detail at that time.

We reimburse you for the accomplishment of this work with 2 % of the sales price of the object and 1% from the amount of sold inventory and fruit compensation and annual lease of the concluded lease contracts.

Not included in these fees is the supply of machines and tools taken over by your co-worker Herr Boehring, for which a special fee has yet to be agreed on between you and our plant Auschwitz. Accounts are to be sent out to the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. plant Auschwitz, Auschwitz/Upper Silesia, and submitted to the local building management Auschwitz in duplicate.

-10-

- 8 -

Payment of your fee will be made in instalments according to the method of payment agreed on with our Billing management.

We request your confirmation.

I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.

signed: signatures.

1 Card of acknowledgement enclosed

Authenticity of the above copy with the original presented is hereby officially certified.

Bonn , 11 July 1947

The Notary

signed: Hermann Naecke.

Correctness and completeness of the above copy is hereby certified.

Nuernberg, 15 March 1948

signed: Karl Goffmann  
(Attorney-at-law)

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

16 April 1948

We, Hanns Ed. Gleichman and Adolph Lusthaus hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of the Document Book III B AMBROS.

Hanns Ed. Gleichman  
A-443029

Adolph Lusthaus  
B 398010

- 11a -  
" E n d "

Case 6  
Defense

Tribunal VI

Case VI

Document Book IV A

for

Otto AMEROS

Anschwitz Works

Construction.

submitted by the  
Defense Counsel

Earl HOFFMANN  
Attorney-at-Law.

Heing



I n d e x of Document Book IV  
for Otto I M E R O S

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
32-401	9	Lay out of the Luechwitz works of the I.G. Farben in the scale of 1:10,000, as in 1944.  The three production groups, namely Buna, Synthesis and "Linton" (Steel and Coal), as well as the General and Social enterprises are shown in different colors.	1
32-402		Communication of the Plenipotentiary for Chemicals (Göbbelns), dated 14 March 1941, concerning the urgency of the Luechwitz Buna Works Building Projects. The Luechwitz Building Project will be granted first priority.	2
32-403		Report of 31 March 1941 concerning a conference on 28 March 1941 at the office of the Minister of Provincial Affairs in Luechwitz concerning the purchase of building sites for the Luechwitz works.	3 - 4
32-404		Application for a credit, submitted to the RDA (Technical Committee) for the purchase of grounds in Luechwitz, dated 20 November 1942.  Application is made for the release of 4.5 millions Reichsmark as the purchase price of the site.	5 - 6
32-405		Communication of the Göbbelns dated 29 April 1941 addressed to Otto I M E R O S concerning the completion of residential buildings for the Luechwitz works to be erected.	7 - 8
32-406		Application for a credit submitted to the RDA on 7 March 1941, for creation of a camp with temporary barracks.  "For the purpose of housing workers from out-of-town, the creation of a camp with temporary barracks is planned	



I n d e x of Document Book IV 2 for  
Otto W. P. R. O. S.

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
		with a capacity of housing 2,000 workers at first. This will require an amount of 1,500,000 Reichsmark	1-12
10-467		File notation by Building Director SCHRO, dated 16 May 1941, concerning a preliminary program of residential buildings in Muech-witz. The entire program at this time comprised approximately 3,000 apartments, the last group being running up to 1,150 residences including 1,000 apartments for workers.	13
10-468		Appelavit of Dr. med. Karl WILHELM, dated 21 January 1943 concerning plans for and promotion of his-panic and hospitals in Muech-witz by Otto W. P. R. O. S.	14-16
10-469		Communication of the Reich Mini-ster for Armament and Munition, dated 27 September 1941, imposing a fine of 50,000 RM on the Muech-witz Building Directorate for giving orders for 3,460 glasses under reference to the priority number granted. The Reich Mini-ster for Armament and Munition, with a reprimand, pointed out that in case of repetition "the methods of punishment of the SS will be used for dealing with the case".	17-18
10-470		Report concerning a visit made by Hans SCHMIDT, Head of the Purchasing Department of the Muech-witz Works, to Berlin offices on 12 January 1942. Concerning the procurement of bed-linen, SCHMIDT writes as follows.	

Index of Document Book IV for  
Otto MERSO

Doc. No. Exh. No.	Contents	Page
	"Neither in Germany nor in the occupied territories are stocks available at present because the Wehrmacht seized and removed everything a short while ago for the manufacture of snow-shirts. We have been notified that no allocations can be made even to hospitals and infirmaries."	19-25
02-411	Communication of the I.G. Farben to the Plenipotentiary of the Four Year Plan, dated 11 August 1941, stating that the requirements of labor for the Auschwitz building site will amount to 9 000 men in 1942. This letter says: "These 9 000 men will include 1 000 inmates of concentration camps."	24
02-412	Communication of Gustav MEYER, Auschwitz Works Building Director, to Building Director G. WITTO, Ludwigschafen, dated 15 October 1941. MEYER mentions the particularly difficult conditions in Auschwitz in detail and asks: "As to personnel, a program must be drawn for the urgent demands which exist already and for the growing demand for skilled technical, commercial and auxiliary personnel..." "With the number and qualities of the personnel allocated up to now, it will be possible at least to keep our head above water..."	

I n d e x of Document Book IV for  
Otto M B R O S

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
		"In consideration of the prevailing conditions which are difficult enough generally and in consideration of the particularly difficult conditions in Auschwitz, it will be completely impossible to carry out a building project on such a scale..."	
		"I for my person do not intend to give in to the prevailing and coming difficulties. Neither shall I desert from my post, although I have been threatened with the concentration camp in case of more blunders."	
		"In spite of this danger we shall carry on unflinchingly."	28-30
31-413		Report concerning a conference on 1 November 1941, made by Dipl. Ing. B.U. of the IG. Auschwitz works and referring to a discussion with Senior Governmental Counsellor M. UST of the Reich Employment Office concerning labor allocation. This report says as follows:	
		"Herr G. UST took advantage of this opportunity to remind Counsellor M. UST once again of our urgent need of additional skilled and auxiliary workers."	31-32
31-414		Teletype of the Ghettoes, dated 19 November 1941, concerning the possibility of employing Spanish firms for the construction of roads.	
		"Reference is made to the decree of Minister President Goebbels of 20 June 41, concerning war important constructions."	33
31-415		Letter of the IG Farben, Auschwitz works, to Otto M. BROS, dated 29 November 1941. Otto M. BROS is informed that no negotiations must be initiated as yet with the ROBE organization concerning the cooperation of the latter in Auschwitz."	34-35

Index of Document Book IV for  
Otto A. M. B. R. O. S

Doc. No. Exh. No.	Contents	Page
32-416	File notation, dated 14 December 1941, concerning the "employment of French contractors, including implementers, regular, skilled and auxiliary workers."	35-37
32-417	Report on a conference dated 5 February 1942, concerning a conference on 30 January 1942 at the Gottowitz Regional Employment Office. The Gottowitz regional employment office promises all possible help, in particular to secure the demand of 3,000 German workers.	38-39
32-418	Report on a conference, dated 5 February 1942, concerning a conference on 30 January 1942 with the Provincial Prefect STANISLOU which dealt with the existing and future difficulties in Luschwitz. The subject of this conference was: 1) the procurement of workers, 2) the question of building in the town, 3) the food supply, 4) Miscellaneous.	40-45
32-419	Letter of Otto M. B. R. O. S, dated 21 February 1942, addressed to Building Director STANISLOU and to Dr. STANISLOU, concerning the employment of the G.P. for the creation of Luschwitz. The G.P. has over a project value of 25 million Marks.	44
32-420	Letter of Building Director STANISLOU, dated 17 July 1942, concerning the imminent taking over of the following Luschwitz building projects by the G.P.:	

I n d e x    of Document Book IV    for  
Otto    I M B R O S

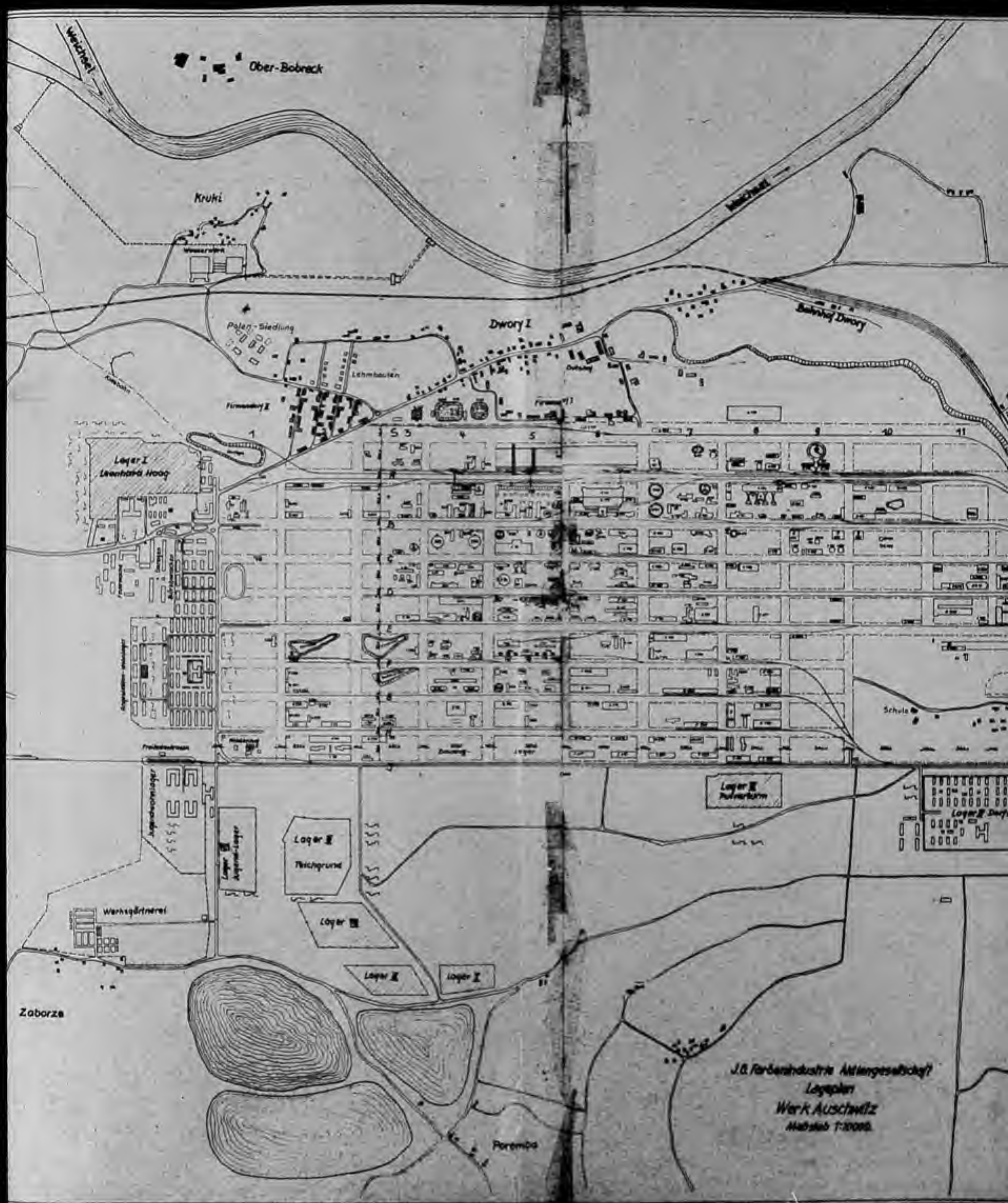
Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
		a) railway station of the works, b) roads outside of the works, c) water works, d) Flushing conduct, with cascade and sedimentation bed, e) Waste dump f) Gravel production and pro- cessing of gravel, g) Mine plant of the OMH."	45-46
01-421		Communication of the Maschwitz Works, dated 17 August 1942, stat- ing that the O.I. (Russian direc- torate) took over the following building projects: "the water works with flow regula- tions and pumps, railway station of the works, Waste dump, production and processing of gravel, quarry at Grossendorf mine plant, and, recently, the barrack complex 3, 4, 5 and 6."	47-48
01-422		Affidavit of Otto DESSSEL, dated 18 February 1947. From February 1943 until January 1945 DESSSEL was appointed head of the building staff for the erection of the power plant by the I.G. Berlin. He states his opinion on foreign workers and inmates.	49-53
01-423		Affidavit of Herbert WEIßER, da- ted 14 August 1947. From September 1941 until January 1945 WEIßER was the branch manager of the Brichle-Berdubitski Association, employed at the I.G. building site. He gives a survey of his experience in Maschwitz.	54-58
01-424		4 graphic presentations of labor allocation in Maschwitz in the years of 1941, 1942, 1943 and 1944.	59-62
0A-425		Chart of State and Party officers supervising Maschwitz.	63



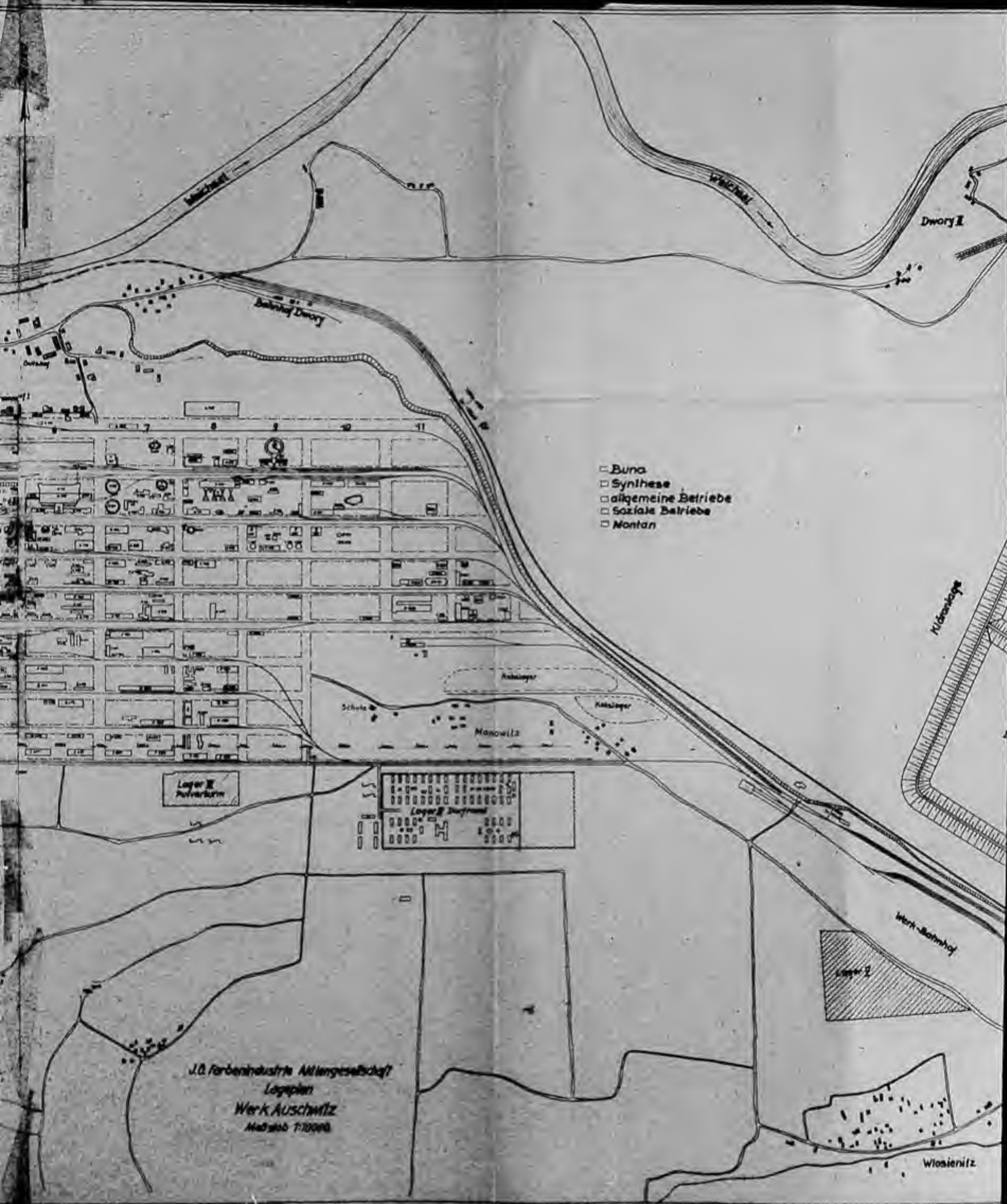








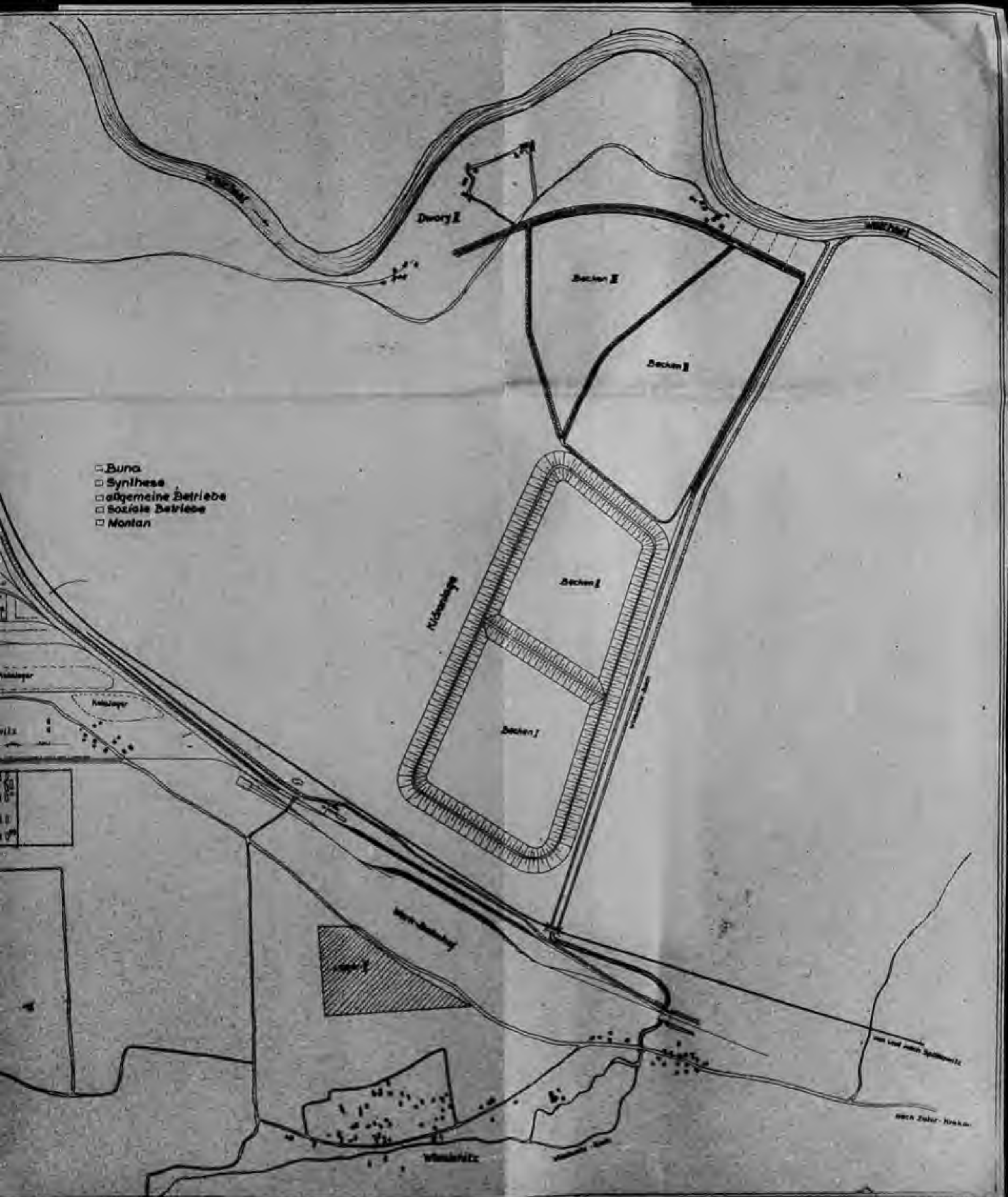












Doc. Book IVd. AMEROS  
Doc. AMEROS No. 402  
Rh. No.

Received: 17 March 41 V. IV.  
Berlin W 9, 14 March 1941  
Scharlandstrasse 128.

The Plenipotentiary for the  
Four Years' Plan,  
The Commissioner for special  
Problems regarding Chemical  
Production.

§ Herr Obering. SANTO  
" " MUST  
" " R. MACH  
" Dr. FISFIELD  
" Dipl. Ing. HINTERROCK.

Numbers: Chem. I - W 1801 - Dr. Wh/Rh.

Journal # J.1637/41

Reference:

Subject: Buna factory IV Auschwitz  
construction emergency classification O.

Firm  
I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
Ludwigshafen on Rhine.

I hereby inform you that your building project "Bunawerk IV  
Auschwitz" including the power plant has been adopted in the index  
of recognized W-building projects under the number

O. H. F. 3.

For the time being the building project has the general emergency  
classification O; however, I reserve the right to make decisions  
about individual erections which are constructed under the emergency  
classification O, in each case. I request that you send me pertinent  
suggestions as soon as your plans are sufficiently clear.

By delegated authority

signed: EXCEL.

- End of copy -

Affidavit.

I, building director Camill SANTO, residing in Ludwigshafen on the  
Rhine, Hauptstrasse 5a, was first of all warned that I would render  
myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare  
on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submit-  
ted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice,  
Munich, Germany.

(page 2 of original, cont'd)

I declare that this document is an exact copy of a letter from the Goeben, DR. FUELL, to IG-Ludwigshafen on the Rhine, dated 14 March 1941. This copy was sent to me at that time for my files, Ludwigshafen on the Rhine, 3 January 1948.

signed: Camill SANTO.

The above signature of Herr Stadtdirektor Camill SANTO, resident in Ludwigshafen on the Rhine, Imackerstrasse 5a, which was given before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, resident in Ludwigshafen on the Rhine, Lunscherstrasse 4, is hereby certified and witnessed.

Ludwigshafen on the Rhine, 3 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

The above is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen on the Rhine, 16 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Report of Discussion.

Day: Friday, 28 March 1941.

Place: Office of the Gauleiter and Oberpraesident as Commissioner  
of the Reichsfuehrer SS, Reichskommissar for the Strengthening of Germanen, Kattowitz,

Participants of the above mentioned office:

Hauptsturmfuehrer STUTZKE and  
another official of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.-G.  
Oberinspektor FUST  
Dipl. Ing. FLOTTE.

The purpose of the discussion was to debate the procuring of land for  
the Auschwitz factory.

A suitable proposition is to be made to the office of the Gauleiter  
and Oberpraesident as Commissioner of the Reichsfuehrer SS, Reichs-  
kommissar for the Strengthening of Germanen, Kattowitz, Rathaus Court-  
schuetz, Zirkunerstrasse. The following documents are required for  
this:

- 1.) 2 copies of a land register map 1 : 5,000 on which the land  
which is to be procured is marked,
- 2.) 2 copies of a plane table sheet 1 : 25,000 on which the land to  
be procured is also marked,
- 3.) in so far as they are available, excerpts from the land register  
(in actual fact, however, according to our ascertainment, a land  
register does no longer exist).

In answer to my question in which way the boundaries of the land to be  
procured are to be determined and whether existing conditions in this  
connection are to be taken into consideration



Doc. Book IVa AMBROS  
Doc. AMBROS No.  
Exh. No.

in any way, I was told that the boundaries are to be determined without any regard for existing conditions and are simply to be entered on the map in accordance with our requirements.

No information could be given to me about the prices of land. In this respect a suitable agreement was to be reached during the negotiations between the office of <sup>the</sup> National Farm Association (Landesbauernschaft) and our representative.

Worms, 31 March 1941. Rh.

signed: FAUST

For: Mr. Dr. AMBROS, La.,  
Mr. Dr. Dr. HUNZIGER, La.,  
Mr. Dr. Dr. v. SEATZ, La.,  
Mr. Dr. DRISCH, La.,  
Mr. Oberinspektor SAFTO, La.,  
Mr. Oberinspektor Dr. MACH, La.,  
Mr. Oberinspektor Dr. HUBER, La.,  
Mr. Maj. Gen. SCHNEIDER, La.,  
Mr. Gen. MURR, Auschwitz.

The above is a true and correct copy.

Worms, 12 February 1948.

signed: R. Alfons ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel.



I.G. Auschwitz OS  
Installation-Costs

Application for loan	Title	20 November 1942
Project No. 233		Supplements
Department T2/Construction		Substitute
Undertaking: purchase of real property		New requirements
Construction a. z. 0005		

Subject: Purchase of the plant area

Reasons:

The entire plant area to be bought measures approximately 20.3 qkm. The Gauleiter and Senior President, Deputy of the Reichsfuehrer-SS, Reich Commissioner for the Strengthening of Germanism, Kettowitz, has offered with letter of 30 June 1942, Reference Section IV/agriculture/IV904/Sche/XI the purchasing price of RM 2,000.-- per ha. The price has in the meantime been accepted by us. The purchasing price includes all buildings on the area to be bought, including those of the estate Dvory.

For the purchase of the entire area in question the sum of about

RM 4,500,000.--

is therefore needed.

We request your approval.

(signed): FAUST (signed): SAEVLSBERG

(signed): SASTO

(signed): KACH

(signed): DISFELD

Accounting: Branch I = 50%  
Branch II = 50%

approved

(page 3 of original)

approved on 23 November 1942 signed: AMEROS

approved in advance on:

Included in the Budget: yes - no

(Reverse page of the original)

I.G. Auschwitz  
 Plant costs

Application of loan	Technical Construction Dep. Name	Machinery Dep. Name
Day: 20 Nov 1942		
Project No: 233	FAUST	
Department	SAVALSBERG	
Ta/construction		
Undertaking: purchase of real property		
Construction as 00051		

I. Increase in value (according to investments accounts)

a) factory buildings	RM	
b) machines and equipment	RM	
c) account 00 = area not built on	RM 4,500,000	
d)	RM	4,500,000.--

II. Work not resulting in increase in value

a) transports, alterations of established buildings and equipment to the debit of operating expenses	RM
b) demolition to the debit of operating expenses	RM
c) demolition to the debit of supplementary expenses	RM

III. Losses in inventory (value of inventory less value of junk)

a) to the debit of operating expenses	RM
b) demolition to the debit of supplementary expenses	RM

Schedule of increases in value

Construction and Equipment No.	Subject	Estimation of the Construction and Machinery Department
A = 00051	<u>account 00 = area not built on</u>	
050	<u>Purchase of the plant area</u>	4,500,000.--
	<u>Inv. No. as 233/00051/050/00</u>	<u>4,500,000.--</u>

The true and correct copy of the foregoing document is herewith  
 certified.

Munich, 12 February 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
 Assistant Counsel for the Defense

The Deputy for the Four Year Plan

The Plenipotentiary General  
For special problems of chemical production

Ref. No. Labor Allocation Kth/Sch.

Berlin # 9, 29 April 1941  
Seerlandstrasse 128

Diary No. 53 977/41

Telephone: 12 00 48

Reference: —

Teletype: K 1-113

Telegram address: Gobschen

Subject: construction of houses  
for plant Auschwitz

(handwritten): SANTO  
WEISS

a.k.a.

Director Dr. ABROS  
I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh.

Dear Dr. ABROS!

In view of your application, dated 21 April inst., I spoke with my specialist Herr KEIMATH with regard to the execution of the housing scheme for the plant Auschwitz which is to be newly established and I have commissioned him to handle the whole affair. He visualises the practical execution to be the same as in the case of the new plants in Moosbierbrunn, Linz, Pöchlitz, etc., namely in this manner that the "Cooperative Housing Project I.G.", Ludwigshafen will be used as the sponsor. For this purpose a branch of this housing-enterprise has been established a short time ago in Auschwitz.

Before Herr KEIMATH is going to submit his final proposals to me, he desires to acquaint himself on the spot with the details and to make contact with the office of the Reich Housing Commissioner and the Gau Housing Commissioner, since in view of the Fuehrer Decree those two offices are a decisive factor next to the Reich Ministry of Labor and its examining office. Herr KEIMATH has set 13 May, afternoon 5 hours for the visit and he suggests it would be useful that the Herren Dr. WEISS and construction director SANTO take part in this inspection.

Heil Hitler

Yours signed: Dr. C. KRAUCH

Document Book IV a AMEROS  
Ga Document No. 405  
(continued)

(page 4 of original)

The true and correct copy of the foregoing Document is herewith  
certified.

Dr. Jolfgang ALT  
Assistant Counsel for the Defense

Nuernberg, 12 February 1946

Application for credit

013

7 Maerz 1941

Tk / Bau

Cantonment

File No. 00088

Cantonment.

It is intended to build a cantonment for the  
accommodation of foreign workers, at first for 2,000  
workers. For this purpose we need the amount of

RM 1.500.000.--  
-----

We ask for approval

signed SANTO  
signed LUCH

Approved on 8 March 1941 signed Ambros

Approved in advance on:

Contained in the budget:



I. G. Muschwitz

## Statement of Investment Account

Application for credit

Date 7 March 1941	Construction Department	De-Mechanical engineering department
Project No. 013	Name	Date
Department T./Bau	MURR	7 March 1941
Plant	Centonment	
Construction File No.	00088	

I. Increases in value (according to investment accounts)

- |                             |              |              |
|-----------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| a) Factory building         | RM           |              |
| b) Machines and Equipment " |              |              |
| c) Incidental invest-       |              |              |
| ment expenses-              |              |              |
| ..account 15                | RM 1.500.000 |              |
| d)                          | RM           | 1.500.000.-- |

## II. Work not resulting in an increase in value

- |   |    |
|---|----|
| a) Transporte. Alterations of existing buildings and equipment to the debit of operating expenses | RM |
| b) Demolition to the debit of operating expenses  | RM |
| c) Demolition to the debit of supplementary expenses  | RM |

III. Losses in inventory (Value of inventory less value of junk)

- |  |    |
|--|----|
| a) to the debit of operating expenses    | RM |
| b) to the debit of supplementary expense | RM |

- 2 -

Schedule of increase in value

Building and Equipment No.	Subject	Estimate of the Construction Dept.	Mechanical Engineer- ing Dept.
-------------------------------	---------	--	--------------------------------------

File No. 00088 Account 15 - Incidental investment expenses

040	<u>Digging and founda- tion in ground</u>	120.000	
-----	---	---------	--

Inv.No. File No.  
013/00088/040/15

041	<u>Concrete work and masonry</u>	90.000	
-----	--------------------------------------	--------	--

Inv.No. File No.  
013/00088/041/15

043	<u>Carpenter work</u>	450.000	
-----	-----------------------	---------	--

Inv.No. File No.  
013/00088/043/15

044	<u>Completion of the construction</u>	300.000	
-----	---	---------	--

Inv.No. File No.  
013/00088/044/15

045	<u>Equipment of the building site and undry construction expenses</u>	65.000	
-----	---	--------	--

Inv. File No. 013/  
00088/045/15

046	<u>Air raid shelters</u>	50.000	
-----	--------------------------	--------	--

Inv.No. File No.  
013/00088/046/15

001	<u>Low-pressure pipe lines</u>		30.000
-----	------------------------------------	--	--------

Inv.No. File No.  
013/00088/001/15

024	<u>Heating plant</u>		100.000
-----	----------------------	--	---------

Inv.No. File No.  
013/00088/024/15

Document Book IVa AMEROS  
AMEROS Document No. 406

Building and Equip- ment No.	Subject	Estimate for the Construction Dept. Mechanical Engineer- ing Dept.
026	<u>Dash-rooms</u> Inv.No. File No. 013/00088/026/15	50.000
027	<u>Latrines</u> Inv.No. File No. 013/00088/027/15	150.000
030	<u>Furniture (1500 beds, 1500 wardrobes, 1500 chairs, 300 tables)</u> Inv. No. File No. 013/00088/030/15	185.000
		1.075.000 425.000
		total 1.500.000,--

- 3 -

I certify that this above is a correct and complete  
copy.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense-Counsel.

Nuernberg, 18 February 1945.

M./Bau

Lu., 16 May 1941 S/B.

Preliminary project for accommodations in Auschwitz  
(totals):

1.) Total project:

about 3,000 apartments

2.) Project for constructions to be carried out immediately:

Lodgings for immediate use 1150 apartments,  
of these:

1,000 apartments for laborers

20 % 3-room apartments

60-70 % 4-room apartments

10-20 % 5-room apartments

150 apartments for office employees:

20 one-family houses

50 apartments of 5 rooms and kitchen in several  
story houses

80 apartments of 4 rooms and kitchen in several  
storeys houses

signed: SANTO

I certify that the above is a correct and complete  
copy.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant- Defense-Counsel

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948.



AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Karl GILBERT, residing in Ludwigshafen-on-Rhine, Tschierstrasse 10, have first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement corresponds to the truth and has been made in order to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Court House, Nuernberg, Germany.

In September 1918 I took job as factory surgeon in the medical department of the I.G. Farben and Soda-Fabrik and later on became Chief Surgeon and director of the medical department of the Ludwigshafen plant. In October 1947 I retired from my position as Chief Surgeon of the I.G. Farben and Soda-Fabrik, but am carrying on private practice.

In 1914, in the course of the preliminary planning of the Auschwitz plant, Dr. GILBERT took over with me the establishment of a dispensary, just as was done with the previously erected plants. From the beginning, he insisted the viewpoint that in the construction of a plant the dispensary should be completed first, because, as is well known, most accidents happen during the time of construction. For this reason the construction of the Auschwitz dispensary was begun in good time and speeded up with all means. I was myself charged with the designs, because, in the course of my long activity as factory surgeon in Ludwigshafen, I had gathered much experience, had already designed similar installations for other plants and had played an important part in the organizational setting up of medical departments in other plants. Therefore I believe that I am able also to give an expert opinion on the dispensary of the I.G. plant in Auschwitz.

(page 2 of original)

As was the case with all the welfare works which were built up at the suggestion of Dr. JEBROS, the generosity must be emphasized, with which he undertook and carried out the project. I never had any difficulty in obtaining funds if it was a matter of erecting installations which, according to my proposals, were necessary to keep the workers healthy. In the case of Aschmitz therefore, the program submitted by me was approved at once and it was due to the continued assistance of Dr. JEBROS that the dispensary could already start operating at a time when for instance the construction of a separate administrative building had not even been contemplated yet. As I had a completely free hand in the construction of the dispensary and was not compelled to keep within the limits of a proscribed amount, I was in a position to procure the best and most modern equipment and so, in the third year of war, it was possible to create an installation which far exceeded the usual set-up.

In all the plants he constructed, Dr. JEBROS paid particular attention to the selection of the plant surgeon. He had originally proposed that I should send one of the physicians from the Ludwigshafen plant because he knew the gentlemen from Ludwigshafen and was able to judge their capabilities. But it was not possible for me to release any of my physicians because otherwise the medical service in the Ludwigshafen plant would have been impaired. But in Dr. FASCHER and his later collaborators we found men who were completely ignorant to the tasks in that locality and who, with their expert assistants, organized an exemplary medical service in the plant. I had the opportunity of convincing myself, by personal inspections and by reports, that the installations of the dispensary,

(page 3 of original)

which had been provided for the entire staff, could meet all requirements and that the medical service in Auschwitz was functioning excellently. The sick rate in Auschwitz - an average of 3 % - was one of the lowest in all the I.G. plants.

Already in 1941 Dr. MORG informed me that he intended to support and foster the plan of erecting a hospital in Auschwitz. I must say that, under the prevailing, circumst. of the war, such a project seemed hardly practicable to me. But he clung to it and declared that it was intolerable in the long run that the seriously sick and injured had to be transported to the hospital in Bialitz which, as far as I know, was 20 kilometers distant.

In fact, still in 1943 and with the aid of the I.G. plant, a modern hospital was erected in Auschwitz which, under the direction of Dr. MORG, was able to meet all the requirements of medical practice.

Ludwigshafen-on-Rhine, 21 January 1948.

signed Dr. MORG

The above signature of Dr. Karl MORG, residing in Ludwigshafen-on-Rhine, Buchlerstr. 10, given before me, Dr. Alfons M.T., Assistant Defense Counsel, residing in Ludwigshafen-on-Rhine, Bunsenstr. 4, is hereby certified and attested to.

Ludwigshafen-on-Rhine, 21 January 1948.

signed Dr. Alfons M.T.  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The true and complete copy of above document is hereby certified.  
Nurnberg, 12 February 1948.

signed Dr. Alfons M.T.  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Copy

THE REICH MINISTER FOR  
RESENT IN QUESTIONS  
No. 9006 - 733.212

Berlin 18, 27 September 1941  
Paris 1.12n  
Telephone 11 64 81

Copy of the original  
signed initial (ORIENTAL)

Re: intered

To the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
Muschwitz plant - Construction Main Agent.

Muschwitz, Upper Silesia.

Subject: Offense against the Provisions of the Economy.

The I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. - Muschwitz plant - Construction  
Management has ordered, as to attached copy of letter, with the  
United Leusitz Glass Works A.G. 3460 pieces of glassware, in-  
cluding cut glasses for social and dining room and champagne.

The last paragraph of the order is worded in such a manner  
that the United Leusitz Glass Works has, or were meant to have,  
the impression that the particular priority with which the con-  
struction project must be carried out, also applies to the pro-  
curement of the dining furniture. The customer set in the intend-  
ed effect with the United Leusitz Glass Works, for the United  
Leusitz Glass Works, submitting the order and explaining the  
illegal priority of the orders, submitted with the director  
of the examining commission against the letter. Planned with-  
drawal of workers.

The I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. - Muschwitz plant - Construction  
Management, by this act has gravely misused the word "priority"  
and has offended against the principles of the Economy.  
After having informed the Reich Marshal of the Greater German  
Reich, I therefore request upon you a fine of

(page 2 of original)

RM 50 000.—

(in words: Fifty thousand Reich Mark).

After the payment of the fine I will in this case refrain  
from reporting the matter to the police.

The signatory of the order of 23 July 1941, in case WUG,  
is herewith reprimanded and warned that, in case this happens  
again, he will be liable to regular legal punishment or, that the  
means of punishment of the SA will be utilized for the settling  
of the case.

Request that the fine of RM 50 000 be forwarded to

Reich Main Finance Office, Berlin V 8,

(Postal account Berlin 30201 with the note: upon order of the  
Reich Minister for Armament and Munitions, with quoting the  
above file number).

(si p.c.) WUT

The correct and complete copy of above document is herewith  
certified.

Muenberg, 12 February 1948

signed by, Alfred W. J.T.  
Assistant Defense Counsel.



(handwritten): Herrn Beauftragter SaPTO

I.G. Purchasing Dept. Auschwitz      Ludwigschafen a/Rhein  
12 January 1942

signed: Sa.

Report on trip

Concerning my visit to Berlin for the purpose of procuring equipment for the accommodation camp in Auschwitz and the safeguarding of the so-called less important requirements of steel and iron, on 8 September 1942.

Subject: Blankets.

I visited the Reich Office for Clothing (Hr. KLISCH) and there met Procurist KLATT as well as Herr REISSMANN of the Central Purchasing Dept., Berlin. After having explained to them in detail our requirements, Herr KLISCH approved the application for the issue of coupons entitling us to buy

6,410 blankets (wool)  
6,410        "        (cotton).

I am glad to be able to report that the Reich office did, in fact, approve our application in full. In the meantime, the permits have reached the office. At the same time the firms that have to produce the blankets from their special stock, were named.

Towels.

This application concerning 13,865 towels has also been approved in full without naming source of supply. We shall try to obtain these towels through the Industriehaus Litzmannstadt.

Dedlinen.

For the time being it is impossible to get supplies in either Germany or the occupied territories, as the Wehrmacht seized and removed all stock in order to manufacture snow shirts.

We were informed that even military and civilian hospitals could not be supplied for the time being. It is rumored furthermore that hotels will have to give up part of their stocks of bedlinen. As I was not satisfied with the information supplied by the Reich Office for Clothing, I turned to G.B. - Chem., to Herr WEHLING, (office Dr. BOCKEMANN, who was absent). Herr WEHLING confirmed the statements made by Herr JUNGRIET of the Central Purchasing Dept. according to which the G.B. - Chem. had already repeatedly spoken to the Reich Ministry of Economics, mentioning our urgent needs with regard to Auschwitz but that all efforts with regard to bedlinen had failed, because the Reich Ministry of Economics did not have any in stock owing to the aforementioned circumstances. The Labor Front, with which I got in touch as well, informed me that in the near future a decree will be promulgated according to which all workers directed and assigned to the building site, will have to bring their own bedlinen with them.

From two previous orders transmitted by the Purchasing Dept., Ludwigshafen, approximately 1,900 sheets are still to be supplied from two special stores. According to statements made by the suppliers their stocks have, however, meanwhile become exhausted. We shall nevertheless try on the basis of the priority number given to us by the G.B. - Chem. to obtain something somehow.

China ware and cutlery.

Herr JUNGRIET of the Central Purchasing Dept. has consented to consider Auschwitz first of all, when the china ware which is expected to arrive from Finland, is to be distributed. At the same time I asked Dr. SIEPMAN to support us in procuring china ware. First of all, he referred us to the German Equipment Works,

Berlin-Lichterfelde, Geranienstr. 2, Hauptaufseher NIEMANN, who is in charge of the Supply Office there, named the firm of Entschendrother A.G., Eichenberg/Hof. (Bavarian Forest) as being in a position to supply the china in question, to which we turned in the meantime. Their reply has not yet been received.

The Labor Front Berlin (competent authority Herr GAIUS) refused to help us to procure the equipment we need, as the Auschwitz camp does not come under the jurisdiction of the Labor Front. On this occasion, I learned that the Labor Front as well has no stocks of bedlinen available and that issuing of such bedlinen has been strictly forbidden.

The Reich Office for Miscellaneous Goods (Herr SCHLIZ), Berlin SW 68 Adenaustr. 10 with whom I also got in touch referred me to the Karawische Industry, Berlin W 20 Luisenplatz 25, with regard to china. (Herr GIBT) who, according to information, received of the aforementioned person can only deal with applications in writing which are supplemented by a certificate of the Arbeitskommando.

With regard to the procurement of cutlery, we were referred to the Fachgruppe Schneidwaren Industrie, Solingen, Koelliker van den Bruck Str. 17. We did, in the meantime, get in touch with that office.

The firm of SCHNEIDERLAND Bros., Mannheim, with whom I talked today is of the opinion that it will be in a position to supply us with at least a few thousands forks and knives, etc.

Ideal-calculating machines of the firm of SEIDEL & NEUMANN, Dresden.

In order to effect the assembly of the machines, it is necessary to obtain the parts to be supplied by the firm of FEILER, Berlin to S / E. In order to get over the difficulties concerning the supply, I tried in conjunction with the agent of the firm SEIDEL & NEUMANN, a Herr WINKEL of Bernstadt, to contact the Reich Office for Technical Appliances (Herr LAUBERT) in order to speed up delivery, as the firm of SEIDEL & NEUMANN is supposed to work through the medium of this office. Unfortunately we learned that the said office knew nothing whatsoever about this fact and were referred to the department 'Office machines' at the Technisches Maschinenbau, Berlin Admiral von Schroeder Str. 22. Dr. BAUMGART of the Technisches then got in touch with the firm of FEILER by telephone which informed him that SEIDEL & NEUMANN had only, two days ago, received a hundred parts from them, which were to be used for our calculating machine as well. As a previous telephone conversation of the agent of the firm, Herr WINKEL, with his firm in Dresden, had established the fact that the machines in question were destined for the Navy and not for the I.G., Dr. BAUMGART intended to try on the following day (10 January 1942) to get the OKW to ask Mr. FEILER to effect immediately delivery of the two parts. I got the impression that the firm of SEIDEL & NEUMANN lacked the necessary will to comply with our order and I have for this reason recontacted with them through our Purchasing Dept. in Ludwigshafen. We hope in this way to bring about a speedy delivery of the two calculating machines.

Iron and steel requirements of lesser importance.

A detailed discussion with Dr. STEPHAN (I.G.) together with Dr. Ing. KOLBE - raw material dept. Ludwigshafen - concerning the distribution of the quota numbers for the so-called iron- and steel requirements of lesser importance



which do not come under the building- and machine iron quota, resulted in the necessity of informing, first of all, the Reich Ministry of Economics of our total requirements for Anachwitz with regard to such material, so that this office can get a clear idea what quantities they can assign to us. Tools, such as spades, shovels, choppers, also kitchen utensils, and paddocks, safes, bath tubs etc. fall within the category of the so-called requirements of lesser importance. By constantly pushing them I at least succeeded in getting 50 t to cover our most urgent needs. On 20 January 1942 I am going to have a discussion in Ludwigshafen with the following gentlemen: OESLING, REIDERSHOFER and SIGGIE concerning fixing a quota for the so-called requirements of lesser importance with regard to Anachwitz. The result will be written in a report of the conference and perhaps may well be discussed in the meeting on buildings in Lunz on 22 Inst. so that we will be in a position to send the necessary data to the Reich Ministry of Economics as soon as possible. The application will, however, stand a chance of being approved only if all departments will definitely limit their requirements to a minimum for the next half or three-quarter year.

sgd. SCHMITZ

Certified true copy of the original

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Asst. Defense Counsel

Rhodenberg, 12 February 1942.



68,400,1.

To the Plenipotentiary  
of the Four-Year-Plan

Berlin - 7.9  
Saarlandstrasse 128

1 Aug 1941

T./Bau-K/..

11 Aug 1941

Sn/an

Muschwitz Works:

In reference to your above letter we inform you that we expect to have a maximum strength of 9,000 men at the construction site of Muschwitz in 1942. 1,000 of these men will be concentration camp inmates, consequently 8,000 men will remain for the huts

In addition to these, mechanics: 2,000 men

total: 10,000 men,

who will have to be billeted in the huts starting next spring.

I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AG. TRIEBSCHEIDT.

Certified correct and true copy.

Dr. Wolfgang ..LT

Assistant Defense Counsel.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948.

I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESellschaft

Construction Management of  
Luschwitz

Private (in handwriting)

To Studiendirektor S. NTO

Lu 10

Luschwitz O/S., 15 October 1941

He./Schu.

23 October St.  
(in handwriting)

Dear Mr. S. NTO -

Oberingenieur F. JUST informed me of the contents of your letter, dated 11 October 1941. Of course you will expect that such disagreeable mistakes will not be repeated in the future. Therefore, in the interest of the cause as well as of the reputation of the I.G. and in order to avoid similar incidents, I want to speak to you quite frankly and ask you not to take it amiss if I touch on some unpleasant matters.

I cannot warrant that the repetition of such cases, derived from the past, which might possibly turn up again in the nearest future, can be avoided, at least not as long as the causes of these mistakes have not been removed in principle. As long as no measures are taken to prevent the possibility of mistakes from the very beginning or to reduce them to a minimum, the gentlemen in charge have to take such incidents into consideration.

In view of this fact I should like to make the following suggestions:

1.) Concerning the matter itself:

- a) to prepare a program for the supplies of minor importance
- b) to approve this program by furnishing the necessary supplies or to fix the corresponding quotas or to provide priority certificates, perhaps graded in order to facilitate the procurement;

(marginal note): c) adequate care for the qualified German workers and signed: So. employees with regard to billeting, food,

supply of drinking water; day-rooms for leisure hours,  
etc.

2) in matters of personnel:

- a) Preparation of a program providing for existing urgent requirements, and continually developing demand of qualified manpower, e.g. engineers, office- and assistant's personnel
- b) Execution of an immediate action by transferring qualified - by which I mean actually qualified - and first class personnel from the main plants, until our personnel program has matured, and/or has been carried out.

From my report, dated 19 September 1941, copy of which I submitted to you together with my letter of 16 October 1941, addressed to the Commissioner of the Goba-Chemie, Breslau, R.F.E.M.G., you can gather what measures are considered indispensable here in Auschwitz, in order to attain the completion of the Buna-Plant according to schedule. Program for material and personnel required can be furnished from the records and files of the factory book keeping and the personnel-office referring to the Schkopau Buna-Plant.

With regard to supplies, the procurement of adequate housing, feeding and clothing for laborers and clerks is the most urgent task (not even the German workers can at present be supplied with bedding). Equally urgent is the demand for typewriters etc.

As regard to personnel the immediate assignment of qualified office personnel is of greatest importance. The number and qualification of the personnel assigned up to now are barely sufficient to keep us afloat. It is however impossible to run the business efficiently this way. Here just one example:

At present, the commercial and technical office - with the exception of the Social Department - have the following stenographers at their disposal:

- 1) one qualified female stenographer for the construction office itself
- 2) one young female stenographer with 6 months' practice, who promises well and will become a qualified stenographer in time, she has since managed a part of the clerical work for the purchasing department; at present she is ill with appendicitis.
- 3) one young female stenographer, who can take dictation but can hardly read her own shorthand; at present she is with the stenographer mentioned below the only clerical assistant for the entire commercial office;
- 4) one untrained female stenographer, with only about 1/2 years practice
- 5) one female Ethnic German, who does not write shorthand at all and at the very most can copy letters and is very poor at this
- 6) one female Ethnic German of similar qualification
- 7) one female Ethnic German, who can only be used for mimeographing.

The other departments as well as myself have to content ourselves with these two untrained stenographers. How can we possibly manage the purely clerical work in good time with such inadequate personnel? That is impossible. We are even forced sometimes to turn out letters in a form which is unworthy of an enterprise like the I.G.. I myself, for instance have to wait for 3 days until a stenographer is free to take dictations of important correspondence and this although we often work until the late hours of the evening, mostly until 20 - 21.00 hrs. In spite of all eagerness to work, derangement, sources of mistakes and even worse things must arise, unless these matters are remedied immediately - consequences which can not be taken too seriously.

We urgently require at least 4 fully qualified stenographers. The pressure of work demands that such personnel - by which I mean first class and not half trained personnel - is put at our disposal immediately. It is no good for the general interest of the I.R., if we get as answer to all our applications to our main plants that the wanted kind of personnel and this or that particular article cannot be supplied. It is entirely impossible to carry out such a large scale construction task at under present days operating circumstances - and even more difficult in Buchenitz, - and to expect at the same time that efficient work is done with beginners and half illiterate persons. The importance, urgency and the greatness of our task requires first-class personnel, who tackle the task with never-failing idealism, optimism and energy.

The immediate assignment of trained office personnel to the commercial office is equally important, namely:

2 clerks in charge of order card index and for checking deliveries,

1 filing clerk for the firm and inventory records,

1 filing clerk for the construction records.

The work just mentioned had to be done hitherto by half illiterate persons. You cannot imagine how much trouble and difficulties I had to get some order into the record files for the supply of raw materials.

The other departments are - and were - not better off either. How much precious time for important work is lost, if the heads of the departments have to worry about finding letters or even to file them and to supervise every kind of work done by their office personnel. So I wonder that with working under such pressure letters slip through the contents of which are apt to



(page 5 of original)

In view of this heavy load of unclassified matters it is little wonder that sometimes letters will slip through the contents of which are apt to have unpleasant consequences for the entire I.G. The odd thing is rather that nothing has happened so far, and this is due only to the tireless diligence and work of the few efficient members of the staff. It is not too late yet to ensure satisfactory operation of the organization, provided that the department chiefs are adequately relieved of their excessive workload. Not that there is a complete muddle in Auschwitz, but the inefficiency of a proportion of the staff is a constant source of blunders which ought not to occur in an efficient organization which has been running smoothly for years. A great deal more has to be done, and that at once, unless we are to slip into a Polish muddle.

Considering the difficulties under which business had to be carried on in Auschwitz we cannot but come to the conclusion - looking at matters objectively - that despite all these difficulties an enormous amount of work has been done. But we must also come to the conclusion that in evaluating the merits and demerits we must not apply the standards of an organization which has been running smoothly for years, staffed with the most efficient members of our present I.G., but that we must take into account the particularly difficult conditions.

Personally I feel no inclination to give in because of the difficulties, present and future. On the contrary, these very difficulties will be an incentive for me to increase my efforts. Nor shall the fact that further delays are threatened by confinement in a concentration camp make me desert my post. Despite this danger work will go on steadily till everything - and I expect it will take two years - runs smoothly. You will also appreciate that I have no wish to fail in a task because the required subsidiary forces are missing.

(page 6 of original)

I should be much obliged to you for letting me know what the parent firms on their part can do or intend to do in order to clear the difficulties.

I ask for a few-reading understanding on your part, if I have spoken so freely to you. It is my opinion that it is better to face the facts squarely, to expose existing shortcomings rather than to indulge in the dangerous illusion that as time goes on everything will come out alright..

(signed) H. O. S. 10003

Further to my letter of 10 October 1941 I herewith enclose an enclosure concerning:

- 1) Heat Supply
- 2) Potable Water Supply
- 3) Engagement of suitable clerical staff.

Enclosures.

Postscript. Yesterday Herr O.I. FUGG was invited to a conference with the Deputy-Inspector in Wittowitz. The Deputy-Inspector wants us and the township of Wittowitz to submit a so-called "limitation program", specifying the requirements of minor importance in their entirety and specify the required delivery dates.

I shall be obliged, if you will ascertain from the Factory account-books on Schkopau, and let me know in word and deed, what the requirements were at that time. It will be for us as well. Of course it is necessary for us to submit this specification of requirements in about 10 days' time so as to avoid being blamed for not having availed ourselves of the proffered assistance.

(signed) H. O. S. 10003

Herr O.I. FUGG is informed of the contents of the letter (handwritten). - - -

This is to certify the correctness and completeness of the above copy.

Thunberg, 12 February 1948.

(signature) H. O. S. 10003  
Attorney-at-Law.

Conference Minutes.

Place: Cantonment 12.

Date: 31 October 1941

Present: Oberregierungsrat (Senior Government Counsellor)  
M A L UCKE from Labor Office Bickel

Regierungsrat (Government Counsellor)  
D E R P A from Göttingen (General-Plenipotentiary "Construction")

Dipl. Ing. von B O T L E R from Göttingen (General-Plenipotentiary "Industrial Industries")

Dr. R O S S D I C H }  
G R A F S I K E } I.G. 12.  
Dipl. E A E U }  
Ing. E A E U }

Herr Oberregierungsrat M UCKE was to examine the manpower position, to ascertain, on the one hand, whether skilled labor had been assigned to work which could be performed by unskilled labor, and, on the other hand, whether manpower had been assigned to building projects not having Priority 0 and I. Herr Oberregierungsrat M UCKE was sufficiently familiar with conditions on the building site and building projects other than of Priority 0 and I not being under consideration a close scrutiny could be dispensed with. Herr G R A F S I K E took the opportunity to point out to Herr Oberregierungsrat M UCKE once more our great need for more skilled and unskilled labor.

Regierungsrat D E R P A (General Plenipotentiary Building Industries) had the task on the one hand to check on general measures of economy and to ascertain, on the other hand, whether the regulations of the GOERING decree were being observed in all constructional work. On the basis of a layout the undersigned at first informed Herr Regierungsrat D E R P A on the entire building project. Herr Regierungsrat was in possession of a program showing an enumeration of the individual constructions in order of value, and of the work to be carried out on the building site. He stated that 40% out of the volume of construction was demanded. The undersigned pointed out that 2 out of nearly 40% in the volume of construction had been affected already. It could hardly be assumed, therefore, that another 40% out was intended.

Document Book IV - MEMPHIS

(page 2 of original)

The individual constructions were discussed and the desired information given. Subsequently Herr Richard Herrmann, inspecting the building sites, satisfied himself that the provisions of the GOERING decree were being adhered to.

(signed) D. I. U.  
(D. I. U.)

Wachwitz, 1 November 1941  
Inc/Co.

This is to certify the correctness and completeness of the above copy.

Turnberg, 12 February 1948

Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law.



I.G. Ludwigshafen  
Teletype

Teletype

RPFS BLS STI 393 19 November 41 9,41 (handwritten:  
10<sup>50</sup> T. Bau)  
RZL BLN 7619 19 November 41 = I.G. Lu

It is possible immediately to engage Spanish road building firms who will use their own machines and tools for road-building work in Germany.

Road building contracts will be reported to me immediately with the following data:

- 1.) Type of street surface: tar, cement pavement.
- 2.) Dimensions of road building projects, length of the road-stretch, area in square meters DXS of the road-building. Reference is made to Decree of Minister-President GOERING of 20 June 1941, relative to building essential to war.

GESECHEM (Plenipotentiary-General for Chemical Industries) Dr. ECKHARDT = 11

The accuracy and completeness of the foregoing copy is herewith certified.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel



I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft

Auschwitz Plant Upper Silesia  
Building and Installation Management.

Dr. Ing. Walther DUERRFELD

To:  
I.G. Farbenindustrie Akt. Ges.  
to attention of Herr Direktor Dr. AMEROS  
L u d w i g s h a f e n am Rhein.  
-----

Due. 29 November 1941

My dear Dr. AMEROS;

Unfortunately I was not able to catch you in the office yesterday. So I do not know if Herr Dr. ECKELL passed on to you what I instructed him to tell you. Therefore I recapitulate briefly:  
After the joint conference with Ministerialrat. STEPFENS about the collaboration of the Organization TODT in Auschwitz, I discussed the further course once more first of all with Dr. DITTEBRANDT, then with Dr. RITTER. The recommendations of these gentlemen were as follows:

- 1.) Not to negotiate with Organization SPEER, until there has been a talk with Ministerial Dirigent SCHOENLEBEN,
- 2.) not to talk with Herr SCHOENLEBEN until the conference with Prof. KRAUCH and Dr. TODT has taken place beginning of next week,
- 3.) in the interim to negotiate with the local branch office of the Plenipotentiary General for Building (Gebebau).

I experienced the same tactics on the part of Herr Dr. HOCHSCHWENDER regarding the Brabag. Although I find this delay most disturbing, I will therefore bide my time and inquire about the result of the conference in the middle of next week, whereupon I will inform you. In the meantime I give a carbon copy of this letter to Herr Obering. (Senior Engineer) FAUST with the request cautiously to ask Herr KLOSS, whether the Organization TODT would take part in the building program for a definite project.

(page 2 of original)

(apartments, settlements for Bukowinians, railroad-building, canalization, water-works, and procurement of gravel).

With friendly greetings and

signed Sa (by hand)

Heil Hitler!

Yours truly,

signed: DUERRFELD

Ø Herr Bau-Direktor Santo - Lu  
Herr Oberingenieur Dr. HOEFKE - Mo,  
Herr Oberingenieur F. UST - Az.

The accuracy and completeness of the above copy is  
herewith certified.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948.

Karl HOFFMANN,  
Attorney-at-law.

Due.

Layna Works, 14 December 1941  
Gr.

File Notation.

Concerning: The placing under contract of French building firms with equipment, permanent personnel, and auxiliary workers.

On the occasion of my visit of yesterday at the Reichsamt (Saturday, 13 December) with Herr LINDEMANN and Herr BIERWIRTH I heard an announcement by Herr Dr. TITUS from Paris over the telephone. The latter reported that he had 3 building-firms on hand with 300, 500, and 700 men. The firms are ready for immediate service. My inquiry as to the fields of specialization of these firms will be answered by Herr Dr. TITUS as soon as possible, and he will inform both the Amt as well as I.G. Lu directly. I have basically indicated agreement in the assignment of a building-firm of 300 men as quickly as possible. The negotiations must be made in Lu or in Me for a definite building-contract. The experiences made during the first several negotiations should show whether the other building-firms could be engaged purposefully. Practically they might also be not used until the barracks are set up. This could possibly be the case by February 1942.

Approximately 4 weeks ago in answer to an inquiry I made the same basic statement of assent for the engagement of Italian building-firms. Since then I have been informed that the Italian Government did not give the building-firms its approval.

signed: DUERRFELD

To the Herren Direktor Dr. AMEROS - Lu  
Building director SANTO-Lu  
Oberingenieur FAUST - .z.  
Director Dr. BUETEFISCH  
Director Dr. SAUER  
Dr. HOEFKE  
Files

Document Book IV a AMEROS  
AMEROS Document No. 416

- 2 -

The accuracy and completeness of the above  
copy is herewith certified.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang JLT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Doc. Meck.

Launa-plant, 5 February 1942

Report on the discussion.

Discussion on 10 January 1942 at the county labor office Kattowitz.

Present:

President Dr. W. ELMANN	-	county labor office Kattowitz
Regierungsrat WITTM	-	" " " "
Regierungsrat R. ETTEN	-	" " " "
Regierungsrat SCHMIDT	-	" " " "

Oberregierungsrat M. LUKKE - labor office Bialitz

Regierungsinspektor Dr. THIEL - Government Kattowitz

Oberingenieur (chief engineer)

FIRST - I.G. - Auschwitz

Dr. GUERSCHKE - " " " "

The Regierungspresident's and our wishes concerning the procuring of labor were conveyed to President Dr. W. ELMANN. He was asked especially to comply with the suggestion of the President, i.e. to return the Upper Silesians and Poles, drafted from Upper Silesia, if necessary by procuring foreigners as replacement.

Dr. W. ELMANN stated that this was impossible, since he had urged this action for years without success at the Reich Ministry of Labor.

He also described the procuring of Poles from the Generalgouvernement as extremely difficult. Dr. W. ELMANN saw a possibility in releasing workers in the district of Saybusch (500 road builders) and in stopping the work with respect to diverting of the Oder river near Ratibor (400 - 500 men). For the rest he could only use the old means of combing out and stopping less essential plants. He considers as a further means our common action of employing foreigners (Frenchmen, Soviet Russians, Italians). A lengthy discussion followed on the importance of the plant Auschwitz as opposed to Heydebreck and Blochhammer. One tried to play off the plants against each other. We unequivocally represented the view expressed in the letter of the Plenipotentiary General for Special Problem relating to Chemical Production (Geba-Chem) to the county labor office (L.L.). It was agreed to bring the demands of the three plants in line with the Geba-Chem. The L.L. promised all possible aid.



especially in procuring the 3000 German workers demanded, so that the output at the building site would not decrease further and in consequence would worry the LAM with further demands.

signed: "UEHRFELD"

To	
Direktor Dr. BUECHERISCH	Direktor Dr. JERNIG -Lu
Direktor Dr. v. STILLEN	Dr. EYMANN -Lu
Direktor Dr. SAUER	Building Direktor SINT -Lu
Direktor Dr. STRASSER	Dr. EISFEL -Lu
Dr. UEHRFELD	Dr. MUEH
Dr. BRUN	
Dr. HUECKE	Chief Engineer FANST -Lz

Certified correct and complete copy.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1945.

Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney at Law

Tue./Wed.

Leuna-plant, 5 February 1942

Report on the discussion

Discussion on 30 January 1942 with the Regierungspresident SPRINGORUM,  
District house (Geyhaus) Kattowitz

Present:

Regierungspresident SPRINGORUM

Regierungsdirektor RIEL,

3 other specialists (Referent),

Count von M. TIECKH.,

Administration County Economy Office  
(LWL) Kattowitz  
District Economy Leader

SCHIRTSCHEN,

Landrat SCHEMELT,

Bielitz

Mayer GUTSCHE,

Luschwitz

Chief Engineer F. F. F.

I.G. - Luschwitz

Dr. SAYELBERG,

" "

Dr. WIERFELD

" "

Purpose of the discussion:

After, two days previously, a discussion had taken place with the gentlemen of the Gebe-Chem (OBENHAUS, Dr. BOCKEL, Dr. BIRTH, PFLUGGER, LINDEMANN), and with the gentlemen of the branch office Breslau (Oberwaurat SCHENKELBERG, Baurat SCHULZ, FISCHER, etc.) on all the existing and to be expected difficulties in Luschwitz, the conference with the Regierungspresident was to be, so to speak, a main appeal before the spring mass allocation on the building site in Luschwitz.

Dr. WIERFELD therefore gave as an introduction a complete survey on the present situation and the state of the construction projects and the plans for the current year. He stated that, according to human judgment, the preparations in all spheres had been made in such a way that construction should progress without friction. The I.G. had done all it could. However we saw serious difficulties in 3 fields:

1. Procuring labor.
2. The progress of construction work in the city (building of dwellings, water supply, and business establishment).
3. Feeding of the staff and of the urban population increasing in proportion to the construction staff.

#### Procuring of labor.

The Regierungspresident was informed that the gentlemen of the Geste-Chen did not believe, that we could have a staff of over 10,000 men by 1 July. The Regierungspresident regretted if this should cause a delay in the construction of the plant and promised to give all possible aid through President Dr. BRUNNEN. He recommended that the LSA should use more of its influence to plead with the Reich Ministry of Labor for the return of the German and Polish workers sent to the Reich from Upper Silesia. For the rest he promised his aid with regard to our suggestion to fetch in Poles from the Generalgouvernement as workers crossing the frontier under 'Greenpapers'. (In the meantime the Regierungspresident established for us the connection with Ministerialrat WILHELM, the President of the Interior Administration in Krakow).

#### Building of dwellings in Auschwitz, etc.

The Regierungspresident stated, that there was no reason why the public utility dwelling association in Auschwitz should not be founded, for purposes of building dwellings within the city. It was now up to the L.S.A. to take the initiative. He will see to it that the association will start its work immediately and begin building the dwellings. Under the influence of Regierungsdirektor THEIL, a realization of the building site project is to be effected by the government taking away suitable workers from other settlement associations and drafting for this purpose.

Nothing more stands in the way of carrying out the draining projects.  
It was decided that the Concentration Camp will take over the  
draining on the left bank of the Sola, also for the part of the  
city on the left bank of the Sola, with its own purification plant.  
Thus the city can now carry out the project for the main part of  
the city, situated on the right bank of the Sola, including the  
emergency settlement.

Ministerialrat ST. ERMANN, of the National Institute in Berlin, Tiergartenstr. 2, has the draining project of the SS, which is supposed to be completely safe for the city and the plant (although the inflow of the drains is planned directly above the confluence of the Hula and Vistula). It is available for our information, upon reference to the Regierungspresident.

Regierungsdirektor THIEL is to release and appoint a gentleman for Auschwitz immediately if no city building councillor (Stadtbaumeister) can be found for Auschwitz.

Food supply.

The data for the increase of the staff are again clearly stated for the Regierungspresident:

Staff on 1 July	15 000 men
of these, prisoners	<u>4 000 "</u>
remain to be fed	11 000 men
In addition thereto: employees	1 000 "
permanent employees	1 000 "
additional men in Auschwitz	<u>500 "</u>
total to be fed	13 500 men.

The correspondingly necessary food data were given to him. The Regierungspresident, the economy representatives and the Landrat acknowledged the data and confirmed that these would correspond to their former plans. In the main, they only saw difficulties in the potato supply, but even for this problem the appropriate measures had already been initiated. For this, see special report by Dr. J. VELSBERG.



Miscellaneous.

The Regierungspresident promised that, on demand, we could temporarily get one or several physicians, if this should prove necessary.

Regierungspresident SCHULT in Sosnowitz, who is Plenipotentiary General for the Employment of Foreigners, was brought to our attention. We were told that there are very good work-shops with tailors, shoemakers, etc. in Sosnowitz, which we could use.

(page 4 of original)

Summary.

It appeared that the conference was very useful, as all present were glad to be informed on the latest developments and to see clearly for themselves what difficulties there were yet to come. The Herr Regierungspraesident (Chief Administrator) gladly took up the suggestion to repeat the conference at specified intervals and proposed to come to Auschwitz himself, accompanied by his co-workers, in 4 - 6 weeks. A valuable result of the conference was the personal appointment of Herr Regierungsdirektor THIEL as referent for all questions concerning the Auschwitz plant. Herr THIEL is now responsible to the Regierungspraesident for clearing away all difficulties.

Distribution:  
See annex

signed: DUTERFIELD

Present:

Direktor Dr. B. BUEFISCH/Direktor Dr. v. STADEN	Direktor Dr. BROS	- Lu
Direktor Dr. BAUCH/Direktor Dr. STADBOCK	Dr. "Y" (M)	- "
D. DUTERFIELD	Construction Manager SANTO	- "
Dr. BAUCH	Dr. FISCHER	- "
Dr. ROFFKE	Dr. VACH	- "
	O.I. (Chief Engineer) FLUST	- Az
	Dr. SAEVLSBERG	- Az

This is to certify the completeness and correctness of the above copy.

Murnberg, 12 February 1948.

Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney-at-Law

I.G. Ludwigshafen

To  
Herr Construction Manager SAITO, in  
Herr Chief Engineer Dr. DIERFELD, via

Your sign Your communication of Our communication of

Our Internal Telephone No.

Our sign Ludwigshafen a. Rh.  
Dr. A./St 21 February 1942

Subject:

After Herr Ministerialrat (Ministerial Counselor) SCHONLEBERN had pointed out to Herr Dr. EXELL that he was prepared to mobilize the Organization TODT for the Auschwitz expansion scheme, I received a number of building projects which Auschwitz had sent to Berlin; I handed them to Herr EXELL for him to pass them on to Herr SCHONLEBERN. It concerns a building project to the amount of 25 million RM, comprising the railroad depot, all military installations, the road system, the drinking water supply, sewerage and the dress heap. This enumeration, I presume, will be in keeping with Herr SCHONLEBERN's ideas, since he is anxious to mobilize an enterprise on a large scale rather than to build up a small secondary organization.

The documents of Messrs. DIERFELD and FAUST were passed on in agreement with Herr BUSTEFISCH.

signed: AEBROS

Plant Az  
Dr. BUSTEFISCH, Dr. v. STADEN  
Dr. SAUER, Dr. STRUBBE  
Dr. DIERFELD  
Dr. BRAUS  
KUNNO/LOETZSCH  
Dr. HOEFER

Dr. AEBROS  
Dr. EXELL  
SAITO  
FAUST  
Dr. DIERFELD  
Dr. VACH

This is to certify the correctness and completeness of the above copy.

Munich, 12 February 1942

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense  
Counsel

I.G. Ludwigshafen

Copy (handwritten)

To

Sao-K (Const. Committee) - Chief Engineer KAISER, ZENDLER,  
VOLLER, TURN, GRAUBERT, RAISCH.

Construction/H

TE/POUCH

Construction/In

Herr Chief Engineer Dr. VACH

Construction Administration Auschwitz.

Armoria plant Iersburg, Construction Department

Herr Chief Engineer Dr. DUTTERFELD, Iersburg

Your signs    Your communication of    Our communication of

Our Internal Telephone  
No. 3406

Our signs  
TA/BAU

Ludwigshafen on Rhine,  
17 July 1942 S/H

Subject:

Outside installations Auschwitz plant.

As per agreement with the section "Expansion of Armaments" of the  
Reich Minister of Armaments and Munitions, the Breslau branch office  
will take charge of the construction of the following outside  
installations in Auschwitz:

- a) plant railroad siding
- b) roads outside the plant
- c) water works
- d) flushing conduct with cascade and sedimenta-  
tion bed
- e) waste dump
- f) production and processing of gravel
- g) mining plant of the CWH (not including the  
cross-sectional expansion)

It says in this agreement: "The Armament-Construction administration  
will receive from the I.G. all plans and blueprints in time to

Document Book IVa ABROS  
Q. Document No. 420  
Exhibit No.

(page 1 of original, cont'd.)

take the work in hand. By making these documents (drawings and calculations) "approved for construction" the I.G.



(page 2 of original)

agrees that the Armament-Construction administration should proceed with the respective part of the construction".

We therefore ask you to mark all drawings which are being released to the Armament-Construction administration for completion of the respective construction on the building site: "Approved for construction".

signed: SAUTO

This is to certify the correctness and completeness of the above copy.

Nurnberg, 12 February 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant Defense Counsel

Construction-X to be circulated

Stamp:

23 August 1942 V.III  
1428

Handwritten  
initial

and returned to  
(handwritten)

Stamp: TA/By

I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
Plant Auschwitz OS.

Auschwitz, 17 August 1942  
Fet/Go.

Herrn: Herrn (Construction chiefs) Santo, In  
Dr. BISFELD, "  
Dr. KAGE, "  
Obering. KAISER, "

Obering. (Senior Engineer) Dr. DUEFFELD, sz (Auschwitz)  
" v. ION, sz (Munich)  
" Dr. ROEPKE, "  
Dipl. Ing. SUTTER, "

Subject: assignment of a construction management of the branch  
office Breslau of the Department Armament-improvement  
(Werkzeugmaschinen) of the Reich Minister for Armament  
and Munitions.

The above mentioned construction management has, as is known,  
taken over the following parts of construction:

Water works with inflow-constructions and pump-works,  
Factory railway station,  
Lubricant pump,  
Production and treatment of silica (Kies),  
Stone quarry Troisdorf,  
Warten plant and lately,  
Barrack camps 3, 4, 5 and 6.

In order to ensure that the Rne (armament)-construction management  
- as we call it - will receive the copies of all the correspondence,  
we request, that in future you forward the entire correspondence  
in duplicate, so that we can always send one copy to the Armament-  
construction management.

For your information we forward the address of the Armament-con-  
struction management as follows:

Branch Office of the Reich Minister for Armament and  
Munitions (Department Armament improvement).

Department for New Construction Auschwitz

AUSCHWITZ O/S. III  
P.O. Box 304  
Telephone: Auschwitz 151

The office of the armament-construction management is located  
near the west exit of Dorys

The arm-construction management is also connected by direct wire  
with the branch office Breslau.

Construction-Management AG (Auschwitz)

signed: FAUST

17 handwritten initials (Abzeichnungen).

Certified true and complete copy

Regensburg, 12 February 1948.

Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney-at-Law

A f f i d a v i t

I, the undersigned Otto BRÜSEL, residing in Eilenburg, Ziegelstr. 1/1, after having been duly warned that I render myself liable to punishment if I make a false deposition, herewith declare under oath that my statement is the truth and has been made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice of East-Germany.

I have not been a member of the NSDAP or of any of its organizations, as confirmed by Sprachkammer decision of the Russian State Ministry of 12 April 1947, file No. 2700 H. 334, for the district of Gross-Gera.

With regard to my personal observations and experiences in Auschwitz I make the following declaration:

- 1.) From February 1943 up to January 1945 I was chief building inspector for the construction of the power station under contract with the I.G. of Berlin.
- 2.) On the building site under my supervision forced laborers and prisoners were employed besides German workmen. The foreign workers were housed in huts, each nation separated from the other. The equipment of these huts was entirely unobjectionable from a social, hygienic and sanitary point of view. The workers were sternly treated. The cooks in the camp-kitchens were, as far as possible, nationals of the respective groups. The food was the same as for the German employees. To cope with the tremendous demand for food supplies, the I.G. had erected an exemplary organization which functioned splendidly.

(page 2 of original)

A large community-hall accommodating about 1500 to 2000 people was at the disposal of all inmates for all sorts of entertainments (cinema, variety shows and concerts). Frequently closed entertainments were arranged for the different nationalities. I remember quite well some evening entertainments exclusively arranged for the Frenchmen, Italians, Ukrainians or Czechs. We of the KZ often placed a fair proportion of our tickets for German entertainments at the disposal of Frenchmen or Czechs in our employ.

The work done by the foreign workers in connection with the assembly of the power-station was exactly the same as performed by the German workmen. The same applies to sufficiently qualified KZ inmates. They were given a midday meal which was brought to them by a mobile canteen. I am unable to report on their accommodation, because no outsider was allowed to enter the camp.

For instance, we had a KZ inmate, Dr. jur Felix HIES of Brauns, working in our store-room who kept book of the in- and outgoing materials. Dr. HIES always guaranteed his correct and good treatment and he offered to testify to this effect.

Then one day I announced to my electric fitters in the 30,000 volt high tension plant including some Czechs and Frenchmen, that they would have to work temporarily also on Sundays, some of the other KZ inmates



(page 3 of original)

approached me and said: "Chief, could'nt you talk and employ us also for Sunday work?" Their request was granted and an application for KZ inmates was made through the I.G. labor allocation Bureau, as the firms could not contact the labor camp directly. Normally inmates were not used for Sunday work and only on special application. Plausible reasons had to be given, though, because KZ inmates were not supposed to be assigned for Sunday work as mentioned already.

Frenchman of our team got ill and was taken to the Kottowitz hospital where he died a few days later. My head-storkeeper visited him several times during his illness and brought him something as is usual when visiting the sick. The expenses for the funeral, for having the Requiem Mass said, etc., were paid by the firm building the dam. After the funeral in Kottowitz, which I and my head storkeeper had attended, the spokesman of the French group thanked us personally and expressed his appreciation for everything we had done for the deceased. I can not give any name, unfortunately.

I would like to add in this connection that the Croche had worked already for the '39 and hence under my supervision, during the time of my activity in the construction of the power-station 2 for the Reichswerke in Stenstadt near Ruda. When I had finished work at the Reichswerke, these men asked me to take them along with me to Meechwitz, which I did. Towards the end, when, owing to the war situation, the construction work was abandoned and the foreign workers were sent home a few days before the Germans were allowed to leave the place,

(page 4 of original)

The Frenchmen and the Czechs sent a delegation to me to say good-bye and to express their thanks and appreciation for the correct treatment they had enjoyed the whole time. The Czech workers were granted, in addition to the normal home-leave, two days extra leave with full pay for each Sunday they had had to work.

It is also worth mentioning what the I.G. and consequently I myself have done in order to prevent accidents on the building site. For the protection which was guaranteed by these resources was of great benefit to all employed on the site, whether foreigners or Germans.

When the steel constructions for the super-pressure boiler plant, the turbine power plant etc., building a (height about 35 meters) were put up, the 12 ironmen who were employed in this work together with Germans, were provided with felt sandals on my initiative to prevent them falling off as they only wore wooden shoes. Care was taken also that the ironmen always had to wear safety belts when mounting the iron structures. No falls with fatal result nor other severe accidents occurred during the extensive work of fitting these steel constructions.

Another of the I.G. social arrangements was a large shoe repair shop where the whole working staff, Germans and foreigners alike, had their shoes repaired. Further, there was a dental station attended by two dentists, where the teeth of the Germans as well as the foreign workers were looked after without discrimination.

(page 5 of original)

Besides there was a large and fully equipped first aid section for the treatment of minor accidents etc. All these arrangements had the special attention of the works management.

3.) All German employees and workmen were strictly forbidden to lay hands on the ex inmates and this order was always stressed upon when the building program was discussed. I have never seen that the SS-guards mistreated, whipped or hit the inmates, but such things were said to have happened.

4.) Complaints from the circle of inmates have never come to my knowledge, since it was forbidden to talk to them. When there was an occasion to speak to them then they never mentioned anything concerning their personal lot.

Lilienburg, 18 August 1947 (signed): Otto WITTMER

Certified true signature of Chief Engineer Otto WITTMER of Lilienburg, Magdeburg 1, identified by registration card issued by the Superintendent of Lilienburg on 19 November 1946, No. 19386:

No. 730 of document register for 1947

Lilienburg, 18 August 1947

(signed): signature

(Notary Public)

Stamp:

Max WITTMER

Notary Public

in the District

of the District Court of

Speyer, 6-10

Certified true copy of the above document:

Flensburg, 12 February 1948

(signed): Dr. Willard MITCHELL

Assistant Defense

Counsel.

AFFIDAVIT

I, Herbert WEITZEL, Diplom Ingenieur, resident of Grossmannsdorf near Nuernberg, have been first cautioned that I render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement corresponds to the truth and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

From September 1941 till January 1945 I was head of the Auschwitz branch of the Working Partnership Brichs-Bardubitzki, Breslau. This working partnership began with its work on the big building site of the I.G. as early as 15 June 1941. In the period from June till September I came personally only twice from Breslau to Auschwitz, especially so during that time only the preparatory work and the laying of the foundations for the cantonments of the workers were carried out.

During my activity in Auschwitz I could, of course, gain a deep insight into the happenings on the building sites as I satisfied myself of the progress of work almost daily on the spot and had to clarify currently technical questions with the executives of the I.G.

In order to house as quickly as possible the workers who were sent to Auschwitz, the I.G. built cantonments with double-walled huts and central-heating. An infirmary was set up right in the beginning, the camp received wash-rooms, lavatories and a sewer-system. The workers were fed in each camp by a separate kitchen.

(page 2 of original)

To meet any complaints concerning food, various employees of the firms engaged there, were given passes entitling them to inspect the camp-kitchens. I had myself such a pass which was valid for certain periods of time, each time for a different camp.

My inspections mainly covered Camp II which, for the major part, was inhabited by Frenchmen, Camp III in which Russian workmen were housed and Camp V in which were Poles.

There were hardly ever any complaints concerning food.

Prisoners of the Concentration Camp were inter-housed in Camp IV who themselves designated it as "Camp of Jews."

The prisoners themselves said they liked to work on the building sites, to get out from the Concentration Camp.

At first, the food was fed by the Concentration Camp Administration; later, however, by the I.G. itself. There can be no doubt that, after the I.G. had taken over, rations were better than those in the Concentration Camp. One could judge this already by the physical appearance of the prisoners.

The assignment for labor of prisoners and alien workers was handled by the I.G. labor office. The laborer assigned the workers to the contract firms upon their request.



(page 3 of original)

The prisoner-details were led by capos (prisoner foremen). At the beginning, in 1941, it frequently happened that prisoners were beaten by them. I do not know whether this was approved or ordered by the Concentration Camp administration; on the part of the I.G. and of the firms, however, these methods were strongly objected to. I am convinced that it was only due to the intervention of the I.G. executives that this method of treatment soon ceased and subsequently occurred but in a few individual instances which had to be ascribed to the personal attitude of some capos.

In order to increase the efficiency of the prisoners which was a terribly poor one, the I.G. building management envisaged all possible alleviations for them, and special allowances in the form of shortened work-hours, additional food, etc., were granted.

I mention the following example to show that the prisoners were extremely grateful for these special privileges:

For the excavation work for a sewer-system in Gump, I the I.G. assigned a prisoner detail of 30 men to us. Our foreman had procured for these men a daily special meal, partly from meane of the firm. The result was that the detail on their own initiative excavated 5 cubic meter per person a day, an output hardly ever surpassed by the best civilian worker.

The alien workers were allowed to move freely within and without the dwelling-camps. This applied also to the "Eastern workers."

The Eastern workers were also allowed to occupy themselves at liberty to their cultural tastes, they rehearsed plays for the stage among their lives (dance and musical performances) and performed them in the big recreation hall.

(page 4 of original)

The recreation hall, which by order of the proprietor was delivered and erected already early in 1942 by the firm I represented, was used by the workers to take their meals there and to stage their cultural performances.

The I.G. engaged theatrical shows, Vaudeville shows and symphony-orchestras for performances to which not only the German but also the foreign workers were admitted. Special performances were staged for the Eastern workers, for instance also on the occasion of the guest performances of the Cherkow Quart.

These performances were eagerly attended. The Uebischwitz motion picture theater was likewise open to all alien workers, as far as I knew without exception.

I must mention furthermore that, for the purpose of increasing efficiency on the building site, efficiency-wages were introduced in 1943 by order of the authorities.

At the request of the I.G. building management that we should work out a corresponding and expedient form of implementation, we suggested a system of progressive wages (Anstufungssystem) which took account of both the physical and other individual fitness of the men and which, at least with our firm, led to a full success for all parties concerned, that is to say for the workers, the firm and the proprietor. Some labor gangs attained additional wages of 20 to 100 per cent. Lower wages occurred but seldom and were hardly below what was bearable. The workers were very content with this system.

Grossdanzdorf, 14 August 1947.

signed: Herbert ULITZKA.

(page 5 of original)

Certificate as to Signature.

Herr Herbert ULITZKE, Diplom-Ingenieur in Gertheim a.H.,  
signed the above document today in my presence. He proved his  
identity by producing his identity-card B 16 163.

Gertheim, 14 August 1947.

Notary Office Gertheim.

signed: H.D.M.

Justizrat als Notary.

Rubber stamp:  
Notary Office Gertheim

Value: 200 d.  
Fee according No. 39 NO 2 121

Rubber stamp and Bill-stamp.

I certify that this is a literal and correct copy of the  
above document.

Nürnberg, 12 February 1948.

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang LT  
Assistant Legal Counsel.

Document Book IV a MICROS

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

We hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document Book IV a MICROS.

Paul E. GROFF, Civ. No. D-397 975 . . . . .  
Cover, Index

Gerhard FISCHER, Civ. No. 17 397 . . . . .  
Pages 2 - 4

Karl GETTLE, Civ. No. 45 572 . . . . .  
Pages 5 - 8, 47 - 48

Dr. Siegfried FAUER, Civ. No. 1443 415 . . . . .  
Pages 9 - 13

Hildegard E. FRIEDL, Civ. No. 17 415 . . . . .  
Pages 14 - 16, 24 - 28, 49 - 58

Alfred OBERMAIER, Civ. No. 20 192 . . . . .  
Pages 29 - 32, 43 - 46

Frederic L. PERL, Civ. No. D-397 943 . . . . .  
Pages 33 - 37

Hanna Marie BIERER, Civ. No. D-397 989 . . . . .  
Pages 38 - 42

Ursula RUDMANN, Civ. No. 20 130 . . . . .  
Pages 19 - 23

# Employment of Labor in I.G. Works at Auschwitz

at the end of 1941

**OKW**  
supplies  
P.O.W.'s

**REICH MINISTRY OF LABOR**  
acts as intermediary for the supply of free and con-  
scripted German Workers and all Foreign Workers

**WVHA SS**  
Concentration  
Camp inmates

**GEBEHEM BERLIN**

The Auschwitz Works is a Plant which is supervised by the GEBEHEM

Regional and Local Labor Office

Employment Bureau for I.G. Auschwitz

Technical Supervision by  
I.G. Farben and Rüstungsausbau (Speer)

Labor Under  
I.G. Control

Labor under Control of Con-  
struction and Assembly Firms

Construction Site I.G. Works Auschwitz

0 1 2 3 4 km  
1cm = 3000 workers



# Employment of Labor in I.G. Works at Auschwitz

at the end of 1942

**OKW**  
supplies  
P.O.W's

**REICH MINISTRY OF LABOR**  
acts as intermediary for the supply of free and  
conscripted German Workers and all foreign Workers

**WVHA SS**  
Concentration  
Camp inmates

**GEBEHEM BERLIN**

The Auschwitz Works is a Plant which is supervised by the GEBEHEM

Regional and Local Labor Office

Employment Bureau for I.G. Auschwitz

Technical Supervision by  
I.G. Farben and Rüstungsbausau (Speer)

Labor under  
I.G. Control

Labor under Control of  
Construction and Assembly Firms

Construction Site I.G. Works Auschwitz

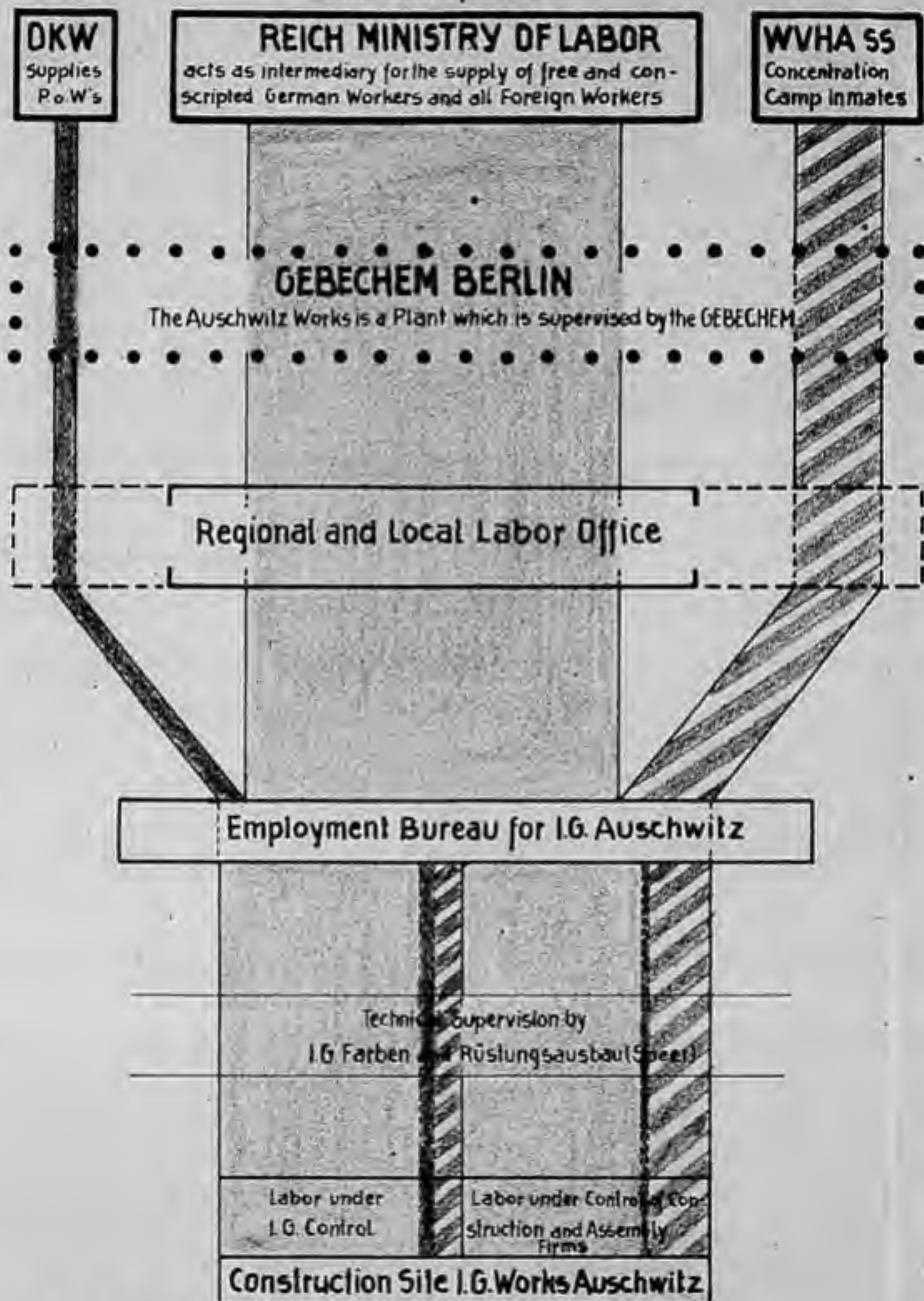
0 1 2 3 4cm

1cm = 3000 workers

# Employment of Labor in I.G. Works at Auschwitz

GA-Document No. 424 (Cont.)

at the end of 1943

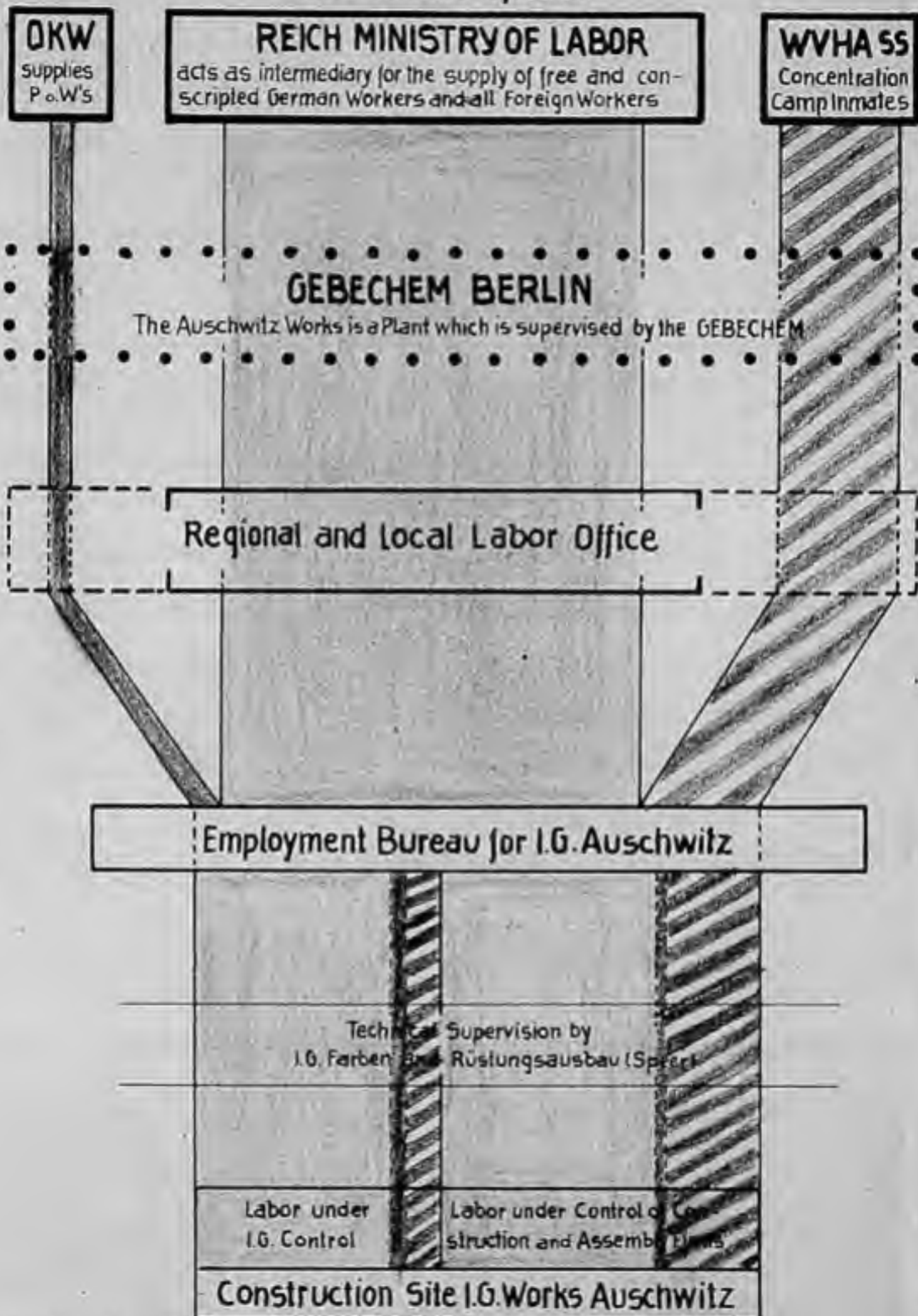


0 1 2 3 4 cm  
1cm = 3000 workers

# Employment of Labor in I.G. Works at Auschwitz

CA-Document No 424 (Cont.)

in the Summer of 1944



0 1 2 3 4cm

1cm = 3000 Workers



CASE 6 - TRIBUNAL VI

D E F E N S E

Document No. CA-425 (Ambros Exhibit No. 109 )

DESCRIPTION: Chart of State and Party Offices  
supervising Auschwitz.

Never distributed

Case 6  
Defense

Tribunal VI

CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK IV B

for

Otto A. BROB  
Auschwitz Plant  
Construction

Submitted by  
the Defense Counsel

Karl Hoffmann,  
Attorney-at-law

*Karg*





Table of Contents to Document Book IV B  
for Otto A M B R O S

Doc.No.	Exh.No:	C o n t e n t s :	Page:
OA-42'5	a	<p>Affidavit, Wilhelm Montpeller to</p> <p>1.) the affidavit of the former prisoner Philippe Pfeffer, born on 19 December 1919 at Lemberg, Poland, Doc. MI 12384, Exh.No. 1517</p> <p>2.) the testimony given by Pfeffer on 17 November 1947 before the Military Tribunal # VI at Nuremberg about the visit of Dr. Otto Ambros in the Aldol-laboratory. Pages 3934- 3946 of the German transcript.</p> <p>With regard to the conversation with Otto Ambros described by Pfeffer, Montpeller, who was present at that conversation, makes the following statement:</p> <p>"On a Sunday morning in December 1944, it has been the 10 December, Dr. Ambros came, on the occasion of an inspection of the Aldol factory, with several gentlemen into the laboratory. On this Sunday morning too, Herr Pfeffer was busy with cooking. I had the cooking vessels removed beforehand, and carried some chemical work to be done.</p> <p>Dr. Ambros was particularly interested in our new Aldol process. On this occasion, Dr. Ambros had a talk with Herr Pfeffer. Among other things, he told him that surely it would let it on be a great advantage to Herr Pfeffer to have worked in such a laboratory. Dr. Ambros talked a few minutes with him. Herr Pfeffer was obviously pleased by being so kindly treated by Dr. Ambros.</p> <p>A remark by Dr. Ambros - or words to the effect "You are lucky, you are likely to get out of this camp alive", not being a Jew", I did not hear. I was present during all of that talk.</p>	

Table of Contents to Document Book IV B  
for Otto AMBROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.:	C o n t e n t s	Page:
---------	----------	-----------------	-------

In particular, it is not true that Dr. Ambros addressed Herr Pfeffer by "thou". Immediately after Dr. Ambros had left the laboratory, Herr Pfeffer expressed his pleasure and surprise about the kind and nice manner of Dr. Ambros' talk with him.

1-6

OA-426

Affidavit of Dr. Hermann Spaenig, former superior of Philippe Pfeffer. Spaenig testifies to  
1.) the affidavit of the former prisoner Philippe Pfeffer, born on 18 December 1919 at Lemberg, Poland, Doc. VI 12384, Exh. 1517,

2.) the testimony given by Pfeffer on 17 November 1947 before the Military Tribunal / VI at Nuremberg about the visit by Dr. Ambros at the Aldel laboratory. Pages 3934-3946 of the German transcript.

Two letters from Pfeffer to Spaenig are attached to the affidavit. These letters show that a relationship of confidence existed between Spaenig and Pfeffer.

Because of that relationship of confidence Pfeffer told Spaenig the particulars of his meeting with Ambros, about which Pfeffer made the affidavit at 1.) and testified at 2.) Spaenig states that Pfeffer described him his meeting with Ambros in a very detailed manner. On this occasion Pfeffer was filled with gratitude toward Ambros. Pfeffer did not mention in the least that he now additionally alleges against Ambros although, in Spaenig's opinion, he could surely have done so if it had then been the case.

Table of Contents to the Document Book IV B  
for Otto A. B. B. B.

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
----------	----------	-----------------	------

Spaenig goes on writing in his affidavit:  
"In order to characterize the treatment  
Philippe Pfeffer enjoyed in the Aldol  
laboratory Auschwitz, I should like to  
mention a further incident.

The first day of his work in the Aldol  
laboratory Philippe Pfeffer came to see  
me in my office excitedly, with broken  
glass, and complained that he had just been  
beaten up by his block warden, because this  
man grudged him the new good position.  
Whereupon I and the plant foreman Mont-  
pellier, whom Pfeffer attacks in his  
affidavit III 12348 (Exh. 1517), took that  
block warden to task, forbidding him, once  
and for all, any excesses against his comrades.  
This intervention was the more obvious for  
me, as Dr. Labros had, previous to my trans-  
fer to Auschwitz, impressed me at Ludwig-  
shafen, to continue to cultivate and  
preserve the spirit of the Deutsche Anilin  
& Soda-fabrik, which was, within the I.G.  
exemplary in technical, social and  
generally human respects, also in my  
new place of work in the East, where  
conditions surely would be more difficult.

7-13

Marl, 30 January 1948

Affidavit

I, the undersigned Wilhelm Montpellier, born on 19 October 1910 at Wiesbaden, having been warned that I should render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit, declare in lieu of oath that my statement is the truth and has been made in order to be submitted as an evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice at Nuremberg, Germany, for Case VI. There have been presented to me:

- 1.) The affidavit of the former prisoner Philippe Pfeffer, born on 19 December 1919 at Lembé 5, Poland,
- 2.) The testimony made by Pfeffer on 17 November before the Military Tribunal VI at Nuremberg, concerning the visit of Dr. Ambros in the Aldol laboratory.

On 1 June 1944 I came to Auschwitz to the I.G. plant. I was occupied as a foreman in the Aldol plant. I remained in this position until 21 January 1945, when the plant was evacuated because of the invasion of the Russians. During the whole time I was neither employed in the solution room (Loesungsraum) nor in the aldehyde factory.

The statement made by the witness Pfeffer in his affidavit, on page 3 under item 5, that he had worked for me in the solution room, as well as his rectification, when testifying before the Tribunal on 17 November 1947, that he did not work for me in the solution room, but in the aldehyde factory, are incorrect.

( signed: ) Wilhelm Montpellier

Herr Pfeffer came into my section in summer 1944, I cannot recollect the exact time. Then, he was employed as a chemist, and had to train other civilian workers. On the very first day, when Pfeffer was employed with me, he complained about having been beaten up by a prisoner foreman, as far as I know, a Jew. His glasses were broken. I intervened together with Dr. Spaenig on his behalf, and saw to it that Herr Pfeffer was not to be checked by any foreman in future.

On the occasion of this incident, Herr Pfeffer told me, replying to a straight question on my part, that he was a half-Jew himself. Thus, I was, from the beginning, aware of the fact that Herr Pfeffer was no Aryan. This was, incidentally, also known to Dr. Spaenig. We often discussed this. Thus, the statement made by Herr Pfeffer on page 3 of his Affidavit of 13 November under subsect. 5 that I once told him: "You are lucky, you are not a Jew, the Jews will all explode (gehen alle in die Luft)", is absolutely meaningless. I was, from the very beginning, aware of the fact that Herr Pfeffer was no Aryan; quite apart from the fact that the goings-on in <sup>L.S.</sup> Buchenwald concentration camp became known to me only after May 1945.

Herr Pfeffer was the only prisoner in our plant. He was, both by Dr. Spaenig and by me, treated in a way which can only be called a relation of comradeship.



He received from both of us part of our lunches every day. At his request, I also allowed him to come to the laboratory every Sunday, and he profited from the opportunity by doing some cooking for himself and other prisoners, whom he befriended, some foodstuff he had purchased on the black market.

Herr Pfeffer only worked as a chemist. He had only to go to the glass store twice a week, in order to collect glassware, and/or chemicals, which were continuously used in the laboratory. During my time, however, they were not in cases, but rather single objects which were fetched in baskets. For the collection he had a car available and some people from the plant. On these occasions, Herr Pfeffer was mainly sent out as an expert, in order to find out what things were in the glass store.

1944  
At about 20 December 1944 Herr Pfeffer was arrested by the SS. The reason for the arrest was, as turned out later on, the following: Herr Pfeffer had sold some alcohol at a very high price to a French civilian worker, whose name was, as far as I remember, Dreboanaud, and who likewise worked with me in the laboratory. But the liquor was bad; it was sort of a brandy which Herr Pfeffer had fabricated himself out of spirit he had got from the plant. Thereupon, the purchaser reported Herr Pfeffer for fraud.

that the SS did with Herr Pfeffer we could judge. I only know that Dr. Spaenig assisted Herr Pfeffer. I myself let him surreptitiously have some ration cards which I had received from Dr. Spaenig, through a Jewish prisoner, Klaus Froehlich; I suppose, Froehlich changed them into food. Through this prisoner he smuggled out secret notes, in which he asked for assistance.

Herr Pfeffer was very efficient in scrounging, and there was altogether a very lively black-marketing going on among the prisoners.

On a Sunday morning, in December 1944, it may have been the 10 December, Dr. Ambros came, on the occasion of an inspection of the Aldol factory, into the laboratory with some gentlemen. On this Sunday morning too, Herr Pfeffer was busy with cooking. I had the cooking vessels removed beforehand and ordered some chemical work to be done. Dr. Ambros was particularly interested in our new Aldol process. On this occasion Dr. Ambros had a conversation with Herr Pfeffer. He told him, among other things, that it would surely be of great advantage to Herr Pfeffer later on to have been able to work in such a laboratory. Pfeffer was obviously pleased about being treated so kindly by Dr. Ambros. A remark by Dr. Ambros - or any words to that effect; : "You are lucky, you are likely to get out of this camp alive, not being a Jew" - I did not hear. I was present at the whole of that conversation. In particular, it is not true that Dr. Ambros addressed Herr Pfeffer by "thou". Immediately after Dr. Ambros had left

the laboratory, Herr Pfeffer expressed his joy and surprise about the kind<sup>and</sup> nice manner in which a man like Dr. Ambros had talked to him.

The allegation made by Herr Pfeffer under subsection 7 of his affidavit, that I had been attached to Dr. Saenig as a spy, is quite preposterous, as, incidentally, results from my fore-going deposition. I had exclusively to perform my technical work as a foreman, and had nothing whatsoever to do with political agencies.

I can really not explain the fact that Herr Pfeffer, who was so well treated by me and expressed his thanks for that to Dr. Saenig after the war, now operates with unambiguous lies.

At that time I had no knowledge of gas-killings of Jews and other concentration camp prisoners being carried out in the neighbouring Auschwitz concentration camp. Nor has Herr Pfeffer made any remarks to that effect to me. Of those things I only learned after the collapse.

(signed:) Wilhelm Montpollier

The fore-going signature of Wilhelm Montpollier, resident at Marl, Kreis Becklinghausen, executed before me, attorney-at-law Hans Surholt, is herewith certified and attested by me.

Marl, 30 January 1948

(signed:) Surholt,  
attorney-at-law

Certified true copy.

Nuernberg, 25 February 1948

(signed:) Paul Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-law

Affidavit.

I, Dr. Hermann S p a e n i g, residing in Ludwigshafen a. Rh., Industriestrasse 5, have first been duly warned that my statement must be in accordance with the truth and that it is made for the purpose of being submitted in evidence to

Military Tribunal VI in Nuernberg, Germany.

In 1938 I entered the Main Laboratory of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft's plant in Ludwigshafen a. Rh. as a chemist and worked there as a chemist until March 1943. I went to Auschwitz in March 1943 and remained there with occasional interruptions until 21 January 1945. I am now employed as chemist again in Ludwigshafen a. Rh.

I am familiar with the statements of the former prisoner, Philippe Pfoffer, in his affidavit NI-12384 (Exhibit No. 1517) and in his examination as a witness of the Prosecution on 17 November 1947 (pages 3934-3946 of the German transcript). I have the following remarks to make concerning them:

Pfoffer stated that Dr. Ambros said, after he had discovered that Pfoffer was a Frenchman and not a Jew, that Pfoffer was lucky and very probably would get out of the camp alive.

I can state nothing directly concerning this conversation between Dr. Ambros and Philippe Pfoffer, since I was not present during this conversation.



- 2 -

However, I returned a few days later and learned from  
Philippe Pfeffer that Dr. Ambros had conversed with him in  
a very friendly way.

Pfeffer emphasized what a pleasant feeling it had been for him  
when Dr. Ambros respected him as a prisoner and offered him  
encouragement.

I asked Pfeffer at the time what Dr. Ambros had talked  
to him about. He described his conversation with Dr. Ambros  
to me in the greatest detail, while still under <sup>the</sup> impression of the  
happiness which this conversation had given him.

I can still remember this description very well today. I know  
perfectly well that in spite of his detailed description of the  
conversation between him and Dr. Ambros Pfeffer did not  
make the slightest remark that would let one even  
suppose that Dr. Ambros said something to Pfeffer at  
that time which was similar to what Pfeffer declared  
today.

Pfeffer had the greatest confidence in me, as is shown by the  
letters which I have appended at the close of my affidavit.

If Dr. Ambros had said something such as Pfeffer declares today, then  
Pfeffer would certainly have informed me of it at the time, to.

He would certainly have told me about the fact that Dr.  
Ambros had offered him encouragement because he was a  
Frenchman and not a Jew as a very significant  
piece of information.

- 8 -

- 2 -

However, during his conversation at the time Pfeffer was exclusively under the impression that Dr. Ambros was, without any reservation, a very nice man and would have informed me of, or permitted me to guess at, any limitation in Dr. Ambros' estimation of him.

Nor can I believe that Dr. Ambros possessed any knowledge at all which would have entitled him to make such a remark.

I myself did not learn about what actually occurred in Auschwitz Concentration Camp until after the war.

Dr. Ambros, who came to Auschwitz about four times a year for one day at a time, or at the most two days, when important technical problems of the Buna branch of the Auschwitz plant had to be decided on the spot, could not, in my opinion, entertain any reflections as to whether a Jewish or a French prisoner had the greater prospects of getting out of the camp, in any case, on the basis of his knowledge of Auschwitz conditions.

I further declare that in his affidavit NI-12384 (Exhibit No. 1517) and in his examination on 17 November 1947 Philippo Pfeffer described his impressions from the time of his work in Auschwitz differently in essential points from what he felt at the time. As an appendix to my affidavit I am attaching an accurate photostatic copy of a letter from Philippo Pfeffer to his wife dated 24 September 1944.

- 4 -

Philippe Pfeffer gave me the original letter in an open envelope in Auschwitz at the time with the request to forward it to his wife when opportunity should offer. This opportunity did not present itself until after the war and in view of the developments which had occurred in the meantime I considered it advisable at the time to retain a photostatic copy.

In Appendix 2 I am attaching to my affidavit the accurate photostatic copy of a letter to me from Philippe Pfeffer of 2 March 1947, in which he writes me, among other things: "... Do you know that the two Frenchmen who informed me to the Plant Guards have been sentenced to 10 and 15 years at hard labor? They thought I was dead long ago....."

I should like to mention another occurrence as an example of the treatment which Philippe Pfeffer enjoyed under us in the Auschwitz aldel laboratory.

On the first day of his work in the aldel laboratory Philippe Pfeffer came to me in my office highly excited with his glasses broken and complained to me that he had just been struck by his Block Senior because the latter grudged him his fine new job. Thereupon I and Plant Foreman Montpellier, who is attacked by Philippe Pfeffer in his affidavit NI-12394 (Exhibit No. 1517), called this Block Senior on the carpet and forbade him once and for all to practise any mistreatment against his comrades. This act of intervention was all the more <sup>a</sup> matter of course for me, since

- 5 -

before my transfer to Auschwitz. Dr. Ambros had warned me seriously in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., to observe and cherish the spirit of the Badische Anilin und Sodafabrik, which <sup>was</sup> exemplary throughout the I.G. in a professional, social and generally humane respect, in my new place of work in the East, too, where conditions were certainly more difficult.

Appendices:

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 25 February 1948

signed: Dr. Hermann Spaeneg

The above signature of Dr. Hermann Spaeneg, residing in Ludwigshafen a.Rh. Industriestrasse 6, executed before me, Fritz G. Naumann, Assistant Defense Counsel, is hereby certified and witnessed by me.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 25 February 1948

signed: Fritz Naumann

Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the preceding copy is hereby certified.

Muernberg, 26 February 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann

Attorney at Law

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

19 April 1946

We, Robert Hoffmann and John B. Robinson hereby  
certify that we are duly appointed translators for  
the German and English languages and that the  
above is a true and correct translation of the  
Document Book 4 B Ambros.

Robert Hoffmann  
20162

John B. Robinson  
X-046350



*Defense  
Case 6*

TRIBUNAL VI  
CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK V A

for

Otto AMBROS

GENLONF works.

Submitted by  
Defense Counsel  
Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney at Law.

*Engl*



Index of Contents of Document Book V A  
for Otto A W B R O S

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
QA-501		<p>Letter dated 5 July 1938 from Army High Command to Bayerische Stickstoffwerke A.G.</p> <p>Preliminary information from OKH re: TROSTBERG.</p> <p>Project: Contract No. 9/VII-247-0102/38.</p> <p>"According to our previous letter the Army High Command has placed an order with you for the erection of the following plants:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Diglycol plant with a capacity of 500 tons a month</li> <li>b) Triodiglycol - (oxol plant) with a capacity of 600 tons a month</li> <li>c) the plants necessary for the production of ethylene chlorhydrate and ethylene oxide</li> <li>d) Construction of a warehouse with a storage capacity of 5000 t diglycol.</li> </ul> <p>As you have already been informed verbally, the Army High Command undertakes the execution and the financing of all plants necessary for the entire TROSTBERG project.</p> <p>Consequently this preliminary information is supplemented in that you herewith receive the order to erect all preliminary-, auxiliary and ancillary plants which are part of the above mentioned building project.</p> <p>As you have repeatedly been informed verbally, notwithstanding the fact that this skeleton agreement is not yet valid, in the interest of the country's defense the erection of the plants which are part of the entire Trostberg project must be continued with the greatest possible speed. If possible they must be ready for use by 1 April 1940."</p>	1 - 3

Index of Contents of Document Book V A

for Otto AMBROS

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
OA-502		Letter dated 26 March 1948 from Army High Command to Bayerische Stickstoffwerke A.G. Building and Installation Orders for VI-Plant TROSTBERG. "The Reich has delegated to the Montan the responsibility for this enterprise. You have undertaken to finish the plant completely under the conditions <sup>quoted</sup> below; .." "The chemical apparatus of the plant will be designed and constructed on your behalf mainly by the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktien-gesellschaft." "The buildings are to be completed with the greatest possible speed."	4 - 14
OA-7		Diagram of "PLANNING AND CONSTRUCTION OF REICH-OWNED CHEMICAL PLANTS" of the Montanindustriewerke G.m.b.H., drawn up by Otto AMBROS.	15
OA-503		Letter dated 28 January 1948 from MONTANINDUSTRIEWERKE G.m.b.H., Berlin-Charlottenburg. "Remarks on the Diagram: - PLANNING & CONSTRUCTION OF REICH-OWNED CHEMICAL PLANTS." (OA-7)	16 - 18
OA-504		List dated 26 January 1948, from MONTANINDUSTRIEWERKE G.m.b.H., Berlin-Charlottenburg, of "Mining plants in the chemical field with special reference to their relationship with I.G."	19 - 24
OA-505		Affidavit of Dr. Heinz SCHMID-LOSSBERG dated 27 January 1948. Schmid-Lossberg was, temporarily, manager of the MONTANINDUSTRIE-WERKE G.m.b.H. On 23 August 1943 I.G. refused to purchase	

Index of Contents of Document Book V A  
for Otto A M B R O S

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
		the Reich-owned mining plants leased by it on the following grounds: "The Reich-owned works offered are "shadow works" which produce strictly armament goods, and which can be operated more or less during war. The Reich is the sole placer of contracts and, at the same time, sole buyer and consumer. The capacities, which are too great for peace time production, and manufacture for armament purposes only do not fit into the production program of I.G. Farben. Finally, I.G. Farben are an A.G., thus a profit earning company supposed to pay their share-holders interest; in contrast, the returns of the Reich-owned works with an approximate average of 0.2% is wholly insufficient."	25 - 27
OA-506		Affidavit by Dr. Gustav LILTHEY, Legal Department, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, dated 16 January, 1948. Since 1942 Lilthey has been employed particularly on legal problems connected with IURAMIL G.m.b.H. Of the purpose and activity of the Iuramil G.m.b.H. he states the following: "The company was set up exclusively for the purpose of carrying out various building projects for the Reich, the technical planning, design and execution of which I.G. had to assume for the years 1940 and after as stipulated by agreement, but the execution of which I.G. Farben themselves did not wish to undertake for certain reasons."	

Index of Contents of Document Book V A  
for Otto AMBROS

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
		"Transfer to these building projects to Lurenil had, in addition to the purpose of distance, the great advantage: administratively for I.G. that thereby a clear separation of their own extensive building projects from those specially carried out at the expense of the Reich was achieved. This advantage applied not only to the internal accounting of I.G. but also to their dealings with the 'Reichshaus des Deutschen Reiches'..."	28 - 30
OA-507		Affidavit by Dr. Gustav LILTHEY, Legal Department, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, dated 16 January, 1948. Since 1942 Lilthey has been employed particularly on legal problems connected with AMORGANA G.m.b.H. "In 1940/41, when the Reich demanded of I.G., as stipulated by agreement, the construction and operation of special, Reich-owned plants, the AMORGANA G.m.b.H. was made the managing firm for operating these Reich plants by I.G. which for certain reasons did not wish to undertake these tasks itself." "In later years, as far as I.G. was entitled to any profits at all, Dr. Ambros as manager of Amorgana advocated the handing over of this portion of the profit to a special employee assistance fund for the insurance of the workers of these plants against sickness, accident and the like."	31-3
OA-508		Contract between I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. Ludwigshafen/Rhine "in the name of and to the account of the Bayerische Stickstoffwerke A.G. Berlin" and the French firm Dies et Allain, Paris, dated 11 September 1941, on the execution of construction work.	



Index of Contents of Document Book V A  
for Otto A M E R O S

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
		The "hired firm" undertakes to supply labor on prescribed wage and employment conditions in order to carry out the work assigned to it under the contract. "Food is distributed according to German ration regulations in force at any given time." "Foreign workers, during their employment, come under the legal, social insurance, and tax regulations prevailing in Reich territory, also the German wage rates valid for the place of work in question."	34-39
OA-509		Affidavit by Mr. Max WITTNER dated 10 January 1946. WITTNER was the "Betriebsführer" (Plant Leader) of the Gensdorf works of the American G.I.B.A. from its foundation up to 1945. In May 1945 he was interrogated by Lt. Col. Hoffmann Investigator-Examiner on the employment of foreigners and concentration camp inmates in Gensdorf. Wittner states: "At the end of my interrogation when I presented my affidavit to Col. Hoffmann, evidently moved by the result of three day interrogation, told me he was glad to assure me that the Gensdorf plant was unique in the treatment of foreigners and concentration camp inmates, that the foreign workers had not suffered any misuse, and that he wanted to drink to the name of the Allies."	40 - 41

Index of Contents of Document Book V A

for v t t o A H B L O S

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
0A-20		Affidavit by Lt. Max H. Gruber dated 30 December 1947. Gruber was deputy works manager (Arbeitsleiter) of the American camp at Mauthausen from 5 January 1941 up to the end of the war. "At the end of the investigations by Lt. Col. Hoffmann concerning the prisoner camp at Mauthausen I asked him how the Mauthausen camp had come their notice. He replied that a former prisoner during his interrogation at quite a different place he mentioned that once he had had a good time during his imprisonment - at the American Mauthausen camp. On the actual employment of the prisoners the I.V. had no influence. For instance, I once tried in vain to have a prisoner who was working in Mauthausen put on the basis of a civilian employment contract. The prisoner in question was Jude (prisoner No. 113)." 42 - 43	
0A-51		Letter dated 24 September 1947 from David S. Pitts Jr., New York to Attorney at Law J. V. MacSweeney, Jr., together with Col. G. W. Fitcher compiled the report on "Mauthausen concentration camps" (including Mauthausen). "I can remember that the general opinion of the 'veterans' of the concentration camps whom I interviewed was that to be selected to work at Mauthausen was a prize, since it was regarded as the best assignment so far as food, working and housing conditions implied at Mauthausen could get." 44 - 45	

Index of Contents of Document Book V A  
for U t t o A - 5 R U S

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
0a-512		Report on payment of foreign workers at Gendorf von Janka H. HOFFMANN. "The pay was made according to the tariffs of chemical industry in Austria." "Additional premiums were given up to 30% of the tariff salary."	46 - 47
0a-513		"Testimony of Carl KUVALA (Jugoslav), taken at Gendorf, Germany, at 10:00 hours, 27 June 1945." "There was sufficient food at Gendorf. It was reported that it was the best lager, we received beer and cigarettes from the factory in addition to our regular food rations."	48-50
0a-514		"Affidavit by Gottlieb JAUSS dated 8 August 1947. Jauß was a concentration camp inmate from 1933 to 1945. His prison number in Dachau was 113. He was in Gendorf Camp from October 1943 till April 1945. "For Gendorf, of all the concentration camps I came to know, was distinguished by its better rations and quarters, its more decent working conditions, and a certain freedom of living. I am convinced that conditions at the Jankov camp were so much better than elsewhere because I, as head of the services of the prisoners as generously as possible, insofar as they were not bound on principle by the SS directives he did not permit any interference in "their affairs", as is known."	51-54
0a-515		"Affidavit by Johann KUBBLECH dated 18 August 1947. Kubblech was a concentration camp inmate from 1941 to 1945.	

Index of Contents of Document Book V.A.

for U t t o M A R O S

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
		<p>He was in Gendorf Camp for spring 1943 to March 1945.</p> <p>"Because we had become so run down in Lachau and looked so bad, the kitchen of the camp gave us specially large portions and let us have extras."</p> <p>"I must say that the Germans always endeavored to provide the prisoners with shelter, food and treatment in a way that we again felt like human beings. At the homes of the SS we were always under constraint, but the Germans tried to do everything to make our life as bearable as possible. The prisoners who came from Lachau to Gendorf were properly revived."</p>	55-56
Doc-516		<p>-Affidavit by Max Schille dated 19 August 1947.</p> <p>Schille was a concentration camp inmate from 1934 to 1945. He was in Gendorf Camp from the fall of 1943 until the beginning of March 1945.</p> <p>"Our working hours were the same as those from the free workers..."</p> <p>"The working speed was normal, and no one had to overwork himself."</p> <p>The SS guards "did not hold themselves to their guard duties as strictly as in other places, because they knew that no prisoner could run away in any case from a camp where living conditions were like those in Gendorf."</p>	57-59
Doc-517		<p>-Affidavit by Austrian national Anton KSLINGER dated 26 September 1947.</p> <p>Klinger was a concentration camp inmate from 1938 to 1945. He spent a year of his captivity in Gendorf Camp.</p>	

for  $\forall t \in a$   $\rightarrow \exists p \in O$

- IX -



Army High Command  
File No.: 74 c 21/17 (a J Rus 9 VII  
No. 738/38 top secret.

Certified copy

Berlin W 35,  
5-July 1938  
Tirpitzufer 72-76  
Telephone: 310012

To the  
Bayerische Stickstoffwerke A.G.  
to the attention of Herr Raurat Janisch  
or deputy

Berlin NW 7  
Schadowstr. 4-5

Subject: Frostberg Project  
Order No. 9/VII -247-0102/38

Reference: No. 340/38 top secret (a B 9 VII  
of 28 March 1938

Preliminary information:

According to our previous letter the Army High Command has placed an order with you for the erection of the following plants:

- a) Diglycol plant with a capacity of 500 tons a month
- b) Thiodiglycol - (oxol plant) with a capacity of 600 tons a month
- c) the plants necessary for the production of ethylene chlorhydrine and ethylene oxide
- d) Construction of a warehouse with a storage capacity of 5000 t Diglycol.

As you have already been informed verbally, the Army High Command undertakes the execution and the financing of all plants necessary for the entire Frostberg project.

Consequently this preliminary information is supplemented in that you herewith receive the order to erect all preliminary-, auxiliary and ancillary plants which are part of the above mentioned building project.

As is already known to you, when erecting the steam- and power plants care must be taken that provision is also made for the entire power supply for the adjoining building project of the Orgacid R.A.B.H.

- 2 -

For this supplementary order the same conditions and regulations apply as set forth in the preliminary information of 28 March 1938.

According to art. 1 of the draft contract submitted to you with letter No. 731/38, top secret, of 6 July 1938, dealing with the erection of emergency plants for the manufacture of diglycol and Triodiglycol including ethylene chlorhydrate and ethylene oxide and also with the erection of a warehouse, the plants which are to be erected according to the submitted supplementary preliminary information, are also subject to this contract.

As you have repeatedly been informed verbally, notwithstanding the fact that this skeleton agreement is not yet valid, in the interests of the country's defense the erection of the plants which are part of the entire Trostberg project must be continued with the greatest possible speed. If possible they must be ready for use by 1 April 1940.

The order No. 9-7005/38 which we placed with you with our letter of 28 March 1938 is now altered to No. 9/WII-247-0102/38 and applies to the entire project Trostberg.

To request that written acknowledgement of this preliminary information and that, submitted with our previous letter, be submitted immediately.

In Luftreg (Forst)  
signed: signature  
(illegible)

(stamp)  
Top secret!

I hereby certify this to be a true copy of the original submitted to me.

Berlin, 19 December 1947  
(stamp of the office of  
the notary public)

signed: Hans Bräde  
Notary Public.

- 2 -

- 3 -

Costs

Fee-art. 49 KO.	RM 2.--
Turn-over tax	" 0.06
total	<u>RM 2.06</u>

signed: Brée  
Notary public.

I hereby certify the correctness and completeness of  
above copy.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 20 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

- 3 -

Army High Command  
(Chief of Army Equipment and  
Commander of the Reserve Army)  
65 b 10.92 Tm J Rue (Hum 3)

Certified copy

Berlin 35, 26 March 1942  
Tirpitzufer 72-76  
Telephones:  
Local : 21 81 91  
Long distance: 21 80 91

Building- and installation order

(stamp:) top secret!

Bayrische Stickstoff-Werke  
Aktiengesellschaft  
for the attention of Herr Dr. Wildhagen  
or deputy

Berlin-Gehrmberg  
Kufsteinstrasse 69

Subject: Erection of emergency plants VI-plant Trostberg

Introduction.

At the request of the Army High Command you have accepted the task of erecting the plants listed in detail in the Building- and Installation Order given below, on a site near Gondorf, post office Burgkirchen (Upper Bavaria) which is the property of the Verwertungsgesellschaft fuer Montanindustrie G.m.b.H. (Munich). The Reich has delegated to the Montan the responsibility for this enterprise.

You have undertaken to finish the plant completely under the conditions quoted below: it must be done in a hurry, however, that the greatest part of the plant has already been completed.

The chemical apparatus of the plant will be designed and constructed on your behalf mainly by the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktien-gesellschaft. A cover contract has already been drawn up with this firm on 2/18 July 1940.

1. (1) With reference to our negotiations with you, the preliminary information which were already submitted to you in letters

No. 340/38	top secret	of 29 March 1938
" 738/38 "	"	" 5 July 1938
" 885/38 "	"	" 3 August 1938
" 8711/38 "	"	" 14 January 1939
" 2862/39 "	"	" 17 March 1939
" 4980/39 "	"	" 6 June 1939
" 1539/39 "	"	" 27 September 1939
" 10773/39 "	"	" 31 October 1939
" 218/40 "	"	" 5 January 1940
" 16602/40 "	"	" 9 July 1940
" 11395/41 "	"	" 24 June 1941

- 2 -

No. 14593/41 secret of 16 July 1941  
 " 19646/41 " " 7 October 1941

are subsequently summed up in the order, to erect in your own name but at the expense of the Army High Command, on the site quoted in the introduction, emergency plants for the manufacture of

- a) Diglycol
- b) Oxol
- c) the plants necessary for the production of ethylene chlorhydrine and ethylene oxide
- d) Oil-D
- e) also the erection of a warehouse for diglycol and oxol for a monthly plant out put capacity of
  - a) 500 tons
  - b) 800 tons
  - c) 4000 tons

including the necessary auxiliary- and ancillary plants. The preliminary informations listed above and the supplements to these, still to be submitted, form an essential part of the Building and Installation Order.

(2) The steam- and electric power for the plants will be supplied by a power plant, to be erected as part of the entire plant and also by means of current supply from outside the plant.

(3) The warehouse under e) are to have a storage capacity of 1000 tons each. The order for the storage tank for 4000 tons oxol which we placed with you with letter No.10773/38 secret, of 31 October 1939 will be temporarily postponed.

(4) The buildings are to be completed with the greatest possible speed. According to the progress of the construction-work the machinery and apparatus is to be procured without delay and set up ready for use. The order No. under which the order is to be carried out and of which we have already informed you previously is: 9, VII-247-0102/36.

- 5 -



- 3 -

2. (1) The estimate of the entire costs, still to be compiled by you must be divided into following sections:

Building section  
Machinery section  
Implements and equipment section

(2) The ONH will bear the costs including turn-over tax, general expenses and extra charges on profits as well as the additional payment to be made to the IG under clause 7.

(3) Should the actual costs exceed those of the approved cost estimates you are requested to submit supplementary statements regarding these additional expenses for examination and approval. The work can only be carried out after the additional expenses have been approved by the ONH.

3. You will undertake to erect the plants with the greatest possible speed and with the care of a regular businessman and technician, exercising the greatest possible precaution and economy, in compliance with all pertinent laws, ordinances and regulations. Art. 846 par. 1, 1st sentence of the Civil Code does not apply in this case; your responsibility for any fault of your own or that of your employees remains unchanged. In erecting the plant you will undertake to utilize all suitable patents, processes and technical knowledge which is at your disposal or that of the I.G.

4. (1) You are pledged to obtain the necessary permits from the building police and industrial police and also those necessary for air-raid protection measures.

(2) You will comply with any applicable building police regulations. Any change regarding the plant installations or method of work which, in this connection, might be demanded by the competent authorities, must be submitted to the Army High Command for examination before they are put into effect. The costs and fees resulting from above measures

- 5 -

- 4 -

will be borne by the Army High Command. As soon as the location and the structure of the buildings to be erected have been finally determined, you will obtain the approval of the relevant military and civil air-raid precaution offices.

(3) In the interests of air-raid precaution measures, unless contradicted by other official regulations, special care must be taken when planning the plant that

- a) steam-water- and electrical systems should, where necessary, be arranged in a circular system.
- b) the roof structure of the vital buildings afford protection against incendiary bombs.
- c) all buildings be fitted with black-out devices.
- d) suitable air-raid shelters are created for the working and off-duty complement.

5. (1) It is your duty to submit, on request, estimates of individual costs for the completion of each separate building section for the entire building costs of those sections, which must be examined and approved by the experts of the Army High Command. Any possible divergence from these approved cost estimates requires the special approval of the Army High Command, as throughout the closest collaboration with the experts of the Army High Command is required so that the various details can be clarified and the experts kept continuously informed of the progress of the work.

(2) The cost estimates must be compiled and sub-divided in the lines of an existing pro forma (enclosure) as follows:

- 7 -

- 5 -

- A. Acquisition of the building site
- B. Preparation (for building) of the site.
- C. Building costs
- D. Exterior installation costs
- E. Miscellaneous
- F. Planning, building control and building direction
- G. Police inspection and approval

A brief but full building description must be added to this part. Furthermore:

1 explanatory report regarding heating-, water-, and power supply installations with drawings of technical plant installations (boiler installation, pump plant etc.), furthermore 1. location on the most important technical performances and a statement on their operating costs. If their submission is impossible at the time the cost estimates are submitted those records must be forwarded subsequently.

1 survey plan (ordnance survey map 1:25 000) showing the building site.

1 plan of site on a suitable scale showing the buildings and the most important exterior installations, also drawings of the buildings, giving the chief measurements and the cubic capacity of the built up area (in a special folder). Plans of sites and drawings of buildings must be marked with a scale and an arrow indicating North.

## II. Machinery:

Costs for the acquisition of the necessary machinery including apparatus, tools and gauges.

## III. Implements and equipment.

8. (1) Negotiations with firms while carrying out this building order will be carried out in your name and at the expense of the Army High Command.
- (2) The invitation of tenders for and the completion and invoicing of the building work must be based on the Regulations Governing Building Work (Verdingungsordnung für Bauleistungen) (VOB) Dm 1961-1965.

-6-

(3) Except in cases when special designs are involved three tenders are to be obtained for all orders to be placed. As a rule you will consider the offer which by and large is the most favorable one. If this is not the lowest in price or if you were unable to obtain three offers you will explain the reasons for this when making out the invoices.

7. (1) Depending upon the total amount of your requirements for funds for the building of new installations you will have to submit in good time your specific requests to OXH (High Command of the Army).

(2) Subject to verification when checking final costing OXH will in each instance make the requested amounts available to you as and when you yourself will have to make payment. Proportions to the funds requested by you you will in the same fashion receive advances for the extras listed in par.(3).

(3) The cost of the machines, construction work, etc. to be financed by OXH must be covered by detailed vouchers; in this connection construction expenditure must be substantiated separately; in furnishing the required proof the building cost regulation must be observed. The following detailed procedure should be followed:

#### I. Where your own work is concerned

You must furnish proof of the actual cost which is to be established according to ISO (Directive which establish that production prices must be based on a set price when public agencies are involved as orderers), by submitting appropriately detailed costing statements. This also includes the work done by you as specified, under III, par.2, (overhead expenses). The date-limit for establishing ISO calculations regarding your own work is 1 January 1939.

II. When work by third parties is involved (sub-contractors) Details of expenses must be furnished on the basis of the original invoices.

#### As I and II:

1) The turn-over tax and export subsidy, if any, to be paid by you will be refunded to you and should be shown separately.

- 2) On the expenses according to I and II, not including overhead expenses, according to I, and not including building and trade police fees, compensation for property assessment and field damage, collection by lot of persons subject to labor service, and the like, an additional payment of 3% on actual cost or the amount of the original invoice will be made to you after your statement has been checked and approved. You will not receive the extra payment due to you under I and II to the extent that planning and processing was handed over by you to I.G.

### III. Lump Sum Compensation for IG

- 1) To cover overhead expenses you are authorized to pay to IG a lump sum compensation amounting to 5% on that portion of the work which is being handled by IG, in the form of an additional payment based on the costs for that portion of the entire plant which constitutes I.G.'s share. This additional payment is payable also for those portions of the plant for which IG itself was to be the supplier.
- 2) The overhead expenses according to the meaning of the above-mentioned provisions of the agreement comprise the cost for providing the plan (advanced draft and draft); the working out of a proposal, suitable for examination (according to pattern), together with drawings; construction data and working drawings for the specifications of supplies and work for bids; for placing and ordering the contract, for obtaining all official permits and assistance, etc. (efficiency expert) for the top management, less for local building supervision and direction, preparation of bills and final costing; control and auditing check of the invoices of contractors and purveyors; checking on contractors' guarantees and enforcing of claims for defects, if any.



- 3) No separate charge is permitted for all of these expenses. The Reich will refund to you the lump sum payment made to IG, plus turnover tax and export subsidy, if any.
8. 1) The Army High Command has the right at all times, directly or through its delegate, to check on the progress of work and its compliance with agreed plans and, after completion, also to convince itself that all installations were made according to contract.
- 2) A deposition bearing the signature of the contracting parties will in each case set forth the findings when inspecting the deliveries made for the installations. Whenever the High Command of the Army desires to obtain proof of efficient operation by means of a test - at the expense of the High Command of the Army - this is regarded as successful when for the duration of 14 consecutive days an output is reached in the plant which corresponds to the efficiency stipulated in the contract.
9. (1) In your basis the installations are to be carried as complete units. The delegate of the High Command of the Army, of the Armed Forces, and of the Reich Auditing Court, must at all times be allowed to inspect the pertinent books and the costing, including your data and the organization which you have created for carrying out of the construction job.
- (2) In this connection and in circumstances any warrant, the High Command of the Army has the privilege of availing itself of the services of publicly appointed auditors, in addition to its own price control officials.

10. (1) All movable objects belonging to the High Command of the Army, such as apparatus, machines, and the like, must be marked, in accordance with an instruction which will be given.
- (2) You are to prepare inventories, in duplicate, covering all the machines which are the property of the High Command of the Army; one copy of the list is to be turned <sup>over</sup> to the Army High Command, and the other one is to be filed by you and to be kept up to date.
11. (1) You pledge yourself by means of an instrument and after having established the status of ownership (articles 930, 868 of Reich Penal Code) to transfer to the High Command of the Army the title deed for movable property which was procured at its expense, according to Fig. 12. The High Command of the Army will acknowledge these declarations by means of an instrument.
- (2) The parties are in agreement that independently of the subsequent acceptance and transfer of the title deed all of the movable property which was procured at the expense of the High Command of the Army becomes a part of its inventory directly it is procured and erected on the plant sites. In lieu of the transfer of the title deed you pledge yourself to preserve the movable property owned by it for the High Command of the Army.
12. The acceptance of the apparatus, machines, and so forth from the manufacturers will be made by you, and you will be guided by practices generally customary for the pertinent industry. To the extent that no directives exist for individual machines, etc. you will use your good judgment in making the acceptance. For the acceptance of the entire plant from you a delegate of the High Command of the Army will be assigned after the completion of the plant installation.

10. (1) All movable objects belonging to the High Command of the Army, such as apparatus, machines, and the like, must be marked, in accordance with an instruction which will be given.
- (2) You are to prepare inventories, in duplicate, covering all the machines which are the property of the High Command of the Army; one copy of the list is to be turned <sup>over</sup> to the Army High Command, and the other one is to be filed by you and to be kept up to date.
11. (1) You pledge yourself by means of an instrument and after having established the status of ownership (articles 930, 868 of Reich Penal Code) to transfer to the High Command of the Army the title deed for movable property which was procured at its expense, according to Fig. 12. The High Command of the Army will acknowledge these declarations by means of an instrument.
- (2) The parties are in agreement that independently of the subsequent acceptance and transfer of the title deed all of the movable property which was procured at the expense of the High Command of the Army becomes a part of its inventory directly if it is procured and erected on the plant site. In lieu of the transfer of the title deed you pledge yourself to preserve the movable property owned by it for the High Command of the Army.
12. The acceptance of the apparatus, machines, and so forth from the manufacturers will be made by you, and you will be guided by practices generally customary for the pertinent industry. To the extent that no directives exist for individual machines, etc. you will use your good judgment in making the acceptance. For the acceptance of the entire plant from you a delegate of the High Command of the Army will be assigned after the completion of the plant installation.

13. (1) Before taking out insurance contracts + aside from those which are prescribed by law the prior approval of the High Command of the Army must be obtained.
- (2) Whenever the High Command of the Army rejects an insurance contract which you have declared necessary you are in no way liable for damage of any kind which would have been covered by the proposed insurance - if it had been covered; going further than that the High Command of the Army will clear you of all claims by third parties for which the rejected insurance would have provided compensation.
14. You pledge yourself to keep secret the contents of this contract and its execution, as well as all correspondence pertaining to its execution, and the supporting data, and to make it known to the extent absolutely necessary only to such individuals who have to be employed, directly or indirectly, in the work and/or completion of this contract. The steps referred to above which are to be taken by you in order to preserve secrecy also comprise the appointment of counter-intelligence agents for the supervision of planning and of the construction in progress. You will take the necessary measures that the group of persons referred to above will commit itself to the strictest secrecy and you will instruct them that any violation of this obligation will be punished according to Articles 88 and following of the Reich Penal Code.
15. Irrespective of the value of the contentious object the District Court at Berlin will be competent for all disputes arising from this contract. At the very beginning of a legal dispute the respective parties must make a request for the exclusion of the public and pledge the parties involved in the law suit to secrecy, in accordance with Articles 172 and 174 of the German Penal Code, also to carefully protect the file material under lock and key.



16. It is requested that without repeating its content this order be confirmed in writing at once.

By order  
signed Dr. Zahn

This is to certify that the above is a literal copy of the original.

Berlin, 19 December 1947

(Notary stamp)

signed: Hans Bröo  
Notary

Costs

Fees Art. 49 EO	2.- RM
Turn-over tax	-.06
total	2.06 RM

signed: Bröo  
Notary

I certify that the foregoing copy is correct and complete.

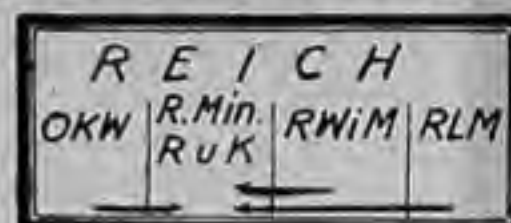
Ludwigshafen in the Rhine, 20 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



# Planung und Errichtung Reichseigener Chemischer Fabriken.

DAG	G.m.b.H. zur Verwertung chemischer Erzeugnisse (SPRENGSTOFFE, PULVER)	
	Allendorf, Aschau, Bobingen, Bromberg, Christianstadt Clausthal, Döberitz, Dömitz, Draguhn, Gusen, Hest.-Lichtenau, Malchow, Ückermünde, Wolfraßhausen.	
WASAG	Deutsche Sprengchemie G.m.b.H. „DSC“	
	Dreetz, Elsnig, Forst, Herrenwald, Hohensaaten, Kietz, Kraiburg, Oderberg, Torgelow. (PULVER, SPRENGSTOFFE)	
WOLFF & Co	Eibia G.m.b.H.	
	Bomlitz, Döberden, Liebenau (PULVER)	
DEGUSSA	Paraxol G.m.b.H. Niederlehme, Lippoldsberg, Schrobenshausen, Welden. (PENTAERYTHRIT)	
I. G.	Anorgana G.m.b.H. (GLYKOL, DIGLYKOL, C-STOFFE)	
	Gendorf, Dyhernfurth.	
GOLDSCHMIDT-AUG	Orgazid G.m.b.H. Ammendorf (C-STOFF)	
I. G.	Monturon G.m.b.H. Falkenhagen (C-STOFF)	
KALICHEMIE	Ergethan G.m.b.H. Stassfurt (C-STOFF)	
CHEM. FABR. UNION	Oderchemie G.m.b.H.	
	Stolzenhagen (SCHWEFELSAURE)	
DAK	Harz-Weser G.m.b.H.	
	Langelsheim (AKTIVKOHLE)	
HAGENUK	Pommersche Industriewerke G.m.b.H.	
	Barth i.P. (NEBELGERÄTE)	
ENGELHARD	Lonal G.m.b.H.	
RIEDEL D.H.	Hahnenberg (C-STOFFE, OMEGASALZ)	
I. G.	Anlagenteile in privatwirtschaftlichen Werken:	
	Montananlagen: Wolfen, Schkopau, Huls, Auschwitz, Ürdingen. (GLYKOL, DIGLYKOL, STABILISATOREN)	



MONTAN



ROHSTOFFANT  
des  
Ministeriums  
RuK

Gebechem

- ☐ Reichseigene Anlagen
- ☐ Privatwirtschaftliche Industrie

- Anforderung und Beschluß
- Technische Betreuung bei der Errichtung
- Vertrags- u. eigentumsrechtliche Beziehungen

Menton  
 Industriewerke G.m.b.H.  
 (Menton Industry Works, Limited  
 Liability Company)

(1) Berlin-Charlotten-  
 burg 2  
 No. 9 Berliner Strasse  
 Telephone: 3930 25

Bank accounts:  
 Berliner Stadtkant  
 District Bank, Charlottenburg  
 Berlin-Charlottenburg 2  
 No. 48/52 Bismarckstrasse  
 Postal check account Berlin 20959  
 Deutsche Bank Goettingen  
 Telegraphic address: Mentonindustrio  
 Berlin

Your ref.

Your letter of:

Our reference

Observations on the table entitled "Planning and  
 Erection of Chemical Factories owned by the Reich".

is incomplete.  
 To which extent the enclosed table/and/or inaccurate,  
 according to our knowledge of the subject, is demon-  
 strated by its comparison with our list.  
 The following is to be said on individual plants:

1. The plant "Draguhn" listed under G.m.b.H. zur Verwertung  
 chemischer Erzeugnisse (limited liability company for  
 the utilization of chemical products) is correctly named  
 "Draguhn"; it is a plant of the Wagon-Commissions A.G.  
 (merchandise brokers, Inc.) whose parent company is the  
 Dynamit A.G. formerly A. Nobel, the Lignee G.m.b.H.,  
 and the Wessig (refer to serial number 10 on the list).

2. We do not know of a Menton Werk Hermannfeld of DSO.  
 As far as we know the Elsnig plant was under construction  
 and a factory of Wessig, the Gesellschaft-inhaltische  
 Sprengstoff A.G. (refer to serial number 22 on the list).

3. What is called Werk Benlitz of the DSB G.m.b.H. is  
 a combination of what we mention individually under 9  
 on our list as the Enidhof, Teil I and Teil II plants.

- 2 -

4. As regards Monturon G.m.b.H., in Falkenhagen - by us referred to as Werk Briessen/Werk (Briessen Works in the Mark), I.G. Farben A.G. and Montan Industriewerke G.m.b.H. each owned 50% (refer to serial No. 5 on the list).
5. As regards Ergethan G.m.b.H., side from Kali-Chemie A.G., the Luor Company also had a share, each owning 50%.
6. The Lonwerk G.m.b.H. operated the following plants: The Loese plants and the plant at Berlin-Hesolherst; towards the end of the war the latter was also awarded to Loese. Share holders in the company were first Prof. Dr. Ing. Hermann Engelhard and the Luor Ges. (company) A.G. (Inc.); subsequently the Luor Ges. separated. We do not know whether Prof. Dr. Ing. Engelhard had already been acknowledged as the sole stockholder by act of a notary Riedel de Heen A.G. in any case was not the parent company (refer to serial No. 15 of our list).
7. As regards Hahnenberg we refer to serial No. 14 of the list. C.F. Hahnenberg G.m.b.H. was an independent company which also owned a plant in Loese. Riedel de Heen A.G. and Riedel & Co. G.m.b.H. were the parent company but, as far as we know, Prof. Dr. Ing. Hermann Engelhard had nothing to do with this.
8. We do not know of a Montan Uerdingen plant of I.G. ... Also refer to serial No. 1 of our list.

As regards the Chemische Werke Huels and its relationship to I.G. Farben refer to serial No. 3 of our list.

As regards the products listed we have no comments to make.

- 3 -

As regards the Raw Materials Office of the Reich Ministry for Armament and War Production, marked in yellow, we wish to say that as far as we are informed about developments in the Raw Materials Office of the Reich Ministry for Armament and War Production it was not created until 1942. Until that time the raw materials questions had been handled largely by the Raw Materials Department in the High Command of the Armed Forces (General Thomas) which in 1942 assigned those tasks to the Raw Materials Office of the Reich Ministry for Armament and War Production.

The above information was given according to the best of our knowledge and belief, based on our partly incomplete business records.

Berlin, 28 January 1948

Herten  
Industriewerke G.m.b.H.

(Signed): Obermaeller

For the Custodian H. Herten

(Signed): Dr. E. Strube

Soel

Custodian of Reich Properties former

Spacer Offices, appointed by Brit. Mil. Gov.

I certify that the above copy is correct and complete.

Harenberg, 5 February 1948

(Sigd): Dr. Gernet  
Gether

- 18 -

Assistant Defense Counsel



(page 19 of original)

Berlin, 28 January 1948  
Dr/Kl.Mining plants in the Chemical Sector with special  
consideration of their relationship to I. G. Farben

No.	Parent Firm	Subsidiary Firm	Date of founding	In Operation since	Remarks
A. Works directly operated by the I.G.					
1.	I.G. Farben A.G.	I.G. Farben A.G.			Works Telfen: 1 April 37 " Desbriem: not in operation " Schkopau: 38/40 " Pasteritz: was being constructed " Anichwitz: was being constructed
B. Plant Management Companies of the Mining Works dependent on I.G.					
a) direct I.G. firms					
2.	I.G. Farben A.G. (100% participation)	Amorgans G.m.b.H.	11 April 1932		Works Gindorf: 1941 " Dyhernfurth: 1941
3.	I.G. Farben A.G. (74%) Berg- werksgesellschaft Hibernia AG (26%)	Chemical Works Huls G.m.b.H.	9 May 1938		" Carl near Buchlingshausen
4.	I.G. Farben A.G. (50%) and Commercial Group Rubber In- dustry, represented by Conti- nental A.G. Hannover (50%)	Experimental Works for Processing of Rubber G.m.b.H.	15 Oct. 1941		Works Leverkusen: 1 Oct. 1942
5.	I.G. Farben A.G. (50%) Lantion Industriewerke (50%)	Hanturon G.m.b.H.	3 Sept. 1943		Works Briesen/Larkitz: 1944(?)



(page 20 of original)

No.	Parent Firm	Subsidiary Firm	Date of Founding	In Operation since	Remarks
b)	Indirect I.G. firms, that is, I.G. owns a considerable part of the capital of their parent firms, as far as we know				
6.	Hoff & Co. K.G. a share and German Arms and Munitions K.G.	Donner G.m.b.H.	1938	Works Rosermünde- Wilsdorf: 1939/42	
7.	Dynamit-K.G. formerly A. Nobel and Co.	G.m.b.H. zur Vorbereitung chemischer Erzeugnisse (G.m.b.H. for utilization of chemical products)	7 Febr. 1934	Works Allendorf: 7 " Aschau: 1941 " Bobingen: 1 April 1939 " Ebenhausen: 1 March 1941 " Hesse-Lichtenau and Zeichenstruth: 1 June 1938 " Kuffeburen: 1 April 1943 " Kaufering: 7 " München: 1941 " Wolfraatshausen: 1 Nov. 1940 " Clausthal-Zellerfeld: 1 Jan. 1939 " Dammberg: 1941 " Moritzberg: 1 July 1940 " Kruscha: 1 1939/40 " Christianstadt: 1 April 1941 " Deobitz: 1 Dec. 1940 " Dornitz: 1 Jan. 1938 " Dornberg: 1 July 1940 " Gießen: not in operation " Gießen: 1 July 1938 " Hohenhausen: 1 March 1940 " Ludwigsdorf: 15 July 1940 " Malchow: 1 Oct. 1938 " Malsdorf: 15 July 1940	

- 30 -

(page 21 of original)

No.	Parent Firm	Subsidiary Firm	Date of Founding	In Operation since	Remarks
7. cont'd)					Works: Petersdorf; 15 July 1940 " Premnitz was being constructed " Döbbernau; April 1939 " Bromberg; ? " Kuchelna; 15 July 1940 " Ulmerfeld; not in operation " Wilsdorf; 15 Dec. 1940
8.	Deutsche Aktive Kohle G.m.b.H.	Chemical works Hars- bach G.m.b.H.	15 Dec. 1939	Works Langelsheim/H.; 10 June 1940	
9.	Wolff & Co. KG & shares	Wilde G.m.b.H. for chemical products	25 Oct. 1938	Works Dörszorden; Oct. 1941 " Liebenau; August 1941 " Alldorf; March 1937 " Walo I; June 1938 " Walo II; June 1939	
10.	Dynamit A.G. formerly A. Nobel Lignoso G.m.b.H. Thessig	Thessig Commissions A.G.	?	Works Dregahn; 1939-1944	
11.	A.G. Dynamit Nobel Vienna	A.G. Dynamit Nobel Vienna	?	Powder Plant Stoin; 1 June 1941	

(page 22 of original)

No.	Parent Firm	Subsidiary firm	Date of Founding	In Operation since	Remarks
C. Works independent of I.G.					
12.	Hessing and Haug Chemie A.G.	Deutsche Sprengchemie G.m.b.H.	11 Oct. 1934	Works Geretsried: 1 April 1941 " Kneiburg: 1 Dec. 1940 " Datteln: 7 " Datteln: 1942 " Forst: 1 May 1941 " Kitzingen: 1 January 1937 " Moschwig: 1 Sept. 1937 " Odenberg: 1 February 1940 " Torgelow: 1 April 1939	
13.	Deutsche Gold- u. Silberacholdo- Anstalt (Degussa) formerly Reeseler	Pharaxel- G.m.b.H.	16 Dec. 1939	Works Goldoni: 15 Nov. 1942 " Schrebenhausen: 1 Dec. 1943 " Lippoldsborg: 1 Sept. 1944 " Hildorleben: 1 April 1940	
14.	Riedel de Haen A.G. and Riedel & Co. G.m.b.H.	C.F. Hohenberg G.m.b.H.	1944	Works Losen: 1944	
15.	Prof. Dr. Ing. Herm. Engelhard o.H.	Lonal-Werke G.m.b.H.	3 July 1939	Works Losen: May 1941 Berlin-Rhodolharst: May 1941	
16.	KellChemie A.G. Auer -Co. A.G.	Ergethen G.m.b.H.	3 April 1935	Works Stassfurt: 1 March 1938	

(page 23 of original)

No.	Parent Firm	Subsidiary Firm	Date of founding	in Operation since	Remarks
17.	Pyrotechnical Works W.P. Eisfeld G.m.b.H. Silberhuetten (Anhalt)	Kieselchemie G.m.b.H.	28 Oct. 1940	Works: Kambachmuehle (O.Vacha/Rhoden) 1 December 1940	
18.	Lignose Explosives Works G.m.b.H. Berlin	Kristallchemie G.m.b.H.	16 Oct. 1942	Works: Schoenebeck/Elbe; 1 Nov. 1943	
19.	Union-Fabrik chem. Pro- dukte A.G.	Oerchemie G.m.b.H.	16 Nov. 1940	Works: Stettin-Stolzenhagen; May 1940	
20.	Auer Co. A.G. Th. Gold- schmidt A.G.	Orgueid G.m.b.H.	23 Nov. 1934	Works: Juchendorf; 1937/1941	
21.	Hagenok, Hansatische Apparatbau-Ges. Neufeld u. Kuhnke G.m.b.H.	Pommersche Industrie- werke G.m.b.H.	2 Sept. 1940	Works: Barth/Pom. 1940/41	
22.	Wesag Westfael. Anhalt. Sprengstoff A.G.	Wesag, Powder and Explo- sives Works Pionki G.m.b.H.	23 June 1942	Works: Pionki; ? Liquidated on: 11 Jan. 1945	
23.	Arms-Union Skoda-Bruenn G.m.b.H., Berlin	A.G. formerly Skoda Works in Pilsen, Prague	?	Works: Politschna; ?	
24.	Explosia, Explosives A.G., Prague	Detona G.m.b.H.	22 July 1941	Works: Bohuslawitz; 1 Aug. 1941	
25.	Reichsgesellschaft	Explosives Works Blumau A.G.	27 June 1939	1939, Works Blumau near Polixdorf	

The fore-going date is given, according to the best of our knowledge and belief, on the basis of our partly incomplete business files.

For the Custodian H. Morten:

signed: Dr. Strube

(Official stamp) (Dr. Strube)

Morten Industriewerke G.m.b.H.

signed: Obermuller

(Obermuller)

(page 24 of original)

I hereby certify that the fore-going copy is correct  
and complete.

Nuernberg, 7 February 1948

signed: Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law



AFFIDAVIT.

I, HEINZ SCHMID-LOESSBERG, residing at BERLIN-CHARLOTTENBURG 9, FRIEDRICHSTRASSE 27, have been duly warned that I render myself liable to prosecution if I make a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my testimony is the truth and was given to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at Guernberg, Germany.

after the discharge, early in 1943, of Herr ZEIDELER <sup>was</sup> C.K. as manager of the MONTAN-INDUSTRIEWERKE G.M.B.H., I temporarily assigned the management as his successor. In this capacity I had an insight into business documents of the MONTAN, and I can state the following from personal knowledge through my own experiences:

On behalf of the <sup>then</sup> Army Ordnance Office of the Reich Ministry for Armament I had offered for sale, at a conference at HEIDELBERG on 23 August 1943, the Reich-owned MONTAN works to its lessees, the I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE A.G.. The reason for this sales offer was the fundamental resolution made by the Reich Minister S P E E R, that the Reich should confine itself to the supreme direction and that it should not undertake production.

- 2 -

This fundamental sales offer was not made to I.G. Farben only, but to all firms that were lessees. In order to make the taking-over of the works by private industry highly attractive, not inconsiderable price reductions and other allowances were promised. At the conference at Heidelberg on 23 August 1943 the following members of the Vorstand of I.G. Farben were present: Dr. TER MEER, Dr. VON KRIEGER, and Dr. AMBROS. Without wishing to anticipate the decision of the full Vorstand of I.G. Farben, the Vorstand members present declared even at that time, after detailed discussions of all possibilities, that I.G. Farben could not consider the sales offer. They explained their negative attitude with the following reasons:

The Reich-owned works offered are "shadow works" which produce strictly armament goods, and which can be operated more or less only during war. The Reich is the sole placer of contracts and, at the same time, sole buyer and consumer. The capacities, which are too great for peace time production, and manufacture for armament purposes only do not fit into the production program of I.G. Farben. Finally, I.G. Farben are <sup>an</sup> A.G., thus a profit earning company supposed to pay their share-holders interest; in contrast, the returns of the Reich-owned works with an approximate average of 0.2% is wholly insufficient.

- 3 -

This opinion of I.G. Farben as expressed at that time conformed to the existing circumstances. In particular the business documents of the MONTAN-INDUSTRIENWERKE G.m.b.H. which were available to me, showed that the actual yield amounted to between 0,20 and 0,26% of the invested capital. This statement of mine serves at the same time to correct my erroneous estimate of a 2 - 3% yield, given in the course of my evidence before the Nuremberg Military Tribunal on 6 November 1947.

As far as I can remember, this sales offer was, later on, also officially refused by the Vorstand of I.G. Farben. In any case, no Reich-owned Montan works were acquired by I.G. Farben who could not even be persuaded to take over the works for a fixed rent.

N U R E M B E R G

27 January 1948.

signed: Reinz SCHMID - LOSBERG

Sworn to and signed before me this 27th day of January 1948, at Nuremberg by Herr Reinz Schmid-Losberg, residing at Berlin-Charlottenburg, 9, Fredericiastrasse 27, known to me to be the person making the above affidavit.

Nuremberg

27 January 1948

signed: Dr. G e t h e r

Dr. Gernot GATHER  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

This is to certify that the above document is a true and correct copy of the original.

N U R E M B E R G,

3 February 1948

signed: Dr. G e t h e r  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Gustav D I L T H E Y , residing at KULDGRAFEN/RHINE, SPERLINGSGASSE 11, have been duly warned that I render myself liable to prosecution if I make a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my testimony is the truth and was given to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at Nuremberg, Germany.

Since June 1940 I have been engaged as legal adviser with the legal department of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G., Ludwigshafen works. From 1942 I was working, among other things, in particular on legal issues concerning the LURANIL G.m.b.H.. From personal knowledge therefore, I state the following in respect of the statutory and organizational position of the LURANIL G.m.b.H.:

The Luranil-Building Company was established at Ludwigshafen in 1940 by I.G. Farben and Buna Werke G.m.b.H.. The invested capital of RM 100,000.-- was originally taken over by I.G. Farben with RM 80,000.-- and by Buna Werke G.m.b.H. with RM 20,000.--; some years after it had been founded, I.G. also acquired by purchase the RM 20,000.-- G.m.b.H.-stock held by Buna, and thus became the sole stockholder. The company was set up exclusively for the purpose of carrying out various building projects for the Reich, the technical planning, design and execution of which I.G. had to assume for the years 1940 and after as stipulated by agreement, but the execution of which I.G. Farben themselves

- 2 -

did not wish to undertake for certain reasons. Therefore, Luranil carried on solely as a building company on the basis of sub-contracts from I.G., the latter, on their part, concluding building and furnishing agreements for the desired Reich installations with the Reich. The financial relationship between Luranil and the Reich and I.G. respectively, were arranged in such a way that execution of all building projects was done on account and with funds of the Reich-owned buildings. I.G. assumed responsibility for the construction of these buildings for the Army High Command free of charge, i.e. without any payment for their work and without any profit, except for re-imbursment of their actual expenses which, for the sake of simplifying the accounts, were fixed at a lump sum for overhead expenses based on the building costs. Apart from the foundation capital of RM 100,000.--, I.G. gave no financial aid to Luranil except that they assumed, on the basis of an agreement to exclude any profit or loss for Luranil, the latter's expenses by charging them to the overhead expenses payment account. In that way Luranil always arrived at a zero-balance. I.G. participation in Luranil was shown in the books at FRANKFURT. Transfer of these building projects to Luranil had, in addition to the purpose of distance, the great advantage administratively for I.G. that thereby a clear separation of their own extensive building projects from those specially carried out at the expense of the Reich was achieved. This advantage applied not only to the internal accounting of I.G. but also to their dealings with the "Rechnungshof des Deutschen Reiches".



- 3 -

(Reich Audit Office), and it was an important reason for the formation of the Luranil Building Company.

LUDWIGSHAFEN/RHINE,  
16 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Gustav L i l t h e y.

Sworn to and signed before me this 16th day of January 1948 at Ludwigshafen/Rhine by Dr. Gustav L I L T H E Y, residing at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Sperlingasse 11, known to me to be the person making the above affidavit.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang A l t.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT,  
Assistant Defense Counsel,  
residing at Ludwigshafen/Rhine,  
Bismarckstrasse 4.

This is to certify that above document is a true and correct copy of the original.

Ludwigshafen / Rhine  
21 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang A l t.  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

- 30 -

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Mr. Gustav D i l t h e y , residing at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Sperlingstrasse 11, have been duly sworn that I render myself liable to prosecution if I make a false affidavit, I declare on oath that my testimony is the truth and was given to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at Nuerenberg, Germany.

Since June 1940 I have been engaged as legal adviser in the legal department of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G., Ludwigshafen works. From 1942 among other things I was working in particular on legal issues concerning <sup>the</sup> ANORGA G.m.b.H.. From personal knowledge, therefore, I state the following in respect of the statutory and organizational position of the ANORGA G.m.b.H.:

The ANORGA is a "Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung" (limited liability company) with a foundation capital of RM 100,000.-- which existed originally merely in the books of I.G. Farben, its sole stock-holder. In 1940/41, when the Reich demanded of I.G., as stipulated by agreement, the construction and operation of special, Reich-owned plants, the ANORGA G.m.b.H. was made the managing firm for operating these Reich plants by I.G. which for certain reasons did not wish to undertake these tasks itself. It was done by way of lease contracts.

- 2 -

in respect of the 2 Reich plants in question, Gendorf and Lybern-  
 furth, as the tasks of AMORGMA concerned exclusively the ad-  
 ministration of Reich plants, and as, consequently, the Reich  
 insisted on having some voice in the management, a Aufsichtsrat  
 was formed in the company to which the Reich also sent several  
 representatives.

The financial relations between the Reich and AMORGMA were  
 arranged in such a way that AMORGMA had, on the one hand, to  
 provide the working capital and on the other hand to pay a  
 certain rent to the Reich. This was not a fixed rent, however;  
 there was merely an obligation for payment of amortizations from  
 production proceeds plus a dividend of 1/3 and later 1/2 of the  
 net profits of the company. The working capital had, originally,  
 to be advanced to AMORGMA by the I.G. by way of a loan. After  
 production was started, however, AMORGMA could finance itself to  
 a considerable extent from the amortization and profit receipts  
 it had earned and which remained at its disposal interest-free  
 for about half a year before remittance to the Reich. The fixing  
 of prices for the production which was taken over in its entirety  
 in respect of both plants, GENDORF and LYBERNFURTH, by the Army  
 High Command, was done exclusively by price controllers of the  
 Army High Command. Thereby profits from these plants were restricted  
 to very modest proportions. In later years, as far as I.G. was  
 entitled

- 3 -

to any profits at all, Dr. AMEROS as manager of ANORGLA advocated the handing over of this portion of the profit to a special employees assistance fund for the insurance of the workers of these plants against sickness, accident and the like.

L u d w i g s h a f e n / R h i n e

16 January 1948

signed: Dr. Gustav D i l t h e y

Sworn to and signed before me this 16th day of January 1948 at Ludwigshafen/Rhine by Dr. Gustav D I L T H E Y, residing at Ludwigshafen/Rhine, Sperlingsgasse 11, known to me to be the person making the above affidavit.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang A l t.

Dr. Wolfgang A l t  
Assistant Defense Counsel,  
residing at Ludwigshafen/Rhine,  
Simsenstrasse 4.

This is to certify that above document is a true and correct copy of the original.

L u d w i g s h a f e n / R h i n e

21 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang A l t,  
Assistant Defense Counsel

C O N T R A C T

1) German firm

I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. Ludwigshafen/Rhine

in the name and for the account of the

Bayerische Stickstoffwerke A.G. (Bayerian Nitrogen Co. Inc.), Berlin, hereafter called the "consignor"

2) Foreign firm:

Dieu et Allain, Paris, 12, 106, Avenue du Général Michel Bizot, hereafter called the "hired firm".

The consignor entrusts the hired firm with the execution of assembly work, particularly the tracing of pipe lines, the manufacture and erection of small installations etc.

Where no lump sum can be determined for a job of work the workers which are to be furnished by the hired firm will be paid according to hours worked. The work is to be done at the Gendorf plant.



In such cases the hired-firm will be allowed the following rate of pay:

1 engineer	RM 750.-	o month
1 interpreter	425.-	"
chief fitter	2.20	an hour
locksmith	2.-	"
welder	2.-	"
electrician	2.-	"
assistant locksmith	1.60	"

and such.

Furthermore the hired firm will be paid as follows:

for 1 engineer	RM 4.50	a day
1 interpreter	3.50	"
1 chief fitter	4.50	"
all others	3.50	"

The hired firm undertakes to provide the following workers for the execution of jobs assigned -

chief fitters	3
electricians	52
pipe fitters	137
machine fitters	18
autogenous welders	46
electro welders	2
turners	4
tinkers (tin smiths)	8

The crews of assembly workers are to be employed according to the consigners instructions.

The consignor will be responsible for the board and lodging of the workers. For this <sup>the</sup> hired firm will be credited with RM 2.50 per person a day if wine is served with meals or RM 2.- if beer is served with meals.

Food is distributed according to German ration regulations in force at any given time.

The consignor bears the cost of one journey there and return, i.e. a third class fare plus RM 9.60 per person per travel day, and no further compensation.

The hired firm undertakes to put the workers they provide, to work for up to 60 hours a week.

Besides the above mentioned rates the hired firm

- 4 -

receives an additional 25% an hour for every hour worked in excess of 47 hours a week and for work on Sundays and holidays a 50% addition for the first 8 work hours and 75% for all further work hours.

The following applies in case of loss of worker (leave, sickness of long duration etc): The hired firm undertakes to further the work with which they have been entrusted to the best of their ability. If workers are absent from work temporarily, due to measures taken by the hired firm, the latter may be asked to provide replacements in order to avoid any delay in the work.

Foreign workers, during their employment, come under the legal, social insurance, and tax regula-

tions prevailing in Reich territory, also the German wage rates valid for the place of work in question.

According to German regulations the various foreign workers will have to be paid their wages at their place of work. Contributions for German Social Insurance and taxes are to be paid to the competent German offices by the consignor who will debit the hired force for them. Foreign workers will be treated exactly like their German colleagues in this respect.

During air raid warnings they will also be paid in exactly the same way as their German colleagues.

For all differences that may arise from this contract the court of Ludwigshafen is competent.

- 8 -

This contract will become effective on 11 September 1941 provided the Reich Ministry of Labor approves.

Period of contract: 3 months

Ludwigshafen/Rhine,  
11 September 1941

I.G. Farbenindustrie  
Aktiengesellschaft

signed p.p. Hoffmann

signed p.p. Ling

Diou et Allain

signed - Allain

This is to certify that the above is a complete and true copy of the original document.

Munich, 6 February 1942

signed Dr. Gernot Gether  
Assistant Defense Counsel



## AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Max Wittwar, of Altetting/Obb., Carl-Bach-Straße 14, having been duly warned that any false statements on my part will render me liable to punishment, hereby state, in oath, that my statements are true and were made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the People's Palace of Justice, in Nuremberg, Germany.

Since 1 October 1923 I have been in the service of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, and since 1940 I have been entrusted with the erection and later the management of the Ganderf plant from 1940 to 1945.

Concerning the employment of foreigners and concentration camp inmates in the Ganderf plant during the war I made extensive statements in May 1945 when I was interrogated by James R. Hoffmann, Lt. Col., investigator and examiner. I should like to refer to those statements in my affidavit to-day.

I myself was interrogated by C. L. Hoffmann and his staff of interrogators in a 3 day trial and I had to give my final statements under oath.

At the end of my interrogation when I presented my affidavit C. L. Hoffmann, evidently moved by the result of a three day interrogation, told me he was glad to assure me that the Ganderf plant was unique in the treatment of foreigners and concentration camp inmates, that the foreign workers had not suffered any misuse, and that he wanted to thank me in the name of the Allies.

This report in the original was kept by C. L. Hoffmann's staff of interrogators. Until 2 December 1946 a copy of the German text was kept at the Ganderf plant. On 2 December 1946 an interrogator of the American Military Tribunal, Nuremberg, by the name of Miller, who appeared in Ganderf, took this one and only copy against a receipt promising he would return it after perusal. However, as far as the report has not been returned.

- 2 -

The report contained a detailed description of  
their conditions, and if I remember rightly, dealt  
particularly with the following points :

1. Recruiting i.e. assignment of foreign workers
2. food and lodgings
3. social welfare, treatment of concentration  
camp inmates by the SS guards
4. Employment and wages
5. medical care

Since I gave a full and detailed account of all the  
above points which was satisfactory to the American  
Investigative Commission I can only report to-day  
once again that I swear to the correctness of my af-  
fidevit.

Altötting, 10 January 1948

signed: Dr. Max Wittwer

Sworn to and signed before me this 10th day of January  
1948 at Altötting/Obb. by Herr Dr. Max Wittwer known  
to me to be the person making the above affidavit.

Altötting, 10 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
(Dr. Wolfgang Alt)  
Assistant Defense Counsel  
at the Military Tribunal  
No. VI at Nuremberg.

This is to certify that the above is a true and complete  
copy of the original document.

Endwiesenhofen/Rhine, 21 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

## AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Max Gruber, of Fährthöchl, Post Ralfing, Obb., having been duly warned that any false statements on my part will render me liable to punishment hereby state, on oath, that my statements are correct and were made for submission as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

From 5 January 1941 to the end of the war I was deputy plant leader of the Amorgene Plant Gendorf.

As from the summer 1943, approximately, prisoners were also employed in Gendorf. During occasional visits at the camp I had the impression that the prisoners were well treated, fed, and billeted. The plant leader, Dr. Tittner, made continuous efforts to improve the lot of the prisoners. The plant management never heard of any complaint on the part of the prisoners. I think the following incident is a good example for the good treatment of the prisoners.

At the end of the investigations by Lt. Col. Hoffmann concerning the prisoner camp at Gendorf I asked him how the Gendorf camp had come to their notice. He replied that a former prisoner during his interrogation at quite a different place had mentioned that once he had had a good time during his imprisonment - , at the Amorgene at Gendorf.

On the actual employment of the prisoners the I.G.I. had no influence. For instance, I once tried in vain to have a prisoner who was working in Gendorf put on the basis of a civilian employment contract. The prisoner in question was Jous (prisoner N. 113). On the occasion of a visit from the Dachau SS guard commander to Gendorf on 19 May 1944 I mentioned my request. It was included in the records of the visit, but was refused by the Dachau camp command who provided the prisoners for Gendorf. The record of the visit was sent to the

- 2 -

Andergang at the time and later Lt.Col.Hoffmann took it.

Fahrtbichl, 30 December 1947

Post Helfing

Doc tariff No.1022

Value 200 RM

fee plus tax :

Sum 2.06 RM UR No.1022/1947

paid

signed: Dr.Max Gruber

Signature

Sworn to and signed before me this 30th day of December 1947 at Prien by Herr Dr.Max G r u b e r , chemist of Fahrtbichl, Gemeinde Helfing, known to me to be the person making the above affidavit. In the text the words "the next day" have been crossed out on line 4 from the bottom.

Prien, 30 December 1947

The Notary

Identification:

Identification card

Signature

Notary's stamp

This is to certify that the above is a true and complete copy of the original document.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 21 January 1948

Dr.Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

David E. Fitcher, Jr.

30 Bränd Street  
New York 4, N.Y.

September 24, 1947

Hochtaunwelt Dr. Vinassa

4a Bollwerk 19

Berne Switzerland

Dear Dr. Vinassa:

Rudolph Ilgner has turned over to me your letter to him requesting information in reference to my visit to the Amorgand plant at Gendorf in Bavaria. I remember meeting Dr. Ambros there, and having several long interviews with him, and his associates, in connection with an investigation I made covering various labor kommandos working out of the Dachau concentration camp. The Amorgand plant used very few concentration camp prisoners because, according to Dr. Ambros, it found that the concentration camp prisoners did not meet the standards of the I.G. Farben, so far as working and technical ability were concerned.

Dr. Ambros told me that generally the concentration camp prisoners used at Amorgand were young boys who were given technical training some part of each working day.

I do remember that the general opinion of the "veterans" of the concentration camps whom I interviewed was that



- 2 -

to be selected to work at Mueorgene was a prize, since it was regarded as the best assignment so far as food, working and ho\_using conditions anybody at Lachau could get.

It occurs to me that your letter and request for information may perhaps be outside of the normal<sup>and</sup> regular channels which have been set up for use of the defendant prisoners on trial at Nuernberg, and I am, therefore, sending a copy of this letter directly to Nuernberg.

Very truly yours,

David E. Pitcher, Jr.

P.S. I believe Dr. Ambrose's attorney will find a resume of my visit to Mueorgene in the report which Colonel Hoffmann and I filed on Muhl Dorf concentration camps with the United States Army War Crimes Branch, which is presently located at Lachau and Augsburg.

I hereby certify that the above is a true and complete copy.

Nuernberg, 5 February 1948.

signed Dr. Gernot Gether  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Original  
duly identified

a true copy  
signed: Signature  
(James R. Hoffmann)  
Lt. Col. Infantry  
Investigator Examiner

### Report

on payment of foreign workers at Gendorf

The pay was made according to the tariffs of chemical industry in Germany.

Tariff: mechanics of all sorts	RM	-.77
helpers	"	-.67
chemical workers skilled	"	-.70
" " unskilled	"	-.66
helpers	"	-.63

Additional premiums were given up to 30% of the tariff salary. The difference in payment for French and Italian RM. are to be seen in the following examples:

#### 1. French P.O.

Gross amount of payment of a mechanic, 240 hours	
A month at .77 each	RM 184.80
deducted for the Stalog	" 82.--
from the netting 102.80 should be handed	" 54.--
over only doing piece-work bonus	" 37.--
monthly payment	RM 91.--

#### 2. Italian P.O.

Bricklayer in building department 240 hours	
A month at -.73 each	RM 175.20
minus 10% deduction	" 17.52
	RM 157.68
minus boarding 30 x 1.20 mark	" 36.--
	RM 121.70
off 40% for Stalog	" 48.70
payment	RM 73.--

#### 3. No Russian P.O. were employed.

#### 4. French and Italian civil workers

They were treated exactly like our own workers. They got the same tariff, all premiums for overwork, Sunday- and holidaywork, nightshifts, the separation, children- and family-bonus as well as the annual premiums.

Example: machine mechanics with average piece-work payment	
of additional 30%	RM 240.-
bonus for separation a.s.o.	" 45.-
	RM 285.-

deductions differed according to family-status from 300,- to 50,- marks, average

"	40.-
RM	245.-

- 2 -

The civil-worker had to pay his boarding and living (1.65 mark a day) as well as his clothing. Other civil workers of all nations with the exception of Ostarbeiter were treated similarly.

#### 5. Eastern workers.

Working premiums like those of German workers, also bonus for difficult and dirty work.

Example:

mechanic 20 years old, 250 hours a month at -.77 each plus 30% average piece-work-pay

deduction to revenue-office

RM 240.--
" 133.50
RM 106.50
" 45.--
RM 61.50

minus boarding  
monthly payment

Since April, 5th 1943 the monthly deduction for the revenue-office decreased to 117.-- mark.

By order of the "Reich" "Eastern workers" got the following additional premiums:

after 1 year of employment	20%
" 2. " "	30%
" 3. " "	50%

which should not be higher than the amount handed over to the revenue-office.

Since April 1st 1944 the "Eastern workers" with 240 hours/month under the same conditions as before received

RM 240.--
" 80.--
RM 160.--

minus income-tax.

monthly payment

Deductions were not made anymore to the revenue-office. Since April 1945 the "Eastern workers" had the same status as all other foreign workers.

#### Summary:

Working 240 hours/month payments were made to:

French Pw, skilled men

RM 91.--
" 91.--

Italian Pw, " "

Those were living freeboard.

Italian Pw skilled men in building department

" 73.--
---------

French civil-workers, skilled men

" 245.--
----------

Italian civil-workers, " "

" 245.--
----------

Eastern workers in 1942/43

" 60.--
---------

in 1943/44

" 79.--
---------

in 1944/45

" 160.--
----------

since April 1st 1945

" 245.--
----------

a/ Kirchloff

I hereby certify that the above is a true and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen, 15 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

EXHIBIT

Testimony of Karl Novak, taken at Muhlendorf, Germany, at 10:00 hours, 27 June 1945.

Too 5 William E. Carpenter, 39566553, appeared before the Assistant Investigator-Examiner as a reporter and was sworn by him in the following form:

"You swear that you will faithfully perform the duties of reporter in this investigation now being conducted by me. So Help You God."

Too 4 Fred H. Metzger, 38699702, appeared as an interpreter and was sworn by the Assistant Investigator-Examiner in the following form:

"You swear that you will truly interpret in this investigation now being conducted by me. So Help You God."

Karl Novak appeared before the Assistant Investigator-Examiner and testified as follows:

Q.: Karl Novak, we are now investigating slave labor conditions of the concentration camps in the vicinity of Muhlendorf and applying and the starvation, mistreatment, and killing of allied political and war prisoners. Are you willing to take an oath as to the testimony that you are about to give?

A.: Yes.

Q.: Do you understand the meaning of an oath?

A.: Yes.

Q.: Please stand up, raise your right hand, and be sworn. "You, Karl Novak, swear that the evidence you shall give in this investigation now being conducted by me, shall be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth. So Help You God!"

A.: I do.

Q.: State your name, age, and birthplace.

A.: My name is Karl Novak, I am 32 years old and I was born at Manja, Yugoslavia.

Q.: How many years did you attend school?

A.: I completed seven years of Folk school.

Q.: Are you married or single?

A.: I am single.

- 2 -

Q.: What was your civilian occupation?

A.: I worked principally as a farmer and truck driver in Yugoslavia.

Q.: When were you first arrested by the Nazis?

A.: I was arrested in October 1942 in Luga.

Q.: Why were you arrested by the Nazis?

A.: I was supplying food to some of Tito's partisans and the Gestapo found out and arrested me.

Q.: Where were you first sent by the Nazis?

A.: I worked at various concentration lagers and then was sent to Lechau.

Q.: Where did you go from Lechau?

A.: In October 1943 I was sent up on a thirty man Kommando to the Chemical Plant at Gendorf to assist the construction of the barracks of the concentration lager there.

Q.: When was the construction on the concentration lager at Gendorf finished?

A.: In December 1943.

Q.: When did the transports of workers for the chemical plant first arrive at the Gendorf concentration lager?

A.: In December 1943, and they started to work in the chemical plant in February 1944.

Q.: What was the average capacity of the concentration lager at Gendorf?

A.: 200-250 prisoners.

Q.: How were the working conditions at the chemical plant?

A.: We worked from 7 to 11:30 and from 12:20 until 6 o'clock the first five days of the week. Saturday afternoon was free and we worked Sunday mornings at the chemical plant.

Q.: Were you or were any of the other concentration camp prisoners ever beaten by the employees of the plant or the SS guards?

A.: There were no beatings in the plant itself but many men were beat in the lager by the SS guards and capos.



- 3 -

- Q. Were you, yourself ever beaten?
- A. No, I was an old-timer in concentration camps and know how to avoid beatings.
- Q. Can you describe the incidents surrounding any beatings which you personally observed?
- A. I don't remember any of the names of the people who were beaten but I do remember that one Katschauer, a capo, was particularly active in beating the prisoners.
- Q. What were the food conditions in the concentration la ger?
- A. There was sufficient food at Gendorf. It was regarded at Dachau as the best la ger. We received beer and cigarettes from the factory in addition to our regular food rations.
- Q. When did you leave the Gendorf concentration la ger?
- A. On the 8th of April 1945 I was shipped on a transport to la ger 13-1 and remained there until the liberation by the Americans.

signed: Karl Novak  
KARL NOVAK

ATTEST:

signed: David E. Pitcher JR  
DAVID E. PITCHER, JR  
2nd Lt., J.G.D., Asst  
Investigator-Examiner.

I certify that the above testimony was translated to the witness in his own language, prior to his signature, which appears above.

signed: Fred. H. Metzger  
FRED. H. METZGER, 32699702,  
Interpreter.

I hereby certify that the above is a true and complete copy.

Dachau la ger am Rhein, den 31. Dez. 1947  
Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

- 50 -

Affidavit

I, the undersigned Gottlieb J e u s s, resident at Lamich 23, Kaiserplatz 7, born on 9 October 1889, transportation worker, have been warned that I render myself liable to punishment if I make a false statement. I hereby declare on oath that my statements correspond to the truth and are made to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I was arrested on 24 April 1933 as a member of the KPD (Communist Party of Germany) by the Gestapo and brought to the Heuberg Concentration Camp (KL) as a political prisoner. On 23 December 1933 I was transferred to the Wehlberg Concentration Camp near Ulm, and in June 1935, to the Dachau Concentration Camp. There I was prisoner number 118. In Dachau I remained - with the exception of an field commando in the SS barracks in Radolfzell from 19 May 1941 to 27 July 1943 - until my removal on 4 October 1943 to the camp at Gendorf.

On the basis of my internment for over 10 years in various concentration camps the chief mayor of the city of Lamich and the Military Government issued to me an official pass, number 225, dated 30 Nov. 45.

At the Gendorf camp I was an arrested from the beginning until the dissolution of this field commando of the Dachau camp on 5 or 6 April 1945. Hence I am able to give exact information on camp conditions in Gendorf.

On 4 October 1943 a labor commando was formed in Dachau for the I.G. Werk in Gendorf consisting of 30 men. I do not know who requisitioned the commando. I promise that there were instructions from Berlin. I was made the head (Capo) of this commando, probably on the basis of my many years' stay at Dachau. SS-Hauptsturmführer Kim (1) with about 8 SS guards was assigned as escort. Upon our arrival in Gendorf, we first put into a works hut. Each of us had a wooden bed with a straw sack and blankets. Our first assignment was to clear the forest where our own huts were to be set up. The erection of the huts (2 wooden huts for the prisoners and 1 stone hut for the SS) were already finished towards the end of November 1943. Then other internees arrived from Dachau, about 70 of them. Most of us were craftsmen: locksmiths, turners, carpenters, etc. These were put to work in the workshops of the I.G. works. The unskilled prisoners were sent to the building site. The largest commando included a total of 250 men, but this number was reduced towards the end of 1944. By that time another stone hut was built; it was to house the juvenile prisoners who were to enter the works as apprentices. This youth commando however never reached Gendorf. As a matter of fact, on 5 or 6 April 1945, the entire prisoners commando in Gendorf was dissolved and we were brought to the Lattenheim Concentration Camp at Lattenheim. Upon experiencing life in the Lattenheim concentration camp, all of us prisoners unanimously

declared: if only we were back at Ganderf! For Ganderf, of all the concentration camps I came to know, was distinguished by its better rations and quarters, its more decent working conditions, and a certain freedom in living. I am convinced that conditions at the Ganderf camp were so much better than elsewhere because I.G. handled the services of the prisoners as generously as possible, insofar as they were not bound on principle by the SS directives who did not permit any interference in "their affairs", as is known.

Rations:

At first the rations, as long as they came from the works kitchen, could actually be called good. At first we received the same food as the works members in the works canteen. When the commando was enlarged, the food was brought from the works kitchen to the camp. Only in the middle of 1944 camp kitchen was set up which however supplied the I.G. works as well and was supervised by constant inspections. I often witnessed gentlemen from the works management and the works physician during such kitchen inspections. As far as I know, they always enjoyed the food since they always ate up the same fare. In my opinion the I.G. works did everything in its power to give us adequate rations. On holidays or such occasions, for example, there was an additional hundred pounds of meat or pudding from the works. Indeed we always received our things from the plant. The administration of our rations by I.G. was under one Frau Walmer from Burghausen, who was for ever ready to help and definitely never gave us too little. Her husband was himself a prisoner at Buchenwald. We were actually quite surprised that I.G. entrusted her with our rations, for she naturally had a special understanding for our situation. For the rest, the administration of rations and clothing lay in our own hands, under the control of the SS. The I.G. works had nothing what-ever to do with the internal camp direction, and had no influence upon it.

Clothing:

In general the clothing was provided by Dachaue. However, when the shoes proved to be insufficient for the work, I.G. itself gave us wooden shoes from its own stocks. As a matter of fact, in my opinion I.G. left no stone unturned to improve the living and working conditions of the prisoners. If the SS had not been in the way, much more would certainly have resulted from these efforts. As far as I know, I.G. never received any complaints.

Housing:

The I.G. works management had nothing what-ever to do with conditions in the camp itself; the camp was fenced in and guarded by the SS.

Admittance for civilians was only permitted under escort by the commando leader, and SS non-commissioned officer. The hygienic conditions in the camp were good. As in the army, the 80/44 men in bunk beds and above the other in one large room. Each had his own bag with straw-sack and blankets. Plenty of washing facilities and a sick bay were available. As a special favor, the works allowed us to take a warm bath in the plant every two weeks. In winter it was always sufficiently heated. Every room had 1 or 2 stoves. The fuel (coke) was furnished by the plant. In the middle of 1944, the plant also enlarged the camp area by including a part of the forest within the fence, so that we prisoners could move more freely. We were given medical care by the works physician who regularly visited our dispensary. In serious cases the prisoners were brought to the works dispensary for bandaging etc. by ambulance. There was no forced labor in case of sickness as far as I.G. was concerned. The SS alone decided on the allocation of labor.

#### Utilization of labor:

I myself was not assigned to the works, but worked in the camp. But of course I was well informed regarding events in the works by the other prisoners. I never had the impression that prisoners overworked; and I know of no instance where a prisoner collapsed from fatigue. But then, no particularly strenuous work was requested of the prisoners. They were rather assigned according to their abilities and occupation just like the free workers, especially in the workshops. The prisoners also mixed with the other workers at the places of work. - I had the impression that the I.G. works management deliberately degenerated differential treatment in order to promote happiness at work. Gentlemen of the works management often talked with me although it was forbidden by the SS. A certain chargehand, I believe his name was Jarnal, was the object of special praise because he helped the prisoners whenever and however he could. Indeed, such was the general attitude in the works towards us prisoners, with the possible exception of a very few who did not however meet the approval of the majority. The prisoners worked the same hours as the others. However the working hours were shortened in the winter, since the prisoners could only get on their way at break of day and had to go back in the camp before dark. At the works, the work was evaluated according to output, and payment in certificates was made accordingly. I.G. had bought these certificates in Dahlen where they were credited to the prisoners, since the prisoners were not permitted to receive cash. I did not learn of any cases of high happiness by the SS in connection with the labor supervision. I believe that the SS did not want to expose itself in any way to the works management. In any case, there was no slave-driving system either under the SS or I.G. For the rest, the works management of I.G.



had no power to issue orders to the interned, nor did it have any influence on the treatment of prisoners by the SS guards. Our lot as prisoners in Gendorf was probably bearable because the prisoners assigned to the works worked closely together with all the other members of the works and the humanness of the works management was indirectly manifest; these conditions left no room for escapes.

Munich, 9 August 1947

signed: Gottlieb Jauss

Signed and sworn before me, Dr. Gernot Gether, Assistant Defense Counsel in Case 6 before the High American Military Tribunal, by Herr Gottlieb Jauss, resident at Munich, Kaiserplatz 7, known to me to be the person making this affidavit.

Munich, 9 August 1947

signed: Dr. Gernot Gether

I certify that the above is a true and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen/Main, 3 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



AFFIDAVIT

I, Johann Houbisch, residing in Neumarkt St. Veit Upper Bavaria, have first of all been warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I submit a false affidavit.

I declare on oath that my statement is the truth and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice, Duernberg.

In 1938 I was arrested because of political difficulties with my firm, Speethmann in Borsdorf, near Neumuenster/Holstein, and committed to the Hamburg Police Jail. In 1941 I was sent to the M. Lager (concentration camp) Kassel-Eiegenheim; later to Camp Hatzweiler and Dachau. Since the spring of 1943 until March 1945 I was in Labor Camp Gonderf to which I had been transferred. I was among the first prisoners who came to Gonderf, for I had to help in the construction of the huts of the Camp as a carpenter and joiner. I was not assigned to work in the Plant, but to the Camp; however, I was also frequently in the Plant, for I had to get the material for the construction of the huts. Through this activity I was able to obtain a very good picture of the conditions in Gonderf.

The rations in Gonderf were much better than those in Dachau and, in fact, better than those at any of the camps which I have knowledge of. We received them from the Amorgans Firm, which at first also prepared them. Moreover, we ate in the same canteen which the free workers used, and at the same time and together with them. Because we had become so run down in Dachau and looked so bad, the kitchen of the Amorgans gave us specially large portions and let us have extras. Moreover, the free workers passed food to us during the meals, although they received beatings and mistreatment for this from the SS-Guards, who wanted to stop the practice. When the SS Camp Kitchen was established a year later, and we had to eat in the Camp, the food became worse. The Amorgans supplied the provisions, just as before, but some of them disappeared at the SS and were not used for us prisoners. The Amorgans could not do anything about this, for it had nothing to say in the Camp itself.

On holidays, such as Christmas and New Year, we received extra food from the Amorgans. On such occasions the Amorgans also gave us beer.

The attitude of the Amorgans personnel toward the prisoners was always decent. I was never struck by an Amorgans man, nor do I believe that any other prisoner ever was. The working speed was consistent throughout with the physical condition of the prisoners, and certainly no one collapsed at work from exhaustion.

Our working hours were the same as those for the free workers. The Gopas conducted themselves properly. There were only three deaths among the workers, as I recall; for these the workers themselves were to blame, for three Russian prisoners clandestinely obtained methyl alcohol and drank it. The number of prisoners allocated to Camp Gendraf was 250 men, to my knowledge, of whom only about one-third

- 2 -

were German and the rest foreigners.

I must say that the Amergans always endeavored to provide the prisoners with shelter, food and treatment in a way that we again felt like human beings. At the hands of the SS we were always under constraint, but the Amergans tried to do everything to make our life as bearable as possible. The prisoners who came from Dachau to Gonderf were properly revived. I myself was completely starved when I arrived from Dachau, and in Gonderf I recovered. I certainly have to thank the SS for this, but the Amergans, not.

Munich, 18 August 1947.

(Signed): Houbisch Jch. Hans.

Document register No. 4307 I hereby certify that the above signature is the genuine signature of Hans Houbisch, helmsman in the Merchant Marine, Edmund-St. Voit/Upper Bavaria who identified himself by presenting his police identification card.

Munich, 18 August 1947

(Notary stamp)

Notary:

(Signed): J.R. Rippler  
(Justizrat Heinrich Rippler).

Certified true and complete copy.  
Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 5 January 1948  
Dr. Helmut Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, Max Scheller, residing in Muchldorf/Inn, Bruckenkstrasse 1, have first of all been warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I submit a false affidavit.

I declare on oath that my statement is the truth and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg.

In 1933 I was arrested because of severe bodily injury inflicted on an SA-man, and condemned to imprisonment for one year. Upon the expiration of my period of punishment I was committed to Concentration Camp (Kz-Lager) Oranienburg. Thereafter I was committed to a number of other camps, namely: Esterwegen, Netzweller, Dachau, Ganderf, Mettenheim and Lemping. I was in Ganderf from the fall of 1943 until the beginning of March 1945, and I was assigned as a welder to the electrical shop. On the basis of my experiences I can state that Ganderf was far the best Camp of which I had experience in respect to quarters, rations and treatment. In the Camp itself we were subject to the SS exclusively; in the plant, however, we received our instructions from the Anergana personnel, and the SS restricted itself wholly to the function of guarding.

The sanitary conditions in the Camp were satisfactory. When vermin were sometimes found, the Anergana immediately took measures to exterminate them. Every prisoner had his own bed, with mattress, head-rest and three blankets. Every week the prisoners were permitted to take warm baths in the workers' baths of the Anergana.

The food was provided by the Anergana. At the beginning we also ate the canteen of the Anergana. I remember that we received one pound of bread and also butter and sausage every day in addition to the hot meals. In 1944 the SS itself took over the operation of the mess, and we had to eat in the Camp. As a result the rations became worse, for although the Anergana provided the food supplies as before, some of them were held back in going through the SS. But even then the Ganderf rations were better than those in other camps. During the time I was at Ganderf I put on weight, and I looked better at that time than I do now.

On special holidays besides the special Sunday meals, we received extra allowances from the Anergana, such as bread, pudding, cigarettes, etc.

After working hours we had to stay in the Camp, this had plenty of room, however, and it also included a section of wood, in which we could take walks. Further, we could engage in sports, and we had theatrical performances and similar recreations in the Camp.

Our working hours were the same as those for the free workers, namely, from 07:00 to 12:00 hours, and from 13:00 to 17:00 hours, and on Saturdays from 07:00 to 12:00 hours. Some of the prisoners also worked on Sundays from 07:00 hours in those plants which regularly operated on Sunday.



- 2 -

The conduct of the Amergann personnel toward the prisoners was proper in every respect. Many even helped us in whatever way they could; for example, they secretly passed us extra food. I was never struck by anyone belonging to the Amergann, and I believe with certainty that nothing like that ever happened in any case. The working speed was normal, and no one had to overwork himself. Our Captains conducted themselves properly. Certainly no prisoner ever collapsed from exhaustion in Gonderf, nor did anyone die in the Camp as a result of over-exertion. And, naturally, there were no suicides.

When a prisoner was ill, he went for examination to the plant physician of the Amergann in the sick-bay, which was well equipped and sanitary. The plant physician definitely did not use any different procedure from that used for the free workers when prescribing treatment. When a prisoner had symptoms of illness which required special treatment, he was sent to the infirmary at Dachau, and he did not return to Gonderf until he was well again.

The number of prisoners allocated to Gonderf was 250, in my estimation; of these the Germans were in the minority. Changes in the prisoner personnel occurred only when some of them were removed because of sickness and were replaced by others from the Main Camp at Dachau. The German prisoners were chiefly skilled workers, who were allocated by the Amergann in accordance with their skills. I never heard of a case in which prisoners with poor productivity records were reported to the SS by the Amergann.

The works manager visited us about once a week in the shop and conversed with us in a very friendly way. He said he was satisfied with us and asked our wishes. Thereupon he would take pains to help us. For example, for night work, which was sometimes necessary, he procured extra rations for us, consisting of hot meals, bread and butter, and sausages. These special rations, naturally, were also provided by the Amergann.

The prisoners found it very agreeable to have our contacts during working hours limited to the Amergann people. The SS Guards had to maintain a considerable distance from us, according to the regulations. They did not hold themselves to their guard duties so strictly as in other places, because they knew that no prisoner would run away in any case from a camp where living conditions were like those in Gonderf.

My name is not Scheller, but the correct spelling is "Schella."

Munich, 19 August 1947.

(Signed): Schella, Max

- 3 -

Document Register No. 4333. I hereby certify that the above signature is the genuine signature of Herr Max Schelle, welder, Bruckenhofstrasse 1, Muchldorf o/ Inn, who identified himself by presenting his police identification card.

Munich, 19 August 1947.

(Notary stamp)

Notary:

(Signed): J.R. Hippler

(Justizrat Heinrich Hippler)

Certified true and complete copy.  
Eodwigshofen/Rhine, 5 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, Anton Reiser, living in Vienna XXI, Franklinstrasse 20/7, Entrance No. 2, Austrian citizen, have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I hereby declare on oath that my statement is the truth and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Muensterberg, Germany.

In May 1938 I was arrested by the Gestapo because I had doubted a picture of Hitler with mustard while I was with some boisterous companions in a Gaffel House. At first I was confined for a considerable length of time in the Gestapo prison at the Moritzplatz. Then I was sent to Camp Dachau, and later to Flossenburg, Ganderf, Schweibshaus, Sudelfeld, Muehl-dorf and Mittergers. I spent a year in Leber Camp Ganderf. I was allocated to work in the gravel pit, and had nothing to do in the plant itself.

In order to give a general picture of Camp Ganderf, I would like to say that, in comparison to other camps, it seemed to us more like a workshop than a concentration camp. It was incomparably better than in any of the other camps with which I had experience. The quarters were good. Everyone had his own bed. When vermin were discovered, which was frequently the case, the Anergans provided fumigation. The SS did not pay any attention to such conditions, on the whole.

When prisoners became ill, they usually were sent to the sick-bay on hand, where a Polish medical service man was in charge. The medical examination and treatment were almost regularly performed by the plant physician of the Anergans. The more serious cases were transferred to the infirmary at Dachau. During the time of my entire confinement in the Camp only three deaths occurred, namely, when three Russians stole wood alcohol and drank it as an alcoholic beverage.

The food in Camp Ganderf was much better than that in any other camp, with which I had experience. The Anergans regularly supplied potatoes and vegetables by truck. We also regularly received bread, sausage and margarine. The following incident may be taken as an indication that the Anergans tried to meet its responsibility in such matters: The SS invited a number of women and girls to a social event which it sponsored in which large quantities of meat and other food supplies intended for the prisoners were used up. In response to a complaint which the plant management heard of through the workers of the Anergans, the management intervened at the SS-Headquarters in Dachau, whereupon the SS cook and the Camp Leader were transferred as a punishment. The management of the Anergans then took measures to have the kitchen operated by the prisoners themselves. As a result an Austrian veteran of the Spanish campaign was made cook, who was able to see that the food provided by the Anergans really went to the prisoners. In spite of the heavy labor in the gravel pit the other prisoners and myself remained in good physical condition because of the good food.

The personnel of the Amorgana treated us well on the whole; some of them even gave us actual assistance. In this connection I would like to say the following:

Steel rings were made in the plant (purportedly for V-bombs). These rings were stolen in great numbers by the prisoners and remade into ornamental rings. They were then smuggled out by the Amorgana personnel and sold in the vicinity. From the proceeds the workers brought food and smuggled it into the prisoners in the plant. They also would often secretly procure food for us on other occasions. The rate of working was easy, yet we were never struck by the members of the plant; at the worst we received the usual reprimands from the foreman. The working hour varied between eight and ten hours daily.

The office of our Camp was operated very much as a system of self-administration due to the personalities of the prisoners who acted as the officials there (an Austrian veteran of the Spanish campaign, a Frenchman, and the Austrian cook already mentioned). These three men carried the complaints, whenever they could, directly to the plant management, or through the agency of the Amorgana personnel, whose acquaintance one might happen to make at the workbench. The plant management required a great deal of work, but it did everything in its power to make the living conditions as endurable as possible; further, it did everything in its power to uphold the principles of humanity, even in opposition to the SS. In this connection there were many small details, such as the fact that we were permitted to take warm baths once a week in the plant, the fact that the plant management constructed splinter-proof shelters for the prisoners at the request of our office, for which the management itself had to furnish the lumber and cement, etc.

In recapitulation I would like to say that there were never any of the horrors in Camp Gonderf which are usually associated with the idea of a concentration camp. Only when the SS took charge of us again, when we were removed in transports when the plant was to be shut down, were we compelled by the Hungarian SS to "belance" (wippen) all night long and were beaten with leather straps.

During the time of my labor period at the plant I once again began to feel like a human being, and I considered my work there almost in the nature of a desirable future.

Vienna, 26 September 1947

(Signed): Anton Reiser

Remarks:

According to the Document Register serial No. 471/47 Herr Anton Reiser, drivers helper, with address at Franklinstrasse No. 20/7, Entrance No. 2, Vienna XXI, prepared the above document personally in my presence.



- 3 -

(Notary stamp) District Court (Bezirksgericht)  
Florisdorf,  
Vienna, 26 September 1947.

(Signed): Signature  
Justizinspektor

Certified true and complete copy.  
Ludwigshafen, 5 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Max Wittwer, Altcotting/Upper Bavaria, Carl Beschstr. 14, have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I hereby declare on oath that my statement is the truth and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Munich, Germany.

I was Betriebsführer (works manager) of the Gonderf Plant of the Amorgans G.m.b.H. since its creation until 10 July 1945.

In 1940 a section was set up for the manufacture of mustard gas (Lest) according to the Lewinstein Process; it was put in operation in the beginning of 1943. Since this Process did not prove to be practical, the experimental plant had to be shut down and the installations had to be reconstructed.

In 1944 experiments were again conducted on a small-scale. The conversion of the planned large-scale installations was suspended at the end of 1944 for various reasons.

I hereby testify that in the production of mustard gas no foreigners, prisoners of war or concentration camp prisoners were employed.

(Signed): Dr. Max Wittwer

Altcotting, 26 June 1947  
Document Register No. 752

I hereby certify that the above is the genuine signature of Dr. Max Wittwer, Altcotting (Upper Bavaria) Carl Beschstrasse 14.

Altcotting, 28 June 1947  
(signed): Scheidler

(Charges) (Notary stamp)  
Scheidler,  
Notary

Certified true and complete copy.  
Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 11 December 1947  
Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

DOCUMENT BOOK V A AMBROS

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

19 February 1948

we,  
Gerta Kanno, No. 20 151,  
John Fosberry, No. 20 179,  
George Goodman, No. 34 789,

hereby certify that we are thoroughly conversant with the  
English and German languages and that the above is a true and  
correct translation of document book V A AMBROS.

Gerta KANNOVA, No. 20 151

John FOSBERRY, No. 20 179,

George GOODMAN, No. 34 789.

*Case 6  
Defense*

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT BOOK 5 B AMBROS  
OFFICE OF CHIEF OF COUNSEL FOR WAR  
CRIMES

---

TRIBUNAL VI

CASE VI

Document Book V B

for

Otto Ambros

Plant Gendorf

Submitted by:

Defense Counsel

Karl Hoffmann

Attorney at Law.

*Tang*



DOCUMENT BOOK 5 B AMBROS

Index to Document Book V B

for Otto Ambros

Doc. No.	Page No.	Contents	Page
OA-519		Affidavit by Dr. Hermann Schnell about the reconstruction of the DL-plant in Gendorf. Schnell at the close of his affidavit says literally: "Therefore I am absolutely convinced that Herr Dr. Ambros beginning 1943 not only was not interested in the completion of the Lostfabrik (factory for the production of mustard gas) in Gendorf, but even tried to prevent it, in order to hinder the employment of gas. In supplementation I remark the following: I am a half Jew and therefore was then in a politically difficult situation. Herr Dr. Ambros never used this fact to make difficulties for me. On the contrary from his conduct towards me I believe that he appreciated me as human being and Engineer.	1 - 3
OA-520		Affidavit by Dr. Max Gruber of 30 December 1947. Gruber was Deputy Works manager of the anorganic plant Gendorf from 5 January 1941 until the end of war. He describes the development of the DL-plant in Gendorf. He says literally: "1.) The production planning for Gendorf extended to glycol and DL. However, the capacity of the intermediate products plants necessary for both products, installed at Gendorf, is insufficient for a simultaneous manufacture. This is also true for the ethylon- and hydrogen production and particularly in regard to the capacity of the chlorine plant. If Dr. Ambros for a long time by the reconstruction of the DL plant decided in 1943, he would have had to attempt to achieve the maximum by means of small changes, as for 4 000 to /no DL and the absolutely necessary glycol the Gendorf chlorine capacity is certainly insufficient. Or, at any rate, simultaneously with the reconstruction	

DOCUMENT BOOK 5 B AMBROS

Table of Contents

for Document Book 5 B for Otto AMBROS

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
----------	----------	----------	------

of the DL plant he ought to have provided installations for the unloading and storage of chlorine from sources outside the plant. This, however, was done only in the last stage of the war. Likewise, the necessary enlargement of the water gas- and hydrogen plant was projected much too late. Even at the end of the war the expansion of the hydrogen purification required as well had not been taken up at all and the greater part of the machinery necessary for production had not arrived yet.

2.) Another confirmation of my assumption I find in the inner attitude of Dr. Ambros in regard to the question of poison gas manufacture. Repeatedly he spoke to me about the frightful idea of an impending chemical war. Furthermore, it was known to all of us what quantities of lost the Americans had been able to produce at the end of World War I, and from that we formed an idea of the capacity to be expected regarding the production of lost for World War II."

4 - 7



Affidavit.

I, Dr. Hermann Schnell, residing in Leverkusen-Beyerswerk, Friedrich Bayerstr. 11, was at first duly warned that I make myself liable to punishment by rendering a false affidavit. I declare in lieu of oath that my statement is true and was made to be presented in evidence before the Military Tribunal VI at the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

In April 1943 I came to Gendorf in order to take charge temporarily as directing engineer of the reconstruction of the DL-plant on project 117.

Before that - early 1943 - an attempt was made to start the factories. The result was disastrous. The production coils did not turn out half of the expected capacity, besides the product was unstable and therefore unfit for use.

After looking into the records of the experiment, I found the results not so bad, that the recognized deficiencies could not have been corrected by rearrangements.

Therefore I was very much surprised, when Dr. Ambros in the spring of 1943 gave the order to tear down completely project 117, without regard to the fact that thereby the production of poison gas was made impossible for a long period of time. In the interest of making the production of poison gas possible it would have doubtlessly been more correct to keep the factory going and to build a second plant to make up for the deficient quantity. The cost would not have been higher than that of reconstructing the original plant. There can be no doubt that a small quantity of poison gas is better than none at all. Herr Dr. Hagen, who then was Dr. Ambros's right hand man in matters of poison gas, shared my view entirely, when I discussed this point with him.

- 2 -

Furthermore it is an old fact gained from experience that a newly built, so complicated factory as was the Lostfactory never would work satisfactorily at the first try. Herr Dr.Ambros, who from long years of experience surely knows this much better than I, nevertheless issued the incisive order to rebuild the factory immediately.

Therefore I am absolutely convinced that Dr.Ambros beginning 1943 not only had no interest in the completion of the Lostfactory in Gendorf, but even intended to prevent it in order to hinder the employment of poison gas.

Supplementary I remark the following:

I am a half Jew and therefore was then in a politically difficult situation, Herr Dr.Ambros never used this fact in order to make any difficulties for me. To the contrary, I believe from his conduct towards me that he appreciated me as a human being and as an engineer.

Leverkusen, 30 January 1948

Signed: Dr.Hermann Schnell

- 2 -

Doc. No. 519

- 3 -

Doc. Roll Nr. 175/1948.

Above signature of Herr Dr. Hermann Schnell, Dipl. Ing.  
in Leverkusen-Bayerwerk, Friedrich Bayerstr. 11, executed  
before me in his own handwriting, is, herewith, certified.  
Identification: Kennkarte and Identification card.  
Opladen, 30 January 1948.

The permanent Deputy of the Notary Public Max Heckmann

Signed: Signature

(Dr. Heinrichs)

Stamp:

Assessor

The correctness and completeness of above copy is  
herewith certified.

Nuernberg, 5 February 1948.

Signed: Karl Hoffmann

( Attorney at Law)

Affidavit.

I, Dr. Max GUBER, Fahrthohl, post office Halfing/Upper Bavaria, have been made aware that I should render myself liable to punishment by submitting a false affidavit. I declare in lieu of oath that my statement conforms to the truth and was made to be delivered in evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I was the Deputy Manager of the Inorganic Works Gendorf from 5 January 1941 up to the end of the war. For this reason I know the production conditions of the Gendorf plant from my own work there.

The construction of the Gendorf DL plant (D-Loet-Hustard Gas) was taken up, I think, towards the end of 1940. At any rate, on the occasion of my first visit to Gendorf in the end of 1940, the DL plant was only barely finished in brick and no installation of machines had been begun yet. Not until the beginning of 1943 was DL produced for the first time, however of a quality that did not come up to the standards fixed by the H.M. (Army Ordnance Office). Also it was found right away that the planned capacity (4 cells, each cell 1 000 tons a month) could not be reached. This grave failure is to be explained by the circumstance that the DL plant at Gendorf was based on the process developed in the laboratory at Leverkusen, but that the trial plant Huals could then no longer essentially influence the construction in Gendorf, although its results ought to have been made the base of the large scale plant at Gendorf. The trial plant Huals was put in operation much too late.



- 2 -

Due to this failure in the beginning of 1943 there were lively arguments with Leverkusen and a meeting on this subject came about at Ludwigshafen in June/July 1943, in which all I.G. and OKH departments concerned participated. There a thoroughgoing change of the principles and machinery of the Gendorf DL plant was decided on.

In my opinion, however, considering the standard of technical experience of the I.G. and specially the know-how of Dr. Ambros, it would not have been necessary to change course so radically. I see this opinion thoroughly confirmed by the fact that we later (1944) succeeded in producing a relatively serviceable D-lost net in the planned quantity of 1000 tons per month, but only 400 tons per month per cell, using the remaining two old cells.

I saw the real motive for the Ludwigshafen decision caused essentially by Dr. Ambros, rather in his desire to side-track the DL production altogether. This judgement is based on the following facts:

1.) Gendorf was designed to produce both glycol and DL. However, the capacity of the intermediate installations producing basic items necessary for both products, which were at Gendorf, was insufficient for a simultaneous manufacture of both products. This applies not only to the manufacture of ethylene and hydrogen, but particularly to the capacity of the chlorine plant. If Dr. Ambros had not wanted to curtail DL production for a long time by the reconstruction of the DL plant decided upon in 1943, he could have tried to force the greatest possible output by making small changes, because for 4 000 tons a month and the absolutely necessary glycol the amount of chlorine produced at

- 5 -



- 3 -

Gendorf was insufficient anyhow. Or, at any rate, simultaneously with the reconstruction of the DL plant he ought to have provided installations for the unloading and storage of chlorine from sources outside the plant. This, however, was done only in the very last stage of the war. Likewise, the necessary enlargement of the watergas and hydrogen plant was planned much too late. Even at the end of the war the expansion of the hydrogen purification facilities, which was also necessary, had not been even started and the greater part of the machinery necessary for production had not arrived yet.

2.) Another confirmation of my supposition is to be found in the personal attitude of Dr. Ambros towards the question of the manufacture of products for chemical warfare. Repeatedly he spoke to me about the frightful idea of an impending chemical war. Furthermore it was known to all of us what quantities of mustard gas the Americans had been able to produce towards the end of World War I, and from that we formed an idea of the capacity to be expected regarding their production of mustard gas for World War II.

Actually, DL production at Gendorf was discontinued temporarily in 1943, and then definitely in the late fall of 1944. The final capacity, say of December 1944, was only theoretical, since the large scale plant was still in process of reorganisation and the two old cells together could only have produced approx. 800 tons a month at the most.

Fahrtbichl, 30 December 1947

Post Office Holfing

signed: Dr. Max Gruber

Doc.Reg.No. 1023/1947.

The authenticity of the above signature of Dr. Max Gruber,

chemist, executed before me, is hereby certified. Dr. Max Urber  
lives at present at Fahrbühl, community of Halting/Upper  
Bavaria.

Identified by identification card.

Prien, 30 December 1947.

The Notary

Signature

Rubber stamp.

Certified true copy.

Murnberg, 25 January 1948.

signed: Karl Hoffmann

Attorney at Law.

*Case 6  
Defense*

DOCUMENT BOOK VI A AMEROS

TRIBUNAL VI

CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK VI A

for

Otto AMEROS

Preliminary  
Products for Powder and  
Explosives.

submitted by the  
Defense Counsel

Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law.

*Gung*



## DOCUMENT BOOK VI A AMERUS

Table of Contents for Document Book VI A  
for Otto Andres

Doc. No. Exh. No.	Contents	Page
OA-1	Presentation of Benzene Chemistry in the form of a tree with the trunk of benzene carbohydrates and the branch called Intermediary Products (e.g., dinitro-diphenylamine), from which either DYES or HIGH EXPLOSIVES could be derived.	1
OA-2	Presentation of ETHYLENE CHEMISTRY in the form of a tree with the ethylene trunk and the branch DIGLYCOL, as a preliminary product for powder.	2
OA-601	Excerpt from the cross-examination of the American expert, H.M. ELIAS from O. Andres, on 30 September 1947; Record, pp. 1418 ff, of the English text. Question Andres (to OA-1): "Is it correct that by nitration of toluene one obtains an intermediate product which, if produced under normal, peace time conditions can be used for the production of dyestuffs and if there are disturbed times or if the state demands it, this same material can be used to produce explosives?" Answer Elias: "That is correct." Question Andres (to OA-2): "From those facts in the picture there is a big trunk arising. Dr. Elias, did I exaggerate by showing the ethylene tree so strong? Is the picture correct in indicating that ethylene and ethylene oxide have so many branches?" Answer Elias: "They are important compounds".	3-7
OA-602	Affidavit of Dr. Berthold Schnell, of 20 December 1947. Schnell describes the production development of the intermediary product, DINITRODIPHENYLAMINE (from the benzene tree) as a first step for DYES and HIGH EXPLOSIVES. "The production program of the intermediary-product department, embracing about 500 products, also includes dinitrodiphenylamine, which was produced in Ludwigshafen ... since 1908. The product was used as an acetate silk dye (coliten-gold 3 G - coliten yellow 3 G) and as a by-product for sulphur dye-stuffs."	



## DOCUMENT BOOK VI A AMBROS

Table of Contents for Document Book VI A  
for Otto Ambros

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
		The "Production Increased during the second world war took place at the orders of the High Command of the Navy."	8 - 9
OA-603		Excerpt from the memorandum on the meeting of the Technical Committee on 22 July 1936: Ambros reports on developments in the field of ETHYLENE. "The chief market today is in glycols (anti-freeze), glycol-ethers (solvent), and in the large assortment of various ox-ethylene (oxo-ethyl-ether) textile est lyols."	10-11
OA-604		Memorandum of the patent department at Ludwigshafen on a discussion of Otto Ambros with Mr. Partridge and Mr. Mussett of the Shawinigan Chem. Ltd., on 1 August 1939, concerning the licensing of the I.G. process for production of ETHYLENE from acetylene. "Shawinigan's interest in deriving ethylene from acetylene is based primarily on the possibility of further processing of the ethylene into glycols and its derivatives. ..... One also expects to use Di-glycols for softening tobacco, and ethylene-oxide for the early ripening of fruits besides other fields of application which lie chiefly with the softeners and solvents."	12-14
OA-605		Letter of thanks from Mr. Mussett to Otto Ambros, of 9 August 1939.	15
OA-606		Affidavit of Dr. Otto Roser, of 17 October 1947. From 1936 Roser worked in the Ludwigshafen glycol factory where he was acting plant director since 1937, and official plant director since 1940. He submits the monthly figures for the ethylene-oxide production of the Ludwigshafen plant in 1939. "The fact that in 1939, i.e., directly before the outbreak of war, the Ludwigshafen ETHYLENE-OXIDE PRODUCTION was so strongly throttled for commercial reasons, is, in my opinion, a clear proof that in the Werk Ludwigshafen a. Rhein	

## DOCUMENT BOOK VI A AMERCS

Table of Contents for Document Book VI A  
for Otto Ambros

Doc.No. Exh.No.	Contents	Page
	and in the plant management there, no- one expected an imminent outbreak of war."	16-18
OA-607	Affidavit of Dr. Christian Zahn, of 17 July 1947. Zahn was an official technical chemist at the Army Ordnance Office, Berlin, and as Ministerialrat, director of a department for chemical-technical pro- curement and administrative problems. He states that the German army was espe- cially concerned to find a substitute for the raw material, glycerine, for powder production. This substitute product was found in DICLYCOLE. "At that time (1936), the first trial experiments were begun to compensate at least to some extent for the complete destruction of the industries important for army interests, and at least to assure the approved output requirements of the army of one hundred thousand, i.e., to meet the military demands. But for this purpose I.G. Farbenindustrie proved to be one of the most inaccessible and completely disconcerting negotiators in a number of fields."	19-21
OA-608	Excerpt from Industrial and Engineering Chemistry, Vol. 19, No. 4, p. 474, (April 1927): Properties of DIETHYLENE GLYCOL by Dr. H. Rinkenbach. "....it appears highly probable that diethylene glycol will assume some importance in the explosives industry in the near future, ....."	22
OA-609	Excerpt from Industrial and Engineering Chemistry, Vol. 19, No. 8, p. 925, (August 1 927): Preparation and Properties of DIETHYLENEGLYCOL DINITRATE by Dr. H. Rinkenbach. "Although comparatively insensitive, the compound is explosive when mixed with similar compounds. For this reason it will probably be of some interest in explosives practice, particularly because several of the other properties found add to the value of the compound from this viewpoint."	23

## DOCUMENT BOOK VI A AMBROS

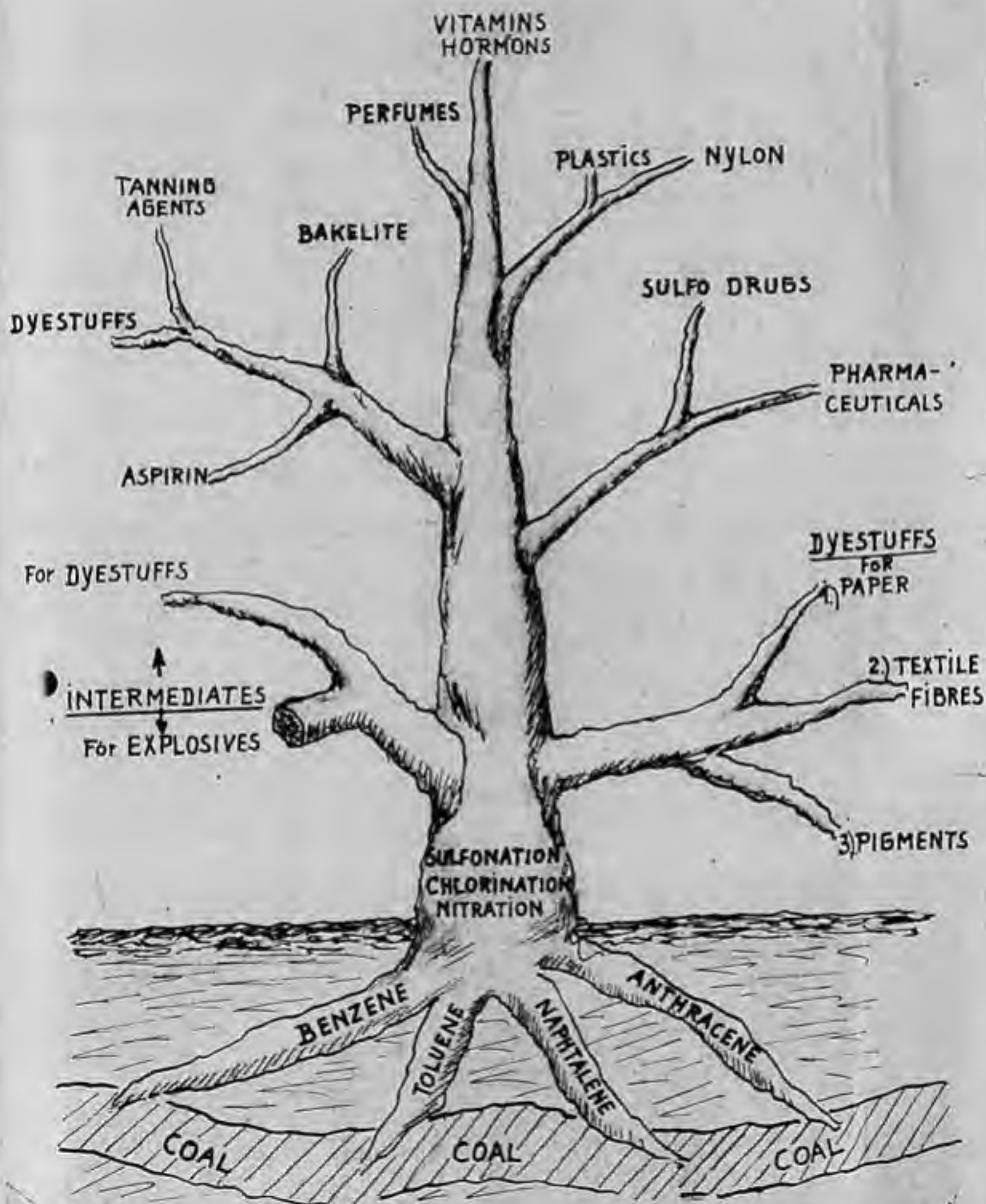
Table of Contents for Document Book VI A  
for Otto Ambros

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
OA-610		Affidavit of Dr. Emil A. Ehmman, of 24 September 1947. Since 1935 Ehmman was referent for chemistry in the Army Ordnance Office of the Army High Command where, until the end of the war, he was engaged and finally held the position of Ministerial-rat and Department chief. "Corresponding to the structure of the German chemical industry, the I.G. Farbenindustrie played a leading part in the chemistry of preliminary and intermediary products; however, it kept back as far as possible and contrary to the first world war, from projects of the second group (powder, high explosives, and war materials as such)." 24-27	
OA-611		Affidavit of Dr. Hans Wittmer, of 26 June 1947. Wittmer was director of the Werk Gendorf of the Amergano G.m.b.H., founded at the beginning of its operations in 1941. During 1937-1939, he participated in discussions on plans in the field of <del>ETHYLENE-OXIDES</del> . "Dr. Ambros had nothing to do with explosives, but he did deal with the preliminary DI-GLYCOLI, which became important as a glycerine substitute for mine explosives and for the production of propulsive powder (Treibpulver)" 23-25	
OA-612		Patent certificate of the Imperial Patent Office, No. 288240, drawn up on 23 January 1915, issued on 21 October 1915. Inventor, Dr. Arthur Staehler in Berlin-Steglitz. Processes for the production of high explosives with the use of <del>ETHYLENE-DIAMINE-DINITRAT</del> (later called PR- or N 4-salt). 30-31	
OA-613		Affidavit of Dr. Friedrich Teller, on 20 December 1947. Since the spring of 1939, Teller has been director of the glycerine-department at Ludwigshafen to which the penta-erythrite factory belongs. "The production of the glycerine substitute product <del>ETHYLENEGLYCERITE</del> was begun in Ludwigshafen in 1930". As the scarcity of glycerine in Germany became more apparent during the year which followed, penta-erythrite was increasingly employed	

Table of Contents for Document Book VI A  
for Otto Ambros

Doc.No. Exp.No.	Contents	Page
	in the technical field, both in the laguer <sup>240</sup> naturally in the high explosive industries. Since a number of other penta-erythrite factories arose in Germany besides the Werk Ludwigshafen, Ludwigshafen began more and more to specialize in quality for laguer pur- poses of penta-erythrite IG. "From 1943 onwards, Ludwigshafen produced only penta-erythrite IG".	32
0-614	Affidavit of Dr. Wolfgang Alt, of 30 January 1948. Since 1941 Alt was a chemical expert in Ludwigshafen for acetylene and ethy- lene chemistry. "Thus, in 1943, only 13 % of the pro- duced quantity of acetylene and ethylene was processed for purely war products." Less than one-third of this 13% - i.e. 4% - are attributable to I.G. plants. On the other hand, the share of I.G. in the total German acetylene and ethy- lene production amounted to two-thirds (66%). "These results confirm the fact which is obvious to every technician, that the bulk of acetylene and ethylene chemistry always lies predominantly in the civilian sector.... This is particularly true of I.G., whose leading acetylene and ethy- lene chemist, was Dr. Otto Ambros. The above-listed figures are based upon a French publication of the Directeur Technique of the BASF Ludwigshafen, Dr. André Weiss.	33-37
0A-615	Diagram on "A study for the evaluation of the German powder and high explosive expansion goal", of 27 February 1939 (Excerpt from Document VI-8790). The powder and high explosive output of 1939 amounted to only about 35 % of the urgent plan goal, which in turn is substantially under the low demands (green column: demands of a modern war) (2. 167).	38

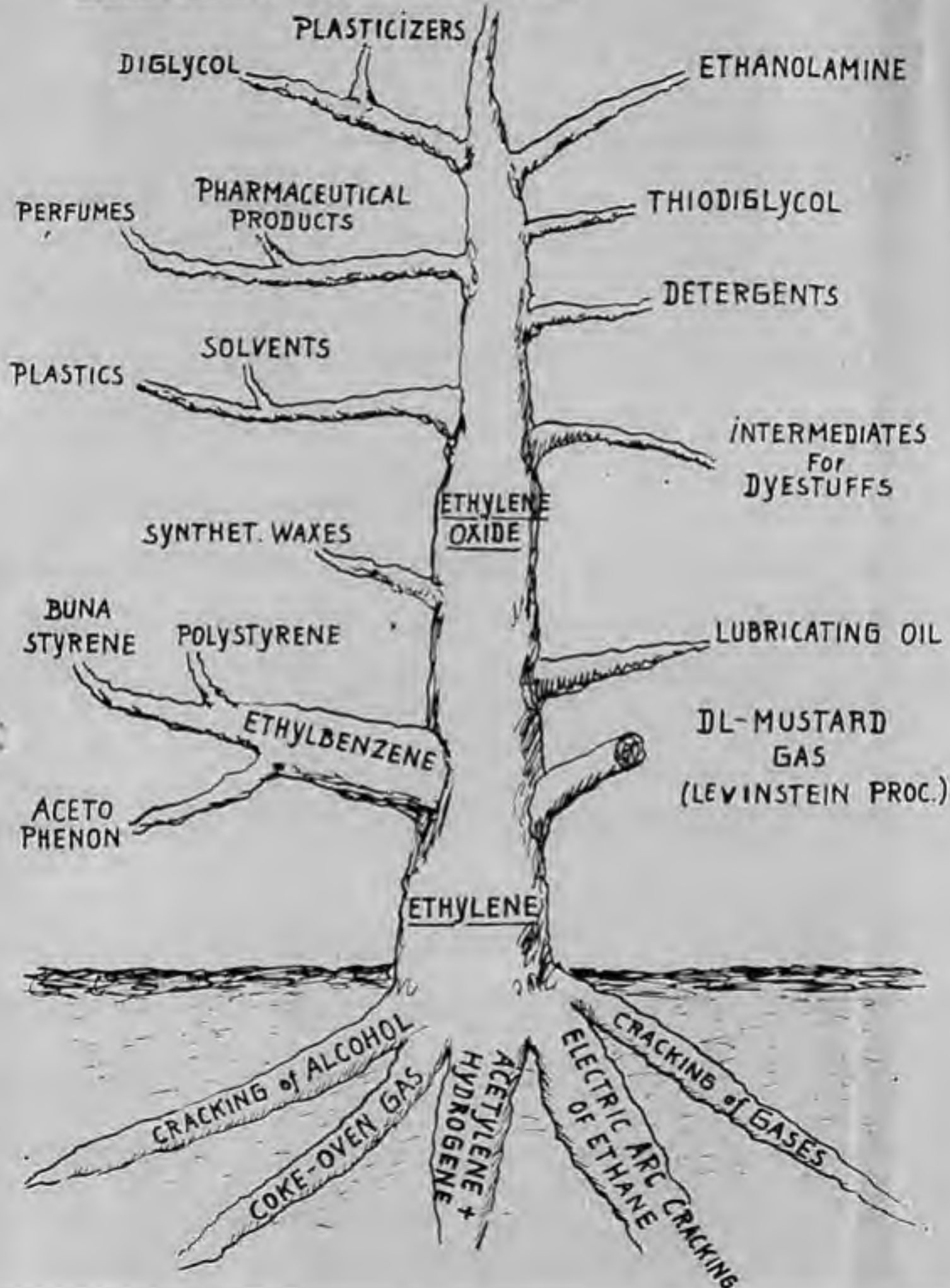


BENZENE TREE



# ETHYLENE TREE

GLYCOL  
(PRESTONE)



Excerpt from the Minutes.

Court No. VI, Case No. 6 of 30 Sept. 47-1-MB-13-1-Durra

(Int. Stanler)

AFTERNOON SESSION

pp. 1418 ff. of the English edition

page 1394 ff of the German edition

(Cross-examination of the American expert

W.M. Elias by O. Aaburs).

BY Dr. AMROB:

Q.: Dr. Elias, on the first picture, "benzene tree", is it in general outline correct, that in the last analysis from coal we derive benzene, toluene, naphthalene and anthracene; and then, by a special process in the chemistry of intermediate sulphonation, chlorination and nitration?

You emphasized by way of introduction that you were an expert in the field of intermediates so that I have the pleasure of examining you on your own field.

This tree is supposed to show that, from these intermediates, one can make dyestuffs for paper, textiles dyes, for pigments; that also one can make pharmaceuticals

tics and the famous sulfa drugs, the much-acked-for  
nylons, perfumes, bakelite, tanning agents, even vita-  
mines and hormones. Is that correct?

A: Yes, that is correct.

Q: I should like to draw your attention to this lower  
branch at the left. It says here "Intermediates".

There are two arrows, one to dyestuffs, the other to  
explosives. The whole chart is right, is it?

A: I think so.

Q: Dr. Elise, is it correct that by nitration of tolu-  
ene one obtains an intermediate product which, if pro-  
duced under normal, peace time conditions can be used  
for the production of dyestuffs and if there are  
disturbed times or if the state demands it, this  
same material can be used to produce explosive?

A: That is correct.

Q: Speaking as a chemist to another chemist, may I  
give two examples? It is true, for example, that dini-  
trotoluene, if reduced to diamine, in a dyestuff factory  
becomes an intermediate for brown leather dyes; but  
if the producer sends the dinitrotoluene to an ex-  
plosives factory, and if he nitrates it further, he  
obtains the dangerous trinitrotoluene which you have  
mentioned, TNT. Is that true?

A: That is correct.

Q: Even by the same process it can take either one direction or the other, to put it simply, and is it true, Dr. Elms, that in the production of TNT there are two distinct steps: the completely harmless production of the intermediate dinitrotoluene, which can be produced in any of the older dye factories; and, second, the dangerous explosive which is carried out far away from human settlement protected by banks of earth, hidden in the woods?

A: Yes, that is true.

.....

BY DR. AMLOS:

I want to leave propellor chemistry now, witness. I should like to draw the attention of the Tribunal to the second chart, the "ethylene tree".

.....

Q: From these roots in the picture there is a big trunk rising. Dr. Elms, did I exaggerate by showing the ethylene tree so strong? Is the picture correct in indicating that ethylene and ethylene oxide have so many branches?

A: They are important compounds.

Q.: I believe it is a big industry in America, as well as here. Is it correct in the picture that ethylene goes over into ethylene oxide and that the top of the tree is glycol or, in America, prestene?

A.: That is correct. That is one of the most important products from ethylene for general volume use.

Q.: Witness, is it not then a fundamental mistake to assume that the production of ethylene, a priori, must lead to poison gas or do you not agree with me that ethylene was invented for much more useful purposes?

A.: Well, I believe that the only use of ethylene is not mustard gas; there are other uses.

Q.: And is it not a mistake to assert that ethylene oxide is used only for the production of diglycol to go into gun powder or poison gas; or on the upper half of the tree on the basis of ethylene oxide is there not a very interesting and valuable branch of chemistry?

A.: What you say is perfectly correct. There are many possible uses for ethylene oxide that are good and peaceful, .....



I herewith certify that the above excerpts from the English edition of the minutes for Court No. VI, Case No. 6 of 30 September 1947, pages 1417 ff, are a true and correct copy of the original.

Muenberg, 1 February 1948.

Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a complete and correct copy.

Muenberg, 3 February 1948.

Assistant Defense Counsel.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

11 February 1948

I, Gerta KAMENOVA, No. 20151, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of the Document Book VI A Amenos No. 601.

Gerta KAMENOVA,  
No. 20151.

## Affidavit.

I, Dr. Barthold Schmeil, born on 9 January 1898, residing at Lohrstr. 23, Ludwigshafen on Rhine, have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I hereby declare on oath that my statement is the truth and was made in order to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Auerberg, Germany.

On 1 December 1935 I took employment as a chemist with the Badische Anilin- & Soda-Fabrik, which later became the I.G. Farbenindustrie on Rhine. Since 1 December 1938 I was employed in the In-line Department, which later was called the Department of Intermediate Products; since 1940 I was the assistant chief, and, since the end of the war, the chief of this department.

Included in the production program of the Department of Intermediate Products, a program which embraced about 500 products, was Dinitrodiphenylamine, which was manufactured in Ludwigshafen since 1903 according to still available data of the works manager. The product was used as dye for acetate silk (coliston yellow 3G) and as a preliminary material for sulphur dyes. The increase in the figures for production in the period of 1914 to 1917 to about 1000 tons per year in 1917 indicates that as early as the first world war Dinitrodiphenylamine was used as a preliminary material for a war product.

After the first world war production reverted to a normal peace-time level, but in the second world war it went up again to a new high, which can best be shown by comparing the production figures for 1933 of about 200 tons with the figure of about 2000 tons for 1942.

This increase in production in the second world war took place pursuant to an order of the High Command of the Navy. Ludwigshafen was required to supply Dinitrodiphenylamine, which of itself is entirely harmless and has none of the characteristics of an explosive, to explosives firms, who manufactured a special explosive from it through tetranitration, for torpedoes, as far as I am informed.

At the end of 1942 the production of Dinitrodiphenylamine in Ludwigshafen was discontinued. I do not know whether from this time on the manufacture of the product was taken over by another firm, which was located in Central Germany as far as the Ludwigshafen official in charge and I myself can recall, or whether the armed Forces had no

DOCUMENT BOOK VI A AIBROS No. 602

more interest in the product.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 20 December 1947

signed: Dr. Berthold Schnell

I, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, residing at Lonsenstrasse 4, Ludwigshafen on Rhine, hereby certify and attest the above signature, executed in my presence, of Dr. Berthold Schnell, whose address is Wecklerstrasse 25, Ludwigshafen on Rhine.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 20 December 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Certified true and complete copy:

Ludwigshafen Rhine, 22 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

10 February 1948

I, George Goodman, No. 34789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of document Book VI AIBROS No. 602.

George GOODMAN, No. 34789.

Excerpt from the stenographical report of the conference of the I.G. (Technical Committee) at 0930 hours, Thursday, 22 July 35, at Frankfurt/Main

(page 2)

# I. Development of the ethylene field.

Ambros:

Extremely important in the ethylene field is the chemistry of ethylene oxide, in which the I.G. has been working for about two years now, particularly in Ludwigshafen.

Today the chief market is in glycol, the glycol ethers and the large group of various oxo-ethylized textile auxiliary products. As a result of the satisfactory development which has recently been taking place, the sources of ethylene are hardly adequate to keep up with the increase in sales. At the present time the requirements are being filled by means of the production of ethylene from alcohol and by means of the splitting or cracking of coal-furnace gas; the total production by these means is about 3,500 tons of ethylene per year.

The shortage now, particularly, the desire to avoid resorting to the expensive sources of ethylene, induced us to develop an ethylene basis in the way it was done at the Chemische Fabrik Hohen. These plans led to the founding of the new I.G. Werke Zweckel, where the ethylene fraction is converted from the split coal-furnace gas of the Hydriermwerk (Hydrogenation Works) Scholven. Thus, in the future Hohen and Zweckel will supply the requirements for ethylene oxide in the amount of about 3,500 tons per year at a more favorable price. On the other hand, the alcohol-ethylene plants in Ludwigshafen and Central Germany, with their high operating costs, will be shut down and kept in reserve.

Another favorable source of ethylene is the processing of the waste gases from hydrogenation. Particularly advantageous results in this connection will be achieved by the oxygen dehydrogenation process according to Klein-Oppen, which is presently being developed in a technical plant.

in 1936.

In this connection there was also a discussion of the situation as developed through the development of the Fischer installations and the possibilities of competing with the American olefin chemistry.

On the new Dolton/Zenkel basis, which is both inexpensive and, for the time being, adequate, it will be possible to carry on with the rising development of ethylene chemistry in an increased degree, especially if the favorable cost prices in the future should also make a corresponding readjustment of the selling prices possible.

I hereby certify that the above copy of an excerpt is a true copy of the minutes of the Tea conference of 22 July 1936 (photostat of which was presented to us).

Muenberg, 6 January 1948

signed: Dr. Gether  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Certified true and complete copy:  
Muenberg, 25 January 1948

signed: Carl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

10 February 1948

I, George Goodman, No. 34789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of document book VI A MBROS No. 503.

George GOODMAN,  
No. 34789.



Patents Department  
Ludwigshafen  
1/55.

Distribution:  
Director Dr. Jachros  
L.I. Department  
Department L, Frankfurt/Main  
Office of the Technical Committee,  
Frankfurt/Main  
Dr. Roell.

#### Conference

with Mr. Dartran and Mr. Russell of the Shawinigan Chem. Ltd.  
in Ludwigshafen on 1 August 1939.

Representatives of I.G. present:

Director Dr. Jachros  
Dr. Roell  
Dr. Klobner

The two gentlemen had come to Ludwigshafen to discuss the project of producing ethylene from acetylene, as starting material the Shawinigan Ltd. has a fairly pure acetylene from carbide at its disposal, which is purified for the other purposes of the Shawinigan Ltd. by treatment with sulphuric acid. More detailed information on the purification of the acetylene is in prospect. The interest on the part of the Shawinigan Ltd. in producing ethylene from acetylene stems mainly from the possibilities of making a further conversion of the ethylene to glycol and its derivatives. Thus, in Canada alone there is said to be a market for about 500 tons of glycol a month as an anti-freezing mixture. Further, there are said to be opportunities in the use of diglycol as a tobacco humidifier, and of ethylene oxide for the premature ripening of fruit, in addition to other applications, mainly as softening agents and solvents. The interest is limited to Canada. There is no interest in exportation to Europe, including England, there is also no interest in exportation to the United States, since the customs duty is much too high. On the other hand, the Shawinigan Ltd. expects a protective tariff from the Government for the manufacture of glycol in Canada of about 25-30 %, so that the project should be attractive under all circumstances. At the present time the interest is limited to a production of 500 tons of ethylene per month, which corresponds to about 400 - 500 tons of ethylene glycol. As available hydrogen there is a choice of hydrogen from the acetylene plant or from the burning of acetylene to carbon black. The quantity of hydrogen required for 500 tons of ethylene per month would be 300,000 cubic meters per month.

In the conversion of the ethylene to ethylene oxide the chemists of the Shawinigan Ltd. are still undecided between the direct catalytic process of the Soc. Francaise de Catalyse Generale and the chlorohydrin process. In the latter process they will have to get their chlorine supply from the BCC, a prospect to which they are not very favorable. For this reason the plan is also being entertained of dropping their work with ethylene and delivering it to the BCC for conversion to chlorohydrin, etc.

For the surrendering of experiences, including working drawings and the other information for a installation to produce the planned 300 tons of ethylene per month, the I.O. would require a compensation from the Shawinigan Ltd., preferably in the form of initial payment plus a small royalty from current production. As the initial payment the sum of 600,000 R. was mentioned, which would be paid in three or four installments; for example, a fourth of the total might be paid when the contract was signed, another fourth upon release of the experienced and other information, another fourth when the operation of the plant was begun, and the final fourth a year later. According to a rough, tentative estimate by the I.O., the costs of a plant with a capacity of 300 tons per month would be from 700,000 to 1,000,000 R. This sum would include:

purification of the acetylene, its  
hydrogenation and the purification  
by the Lando process of the  
ethylene so produced.

An important feature of the I.O. process is that the hydrogenation of the acetylene is practically complete, besides the ethylene there is a production of only about 2% of ethane and an insignificant amount of higher hydrocarbons.

The representatives of the Shawinigan Ltd. acknowledged the offer of the I.O. Apparently they regard the terms proposed as reasonable. At all events they said that, after their own checking of the calculations, they would probably consider the I.O. process with the time of payment suggested with more favor than the projects which they had so far considered of producing ethylene by the electrolytic hydrogenation of acetylene.

The Canadian also supplied us with the following information on the:

The electric power available costs about 0.3 cents per Kw. The gas-load rate is figured at 0.1 cent per Kw. In the case of hydrogen the heating cost is the basis of calculation at present; this is figured at 6 cents per 1,000 cubic feet, which corresponds to about 1 pf. per cubic meter of hydrogen. The price of chlorine, which would have to be bought, is between 2.9 - 3 cents per lb., that is, about 13.5 pf. per kilogram.

Dr. Barthelemy and Dr. Besant promised that they would provide us with additional information in writing upon their return to Montreal, which will provide the basis for a more exact calculation of the costs of the process and the plant.

Signed: E. L. Bar

Continued from last document copy:

Delivered to: This, 12 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Director General

#### CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

10 February 1948

I, George Goodling, No. 34789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of document No. 12 AIRSOS No. 804.

George GOODLING, No. 34789.

SEAFISHIGAN, LIMITED

HAROLD ROOSE \*  
LLOYD'S AVENUE,  
LONDON, E.C. 6

August 9th 1939

Dr. Otto Ambros,  
The F.R. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft,  
Ludwigshafen am Rhein  
GERMANY

Dear Dr. Ambros,

I would just like to tell you that Mr. Bartram and  
I got home safely, and I now hasten to express to you  
our gratitude for your very great hospitality and kindnesses  
to us whilst we were in Mannheim and Ludwigshafen.

With kind regards from us both, also to Dr. Roell  
and Dr. Kleber,

I remain, with kind regards,

Yours sincerely,

signed: Rose tt.

EN/12.

Certified true copy of the exact copy of the original letter,  
in the records of the Ludwigshafen Trials.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 12 December 1947  
Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defence Counsel

Certified true and complete copy:

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 15 December 1947  
Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defence Counsel

DOCUMENT BOOK VI A AMBROS No.805

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

10 February 1948

I, George Goodman, No. 34789, do hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document book VI A Ambros No.805.

George GOODMAN, No.34789.



## Affidavit

I, Dr. Otto Rose, residing in Heidelberg, Dossenhofen-landstrasse 85, have been informed that any false statement on my part will render me liable to punishment. I declare on oath that my statement corresponds to the truth and was made to be admitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the place of trial in Karlsruhe, Germany.

On 1 January 1934 I entered the employ of the Ludwigshafen works of the ... Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft as a chemist. In December 1935 I was transferred to the glycol plant of the Ludwigshafen works and was acting in charge of it from 1937 onwards. On 1 January 1939 I took charge officially.

The glycol plant mainly comprises the following manufacturing installations:

for the manufacture of ethylene-oxide from ethylene and for the conversion of the ethylene-oxide into numerous vinyl products for paper and requirements (such as solvents, plastics and auxiliary textile materials) as well as glycol (anti-freeze compound and diglycol (high explosives primary product)).

The variety of products derived from ethylene-oxide renders ethylene not only indispensable to mass-tire industry but it also makes it one of the most important intermediate products for war production. Based on the records still existing of the glycol plant managed by me as deputy in 1938, I am in a position to make a statement on the development of the ethylene-oxide production at the Ludwigshafen works for the year 1939, as follows:

January	390 765	kg	July	191 212	kg
February	353 396	"	August	25 236	"
March	10 369	"	September	306 447	"
April	-	"	October	400 718	"
May	136 346	"	November	406 416	"
June	20 291	"	December	436 465	"

In 1936 the capacity of the Ludwigshafen ethylene plant amounted to 450 tons a month. The above quoted figures of the actual production reveal that only during the months after the outbreak of war, i. e. starting Sept. 1939, production increased and that by December it almost reached the then highest possible output with a projected 455 tons. The fact that the ethylene oxide production decreased considerably during the latter half of 1939 and that it ceased altogether in 1941 can be explained in that the ethylene oxide plant in Ludwigshafen, being, however, not a profitable one, was only to be utilized for the indirect economy of meeting special requirements.

If in 1939 in Leeds, the fact could not be counted on the possibility of war, the, in view of the importance of the ethylene oxide production for our company, would have been sufficient reason for at least the retention or only in the first three quarters prior to the onset. I would say that the pre-requisites for production as well as the material basis for the full utilization of the production capacity and the possibility to further increase this increased production, including storage facilities for the finished products, also existed during the first three war years. I further wish to point out that in 1939 the plant in Leeds, England, was still free to raise the production in response to the extent of the ethylene oxide production. The fact that still in 1939, the plant in Leeds, England, was free to raise the production in response to the extent of the ethylene oxide production for commercial reasons is, in my opinion, other proof that none...

in the Indagations plant or its cover was anticipated  
the capture of her.

Lodged for Rhine, 17 October 1947

signed: Dr. Otto Roser

I hereby certify and attest that above signature was  
assisted before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense  
Counsel, in Ludwigschwan/Rhin, by Dr. Otto Roser,  
Haidelberg.

Ludwigschwan/Rhin, 17 October 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I hereby certify the correctness and completeness  
of above copy.

Lodged for Rhine, 21 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

11 February 1948

I, George Goodwin, No. 34789, hereby certify that I am  
thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages,  
and that the above is a true and correct translation of  
document book VI A Ambros No. 606.

George GOODWIN, No. 34789.

AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Christian Zehm, residing in Lahr - Dinglingen, Flugplatzstrasse 29, have been cautioned that any false statement on my part will render me liable to punishment. I declare on oath that my statement corresponds to the truth and that it was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice, Kuerstberg, Germany.

I am related to Dr. Ambros and Dr. ter Meer neither by blood nor by marriage, nor am I related to any other gentlemen of the former Direktorium of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. I have never been a member of the NSDAP or of any of its formations nor did I ever apply for party membership.

During the period on which I report I was official technical chemist at the Army Ordnance Office in Berlin and in my capacity as Ministerialrat (Ministerial Councillor) I was head of a department for all matters pertaining to chemical-technical procurement and administration. This department finally developed into a procurement for anti-gas and smoke screen equipment, powder and high explosives, chemicals and raw material requirements of the various munition plants of the army and the like. In connection with this it took care of the factories in that line, especially therefore of the chemical factories, and administered and controlled the proper technical use of the funds provided by the Army Ordnance Office for possible extensions or new constructions during the war. Eventually and naturally it came within the department's competence to ascertain the quantities of raw material and chemical ingredients needed for the different users of the army in the above mentioned categories, a field, however, into which the Office for Raw- and Working Materials increasingly intruded itself. As a result of my work I became acquainted in the course of time with the most important chemical works and their chief chemists and had ample opportunity to gain an insight into the methods and the mentality of these factories and their representatives.

I have known several of the representatives of the works, which had been merged into the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. in 1925, since World War I. In my recollection I made the acquaintance of Dr. Ambros early in 1933 and probably met Dr. ter Meer even earlier than that.

At that time the first feeble attempts were made to offset at least on a modest scale the complete destruction of the industries, essential to the army and to secure at least the requirements of the 100,000 man army, i.e. to adapt it to military requirements.

However, here the I.G. Farbenindustrie proved to be one of the most difficult firms to approach, who declined to discuss certain subjects altogether. The mentioning of chemical warfare agents was definitely taboo in these circles. The army therefore approached other firms in this matter first.

It was the special concern of the army at that time to find a substitute for glycerine in the powder sector. Evoked by Ameri can publications in 1926 - 1931 the military use of diglycol-dinitrate was also explored in Germany. This chemical compound was regarded by the army as a valuable substitute for nitro glycerene.

To my knowledge the I.G. works in Ludwigshafen had been working in the field of ethylene-chemistry already before World War I so that in 1935 the results were available for the production of

glycol for anti-freeze radiator fluids and the charges of boiling pans and of

diglycol, the nitration and further processing of which was carried out by the appropriate powder plants.

I wish to point out in particular that the discussions centering on these two products were mainly instrumental in bringing me together with the I.G.

The first plant which was to produce for the army exclusively, was set up by Dr. Ley in Wolfen.

When mustard gas (well known) was to be produced on the same lines as ethylene, the gentlemen of the I.G. in question refused to collaborate. Dr. Ley and Dr. Ambros refused a direct participation of their firm in this field on principle. Their only assistance consisted in handing over the process for the production of primary products.

Only later, probably after recommendations by higher authorities and by having it pointed out to them that after all Germany had to be in a position to defend herself, did the gentlemen consent to the construction of government-owned installations by technical experts of the I.G.

At that time as well as during the war Dr. Ley and Dr. Ambros were opposed to chemical warfare, if for no other reason than the fact of the gigantic possibilities of the American chemical industry which was known to both of them only too well.



These two gentlemen were probably responsible for the but limited production of chemical warfare agents in Germany until 1939. On the part of the Berlin offices of the OKW this attitude of the I.G., has been severely criticized on many occasions.

I finally wish to characterize the gentlemen, Dr. ter Meer and Dr. Ambros, in that the pleasure in technical progress and chemical development were the supreme determining factors in their work.

I recollect a good many conversations with Dr. Ambros about the chemical ideas underlying the foundation of the Gendorf plant, where for the first time the hydration of acetylene to ethylene materialized on a large scale. The setting up of a large installation of this order must have thrilled an enthusiastic chemist like Dr. Ambros. He was proud that the chemical engineering problem, the conversion of acetylene into ethylene had become reality on a large scale in Gendorf for the first time in the world. In this he saw a task well worth while for the far-sighted chemist, similar to the technical Benz synthesis which was also developed by him but which did not concern myself personally. Dr. Ambros frequently told me about the new technical advances made and chemical knowledge gained within the scope of his work. To him, as an industrial chemist pure and simple, they meant stimulus and satisfaction but not their exploitation for the purposes of the army still less of aggressive war.

He and Dr. ter Meer would have gladly preferred to be permitted to lead all those plants which they had created in the course of the years, on the lines of peace time production. This is my firm conviction.

Signed: Dr. Christian Zehm

Verification of signature:

Above signature has been executed before me today by Dr. Christian Zehm, chemist in Lahr-Linglingen, Flugplatzstrasse 29, identified by identity card No. 41224 and photograph.

(at-op)

Lahr, 17 July 1947  
Notary I

Justizrat (signature illegible) as Notary Public

(stamp of notary's office)

I hereby certify the correctness and completeness of above copy:

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 11 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang A. I.  
Assistant Defense Counsel

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

15 February 1948

I, George Goodman, No. 34 789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of document book VI & AFB-3 No. 607.

George GOODMAN,  
No. 34 789.

Excerpt of  
JOURNAL OF APPLIED CHEMISTRY Vol. 19, No. 4, p. 274  
(April 1927)

Properties of Diethylene Glycol <sup>1)</sup>

By J. E. Hinkley

Pittsburgh Experiment Station, U.S. Bureau of Mines,  
Pittsburgh, Pa.

Recent developments in the manufacture and use of ethylene glycol <sup>2)</sup> and its diester to <sup>3)</sup> insure a corresponding interest in diethyl and homologous compounds. A study of the diester to of diethylene glycol in the Explosive Chemical Laboratory of the Bureau of Mines resulted in the purification of a quantity of the diethylene glycol, and a search of the literature revealed a striking lack of fundamental data for this compound. As it appears highly probable that diethylene glycol,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{O} \cdot \text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}$ , will assume some importance in the explosives industry in the near future, it was considered desirable to study the chief physical properties of the pure compound, and the results of such a study are given in this paper.

1) Received January 27, 1927. Published with approval of Director, U.S. Bureau of Mines.

The above excerpt is herewith  
certified as being correct.

Ludwigshafen, Rhine, 21 January 1928

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant B. & S. Council

DOCUMENT VI - 11-05 No. 315

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

11 February 1946

I, George Goodson No. 34789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is true and correct excerpt of translation of Document Book VI - 11-05 No. 315.

George Goodson No. 34789.

Excerpts from

INDUSTRIAL AND MINING MINISTRY Vol. 19, No. 8, 1926

(August 1927)

Preparation and Properties of Diethyleneglycol

Dinitrate 1,2)

By Dr. H. Hinkelbach

Pittsburgh Experiment Station, U.S. Bureau of Mines,

Pittsburgh, Pa.

Diethyleneglycol dinitrate may be obtained by the nitration of diethyleneglycol with mixtures of nitric and sulfuric acid. Yields, classification, and safety of the operation depend upon the type of nitrating mixture used.

The principal properties of this compound have been studied and recorded. Although comparatively insensitive, the compound is explosive when mixed with similar compounds. For this reason it will probably be of some interest in explosive practice, particularly because several of the other properties pointed to the value of the compound from this viewpoint.

1) Received March 30, 1927.

2) Published with approval of the Director, U.S. Bureau of Mines.

I hereby certify that the above is a true copy of excerpts from the original document.

Indwagelien on Rhine, 21 January 1928

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant D. Mine Counsel



DOCUMENT BOOK VI A LIBROS No. 409

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

10 February 1948

I, George Goodman, No. 34789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of document book VI A Libros No. 409.

George GOODMAN, No. 34789.

## Affidavit.

I, the undersigned, Emil A. Schenck, having been duly sworn that my false statement on my part will render me liable to punishment hereby make the following statements, under oath, voluntarily and without coercion. I consent to the submission of my statements as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the United States of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany, at the Tribunal's discretion.

- 1) Personal data: Dr. Ing. Emil Albert Schenck, born on 28 March 1905 in Stuttgart-Wiblingen in Württemberg, diploma chemist, at present living in the above town, Reichstr. 15. I am in no way related, either by blood or marriage, to any of the former directors and functionaries of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G., particularly Dr. Otto Ambrose who have been brought for trial before a Military Tribunal of the United States of America in Nuremberg, after scientific and industrial work at home and abroad. I entered the Army Ordnance Office in the Army High Command as a chemical expert at the beginning of 1935. I worked there until the end of the war and obtained finally the position of a ministerial councillor (Ministerialrat) and section chief.
- 2) Data: Due to my work I was in a position to report on the future of some of the leading specialities of the chemical industry in contact with the problems of gun powder, high explosives, and the chemical warfare technique since 1935. I was able to concentrate especially on Dr. Otto Ambrose whom I have known well in an official capacity since 1935.
- 3) The work connected with gun powder, high explosives, and chemical warfare technique falls into 2 groups:
  - a) preliminary and intermediate products for the chemical and products: gun powder, dynamite, and chemical warfare
  - b) gun powder, dynamite and chemical warfare agents as such.

According to the structure of the German Chemical Industry the I.G. Farben took a leading part in the manufacture of preliminary and intermediate chemical products whereas they refrained as much as possible from any work falling into the second group in contrast to their attitude in the first world war. (The leading firm in the field of high explosives, the Dynamit Aktiengesellschaft, formerly Alfred Nobel and Co. (DAG) which had a capital share in the I.G., always appeared as an independent self-contained and entirely self-governed company, particularly in

negotiations with the Army).

- 2) This business policy of the I.G. was particularly pronounced in the case of Dr. A. A. B. R. o. s. of the Ludwigshafen plant. Ambros was an authority on modern organic chemistry in the confines of I.G. Farben. Within his immediate working sphere was for instance the entire ethylene chemistry as a basis for glycols, diglycols and the chemical warfare agent Lost (mustard gas). Although he was willing to further processes for the manufacture of apparently important preliminary products he practically barred the mass production of diglycole (preliminary product for gun powder) or tri-diglycole (preliminary product for mustard gas) as required by the Army from the Ludwigshafen plant. He systematically refused the manufacture of nitrogen products, i.e. high explosives, or of chemical warfare agents.
- 3) Because of this uncompromising attitude the Army Ordnance Office of the Army High Command responsible for the supplies of gun powder, high explosives and chemical warfare agents for the entire Army was forced, into the first few years of re-armament i.e. around 1934/35 to approach other firms such as the Auer Gesellschaft, Goldschmidt, Kallchemie, Riedel de Haen, concerning the erection of new chemical factory installations.
- 4) In order to meet the gun powder requirements of the Army new plants had to be established for the preliminary product diglycole in the form of lock-owned installations which were centralized in the hands of the Army-owned Farben Industriewerke G.m.b.H. Upon request by my office Dr. A. A. B. R. o. s. supplied his experts for the design and the construction of such as the Telfen and Gendorf plants. When the Gendorf plant - originally called Trostberg - was established, the I.G. upon Dr. Ambros' advice withdrew into the role of a technical engineering office and left the construction and the contract negotiations to the Bayerische Stickstoff Werke A.G. For the management of the plant, however, my office, for chemical engineering reasons, had to fall back upon the I.G. via its branch, the Inorgane G. m. b. H., created for this purpose to which the plant was leased.
- 5) As armament production proceeded army requirements increased. For technical reasons many projects thus and again fell to

Dr. Ambrose and his excellent circle of colleagues. In these years they dealt with the design and management of the Buna plant and the new plastic industry which of course necessitated extensive and concentrated experience on their part.

In agreement with the Reich Office for Economic Development, the Army High Command, therefore, demanded an affiliation of the ethylene oxide chemistry to the Buna plants Schkopau and Huls. Ambrose, however, confined himself strictly to the chemical production of preliminary materials, i.e. ethylene oxide, diglycols and thiodiglycols (OXCL) while he left the conversion into the chemical warfare agent for instance to other experts in Huls.

I should mention in this connection that much to the annoyance of the Army Ordnance Office neither Ludwigshafen nor Schkopau were willing to take over the adoption (Übernahme), so very important because of the lack of raw materials, of the Anglo-American Lowenstein-process for the production of direct-lost (DL). Neither of these two plants ever made any experiments in this direction. Nor did Ludwigshafen adopt the scheme for connecting a central ethylene concentration in Sodingen with a DL experimental plant.

It is probably due to this lack of timely co-operation in this problem that the large-scale DL installation in Condorf, designed and constructed later by another party, never met the Army requirements in any way because of the utterly unsatisfactory quality of the products manufactured. If chemical warfare had been adopted, the largest German poison gas plant would have been largely crippled as a result, and no doubt the government would have taken the I.G. to task.

- 6) I may conclude that in the management of the Army the existence of a developed ethylene oxide chemistry of the Ludwigshafen plant was very valuable for the production of diglycols as well as the production of preliminary products for chemical warfare agents of the mustard gas type. Ludwigshafen, and Dr. Ambrose in particular, however, did not collaborate in the actual field of gun powder, high explosives, and chemical warfare agents apart from giving theoretical-chemical advice concerning foreign chemical literature and experience.

The great experiences in the manufacture of interim-stage chemical products and chiefly in the construction of new plants with a complicated technique induced the Army Ordnance Office after the outbreak of the war in September 1939 to entrust the I.G. under Dr. Ambros' management with the building of a plant for the production of tabun - a new type of chemical warfare agent. At the final meeting of the Army Ordnance Office which I attended, the chairman of the Technical Committee of the I.G., Dr. Fritz ter Meer, took part also. He stated that the I.G. because of the requirements of the Army and for technical reasons as demonstrated could no longer maintain its negative attitude - maintained so far in the interest of its foreign holdings and business connections and much to the consternation of the Army - since, unfortunately, war had now broken out.

- 7) In 1943 the Reich Ministry for Arms and Military Production appointed Dr. Ambros, head of the Special Committee C with in the Chief Committee for gun powder and high explosives. There seemed to be no other suitable personnel from the ranks of the other firms engaged in chemical warfare agents production, a person moreover who had to have great knowledge in the field of organic chemical raw materials, and therefore Dr. Ambros had to be appointed as a matter of course.

Stuttgart-Moehringen, 24 September 1947

signed: Emil A. Ehmann

Certificate.

The above signature before me <sup>on</sup> this 25th day of September 1947 at Stuttgart by Herr Emil A. E h m m a n n, diploma chemist, residing at Stuttgart-Moehringen, Ennelstr. 15, is hereby certified by me.

(Notary's stamp)

Notary: signed Kettner

I hereby certify that the above document is a true and complete copy of the original document.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 11 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



DOCUMENT BOOK VI i LHMOS No.610

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

10 February 1948

I, George Goodman, No. 34789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document Book VI i LHMOS No. 610.

George GOODMAN, No.34789.

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Jan L i t t w e r, Altcottling / Obb., Carl Boschstr. 14, having been duly warned that any false statement on my part will render me liable to punishment, hereby declare, on oath, that my statements are true and were made for submission in evidence to the Military Tribunal No. 1 at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany:

I, Dr. Jan L i t t w e r have been working for the I.G. in Ludwigshafen on Rhine as a chemist from 1925 to 1940. I held the position of a works manager for the production of ethylene oxide and its by-products (Folgaprodukte) such as glycole, diglycole, glycole ether and other derivatives, as for instance thiodiglycole.

Because of my technical knowledge I was appointed manager of the Condor plant of the Imergans G. B. H., which had been founded when it began operations in 1941. In the years 1937 to 1939 I participated in conferences concerning the planning in the field of oxide and for this reason I can testify to the following:

- 1.) The production program for the production of chemical warfare agents was drafted by the Navy High Command which also issued the building contracts (preliminary notifications). For this a number of chemical raw materials necessary for the allotment of which the Reich Office for Economic Extension was responsible, and therefore an agreement had to be reached between the Navy High Command and the executives in charge at the Reich Office. Dr. Imros was consulted on technical problems concerning the production of ethylene oxides and thiodiglycoles as a preliminary by-product for last. Regarding raw materials for the production of other chemical warfare agents the Navy High Command, i.e. the Reich Office, negotiated with the competent industries.

Dr. Imros had nothing to do with high explosives but he did have something to do with the by-product diglycole which became important as a glycerine substitute for mining dynamites and for the production of driving powder (Treibpulver).

Here too all steps were taken by the Navy High Command as the secretariat authority in agreement with the Reich Office. Whenever technical problems arose Dr. Imros was approached as technical consultant.

May I state in conclusion that the so-called Marshall plan concerning the above mentioned work actually only contained what had already been determined by the Navy High Command in

its previous plans.

signed: Dr. Max Ritter

Document Roll No. 758

I hereby certify that before me this 28th day of June 1947  
at Altötting, Herr Dr. Max Ritter, residing at  
Altötting/Ob., Carl Boschstr. 14, appeared his  
signature.

signed: Scheidler

Altötting, 28 June 1947

(Notary's stamp)

This is to certify that the above  
is a complete and true copy of the  
original document.

Ludwigshafen am Rhine, 21 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Lit,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

10 February 1948

I, George Goodman, No. 34789, hereby certify that I  
am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages,  
and that the above is a true and correct translation of  
document Book VI A LEBROS No. 511.

George GOODMAN, No. 34789.

IMPERIAL PATENT OFFICE

Patent Application No. 238240

Class 78c Group 14

Granted 21 October 1915

Dr. Arthur Stachler in Berlin-Sterlitz.

Method for the Production of High Explosives .

Patented in Germany as from 23 January 1915.

Several times attempts have been made to produce explosives from ammonium nitrate, in which the amine nitrogen is chemically bound by the carbon monoxide. But the experiments show unsatisfactory results because the amine nitrates in question are almost all hygroscopic (for instance Methyl Amine Nitrate) or have other unfavorable properties. Also the Ethylene diamine nitrate has not been used for high explosives probably because one formed similar bad results.

The inventor has made the observation that Ethylene diamine forms salts with Nitric acid, which have a number of advantages over the ammonia nitrate so that their use for high explosives appears justified. To these belong I.) that the carbon monoxide is chemically bound, so that instead of mechanical mixtures one has uniform chemical compounds which in their invariably constant consistency show likewise permanent chemical properties; II.) the low melting point, which if necessary permits melting with other compounds, finally the possibility of producing a semi-nitrate so that one amine group remains free which one can be coupled to other groups either containing or producing oxygen, for instance chloric acid or sugar-chloric acid.

The nitrates of ethylene diamine are easily obtained from the <sup>base</sup> and nitric acid or by converting Ethylene diamine salts by means of nitrates, for instance those derived from alkalines or soil alkalines. The nitrates are easily soluble in water, more difficult to solve in alcohol and ether, and can be precipitated by <sup>those</sup> acids. They have the advantage over other mine nitrates that they keep when exposed to air and are hard to solve, as against the perchlorates with much less sensitivity against outside influences (friction, blows, etc), and that they do not develop any hydro-chloric acid which is important for use in mines. Their use as high explosive is based mainly on their high kinetic energy, since 1 kg. produces about 100 liter of gas.

#### P a t e n t   C l a i m .

Process for the production of high explosives, characterized in that the use of mono- or di-nitrates of ethylene diamine alone or in conjunction or mixed with other constituents.

I herewith certify the correctness of above copy of the original document lying before me, a patent application of the Imperial patent office 288240.  
Munich, 20 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Volfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I certify to the correctness and completeness of above copy.  
Munich, 24 January 1948.

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law

#### CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

11 February 1948

I, George GOODMAN, No. 34735, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document Book VI A Ambros No. 612.

George GOODMAN  
No. 34735



Affidavit

I, Dr. Friedrich Toller, born 7 October 1896 resident of Ludwigshafen on Rhine, <sup>Wolffstr. 14</sup> have been duly warned that any false statement on my part will render me liable to punishment. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice Nuremberg, Germany.

On 1 August 1925 I joined the Badische Anilin & Soda Fabrik, later the I.G. Farben in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, and since spring 1939 I have been head of the Alizarin dept., of which the pentacerythrite plant is also a part.

Production of the glycerin substitute pentacerythrite was started in Ludwigshafen in 1930. The chief consumer of the product was Russia at that time. When during the ensuing years the lack of glycerine was felt more and more in Germany, pentacerythrite was used in an increasing measure in chemical engineering, i.e. the lacquer industry as well as naturally the explosives industry. When later in addition to the Ludwigshafen plant also a number of other pentacerythrite firms came into existence in Germany, Ludwigshafen which was interested in a steady sale for peace-economic purposes specialized more and more in the higher-quality pentacerythrite IG which was liked very much by the lacquer and synthetic resin industry. Already in 1942 the production of pentacerythrite IG amounted to almost 2000 tons, while the pentacerythrite II for nitration amounted to less than 500 tons. Since 1943 Ludwigshafen produced only pentacerythrite IG, in a quantity of more than 3000 tons per year. After the war the production of pentacerythrite IG was resumed in Ludwigshafen, so far exclusively for export to France.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 20 December 1947

signed: Dr. Friedrich Toller

DOCUMENT BOOK VI A Ambros No.613

(page 1 of original cont'd.)

The above signature of Herr Dr.Friedrich Toller,  
resident of Ludwigshefen on Rhine, Wolfenstr.14,  
made in my presence, Dr.Wolfgang Alt, assistant  
defense counsel, is herewith certified and attested.  
Ludwigshefen on Rhine, 20.December 1947

signed: Dr.Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Correctness and completeness of above copy is  
herewith certified.

Ludwigshefen on Rhine, 22 December 1947.

Signature: Dr.Wolfgang Alt  
(Assistant Defense Counsel)

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

11 February 1948.

I, George GOODMAN, No.34789, hereby certify that  
I am thoroughly conversant with the English and  
German languages, and that the above is a true and  
correct translation of Document Book VI A Ambros  
No.613.

George GOODMAN  
No.34789

Affidavit

I, Dr. Ing. Wolfgang A l t , Chemist, resident of Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4, have been duly warned that any false statement on my part will render me liable to punishment. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented as evidence to the Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice Nuernberg, Germany.

Since beginning of 1941 I have been in the technical directorate of the plant Ludwigshafen of the IG Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft as chemical specialist for most fields of organic chemistry, especially in regard to the modern <sup>field</sup> of Acetylene and Ethylene chemistry, for a great part developed in Ludwigshafen. In this position I obtained a broad view of production in this field in Germany and therefore can from statistical documents make the following expert statement:

- 1) In 1943, the year of the highest output of the German chemical industry, the total German production of Acetylene (for chemical syntheses) and Ethylene (converted into Acetylene) amounted to 347 415 tons.

Of this were used for powder, high explosives, chemical warfare agents and their preparatory products in the whole of Germany:

2.700 tons	Acetylene	into Acetone	for NC-Powder (NC:Nitrocellulose)
38.000 tons	"	"	Diglycol for PCL-Powder (PCL-Powder without solvents)
1.800 "	"	"	Pentacerythrite for nitra- tion to explosives
1.000 "	"	"	Anhydrous Acetic Acid for Hexone
1.050 "	"	"	D-Mustard gas (D-direct)
5.000 "	"	"	other types of mustard gas, decontamination oil for weapons, hexachloro- ethane and various products

46.350 tons

Chart shows that in 1943 only 13% of the Acetylene and Ethylene quantity produced were used for war products proper.

2) According to plans made in 1944 497.300 tons acetylene (for chemical syntheses) and Ethylene (calculated as acetylene) were to be produced in 1945. Of this was to be used for the production of powder, high explosives, chemical warfare agents and their preliminary products in the Reich of Germany:

3.400 tons	Acetylene	into Acetone	for PCL Powder
46.000 tons	"	"	Diglycol for PCL Powder
2.100 tons	"	"	Pentacerythrite for nitra- tion into explosives
2.600 tons	"	"	Anhydrous acetic acid for Hexone
20.700 tons	"	"	D-Mustard gas
5.000 tons	"	"	other types of mustard gas, decontamination oil for weapons, hexachloro- ethane and various other products

82.800 tons

This shows that in 1945 only 17% of the acetylene and ethylene quantities to be produced were to be used for war products proper.

3) These results confirm the fact obvious to every expert, that the main part of the acetylene and ethylene chemistry will always lie overwhelmingly in the civilian sector. Even at the climax of total war, the importance of this chemistry for the production of vital goods for peace time needs does not permit, to change over to pure war production beyond a certain limit. This fact quite naturally decides the pre-eminently peace-economic orientation of the acetylene using chemical industry and their interests in that direction.

4) This applies more than ever to the I.G. Farbenindustrie, whose leading acetylene and ethylene chemist was Dr. Otto Ambros.

This is clear from the following facts:

- a) The production of NG powder did not take place in the IG but in the powder factories. The IG was only, together with other German firms which produced acetone, active in the supply of powder factories with acetone.
- b) The production of di-lycol, including the preliminary product ethylazoxide, took place for by far the greater part in Reich owned Montan installations and only to a negligible extent (in 1943 5%) at the IG.
- c) The manufacture of penterythrite for nitration into high explosives took place for the greatest part in Reich - owned peraxol factories, under the technical supervision of the Degussa-Konzern and since 1943 no longer at all at the IG.
- d) The manufacture of hexogen with the help of anhydrous acetic acid did not take place in IG Works but in high explosive factories. The IG only participated with other German firms, who produced anhydrous acetic acid, in supplying anhydrous acetic acid to explosive factories.



- c) The Manufacture of direct mustard gas including the production of the preparatory products Ethylene and Acetylene, took place in a Reich-owned Montan plant.
  - d) The manufacture of the other types of mustard gas took place in the plant Annaberg of the Organel G.m.b.H., in which the I.G. had no shares.
- 5.) If with these facts in mind, the share of the IG in the 13% of the Acetylene and Ethylene consumption for powder, explosives, chemical warfare agents and their preparatory products in 1943 is calculated, one can see that less than one third of the 13% arrived at under point 1) - namely 4% - fell to the IG-plants. On the other hand in 1943 the share of the IG plants amounted to approx. 240,000 t i.e. two thirds (66%) of the total German production of Acetylene and Ethylene of 347,415 tons.
- 6.) The figures on which my calculations are based have all been derived from the publication: *Chimie de l'Acetylene* by Dr. André Weiss, Directeur Technique of the French administration of the Ludwigshafen plant. This publication of which I attach one copy to my affidavit as inclosure, was published in August 1946 and is based throughout on documents of official bodies and of industry found in Germany. I draw particular attention to the graph of *Chimie de l'Acetylene et de l'Ethylene en Allemagne* contained in this publication, which gives a diagrammatic illustration of the genetic relationship of the most important products of German Acetylene and Ethylene chemistry.

Munich, 30 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

DOCUMENT BOOK VI A Ambros No.614

The above signature of Dr. Wolfson Alt, resident of Ludwigshafen a. Rhine, Munster.4, made in my presence, Carl Hoffmann, Attorney, is herewith certified and attested.

signed: Hoffmann  
(Attorney-at-Law)

Correctness and completeness of above copy is herewith certified.

Carl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law

Munster, 3 February 1948

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

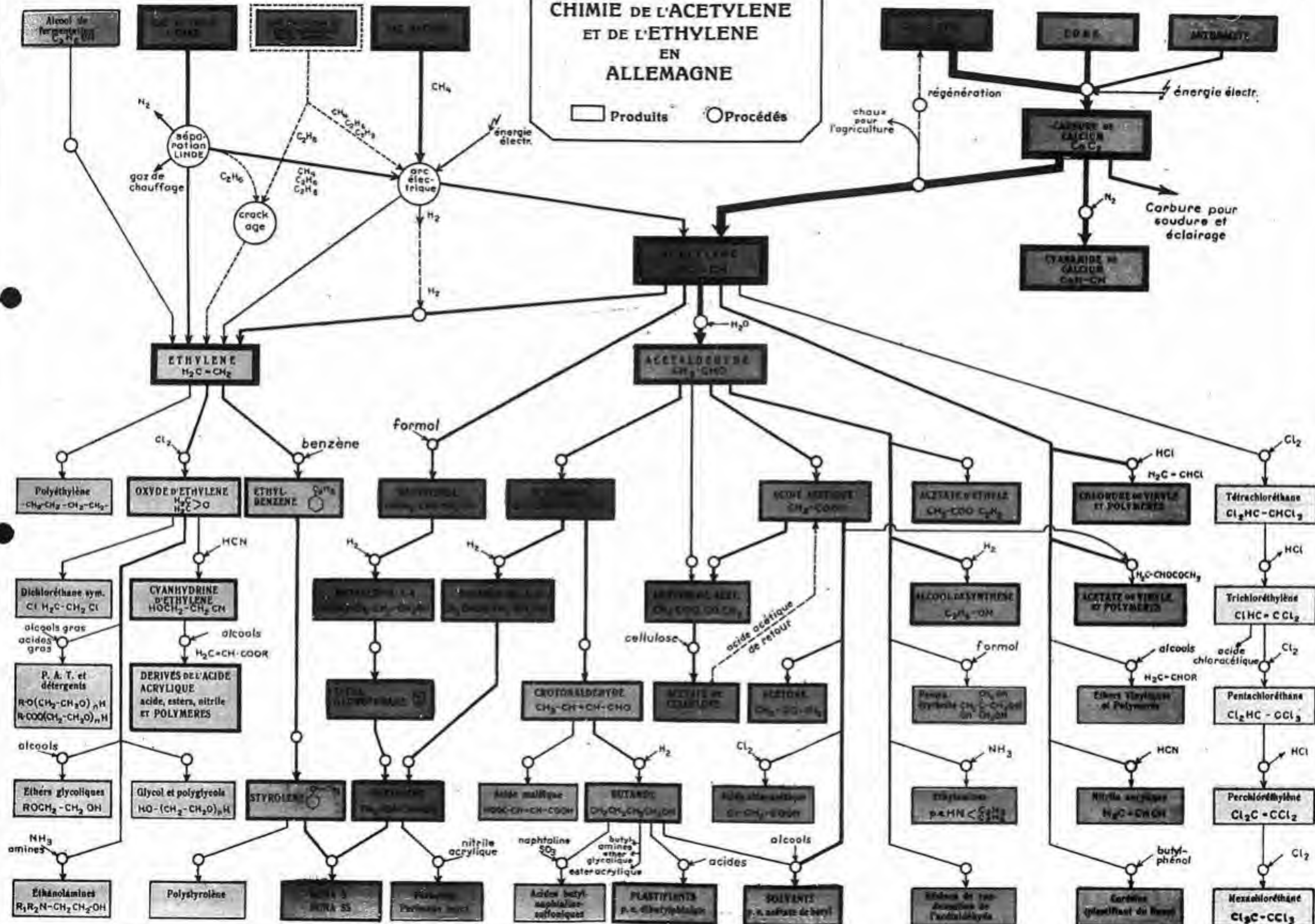
11 February 1948

I, George GOODMAN, No.34789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document Book VI A Ambros No.614.

George GOODMAN  
No.34789

Study for the Estimation of the German Planned  
AIM for Powder and Explosives.

<u>Powder Requirement</u>	<u>Explosives Requirement</u>
<u>concerning</u>	<u>concerning</u>
1) Army	1) Army
2a) West Fortification (Machine guns)	2) Bombing planes
2b) West Fortification (Guns)	3) West fortification
3) Tank Units	
4) Pursuit plane and Fighters	
	Pioneers
tons per month	Army
60,000	
chemical warfare	
Army	
	Greatest Demand
	by General Staff
	Estimate 1918
	Today's capacity
	England France
	Speed-up plan
	Planned via
	Hindenburg Program
	Germany 1918
	today's capacity

☐ Produits      ☒ Procédés

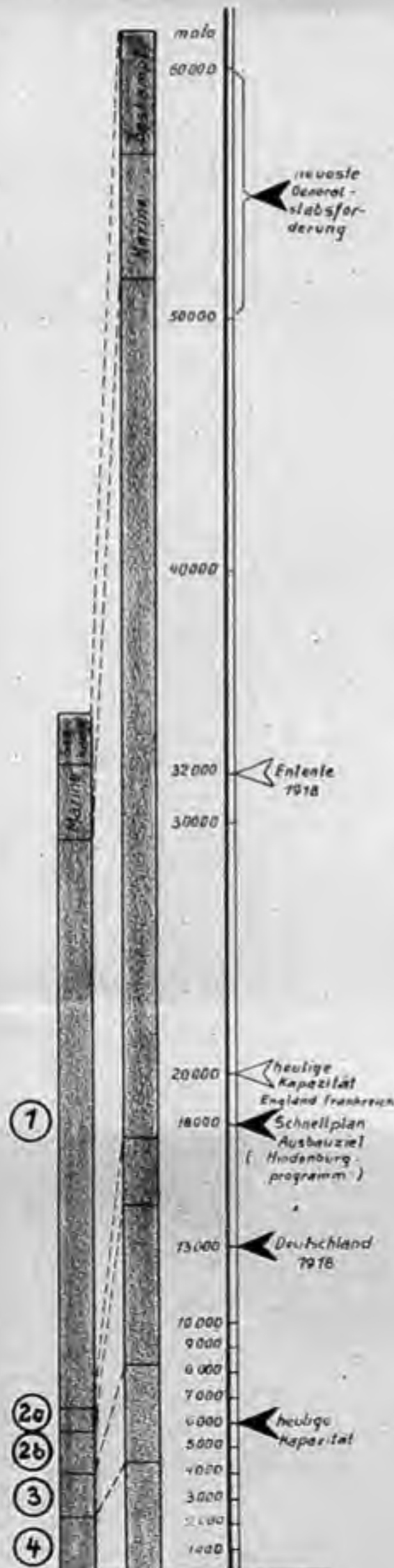


# Studie zur Schätzung des deutschen Pulver- und Sprengstoff-Ausbauzieles

## Pulverbedarf

Legende:

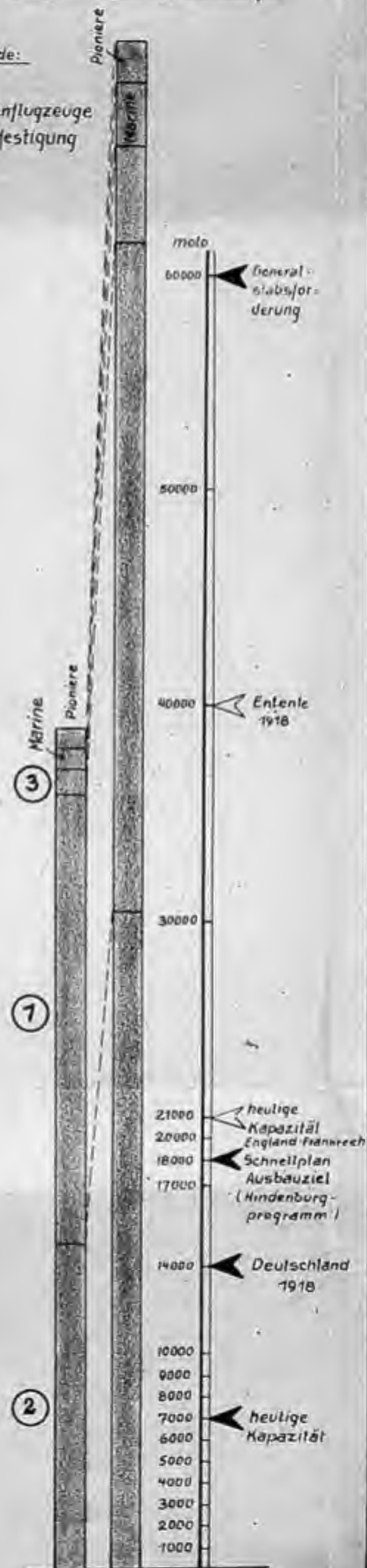
- ① Heer
- ② Westbefestigung (MG)
- ③ Westbefestigung (Geschütze)
- ④ Panzerwaffe
- ⑤ Jagd- u. Kampf-Flugzeuge



## Sprengstoffbedarf

Legende:

- ① Heer
- ② Bombenflugzeuge
- ③ Westbefestigung





Case 6  
Defense

TRIBUNAL VI

Case VI

DOCUMENT BOOK VII A

for

Otto AMBROS

Chemical Warfare Agents

Presented by  
Defense Counsel

Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney-at-Law

Gang



Index to Document Book VII A

for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c. Otto AMEROS

---

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
----------	----------	-----------------	------

---

OA-2	Diagram in the form of a tree showing Ethylene Chemistry- the trunk is Ethylene the DL (Mustard Gas) branch is shown as FINISHED 1:1000 the branch THIODIGLYCOL ( for C Mustard Gas ) and ETHANOLAMINE ( for N Mustard Gas ) both as probable PRELIMINARY PRODUCTS for chemical warfare agents.	1
------	---	---

OA-7C1	Affidavit dated 15. December 1947 by Dr. Otto Roser on the production of THIODIGLYCOL at I.G. Ludwigshafen plant in the years 1929-1944. Regarding the purposes for which Thiodiglycol is used Roser states: " Thiodiglycol was sold by I.G. as a valuable auxiliary agent for textile printing under the name of "Glyscin A". "	2 - 3
--------	---	-------

OA-702	Affidavit dated 26. November 1947 by Dr. Hans-Juergen v.d.Linde. In 1934 v.d.Linde became a member of the Army Ordnance Office, Examination Group 9, ( Wa.Pruef 9 ) and finally as Ministerialrat. He had the task " to supervise as chemist the various new developments in the field of chemical warfare agents production and to conduct the work of the HWA itself. " On the subject of THIODIGLYCOL, preliminary product for C Mustard Gas, he states: " When the German Wehrmacht, in the course of rearmament, intended to take up also the production of mustard gas, they approached the I.G. Ludwigshafen in 1934/35. It was in these works that the German ethylene chemistry was being developed. At that time we did not find them willing to cooperate, and the High Command of the Army therefore contacted the firms of Auer (Berlin) and Th. Goldschmidt. This led to the founding of CBG.GID, which set up the mustard gas plant on the site of the Badau chemical factory at Amendorf. Then, at the insistence of the High Command of the Army, the I.G. had to
--------	---

Index to Document Book VII A

for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c. Otto AMEROS

---

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
---------	---------	-----------------	------

---

make available their process for the manufacture of the preliminary product THIODIGLYCOL from spirit ethylene, while it was arranged that DEIRA should undertake the production of mustard gas."

On the subject of ETHYLAMINE (triethanolamine) v.d. Linde states:

" The military interest for N-mustard gas was the result of the American publication by Kyla/Ward, which described the replacement of the old mustard gas by this odorless substance. For this purpose Ludwigshafen supplied the triethanolamine or its chlorohydrate, which was then made up into mustard gas in experiments conducted in the Laboratory of the High Command of the Army at Spandau. No N-mustard gas was ever produced in Ludwigshafen. A suitably equipped production plant was established by Orgasid at Lamsendorf."

On the subject of the new chemical warfare agents TABUN and SARIN, which are not derivatives of Ethylene, v.d. Linde states:

" At first only the Elberfeld I.G. Works cooperated for the production of Tabun and Sarin. At the beginning of September 1939, on orders from the military authorities, Dr. Ambros received directions to build a plant for the production of Tabun."

4 - 6

OA-703

Affidavit dated 13 January 1948 by Dr. Hans Gebhardt.  
From the middle of 1937 Gebhardt worked in the High Command of the Army, We Prue.9 as a chemist. Regarding the production of D Mustard Gas Gebhardt states that experiments to produce this type of gas by the Anglo-American Leivinstein process were carried out at Leverkusen from 1938 onwards on orders from the OKH.

" Inasmuch as this process does not make the technically complicated detour via ethylene oxide and thiodiglycol,

Index to Document Book VII A  
for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c. Otto S. BALS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
		but proceeds directly from ethylene and sulphur chloride, the Army High Command, for reasons of economizing on raw material, was particularly interested in this process." Office	
		The Army Ordnance Office ordered the setting up of a pilot plant in Huls, which ran only for a few days, and a production installation in Gendorf. Up to the end of the war, however, no large quantities of a product that could be used was ever manufactured regularly at Gendorf.	7 - 10
0A-704		Affidavit dated 8. January 1948 by Dr. Emil A. Eumann, concerning the tasks of the Production and Examination Group (Wa Pruef.9) of the Army Ordnance Office. Eumann states that all questions concerning research in the field of chemical warfare agents were dealt with exclusively by the Wa Pruef.9 of the Army Ordnance Office. He also states that the work of this Wa Pruef.9 Department, apart from research, included cooperation with the Chemical Industry.	11 - 12
0A-16		Extract from the Halle Trade Register concerning CRGACID G.m.b.H. Ammendorf (Saalkreis). Statement of the Notary Cheer according to which entries in the Trade Register show that the CRGACID G.m.b.H. was founded in 1904 by Degussa A.G. Berlin (Luergesellschaft) and the Aktiengesellschaft Chemische Fabrik Buckau (later Th.Goldschmidt A.G.) Essen. Up to the time of liquidation in July 1947 the partners of the firm did not change.	13 - 16
0A-705		Affidavit dated 29. December 1947 by Dr. Emil A. Eumann concerning the directors and owners of Crgacid G.m.b.H.	

Index to Document Beck VII A  
for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c. Otto AMERCS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
---------	---------	----------	------

Dr. Ehmann states:

" On the grounds of my knowledge and experience I maintain my statement that the Orgacid G.m.b.H. was not an enterprise belonging to I.G. and establish this as follows:

- a) The Amendorf plant of the Orgacid G.m.b.H. is a plant owned by the Reich.
- b) It was leased by the Montanindustriewerke G.m.b.H.
- c) The business shares of this firm were in the hands of:
  - aa) Chemische Fabrik Buckau  
( amalgamated with the firm  
Goldschmidt A.G.) . . . . . 50%
  - bb) Degen (Auergesellschaft)  
Berlin . . . . . 50%
- d) There were representatives of Degen ( Auergesellschaft ), of the firm Goldschmidt A.G., of the CKH and Montanindustriewerke in the Aufsichtsrat.
- e) I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft had no representative in the Aufsichtsrat."

Ehmann also states that I.G. did not have the technical running of Orgacid G.m.b.H. either.

17 - 18



Index to Document Book VII A

for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c. Otto AMERCS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
CA-3		<p>Extract from the Journal of the American Chemical Society Vol. 57, May 1935, pages 914-916.</p> <p>"The Chlorinated Ethylamines - a New Type of Vesicant by Kyle Ward, Jr."</p> <p>In 1935 Kyle Ward described the production and the qualities of TRICHLORTRIETHYLAMINE (N Mustard Gas)</p>	19
CA-706		<p>Extract from US-Patent 2,672,348 applied for on 5. March 1934 by Kyle Ward, issued on 2. March 1937 - protecting the manufacture of TRICHLORTRIETHYLAMINE (N Mustard Gas).</p>	20 - 21
CA-707		<p>Extract from the Journal of the Chemical Society, London, 1935 - pages 1217/18</p> <p>"2,3'-Trichlortriethylamine by H. Mc Cormie and D. Purdie".</p> <p>Publication describes the qualities of Trichlortriethylamine (N Mustard Gas)</p>	22 - 23
CA-708		<p>Patent Application by the I.G. Farbenindustrie Reference No. C.2.8776 dated 1. March 1935 for a process for the manufacture of Chloroalkylamines. This document shows that the I.G. is also about to acquire a patent for Trichlortriethylamine.</p>	24 - 28
CA-709		<p>Letter dated 18. January, 1936 from I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. Vermittlungsstelle W Berlin to the Patent Department, I.G. Ludwigshafen regarding Patent Application C.2. 8776.</p> <p>In reply to the communication addressed to the CKH notifying the intention to apply for a patent abroad, which communication is proscribed by law in Germany, the Army Ordnance Office replied that the application had been granted for all countries.</p>	29

Index to Document Book VII A

for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. n.c. Otto AMEROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
OA-710		Teleprint dated 21.March 1941 from the Patent Department, I.G. Ludwigshafen addressed Vermittlungsstelle, Berlin replying to an enquiry from the latter and stating that patents have been issued in 10 European and non-European countries against German application O.2. 8666 (Trichlortriethylamine).	30
OA-711		Letter dated 27.September 1939 from the High Command of the Army to the Bayerische Stickstoffwerke. Preliminary Order - Extension for a Reich-owned plant for the production of 4000 tons per month Gil-D (D Mustard Gas) on the site of the VT-Plant Trostburg (Gendorf).	31-42
OA-712		Affidavit dated 9.January, 1943 by Dr. Paul Baumann, at the time Werkleiter of the Chemische Werke, Huls. Baumann attaches to his statement a plan showing the lay-out of the Chemische Werke, Huls as at 25.June 1942 and explains that the Montan installation for Oxol (Thiodiglycol) and D Mustard Gas was purposely separated from the other buildings.	33-34
OA-713		Affidavit dated 30.July, 1947 by Dr. Albert Palm, Betriebsfuehrer of the Anorganische Werke, Dyhernfurth concerning the work carried out at the Dyhernfurth factory.	25-36
OA-5		Copy of a sketch by Otto Ameros showing the position of the Special Committee (Sonderausschuss) C.	37
OA-714		Extract from "Annalen der Chemie" 326 Vol. page 129 and following - Year 1902. L. Michaelis describes a chemical compound produced by him and which is identical with TABUN.	38-39
OA-715		Extract from the reports of the "Deutsche Chemische Gesellschaft", 65th year, Vol.2 - pages 1598-1601 Year 1932. Willi Lange and Gerda von Krueger describe a chemical compound produced by them and which is closely related to SARDIN.	40

Index to Document Book VII A

for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c. Otto MBROS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
OA-716		German Reich Patent 664438 granted on 3.July,1935, issued on 26.August 1938. The patent protects a process for the manufacture of products of the SARIN type to be used as pest control agents.	41 - 42
OA-717		Extract from News Edition Vol.19, No. 18, pages 1025-27 - 25. September, 1941. " The Chemical Warfare Service in National Defense by Major General William N. Porter, Chief, Chemical Warfare Service, Washington, D.C. ... It is fully realized by all that the best insurance against such an attack ( by chemical warfare agents) lies not only in gas masks and protective clothing, but in the ability to retaliate immediately. . . . . for many years the President of the AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY has appointed each year a group of some 20 distinguished members of the society to serve as a committee to guide and assist the Chemical Warfare Service in carrying out its mission. . . . We are very proud of our school ( Chemical Warfare School at Edgewood) and of the splendid job it has done in the past 20 years."	43 - 47
OA - 718		Extract from " Chemical and Engineering News", vol.24, No.8, 25.April 1946 - pages 1029-1031. Speech by Robert P.Patterson, Secretary for War. " Chemical experts worked with us in developing toxic agents as good as, if not better than, those we found in the hands of the enemy. I have heard it said that the Germans had a supergas capable of penetrating American masks. The truth is that the masks furnished every American fighting man ensured protection against any gas found in Germany."	48 - 52

Index to Document Book VII A

for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c. Otto MERCS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
OA- 719		<p>Excerpt from the record of the 12th International Conference of the Red Cross held at Geneva on 7. October, 1925.</p> <p>" M. Paul Boncour, the French delegate, coming to the rescue, cried, " Let us take good care lest, at the very moment when, be it in a written statement, or in the course of a conference, we make known the fact that we are directing every endeavor and devoting all our energy to the active fight against chemical warfare, lest at the very moment when the nations are signing the agreement, they retain the lurking suspicion that the enemy of tomorrow, the possible belligerent of tomorrow, will violate the agreement, even should he have signed it - for the agreement will by no means be universal - and lest, the world being haunted by the appalling fear of such a war, preparations continue, obscured to a greater or lesser extent by secrecy, preparations which, when the time comes, will reduce to dust the finest and most noble undertakings to which we could have set our names."</p>	53 - 54
OA - 720		<p>Excerpt from " International Law" by Hyde, Vol.3, Boston 1945:</p> <p>"A protocol prohibiting the use in war of asphyxiating, poisonous or other gases, and of bacteriological methods of warfare, opened for signature at Geneva on June 17, 1925, came into force on February 8, 1928, and was duly accepted by numerous powers. It was not, however, ratified by the United States."</p> <p>" If the severest and most cruel features of chemical warfare are to be eliminated from wars yet to be fought, it will probably be attributable to the power of the individual States participating therein, through the possession of adequate equipment, to make dangerous the use by the enemy of what is happily shocking to the sensibilities of mankind."</p>	55 - 57

Index to Document Book VII A  
for Dr. phil. Dr. rer. nat. h.c. Otto AMERCS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
OA- 15		<p>Excerpts from NI-11105</p> <p>1.) Survey by the Reich Office for industrial expansion - dated 16. April 1940 concerning "Planning and Situation in the field of Chemical Warfare Agents",</p> <p>2.) "German Chemical Warfare Agents - position as of 1. May, 1943."</p> <p>3.) "German Chemical Warfare Agents - position as of 1. March, 1944."</p> <p>4.) Report from the Sub-Division (Arbeitsgruppe) PSV/PS 592/44, of the Reich Minister for Armaments and War Production "Position concerning Production of Chemical Warfare Agents and Plans for Expansion".</p>	58-67
OA-6		Table showing total German production of Chemical Warfare Agents.	68-69
OA-721		<p>Affidavit dated 8. January, 1948 by Dr. Emil A. Esmann,</p> <p>Dr. Esmann gives his opinion on the assertion of the Prosecution that 95% of all chemical warfare agents produced in Germany was manufactured by I.G.. On the strength of the official position which he formerly held and the documents perused by him he refutes this, and says that in actual fact the total production in the plants owned by the I.G. amounted to 7%, and in the plants owned by the Reich, but run by the I.G., 23%, from the beginning of rearmament until 1. March, 1944. The remaining 65% was manufactured in other plants.</p>	70-73



## Affidavit.

I, Dr. Otto KESER, residing at Heidelberg, Dossenheimerlandstrasse 89, have been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

On 1 January 1934 I entered the employ of the Ludwigshafen Works of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft as a chemist. In December 1935 I was transferred to the Glycol Plant of the Ludwigshafen Works, the management of which was entrusted to me as deputy in 1937 and officially from 1 January 1941 onwards.

From 1925 to 1945 the Glycol Factory produced thiodiglycol from ethylene dichlorohydrine or ethylene oxide, and this was sold by I.G. under the trade name Glyecin A as a valuable auxiliary for the printing of textiles. According to the records available at the main bookkeeping department, the production for the separate years was as follows:

1929:	179 tons	brought forward:	1609 tons
1930:	188 tons	1938:	29 tons
1931:	169 tons	1939:	336 tons
1932:	128 tons	1940:	300 tons
1933:	156 tons	1941:	283 tons
1934:	180 tons	1942:	181 tons
1935:	154 tons	1943:	252 tons
1936:	189 tons	1944:	112 tons
1937:	267 tons	1945:	—
	-----		-----
	1609 tons		3323 tons

However, thiodiglycol is also a preliminary product for dichlorodithyl sulfide (Lest, mustard gas, Yperite) which was already used as chemical warfare agent in World War No. I. When, upon orders

of the Reich agencies, the Asmendorf Works were set up for mustard gas production by the so-called Argasid G.m.b.H., a company in which the I.G. did not hold any interest, the Reich demanded that the I.G. Ludwigshafen should put the technical experience which they had gained in the production of Glycin A at the disposal of the new Asmendorf Works. For this purpose a single large scale experiment for the continuous production of thiodiglycol was carried out at Ludwigshafen. Except for this one large scale experiment demanded by the Reich agencies, I.G. Ludwigshafen, in the years which followed, produced only Glycin A and sold it as a printing auxiliary agent.

signed: Dr. Otto Raser

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 15 December 1947

I hereby certify that the above is the signature of Herr Dr. Otto RASER, residing in Heidelberg, Drossenheimerlandstrasse 89, and was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, residing at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsonstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 15 December 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt.

It is hereby certified that the above  
is a true and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 6 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

( Assistant Defense Counsel )

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Hans-Juergen v. der LINDE, residing at Hannoverseh-Muendon, Hedemundenerstr. 32, have first been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit.

I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

In 1934 I became a member of the Army Ordnance Office, Examination Group 9 ( Pruefwesen, Abteilung 9); in 1936 I became a Wehrmacht official ( Regierungsrat ) and then a Ministerialrat.

It was my task as chemist to supervise the various new developments in the field of chemical warfare agents production, and to conduct the work of the HWA ( Army Ordnance Office ) itself, which was carried on in the Spandau Gas Protection Laboratories or at the pilot plant in Munsterlager.

My former activity in this position permits me to pass an opinion on the various developments in the field of chemical warfare agents. Research work and development in the field of chemical warfare agents was handled exclusively by this Examination Group 9. It was this department which directed all work in this field and placed the appropriate orders. Besides other firms, institutes and colleges, I.G. too was commissioned to carry out development work. I.G., however, was comparatively late in cooperating in this work, whereas other firms had already been working in this field for years. I remember very well that it caused quite some annoyance that the German concern having the largest plant, the I.G., should have withheld its cooperation in this field for such a long time.

As to the development of the production of the various chemical warfare agents I can say the following:

1. Mustard Gas.

When the German Wehrmacht, in the course of rearmament, intended to take up also the production of mustard gas, they approached the I.G. Ludwigshafen in 1934/35. It was in these works that

the German ethylene chemistry was being developed. At that time we did not find them willing to cooperate, and the High Command of the Army therefore contacted the firms of Auer ( Berlin ) and Th. Goldschmidt. This led to the founding of Irgacod which set up the mustard gas plant on the site of the Hunk chemical factory in Amendorf. Then, at the insistence of the High Command of the Army, the I.G. had to make available their process for the manufacture of the preliminary product thiodiglycol from spirit ethylene, while it was arranged that DEHA should undertake the production of mustard gas. The same thing occurred when setting up the stand-by plants of Gonderf and Huels in 1937/38. The I.G. limited itself to working out the processes for the preliminary products.

Now this German process for producing mustard gas via thiodiglycol required five times as much chlorine as did the English Levinstein process. The High Command of the Army therefore also suggested to I.G. that it should conduct experiments and accordingly in 1938 or 1939/was given an order for this development work. The specialists in this plant were Dr. Jonas and Dr. Zimmermann, in Dr. Noack's scientific laboratory.

We did not contact other I.G. works such as Schkopau, for this purpose, as those plants were already overloaded with other work, such as the development of Buna.

During the first years of the war the results of the Leverkusen experiments were tried out in a small production unit at Huels, which was the biggest ethylene producer. The Huels plant was planned by Leverkusen and Dr. Zimmermann of Leverkusen was in charge of the trial operation lasting for one to two weeks. This experiment was to furnish further data for the large-scale plant at Gonderf.

## 2. The so-called N-Mustard Gas ( nitrogen mustard gas )

The military interest for N-mustard gas was the result of the American publication by Kyl Ward, which described the replacement of the old mustard gas by this odorless substance. For this purpose Ludwigshafen supplied the triethanclamine, or its chlorhydrate, which was then



made up into mustard gas in experiments conducted in the Laboratory of the High Command of the Army at Spandau. No M-mustard gas was ever produced in Ludwigshafen. A suitably equipped production plant was established by Argasid at Ammendorf.

The High Command of the Army applied for a patent to protect especially the keeping qualities of the product.

3. The Ludwigshafen works were also contacted on the question of producing a winter mustard gas. The simple suggestion was put forward to use a mixed oxal, consisting of ethylene and propylene oxide. There is also a patent for this, which had been taken out by the High Command of the Army.

4. At first, only the Elberfeld I.G. Works cooperated for the production of Tabun and Sarin. At the beginning of September 1939, on orders from the military authorities, Dr. Ambros received directions to build a plant for the production of Tabun.

Hannoversch-Muenden, 26 November 1947

signed: Hans-Juergen v. der Linde

Number 838 of the Document Register for 1947

I hereby certify that the above signature is that of the chemist Dr. Ing. Hans-Juergen von der Linde, residing at Hannoversch-Muenden, Hedermuendenerstr. 32, known to me personally and was affixed before me by his own hand.

Hannoversch-Muenden, 26 November 1947

( Notary Stamp )

signed: Dr. Johannes Hinz  
Notary

It is hereby certified that the above is a correct and complete copy.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 11 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Affidavit

I, Dr. Hans GEBHARDT, residing at Hilpoltstein-Mittelfranken, B.-Hofstrasse 321, have first been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented to the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

Since the middle of 1937 I have been working in the Army High Command, Wa Pruef 9, as chemist in the scientific development laboratory of the Army Gas Protection Laboratory at Spandau. In 1942 I was assigned to Wa Pruef 9 as subsection chief (Referent) and in 1943 became an official of the higher technical service with the post of a Regierungsbaurat.

From my memory I can testify the following:

As far as I know, the earliest work in the field of mustard gas production was carried out by the firm of AUER, Berlin, with Dr. ENGELHARDT in charge. This work was the basis for the construction of the plant at Ammendorf which was set up by Orgacid in 1934/1935.

When in 1937 the Army High Command had to build another mustard gas plant by order of the General Staff, as far as I know, Gendorf near Albstadt in Upper Bavaria had been designated as the site by the authorities. The builder of this plant was likewise Orgacid.

The next mustard gas plant was intended to be established at Huelo and attached to the ethylene source of the Buna works there. The preliminary product thiodiglycol was manufactured by the Chemische Werke Huelo GmbH while the plant for its processing to mustard gas was to be set up and operated by the Auer-Gesellschaft or Orgacid.

At this time - as far as I remember in summer 1938 - the Army High Command approached I.G. Leverkusen, Inorganic Laboratory, and negotiated there with Dr. NOACK who had solved very neatly similar technical problems which had arisen in the production of epichlorohydrin but had nothing to do with the field of chemical warfare agents. As result of these negotiations, I.G. Leverkusen was given a development assignment by the Army High Command for an improved process for the production of GB mustard gas. In late fall 1938 the Leverkusen pilot plant was demonstrated to the Army High Command and it was decided to continue production in a small plant of technical scale.

In summer 1939 the decision was made to use Dr. NOACK'S new continuous process instead of the AUER process and to utilize it in the plant intended to be built at Huls. In 1942 or 1943 the Huls plant was operated for a short time with booty oxol. As the result was not satisfactory, the booty oxol was given away to Orgacid at Amendorf.

Parallel to this process via thiodiglycol, the Army High Command from 1938 onwards ordered experiments to be made at Leverkusen for the production of mustard gas according to the English-American Levinstein process. Inasmuch as this process does not make the technically complicated detour via ethylene oxide and thiodiglycol, but proceeds directly from ethylene and sulphur chloride, the Army High Command for reasons of economizing on raw material, was particularly interested in this process. In Germany the process was called the DL-process (Direkt Lost - direct mustard gas).

Working with the DL-process, the work of IG Leverkusen made but slow progress so that by summer 1939 no satisfactory result was yet available. Not until September 1939 did Leverkusen consider that the stage had been reached where the DL-process could be used as a basis for large-scale technical production, i.e. for the planned 4,000 tons-a-month plant at Gendorf. It was intended to establish simultaneously a pilot plant at Huelo working according to the DL-process, which was to supply further experimental data for the Gendorf large-scale plant. This Huelo pilot plant was operated for a few days only and the 60 tons direct mustard gas produced were of very poor quality. They were given to the Loeknitz Army Munitions Depot (Heeresmunitionsanstalt) near Stettin.

Thus the Huelo pilot plant by no means fulfilled expectations and when, at the instigation of the Army High Command, the Gendorf plant was put into operation, the same result recurred to the greatest possible extent. The coils rendered hardly 30% of their alleged capacity and the mustard gas obtained in no way corresponded to the conditions outlined by the High Command of the Army, particularly as concerned its durability in storage.

At that time it was my task to supervise the testing of the Gendorf production samples for boiling point, stability, etc., at the Spandau Laboratories.

In order to overcome this unexpected failure, at the urgent request of the military authorities of Wa Pruef 9, extensive experiments and technical developments were conducted under my supervision at the Army Gas Protection Laboratories in Spandau and at the Lanol works in Berlin-Hasselhorst, and the results were recorded in a patent application filed by Wa Pruef 9.

On the basis of these results a large technical conference had been summoned to Ludwigshafen in the middle of 1943 at the instigation of the Army High Command.

in order to reach a decision as to what measure were to be taken.

Referring to my explanations, Dr. AMBROS suggested, and had his suggestion carried into effect, that fundamental changes should be made in the construction of the Gondorf plant, regardless of the cessation of production which would necessarily ensue in the only German direct mustard gas plant. However, these alterations could not be completed before the end of 1944.

Summarizing, I can state on the basis of my own long experience with the officials of the IG and with Dr. AMBROS in particular, that the efforts of the High Command of the Army in the field of the development and production of chemical warfare agents were in no way supported and sponsored by IG to the extent that could be expected of such a productive concern. My office was therefore compelled to urge Dr. AMBROS repeatedly by word of mouth and in writing to speed up the filling of orders which were placed by the Army High Command with the works under his technical supervision.

Hilpoltstein, 13 January 1948

signed: Dr. Hans GEBHARDT

This is to certify and witness the above signature of Dr. Hans GEBHARDT, residing at Hilpoltstein, Mittelfranken, Bahnhofstrasse 321, made before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel.

Hilpoltstein, 13 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

It is hereby certified that the above is a correct and complete copy.

signed: Karl HOFFMANN  
Defense Counsel

Muenzburg, 16 January 1948.



A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Emil A. E h m e n n , Dipl.-Chemiker (certified chemist), domiciled in Stuttgart-Moehringen, Kanalstrasse 15, have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

- 1.) From 1935 until 1945 I was working at the Army Ordnance Office of the Army High Command from 1935 until 1937 as employee, from 1937 until 1942 as Regierungsrat (Government Counsellor), from 1942 until 1943 as Senior Regierungsbaurat and from 1943 until 1945 as Ministerialrat (Ministerial Counsellor). From 1935 until 1942 I was chief of the Group: Chemical Preliminary and Intermediate Products and from 1942 until 1945 chief of the Production and Supply Division for Special Chemical Fields, which among other things also included chemical warfare agents. Within the scope of my official duties I had been occupied with this special field since 1935.
- 2.) I understand that in an affidavit presented in Nuremberg it was stated among other things that
  - a) the Research Section of the Army Ordnance Office Wa F was also responsible for the research in the field of chemical warfare agents,
  - b) this section, however, had since 1935 been provided with an annual budget of only about RM 300,000.— and therefore, neither undertook any research work worth mentioning nor showed any practical results,
  - c) research and development in the field of chemical warfare agents primarily rested in the hands of the I.G. Konzern.
- 3.) In the interests of historical truth, I feel myself obliged to express my opinion on the above statements on the basis of my knowledge and experience and my co-operation with the research and development centers in the chemical field.

It was the task of Section Wa F of the Army Ordnance Office in the first place to investigate the scientific knowledge in the field of natural science and technology on the possibilities of their application for military technical purposes. Theoretically Research Section Wa F may also have been concerned with questions of chemical warfare agents. The fact remains that it was in no way prominent in this field. All questions connected with research in the field of chemical warfare agents were exclusively handled by the Section for Examination and Development, Wa Pruef 9, of the Army Ordnance Office.

My own office was in the closest contact with this Section especially when there was a question of placing orders with

the chemical industry for the mass-production of materials which had been investigated and tested in practice by this Section, while the capacity and number of plants to be newly erected depended on the requirements of the ~~General~~ Staffs of the Wehrmacht branches and on the prevailing situation in the sectors of machine production and manpower.

- 4.) The work of this Section for Development and Examination, Wa Pruef 9, included among other things :
  - a) Their own research in the gas protection laboratory of Berlin-Spandau, which was directed by and subordinated to it.
  - b) Development and testing of new production methods in the Army Experimental Station under their command at Raubkammer on the grounds of the Munster-Lager parade square; there newly developed products were also tested technically and under practical conditions.
  - c) Co-operation with the chemical industry, which received development orders for the technical testing of new processes.
  - d) Scientific examination of German and foreign publications including patent questions, etc. .
  - e) Central planning for the research institutions with which it had placed orders, (Institute of the Kaiser-Wilhelm Gesellschaft, Universities and technical High Schools).
- 5.) All the work of this section was subject to extreme secrecy in accordance with the military regulations, so that persons or offices of the Army Ordnance Office which did not have to maintain close working contact with Section Wa Pruef 9, were not informed about its field work.
- 6.) The above mentioned declaration saying that research and development in the field of chemical warfare agents was primarily in the hands of the I.G. Konzern, discloses complete lack of expert knowledge, which I h. rewith declare most emphatically. Confident of my ability to pass judgment in this matter, I state that this declaration, clearly and objectively considered, must be termed fully untenable, in fact actually false.

Nuremberg, 8 January 1948

signed : Emil A. Ehmenn.

I herewith certify as genuine the above signature of Dr. Emil A. Ehmenn of Stuttgart-Mehringen, Kanalstrasse 15, made before me, Dr. Gernot Gather, Assistant Defense Counsel.

Nuremberg, 8 January 1948

signed : Dr. Gernot Gather

End of Copy.

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is herewith certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 21 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

18 October 1947

Excerpt from the Commercial Register  
Section B 267 No. of the firm 1380

Orgacid Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung

Ammerdorf (Saal District)

Production and Sale of all kinds of chemical products  
especially "Orgacid".

Capital stock or original capital: RM 120.000.--

Vorstand, personally liable partners,

business manager, liquidator :

Dr. Hermann Engelhard, chemist, Berlin

Dr. phil. Eugen Moellney, chemist, Ammerdorf

Kurt Willing, merchant, Essen

Richard Brandt, merchant, Berlin

Proxy-holders :

Hans Borinser, Halle. He represents his company together  
with a business manager.

Legal Condition :

Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung. The company contract  
was concluded on 23 November 1934 and amended on 26 November  
1934 and 8 September 1937. If several business managers are  
appointed, the company is represented by two business managers  
or by one business manager together with one proxy-holder.  
Dr. Ing. (Engineer) Hermann Engelhard and Richard Brandt,  
merchant, are no longer business managers.

By closing down the business on 22 October 1941 the seat of  
the company has been moved from Berlin to Ammerdorf. The  
company contract has been altered accordingly.

By decision of the firm on 9 June 1944, Article 1, Para. 2  
(seat) of the company's contract has been changed.

In accordance with Order No. 124, dated 30 October 1945 of the  
SMA in connection with the directives pertaining to this  
order and Article 2 of the law of 9 October 1934 (Reich  
Legal Gazette I, page 914) this company has ceased to exist.

Remarks :

The Firm had hitherto been registered with the Berlin Lower  
Court under No. 564 HGB No. 52742.

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Karl Schaefer, domiciled at Schkopau ueber Merseburg, Leunastrasse 14, have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that the details stated on the other side concerning the Orgasid G.m.b.H. were handed over in October 1947 by the Chamber of Industry and Commerce at Halle to Dr. Friedrich Moll, chemist of the Chemische Werke Buna at Schkopau.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 13 December 1947

signed : Karl Schaefer

I herewith certify and witness the above signature of Herr Karl Schaefer, domiciled at Schkopau/Merseburg, Leunastrasse 14, made before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 13 December 1947

signed : Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Main Document

Cheer/St.  
Attorney at Law and Notary  
Telephone No. 21854  
Postcheck Account : Leipzig 12552

Halle on Saale  
22 October 1947  
Hansering 9/II.  
Gr. Sandberg 10

Consulting hours : 4 to 6 hours p.m.  
except Wednesdays and Saturdays

Herrn

Karl Schaefer

Schkopau.

Dear Mr. Schaefer,

At the request of Herr Fasshauer, Assistant Judge, I looked into the documents which had been compiled at the local Registry Court, concerning the

Orgacid G.m.b.H.

These documents - HRB 1380 - show the following :

Founders were :

The Orgacid G.m.b.H. was formed in 1934. Its

the Dagee A.G., Berlin (Auergesellschaft)  
and  
the Aktiengesellschaft Chemische Fabrik  
Buckau (afterwards Th. Goldschmidt A.G.),  
of Essen.

In the statement of the company, which according to Par. 40 of the Law on Companies Limited must be presented each year during the month of January to the Registry Court, it is always only the two above mentioned Aktiengesellschaften (Joint Stock Companies) which are cited as partners.

Since July 1947, Orgacid G.m.b.H. has been crossed out in the register. -

Hoping that the above details will be of assistance to you, I beg to remain,

Yours faithfully,

signed : Cheer  
Notary.



A f f i d a v i t .  
-----

I, Karl Schaefer, domiciled at Schkopau ueber Morseburg, Leunastrasse 14, have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany. I herewith declare that this document was received by me in October 1947 from Herr Ciser, Notary at Halle on my enquiry about the company conditions of the Orgacid G.m.b.H.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 13 December 1947

signed : Karl Schaefer

I herewith certify and witness the above signature of Herr Karl Schaefer, domiciled at Schkopau via Morseburg, Leunastrasse 14, made before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 13 December 1947

signed : Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the above copies (4 leaves) is herewith certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 15 December 1947

signed : Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Emil W. E h m a n n , domiciled in Stuttgart-Moehringen, Kesselstrasse 15, have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

- 1) By virtue of my work in the Army Ordnance Office of the Army High Command as an employee and Group Chief from 1935 until 1937, as Regierungsrat from 1937 until 1942, as Senior Regierungsbaurat and from 1943 until 1945 as Ministerialrat and Chief of the Section for Special Chemical Fields, which dealt with chemical preliminary and intermediate products for gunpowder, explosives, and chemical warfare agents, and also with chemical warfare agents (sic), smoke producers, decontamination agents, and rocket fuels, I frequently had official dealings with the firm Orgacid G.m.b.H. at Immendorf.
- 2) When on my interrogation in Nuremberg on 24 November 1947 I was asked whether I knew that I.G. had managed the technical side of the firm Orgacid G.m.b.H., I replied that this was decidedly not the case.

Thereupon, I was shown a document - a file note without any signature - in which apart from some wrongly written words, the details about partners, business managers, and Chairmen of the Supervisory Board (Aufsichtsratsvorsitzer) were correctly stated and which had the following remark at the end :  
 "Technical management : I.G. (confidential)" .

- 3) On the grounds of my knowledge and experience I maintain my statement that the Orgacid G.m.b.H. was not an enterprise belonging to I.G. and establish this as follows, at the same time referring to my declaration, signed by me on 6 September 1947 in Nuremberg, which was the subject of my interrogation before the Military Tribunal, case VI, on 30 October 1947.
- 4) a) The Immendorf plant of the Orgacid G.m.b.H. is a plant owned by the Reich.  
 b) It was leased by the Montanindustriewerke G.m.b.H., owned by the Army High Command (O.K.H.) to the firm Orgacid G.m.b.H.  
 c) The business shares of this firm were in the hands of :  
   aa) Chemische Fabrik Buckau (amalgamated with the firm Goldschmidt A.G.), 50%,  
   bb) Degussa (Auer-Gesellschaft) Berlin, 50%.  
 d) There were representatives of Degussa (Auer-Gesellschaft), of the firm Goldschmidt A.G., of the OKH and Montanindustriewerke in the Aufsichtsrat.  
 e) I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft had no representative in the Aufsichtsrat.

- 5) When the Ammendorf Plant was established, the firm Degussa (Auer-Gesellschaft) introduced the process for the production of the chemical warfare agent mustard gas. The preliminary products required for its production are ethylene oxide and oxal, which have long been known as commercial products, although they were produced in Germany only by I.G. Farbenindustrie factories. For this reason the Army Ordnance Office, as the employer of the chemical warfare agents plant, could not dispense with the co-operation of I.G. in the designing, construction and operation of the preliminary products plant.

I know that Senior Engineer Lorinser, technical expert assigned by I.G., left the I.G. and was in the employ of the firm Orgacid and/or Ional-Werke G.m.b.H. until his death. I am also aware of the fact that in about 1937 I.G. had to undertake the construction and opening of the nitrogen-mustard gas (Lost) trial plant, ordered by my office, and that after its expert personnel was withdrawn, it had once more to offer temporary technical assistance to the plant after an explosion.

- 6) In its capacity as responsible production and supply department for the Orgacid G.m.b.H., my office always used to give instructions and orders to the responsible business manager of this firm, Herrn Dr. Engelhard, Berlin, and after his resignation to the responsible Plant Leader, of the Ammendorf factory, Herrn Dr. Mcellney, and not to the I.G.,

Stuttgart-Moehringen, 29 December 1947

signed : Emil A. E h m a n n  
(Emil A. Ehmenn)

I herewith certify the above signature - recognized by me as genuine - of Dr. Emil Albert Ehmenn, Certified Chemist, of Stuttgart-Moehringen, Kanalstrasse 15, who proved his identity by presenting his identity-card WB XIXa 09751, issued on 20 September 1946 by the Police Directorate in Stuttgart.

Stuttgart-Moehringen, 29 December 1947

signed : Hauff  
District Notary

(Stamp of the Notary's Office)

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is herewith certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 2 January 1948

signed : Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Auszug aus Journal of the American Chemical  
Society, Vol. 57, May 1935,  
pp 914 - 916.

---

page 914.

(Contribution from the Hercules Experiment Station,  
Hercules Powder Co.)

The Chlorinated Ethylamines - A New Type of Vesicant

by Kyle Ward, Jr.

This paper describes the preparation and properties of S-chloroethylamine, S,S'-dichlorodiethylamine, S,S',S''-trichlorotriethylamine and a few of their derivatives. The primary<sup>1</sup> and secondary<sup>2</sup> derivatives have been prepared previously. The tertiary derivatives are new. Both the tertiary amine and its hydrochloride exhibit a marked vesicant action.

.....

page 915.

.....

The tertiary compound, either as free base or as hydrochloride, proved to have a marked vesicant action. The primary and secondary compounds have no such action. This action appears analogous to that of the mustard gas vesicants and, like that, apparently hinges upon the presence of S-chloroethyl groups. ....

page 916.

.....

Wilmington, Delaware      Received March 11, 1935.

Die Richtigkeit des Auszuges aus der  
Originalphotokopie wird hiermit beglaubigt.  
München, den 27. Januar 1948.

ges. Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



Patented Mar. 2, 1937

2,072,348

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE

2,072,348

Chlorinated Trialkyl Amines and Method of  
producing.

Kyle Ward, Jr., Wilmington, Del., assignor to Hercules  
Powder Company, Wilmington, Del., a corporation of  
Delaware.

No Drawing. Application March 5, 1934,

Serial No. 714,095

18 Claims (Cl. 260-127)

This invention relates to chlorinated trialkyl amines  
and to methods for their production.

Chlorinated trialkyl amines in which each alkyl group  
contains as a substituent only one chlorine atom have  
hitherto been unknown, but may readily be produced in  
accordance with this invention.

The tri-(chloroalkyl)-amines produced by the method in  
accordance with this invention are heavy oils the phy-  
sical properties of which, of course, depend on the  
particular alkyl groups present. In some cases, cry-  
stals form from these oils on standing. These amines  
form well defined crystalline addition products with  
strong acids, which have definite melting points. Be-  
cause of the presence of the chlorine atom, these amines  
are very reactive and form valuable intermediates for  
a large number of reactions of both theoretical value.  
Certain of the amines in accordance with this invention  
especially those with chlorine in  $\beta$ -position have also  
a pronounced vesicant action on the skin, a property  
which renders them valuable for use in medicine or in  
chemical warfare.

The method in accordance with this invention involves  
the treatment of a tri-(hydroxylalkyl)-amine, as for  
example, tri-(hydroxyethyl)-amine (triethanolamine),  
tri-(hydroxypropyl)-amine, tri-(hydroxybutyl)-amine,  
etc., with a chlorinating agent as, for example, thionyl  
chloride, phosphorus trichloride, phosphorus pentachlo-  
ride, hydrochloric acid, or the like, under conditions  
adapted for the replacement of each hydroxyl group



present by a chlorine atom. This reaction may be represented by the non-stoichiometric equation:



where R is any alkyl group minus one hydrogen atom, and MCl is a chlorinating agent.

.....

Die Richtigkeit vorstehenden  
Aussages wird hiermit be-  
glaubigt.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 12.12.1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Journal of the Chemical Society, London, 1935, pp. 1217/18.

Notes.

$\beta\beta'\beta''$ -Trichlorotriethylamine. By H. Mc Combie  
and D. Purdie.

Pure crystalline  $\beta\beta'\beta''$ -trihydroxytriethylamine (100 g., obtained from commercial triethanol amine by distillation at 1 - 2 mm) is dissolved in 150 c.c. of dry chloroform in a 1500 c.c. bolt-head flask, and a mixture of 270 g. (12% excess) of thionyl chloride and 150 c.c. of chloroform added slowly through the condenser, with frequent shaking; cooling is advisable, as the addition can then be carried out faster. The whole is boiled on the water-bath for 4 - 5 hours and allowed to cool; the heavy crop of  $\beta\beta'\beta''$ -trichlorotriethylamine hydrochloride is filtered off and washed with chloroform, giving snow-white crystals, m.p.  $133^{\circ}$ , sufficiently pure for anything but analysis. It may be recrystallized from water, alcohol, or a mixture of the two, and then has m.p.  $133.5^{\circ}$ . Yield, 140 - 150 g. (Found: Cl, 58.7. Calc., 58.9%).

The free base is prepared by adding caustic soda to a concentrated aqueous solution of the hydrochloride. Separated in chloroform and vacuum-distilled, it is obtained as a heavy oily liquid b.p.  $137 - 138^{\circ}/15$  mm., m.p.  $-4^{\circ}$ , having volatile properties. On distillation at the ordinary pressure it decomposes, giving mainly the hydrochloride of the trichloro-base, and it also decomposes on long standing (Found: Cl, 52.0. Calc., 52.1%).

The chlorine atoms of  $\beta\beta'\beta''$ -trichlorotriethylamine are reactive, but only a short study was made of the products obtainable from it; the best defined of those prepared was  $\beta\beta'\beta''$ -triphenoxytriethylamine, m.p.  $57^{\circ}$  (Found: S, 22.7. Calc., 22.6%).

The platinumchloride of  $\beta\beta'$ -dichlorodiethylamine (see Mann, J. 1934, 463) forms orange needles, m.p.  $215^{\circ}$  (decomp.) (Found: Pt 27.7. Calc., 26.1%). That of  $\beta\beta'\beta''$ -trichloroethylamine forms buff needles, which decompose on heating (Found: Pt, 23.8. Calc. 23.8%).

University Chemical Laboratories, Cambridge.  
(Received, June 5th. 1935).

Die Richtigkeit des vorstehenden  
Auszuges wird hiemit be-  
glaubigt.

Ludwigshafen a. Rh., 12.12.1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alz  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

(Stamp: L-K. Dept.)

Your new report on: O.Z. 8776

"Process for the Production of Chloroalkylamines  
or their Salts." O.Z. 8776 E./E.

was received here on 1 March 1935 and has been registered under  
file reference

J. 51781 IVa/12 qu  
for further action.

Berlin, the .....19 REICH PATENT OFFICE.

To the

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
Ludwigshafen a./Rhein.

I hereby certify that the above is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen, 12 December 1947  
Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

(Stamp: L-K. Dept.)

Your new report on: O.Z. 8776

"Process for the Production of Chloroalkylamines  
or their Salts," O.Z. 8776 E./E.

was received here on 1 March 1935 and has been registered under  
file reference

J. 51781 IVa/12 q1  
for further action.

Berlin, the .....19 REICH PATENT OFFICE.

To the  
I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
Ludwigshafen a./Rhein.

I hereby certify that the above is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen, 12 December 1947  
Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



(Stamp: L.-R. Dept.)

I. G. FARBE-INDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

Our reference: O. Z. 8776 -  
Ludwigshafen/Rhine  
28 February 1935 E./E.

Process for the Production of Chloroalkylamines  
or their Salts.

It is possible to produce the chlorohydrate of chloroethyldiethylamine by allowing thionyl chloride to act upon oxyethyldiethylamine. This reaction, however, develops heat and is so violent that passable results can only be achieved if one employs a large excess of diluents, considerable cooling and if one mixes the basic substances very slowly. The end products, moreover, are dark in color and contain oily by-products in spite of these precautions. Primary alkylamines are not, or only inadequately convertible by the above process.

It has now been discovered that the salts of the chloroalkylamines can be produced quite simply without any of the above disadvantages if one allows compounds to act upon the salts of the oxyalkylamines which are able to replace the hydroxyl groups by halogens, e.g. thionyl chloride or bromide. When mixing the basic materials little or no heat is developed. The reaction can best be carried out by the application of heat. After the mixture has been kept at a temperature of 40 to 50° C for an hour the reaction is generally complete. The resulting products generally occur in crystalline form, are nearly colorless and are obtained in considerable amounts. Dilution of the chemicals with inert solvents is either entirely unnecessary or requires such small quantities that consumption of solvents is cut down to a minimum.

The free bases of the chloroalkylamine salts which result from the reaction can be liberated, generally in a very simple manner, by adding alkali. Due to their readiness to react,

the products of this process are valuable intermediates for the most varied spheres of chemistry.

Example 1.

To a suspension of 400 parts by weight of ethanol-amino-chlorohydrate in 500 parts by weight of chloroform add 500 parts by weight of thionyl chloride dissolved in 500 parts by weight of chloroform. Keep at a temperature of 50° C until no more hydrochloric acid is being given off. The originally solid salt changes into a viscous mass which solidifies into a crystalline paste upon cooling. It is then syphoned off and dried, and the final quantity of the chlorohydrate of chloroethylamine will be found to be close to the theoretically possible optimum.

Example 2.

Slowly add 150 parts/w of thionyl chloride to 100 parts/w of ethanol aminochlorohydrate. A strong reaction occurs in which hydrochloric acid and sulphur dioxide is developed but the substance does not heat up. When heated to 50 to 60° C the material becomes viscous. The small excess of thionyl chloride is removed in a vacuum and an almost colorless crystalline powder remains.

Example 3.

To a suspension of 200 parts/w of diethanol aminochlorohydrate in 200 parts/w of chloroform add a solution of 200 parts/w thionyl chloride in 200 parts/w of chloroform. After the mixture has been kept at 50° C for an hour the reaction is complete. Dichlorodiethylaminochlorohydrate, which is soluble in chloroform, remains behind as a faintly colored, non-crystalline syrupy mass after the chloroform has been evaporated off. When stirred with a solution of soda, dichlorodiethylamine, insoluble in water, boiling point 130 - 140° C, is produced.

Example 4.

A suspension of 370 parts/w of triethanolaminochlorohydrate in 800 parts/w of ethylene chloride is mixed with 750 parts/w of thionyl chloride. When heated to 60 - 70° C the mixture goes into solution and a reaction takes place.

A high yield of trichlorotriethylaminochlorohydrate separates out from the clear solution under pressure in the form of colorless flakes. The insoluble, free base is produced by treating with soda solution.

Example 5.

Make a suspension of 150 parts/w of diethylethanolaminochlorohydrate in 300 parts/w of chloroform. Then mix with a solution of 130 parts/w of thionyl chloride in 130 parts/w of chloroform. When heated to 50° C this becomes a clear solution. A high yield in the form of a colorless crystalline powder with a melting point of 198 to 200° C is obtained when the chloroform is distilled off. This melting point can be raised considerably if the substance is recrystallized repeatedly. If soda is added the free base of the chlorohydrate, which has a boiling point of 145 to 147° C, is obtained.

Example 6.

220 parts/w of ethanolanisulphate are heated to 60° C together with 250 parts/w thionyl chloride and 450 parts/w chloroform. A good yield of chloroethylaminosulphate in the form of colorless crystals is obtained after cooling and filtering.

Example 7.

150 parts/w diethylethanolaminochlorohydrate and 150 parts/w thionyl chloride are heated to 70 - 80° C. The excess of thionyl chloride is distilled off. A reasonable quantity of Diethylchloroethylaminochlorohydrate is obtained.

Example 8.

223 parts/w of 2 oxy-1-aminopropanochlorohydrate are mixed with 500 parts/w of chloroform. At 40 to 50° C add 260 parts/w thionyl chloride at a speed sufficient to maintain a lively reaction. Keep at 50° C for a further hour. After cooling, the 2-chloro-1-aminopropanochlorohydrate is syphoned off. A reasonable quantity of the product is obtained. It is in the form of colorless, shimmering flakes.

Patent Claim.

Process for the production of chloroalkylamines or their salts from oxyalkylamines, characterized by the fact that the oxyalkylamines, in the form of their salts, are treated with compounds capable of replacing their hydroxyl groups with halogens, e.g. with thionyl chloride or bromide.

The above copy is herewith  
certified true and correct.

Ludwigshafen, 12 December 1947.

Dr. Wolfgang Alt,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

OA-Document No. 709

(Continuation)

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
Vermittlungsstelle W

Berlin NW 7  
Unter den Linden 78  
A 2 Flora 0021

I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
Patents Department, for  
Herr Dr. Hübner,  
Ludwigshafen/Rhine

Your Ref.  
L.R. Section  
Dr. Ul/Ho. 27

Your communication dated  
7 Jan.

Our Ref.  
Dr. Eck./W.

Berlin, 18 January 1936

Subject: O.Z. 8776 (I 51781 / secret)

We have just been informed by telephone that the Army Ordnance Office has authorized us to apply for the patent in all countries, using the same specifications as those used when applying for the German patent.

Vermittlungsstelle W  
Seite II  
signed: Eckli.

The above copy is certified  
true and correct.

Ludwigshafen, 11 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.



OA-Document No. 710  
(Continuation)

I.G.Ludwigshafen

From: Patents Department  
Account No. 65001

To: Teletype In 1.

Teletype message No. 120 E/R. Date 21 March 1941

Addressee: Vermittlungsstelle W, Berlin

-----URGENT-----

In addition to England, patents corresponding to OZ 8776 were  
issued in Japan, America, Canada, Holland, Italy, Switzer-  
land, Czechoslovakia, Belgium and France. The German application  
was refused in the first instance and withdrawn during appeal  
proceedings due to literature indicating prior claim.

Patents Department Ludwigshafen

21 March 1941 V 11 11

The above copy is herewith  
certified true and correct.  
Ludwigshafen, 11 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel.

OK-Document No. 711  
(Continuation)

Certified True Copy

Army High Command (Commander of  
Replacement Training Army)  
74 o 21 17 Wa J Rue 9 VII a -  
2539/39 Top Secret - - - - -

Berlin W 35, 27 September 1939  
Tirpitzufer 72 - 76

(Stamp: Top Secret)

To:

Bayrische Stickstoffwerke A.G.  
for Herr Baurat Janisch or Deputy

Subject: Trostberg Project  
Order No.  
9/VII-247-0102/38.

Berlin N.W. 7 -  
Schadowstr. 4/5 -

Preliminary Order - Expansion

During the recent discussions with the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. officials Dir. Dr. ter Meer and Dir. Dr. Ambros the Army High Command noted that the experiments on the hydrogenation of acetylene into ethylene and on the production of Oil-D from ethylene and sulphur chloride in a continuous process have advanced sufficiently to enable the processes to be employed on a large scale.

On these premises, and with reference to the conference with the Chief of Wa J Rue 9 and the above-named officials on 22 September 1939 you receive an order to build a plant with a capacity of 4000 tons of Oil-D per month on the site of the VT plant at Trostberg.

This order does not affect the already commenced construction of the plants for the production of ethylene oxide and polyglycol, including tank storage facilities. This work is to continue as planned.

You are asked to get into touch immediately with I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. as regards all technical details, expansion of projected plant etc. connected with this project and, after all questions have been settled, to submit the necessary cost estimates and plans to the Army High Command, Department Wa J. Rue 9 VII.

OA-Document No. 711  
(Continuation)

We point out that in accordance with letter No. 340/38 top secret, dated 28 March 1939, the conditions of the Preliminary Order, and the cover agreement which is yet to be concluded, shall also apply to this expansion.

Before construction is commenced permission must be obtained from the appropriate military and civil air raid protection authorities.

Please acknowledge this Preliminary Order - Extension in writing.

By order

signed (illegible)

I herewith certify that the above is a true copy of the original which I have before me.

Berlin, 19 December 1947

(Charge) (Notary's stamp)

signed: Bröo  
Notary

(Notary's stamp) signed: Hans Bröo  
Notary

The above copy is herewith certified true and correct.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 6 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Affidavit  
-----

I, Dr. Paul Baumann, living at Marl / Krs. Rocklinghausen, Kampstrasse 92, having been duly warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit, herewith declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

I state that the enclosed sketch is a true, reduced site plan of the Chemische Werke, Huels as of 26 June 1942. The area outlined in red and marked "B-Plant" contains the buildings of the so-called B-Plant at Huels which was purposely kept separate from the rest of the factory buildings, i.e. the buildings of the Montan plant manufacturing diglycol, oxal, acetophenone, and the former buildings of the mustard-gas plant which was dismantled in 1944.

Marl, 9 January 1948

signed: Dr. Paul Baumann

Certification: The above signature, recognized by me, of Herr Dr. Paul Baumann, living at Marl/Westf., Kampstrasse 92 was made before me, here, on 9 January 1948 and is herewith witnessed and certified.

Marl in Westfalen, 9 January 1948.

signed: Karl Bornemann  
Defense Counsel in  
Case VI before the  
Military Tribunal at  
Nuremberg.

The above copy is herewith certified  
true and correct.

Nuremberg, 26 January 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney at Law.



A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Albert F e l m , living in Ludwigshafen/Rh., Hindenburgstr. 45, have been duly warned that I make myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on my oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

On 6 June 1941, I went to Dyhernfurth as a Chemist in order to prepare the setting up of the Dyhernfurth Works of the Anorgana G.m.b.H. When the plant was started - the work had been carried out in stages ~~from~~ fall of 1941 on - I took over the management of the Anorgana Works of Dyhernfurth. As Dr. Ambros, the business manager of the Anorgana G.m.b.H. came to Dyhernfurth only three to four times a year, and then only for one day, he appointed me in his place as the "Fuehrer of the Betrieb" in accordance with the Law for the Regulation of National Labor. I held this position until the evacuation of the plant on 24 January 1945.

I declare the following on my oath :

- 1.) In the manufacturing establishments under my supervision, for the production of the final product Tabun and the preliminary auxiliary and by-products, no prisoner-of-war or foreign worker was ever employed in the factory. The French prisoners of war who had been employed for clearing the site and building were withdrawn from Dyhernfurth at the express demand of Dr. Ambros before the first trials at the plant for the manufacture of the first intermediate product were started.
- 2.) In the manufacturing establishments under my supervision producing the final product Tabun and the preliminary, auxiliary and by-products, no concentration camp prisoner was ever employed as a factory worker for the current operations.
- 3.) The Anorgana-G.m.b.H. delivered the entire production of Tabun to the storage tanks of the OGH or RIM which were adjacent to the Works.
- 4.) In the Anorgana Works Dyhernfurth, no chemical research whatsoever, was done in the field of chemical warfare agents. The experiments carried out in the laboratory and in the technical college were for the sole purpose of controlling and improving manufacture. Nor were experiments for the testing of the chemical warfare agents on human beings

or on animals ever carried out there.

I have no knowledge whatsoever of any tests on human beings being carried out at other places.

Ludwigshafen, a.R. 30 July 1947

signed : Dr. Albert P a l m

I herewith certify the above signature of Dr. Albert PAIM, Ludwigshafen a.Rh. Hindenburgstr. 45, which was rendered in my, Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler's, Ludwigshafen a.Rh. Brunckstr. 13, presence.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 30 July 1947

signed : Dr. Wolfgang Heintzeler

Attorney-at-Law

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy :

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 12 December 1947

Dr. Wolfgang I l t ,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

Glossary of Sketch by Dr. Ambros

<u>German</u>	<u>English</u>
<u>Fuehrerhauptquartier</u>	<u>Fuehrer's Headquarters</u>
Zentrale Planung	Central Planning Board
Beauftragter des V.J.P.	Commissioner for the Four Year Plan
OKW	Supreme Command of the Wehrmacht
OKH	Army High Command
OKL	Air Force High Command
OKM	High Command of the Navy
R. W.M.	Reich Ministry of Economics
R.M.	Reich Ministry of Aviation
<u>R.Min.Ruek</u>	<u>Reich Ministry of Armaments and War Production</u>
GB Ruest	Plenipotentiary General for Armaments
GB Arb.	Plenipotentiary General for Labor
GB Chem.	Plenipotentiary General for Chemistry
Uebrige GB	Other Plenipotentiaries General
<u>Rohstoffamt</u>	<u>Office of Raw Materials</u>
<u>Planungsamt</u>	<u>Office of Planning</u>
Verschiedene Amtgruppen	Various Official Groups
Reichsstelle Chemie	Reich Office for Chemistry
<u>Amtsgruppe Chemie</u>	<u>Official Group for Chemistry</u>
Organe der gewerblichen Wirtschaft	Offices of Industrial Economy
<u>WIGU Chem. Industr.</u>	<u>Economic Group for the Chemical Industry</u>
<u>Produktionsausschuss</u>	<u>Production Committee</u>
Fachgruppen	Special Groups
Soda	Soda
Schwefel	Sulphur

Continuation of the Glossary of  
Sketch by Dr. Ambros

<u>German</u>	<u>English</u>
Carbid-Chemie	Carbide chemistry
Hauptausschuss	Chief Committee
Pulver, Sprengstoffe	Gunpowder, explosives
Sonderausschusses	Special committees
C-Stoffe	Carbon compounds

"ANNALEN DER CHEMIE" 326. Vol. Pages 129 and following.

Communication from the Chemical Institute of the University

of Rostock.

Paper on the Organic Compounds of Phosphorus with Nitrogen ;

by A. Michaelis.

(Received on 4 November 1902)

(Page 122)

Ethyl ester,  $(C_2H_5)_2N.PO(OC_2H_5)_2$ . This is a colorless, aromatic smelling liquid which is produced in the same way as the methyl compound, to which it is very similar. The boiling point is  $114 - 117^\circ C.$  under 25 mm pressure and  $218 - 220^\circ C.$  under atmospheric pressure.

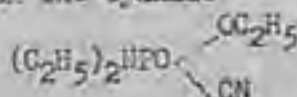
0.1814 g yielded 10.6 ccm nitrogen gas at  $23^\circ C.$  and 737 mm pressure.

Computed:  
N = 6.70

Found by experiment:  
6.40

If 10 g pulverized potassium cyanide (somewhat more than 2 mol. weights) is sprinkled with pure alcohol and 10 g of the N-Oxychlorophosphine (one mol.w.) are added, and the mixture is heated on the reflux cooler on top of a water bath, a violent reaction takes place. The alcoholic liquid is then filtered off from the precipitated potassium chloride and the alcohol removed by distillation in a water-bath. If the residue is distilled in a vacuum, one obtains a colorless liquid smelling faintly of hydrocyanic acid, and the composition of which is more or less  $(C_2H_5)_2N.PO(OC_2H_5)_2$

plus HCN<sup>62)</sup>. Distillation with steam and the addition of alkali, produces the pure ester,  $(C_2H_5)_2N.PO(OC_2H_5)_2$  which can be extracted with ether from the distillate. Further investigations showed, however, that the substance is probably a mixture of the said ester with the cyanide



which has more or less the same composition as a compound:  $(C_2H_5)_2N.PO(OC_2H_5)_2$  plus HCN.



Excerpt from QA Document No. 714

The substance dissolves completely when shaken with an ample amount of water and when this solution is added to nitrate of silver and then heated, it yields a precipitate of cyanide of silver. The substance is completely free of chlorine.

I herewith certify that the above excerpt is a correct and true copy of the original:

Ludwigshafen, 12 December 1947.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

62)

(Footnote:) A. Schall: On the effect of Phosphorus Oxide Bromide upon secondary Aliphatic Amines. Inauguration thesis, Rostock 1898.

Reports of the Deutsche Chem. Gesellschaft  
Year of Publication 65; 1932, Vol. II, Pages 1598-1601.

308. Hilky LANGE and Gerda von HUNTER:

on Esters of Monofluoric Phosphorus Acids.

(From the Chemical Institute of the University of Berlin)  
(Received on 16 September 1932)

.....  
The alkyl-monofluoric phosphates,  $(\text{alk})_2\text{PO}_3\text{F}$ , are formed when heating silver salt with alkyl iodides in a sealed tube. The product of the reaction is extracted with ether, the etheric solution is boiled down and the remaining fluid is submitted to fractional distillation. Methyl and ethyl esters can be distilled at normal atmospheric pressure and then become colorless liquids with a boiling point of  $150.1^\circ\text{C}$ . at 759 and  $171.5$  to  $172.0^\circ\text{C}$ . at 757. The homologous esters can be cleaned without decomposing only in a vacuum. Determination of the vapor density showed that the monofluoric phosphates could be regarded as being monomolecular at approx.  $200^\circ\text{C}$ . Consequently they behave as the aryl fluoric sulphonates (Loco citato). For the refraction of the group  $\text{PO}_3\text{F}$  the value of 10.40 plus or minus 0.05 was found for two compounds.

.....  
The strong effect of the monofluoric phosphate alkyl Ester upon the human organism is interesting. The vapors of these compounds have a pleasant smell and are strongly aromatic. But, already a few minutes after inhalation, a strong pressure on the larynx with shortness of breath is experienced. Afterwards consciousness becomes slightly blurred and there are indications of a blinding effect with painful hypersensitivity of the eyes to light. These phenomena wear off only after several hours. They are apparently caused not by the acid decomposition products of the Ester, but can probably be attributed to the dialkyl monofluoric phosphates themselves. The effects are caused by very small amounts.

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy of the excerpt:

Ludwigshafen, 12 December 1947.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant Defense Counsel.

GERMAN REICH

(Government Seal)

Published on 26 August  
1938

REICH PATENT OFFICE

Letters Patent

No. 664 438  
Class 12 q, Group 1 G1  
I 52 694 IVc/12 q

Date of the Publication of Granting the Patent:  
11 August 1938

I. G. Farbenindustrie Akt.-Ges. in Frankfurt a.M. \*)

Process for the Manufacture of Dialkylaminophosphorus Fluorides

Patented in the German Reich from 9 July 1935 onwards.

It was found that Dialkylaminophosphorous Fluorides can be easily obtained by the conversion of Dialkylaminophosphorus Compounds, which contain at least one halogen atom that can be replaced by fluorine, with compounds which contain exchangeable fluorine. The conversion is best carried out with the help of a solvent, and, should it be necessary, with the addition of heat.

The new Dialkylaminophosphorous Fluorides are pellucid, pleasantly etheric smelling liquids which do not corrode glass. They are meant especially to be used for pest control and have proved themselves to be effective against insects which destroy stocks, such as Calandria Granaria, Tenebrio Molitor, and similar vermin, such as bedbugs, cockroaches, clothes-lice, as well as against flies, gnats, and moths of all kinds.

\*) Footnote:

The Patentee states that the names of the inventors are:  
Dr. Gerhard Schrader, Gladbach-Bruchhausen and  
Dr. Otto Bayer, Leverkusen.

Excerpt from OA Document No. 716

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct  
copy of the excerpt.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., 12 December 1947.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

News Edition

Vol. 19, No. 18; September 25, 1941; Seite 1025-27

The Chemical Warfare Service in National Defense

(Address delivered <sup>at</sup> the 102<sup>nd</sup> meeting of the American Chemical Society in Atlantic City, N.J. following the banquet September 10, 1941)

Major-General William W. Porter  
Chief, Chemical Warfare Service,  
Washington, D.C.

.....

We know that all of the European belligerents are well equipped with chemical agents and prepared to use them. Regardless of the treaties which exist between them, it is fully realized by all that the best insurance against such an attack lies not only in gas masks and protective clothing, but in the ability to retaliate immediately. We are well informed in the Military Intelligence Section of our Army of weapons, gases, and instructions for their use by all belligerents, and we have very considerable knowledge of the amounts and kinds of agents being manufactured and stored in the arsenals of Europe, ready for use.

.....

That a gas attack is considered possible at any time is evidenced by the fact that all of the belligerent nations have equipped their armies with gas masks ready for immediate action. General staffs do not require soldiers to carry 3 or 4 pounds of extra weight just for fun.

.....

Internationally, our situation is peculiarly different. We are parties to no treaty prohibiting the use of gas in war. Other important powers which did not sign the Geneva Protocol against gas include Brazil, Argentina, and Japan. The Senate of the United States, after full consideration of the facts, refused to tie the hands in war of the greatest scientific and industrial nation of the world. All nations have laws against murder, but none as to how it should be committed. To attempt international regulation of warfare is to regulate a paradox. It must be remembered,



however, that not even the fiction of a treaty exists to prevent the Axis powers from using gas against our military forces. Our only safety lies in the best possible defensive measures, coupled with the ability to retaliate to such an extent as to be overwhelming. It is the job of the Chemical Warfare Service to take care of these matters.

We are charged by the law of the land with military problems relating both to offense and defense in the general field of poison gases, screening smokes, and incendiaries. In actual practice, however, the functions of the service are expanded much beyond the bare outline of the law. Today the Chemical Warfare Service is not only the adviser of both the War and Navy Departments on all matters pertaining to chemical warfare, but also on many problems of chemical manufacture pertaining to national defense. As a result, the links joining the Chemical Warfare Service and many members of the AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY are numerous and the contacts close.

For many years the President of the AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY has appointed each year a group of some 20 distinguished members of the SOCIETY to serve as a committee to guide and assist the Chemical Warfare Service in carrying out its mission.

.....  
The Chemical Warfare Service supervises the training of the entire Army in gas defense and also trains chemical troops in the offensive use of gases, smokes, and incendiaries.

.....  
Today, in addition to the regulars, we have on extended active duty almost 1000 reserve officers. By bringing these to our aid, and most of them are members of the AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, we have gained the assistance of a great array of talent from the industries, colleges, and the scientific institutions of the United States. These men have supplemented the efforts of our regular establishment enormously and are today our chief dependence for carrying out our mission.

Intensified research is our greatest protection against the possibility of surprise. Our research organizations, which have been at Edgewood Arsenal and which still have their greatest facilities there, working at an accelerated pace, have been greatly supplemented in recent months by the invaluable aid of the National Defense Research Committee. Through this organization, the best chemical talent in the country has been made available under the most capable leadership - first of Dr. Bush, and now of James B. Conant, president of Harvard University. Dr. Conant's contributions to the Chemical Warfare Service in the last war, particularly in connection with Lewisite, are familiar to all of you, and it is fortunate indeed that he can find time to devote to the work of the National Defense Research Committee in the present emergency.

.....

During the fiscal year 1941, the Chemical Warfare Service placed a total of almost 800 different contracts with industrial firms, distributed over 26 states. While some of our contracts were placed with large corporations, I am happy to say that a good share of the business was given to small manufacturers.

.....

We are now conducting classes to train firemen and other civilian workers to defend our cities against incendiary attacks. They will act as instructors for the many thousand civilian wardens who would be necessary should we be attacked. We are very proud of our school and of the splendid job it has done in the past 20 years.

.....

Lastly, we are concerned, of course, with adequate preparations for offense. Wars are not won by gas masks or other defensive material. To overcome the enemy we must take the offensive.

I am one of those who believe that the word "defense" has actually hindered our military preparations in this country. If we are to carry out the declared purpose of

our Commander-in-Chief and crush Hitlerism, no amount of defensive preparations can do the job. Only an Army organized as a striking force can build a true and disciplined morale. Defense is a negative word, an insincere word, and no word at all around which to rally a military effort. It has its place, of course, in any military vocabulary, but we have endowed it in this country with connotations which make it a weasel word.

To be unprepared to retaliate with any form of weapon is to invite attack. For that reason alone, our Chemical Warfare Service must be prepared to supply the Army with great quantities of chemical agents, should they be needed for carrying on active hostilities. War gases cannot be manufactured on short notice. Based generally on industrial products, additional and complicated steps must be passed through before we can change the chemicals of peacetime to those of war. Manufacture requires specialized equipment and highly trained personnel. New factories must be constructed; production problems are many and difficult. Large quantities are needed, since toxic gases are only of value in war when used in the largest quantities.

In order to prepare ourselves for offensive activities, plants at Edgewood Arsenal have been rehabilitated and many new ones have been constructed. An additional arsenal is now being built at Huntsville, Ala., well protected from hostile activities which might occur along the seaboard. We are confident that these two arsenals, backed by the enormous chemical industry of the United States, will force any hostile power to think seriously before using chemical agents against us.

.....

Many of you have seen Edgewood; you would scarcely recognize it today. The Huntsville Arsenal will occupy more than 33 000 acres and will cost about \$ 40 000 000. It will be in operation, we hope, about July 1, 1942.

.....

I am confident that our Nation need have no fears concerning chemical warfare so long as this close collaboration between the AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY and the Chemical Warfare Service exists.

Die Richtigkeit des vorstehenden Auszuges wird hiermit  
beglaubigt.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., den 17. Dezember 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



Chemical and Engineering News  
Vol. 24, No 8, April 25, 1946, pp.1029 - 1031.

The Chemist's Military Horizon

Honorable Robert P. Patterson, Secretary of War.

(Dem Artikel ist ein Bild des Verfassers vorangestellt mit der Unterschrift:

"In all planning <sup>we</sup> must embrace the scientific research potential in establishing measures for national security . . . " Hon. Robert P. Patterson, Secretary of War. "

Gas warfare.

Now as to gas warfare which was the original and primary mission of the Chemical Warfare Service: That our opponents did not challenge us on this score was due to our high state of preparedness. The insurance may have been expensive, measured in dollars, but cheap indeed if consideration is given to the lives which were saved, the innumerable casualties which were avoided, and the pre-elimination of the anguish and expense of caring for the potential victims of this added weapon for years to come, not to mention the other costs of waging an active gas warfare.

Indeed, I think we can congratulate ourselves that we won the gas war without firing a gas shell or dropping a gas bomb!

That we were ready to retaliate in heavy quantity is attested by the great stocks of gas we had for use and the standby facilities ready to go into heavy production if G-Day had materialized.

Chemical experts worked with us in developing toxic agents as good as, if not better than, those we found in the hands of the enemy. I have heard it said that the Germans had a supergas capable of penetrating American masks. The truth is that the mask furnished every American fighting man ensured protection against any gas found in Germany. On the other hand, we had a gas that would have made the Japanese military mask useless.

Just as preparedness saved us from the ravages of gas warfare, so did our readiness for biological warfare



deter the enemy from unleashing bacteria, fungi, rickettsiae, and toxic living agents to produce diseases in persons, animals, and plants. We had information that the Japanese were experimenting in these all-ravaging fields of total war, and we were compelled to undertake appropriate counter measures. It is fortunate that the enemy so respected our retaliatory potential that we were spared the horrors of this type of warfare. Advancing our knowledge in this field, however, does mean more work for the Chemical Warfare Service. It means continued preparedness, for biological agents offer a weapon hard to detect and one that does not depend upon large industrial establishments for its production. We must be on guard against future undeclared "blitz" wars which might start off with a "Pearl Harbor" attack using gas or biological agents or both.

#### Peacetime Benefits from War

It is a seemingly irrational commentary on human achievement to note that some of our greatest blessings have been the product of war. The recent conflict should be no exception, and the great crop of military developments of World War II must be recognized as containing inherent benefactions which their martial purpose had concealed.

Though it is difficult for the nonexpert to appreciate the derivation of peacetime benefits from the tools of war, your trained minds can well grasp how such things can have important technical and other professional application.

Consider the medical aspects of chemical warfare developments, for example:

There were five wartime discoveries in this line, made possible by research chemists and biological investigators, which have long-range and important human application.

The first and foremost find involves BAL, which takes its name from British development of its antilewisite

action. It has been found to be a life-saving medication in treatment of persons poisoned with arsenic or mercury.

This compound was discovered by the British and manufactured in the United States by the Du Pont Co., under direction of the chemists in Division 9 of the National Defense Research Committee. As a result of their remarkable chemical skill, a pure compound was made available which could be injected into the human body. Large stocks furnished the Army for protection against heavy metal poisoning from potential war gases will now be made available to civilians and will be invaluable in treatment by physicians.

A second group of chemical compounds synthesized by the chemists of National Defense Research Committee for the Chemical Warfare Service, known as the nitrogen mustards, have been shown by military and civilian medical investigators to have such positive effects on certain forms of cancer that further vigorous study will be pushed by the National Research Council and the CWS.

A third medical contribution concerns diisopropyl fluorophosphate, which was produced by chemists of the National Defense Research Committee. Physicians working for the Chemical Warfare Service have found probable beneficial effects of this compound in the treatment of the eye condition, glaucoma. It is also being investigated for the treatment of a disease characterized by muscular weakness known to medicine as myasthenia gravis.

The fourth discovery holds promising medical application in cases of poisoning from cyanide. The medical research staff of the Chemical Warfare Service has shown that this concoction seems to counteract cyanide.

A fifth compound developed and produced by National Defense Research Committee chemists is the rodenticide 1080. It was by far the best rat poison tested by the Fish and Wildlife Service.

Important benefits are likewise to be found in the field of biology:

Not only did the biological warfare program develop means and methods of protecting our troops and the civilian population, but it also produced new medical knowledge affecting humans, animals, and agriculture.

In the "now-it-can-be-told" category are:

The production and isolation for the first time of a crystalline bacterial toxin from a strain of botulinus which will make possible the preparation of a more effective toxoid for ptomaine.

Development of a vaccine for rinderpest, quantities of which are being turned over to the Chinese Government through the United States Relief and Rehabilitation Administration for protection of Chinese livestock.

Information on the effects of more than one thousand different chemical agents on living plants, giving promise of effective control of weeds and other growth.

Development of methods and facilities for the mass production of pathogenic microorganisms and their products, hand-in-hand with development of original and unique safety methods.

Perfection of techniques for accurate detection of minute quantities of disease-producing agents, from either contaminated air or contaminated surfaces.

And as for "beating our swords into plowshares" in the case of peacetime utilization of actual war implements:

The United States Forest Service is testing the Pyrogel (Coop) incendiary mixture for burning slash in forest areas.

The Chemical Warfare Service in Hawaii is reconverting Napalm incendiary filler into liquid soap.

Incendiary bombs have been furnished for experimentation in removing stumps in areas where means other than burning is impossible.

The Department of Agriculture has requested mechanical smoke generators for trial in protecting crops in the



South from frost.

Decontaminating apparatus has demonstrated its utility for insect and crop control.

I could continue at length to enumerate the possibilities of the commercial or peacetime applications which lie dormant in so many of our wartime developments, particularly in the field of chemistry. You may be sure that, while the commercial exploitation of these possibilities now devolves upon the members of this learned society and the chemical industry, the War Department will lend all possible assistance.

These achievements in a service that had considered gas and gas masks to be its chief field of activity five years ago were matched by achievements fully as momentous in aircraft, ordnance, communications, engineering, quartermaster items, medical service, and transportation. These developments have produced a profound effect on military thinking. The Army, I assure you, is "invention-minded" from the top command down. If any of you, in your dealings with the soldiers, have encountered a "stickness" in the past, you will have to search hard to find any trace of it in the future. What you will find will be an organization fully alert to the fact that success in war will not be possible unless the armed forces have the best weapons that the scientific industrial talent of the country can bring forward--an organization that is committed to the policy that future planning must involve the concept of a steady partnership of the military, science, and industry.

.....

Die Richtigkeit des vorstehenden  
Auszuges wird hi mit beglaubigt.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., den 15. Dezember 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel.

Excerpt

from

the Record of the XIIth International Conference of the Red Cross,  
held at Geneva on 7 October 1925

-----  
International Committee of the Red Cross  
-----

Chemical Warfare and its Consequences  
-----

( Page 13 )

..... M. Paul-Boncour, the French delegate, coming to the rescue, cried, " Let us take good care lest, at the very moment when, be it in a written statement, or in the course of a conference, we make known the fact that we are directing every endeavour and devoting all our energy to the active fight against chemical warfare, lest, at the very moment when the nations are signing the agreement, they retain the lurking suspicion that the enemy of tomorrow, the possible belligerent if tomorrow will violate the agreement, even should he have signed it - for the agreement will by no means be universal - and lest, the world being haunted by the appalling fear of such a war, preparations continue, obscured to a greater or lesser extent by a veil of secrecy, preparations which, when the time comes, will reduce to dust the finest and most noble undertakings to which we could have set our names.

.....

III. Chemical Warfare ( Page 34 )

5. Facilities for the Production of Chemical Warfare Agents.

..... In 1918, it was said that 30% of the total amount of ammunition used consisted of gas-ammunition, that is gas-filled ammunition. In the course of some attacks, gas ammunition even played the major role in the action. On 21 March 1918, for example, 250,000<sup>1)</sup> vesicant-filled grenades were thrown. The monthly output of chemical warfare agents in America was:

-----  
1) Figures can be found in Hanslian, Bergendorff and in the publication "American Munitions".



chloropicrin . . . . . 1290 tons  
phosgene . . . . . 90 tons  
sulphide,  $\beta\beta'$ -dichloro ethyl ( Yperite ) . . . . 770 tons

New production had not been commenced before the beginning of 1918.

The United States are therefore in a position to manufacture, in existing plants, at least 100,000 tons<sup>1)</sup> of chemical warfare agents per year. During the recent war, whole tracts of land were completely ravaged by weapons of war; in a future war, it would therefore be possible to cover equally vast tracts with asphyxiating gases, which would render it completely impossible to remain within these areas without special means of defense.

-----  
1) And this figure could easily be doubled.  
-----

I herewith certify that the above is a correct excerpt.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 21 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

auszug aus

INTERNATIONAL LAW

by Charles Cheney Hyde

Volume Three

Second Revised Edition

Boston

Little, Brown and Company

1945.

pp. 1818-1822.

(3)

Par. 362. Asphyxiating or Deleterious Gases. By a declaration of the First Hague Peace Conference the contracting parties agreed to forbid the employment of projectiles having for their sole purpose the diffusion of asphyxiating or deleterious gases. The American delegation opposed the declaration. The United States has not acceded to it.

.....

The United States, as a belligerent, established in 1917 a Chemical Warfare Service, and the following year American gas troops took a most active part in

the

the great military operations that developed between June and the armistice," employing both bombs and cylinders.

The development of toxic gases and liquids for offensive uses has already been such as to place a weapon of immense value within the reach of the belligerent which has made due preparation to employ it. American military opinion appears to doubt the wisdom of reliance upon assurances of restraint emanating from a possible or prospective enemy bent on aggression. For that reason the Chemical Warfare Service of the United States counsels such preparedness in the matter of research and development of the sciences as to give the country an actual and technical advantage over any enemy making use of gases. It is not understood, however, that the United States would be disposed to take the initiative in the employment offensively of highly deleterious gases, reserving recourse thereto for occasions demanding retaliation. On the other hand, there might be slight reluctance to employ offensively asphyxiating but not highly deleterious gases as a normal operation. Unless the Government were heedless of the views of the Army, it would be unlikely in the near future to bind the United States not to employ toxic

gases

gases in such form and manner as the exigencies of the hour might be deemed to justify or demand.

Par. 661 A.

.....

A Protocol prohibiting the use in war of asphyxiating, poisonous or other gases, and of bacteriological methods of warfare, opened for signature at Geneva on June 17, 1925, came into force on February 8, 1928, and was duly accepted by numerous powers. It was not, however, ratified by the United States.

.....

It is to be expected that a belligerent power will endeavour to make the best possible use of a relative military advantage and to be contemptuous of the dictates of humanity when they appear to frustrate a means of attaining an early and decisive victory. It may be greatly doubted, therefore, whether conventions purporting to restrict or regulate or prohibit recourse to particular forms of chemical warfare are to be relied upon to prevent a belligerent from employing them against the enemy when a relative advantage from so doing is sufficiently clear.

.....

If

- 4 -

If the severest and most cruel features of chemical warfare are to be eliminated from wars yet to be fought, it will probably be attributable to the power of the individual States participating therein, through the possession of adequate equipment, to make dangerous the use by the enemy of what is happily shocking to the sensibilities of mankind.

Die Uebereinstimmung obiger Auszüge aus "International Law" by Charles Cheney Hyde, Volume 3, 1945, Par.662 und Par.662 A mit dem Originaltext wird hiermit beglaubigt.

Nuernberg, den 3. Februar 1948

gez.: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

Die Richtigkeit und Vollstaendigkeit vorstehender Abschrift wird hiermit beglaubigt.

Nuernberg, den 3. Februar 1948

gez.: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel



Extract from Document NI-11 105  
(page 2)

Berlin, 16 April 1940

4 copies  
1st copy State Secretary Koerner  
2nd " Professor Krauch  
3rd " Dr. Ritter  
4th " Dr. Hau

Planning and Situation in the Field of Chemical  
Warfare Agents (K.Stoffe)

1) Capacities, finished or in course of construction

tons per month	Works	1 Apr.40	1 Oct.40	1 Apr.41	1 Oct.41
Mustard gas (Yellow Cross = Vesicants)	Arnsdorf	900	900	900	900
1) 2)	Hiele	600	1400	1400	1400
	Trostberg	-	800	4000	4000
	Total	1500	3100	6300	6300
Arsenic Chem. Warf.Agents (Blue Cross = Sternutators) -Salts	Stassfurt	180	180	180	180
Irritants 3)	Hahnenberg I	-	400	400	400
	Ludwigshafen	60	60	60	60
	Seelze	120	120	120	120
	Hahnenberg II	-	-	1000	1000
	Total	360	760	1760	1760
	Project "Oder"	-	-	-	1000
Total of all Chem.Warf.Agents		1860	3860	8060	8300

2) Technical and Raw Materials basis

1.Apr.40

Mustard gas

Possible further  
expansion

Griesbe	-	-	- 3000	6000
			4)	
(cf.1)	1860	3860	8060	
			11.300	
			14.300	

- 1) Mustard Gas Project - Grieba (near Plesteritz) for 3,000 or 6,000 tons per month is provisionally postponed, as the construction staff are entirely occupied with the more important project "Oder" (Dybernfarth).
- 2) A project (formerly Husls, now Trostberg) for 800 tons a month UP Salts (Mustard Gas class) is still pending. Production earliest, end of 1941.
- 3) The Diphosgene (Green cross = Lung irritants) Project can be carried out by engineering and chemical staff, if the 800 tons a month UP Project is given up.

The correctness and completeness of the above copy of Document NI 11105, page 2, is hereby certified by me.

Nuremberg, 30 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Gernot Gather  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Extract from Document NI 11105  
(page 11)

The Position of German Chemical Warfare Agents

1 May 1943

Types	Stocks tons	Planned amount Tons p. month	Production at 1 May 43 tons p.mth.	Full capacity tons p.month
White ring (Lacrimators) Omega Salts	7.114	710	210	710 from autumn 1943
Blue ring (Stemutators)				
Arcin oil	7.500	400	180	500 from now on
Clark C 1 (Diphenylchlor arsine)	300		90	120 from autumn 1943
Azine	2500	200	200	200 from now on
Green ring (Lung irritants)				
F-Oil	5900	690	700	700 from now on
Yellow ring (Vesicants)				
O-Mustard gas	10500	2100 or	700	2,100 from July 1943 2,000 from end 1943
D-Mustard gas	-	4000	500	4,000 from end 1944
N-Mustard gas	1250	100	50	100 from beginning 1944
Red ring				500 from July 43
T 83	1500	1000 (+1000)	550	700 " Oct. 43
T 46	-	100 (+500)	-	1000 " Jan. 44
T 150	-	20	-	100 " middle 44
T 155	-	20	-	20 " autumn 43
T 500	-	100	-	20 " " 43
				100 " beginning 44

Position: 1 May 1943

The correctness and completeness of the above copy of NI Document 11105, page 11, is hereby certified by me.

Nuremberg, 30 January 1948

Signed: Gernot Gather  
Assistant Defense Counsel

(page 12)

## German Chemical Warfare Agents

Position at 1 March 1944

Types	Stocks in tons	Planned amount tons p. month	Production achieved at 1 May 44 tons p.mth.	Full capacity in tons per mth.	Wehrmacht Requirement
White ring (Lacrimators) Omega Salt	7114	710	460	710 from middle 1944	360
Green ring (Lung irritants) P-Oil	5900	1400	700	1400 from middle 43	1490
L Mustard gas	1700	100	50	50 from 1 July 44	136
Tabun	5700	1000	1000	1000 from 1 May 44	1877
Sarin		600		100 from end 44	
T 150		20		20 from now on	80
T 155		20		20 from now on	15
Blue ring (Sternutators) Clark C 1 (Diphenylchlor arsine) Azine	1000	90	150	150 from now on	100
	3300	200	200	200 from now on (Provided delivery of preliminary products)	420
Blue-Yellow- ring (Sternutators- Vesicants) Arsenic	7500	400	670	670 from now on	401



Yellow ring  
(Vesicants)

O Mustardgas	22,000	2,100	2,100	2,100 from now on	5024
				2,000 from middle	
D Mustardgas	2,350	4,000	1,000	4,000 from end 44	

---

The correctness and completeness of the above copy  
of Document NI 11 105 (photostat) page 12 are hereby  
certified by me.

Nuremberg, 30 January 1948

Signed: Gernot Gather  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Extract from Document NI II 105  
(pages 24-27)

LA PSV/PS 592/44 g.Rs.

Top Secret

5 June 1944

5 copies  
3rd copy

PS/1730/44 g.Rs.

1) Mustard Gases

a) Oxol-Mustardgas

Rated capacity: 2,100 tons a month

At the present time, manufacture of Oxol-Mustard Gas is stopped, as the general preliminary product Ethylene oxide is serving the requirements of powder and anti-freeze agents.

According to arrangement with General Motorisation, the production of anti-freeze agents is to be reduced from 16,000 to 12,000 tons a year. This will release in the third quarter 660 tons Oxide a month and in the fourth quarter 760 tons a month, corresponding to 1000 and 1200 tons a month respectively of Oxol-Mustardgas. As the production of Oxol Mustardgas requires five times the amount of chlorine as compared with D Mustardgas, it should only be taken up in case of the most urgent necessity. If the position allows, the oxide will be processed into diglycol, in order to bring the exhausted stocks of diglycol for powder manufacture up to a level proportionate to the transport position.



## 2) Tabun

Present Production: 720 tons a month

Full capacity will be reached in August 1944 with 1000 tons a month. Manufacture proceeds smoothly. The actual output of Tabun will be 20% higher, as experiments have proved that Tabun can be stretched with 20% chlorobenzene, without disadvantage to the effectiveness of the material.

Stocks at 1 May 1944 8,500 tons

## 3) Sarin I

The 100 tons a month plant in Niederwerk will be ready for operation at the end of 1944.

The 500 tons a month plant in Seewerk should be completed on 1 April 1945. Special measures are being taken to ensure that this date is kept.

## 4) Plants for Preliminary Products.

The preliminary products plants for formamide, sodium cyanide, chlorine and phosphor oxide chloride, necessary for the production of chemical warfare agents, are being so speeded up that they will be finished by the time the corresponding chemical warfare agents plants are ready to start operation. Besides this, a plan is being worked out for increasing the phosphorus storage by 7,500 tons.

## Summary:

The above mentioned dates are being ensured by the following measures:

- 1) The constructions for the chemical warfare stuffs and the accompany-

(page 4 of original)

ing preliminary products are being placed in priority rank. A specially authorised officer of the Construction Office is supervising the completion by due date.

- 2) The machinery for the plants is being raised from priority rank SS 4927 to 4928 Brandt Apparats. Furthermore, for bottleneck deliveries, 2,000 tons of Item DE are at the disposal of Seewerk Sarine Plant.
- 3) For the iron producing industry, a guidance order number is being issued, which will ensure the products of this industry being delivered to the construction and assembly sites at the due date.
- 4) Additional authority for sheet metal orders covering 6,200 tons of thick and 850 tons of fine sheet metal is being issued.
- 5) By means of a special action, 1,200 skilled workers will be recruited from the Italian area, composed of 400 building workers, 700 blacksmiths and 100 electricians. Until this action gets under way, transfers will take place under the PSV Plan.

Note:

It must be pointed out that the most important of the chemical warfare agents works, Gendorf and Dyhernfurth, have no anti-aircraft protection. The light anti-aircraft battery was recently withdrawn from Dyhernfurth for other important objects. For both objects, smoke screen protection is being applied for.

Distributors:

1st copy )	
2nd " )	Dr. Schieber
3rd " )	Dir Dr. Ashroe
4th " )	Min. Rat Dr. Ehmann
5th " )	Office Group PS

I hereby certify that the above is a true and complete copy of the Document NI 11 105 pages 24-27 as produced before me.

Nuremberg, 30 January 1948

signed: Dr. Gather  
Assistant Defense Counsel



Gas production

Auszug aus GA-Dokument Nr. 6  
Hauptdokument

The whole amount of Chemical Warfare products (filled up into bombs or shells resp. stored in tanks or other containers) was approximately 62.000 tons, from which probably about 13.900 tons were not yet used. The greatest part of the production was filled up into bombs.  
The money invested in gas producing plants amounts to about 200 million Mark.

Type	whole production (storage enclosed) tons	Storage (not yet used) tons	producing firm	plant	plant used	remarks
Chloraceto- phenone	7.000	2.000	Riedel & Haen	Hannover Seelze	firm	the money for making possible the production was given by OKH
Adamsite	3.000	1.000	I.G.	Dordingen	firm	
Phosgene	5.000	-	I.G.	Wolfratshausen	Montan (OKH)	only filled up in to bombs
Arminoll	7.000	3.000	Argentan	Stassfurt	Montan (OKH)	
Clark	1.000	900	Lonal	Berlin-Haus- horst	Montan (OKH)	
Mustard gas (Thiodiglycole)	22.000	2.000	Orgacid	Amendorf	Montan (OKH)	about 250 tons produced in duels for experimental reasons
Mustard gas (direct)	3.000	3.000	Argentan	Gendorf	Montan (OKH)	including 600 tons of bad quality
T 9 (HN <sub>3</sub> )	2.000	1.000	Orgacid	Amendorf	Montan (OKH)	
Tabun	12.000	-	Argentan	Dyhernfurth	Montan (OKH)	
Sarin	-	-				
	<u>62.000</u>	<u>12.900</u>				

Besides these mentioned quantities there have been stored in Germany about 2.000 tons gas of different types of foreign origin such as Italian, French, Polish and Yugoslavian before the German troops left these countries.

Die Richtigkeit und Vollständigkeit vorstehender Abschrift wird hiermit beglaubigt.

Ludwigshafen a.Rh., den 15. Dezember 1947

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Begleitzettel.

Received of Dr. Ambros.

Data and information concerning chemical warfare production in  
Germany, which information is available through official channels.

signed Clarence S c o t t  
Major C.S.  
Cica - Capt III

Affidavit

-----

I, Dr. Emil A. EMMANN, qualified Chemist, born on 22 March 1903, living in Stuttgart-Möhringen, Kanalstr.15, have been duly warned that any false statement I may make will render me liable to punishment. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

1.) After professional activity at home and abroad, I was employed by the Army Ordnance Office of the Supreme Command of the Army from 1935 to 1945; from 1937 on, as an official of the Wehrmacht in the higher Technical Service (Regierungsrat, Oberregierungsrat, Ministerialrat). From 1935 to 1942, I was the chief of the Group "Chemical Initial and Intermediate Products", and from 1942 until 1945, chief of the "Manufacturing and Supply Department for Chemical Specialities", which among other things included Chemical Warfare Agents. Within the framework of my official duties, I had to work with this branch, also, from 1935 onwards.

2.) At the time of the opening of the trial against the leading executives of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. I read in the German newspapers, that the I.G. had produced 95 % of all Chemical Warfare Agents manufactured in Germany. At my hearings as a witness in Nuremberg, I learned later that this figure refers to the production in 1943 and was based on an estimate by the former head of the Office of the Technical Committee of the I.G. in Frankfurt, Director Dr. Struss, who had quoted it in an affidavit.

Because of my activity described above, I am in a position to give an opinion on associated problems.

3.) With reference to my hearing as a witness by the Military Tribunal, Case No. 6, on 30 October 1947, I have upon request of the Prosecution deposited my statement concerning the figures quoted in an affidavit dated 26 November 1947. The document concerned is NI-12725.

That document stated that the entire production of Chemical Warfare Agents, from the start of rearmament, until the end of the war, according to my notes which are partly based on estimates, was subdivided as follows:

I.G.'s own plants:	5.5%
OKH (Supreme Command of the Armed Forces) Ordnance Works, which were run by the I.G., or in partnerships in which the I.G. held more than 70% (of the stock)	35.2%
Other companies:	59.3%

In these and in the following statements, the product chloroacetophenone, in accordance with American usage, will not be listed. If it were included, the percentages would be little changed. The I.G. produced 44% of the total production; in 1941 I.G. stopped manufacturing it.

4.) At one of the hearings, I was shown the Document NI-11105, Exhibit 1572 for evaluation. Among other things, it contained a letter from my former Department in the Army Ordnance Office, in which were quoted the total stocks on hand of Chemical Warfare Agents as of 1. May 1943 and 1. March 1944, the amounts being based on the actual current production reports of the firms.

My breaking down these official figures results in:

	<u>Total Amounts on:</u>	
	1. May 1943	1. March 1944
Production in the I.G. Works	6.6%	6.7%
Production in the OKH-Works which were run by the I.G. or by partnerships of the I.G.	19.6%	28.2%
Production in other Works	73.8%	65.1%

Since chemical warfare agents were not used and thus no consumption took place, the stock piles which were accumulated up to a certain time, correspond with the actual total production.

5.) The difference between the stock piles on 1. March 1944 and those on 1. May 1943, consequently corresponds with the production between 1. May 1943 and 1. March 1944. It follows:

	<u>Production between 1. May 43 and 1. March 1944</u>
I.G. Works	6.8%
OKH Works run by the I.G. etc.	55.9%
Other Works	37.3%

The reduced production of the firms which were independent of the I.G., can be explained by the newly started production of the plants which had been commissioned by the I.G. after the beginning of the war. Furthermore, the Stassfurt Works, which were independent of the I.G., had restricted production after achieving the planned stock-piles.

OS-Document No. 721  
(Continuation)

6.) Since the authentic production figures for the period from 1. May 1943 until 1. March 1944 were made accessible by Document NI-11105 and the production from the beginning to the middle of 1944 could be gathered from this document, I am in a position, due to my knowledge of this field,



to give information also about production for the entire year 1943, which may be considered as extremely reliable.

It follows therefrom:

Production in 1943:

I.G. Works	7.5 %
OKH Works which were run by	
I.G. etc.	46.2 %
Other Works	46.3 %

The explanation why the percentage of the I.G. is reduced in the total production of 1943, as compared with that of the period between 1. May 1943 and 1. March 1944, is the following:

- the Dyhernfurth plant, which started its production in the middle of 1942, produced during the first months of 1943 only 200 - 300 tons per month.
- as it can be seen from NI-11105, the Gendorf Works had not produced any D-Iso (Mustard Gas) by 1. May 1943.

7.) The quoted figures (rounded off to whole percentages) are put together for clarity's sake in the following table:

	1	2	3	4
Production for Various Periods	I.G.-owned Works	OKH-owned Works run by the I.G. or by I.G. participations	Total of Column 1 & 2	Other Firms
Estimated production in 1943 (Affidavit Dr. Struss)			95	5
Computed Production in 1943, based on documentary Material	8	46	54	46
Actual Production from 1. May 43 until 1. March 44	7	56	63	37
<u>Total</u> Actual Production from the start of the Re-armament until 1. May 1943	7	19	26	74
Actual Total Production from the start of Re-armament until 1. March 1944	7	28	35	65

Estimated Total Production from the start of Re-arm- ment until the end of the War. (Dr. Bumann's affi- davit)	6	35	41	59
--	---	----	----	----

-----

8.) I do not know what documents were used for the estimate of the I.G. share of production (95% of all chemical warfare agents produced in Germany in 1943). The documents of the Office of the Technical Commission of the I.G. cannot be considered,

since my Agency carried on no correspondence whatsoever with this Office.

The same might be true for the Special Committee for Chemical Warfare Agents of the Reich Ministry for Armaments and War Production, which was directed by Dr. ALEROS and which, incidentally, was created only in 1943. Due to the strict instructions regarding secrecy, which were issued by the Supreme Command of the Wehrmacht, altogether only a small circle of persons were familiar with the capacity and production figures. For this reason, the I.G. Farbenindustrie cannot know officially - not even through the Business Organizations of the chemical industry - anything about the production circumstances of other works which were independent of them.

9.) The statement of Dr. Struss, that in 1937 no Chemical Warfare Agents were produced, is true insofar as the I.G. Farben are concerned.

This is true for those Works also for the years before that and for the subsequent period until the beginning of the war in 1939.

This follows unequivocally from my Affidavit, dated 26. November 1947 (Document NI-12725), according to which the I.G. Farbenindustrie or its subsidiary plants did not possess any completed factories for producing Chemical Warfare Agents at the beginning of the war and that consequently production could not yet have taken place.

This statement does not apply to the other plants producing Chemical Warfare Agents, such as the Orgacid G.m.b.H. and the Erguthen G.m.b.H., which were running plants belonging to the OKH and which were independent of the I.G. with respect to their business capital and their industrial management.  
Nuremberg, 8. January 1948 signed: Emil A. Hermann

I, Dr. Gernot Gather, Assistant Defense Counsel, herewith certify the above signature of Dr. Emil A. Hermann of Stuttgart-Moehringen, Kanalstr. 15, who signed in my presence.

Nuremberg, 8. January 1948 signed: Dr. Gernot Gather

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy:

Ludwigshafen a. Rh., 21. January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

18 February 1948

We, VICTORIA ORTON, ETO No. 20129  
EUGEN R. KUN, AGO No. D-429798  
PATRICIA E.C. WOOD, ETO No. 20139  
ARTHUR MACNAMARA, Civ. No. 20191  
BERYL C. BESWICK, ETO No. 20183  
ANNE MARTIN, ETO No. 20144,

hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators  
for the German and English languages and that the above  
is a true and correct translation of DOCUMENT BOOK VII A  
AMHROS.

VICTORIA ORTON, EUGEN KUN, PATRICIA E.C. WOOD,  
ETO NO. 20129, AGO No. D-429798, ETO No. 20139,  
Pages 2-10, I-X Pages 35, 36, 38- Pages 11-18, 37  
42, 70-73

ARTHUR MACNAMARA, BERYL C. BESWICK, ANNE MARTIN,  
Civ. No. 20191, ETO No. 20183, ETO No. 20144,  
Pages 23 - 33 Pages 53 - 54 Pages 58 - 67.

Case 6  
Defense

TRIBUNAL VI

CASE VI

DOCUMENT BOOK VIII A

for

Otto AMEROS

France

submitted by

Karl Hoffmann  
Defense Counsel.

Attorney-at-Law

Gang





Index to

Document Book VIII A for Otto MEBROS

Document No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
01-801		<p>Affidavit by Dr. Ernst ROELL, dated 11 January 1948.</p> <p>ROELL was Otto MEBROS' specialist for the planning of activities abroad, from 1934 to 1943, and is at present Works Manager and Custodian of the Anorgana G.m.b.H., Gendorf.</p> <p>Roell attaches to his affidavit a letter dated 31 March 1942 to J. PROSSARD, President of FRANCOLOR, on the outcome of the Staff Conference of the FRANCOLOR TECHNICAL COMMITTEE held in Ludwigshafen in March 1942. At this conference, it was decided that a number of important technical measures were to be taken by the I.G. on behalf of the Francolor Works.</p> <p>"As a member of the Francolor Technical Committee, I am in a position to state from personal knowledge that the measures in favor of the Francolor factories to be taken in accordance with items 1 - 6 of the report as per enclosure, were in fact all carried out. This fact was due mainly to the initiative of Dr. MEBROS."</p> <p>As a result of these measures, Francolor received the quotas of coal, iron and chemical raw materials necessary for the continued operation of its plants. The technical measures carried out were connected with the production of lacquer raw materials, plastics, antioxidants for rubber and other products required for civilian consumption.</p>	1-5
01-802		<p>Letter dated 10 December 1941 from Qualified Chemist KOENIG, Office of the Technical Committee, Frankfurt on Main, to Dr. WERN, I.G. Leverkusen, member of the FRANCOLOR TECHNICAL COMMITTEE.</p> <p>KOENIG raises the question of whether, in view of the shortage of naphthalene which has occurred in the meantime, it is still justifiable for</p>	

Index to

Document Book VIII A for Otto AMBROS

Document No.	Edn.No.	Contents	Page
		naphthalene to be sent to France for the production of phthalic acid (prolinary product for lacquer raw materials and softening agents.) Dr. STREISS is of the opinion that, in existing circumstances, it is not justifiable.	
		"Dr. Baumann of Ludwigshafen and Dr. Ambros, on the other hand, consider that we should nevertheless adhere to the terms of the agreement governing the supply of goods as, in view of the poor state of business, it would be a very severe blow for Francolor if phthalic acid production had to be discontinued on account of the non-delivery of naphthalene..."	6-7
01-803		Memorandum dated 9 April <sup>1942</sup> on a conference with the FRANCOLOIR TECHNICAL COMMITTEE, held in Ludwigshafen in March 1942. It was decided that Francolor should commence production of pentaerythritol IG (Intermediate for lacquer raw materials and softening agents).	8-11
01-804		Letter from I.G. (AMBROS, Bochum-Leverkusen) to the Reich Office for Chemistry, dated 27 October 1942. I.G. has learnt that the Reich Office for Chemistry wishes to discontinue the production of phenol (prolinary product for plastics and tannin) and intervenes in order to prevent this measure.	12-14
01-805		Letter from I.G. Ludwigshafen (AMBROS, Kleber) to Rhone-Poulenc, dated 24 November 1943. "In order to ensure a rapid change-over of production (textile auxiliaries), we are prepared to put at your disposal our technical knowledge of the actual conversion of aldol with ammonia and hydrogen."	15-16

Index to

Document Book VIII A for Otto AMEROS

Document No.	Exh. No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
OL-806		Letter from Otto AMEROS to all I.G. Offices interested in the field of SUPERPOLYAMIDES (NYLON), dated 1 October 1943. "We are inclined to enter into an agreement with Rhone-Poulenc, despite the many objections which oppose this policy, since this firm is particularly active in the new field (Superpolyamides) and has achieved success in research work."	17-18
OL-807		Letter from I.G. Ludwigshafen (AMEROS, Schnell) to Director General BO, RHONE-POULENC, dated 21 January 1944. "Continuing our exchange of views on the subject of the chemistry of preliminary products, we enclose herewith descriptions of the processes used by us in the production of: 1) cyclohexanol from phenol 2) adipic acid from cyclohexanol 3) adipic acid dinitril from adipic acid 4) hexamethylenediamine from adipic acid dinitril 5) NH-salt from adipic and hexamethylenediamine." In this way, the most important and essential preliminary products and intermediates for the production of Superpolyamides were made available to the RHONE-POULENC.	19-28
OL-808		Letter of thanks from Director General BO of RHONE-POULENC to I.G. Ludwigshafen, dated 27 January 1944. "We beg to acknowledge receipt of your letter of 21 January, enclosing various documents on the preparation of the intermediates of NH-salt. We are most grateful for them and have had the pleasure of discussing them with Dr. Ameros....." BO requests further items of technical information on the process for the production of adipic acid.	29-30

Index to

Document Book VIII A for Otto AMEROS

Document No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
OA-809		Letter from Otto AMEROS to Director General BO of RHONE-POULENC, dated 5 February 1944. AMEROS furnishes BO with the information requested in the letter of 27 January 1944 (OA-808).	31-32
OA-810		Contract between the I.G. and FRANCOLOR, dated 27 July 1942, on the dispatch of a group of Francolor workers for work in the I.G.	33-40
OA-811		Letter from FRANCOLOR to the "Group of Francolor volunteers from the Villers-St-Paul factory, working at Ludwigshafen", dated 21 January 1943. "The 29 volunteers who remain may, in accordance with the terms of the contract drawn up by the I.G. and the Société Francolor, return to Villers at the expiry of the contract, but, in view of their age and family status, their names will automatically be included in the lists of workers of our factory, from which the Inspector of Labor selects those to be drafted for work in Germany. In these circumstances, all or a proportion of you may be included in a subsequent draft the destination of which would be a place in Germany other than Ludwigshafen, where you would run the risk of being allocated to work to which you are unaccustomed and where the conditions of work would be much more difficult. You have in fact yourselves been in a position to recognize how the I.G. FARBEINDUSTRIE has been at pains to give you the best treatment possible... In view of the above, of the increasingly difficult situation in the Villers factory as far as labor is concerned, and of the large scale on which men have so far been withdrawn from the factory for work in Germany, we ask you to renew your contract for the same period as before, namely, 6 months."	41-43

# Index to

Document Book VIII A for Otto ALBRECHT

Document No.	Doc.No.	Contents	Page
OA-812		Letter from Dr. ROELL to the Legal Department, Brunck Office, Ludwigshafen, dated 2 February 1943. "We have received information through the French Company, la Societe des Usines Chimiques Rhone-Poulenc, Paris, with whom we have business connections, to the effect that two of your chemists, Messrs. CLOUZEAU and COTTE are to come here on the 5th. or 6th. of this month in order to conduct discussions of a general nature with us ..... We also intend to take them both to Camp II in order that they may meet the Rhone-Poulenc team."	44
OA-813		Letter from Director General BO, RHONE-POULENC, to Dr. ROELL, I.G. Ludwigshafen, dated 20 March 1943. "..... but I must say that the news we receive of our men at LUDWIGSHAFEN generally reflects fairly satisfactory morale, as far as both the work itself and the general living conditions are concerned."	45-46
OA-814		Affidavit by Government Director Eugen MINZENMAY, who from 1937 to 1945 was Chief of the Ludwigshafen on Rhine Labor Office. Minzenmay outlines the progressive tightening-up of regulations issued by the Reich Ministry of Labor in connection with the employment of foreign workers in Germany. "I know that I.G. Ludwigshafen always paid particular attention to the strict observance of these contracts of employment and the release and return to their homes of the French workers, on the expiry of their term of service. In 1943 or early 1944, however, the Reich Ministry of Labor issued more rigid regulations, the effect of which was to prevent us, as a local Labor Office from authorizing these releases after the expiry of contracts and to compel us to make service compulsory from the time of the expiry of the contract onwards."	47-48



# Index to

Document Book VIII A for Otto AMEROS

Document No.	Edn.No.	Contents	Page
OA-815		<p>Letter from I.G.Ludwigshafen (AMEROS, Hoffmann) to President J. PROSSARD, (FRANCOLOR), dated 24 February 1944.</p> <p>"Moreover in the matter of manpower, we are entirely dependent on the National Labor Offices, the authorities officially responsible for the allocation of labor. Without the consent of these Labor Offices, we may neither engage workers - a task which, as we have already said, is impossible at the present time - nor discharge them.... The National Labor Offices have made it quite clear that we may return French workers to France only when suitable replacements are provided by France and are already working here."</p> <p>A letter from the Ludwigshafen Labor Office, dated 26 February 1944, was enclosed with the above. The text of it was as follows:</p> <p>"I have no objection to the return of members of the staff of the Société Anonyme de Matières Colorantes et Produits Chimiques Francolor, provided that the firm supplies I.G.Farbenindustrie A.G., Ludwigshafen on Rhine with an equal number of workers from France for training. Labor Office, Ludwigshafen on Rhine."</p>	49-53
OA-816		<p>Letter from Dr. DORRER, I.G.Ludwigshafen, to HARTER, Adrema Office, Ludwigshafen on Rhine, dated 28 April 1944.</p> <p>Dorrer refers to the communication from Chief Engineer HOFFMANN (Chief of the Personnel Department of Ludwigshafen), according to which special permission has been granted by the responsible authorities for home leave for FRANCOLOR</p>	

Index to  
Document Book VIII A for Otto AMBROS

Document No.	Exh.No.	Contents	Page
		and RHONE-POULENC workers, and submits applications for leave in respect of six French workers.	54-55
04-817		Letter from Ludwigshafen on Rhine (AMBROS, Hoffmann) to Pre- sident J. PROSSARD, FRANCOLOR, dated 9 May 1944. "Despite the general ban on leave we obtained permission from the responsible German authorities, in the meantime, to grant your wor- kers' home-leave, and were conse- quently able to send the first group of four men on home leave more than a week ago. When these men return, we shall immediately dispatch the next group to France....."	56-57
04-818		Affidavit by Fred ENGEL, French citizen, dated 16 January 1948. ENGEL is at present serving as con- trol officer of the French Govern- ment at the BASF, Ludwigshafen. "Having been sent by the Societe Francolor, Paris, to I.G. Farben to study production processes prior to their application in one of the factories of the Societe Francolor (Villers St. Paul), I stayed at I.G. Farben's Ludwigshafen factory from the beginning of September to the end of December 1942 ..... During the period which I spent at the Ludwigshafen factory, I undertook, in addition to my prof- essional duties, to act as liaison officer between the Francolor workmen working at Ludwigshafen and the German management of the Ludwigs- hafen factory." ENGEL writes of the treatment, accommodation, food; allocation to duties, supervision, medical atten- tion etc. of French workers.	

Index to  
Document Book VIII A for Otto AMEROS

Document No.	Edh.No.	Contents	Page
		"My impression is that, at the time of my stay at Ludwigshafen, the German management of the factory was doing what it could to ensure that the French workers led a comfortable life..... During every interview which I had with him, Director Dr. Ambros showed personal interest in the fate of the French workmen and was always concerned about the running of the camps and the conditions of employment of the French workers."	58-60
OA-819		Affidavit by Pierre JANET, French citizen, dated 6 January 1948. JANET is at present serving as control officer of the French Government at the BASF, Ludwigshafen. "On 1 March 1943, I was directed to I.G. Farben's German factory at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, in a convey of persons deported in accordance with the regulations of the Compulsory Labor Service..... As soon as we arrived at Ludwigshafen on 2 March 1943, Dr. AMEROS told us of his intention to send us back to France soon ..... It was only the uncompromising attitude of the Arbeitsamt, which threatened that, should the I.G. refuse to employ us, it would make use of us in other work, such as general laboring, which prevented Dr. AMEROS from carrying out his plan. I can state with equal assurance that all the French engineers employed in the I.G. factory at Ludwigshafen and who were able to return to their families before the end of the war owe this fact largely to Dr. AMEROS."	61-62

Index to Document Book VIII A  
for Otto AMERCS

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
OA-820		<p>Affidavit by Dr. Berthold SCHNELL, dated 2 January 1948.</p> <p>SCHNELL is a member of the Committee of the Directorate of the B.S.P. Ludwigshafen and from 15 April 1941 to the end of the war, was technical business manager of the Muelhauser Chemische Werke G.m.b.H., formerly Societe des Produits Chimiques et Matieres Colorantes de Mulhouse, Paris.</p> <p>In 1941, SCHNELL employed Jean RIETHMANN, a French officer and returned prisoner of war, as a chemist in Muelhausen. When RIETHMANN refused to enter the German Wehrmacht of his own free will in 1944, he was twice imprisoned by the Gestapo, and sent to a concentration camp.</p> <p>SCHNELL succeeded in having him released and, by employing him in the I.G. works at Ludwigshafen, in keeping him out of the clutches of the Alsatian Gestapo. SCHNELL informed AMERCS of the case, and AMERCS expressed his approval of RIETHMANN's employment at Ludwigshafen, which had been arranged in an attempt to help the man in this emergency.</p>	63 - 65
OA-821		<p>Affidavit by Jean RIETHMANN, French citizen, dated 10 January 1948.</p> <p>After the war, RIETHMANN served as control officer of the French Government at the B.S.P. Ludwigshafen. RIETHMANN gives his account of the two occasions on which he was imprisoned in Muelhausen and of his experiences at Ludwigshafen where he was employed as a result of SCHNELL's intervention.</p>	

(Index to Document Book VIII A  
for Otto AMEROS)

Doc.No.	Exh.No.	C o n t e n t s	Page
		<p>" Having arrived at Ludwigshafen, I was employed full-time in the Personnel Department, and this with the consent of the factory management which consisted, at the time, of Drs. WURSTER and AMEROS, and was not directed to central Germany as ordered by the Gestapo. This took place during the period of the heaviest aerial bombardment of the factory and I had practically no work to do."</p>	66 - 68



Affidavit

I, Dr. Ernst Roell, of Gendorf Obb., having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement, herewith depose on oath that my statement is true. It was made to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. 6, Palace of Justice, Nurnberg, Germany.

I entered the services of the I.G. at Ludwigshafen as a chemist in 1927. I remained in the services of that firm until the end of the war. From 1934 to 1943 I worked for Dr. Otto Ambros as expert on foreign problems. At present I am factory manager and custodian of the Anorgana G.m.b.H. at Gendorf, Upper Bavaria, which is under U.S. Administration.

An appendix of four sheets is attached to this affidavit. I herewith state that the appendix is a carbon copy of a report I drew up and sent to President Joseph Frossard on 31 March 1942, on the staff conference of the Technical Committee Francolor at Ludwigshafen, 24 - 27 March 1942.

As a member of the Francolor Technical Committee I am in a position to state from personal knowledge that the measures in favor of the plants of the Francolor which were to be taken in accordance with items 1 - 5 of the report per appendix attached, were in fact without exception put into practice. This was due mainly to the initiative of Dr. Otto Ambros who was particularly active in promoting the technical and manufacturing interests of the plants of the Francolor throughout the period he was member of the Administrative Board of the Francolor.

Gendorf, 11 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Ernst Roell

Appendix

This is to witness and certify that the above signature is that of Dr. Ernst Roell, of Gendorf/Obb., and that it was appended before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Defense Counsel, Military Tribunal No. VI, Nurnberg.

Gendorf, 11 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

(Assistant Defense Counsel)

Appendix to my affidavit dated 11 January 1948

signed: Dr. Ernst Roell.

-----  
Distribution:

Director Dr. ter Meer, Frankfurt/Main  
Director Dr. Ambros, Ludwigshafen  
Dir. Dr. Wenk, Leuna  
Dr. Hoyer, Frankfurt/Main  
Dr. Krämer, SOFI Paris

To

the President of the Francolor

Dir. Jos. Prossard

145 Boulevard Haussmann

Through Dr. Krämer -

Paris - - - -

SOFI Paris - - - -

TK/FC/Dr. Roel./De. 31 March 1942.

Staff conference of the Francolor Technical Committee, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 24 - 27 March 1942

-----  
Dear Mr. Prossard,

As had been decided at the meeting of the technical committee in Paris on 2 February, a party consisting of your assistants, chief engineer Argant, and, later, Messrs. Ritter, Pienchot, and Vanier de St. Aunay, headed by your brother, came to us to discuss various production problems. Messrs. Dr. Ambros, Dr. Wenk, Dr. Hoyer, and the undersigned took part in the discussions as representatives of I.G., as the specialists of production problems here were invited to attend one discussion or another. I assume that your brother has informed you of the result of these discussions, but I should like to send to you in the following pages a brief summary:

The following problems were discussed:

1. Conversion of Villers plant from production of anthraquinone for production of phthalic acid; now phthalic acid plant at Villers.
2. Expansion of production of formaldehyde at Villers

- 3) Modification of production of phenyl- $\beta$ -naphthylamine at St. Denis.
- 4) Expansion of pentaerythrite production at Villers.
- 5) Production of pigment green B.
- 6) Alkyd resins.

Ad 1):

It will in all probability be possible to restart the anthraquinone plant in Villers 79 about 15 April; it is to produce anthraquinone for three months from that date; it is then to be converted to phthalic acid-anhydride a process which will not in accordance with exhaustive expert discussion present great difficulties. Mr. Argant will investigate whether it will be possible to subdivide hot water circulation system by means of a new pump and a valve box. By means of that modification the performance of the system might be stepped up to about 75 tons per month; otherwise, 50 tons is the maximum which can be expected in any one month. Our Ludwigshafen specialist, Dr. Freytag, will come to Villers, when the anthraquinone plant starts working.

With reference to the new phthalic acid plant at Villers 101/102 we have already informed you by telegram that we favor the establishment at Villers of the Kuhlmann system No. 2, which has already been largely completed, in view of the difficulties involved in obtaining a new plant of the IG type. We thought it advisable to make a few alterations which have been agreed upon in detail by the specialists. Mr. Argant has been instructed to draw up a time table to give us an idea when we may expect the plant to be completed.

Ad 2):

It has been finally decided to construct in the Villers building 59 a set of the Ludwigshafen type producing 20 tons per day. As far as we can tell at the moment it should be possible to transfer the plant at the beginning of September. Our technical department will send to Mr. Argant the necessary documents for assembly. It

that the Francolor should supply a few mechanics who would gain sufficient experience in dismantling the plant here to enable them to reassemble it properly at Villers later. The Commercial Committee will investigate whether there are any objections to transferring the plant to France, and will if necessary overcome these difficulties in agreement with the German and French authorities. It transpired in the course of the discussions that difficulties will probably arise in the operation of the new plant owing to the inferior quality of the methanol available in France, which contains a higher percentage of alcohol according to your experts, which would cause impurities in the formaldehyde if used in the IG plant which works on a different principle. It was therefore decided that special specifications with regard to the quality of methanol should be given to the firms supplying you with methanol, which will inevitably result in more thorough distillation of crude methanol. We have given to your experts a sample of methanol produced here.

Ad 3)

It was decided to change over from the process for the production of phenyl- $\alpha$ -naphthylamine now used at St. Denis to that employed here. Sulphanilic acid will be used instead of boric acid as condensing agent. We gave the operating instructions for phenyl- $\alpha$ - to your brother, having received from St. Denis their operating instructions some time ago by way of exchange.

Ad 4):

Considering that the Economic Armaments Office has not asked for an increase in the production of pentaerythrite M, it was decided that the expansion of the Villers plant to produce 50 tons per month instead of 25 tons per month should apply only to the kind used for lacquers. It was considered advisable to change to the production of the IG type of pentaerythrite LG. There will be no great difficulty in effecting an increase in production at Villers. Operating instructions for pentaerythrite LG will be sent to you in the near future; a sample of the product was given to your specialist, Mr. Vanier.



It was also decided that the Ludwigshafen specialists, Director Dr. Pflaumer and Dr. Schneider, should come to Villers immediately after the staff conference at Paris of the Technical Committee scheduled for 13 April, in order to inspect on the spot the alterations which have been agreed upon.

Ad 5):

Operating instructions for nitroso-/naphthol and for pigment green B were given to your brother. There is no objection to taking up production.

Ad 6):

An arrangement has been made with Dr. Jordan, our specialist here, in connection with the production of the special kind of alcydal for the Navy, which is manufactured in France under a licence of the Glasurit Werke at Hiltrup and which Francolor has not taken over, that the Francolor should be enabled to produce a suitable IG type. Your brother promised to let us have a sample of the alcydal lacquer concerned for purposes of examination.

The factories concerned were visited after the discussions, so that your specialists were given an opportunity of obtaining detailed information on production processes.

I did not want to miss the opportunity of giving you in this report a brief survey of the arrangements made.

Yours sincerely

signed Rosell

This is to certify that the above is  
a true and accurate translation of the original.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 21 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
(Assistant Defense Counsel)



I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT, FRANKFURT/MAIN 20

Director Dr. Wenk

Leverkusen

MS: In accordance with telephone conversation with Dr. Wenk on 15 December, he will support the continuation by Kuhlmann of phthalic acid production.

MS: On leave.  
Due back Monday.

signed Bm

Office of the Technical Committee F,  
Koe/vH. 10 December 1941

: Naphthalene/phthalic acid Kuhlmann

Dear Dr. Wenk:

Central Buying Department Berlin have asked us whether they are to send off the 300 tons of naphthalene released for Kuhlmann.

Before giving our final decision, we should like to give you a brief survey of the present position.

When the arrangement on supplies of phthalic acid was made with Kuhlmann, our production capacity was not sufficient to meet increased requirements; there was moreover no shortage of naphthalene.

The opposite is the case today. Owing to the shortage of naphthalene the production of phthalic acid too has been cut by about 20 %, so that we cannot use production facilities to the full.

In view of the fact that circumstances have changed we should therefore like to raise the question whether we are justified in sending naphthalene to France, and importing phthalic acid from there to Germany, and wasting naphthalene into the bargain, owing to the inefficiency of the French process. And that, while our production facilities are not used to the full. Dr. Struss with whom I discussed my misgivings agrees with me that we cannot afford in the circumstances to continue supplying Kuhlmann. Dr. Baumann Ludwigshafen, and Dr. Ambros on the other hand consider we ought to abide by the provisions of the agreement regulating supplies, as it would in view

of manpower shortages be a very severe blow for Francolor if phthalic acid production had to be discontinued owing to lack of supplies of naphthalene, unless the French could obtain the naphthalene required elsewhere.

I should be grateful if you could let me know your opinion so that

Pending a ruling, I have instructed the Buying Department not to take any action; i.e. to postpone the shipping of the 30 tons.

Should it be decided not to permit the supply of the naphthalene, we would try to receive an additional allocation of 30 tons for I.G.

Hoping to hear from you soon I am

with German salute

yours

signed: Koenig ( Stamp: return to ZW department,  
Lu 1 9121

Distribution:  
Dir. Dr. Baumann lu  
Dr. Fischer

signed: F

A f f i d a v i t .  
-----

I, Dr. Heinrich Fischer, of 177 Sternstrasse, Ludwigshafen/Rhine, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement, herewith depose that my statement is true. It was made to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI, Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

I joined the Badische Anilin and Sodafabrik as a chemist in 1923. Since 1937 I have been plant manager of the phthalic acid plant at Ludwigshafen/Rhine.

I herewith state that this document is a copy sent to Dir. Dr. Baumann, who was then head of the intermediate products department Ludwigshafen, of a letter written by Dr. Koenig, office of the technical committee Frankfurt to Dir. Dr. Henk, Leverkusen, dated 10 December 1941. In the bottom left hand corner the copy bears my initial, F, of that date.

The other MS remarks at the head of the letter were definitely written by Dir. Dr. Baumann.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 19 January 1948

signed: Dr. Heinrich Fischer.

This is to witness and certify that the above signature is that of Dr. Heinrich Fischer of Ludwigshafen/Rhine, and that it was appended before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, of 4 Bunsenstrasse, Ludwigshafen/Rhine."

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 19 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

This is to certify that the above is a true and accurate copy of the original.

Ludwigshafen/Rhine, 20 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT LUDWIGSHAFEN A. RH.

Dyestuffs Group

Alizarin Dept.  
Dr. Schm/E.

9 April 1942

File Memorandum

on the discussion with

the Francolor Engineering Committee in Ludwigshafen a. Rh.

on 24 / 25 / 26 March 1942

Subject: Pentaerythritol

1st Conference on 24 March 1942:

those present: Dir. Dr. FROSSARD	} Francolor
Chief Eng. ARGENT	
Dir. Dr. WENZ, Leverkusen	} Francolor Technical Committee
Dr. HOFER, office of the Technical Committee (Ten)	
Frankfurt	
Dr. HOELL, Ludwigshafen	
Dir. Dr. PFLAUMER, Ludwigshafen	
Dr. SCHNEIDER, Ludwigshafen	

Dr. FROSSARD reported that in its plant at Villers Saint-Paul, with equipment consisting mostly of apparatus from a camphor factory which had failed, Francolor had produced about 20 - 25 tons of pentaerythritol M per month. The process, on the details of which Dr. FROSSARD was unable to make a precise report, functioned similarly to our penta-M process in the presence of calcium with a yield of 42% of the theoretical maximum in marketable goods.

The progress of the process was discussed with diagram No. R 17290, which had been handed over to us.

Francolor was then commissioned with the production of about 50 tons of pentaerythritol in this plant, and the question was left open as to whether Penta M or LG was meant. In view of the impossibility of adequately completing the existing plant so that it could handle the complicated Penta-M process to achieve the output required, it was decided that Francolor should manufacture pentaerythritol LG. The existing plant is fairly adequate for this. All that is necessary, apart from a suitable alteration in the pipe-lining of the following apparatus, which according to Dr. FROSSARD is already there, is to connect pentaerythritol manufacture:

- 2 filter presses (size unknown)
- 2 centrifuges (vertical centrifuge with pooling device, revolutions and capacity unknown, iron).

Francolor will let us know the size of this apparatus as soon as possible.

It will also be necessary to provide the apparatus (Schema No. A1 23) with the appropriate cooling mechanism. As stated, there are in the Villers Saint-Paul works 2 cooling plants with a daily output of 800,000 calories each. These are said to be brine coolers with an initial temperature of minus 5° C.

Ludwigshafen will send to Francolor via Dr. BOELL:

1. a precise description of the process of the Ludwigshafen Pentaerythrite-LG manufacture.
2. Diagram No. R 17290, handed over to us by Francolor, in which we have entered the diagram of our LG process in red.
3. a comparative summary of the analytical data of the three types made available to us by Francolor:

Pentaerythrite  
Penta Brute  
Penta H

as well as the two Ludwigshafen types LG and M.

4. the analytical prescription according to which the dipentaerythrite content is established in Ludwigshafen by the nitrating method.
5. a test of "dipentaerythrite pure".

In the afternoon, the Ludwigshafen pentaerythrite production Ludwigshafen 138 was inspected.

## 2. Conference on 25 March 1942:

Those present: Dir. Dr. FROSSARD	}	Francolor
Ing. Chem. VANIER de Saint-Aunay		
Dr. ECKER, Tea Office, Frankfurt	}	Technical Committee Francolor
Dr. BOELL, Ludwigshafen		
Dir. Dr. PFLAUMER, Lu		
Dr. SCHWEIDER, Lu		

Ing. Chem. VANIER, the works manager of the pentaerythrite production plant in Villers Saint-Paul, using the above mentioned diagram, made a brief report on the pentaerythrite process practised in Villers. The substance was composed of:

Mixtures:	2 800 kg of water
	1 950 kg of formaldehyde 30%
	500 kg of ice
	198 kg of acetaldehyde 99%
	180 kg of lime slaked in
	500 kg of water



Temperature: At the end of the 1st hour 10°, of the 2nd, 16°, of the 3rd, 22°, of the 4th hour 32°.

After a  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour reaction period, 0,1% of lime and 1,5 - 2% of formaldehyde are left. The pH of the solution is then adjusted to 5 through the addition of nitric acid. The remainder of the formaldehyde is converted to hexamethylenetetramine through the addition of  $\text{NH}_3$ . It is then filtered, and the clear filtrate (- 5 atm) is evaporated down in a vacuum to 1,5 atm. During this process, the calcium formate is precipitated in the heat and filtered off. When the filtrate is cooled off at room temperature, the "Penta Brute" crystallizes and is also filtered off.

Yield - 50% of the theoretical maximum.

The lye is marketed.

The "Penta Brute" is recrystallized from water through the addition of some  $\text{NH}_3$  and sodium carbonate, the final product being 43% of the possible maximum in pure pentaerythrite (v. summary of analytical data). The mother lye of crystallization is used again for the washing of "Penta Brute".

The separation of the dipentaerythrite was at first effected by filtration, later by crystallization, the dipentaerythrite going over into the filtrate when the concentrate is filtered at 75° C.

Herr VANIER will see that we receive as soon as possible precise instructions on the above-mentioned production process from Villars Saint-Paul. Herr VANIER also told us that the French plant has worked for the army for about 3 months and that the products there have since been used principally in the production of lacquers in the KUHIMAIKI works.

Subsequently Herr VANIER inspected the tetrol factory Lu 198.

3rd conference on 26 March 1942:

Those present: Dr. HOYER, Tea Office, Frankfurt

Dir. Dr. RITTER	} Francolor
Ing. Chem. PIEUCHOT	
Ing. Chem. VANIER	

Dr. SCHNEIDER, Lu

Dr. ZIMMERMANN gave a practical demonstration in the experimental lab. Lu 510 for the Francolor officials of the analytical method based on the nitration process for the determination of the nitration yield and dipentaerythrite content.

Subsequently, Dir. Dr. RITTER, the Chief of the department to which the pentaerythrite production plant in Villars Saint-Paul is attached, inspected the tetrol factory Lu 198.

Copies to Dr. BOELL, Lu

Dr. HOYER, Tea Office, Frankfurt.

Affidavit.

I, Dr. Wilhelm S C H N E I D E R, residing in Ludwigshafen a. Rh., Leuchnerstrasse 38, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I herewith declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice, Saarberg, Germany.

In 1928, I entered the Badische Anilin- und Sodafabrik as a chemist and from 1934 to 1944 I was works manager of the Ludwigshafen Pantanor-thrite factory. I am now scientific chemist to the Alizarin Department of the Ludwigshafen works.

I declare that this document consisting of 4 pages is a true photo copy of the original report which I made on 9 April 1942 on the conference with the Francolor Technical Committee in Ludwigshafen a. Rh. on 21/3/26 March 1942, and which is still in the files of the Ludwigshafen Dyestuffs Group.

Ludwigshafen a. Rh., 20 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wilhelm SCHNEIDER

This is to certify the above signature of Dr. Wilhelm S C H N E I D E R, residing in Ludwigshafen a. Rh., Leuchnerstrasse 38, made before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, residing in Ludwigshafen a. Rh., Bismarckstrasse 4, which I herewith witness.

Ludwigshafen a. Rh., 20 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The above copy is herewith certified complete and correct.

Ludwigshafen a. Rh., 22 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I. G. FARBEINDUSTRIE ANTIDRESS DISCOUNT INHABERSHAFTEN/Rh.

Zw. Department  
Received 29 October 1942.

Reich Agency Chemie

For attention of Mr. MATULAT

Berlin W 35-  
Sigismundstr. 5

Dr. At/N.- 27 October 1942

We learn from a memorandum from the Phenol Sales Company (Karbolsäurevertriebsgesellschaft), of 16 October 1942, that, in view of the present formaldehyde situation, you are contemplating taking decisive measures to restrict the production of synthetic phenol. At the same time, we are informed by Dr. v. ROSENBERG that these measures will also include the closing down of the phenol production of the Francolor.

We can understand and agree with your intentions to suppress phenol production, so far as those phenol production plants are concerned which are uneconomic and which have to be supported through the Equalisation Fund (Ausgleichskasse). A merely temporary closing down, which it is hoped would be only of brief duration, would

give the firms concerned the opportunity of modernising their plants and bringing them into an economically workable condition.

We hope we may assume that it will not be necessary to go beyond these measures and place restrictions also on the phenol plants working according to the sulphonation process.

We would therefore request you to reconsider your attitude to the question of the closing down of the phenol factory of Francolor, especially as the raw materials situation of this plant in regard to sulphuric acid is assured through the re-production of the French pyrites mines and it is also adequately staffed.

I.G. FARBEINDUSTRIE ANTIKREUZGESSELLSCHAFT

(signed): REICH (Sent to Leverkusen  
for Dr. Reiche's  
signature)

Zw. Department

30 October 1942

Dr. C. REICHE

Return to Zw. Department

Ludwigshafen 2.

AFFIDAVIT.

I, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, resident in Ludwigshafen/Rh., Bunsenstrasse 4, have been warned that I render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is in accordance with the truth and is made in order to be submitted as evidence before the Military Court in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that this document is a carbon copy of the original letter of 27 October 1942, composed by me and signed on the left by Dr. MEEROS, and addressed to the Reich Office Chemistry, for attention of Dr. MATULAT, Berlin W 35, Sigismundstrasse 5.

Nuremberg, 3 February 1948.

(signed): Dr. Wolfgang ALT

The above signature of Dr. Wolfgang ALT, resident in Ludwigshafen/Rh., Bunsenstr. 4, affixed before me, Attorney Karl HOFFMANN, is hereby certified and attested by me.

Nuremberg, 3 February 1948. (signed) KARL HOFFMANN  
(Attorney)

It is hereby certified that the above document is a true and correct copy.

(signed): KARL HOFFMANN  
(Attorney)

Nuremberg, 3 February 1948.



I. G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT LUDWIGSHAFEN a./RH.

Management

24 November 43/Si.

Soc. des Usines Chimiques  
R h 6 n a - F o u l e n e  
21, rue Jean Goussier  
P a r i s V I I I e

Subject: Butanolamine.

On the occasion of his last visit to France, the left-hand signatory hereto had the opportunity to discuss with your gentleman the question of an Ersatz for monoethanolamine by other aminoalcohols. AcetaldoI offers a good basis for this.

The discussion with your esteemed gentlemen, Messrs. Grillet and Dö revealed that your firm would be prepared to undertake the manufacture of butanolamine in place of the production of monoethanolamine and thereby further to ensure the manufacture of crude detergents, as effected to-day by the condensation of sebacic acid with ethanolamine.

In order to ensure a rapid change-over of your manufacture we are prepared to place our technical knowledge at your disposal for the carrying out of the conversion of aldol with ammonia and hydrogen. We would conjoin with this an agreement to continue the restriction of the sale of butanolamine only to a definite circle of our licence holders for the manufacture of the condensation products from sebacic acid and dialkylamines, as at present is the case in the delivery of ethanolamines for the same purpose. We should like to leave the direction of this sale of butanolamines to (Soyl) and propose therefore that Dr. Pfäfer should consult with you regarding the form of execution of this agreement.

We should be glad to have your views on this proposal and remain

Yours faithfully,

c.c. Dr. Koell  
c.c. File France  
c.c. Dr. Pfäfer

I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT  
Sd) AMERCS Sd) KLEBER

A F F I D A V I T .  
-----

I, Dr. Hermann KILBER, resident in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Richard Wagner-Platz 2, having first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit, hereby declare on oath that my statement is in accordance with the truth and is made in order to be laid as evidence before the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice at Nuremberg, Germany.

I entered the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft Works in Ludwigshafen a.Rh. as a chemist in 1926, was transferred to the Patent Department there in 1929 and since 1946 have been manager of the Patent Department of the Badische Anilin- und Soda-Fabrik Ludwigshafen a.Rh.

I declare that this document is a true photostat of an original carbon copy of the letter signed by me on the right addressed to the firm Rhône-Poulenc by the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft Ludwigshafen a.Rh. on 24 November 1943.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 19 January 1946.

Signed) Dr. Hermann KILBER.

The above signature of Dr. Hermann KILBER, resident in Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Richard Wagner-Platz 2, was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, of Ludwigshafen a.Rh., Bunsonstrasse 4, and is hereby certified and attested by me.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 19 January 1946.

Signed) Dr. Wolfgang ALT,  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

I hereby certify the correctness and completeness of the foregoing copy.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 21 January 1946.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

C O P Y .

I.G. FARBEINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESellschaft LEIPZIG a. RH.  
-----  
Intermediate Products Group

1st October, 1943. Dr. A/S.

To		
Director Dr. ter Meer		Frankfurt/1
" Dr. Bergwardt		Frankfurt/1
Dr. Doehr, Tea-Buero (Technical Committee)		Frankfurt/1
Director Dr. Baebisch/Director Dr. v. Staden		Leuna Works
" Dr. C. Bayer		Leverkusen
" Dr. Gajewski/Director Dr. Kleins		Wolffen/Film

Subject: Co-operation with the  
Societe des Usines Chimiques Rhone-Poulenc, Paris,  
in the field of Polymides.

On the occasion of the Franco-German Commission meetings in Paris during the period from 11th to 13th October 1943, Rhone-Poulenc will again approach us with the object of entering into co-operation with us in the field of Polymides.

This co-operation is to extend, as already mentioned earlier, to Product "66" and to those whose production requires preliminary products on a phenol basis, all other processes for the production of preliminary products developed by us in our own work, or other types and mixed condensation, as well as the fields of application, are to be excluded. Rhone-Poulenc has already at various times tried to enter into co-operation with us in this closely drawn field.

We are inclined, in spite of many objections to it, to enter into an agreement with Rhone-Poulenc, as this firm is more than ordinarily active in this new field and has successfully occupied itself in research; moreover through this agreement with R.-P., we should like to avoid interested groups entering as further competitors in Germany by means of similar agreements with R.-P. We would also point out in this connection the favourable experience of I.G. in their collaboration with R.-P.

In view of the short time at disposal before the taking up of negotiations, we should be glad if you would let us have your views in principle to these proposals.

Signed) ~~MELOS~~  
(by hand)

Distribution: Dir. Dr. Holdermann  
" " Reppe  
" " Baumann  
Dr. Hopff  
" Kollek  
" Reell

End of the copy .

The agreement of the foregoing copy with the original in the Records Building, Griesheim, in File S 29 IV A 3 is hereby certified.

Frankfurt a.M., Griesheim, 20 October 1947.

Signed) Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the foregoing copy are hereby certified.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 20 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defense Counsel.

I.G.FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT LUDWIGSHAFEN  
ON RHINE

Société des Usines Chimiques  
Rhône - Poulenc

Attention:

General Director Bo,  
21 Rue Jean Goujon,

Paris VIII<sup>e</sup> -

21 January 1944/E.

Dear Sirs:

In continuation of our exchange of views concerning the preliminary products chemistry in the field of superpolyamides, we send you herewith descriptions of our processes for the production of

1. cyclohexanol from phenol
2. adipinic acid from cyclohexanol
3. adipinic acid dinitril from adipinic acid
4. hexamethylene diamine from adipinic acid dinitril
5. NH-salt from adipinic acid and hexamethylene diamine.

Furthermore we transmit to you a memorandum on the question of hydrogen production.

In order to help you also in the question you raised regarding gumming the cells of electrolysis apparatuses, we have instructed our Leverkusen Works to advise your supplier firm of La Collonge via the Harz Achenwerke.

We hope thereby to have been of help to you. Very respectfully  
yours,

I.G.FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT  
signed: Ambros      signed: pp Schnell

Enclosures



AFFIDAVIT  
-----

I, Dr. Berthold SCHNELL, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wechlerstrasse 23, have first been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement corresponds to the truth and was made in order to be presented in evidence before the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

On 1 December 1925 I entered the employ of the Badische Anilin- und Sodafabrik as a chemist and in 1940 I became deputy manager of the production department for intermediate products (Zw-Abteilung) and from 1945 manager of this department of the Ludwigshafen Works.

I declare that this document is a true photostatic copy of the letter of 21 January 1944, addressed to General Director Bo, Rhone Poulenc, composed by me by commission of Director Dr. Otto Ambros and signed by me on the right.

The four pages attached hereto as enclosures, to all of which I have attached my signature and today's date, are original carbon copies of the precise process descriptions enclosed with and mentioned in the letter to Rhone-Poulenc of 21 January 1944, and which were composed by me, the last page being marked with my file reference.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 16 January 1948

signed: Dr. Berthold Schnell

The above signature of Herr Dr. Berthold Schnell, residing at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, residing at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4, which is hereby certified and attested by me. Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 16 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the above copy are hereby certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 22 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel

Appendix to my affidavit dated 16 January 1948

signed: Dr. Berthold SCHNELL

## 1. CYCLOHEXANOL

### I. Method:

Cyclohexanol is produced by continuous hydrogenation without pressure of phenol in its gaseous form in the presence of nickel on pumice as catalyst.

### II. Equipment:

Evaporator (1), bundle of 8 pipes 5 m long with a diameter of 20 cm.  
Contact furnace (2), two cylindrical vessels with a capacity of 3 connected in series.  
Heat transformer (3), surface 510 m<sup>2</sup>.  
Pipe cooling system (4), two bundles of pipes connected in series; cooling surface: 410 m<sup>2</sup>.  
Tower separator (5), capacity 20 m<sup>3</sup>, filled with Raschig rings.  
Circular piston blast apparatus (6), two of a production capacity each of 7500 m<sup>3</sup>/h.

### III. Mode of operating:

The hydrogen is passed from the blower (6) through the heat transformer (3) in which it is heated from 30-40° to a temperature of 120-130° into the evaporator (1), which is continuously fed with phenol.

In the contact furnaces which come next (2) the substance is heated to a temperature of 150-160° by the heat released by the reaction. At that temperature the reaction gases enter the heat transformer (3) in which they are cooled down to a temperature of 70-80° and in which a part of the cyclohexanol which has formed is separated. The major part thereof is precipitated in the coolers (4) which follow. Having passed through the tower separator (5) the gas is returned to the blowers. The production capacity of the system is 450 t per month.

The crude cyclohexanol is approximately 98.5% pure, including a cyclohexanone content of 3-5%. It contains also about 1% of higher condensation products (cyclohexyl cyclohexanol, dicyclohexyl ether etc.), 0.3% hydrocarbons and about 0.3% water. It is immediately used in that form for the production of adipic acid. Yield amounts to 98% of the theoretical maximum.

## 2. ADIPIC ACID:

### I. Method:

Cyclohexanol is subjected to intermittent oxidation by nitric acid which is 54% pure.

## II. Equipment:

Oxidation vessel (1) 9 m<sup>3</sup>, V2A, plated, condensing coil 22 m<sup>2</sup>, external cooling 12 m<sup>2</sup>, stirrer 30 revolutions per minute.  
 2 Vacuum coolers (2) 9 m<sup>3</sup>, V2A, plated, condensing coil 11 m<sup>2</sup>, stirrer 22 revolutions per minute.  
 Dissolution chamber 6.7 m<sup>3</sup>, lined with oppanol and covered, heating coil 1.5 m<sup>2</sup>, stirrer 30 revolutions per minute.  
 Section filters, centrifuges, Buettner drying apparatus.

## III. Mode of operating:

In the course of three hours, temperature being increased to 70°, 1025 kg of crude cyclohexanol are added to a mixture at a temperature of 35° of 2.5 m<sup>3</sup> of 54% nitric acid and 3.5 m<sup>3</sup> concentrated mother lye including 54% HNO<sub>3</sub> of the preceding process in the oxidation chamber (1).

After a post oxidation period of 30 minutes the oxidation mixture is cooled to 20° in about 3 hours in the vacuum cooler (2) and the suspension is syphoned or centrifuged off in 3 parts. Each part is covered with 200 l cover lye including 2% HNO<sub>3</sub> from the preceding process and is washed with 200 l cold condensing water.

By means of distillation of 1100 l water the mother lye (4600 ltr - 5900 kg) regains its 54% HNO<sub>3</sub> content and is used again in the next oxidation operation.

The washing solution (1600 kg) is collected separately.

The moist adipic acid (1600-1700 kg) is dissolved in the course of three hours in the dissolution chamber (3) at a temperature of 80° C in 300 l covering lye from the preceding process and in 1500 l of water; the solution is then cooled down to a temperature of 20° C in two and a half hours in the second vacuum cooler.

The adipic acid which has settled out is collected on section filters or centrifuges, is washed in cold condenser water until no more nitric acid is given off and finally dried in a Buettner drying plant.

Yield is 1220 - 1240 kg of pure adipic acid - 82.3% of the theoretical maximum. If a plant for the reconstitution of the washing solution is used, the yield could be increased by approx. 2%.

The following quantities are required for 1 t of adipic acid:

632 kg of crude cyclohexanol,  
 1500 kg of HNO<sub>3</sub> in the form of 54% nitric acid using the NO or NO<sub>2</sub> reclaimed from the oxidation waste gases.

### 3. ADIPIC ACID DINITRILE.

#### I. Method:

Adipic acid dinitrile is produced by the continuous catalytic conversion without pressure of adipic acid with surplus ammonia in gaseous form. Boric phosphate is used as catalyst.

#### II. Equipment <sup>x)</sup>:

Melting pots for adipic acid (1), aluminium, 1.5 m<sup>3</sup>, top and bottom coils, pressure of 20 atmospheres.

Adipic acid evaporator (2), aluminium, 1.5 m<sup>3</sup>; height 5.0 m, diameter 0.8 m; filled with ceramic Raschig rings. Protected against loss of heat by external electric heating.

Primary catalyst furnace (3), 2 furnaces, aluminium reinforced with iron, height 3.9 m, diameter 1.4 m; effective capacity 2.8 m<sup>3</sup>; charge 2.4 m<sup>3</sup>. Inside there are 150 aluminium heating pipes 50x40x3040 mm with built in electric heating elements. Protected against loss of heat by means of external electric heating.

Main catalyst furnace (4), aluminium reinforced with iron; height 5.2 m, diameter 1.8 m; effective capacity 6.5 m<sup>3</sup>; height of catalyst 3.4 m. Inside there are 258 heating pipes of aluminium 50x40x4220 mm with built in electric heating elements.

Heat transformer (5), 2 transformers, iron, 85 m<sup>2</sup> each.

Column (6), iron, with cold gas dephlegmator (7), 45 m<sup>2</sup> in the centre section, dephlegmator (8) of 98 m<sup>2</sup>, water cooled, top section. Height including dephlegmators 16.2 m; diameter 1.5 m; 24 bellshaped bottoms.

Chamber cooler (9), iron, cooling surface 160 m<sup>2</sup>.

Tangent cutter (10), iron; height 3.2 including cone, diameter 0.95 m.

Blower (11), 2 blowers; capacity: 6000 m<sup>3</sup>/h each.

Ammonia separator (12), iron, height 8.0 m, diameter 0.3 m, filled with Raschig rings.

Ammonia evaporator (13), iron, circulation evaporator, heating surface 1.5 m<sup>2</sup>.

Ammonia pre-heater (14), iron, pipe system heated externally and internally by electricity.

x) Several component parts of the system are designed for considerably larger output than that shown so that production can be increased without major alterations of apparatus when the experiments on the evaporation of adipic acid in the ammonia stream have been completed.



### III. Mode of operating.

The adipic acid (180 kg/h) from the melting pot is introduced into the evaporator via the rota meter, 2500 m<sup>3</sup>/h of ammonia being introduced simultaneously, which having passed the blower (11) is heated to a temperature of approx 50° in the cold gas dephlognator (7) of the column (6), to a temperature of 210-215° in the heat transformer (5) and finally to a temperature of 370-380° in the ammonia pre-heater (13). The gas mixture enters the primary catalyst furnaces at a temperature of about 300° and is then introduced into the main catalyst furnace which is kept at a temperature of 320-340°. The reaction mixture is passed over the heat transformers (5) at a temperature of about 180° into the amp of the column (6) heated by steam at a pressure of 20 atmospheres, where the majority of crude dinitrile is separated. A minor quantity of dinitrile collects with water in a receptacle in the centre section of the column, whence most of it is returned to the column via the separator, whereas the reaction water is introduced into the ammonia separating column which is operating continuously and in which ammonia is separated as far as possible at a temperature of about 80°. The ammonia which escapes is put back into circulation in the centre section of the column (6) and the dinitrile which has settled out is added to the main quantity. At the moment the water is rejected, but is to be subjected in future to an extraction process which will increase the yield of dinitrile by 3 or 4%. Ammonia circulation gases escaping at the top section of the column (6) are passed through the cooler (9), the tangent separator (10) and a further separator and are then returned to the blower.

Ammonia which has been used up is replaced by fresh ammonia (50.4 kg/h) which is vaporized in the evaporator (13) under pressure, is measured by means of a throttle disc, and is introduced into the suction system of the blower which is adjusted to 10-20 mm Hg. An ammonia content of at least 92% is maintained in the circulation gas.

The catalyst lasts from 6 to 8 weeks. After 2 or three weeks distillation products are removed from the preliminary furnace and the evaporator which are then refilled. 20-30 l of resinous decomposition products which collect in the lower cone of the evaporator are moreover removed twice daily. The system produces daily 2.4 t of a crude product 90 to 95% pure.

#### Distillation:

The crude dinitrile is conducted to the continuously working vacuum distillation plant by means of a centrifugal pump.



This consists of an iron introductory column, filled with Raschig clay-rings, 4.75 m. high and 0.45 m. in diameter, in which the low-boiling ingredients, consisting mainly of water and traces of cyclopentanone are separated overhead, and of the main column, 4.75 m. high and 0.80 m. in diameter, likewise of iron and filled with Raschig clay-rings, in which the pure product goes over the head, while the residue, which still contains some dinitril, is drawn off by degrees from the liquid matter.

The residue is distilled intermittently. Jenaic 3m<sup>3</sup>, column height 5.0m., diameter 0.50m. The impure dinitril thus obtained is returned for the distillation process of the crude dinitril.

The vacuum of 4 mm. mercury is produced by steam jet suction with surface condensers. The vaporization is carried out in tube heating units equipped with steam pressure of 20 atmospheres with a forced circulation obtained by centrifugal pumps.

100 kg crude dinitril furnishes 95 kg dinitril of about 2.00 freezing point, which goes in this form into hydrogenation.

#### 4. HEXAETHYLENE DIAMINE

##### I. Method:

Adipinic acid dinitril is hydrogenated intermittently with hydrogen at a maximum pressure of 200 atmospheres, with ammonia and Raney-cobalt present as catalysts.

##### II. Apparatus:

The reaction container consists of a vertical autoclave, 6 m long, of 800 mm inner diameter and 3m<sup>3</sup> space. It has a lining of V21 sheet metal and a transverse stirring shaft with blades, actuated from one side. Temperatures are taken by means of thermo elements, which are conducted through the stirring shaft and terminate in the blades. The conduction and subtraction of heat are effected by means of a coil situated on the wall of the autoclave.

The remaining essential parts of the apparatus are evident from the description of the operational procedure.

##### III. Operational Procedure:

800 kg adipinic acid dinitril per operation are put in, of which 100 kg are diverted for the suspension of 2 kg cobalt catalysts. The dinitril, preheated to approximately 90° and the catalyst suspension are stirred by nitrogen pressure into the autoclave, which has been preheated to 100°, and subsequently 120 kg

of liquid ammonia are formed in by means of hydrogen pressure of 200 atmospheres. A hydrogen pressure of 150 atmospheres is then applied to the autoclave. The procedure depends in the first place on the quality of the dinitril and of the catalyst. In general, a temperature of between 150° and 170° is maintained which is regulated by the dosing of hydrogen (regulation of pressure) and by subtraction of heat by means of the cooling coil installed. The operation is over when, upon increasing the pressure to 200 atmospheres, no more hydrogen is taken up. After completion of the hydrogenation process the hydrogen and the ammonia together are released through a high pressure cooler and a washing tower. Then the contents of the autoclave are slowly forced by means of hydrogen over a second high pressure cooler into a collecting vessel, from where the crude diamine, under a nitrogen pressure of 1 atmosphere, is conveyed through a Schöber-filter to the storage tank. The catalyst is then washed with water and is then sent to the catalyst factory for the purpose of regeneration. 104 parts of crude diamine are obtained from 100 parts of dinitril of approximately 2.0° freezing point.

#### Distillation.

The crude diamine is intermittently distilled in charges of 15 tons each from an iron alambic of 22 m<sup>3</sup> space, through a bell shaped column of 1.25 m diameter with 46 floors. In this process, approximately 85% of the input of pure hexamethylene diamine, of a freezing point of 40.5° to 40.6°, are obtained, besides approximately 5% hexamethylenamine, pure, which can be won from the first runnings.

#### 5. ADIPIC ACID SALT

(Adipic acid hexamethylene diamine)

Into a 4 cm stirring kettle made of aluminium, with paddle stirrers and a heating coil of aluminium, 2000-2200 litres of methanol and washing methanol are pumped and heated to 40°, and then 572 kg of adipic acid are stirred in. The acid decomposes rapidly, causing the temperature to drop to about 35°.

The adipic acid solution is pumped as quickly as possible into a 5 cm aluminium stirring kettle, equipped with a cooling mantle, into which have already been pumped 450 kg hexamethylene diamine as methanolic solution of 50% to 65%. The pressing in takes about 20 minutes. The corresponding reaction heat is carried off by the returning stream of boiling methanol.

After the adipic acid solution is pressed in, the salt

suspension is cooled off by cooling water. When the inner temperature has dropped below 30°, the salt suspension is transferred by pressure into an intermediate vessel equipped with a stirring device. From this, the salt suspension arrives into a continuously working centrifuge, in which the salt is separated from the mother lye, washed with methanol and whizzed dry.

The methanol-humidified salt (2-4% methanol) goes into condensation without drying.

The washing methanol is used for the next mixture.

The mother lye goes to distillation.

The yield amounts to 97-99% of theoretical output.

Dr. Schm./ . Ludwigshafen 1  
20 January 1944.

Subject: Hydrogen Production.

For the production of hydrogen, the I.G. only has experience with large capacity plants of 1300 cbm. Hydrogen or more. It is therefore unable to make any binding statements for a small plant, such as comes into consideration for Rhone-Poulenc.

For small plants, there comes into question either water electrolysis or the iron contact process (Messerschmitt process). The firms of Francke, Bremen, and Baum, Berlin, are building plants according to this principle, with capacities of 100 cbm H<sub>2</sub>/h and less. Rhone-Poulenc are recommended to get into touch with these firms on this matter.

As far as water electrolysis is concerned, Siemens should be approached.

According to our calculations, which, as stated, are only based on conditions obtaining with large-capacity plants, water electrolysis can only compete with the Messerschmitt process if electricity prices are under 1.4 Pf. per kWh. However, in our opinion, the advantages of the latter process can only come into full effect if the plant is operated permanently and is not used merely in order to cover target shortages.

We have no experience in the question of hydrogen production in electrolytic chromic acid regeneration, as in our plant the hydrogen is considered lost. The construction of our cells does not allow for the winning of nitrogen. To fulfil the requirements of the Rhone-Poulenc, a special type of cell would first have to be constructed. I.e., moreover, the regeneration of chromic solutions, which derive from the adipinic acid oxydation process, lies quite outside the limits of

our own work, we have no experience to place at the disposal of Rhône-Poulenc.

(Signed): Dr. Berthold SCHNEIL,  
16 January 1948.

Dr. Schn./... Ludwigshafen 1.  
20 January 1944.

The correctness and completeness of the  
above copy are hereby certified.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 22 January 1948.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant Defense Counsel.

Copy

Société des Usines Chimiques  
Rhône-Poulenc

Administration  
No. 22.238

LC/SB

Paris, 27 January 1944

Sirs,

We beg to acknowledge receipt of your letter of 21 January, enclosing various documents on the preparation of the intermediates of AH salt.

We are most grateful for them and have had the pleasure of discussing them with Dr. Ambrose when he passed through Paris. As we explained to him, we should be obliged to you if you could give us some details of the way in which the concentration of the nitric acid mother liquors takes place during the production of adipic acid. In particular, we should like information on the type of metal and the design of the equipment required. We assume that this apparatus is heated by a steam-spiral; is it necessary for it to include a distillation column, and if so, of what strength?

The information which you give us on the type of metal will be very valuable to us, as we have found no type V 2 A or V 4 A non-oxidizable alloy in France which is totally unaffected by boiling nitric acid. The firm of Krupp to whom we put the question some years before the war refused to give us the information.



Thanking you in anticipation, we remain

Yours respectfully,

Stamp:

Signed: B6

I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine

(Germany)

I herewith certify that this is a true copy of the original document contained in file S 39 V A 4 in the Records Building, Griesheim.

Griesheim, 20 October 1947

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy of the original document.

Nuernberg, 2 February 1948

Signed: Karl Hoffman

Attorney at Law

Dr. Otto Ambros  
Member of the Vorstand (Board)  
of the  
I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft

Ludwigshafen on Rhine  
5 February 1944/g  
(secret)  
Telephone 6496

To  
Director General  
Sec. des Usines Chimiques  
Rhône-Poulenc  
21, Rue Jean Goujon  
Paris.

Paris.

Dear Mr. Ho,

With reference to our conversation in Paris on the subject of interchange of ideas in the polyamide field, I beg to reply as follows to the questions raised by you:

1) The vacuum refrigerators which are used by us are stirring drums of V<sub>2</sub>A plated material, equipped with spiral cooling pipes, in which the cooling is mainly effected by water-steam under reduced pressure. For this purpose the reaction mixture, at a temperature of 100°C, or, in the case of the re-solution of adipic acid, the adipic acid at a temperature of 80°C, is, by means of rotating 31st or Elmo pumps, subjected to slightly reduced pressure, which is finally reduced to about 2 mm Hg (mercury) by a steam-jet exhaustor. Thus within the comparatively short time of 10-15 min cooling to 20°C is achieved, and simultaneously an adipic acid in granulet form, which can be easily filtered, is precipitated. In order to avoid as far as possible the spiral cooling pipes becoming incrustated, the temperature of the water in the spiral pipes should always be regulated 5-10°C to 5° below the temperature of the surrounding medium.

2) The concentration of the nitric acid from the oxidation mixture up to 54% HNO<sub>3</sub> (Nitric Acid) is carried out in the evaporating apparatus consisting of V<sub>2</sub>A special material. This apparatus consists of 2 columns, 7 metres

in height and filled with porcelain Raschig-rings, and of a circular tube evaporator operating on the thermo-syphon principle. The apparatus effects a continuous operation in a vacuum of .40 to .50 mm Hg and at a maximum temperature of 75° in the evaporator and of 32° to 40° at the top of the column. The diluted acid enters at about the middle and the 54% acid is drained off at the lower end of the column.

3) With us the hydration of one charge of adipine acid dinitril to hexamethylenediamine takes 4 hours.

I hope that the above details will suffice, and that this answers your letter of 27 January.

With best regards,

Yours sincerely,

signed : Dr. G. Ambros

(Handwritten remark)  
Copy to Dr. Schnell  
read and signed : Bunck

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is herewith certified.

Nuremberg, 1 February 1948

signed : Karl Hoffmann

Attorney at Law.

C o n t r a c t .

The following contract has been drawn up between the firms :

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft,  
plant at Ludwigshafen a/Rhein,

hereinafter called "Contracting party A",

and the firm :

Société Anonyme de Matières Colorantes et Produits  
Chimiques Francolor, 2 Avenue George V, Paris,

hereinafter called "Contracting party F".

Article 1

Object of the contract

Contracting party F places at the disposal of Contracting party A a team of workers for employment in the factory of Contracting party A.

The team consists of staff belonging to Contracting party F and they have individually contracted to fulfil this engagement.

Article 2

Strength and composition of the team.

Appendix 1 indicates the number of workers, their professional qualifications, and the nature of the work expected of them.

Article 3

Maintenance of team's effectiveness. --

Contracting party F will maintain as far as possible the strength and composition of the team designated in Article 2.

The contracting parties will come to an agreement on eventual replacements.

Article 4

Place of work -- --

The place of work is Ludwigshafen a/Rhein. --  
Should it be necessary to use the team for work elsewhere in Germany, the contracting parties will come to an agreement on the subject beforehand.

Article 5

Professional qualifications and work allocation. --

Contracting party F certifies that the persons mentioned in Appendix 1 are capable of carrying out the various functions and tasks as indicated.

Contracting party A undertakes to allocate the members of the team as far as possible to work commensurate with their abilities.

The members of the team will work as far as possible in groups.



Article 6

Remuneration.

During their period of employment with Contracting party A, the members of the team will receive remuneration from the latter according to wage scales obtaining in the place of employment.

Salaries, output bonuses and other allowances are set out in Appendix II.

For the classification of the members of the team according to wage groups, or the application of wage scales, and the payment of extra bonuses of all kinds, the wage regulations currently in force in the German factory will be applied.

Transfers to France of savings out of wages will be carried out according to German Reich regulations applicable to foreign labor.

Article 7

Compensation for separation.

Married members of the team, or those of an equivalent status will receive as compensation for being separated: RM 1.00 per day (rest days included) and for quarters compensation amounting to RM -.50 (rest days included) according to current regulations. Unmarried members will only receive the last mentioned RM -.50 per day.

Family status must be proved by a certificate from the mayor or the local police authorities.

Article 8

Working hours.

Normal working hours are 48 hours per week.  
Any work over 48 hours will be considered as overtime and will be paid according to German wage scales.

Article 9

Periodical journeys home - paid leave

For periodical journeys home, the wartime regulation covering home leave for foreign workers in Germany dated 27 August 1941 - Reichsarbeitsblatt S.IV 1239 will be applied.

Paid holidays will be granted according to internal works regulations obtaining in the works of Contracting Party A.

Article 10

Placing on equality of footing with German staff.

During their employment in the Reich the foreign staff will be subject to German regulations where Labor insurance and fiscal legislation is concerned. In particular they will come under :

1.) German regulations relating to salaries as applied in the factory. No supplementary compensation that has not been authorized by the Reich Trustee of Labor will be granted to foreign personnel or other authorized recipients, even in France. Wages settlements with individual foreign workers must also be carried out in accordance with the German regulations obtaining at the place of work.

2.) German instructions relating to sickness insurance, employees' insurance, and insurance against disability. Contributions to these insurance branches must be paid by Contracting party A to the competent German insurance authorities. The foreign workers will also come under the Reich accident insurance scheme.

3.) All other German regulations relating to labor and social insurance laws.

The members of the team will thus be treated in the same way as analogous German workers, wherever German law has provided no special regulations for foreign labor.

During air-raid alarms they will also be remunerated according to regulations applying to German workers.

Article 11

Food and quarters.

Contracting party A will provide suitable quarters for the team.

The team will pay RM -.50 a night for the quarters.

Contracting party A will also provide food for the staff (full camp fare) at the rate of RM 1.-- per day.

Food allowances will be made according to German regulations currently in force.

Article 12

Equipment and Tools

Contracting party A must see to it, that the team is provided with working clothes, shoes, and underwear in sufficient quantities, even for the winter months.

Contracting party A will provide the necessary tools.

Article 13

General ruling.

The members of the team must, for the period of their employment, submit to the internal rules of the firm, as well as to the current rules and special regulations relative to their communal life. In addition, they must obey any instructions given.

Article 14

Execution.

Contracting party F will designate a person who in conjunction with the Social Service of Contracting party A will deal with all questions relative to the execution of the contract.

For the exercise of his functions, he will have access to any areas that may be involved.

Contracting party A will be responsible for defending the rights of members of the team and he undertakes to take all necessary measures concerning hygiene and social care.

Article 15

Settlement of costs.

Contracting party A will reimburse Contracting party F for all expenses incurred during the removal and instatement of the team. If the case arises Contracting party F will be expected to produce any proof necessary.

Article 16

Contract modifications resulting from official regulations.

The contracting parties undertake to put into force immediately any modifications of the present contract (including modifications of salary rates) rendered necessary as a result of orders by the Reich Commissioner for Price Regulation, the Reich Minister of Labor, or any other competent Reich authority.



Article 17

Duration of Contract.

The duration of the present contract is 12 months from the date of signature. Two months before the expiration of the contract, the contracting parties will discuss the possible extension of the contract.

Article 18

Force majeure.

Should a case of force majeure arise, the contracting parties will come to an agreement on the ensuing consequences.

Article 19

Place of Jurisdiction.

The contracting parties agree that all lawsuits that may arise out of this contract shall be settled at Ludwigshafen a/Rhein.

Ludwigshafen Rh. 27 July 1942

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft

signed : pp. Hoffmann

signed : pp. Ling.

Done at Paris (date

Stamp

illegible)

signed : J. Prossard

The above copy is herewith certified to be correct and complete.

Nuernberg, 4 February 1948

Signed : Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney)

Société Anonyme de Matières Colorantes et Produits Chimiques

FRANCOLOR

Business Headquarters: 9, Avenue George V, Paris 8<sup>e</sup>

Paris, 21 January 1943

FRANCOLOR GROUP at Ludwigshafen:  
volunteers from the Villers Factory.

The 37 volunteers who left for Ludwigshafen on 4 August 1942 can be released on about 15 February.

Among you, there are 5 workmen over 50 years of age, and two married men with more than 4 children, who are not liable for service in France, and M<sup>r</sup>. GAVELIER who is in the same position.

These 8 persons are therefore perfectly at liberty to return on a permanent basis.

The 29 volunteers who remain may, in accordance with the terms of the contract drawn up by the I.G. and the Société FRANCOLOR, return to VILLERS at the expiry of the contract, but, in view of their age and family status, their names will automatically be included in the lists of workers of our factory, from which the Inspector of Labor selects those to be drafted for work in Germany.

In these circumstances all or a proportion of you may be included in a subsequent draft the destination of which would be a place in Germany other than Ludwigshafen, where you would run the risk of being allocated to work to which you are unaccustomed and where the conditions of work would be much more difficult.

You have in fact yourselves been in a position to recognize how the I.G. FARSENINDUSTRIE has been at pains to give you the best treatment possible.

Moreover, the promises made to you at Villers have been kept in every detail: From 15 February 1943 onwards, whether you return or remain at LUDWIGSHAFEN, you will be paid monthly.

If you remain at LUDWIGSHAFEN, this arrangement will permit your families to draw the whole of your salaries, and not just half as at present.

We are equally aware that your main worry is your gardens, and the supplementary food-supplies which their skilful cultivation represents.

We have stated before, and we reiterate our promise that we will see to it that your gardens are dug and sown, and that the crops are harvested; but, since, in consequence of your absence, there is a risk that the crops will be worse, we also undertake to provide your families with potatoes, haricot beans and all other available vegetables, in sufficient quantities to make good the difference.

Should you renew your contract, the I.G. will, for its part, grant you leave, the duration of which and conditions governing which will be duly settled by the I.G.

In view of <sup>the</sup> above, and of the increasingly difficult situation in the Villers factory, as far as labor is concerned and in view of the large scale on which men have so far been withdrawn from the factory for work in Germany, we ask you to renew your contract for the same period as before, namely 6 months.

We hope that you will understand the reasons which prompt our renewed appeal to you and we thank you again for the efforts which you have made so far.

D.P. M. Lender

Signed: Signature

(A list of the names of these workers is enclosed with the letter).

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy of the original document.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 6 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

VILLERS FACTORY VOLUNTEERS AT LUDWIGSHAFEN

Personnel over 50 years of age

DELEPINE  
WILLERHETZ P  
RACINE J  
ROCHAS  
SULZ P

Married men with more than 4 children

LOBCEOLS  
BONIROIT

Women

Mme GAVELLE

Personnel liable for Conscription

MARIAVALE V	MERCHEZ André	MATHIEU K
LONGUET J	LEGEND R	LEMAIRE H
WILLERHETZ R	LACOURTE J	BOULENGUAR
MARIAVALE G	CELBAT Achille	BEZIN M
FABRE	PUZZO F	CLUNWAERT M
GAVELLE H	SCHMIDT J	MJAIS R
ERMO Paul	BOSSCHEM M	PIRCUET Léon
ADAMEC Gustave	BENOIT L	LASALLE Jean
PAQUIER André	GROPPA J.B.	CHILLOIX G
OUACHI Mohand	GANDOLFO	

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy of the original document.

Nuernberg, 5 February 1948

Signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney at Law)

Copy

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft Ludwigshafen am Rhein

Legal Department  
Brink Office

Lu 1

Dr.R./C

2 February 1943

We have received information through the French Company la Société des Usines Chimiques Rhône-Poulenc, Paris, with whom we have <sup>business</sup> connections, to the effect that two of your chemists, Messrs. Clouzeau and Cottet are to come here on the 5th. or 6th. of this month in order to conduct discussions of a general nature with us. We shall take advantage of this opportunity to show the visitors our Plastics Testing Station, Lu 526 or Lu 241. We also intend to take them both to Camp II, in order that they may meet the Rhône-Poulenc team. In the short time at our disposal, it has not been possible to obtain a special authorization from Berlin, but we think that we can dispense with it, even should we follow the above program, since we do not plan to inspect production plants and methods.

Signed: Roell

End of copy.

I herewith certify that the above is an exact copy of the original document to be found in file S 29 IV A 3 in the Records Building, Griesheim.

Frankfurt am Main/Griesheim, 20 October 1947

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy of the original document.

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



Société des Usines Chimiques  
RHÔNE - POULENC

MB/SB.

Reference to be quoted in reply  
Administration  
No. 21.077

Paris, 20 March 1943  
21, rue Jean Goujon  
(VIIIe)

Dear Dr. Roell,

Monsieur BAUD will give you the accompanying letter which he received through Monsieur COAN, a young chemical engineer of our factories, who is to leave on Monday for LUDWIGSHAFEN with approximately 15 men, being laborers and skilled workmen from our factories in the Paris area. Thus the importance of our team at LUDWIGSHAFEN is steadily increasing.

As you can imagine, these withdrawals of men are a sorry business for us, and the operation of our factories is seriously affected by them, but I must say that the news we receive of our men at LUDWIGSHAFEN generally reflects fairly satisfactory morale, as far as both the work itself and the general living conditions are concerned.

We believe that nothing can equal the presence, from time to time, in their midst, of one of the directors of our firm, for keeping up the morale of the team, and it is for this reason that Monsieur BEUDET, director of the Vitry sur Seine factory - which, incidentally, has provided a large proportion of the members of the team - will come and spend the two days, Saturday the 27th. and Sunday the 28th. March, at Ludwigshafen. You will doubtless remember having seen Monsieur Boudet who came to see you at SOPI and introduced to you several of the assistant chemists who were about to leave.

Monsieur Baudet has been on the staff of the Société RHÔNE-POULENC for 30 years. He occupies at present one of the most important technical posts of the Société. I thus take the liberty of asking you to grant him a short interview if you are at Ludwigshafen on the days of his visit, and perhaps even to introduce him to Dr. Ambros.

Hoping to see you shortly, I remain, Sir

\* Yours respectfully,

Signed: M. PÖ

M. PÖ

Dr. ROELL,  
I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE A.G.  
LUDWIGSHAFEN, near COLOGNE (Germany)

I herewith certify that the above is  
a true and correct copy of the  
original document.

Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 6 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

Assistant Defense Counsel

AFFIDAVIT

I, Regierungsdirektor Eugen Minzenmay, domiciled in Speyer, Ludwigstrasse 14, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

From 1937 until 1945 I was the head of the Labor Office at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, and in this capacity I had also to deal with questions concerning manpower in the I.G. Factory at Ludwigshafen. In this connection I can state the following:

The Ludwigshafen Labor Office gave its consent to the employment of self-contained groups of French workers from the firms Francolor and Rhone-Poulenc on a proper contract basis, especially since it was also known to the Labor Office that these French workers, operating in this way, achieved particularly good results.

I know that I.G. of Ludwigshafen always paid particular attention to the strict observance of these engagement contracts and the dismissal and sending home of the French workers after the terms of their contracts had expired. In 1943 or in the beginning of 1944, however, the Reich Labor Ministry issued more rigid regulations, which meant that we, as the local Labor Office, were no longer able to sanction dismissal after the contracts had expired, and that when the contract expired we had

to issue a labor conscript order. I remember very well that at that time I.G. of Ludwigshafen frequently approached us and tried to work with us to find a solution which would enable them to live up to their undertakings and at the same time to fulfil their pledge to the French firms to dismiss the French workers after expiry of their contracts.

After I had convinced myself of the difficult situation at the I.G. of Ludwigshafen, I declared myself willing to allow the French workers to be dismissed and returned to France after their contracts had expired, if replacements were supplied by the French firms. I was fully aware that in so doing I was exceeding my jurisdiction, but I took the responsibility upon myself so that I.G. of Ludwigshafen should be given some opportunity to keep to their previous agreements with their French partners.

Speyer, 21 January 1948

signed: Eugen Minzenmay

I herewith certify that the above signature is that of Regierungs-  
direktor Eugen Minzenmay, domiciled at Speyer, Ludwigstrasse 14,  
and was made before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel,  
domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4.

Speyer, 21 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is herewith  
certified.

Nuremberg, 25 January 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney at Law

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft Ludwigshafen on Rhine

Zw.-Group

Copy to Personnel Department  
Zw-Section

Through SOPL (Soc.pour l'importation de Matières Colorantes et  
des Produits Chimiques), Paris.

Société Anonyme de Matières  
Colorantes et Produits Chimiques

FRANCOLOR  
for the attention of Directeur Frossard

Paris.

Dr.Do./Gr. 24 February 1944  
/28.2.

Return of Workers

Sir,

We beg to acknowledge receipt of your letter of the 15th inst.  
addressed to the undersigned on the left hand side. We have full  
understanding for your statements, for we fully realize the plight  
of your plant managers, who are specially interested in the main-  
tenance of their plants. The question of the workers' return has  
already been the subject of repeated discussions, both verbal and  
written, but so far it has



not been possible to find a solution satisfactory to both parties. You will understand that we too are in a similar situation to your plant managers i.e. we have to see that our plants are kept going at all costs. In view of the present difficult situation in the German labor market it is impossible for us to replace the French workers by German or other reserves. Moreover, in the question of workers we are fully dependent upon our government authorities for the allocation of labor viz. the Labor Offices. Without the consent of these Labor Offices we may neither engage fresh workers, which, as we have said already, is at present impossible, nor may we discharge any.

On several occasions already we have tried through the Labor Offices to get permission for French workers to return after their contracts had expired, but without success.

The Labor Offices have made it quite clear that we may only return French workers when suitable replacements are provided from France and have

been trained by us.

For the reasons stated, we are therefore obliged, much to our regret, to request you to furnish suitable replacements from France. If you are able to send suitable personnel in exchange to Ludwigshafen, we will, as soon as this personnel has been trained, immediately release your highly qualified people. In order to facilitate your efforts in recruiting suitable replacements in France, the number of which must tally with the number of French workers returned, we will have this letter certified by the Ludwigshafen Labor Office. This will enable you to prevail more easily on the German labor authorities in France, and in this way we hope to get better results from the whole action.

We hope soon to receive from you a favorable reply in this matter, so that we may arrive at an understanding.

Yours faithfully,

I.G. FARBEINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

signed: Ambros    signed: by proxy Hoffmann

Copy 1

Labor Office, Ludwigshafen on Rhine.

II C - 5550

Ludwigshafen on Rhine,  
28 February 1948

I raise no objections to the return of members of the staff of the firm Société Anonyme de Matières Colorantes et Produits Chimiques Francolor, provided this firm places at the disposal of I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G., Ludwigshafen on Rhine an equal number of workers from France for training.

Labor Office, Ludwigshafen on Rhine

By designation

Signature

Affidavit.

I, Kurt HOFFMANN, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bräubergerstrasse 52, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I declare that this document is a copy of the original letter written by Dr. Dorrer and signed by Dr. Ambros and myself, addressed in February 1944 to Directeur Prossard.

A written certificate from the Ludwigshafen Labor Office, the text of which literally agrees with the above copy was added to this letter.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 4 January 1948

signed: Kurt Hoffmann

I herewith certify that the above signature of Herr Kurt Hoffmann, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Erbergerstrasse 52, was made before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 4 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt

(Assistant Defense Counsel)

I herewith certify that the above copy is in accordance with the original.

Nuremberg, 3 February 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann

Attorney at Law

I.G. FARBEINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESellschaft LUDWIGSHAFEN

To Herr Harter  
Adressa Office

Copy to Herr O.I. Hoffmann  
Dr. Do/K/76 28 April 1944

Special consent for leave of absence to France for workers of Francolor and Rhone-Poulenc.

I beg to refer to the communication received from Herr O.I. Hoffmann, according to which special consent has been granted by the responsible authorities to both above mentioned groups, and, in accordance with the arrangements made with Herr O.I. Hoffmann, I beg to submit

2 applications for Rhone-Poulenc employees

to return to France immediately on leave. These concern the workers BOUCHER Pierre and LASSALE Marcel. I request you to take the necessary steps so that both men may take advantage of this special consent as quickly as possible. In accordance with our arrangements, 2 more men of the Rhone-Poulenc Company may go on leave after the return of these two. I will send the applications for the Francolor workers within a short time.

signed: Dorrer

Enclosures: 2 permits for leave of absence.

I have just received from Francolor the names of the first men to be sent on leave. I have given the necessary instructions for the leave permits to be sent to you direct from the plant. The names of these men are:

Boudin Fernand born on 16 Dec. 1899, Pass No. 47344, building No. 207,  
foreman: Lang  
Borat Jean born on 26 June 1894, gardener, foreman Girard  
Ravaux Louis born on 2 Febr. 1904, Pass No. 31813, comradeship  
leaders' (Kameradschaftsfuehrer) camp VI  
Baudoin Andre born on 25 July 1920, Pass No. 58963, building No. 532,  
foreman: Kuhlmann

signed: Dorrer

AFFIDAVIT

I, Kurt HOFFMANN, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Erabergerstrasse 52, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I confirm that in my capacity as Chief of the Personnel Section of the plant at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, acting on the orders of Director Dr. Otto Ambros, I still made successful attempts in urgent cases to get the leave which had been promised by contract granted to the French workers engaged in equipment work (Equipe-Einsatz), in spite of the ban on leave.



ordered by the authorities for labor allocation. The communication attached to my affidavit is the original carbon copy of a letter dated April 1944 sent by Dr. Otto Dorrer to the Adrema Office, which was under me, and which made reference to the special consent I had obtained from the Labor Office.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 4 January 1948

signed: Kurt Hoffmann

I herewith certify that the above signature of Herr Kurt Hoffmann, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Erzbergerstrasse 52, was made before me, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 4 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is herewith certified.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 20 January 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I.G. FARBEINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT LUDWIGSHAFEN

Dr. Dg/1/138 9 May 1944.

Societe Anonyme de Matieres  
Colorantes et Produits Chimiques  
Francolor  
President J. Frossard  
Paris 8<sup>e</sup>  
9, Avenue George V

Your workers employed by us.

Dear President Frossard ,

On the occasion of the last conferences in Paris and when your director Pirmex visited Ludwigshafen, several verbal agreements were reached, and we are now able to give you the following news in this connection,

Despite the general ban on leave we have in the meantime obtained permission from the responsible German authorities to grant your workers home leave, and were consequently able to send a first group of 4 men on home leave more than a week ago. When these men return we will immediately dispatch the next group to France, and hope in this way that a part of your workers will be able to take advantage of this favor.

The first man whom we have selected to be sent back to France for good is:

Menigault Marcel, fitter, born on 2 June 1894.

As soon as the permit for Mr. Menigault's journey home is granted by the Ludwigshafen Labor Office, he will return to France. We waive our claim for a replacement for Menigault so as to prove to you our good will in solving this problem, which has caused us concern for a long time.

With best regards,

Very truly yours,

carbon copy:	I.G.FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT
Zw.-Abteilung	signed: AMROS
(Production Department) ?	signed: HOFFMANN
Personnel Department	

AFFIDAVIT.

I, Kurt HOFFMANN, domiciled in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Erzbergerstrasse 58, have been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented in evidence to the Military Tribunal at the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

I declare that this document, consisting of two pages, is an original carbon copy of the letter addressed to President J. Frossard, written by Herr Dr. Dorrer on 9 May 1944 and signed by Dr. Ambros and myself.

I also marked the first page with my signature and today's date.

signed: Kurt HOFFMANN

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 4 January 1946.

I hereby certify that the above signature is that of Herr Kurt HOFFMANN, domiciled in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Erzbergerstrasse 52, and was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, domiciled in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4.

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant Defense Counsel

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 4 January 1946.

I hereby certify that the above is a true and correct copy.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 20 January 1946.

Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant Defense Counsel.

Exhibit

I, the undersigned, ETHEL FRED, at present serving as control officer at the BASF, Ludwigshafen on Rhine, living at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 42, Lauscherstrasse, of French nationality, do swear that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement.

I declare on oath that my statements are strictly true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI, Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

Having been sent by the Société Francolor, Paris, to I.G. Farben, to study production processes prior to their application in one of the factories of the Société Francolor (Villars St. Paul), I stayed at I.G. Farben's Ludwigshafen factory from the beginning of September to the end of December 1942.

My particular task there was to study the production of formaldehyde, by a new and elaborate process developed by I.G. Farben.

I.G. Farben sold a formaldehyde production unit to the Société Francolor and put the production process at the disposal of the Société.

This unit was successfully transported, re-assembled and put into operation in Franco (Villars St. Paul) in 1943. During the period which I spent at the Ludwigshafen factory, I undertook, in addition to my professional duties, to act as liaison officer between the Francolor workmen working at Ludwigshafen and the German management of the Ludwigshafen factory.

I am therefore in a position to furnish information on the living conditions of the French workers in the Ludwigshafen factory.

The treatment of these workers, of whom the majority were working in the phthalic acid and formal production plants, was correct in every detail. The high standard of skill of the French workers was generally appreciated by the German authorities, particularly in the cases of the machine setters, pipe fitters and fitters.

Housing Conditions

The factory had laid out camps near the plants, between Ludwigshafen and Oppau. They were very well equipped, well-kept and well-heated. There were numerous wash-basins, showers and baths with constant hot water.

Food

The food was the same as that given to the German workers who ate at the factory. It was, however, not very plentiful, and in food-value and quantity, did not equal the food consumed by a worker living with his family in Franco.

By comparison, however, I estimate that it was approximately equal to the food which a worker in a factory employee received in a canteen or restaurant at this period in France.

#### Hours of Work

According to duties performed, the men worked from 48 to 56 hours per week, and they were employed, as far as possible in such a way as to make full use of their specialized knowledge.

#### Supervision

The workers came and went freely from camp to factory, and went out into the town and its surroundings with equal liberty.

At this time, they were authorized to eat table d'hôte in the restaurants of the town (meals without ration chits, consisting in the main of a vegetable salad, vegetable soup and potatoes) for RM. 1.-- (The wages amounted to RM. 1.-- - RM. 1.20 per hour).

#### Medical Attention

Medical attention was given in a well-equipped camp hospital, directed by a Belgian doctor.

#### Alerts

During alerts, French workers were advised, as were those of other nationalities, to repair to solid concrete shelters which were situated approximately 300 m. from the camp.

#### General Impression

My impression is that, at the time of my stay at Ludwigshafen, the German management of the factory was doing what it could to ensure that the French workers led a comfortable life and to improve the living conditions of the foreign workers in so far as this was compatible with the fairly strict and rigid prescriptions of the Labor Front.

#### Management of the Factory

During every interview which I had with him, Director Dr. Ambros showed personal interest in the fate of the French workers and was always concerned about the running of the camps and the conditions of employment of the French workers.

During one interview which I had with him at the beginning of December, he requested me to appeal earnestly to the French workers to go to the shelter when the alert was sounded, as he feared air attacks on the factory at the end of 1942.

The French workers had the reputation for not taking the alerts seriously, a fact which was easily explicable, since, up to that time, Allied aircraft had merely passed over the factory, without bombing it.



At Dr. Ambros' invitation, I returned to Ludwigshafen in July 1943 for ten days, in order to be present at the initial operation of a new formaldehyde installation. This enabled me to supplement the information which I had collected during my first stay.

This time, I had very little to do with the French workers. Two of my former assistant chemists were serving their apprenticeship in the plant in which the French factory was interested, however, and described their living conditions to me.

From their description it appeared that, apart from more frequent alerts, conditions were no different from those described above.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 16 January 1948

Signed: F. ENGEL

I, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, at present living at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 4, herewith attest and witness the above signature, attested in my presence by M. ENGEL, Fred, at present living at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Leuschnerstrasse 42.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 16 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy of the original document.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 16 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

Affidavit

I, the undersigned, JARNET Pierre, at present serving as control officer at the BASF, Ludwigshafen on Rhine, living at 46 Leuschnerstrasse, of French nationality, am aware that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement.

I declare on oath that my statements are strictly true, and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal, Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

On 1 March 1943, I was directed along with others of my engineering colleagues from the Saint Denis factory of the Société Francolor, to I.G. Farben's German factory at Ludwigshafen on Rhine, in a convoy of persons being deported in accordance with the regulations of the Compulsory Labor Service. The order for our departure, which threatened reprisals should we not present ourselves at the appointed time and place of departure, had been transmitted to us by the officials of the Arbeitsamt (Labor Office), Saint Denis, although the management of I.G. and especially Dr. Ambros, were opposed to the sending of chemists or engineers to Germany. As soon as we arrived at Ludwigshafen on 2 March 1943, Dr. Ambros told us of his intention to send us back to France soon; moreover, he telephoned Paris immediately to announce that he would see that we were repatriated by the first train leaving Ludwigshafen. It was only the uncompromising attitude of the Arbeitsamt, which threatened that, should the I.G. refuse to employ us, it would make use of us in other work, such as general laboring, which prevented Dr. Ambros from carrying out this plan. I can state with equal assurance that all the French engineers employed in the I.G. factory at Ludwigshafen and who were able to return to their families before the end of the war owe this fact largely to Dr. Ambros.

Throughout the period which I spent at Ludwigshafen, from 2 March 1943 to 1 March 1944, I constantly heard the workers say that Dr. Ambros did all he could, short of violating the German laws

in force at the time, to alleviate the harshness of the conditions of detention of the French workers, and that he took a personal interest in hygiene in the camps. During this same period, I never saw or heard of a French worker being subjected to corporal punishment, orders for which had been given by the factory management.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine  
6 January 1948

Signed: P. JARNET

I, Dr. Wolfgang Alt, Assistant Defense Counsel, at present living in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstrasse 46, herewith attest and certify the above signature, appended in my presence by M. Pierre Jarnet, at present living in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Leuschnerstrasse 46.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 6 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy of the original document.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 6 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel

A F F I D A V I T .

I, Dr. Berthold SCHMEL, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Voehlerstr. 23, have been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment for making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented in evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

On 1 December 1925 I entered the employ of the Badische Anilin- und Sodafabrik at Ludwigshafen on Rhine as a chemist, was appointed authorized agent (Handlungsbevollmachtigter) on 19 April 1940, Prokurist on 1 July 1943, and since the end of the war I have been manager of the production department (Zf/Abteilung) of this firm. Apart from that, from 15 April 1941 to the end of the war I was one of the two business managers of the Muelhauser Chemische Werke G.m.b.H., Muelhausen/Alsace, formerly Societe des Produits Chimiques et Matieres Colorantes de Mulhouse, Paris.

In 1941 I engaged the former French officer Jean Rietzmann, who had just returned from captivity, in Germany, as a chemist with the Muelhausen Chemischen Werke, despite the fact that, even when he first presented himself, he made no secret of the fact that he was opposed to National-Socialism. As a former French officer who refused to join the German Wehrmacht voluntarily, he was twice arrested in 1944 by the Gestapo and taken to a concentration camp. Owing to my personal negotiations

with the Gestapo, which were not entirely without risk because I myself was not a member of the Party, I managed to get the detainees freed again and, by employing him at the Ludwigshafen I.G. Works, to remove him from the clutches of the Alsacian Gestapo. I had arranged this post with the manager of the Ludwigshafen Personnel Department, Herr Oberingenieur Kurt HOFFMANN. He realized however, that this was a case where we could not act on our own authority, and that it was absolutely necessary that the Ludwigshafen Works management should consent to our action. First of all I informed Herr Dr. Otto AMBROS and explained the case to him in all its details. Although just at that time there was no valid reason for the employment of another chemist at Ludwigshafen - due to the extensive damage caused by the bombing my department had almost ceased production and most of the laboratories had been destroyed - Herr Dr. Ambros consented to the employment of Herr Rietmann in order to help the man in his necessity. Dr. JURSTEN, who had also been informed about this matter, approached me a few days later and, having heard the case, also agreed to Herr Rietmann's staying in Ludwigshafen on Rhine.

After the end of the war Herr Rietmann became a member of the French Administration of the Works of Ludwigshafen on Rhine and on several occasions expressed his gratitude for the generous treatment which he received from the I.G.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 2 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Berthold SCHNELL



The foregoing <sup>sig</sup>ature of Herr Dr. Berthold SCHNELL, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Wechlerstr. 23, was affixed before me, Dr. Wolfgang ALT, Assistant Defense Counsel, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Bunsenstr. 4, and is hereby certified by me.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 2 January 1948.

signed, Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant Defense Counsel

It is hereby certified that the above is a correct and complete copy.

Nuernberg, 23 January 1948.

signed, Karl HOFFMANN

Defense Counsel.

Jean RIETHMANN  
Ingenieur-Chimiste E.C.M.,  
Mattenz (Switzerland)

A F F I D A V I T

I have been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit.

I declare on oath that the facts stated below are in accordance with the truth and that they may be used as evidence before the Military Court of Justice at Nuremberg.

My identity: RIETHMANN Jean  
Engineering Chemist E.C.M.  
Artillery Lieutenant of Reserve  
Officer-Chemist of Large Units (Grandes Unites)  
Ex- Control Officer to the  
French Mission of I.G. Farben at Ludwigshafen  
Born 15 April 1915 at Mulhouse, Upper Rhine.

Circumstances of my entering into contact with the I.G.

In May 1941 I applied for employment as engineering chemist to the Société des Produits Chimiques at Matières Colorantes at Mulhouse, rue de la Morteau.

This company had just been bought by the I.G. Farben from the Civil Administration of Strasbourg, by whom it had been sequestered on the arrival of the Germans in Alsace.

I was summoned to an interview with a view to my engagement. I was there presented to Messrs.

Dr. Berthold SCHWELL, technical director, and  
ECKERT, commercial director,

both of the I.G. Farben.

Before discussing my engagement, Dr. SCHWELL at once asked me the following question:

"Are you one of those who hope that the situation will change again here?"

Embarrassing as this question was, (this took place at the height of the expulsion, and Mr. ECKERT wore the Party badge), I replied:

"I am an officer of the Reserve and I have returned from a prison camp at a moment when innocent people are being expelled from Alsace for no reason. If I had changed my opinion, this would testify to a total lack of character on my part".

I had reason to believe by what followed that Dr. SCHMELL esteemed this frankness. In the very frequent contacts which I subsequently had with him, I learned to know him as a man of integrity, of noble and straight character, to whom I was able to express my opinions freely, even when they were strongly condemnatory of the national-socialist party and the German policy of that time. In particular, at the time of the mobilization of Alsace-Lorrainians by the German Army, I could see that Dr. SCHMELL was opposed to this measure and favoured as much as possible the policy of special recruitment adopted by the Alsatian directors of the company.

It is in appreciation of this character trait that I think I ought to relate, without comment of any sort and with the strictest regard to truth, what was done by the I.G. when I was arrested by the Gestapo for refusal to serve in the Wehrmacht.

At the end of September 1944, an agent of the Gestapo came to conduct me to the Gestapo at Mulhouse. I was taken to the deputy chief, BREPDEL by name, who presented me with two forms, the one a declaration as a volunteer to the Wehrmacht and the other drafted in these terms:

"I refused to report voluntarily to the Wehrmacht for the following reasons:.....  
I am aware of the consequences of my action."  
As I signed the second form, I was arrested and transferred to the security camp at Vorbruck, from which I was liberated after 3 days, thanks to the intervention of the I.G. with the Chamber of Commerce of Mulhouse and the Armaments Command.

At the end of October, I was arrested a second time and incarcerated in the prison at Mulhouse. After about ten days, I was informed that I was going to be sent to central Germany

to work as a chemist and would receive my instructions relative to this employment from the factory of the I.G. at Ludwigshafen when I called there en route.

Arrived at Ludwigshafen, I was regularly engaged by the personnel department, with the consent of the management of the factory, which was then composed of Dr. WURSTER and Dr. ALBROS, and I was not directed to central Germany, as had been ordered by the Gestapo.

This occurred during the worst period of the bombing of the factory and I had practically no work. I only attended at the factory for two or three hours a day, without getting into any trouble.

At the approach of the Allies, the forced industrial workers were recruited by the army for the building of earthworks at the front. This fate was likewise spared me and an attempt at escape towards Switzerland was also knowingly facilitated for me.

(Signed) JEAN RISTENANN

Seen for localisation of the signature  
affixed above by Mr. Jean RISTENANN, Frenchman,  
registered at this Consulate.  
Basle, 10 January, 1948.

Consulate Stamp.

The French Consul  
(Signature)

The agreement of this photostat with the original in the possession of Dr. Berthold SCHUBEL, resident in Ludwigshafen am Rhein, Wecklerstrasse 23, is hereby certified and attested by me.

(Signed) Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defence Counsel

The correctness and completeness of the foregoing copy of a photostat is hereby certified by me.  
Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 21 January 1948

Dr. Wolfgang ALT  
Assistant Defence Counsel.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

18 February 1948

We,	VICTORIA ORTON,	ETO No. 20129
	LEONARD J. LAWRENCE,	ETO No. 20138
	PATRICIA E.C. WOOD,	ETO No. 20139
	ANNE MARTIN,	ETO No. 20144
	BERYL C. BESWICK,	ETO No. 20183
	PHYLLIS RAY,	ETO No. 36287

hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of DOCUMENT BOOK VIII A AMEROS.

VICTORIA ORTON,  
ETO No. 20129,  
Pages 19, 20, 31, 32,  
47 - 57, 63 - 65

LEONARD J. LAWRENCE,  
ETO No. 20138,  
Pages 1 - 7, 21 - 24

PATRICIA E.C. WOOD,  
ETO No. 20139,  
Pages 8 - 11

ANNE MARTIN,  
ETO No. 20144,  
Pages 12 - 18, 25 - 28,  
66 - 68

BERYL C. BESWICK,  
ETO No. 20183,  
Pages 29, 30, 41 - 46,  
58 - 62, I - X

PHYLLIS RAY,  
ETO No. 36287,  
Pages 33 - 40.



TRIBUNAL VI

CASE VI

*Defense*  
*Case 6*

DOCUMENT BOOK C

for

Ctto AMBROS

Submitted by  
Defense Counsel

Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law

*over*



Index to Document Book C

for Dr. Otto Ambros

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
DA 139		Letter from Reich Minister of Economics dated 30 June 1941 to I.G. Solway, Dessau and other firms, regarding personnel to occupy, administer and run industry in the occupied Russian territories. ".....the maintenance of a number of vital plants in the Russian area....."	1-2

DA 221

Memorandum dated 2/12/38 on a discussion held at Schkopau with officials from the Reich Office for Industrial Development.

The Reich Office for Industrial Development: "urges that the production of Buna be increased with all speed, as the position regarding foreign exchange is very critical and the supply of natural rubber is questionable". As regards the foreseeable rubber requirements "the measures for technical and economic improvements (Rationalisierungsmaßnahmen) in the motor vehicle industry ..... will probably increase rubber requirements by about 30%."

"Rubber requirements are estimated as follows:

1938 actual consumption about 103,000 tons

" requirements " 115,000 "

also consumption of reclaimed

rubber about ..... 30,000 "

1939 110 - 120,000 tons

1940 120 - 130,000 "

1941 130,000 tons

1943 150,000 "

According to Eckell, a demand will shortly be made to set up plants to produce 150,000 tons a year by 1943. In reply to this, Ambros considered it might be possible to extend the Buna works as follows:

	Schkopau	Halle
March 1940	40,000	16,000
May 1941	60,000	30,000
Sept. 1941	60,000	40,000

100,000

Index to Document Book C

for Dr. Otto Ambros

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
		Ambros considers it impossible to start on the building of Factory No. 3 before the beginning of 1941.	3 - 6
OA 329		Confirmation dated 14/7/47 by the Gauleiter of Ettal. Entry in Visitors' Book shows that Ambros stayed in Ettal from 10/2/41 to 24/2/41 inclusive.	7
Of. 330		Affidavit dated 6/5/1948 by Dr. Emil A. Ehmenn. Being an expert in the Buna and Ethylene field the interested circles enlisted the services of Ambros in an informatory and auxiliary capacity. He was not able to refuse. "The war having already begun, he was in any case liable to be conscripted for work, with all the legal consequences which a refusal would have entailed." Ambros' collaboration was indispensable for technical reasons, especially during the construction of the Buna Section at Auschwitz. Ambros and his staff of collaborators could not have avoided the work in Auschwitz.	8 - 9
Of. 427		Further letter from Philippe Pfeffer re appendix to Affidavit by Dr. Hermann Sosenig (CI.426) 1.) Letter dated 24/9/1944 from Pfeffer to his wife, written from Auschwitz. Pfeffer states expressly: "The whole time I have been here I have been all right. I have not gone hungry, and the terrible Polish winter, which is already starting again, is fortunately over for me. I have worked the whole time in my particular field, my chiefs treated me very well." 2.) Letter dated 2/3/47 from Pfeffer to Dr. Sosenig. In this letter Pfeffer says: "the two Frenchmen who denounced me to the factory guard were sentenced to 10 and 15 years hard labor. They thought I died a long time ago."	10 - 1

Index to Document Book C  
for Dr. Otto Ambros

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
OA 616		<p>Memorandum on a conference held on 20 March 1936 in the premises of Economics Department II 6 (Wi II 6) (Excerpt from NI-7837, Pages 21/23) on the subject of I.G. fermentation glycerine.</p> <p>I.G. is to embark upon experiments on glycerine fermentation "in order to be able, in view of the poor supply situation, to cover their own large requirements, which will increase as a result of the development of alkylal varnish".</p> <p>"The Reich War Ministry gladly gives its consent to this project, provided that the plant is erected in a safety area. The I.G., however, attaches particular importance to its erection at Ludwigshafen."</p> <p>"I am in a position to view the situation from two points of view:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) purely from the point of view of private enterprise</li> <li>2) from the point of view of military policy.</li> </ol> <p>Ref. 1) <u>only</u> the Ludwigshafen site ..... can be considered."</p>	12-14
OA 617		<p>Report on the result of work in Ludwigshafen, given during the conference between the Weag and I.G., held on 23 May 1939.</p> <p>"The starting point of the problem of the handling of the K-Process at Ludwigshafen was the consideration that, in the case of all four hexogen processes in question, I.G. will have to undertake the manufacture of the preliminary products." The results of the laboratory experiments having shown the superiority of the continuous process, "Ludwigshafen concluded its work on the development of the K-Process. It is not possible to set up the experiments on the scale which, in my opinion, is necessary to the preliminary stage of the development of a hexogen factory with a capacity of 1,000 tons per month within the dyestuffs factory. The above experimental data and construction hypotheses must be confirmed in a pilot plant with a capacity of 100 - 200 tons per month."</p>	15-17

Index to Document Book C

for Dr. Otto Ambros

Doc. No. Exh. No.	Contents	Page
OK 723	<p>Affidavit by Dr. Albert Palm, former Prokurist and Works Manager of the Amorgana G.m.b.H., Dyhernfurth, dated 14 April 1948.</p> <p>Dr. Palm was informed of the production of Tabun by Production and Examination Group 9 of the Army Ordnance Office (We Pruef. 9) on about 25 September 1939. Laboratory experiments were taking place in Spandau. Production and Examination Group 9 of the Army Ordnance Office (We Pruef. 9) had only a half constructed pilot plant in Munsterlager, which was not designed for large-scale production and which could not serve as a basis for the large-scale project for which plans were being made. The T.G. had to carry out the project, basing their action on their general experience.</p>	18-19
OK 724	<p>Affidavit by Dr. Albert Palm, former member of the staff of the Amorgana G.m.b.H., Dyhernfurth, dated 14 April 1948.</p> <p>The production of Tabun was carried out with the help of German workers only. The filling of bombs with Tabun took place in a filling plant run by the Army and Luftwaffe Inspection officials. Manpower requirements in connection with this work were reported to the OKH and were then examined by a representative of the OKH together with an SS-Fuehrer, from the point of view of the possibility of employing concentration camp labor. Neither the Amorgana nor Herr Ambros were responsible for the employment of prisoners."</p>	20 - 21
OK 725	<p>Affidavit by Dr. Karl Reinknecht, former Oberregierungsrat in the Army Ordnance Office, dated 22 April 1948.</p> <p>"The employment of prisoners in the filling plant at Dyhernfurth was ordered by the Government Labor Allocation Offices which, at that time, had sole authority in this field of work, and was - as I remember - purely the result of shortage of labor at that time. It was neither suggested nor requested by the Amorgana. The allocation of prisoners was most disagreeable from the point of view of the Amorgana....."</p> <p>"The allocation of prisoners to the Building Sector there at a later date - as far as I remember - was not proposed by the Larchil-Baugesellschaft,</p>	



Index to Document Book C

For Dr. Otto Ambros

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
		or by the Amtorgana, but was also the work of the Government Offices responsible for the Allocation of Labor."	22-23
OA 726		<p>Affidavit by Dipl. Ing. Anton Schmal, former Prokurist of the Luranil-Baugesellschaft G.m.b.H., Dyhernfurth building site, dated 14 April 1948.</p> <p>"A local Armaments Building Supervisory Board (Ruebauleitung) was appointed by the Office for Armaments Development (Art fuer Ruestungsausbau) to supervise the execution of the constructional work. This was later transferred to the Organisation Tot. Labor requirement figures for the extension work were ascertained; As the local Labor Allocation offices could by no means cover these requirements, the labor requisition was forwarded to the appropriate central offices in Berlin (OAG, Armaments Ministry and the Plenipotentiary General for Building Operations (Gebobau)). These offices had "ordered the allocation of concentration camp prisoners to cover the manpower requirements." Appropriate instructions for the execution of this order for the allocation of prisoners were given to the local offices of the Labor Allocation authorities, such as the Breslau branch office of the Armaments Building Supervisory Board and the Breslau District Labor Office. Negotiations on the employment of prisoners were then conducted by these offices with the SS (Cross-Rosen concentration camp). The Luranil neither requested nor demanded that prisoners be allocated. The allocation of the prisoners to duties on the building site itself was the duty of the Armaments Building Supervisory Board (Ruebauleitung) and was carried out by it in accordance with the requirements indicated."</p> <p>In December 1939, an order was given for the erection of the Tobin works at Dyhernfurth in accordance with a previous decision. The I.G. passed on the commission to the Luranil-Gesellschaft G.m.b.H. which had been founded in January 1940, in order that it might plan the Dyhernfurth plant and place the necessary orders."</p>	24-25

Index to Document Book C

for Dr. Otto Ambros

Doc. No.	Exh. No.	Contents	Page
OK 727		Affidavit by Chief Engineer Willy Bilfinger, dated 17 March 1948. Bilfinger describes the duties of Schmel as Procurist of the Luranil, Dyhernfurth.	26
OK 822		Comparison of the turnover statistics for the Francolor works in the year 1938 and 1942. The individual products are collected into groups and a comparison is drawn between the amounts and the values for the two years (pre-war period and wartime figures) in the form of tables. The turnover statistics for the two years give a proportion of 100.2% of the 1938 figures in 1942.	27
OK 823		Excerpt from the agenda of the Staff Conference of the Francolor Technical Committee held in Ludwigshafen on 18 March 1942. Subject: The Production of Phthalic Acid Anhydride in Villers St. Paul. "It had been decided not to erect the phthalic acid plant at Villers-St-Paul as had previously been planned by Kuhlmann, but to leave the work to the Badysag." "We were to examine in detail the problem of how our Ludwigshafen phthalic acid producing system could be accommodated ..... in Villers."	28

COPY

The Reich Minister of Economics  
II Chemistry 8529/41

Berlin W 8, 30 June 1941  
Behrenstr. 43

Special Delivery

To

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a) Dir. Dr. BUNTSCHISCH<br>Vorstand member of<br>I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.<br>Berlin NW 2<br>Unter den Linden 83 | h) Director General FEISE<br>Kali-Chemie<br>Min'erachensscheidungssach Berlin<br>Berlinerstr. 1/4                            |
| b) Dir. Dr. WURSTER<br>Vorstand member of<br>I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.<br>Ludwigshafen on Rhine.                 | i) Dir. Dr. MUELLER<br>Bayer-Werke A.G.<br>Berlin<br>Lützow Str. 33/35   |
| c) Dir. Dr. AMBROS<br>Vorstand member of<br>I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.<br>Ludwigshafen on Rhine                   | k) Dir. Dr. FESS<br>Dr. Alexander WATKE, Gesellschaft<br>für electro-chemische Industrie<br>Münster<br>Prinzengartenstr. 30  |
| d) Dir. Dr. ILGNER<br>Vorstand member of<br>I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.<br>Berlin NW 2<br>Unter den Linden 92      | l) Dr. OELSCHER, Min. Dir. retired of<br>Vereinigte Industrieunternehmen<br>A.G.<br>Berlin W 8<br>Französische Strasse 53/55 |
| e) Dir. Dr. "SOM"<br>Stickstoff-Syndikat<br>(Nitrogen Syndicate)<br>Berlin NW 2<br>Neust. Kirchstr. 2/10         | m) Geh. Rat Dr. JUNGEL<br>Chemische Fabrik<br>von HEYDEN A.G.<br>Berlin W 35<br>Am Karlsbad 26 a                             |
| f) Director General CLEGG<br>Deutsche Solvay Werke,<br>Hamburg/Anhalt  | n) Dr. C. UNGENWITZER<br>Economic Group Chemical Industry<br>Berlin W 35<br>Sigismundstr. 6                                  |
| g) Dir. Dr. SCHLOSSER<br>Deutsche Gold- u. Silberscheide-<br>Anstalt<br>Berlin W 1<br>Hinter der kath. Kirche 1  |  |

Subject: Personnel to fill administrative and managerial posts  
in the occupied Russian territories.

The building<sup>up</sup> of an efficient administration and the maintenance of a number of chemical industry plants in the Russian occupied territories vital to the Russian area and to the economy of Greater Germany, is one of the most important tasks which at present confront us. It will only be possible to accomplish these tasks if the German Chemical Industry releases as many as possible of its available personnel.

As things stand, the demands which have been made and which will still have to be made are considerable. Apart from the staff so far employed, people are needed who have been trained in administration and commerce, technical and factory personnel (engineers, chemists) as well as an appropriate number of senior foremen, foremen etc, numbering about 100. I regard it as absolutely necessary that these demands, which are now being made on the German Chemical Industry, and the possibilities of meeting these demands, should be discussed in detail among the responsible Plant Leaders. I have convoked such a conference for

Tuesday, 8 July 1941

at 11 a.m. in conference room No. 11

5th floor in the Building of the Reich Ministry of Economics, Berlin W 3, Behrenstr. 43. I request you, if at all possible, to attend this conference personally. In case you are prevented from doing so, you must send an authorized deputy without fail.

By order  
Signed: Dr. MULERT

Rubber Stamp  
of the Reich  
Ministry of Economics

Certified by:  
signature (handwritten) DESSIN  
Office Clerk

I herewith certify that the above is a correct and complete copy.

Nuremberg, 6 May 1948

Signed: Karl HOFFMANN

Attorney at Law.

I herewith certify that the above is an exact copy of the  
original document contained in a red folder bearing file  
No. S 39 V A - 79 in the Records Building in Griesheim,  
Frankfort/on Main-Griesheim, 15 October 1947

signed: Dr. Wolfgang ALT

Assistant Defense Counsel

I herewith certify that the above is a correct and complete copy.  
Nuremberg, 5 May 1948

signed: Karl ROEFMAID

Attorney at Law



(Stamp)

Memorandum

Strictly confidential

Conference Schkopau on 2 December 1938

Present: Eckell }  
 Ebeling } Reich Office for Industrial  
 Richert } Development (Reichsstelle fuer  
 Wirtschaftsausbau)

Ambros  
 Struss  
 Wulff

Ludwig  
 Konrad

Eckell urges that the production of Buna be increased with all speed, as the position regarding foreign exchange is very critical, and the supply of natural rubber is questionable. Ambros reports on the extension of Schkopau (Styrene factory not ready before 15 February 1939). Accurate production figures can only be given at the beginning of next year, after the results of experiments made on certain processes which have not yet been tested in plants on the scale intended are available.

The following Buna-S deliveries are agreed on, bearing in mind stocks to be held.

	<u>Production</u>	<u>Delivery</u>	<u>Stores</u>
December 1938		470	
January	550	750	
February	800	750	730
March	1000	900	830
April	1500	1300	1030
May	2000	1600	1430
June	2000	1800	1600
July	2000	1800	1800

Eckell gives his views on the presumable rubber requirements for next year. The measures entrusted by Goering to Colonel Schnell for the technical and economic improvements (Rationalisierung) in the motor vehicle industry, will probably increase rubber requirements by approximately 30 %. It is hinted that giant tires for trucks will be abandoned in favor of twin tires.

Rubber requirements are estimated as follows:

Exhibit No.....

1938 actual consumption approximately 130 000 tons, actual requirements approximately 115 000 tons, also consumption approx. 30 000 tons of reclaimed rubber.

1939	110 000 - 112 000 tons
1940	120 000 - 130 000 tons
1941	130 000 tons
1943	150 000 tons.

According to Eckell a demand will shortly be made to set up plants to produce 150 000 tons a year by 1943.

In reply to this Ambros considered it might be possible to extend the Buna Works as follows:

	<u>Schloppau</u>	<u>Huels</u>
March 1940	40 000	16 000
May 1941	60 000	30 000
September 1941	60 000	40 000
	<u>100 000</u>	

Ambros considers it impossible to start on the construction of Plant 3 before the beginning of 1941.

Eckell submits a plan for the placing of 160 000 tons of Buna a year which appears also to us (KONRAD, KOCH) entirely possible considering the stage now reached in Buna processing.

Regarding the question, whether, and, if so, how, the firms, which have so far not developed high quality Buna tires, should be assisted, having in mind the future large scale production, it is expected to adopt the following procedure:

- 1) It is hoped that the technical study groups (Arbeitsgemeinschaften) now being formed will show good results:

Conti-Semporit ?  
 Dunlop-Phoenix  
 Fulda-Metzeler-Engelbert ?

- 2) So far, the individual manufacturers have equipped motor vehicles with tires for the first time in accordance with a schedule. It is proposed to drop this quota system. This would of necessity raise the level of the firms with a bad delivery record.

Side by side with the planned Buna production there must be a corresponding production of carbon black. The naphthalene-anthracene basis will no longer suffice. The carbon black obtained from the production of acetylene in the electric arc has not yet attained the quality desired. Consideration might possibly have to be given to the production of carbon black by means of the acetylene process (100 000 tons of Buna = 30 - 3500 active carbon black; in my opinion the estimate is somewhat too high).

Contrary to the attitude so far taken up, the Reich Office (Eckell) is willing to-day to release considerable quantities of Buna-S for cables. The intention to-day is to use only certain quantities of polyvinylchloride for communication cables (Schwachstromkabel). Konrad is of the opinion that, if given the free choice, one would opt for Buna for this field.

An analogous situation will also apply to the emulsion field (Emulsions of plastics, Buna, latex), where the industry using them is to-day being urged by the Reich Office to use emulsions of plastics. It is not possible to make Buna-S latex available to-day either for experimental purposes or for processing, as the quantities of Buna-S produced at the present moment are needed for more important purposes. This is the reason why the industry using this product is referred to Perbunan latex (Perbunan SP). On the basis of a possible production of 100 tons per month of solid Perbunan Leverkusen could easily supply 100 tons of 30% latex in the form of latex. The decision as to the possible production of Leovulkan (Buna-SS) is becoming urgent. The Conti pointed out to the Reich Office in an express that it wishes to obtain larger quantities of Leovulkan owing to its better processing properties, and plasticity of the mixtures, and that Leovulkan not only represents a progress as regards processing but also a progress as regards quality in the tire field. The Conti wishes to receive about a third of the total quantity of Buna-S as Leovulkan. We recognize that Leovulkan does make processing more easy. However, the results of research undertaken are not yet sufficiently conclusive to judge as to whether Leovulkan generally represents a progress for tires. As it is to-day probably proposed to mix Buna-S with Buna-SS in the large fields of application, Eckell raises the question, as to whether a Buna with a medium styrene content, which is between Buna-S and Buna-SS,

Exhibit No.....

will not represent the final solution. Not enough conclusive technical tests on the type of Lovulcan which is made available to the customers to-day and on variations with changing styrene content have yet been made. As to styrene, Ambros can only release an additional 5 tons per month of monomeric styrene. From this, it is possible to produce approximately 10 tons per month of Lovulcan of the type manufactured so far, and to test still further variations. The rubber industry will only get the quantities of Lovulcan (Conti approximately 2 tons per month) which it requires for the carrying out tire tests which are absolutely essential. The Tire Testing Station at Leverkusen will in the near future work on the problem of Lovulcan-Buna-S mixtures in tires.

Leverkusen, 7 December 1938

signed: Dr. Konrad

Dr. Kd/Dr.

Handwritten remark:

Maul (Ietseler) handed over the chairmanship in the sub-section (Fachgruppe) Rubber Industry to Dr. Koennecke (Conti).

I herewith certify that the above is a correct and complete copy.

Nuernberg, 6 May 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney-at-Law.)

Document Otto Ambros Inc. 329

Exhibit No. ....

Certificate.

According to the entry in the visitors' book, Dr. Ambros and his family stayed at the Benediktshof, Ettal, from 10 - 24 February 1941.

Ettal, 14 July 1947

District Council Ettal:  
signed: Albrecht  
Mayor

Official Seal

I herewith certify that the above is a true and complete copy.

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney-at-law)



A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Emil A. Ehmenn, domiciled at Stuttgart-Möhringen, Kanalstr. 15, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false statement. I herewith declare under oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice at Nuremberg, Germany.

To the best of my knowledge, Dr. Otto Ambros was the leading German chemist in the following fields:

Benz, organic intermediates, in particular those of ethylene chemistry. This was known in all interested circles in Germany. If one wanted to know anything in this field Ambros was the man to consult.

It was only natural that we of the Army Ordnance Office also approached Ambros and asked for information or assistance.

Apart from the fact that to me it would have been unthinkable that he, as a German, could have turned down a demand made by the German authorities, a refusal on his part would have been useless.

The war having already begun, he was in any case liable to be conscripted for work, with all the legal consequences which a refusal would have entailed.

With regard to Benz in particular I wish to state the following: If the I.G. Farbenindustrie had not built the Benz plant at the Auschwitz works with the help of Ambros, it is possible that another office would have been commissioned to carry out the project. In any case, Ambros as the expert, as well as his staff of collaborators would have had to be consulted, and they might even have been conscripted. The construction of Benz Plant IV was a State order. For technical reasons it was impossible to do without Ambros.

I can therefore state that, to the best of my knowledge, although my office was not competent for Buna, the order also included the setting up of a number of Ichnaicht owned plants in the Buna works at Auschwitz within the overall project, and that Ambros and his staff of collaborators would never have been able to avoid the work at Auschwitz.

signed: Dr. Emil A. Ehsann

I herewith certify that this is the signature of Dr. Emil A. Ehsann, domiciled at Stuttgart-Mehringen, Kanalstr. 15, and was made before me, Attorney-at-Law Karl Hoffmann.

Nuernberg, 6 May 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann

(Attorney-at-Law)

I herewith certify that this is a true and complete copy.

Nuernberg, 6 May 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann

(Attorney-at-Law)

Copy

Jaschwitz, 24 Sept. 44

My beloved wife, my darling little Mima,

I am writing to you and to the whole family, hoping that you are all alive and well. Today it is almost ten months since I left you, my dear wife, and you, my little pride and joy. I also left a very little "yet unborn" behind, but I have heard nothing about its birth, nothing about its name, or whether it is a boy or girl. I hope everything went smoothly, and if it is a boy, call him Philippe. That will remind you of your husband who loved you so dearly, who only lived for you, and who is now so terribly sad and unhappy that he had to leave you.

The whole time I have been here I have been all right. I have not gone hungry and the terrible Polish winter, which is already starting again, is fortunately over for me.

I have worked the whole time in my particular field. My chiefs treated me very well. The one who is sending you this letter has lately been my boss. He treated me really well, not as a prisoner, but as a human being. By treating me in this way he helped me to keep up my morale, not to forget about my cultural life altogether, and not to lose the hope which keeps me alive. I ask you - if you are able - to do everything you can to help that man if ever he should be in need. That is my last wish.

I must stop now, I have no courage. Please write to Baptiste Quillon, St. Paulien (près des Pay) N<sup>o</sup> 10 Laire, and to Jean Appolhaus, 20 rue de rose Dilbeck Brahand (près de Bruxelles). Both used to work with me. They will tell you about my life here. I embrace you, my beloved wife, I kiss my daughter's beautiful hair. I have told my comrades how lovely she is.

Madame Ph. Pfeffer  
Pharmacien  
Phie Chibiot  
Clermont Fd. (P.d.D.) France

Do not forget me  
have courage!!  
Adieu Philippe.

Excerpt from a letter from Philippe Pfeffer, to Dr. Speer dated  
2 March 1947.

.....  
I believe I shall be coming to Germany this fall. I shall probably be working in a German factory. I shall ask whether it will be possible to work at your factory for a few months. Have you already someone from the French authorities at the Soda- and Anilin Fabrik? I would like to talk to you about many things. Do you know that the two Frenchmen who denounced me to the factory guard were sentenced to 10 and 15 years hard labor? They thought I died a long time ago.

I should like to help your family so that the children will not have to suffer too much.

.....  
What happened to Montpallier?  
.....

signed: Philippe Pfeffer

I herewith certify that this excerpt is a true copy of the original letter.  
Munich, 5 May 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney-at-Law)

Excerpt from Document 7837 pages 21/23

File No. 66 b 21 61

20 March 1936

File memorandum on a I.G. I.G. conference 19 March 1936

Re: fermentation glycerine I.G.

Persons present: Dr. Ing. Murek ) Reich War Ministry  
Dr. Ing. Reuberg )  
Dr. v. Bruening I.G. Berlin  
Dr. Schöenemann I.G. Ludwigshafen .

I.G. have resumed with renewed energy experiments on glycerine fermentation and intend to restart own production in order to be able, in view of glycerine supply difficulties, to meet their own large requirements (5500 t per annum including Dynamit A.G.), which will be increased even more by the development of Alcydal lacquers. As far as I.G. is concerned, imported sugar only can be used in glycerine production (8 RM per 100 kg. 100 London = approx. RM 10.- free Ludwigshafen works), because German sugar is too expensive (16 RM per 100 kg.). Bergius raw sugar does not ferment easily; refined Bergius sugar is too expensive (1).

I.G. intend to set up glycerine production on their own, unassisted by sales guarantees or price control, provided the Reich obliges by granting exemption from taxes and customs duties for imported sugar and by buying the alcohol produced through the Reichsmonopolverwaltung.

It has promised to support the plan if the plant is erected in the safety area. I.G. on the other hand wish to erect it at Ludwigshafen (plant easily incorporated in factory there; experienced trained experts; cheap waste sulphite from plant there; utilization in the plant of aldehyde produced; favourable situation as regards freight, purity of the water).

I.G. can consider the problem from 2 points of view:  
1) from the point of view of private enterprise,  
2) from the point of view of armaments policy.



Ad 1); anything but Ludwigshafen and imported sugar as raw material is out of the question if the glycerine is to be manufactured at a cost price of about 75 Pf. per kg. Should the cost price be higher I.G. would no longer be interested from the point of view of private enterprise. (Glycerine is purely a raw material for I.G. plants, and will not be put on the market).

Ad 2); Should I.G. not be able to produce glycerine under conditions listed under 1), which would involve a greater risk, the Reich War Ministry must

either pay the difference between the "reasonable" cost price (of 1)) and the increased costs (of 2)  
or give a sales guarantee at comparatively high prices.

Dr. Karch states, that the solution from the point of view of private enterprise is out of the question as far as the Wehrmacht is concerned. Should I.G. insist, the Reich War Ministry would turn down tax and customs privileges.

Glycerine production must be started while we are still at peace. Other firms are beginning to produce glycerine in the safe area. The I.G. plant in Ludwigshafen curtails these firms without promising well for the event of war; we are therefore opposed to the project.

Result: I.G. will comply with the wishes of the Reich War Ministry. Development will continue in two stages:

- 1) An experimental plant for the production of 10 tons per month will be constructed immediately at Ludwigshafen,
- 2) construction of the first large scale production plant for the production of 100 tons per month. Site to be chosen in agreement with Reich War Ministry. Further plants (5 approx.) will follow.

Subject to official approval the following provisional agreement is concluded:

- 1) The objections raised by the Reich War Ministry against the lowering of the price of sugar will be dropped, but experiments must be made with wood sugar.
- 2) I.G. will put the experimental plant into operation and shall submit as soon as possible suggestions for a site for the major plant.
- 3) As soon as experience gained in the operation of the plant producing 10 tons per month permits further calculation, an agreement shall be concluded for the purpose of dealing with the increase in prices which will presumably occur, and with the ways and means of compensating for that increase in prices.

Document Otto Ambros No. 616

Exhibit No. . . . .

(Perhaps sales guarantees at market price ?)

I.C. will submit their findings in writing, stating which activities on the part of the Reich War Ministry are needed, if the development is to be carried further.

(S) No 20/3

This is to certify that the above is a correct and accurate copy of pages 21/23 of Document NI 7673.

Munich, 3 May 1948.

(Dr. G. Jäcker)

Assistant Defense Counsel

This is to certify that the above is a true and accurate copy of the original.

Munich, 5 May 1948.

signed: Hoffmann

Attorney-at-law.

Excerpt from

(Page 32 of report)

Report on the results of Ludwigshafen research submitted  
in the conference between I.G. and I.G. on 23 May 1939

C o n t e n t s

- I. Starting point for and problems connected with the Ludwigshafen research on the K process.
- II. The five main principles for the large scale application of the K process.
  - 1) Continuous nitration.
  - 2) Final acid processing by crystallization and separation of ammonium nitrate without distillation.
  - 3) Minimum accumulation of water in the final mother lye to be expelled.
  - 4) Conversion into hexamethylenetetramine of the formaldehyde which has not been utilized.
  - 5) Conversion of nitrogen of potassium nitrate which has not been utilized into calcium nitrate.
- III. Details of the results of the continuous nitration and crystallization processes.
  - 1) Reaction apparatus and yield.
  - 2) Apparatus used in nitration reaction and in the various stages of the process.
  - 3) Safety precautions in large scale production.
  - 4) General plan of the large plant.
  - 5) Incorporation in German economic planning.
  - 6) Approximate costs of the plant.
  - 7) Appreciation of results obtained so far.

(Page 33 of the report)

- I. The starting point for and the problem of Ludwigshafen research on the K process was the thought that no matter which of the four hexogene processes in question was adopted, I.G. would be responsible for the manufacture of preliminary products. The K process developed by the I.G.

seemed to be the best from the point of view of supplying raw materials easily within the scope of the German chemical industry. The quantities of methanol and ammonia required can easily be put aside for hexogen. Of the processes using methanol and ammonia the H process appeared to be preferable to the SH process, because the former's raw material requirements were (then) only 60% of those of the latter and it seemed probable that yield could be increased even further. In view of the fact that the H process being the most recent lagged behind the others as far as technical development was concerned, Ludwigshafen took up research into methods of improving the process from the chemical and technical points of view and entered into a contract of association with Wessy.

On Ludwigshafen devolved the task of finding a method by which the principle of admixing ammonium nitrate in the nitration of hexamethylene tetramine - admirable as such - could be used for large scale production. In conjunction these two factors, i.e. a superior process and technically perfected method of execution, were bound to render the process superior to all others.

(page 41 of the report)

7. A precipitation of results obtained so far.

In accordance with the above the continuous nitration and crystallisation process must be held to be superior to all other hexogen processes from the point of view of utilisation of raw materials which assumes particular importance in view of the shortage of primary processing capacity.

These results mark the termination of Ludwigshafen research on the development of the H process. Owing to the limitations of the Dyestuffs plant it is impossible to erect an experimental plant of the size required in our opinions preliminary stage for the construction of a hexogen plant with a production capacity of 1000 tons per month. The experimental data and constructional estimates given above must be tested in an experimental plant with a production capacity of 100 - 200 tons per month.

(page 42 of the report)

A plant of that size represents a unit which could be repeated in the larger plant and will provide sufficient reliable data on which to base calculations.

Document Otto Ambros No. 617

Exhibit No. . . . .

We should also like to take this opportunity of pointing out that the continuous production of hexamethylpictetramine has been solved satisfactorily.

This is to certify that the above is a true and accurate copy of the original.

Nurnberg, 1 Mai 1948.

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
attorney-at-law



AFFIDAVIT  
-----

I, Dr. Morf, L.H., resident in Ludwigshafen-Rhine, Hindenburgr. 45, formerly proletarian and works manager of the Ludwigshafen G.M.B.H. Dyhernfurth, having first been warned that I shall make myself liable to punishment by giving a false affidavit, hereby declare on oath that my statement is in accordance with the truth and is made for the purpose of submission in evidence before the Military Tribunal 6 in Nuremberg, Germany.

At the end of September 1939, after the outbreak of the war, I heard for the first time of Tabun. I was instructed regarding its production in Berlin-Spandau, about 25 September 1939, together with Dr. Ulrich, by the gentleman of Production and Coordination Group 9 of Army Ordnance Office (Lt. Fruef 9), and it was arranged that I should go to Spandau for about three weeks in October 1939 in order to become acquainted with the laboratory processes. There I made a number of laboratory experiments and thereby acquired knowledge of the laboratory production of Tabun. Thereafter I was shown, together with Oberleutnant Hilfinger, who had meanwhile been returned from the Army as indispensable (U.S.-Stellung), the semi-technical experimental plant on which the Lt. Fruef 9 of the Army Ordnance Office had started construction in Ludwigslohner. This plant was planned for the production of 25 tons Tabun a month. It could not, however, according to our experience with other chemical reactions and problems, be used as basis for the major technical planning.

As the carrying out of technical experiments at the I.G. Farben-Industrie in Ludwigshafen was not possible, for security reasons, there remained no other possibility but for me, together with Dr. Ulrich and the gentleman of the Technical Department, to carry out the major technical planning on the basis of our experience, without, however, any major technical experiments, specially with Tabun.

With the collaboration of Oberingenieur B. Binger and later with  
Obering. Binger, the planning was carried out and the diagrams  
drawn up.

I myself had no functions in the Uranil-gesellschaft, but acted  
as chemist, in an advisory capacity.

Nuremberg, 14 April 1948.

signed: Albert Palm

The above signature of Dr. Albert Palm, resident in Ludwigshafen-  
Rhine, Hindenburgstr. 45, was affixed before me, Attorney Karl  
Hoffmann, Nuremberg, Solgerstr. 32, this day and is certified  
by me.

Nuremberg, 14 April 1948.

signed: HOFFMANN

(Attorney)

A F F I D A V I T .  
-----

I, Dr. Albert C. H., resident in Ludwigshafen-Rhine, Hindenburgstrasse 25, formerly procurist and works manager of the Inorgane G.m.b.H., Dyhernfurth, having been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit, hereby declare on oath that my statement is in accordance with the truth and has been made for the purpose of submission as evidence before the Military Tribunal 6 in Nuremberg, Germany.

In the summer of 1942 the Inorgane G.m.b.H. took over a plant in Dyhernfurth. In this plant Tabun was to be produced. This was the so-called Dyhernfurth Works of the Inorgane G.m.b.H.

From the time the Inorgane G.m.b.H. took over the plant in the summer of 1942, only Germans, for reasons of security, were employed in the workshops of the Dyhernfurth Works, now belonging to them.

The production of the predest Tabun was thus effected solely by German labor, but, to fulfill <sup>the</sup> utilization purpose of the Wehrmacht, the finished Tabun had still to be put into the bombs and grenades supplied by the Wehrmacht. This took place in a filling station under the management of an Army and Air Force production inspection official. For this also labor was required.

The labor requirements of the Inorgane were estimated at about 200 workers. These requirements were notified to the High Command of the Army (O.H.), with the additional note that the Inorgane were not in the position to procure these workers themselves.

Hereupon, Oberregierungsrat Dr. Weinknecht of O.H., together with 23 <sup>begin</sup> Oberstaatsanwalt Laurer, appeared in Dyhernfurth in order to investigate the possibility of allocating concentration camp prisoners for this work.

This was followed shortly after by the actual allocation of the prisoners, who were supplied by the concentration camp Gross-Rosen.

The allocation of prisoners originated neither with the Germans nor with Dr. Ambros.

Nuremberg, 14 April 1948.

signed: Albert FALK.

The above signature of Dr. Albert Falk, resident in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Hindenburgstrasse 45, was affixed before me, Attorney Karl Hoffmann, Nuremberg, Selgerstr. 32, this day and is certified by me.

Nuremberg, 14 April 1948.

signed: HOFFMANN

Attorney

I confirm that the above declaration is in agreement with the original.

Nuremberg, 22 April 1948.

signed: HOFFMANN

Attorney.

Burgkirchen, 31 December 1947  
Alz

Affidavit  
-----

I, Dr. Karl Reinknecht, resident in Burgkirchen/Alz, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

As far as I remember, it was in the summer of 1942 while I was working in the Army Ordnance Office in Berlin, that I was called to my Office Group Chief, who was in conference with SS-Obersturmbannfuhrer Maurer, and given the job of showing Maurer the Dyhernfurth works since prisoners were to be employed in the filling center there. Maurer wanted to ascertain immediately the possibility of assured accommodation. The employment of prisoners in the Dyhernfurth filling center was ordered by the Labor Allocation offices which were at that time solely responsible and was - as I remember - merely the result of the labor shortage at the time and was neither proposed nor demanded by Anorgana. This allocation of prisoners was very unpleasant for Anorgana, because they had to appoint a great many supervisory personnel for technical instruction and feared damage. Thanks to the excellent technical supervision and cooperation by the technical assistants of the Anorgana they had no accidents. Even the later allocation of prisoners in the building sector there was not - as far as I remember - proposed by the Luranil-Baugesellschaft or Anorgana, but proceeded from the Labor Allocation offices.

signed: Dr. Karl Reinknecht

This is to certify the above signature by Herr Dr. Karl Reinknecht:  
Burgkirchen/Alz, 31 December 1947

Der Burgermeister  
signed: Riebsamer

Official Seal.



This is to certify that the above copy is correct and complete.

Nuernberg, 5 May 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Rechtsanwalt)

Affidavit  
-----

I, Diplom-Ingenieur Anton Schmal, born on 30 July 1896 in Regensburg/  
Bavaria, at present residing in Driesen on Ammersee, Hofpark 15, formerly  
Prokurist of the Luranil-Baugesellschaft, Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Dyhern-  
furth building site, have first been warned that I shall render myself  
liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare on oath that  
my statement is true and was made in order to be produced in evidence  
before the Military Tribunal VI in Nuernberg, Germany.

So far as I know, the first discussions between the High Command of the  
Army and the representatives of the IG Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
about the construction of a factory for the production of Tabun took  
place after the outbreak of World War II.

In December 1939, the High Command of the Army placed an order with IG  
Farbenindustrie, in the form of a preliminary order. IG Farbenindustrie  
forwarded this order to the Luranil-Gesellschaft m.b.H., which was founded  
in January 1940, for the planning of a plant in Dyhernfurth and for placing  
the necessary orders connected therewith.

The plant planned in the first place was ready for operation in summer 1942.  
No concentration camp prisoners were used for its construction.

When, in summer 1942, the Anorgana G.m.b.H. had taken over the plant, which  
in the meantime had been finished, the High Command of the Army decided, in  
spring 1943, on an expansion of the Dyhernfurth works. Luranil participated  
in this expansion to the same extent as before.

A local Armament Construction Office (Ruebauleitung) was established by the  
office for Armament Development (Amt fuer Ruestungsbaus) for the carrying  
out of this construction work. The Armament Construction Office was later

taken over by the organization TODE. The requirements for labor necessary for this construction work were fixed. In view of the fact that the local Labor Allocation agencies were by no means able to fill these requirements, they were forwarded to the competent central agencies in Berlin (High Command of the Army, Ministry for Armament and Plenipotentiary General for Construction Work).

I do not know whether these agencies were unable to fill these requirements in any other way or whether there were any other reasons; in any case, the allocation of concentration camp prisoners was ordered to fill these labor requirements. The corresponding instructions for the carrying out of this allocation were issued to the local agencies for labor allocation, such as the branch offices of RUERAU (Armament Construction) in Breslau and the Breslau Land Labor Office.

These agencies then negotiated with the SS (concentration camp Gross-Rosen) on the subject of the allocation of prisoners. Durnil neither requested nor demanded this allocation.

The local assignment of prisoners at the building site was carried out by the Armament Construction Office in accordance with the labor requisitions. The concentration camp prisoners were mostly used for construction and assembling work. Compensation for their work was paid on the basis of the rates which were fixed by the Armament Construction Office, or by the Price Control Office of the Plenipotentiary for Construction Work in Breslau.

Munich, 14 April 1948

signed: Anton Schmal  
( Anton Schmal )

I certify that the above corresponds to the original.

Munich, 22 April 1948

Karl Hoffmann  
Attorney-at-Law

Affidavit.

I, Oberingenieur Willy Bilfinger, born on 27 December 1901, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Frankenthalerstr. 199, have first been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be presented as evidence to the Military Tribunal VI at the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I was head of the assemblage department at the building site of the Dyhernfurth works and deputy of the Betriebsfuehrer of this building site, Herr Oberingenieur Anton Schmal. In this capacity I can state that Herr Anton Schmal was the Betriebsfuehrer of the Dyhernfurth building site of the Luranil-Baugesellschaft m.b.H., from February 1940 until its evacuation in January 1945. Herr Anton Schmal was authorized to sign as Prokurist. From spring 1940 till December 1940, prior to the commencement of the construction work, he inspected the building site every month in order to establish contact between the Planning Department and the local building manager. As from January 1941, he maintained a permanent residence in Dyhernfurth. Herr Schmal represented the Luranil-Baugesellschaft m.b.H., Dyhernfurth building site with all authorities such as the High Command of the Army, Plenipotentiary General for Construction Work, Plenipotentiary General for Chemistry, Armament Commando, Labor Office, etc., and established contact between the local building management and the assemblage management, as well as the Planning Department. He was also responsible for the co-ordination of the interests of the Luranil-Baugesellschaft with those of the later works management of the Anorgana G.m.b.H. Dyhernfurth.

Ludwigshafen on Rhine, 17 March 1948

signed: Willy Bilfinger

Document Roll No. 463/48.

The above signature of Herr Oberingenieur Willy Bilfinger, residing in Ludwigshafen on Rhine, Frankenthalerstr. 199, affixed before the undersigned, is hereby certified and attested by me. Herr Bilfinger identified himself by producing his "Kennkarte" (identity card) with his photograph, issued by the Police Headquarters in Ludwigshafen on Rhine.

Ludwigshafen, 17 March 1948

signed: Dr. Baermann  
Notary

The correctness and completeness of the above copy is hereby certified.

Nuremberg, 5 May 1948

signed: Karl Hoffmann  
(Attorney-at-Law)

E x c e r p t

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft Ludwigshafen on Rhine

Intermediate Products Group

Herr Dir. Dr. Ambros,  
Herr Dir. Dr. Pflaumer,  
Herr Dir. Dr. Baumann.

TX/FE/Dr. R/S

18 March 1942

Work Conference of the Technical Commission Francolor in Ludwigshafen  
on 23, 24, and 25 March 1942.

\*\*\*\*\*

1) Phthalic Acid Anhydride Production in Villers-St.-Paul.

It has been decided that the phthalic acid production plant, which Kuhlmann had planned for Villers-St.-Paul, will not now be set up, but its establishment will also be left to Dehydag. However, Herr Joseph Frossard, the president of Francolor, will ascertain to what extent Dehydag is willing to guarantee a corresponding quantity of material for the release of this process.

We shall have to examine in detail how our Ludwigshafen phthalic acid system can be installed in the almost completed Viller building 101/102, or what building alterations are to be made. The officials of Francolor have been requested to bring with them all data pertaining to their phthalic acid system.

\*\*\*\*\*

signed: Roell

Carbon copy to Herr Dir. Dr. Jenk, Le.

Herr Dr. Moyer, Office of the Technical Committee, Frankfurt on Main.

-----  
It is hereby certified that the above excerpt corresponds to the original wording of the original carbon copy in the files of the Ludwigshafen Works.

Ludwigshafen, 5 May 1948

signed: Dr. Wolfgang Alt  
Assistant Defense Counsel



## Comparison of Turnovers for 1938 and 1942

	Weight (in kilos)			Values (in francs)		
	1938	1942	% 42/38	1938	1942	% 42/38
Villers	7,091,638	6,819,801	96,5	183,475,397	216,677,547	117 %
Oisiel	8,203,835	3,831,248	46,6 %	161,743,051	151,064,301	93,5 %
St. Denis	15,241,618	6,747,370	44,2	145,742,142	126,661,876	86,5 %
St. Clair	2,232,284	1,504,751	67,5 %	71,239,281	78,310,485	109 %
Huningue	68,041			6,435,136		
	32,837,416	18,897,170	57,6 %	571,635,007	572,914,189	100,2 %

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

11 May 1948

No. Victoria ORTON, ETO # 20129,  
Beryl C. BESWICK, ETO # 20183,  
Brigitte TUEK, ETO # 35130,  
Leonard J. LAWRENCE, ETO # 20138,  
Anne MARTIN, ETO # 20144,  
Patricia E.C. WOOD, ETO # 20139,  
Julius J. STEUER, AGO - A - 442654,

hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the German  
and English languages and that the above is a true and correct trans-  
lation of Document Book C AMBROS.

.....  
Victoria ORTON  
ETO # 20129  
pages 1-5, I-II

.....  
Beryl C. BESWICK  
ETO # 20183  
pages III-VI

.....  
Brigitte TUEK  
ETO # 35130  
pages 7 - 11

.....  
Leonard J. LAWRENCE  
ETO # 20138  
pages 12 - 17

.....  
Anne MARTIN  
ETO # 20144  
pages 18 - 21

.....  
Patricia E.C. WOOD  
ETO # 20139  
pages 22 - 23

.....  
Julius J. STEUER  
AGO - A - 442654  
pages 24 - 27

Case 6  
Defense

TRIBUNAL VI

Case VI

DOCUMENT BOOK D

for

Otto AMBROS

Presented by  
Counsel for the Defense

Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney

Geng



Copy of NI-Document 11943

High Command of the Wehrmacht  
No. 229/41 r

Berlin W 35, February 41  
Tirpitzufer 72/76

5/175

Secret.

To  
Herr Director Dr. AMBROS  
I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.

Ludwigshafen/Rhein

Dear Dr. AMBROS,

Please excuse me for not having replied to your letter dated 26 January before now. In the meantime frequent discussions have taken place between the Reichsmarschall and Generalfeldmarschall KEITEL with regard to the enclutche and Buna question; these discussions have also exercised some influence on the decision affecting Buna IV.

Meanwhile the following decision has been made; the installations will be built in Auschwitz in Upper Silesia. If you should still wish to discuss matters of personnel, I shall gladly put myself at your disposal some day next week. Perhaps you could arrange the day with my Adjutant, Major DOEBNER, over the telephone.

Heil Hitler

Yours Faithfully

Signed: Signature

Handwritten:  
noted 16 February 1941  
q tor Moor  
EISFELD

Certified a complete and correct copy of the original.

Munich, 11 May 1948

Signed: Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney

Copy of Document NI-11940

DOCUMENT BOOK B AMBROS  
O.S. Exhibit 221

High Command of the Army  
Commander of the Replacement  
Training Army  
66b 12 Zib W. J. Rao (Mar 3 To 2)

Berlin 7 35, 17 February 1942  
Tirpitzufer 72/76

5/436 Stamp  
Office Dr. AMBROS  
Received 20 February 1942  
N. 35

Stamp: Secret

Messrs.  
I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
for the attention of Director  
Dr. AMBROS or deputy

Ludwigshafen/Rhein

Subject: Labour requirements for the building project Montanwerk  
Auschwitz.

With regard to the above mentioned matter it is reported that, on  
17 February 1942, an agreement was reached between the Plenipotentiary  
General for special questions of chemical production and the High  
Command of the Army, Ordnance Inspectorate for Armament and Munitions  
(3), according to which the procurement of these workers, both for  
the I.G. Installations (fuel and buna) and the Montan-Installations  
will be taken over by General Plenipotentiary Chemistry. Thus, with  
regard to the allocation of labour, both installations will be treated  
as a single entity.

By order

Signed: Signature

Handwritten:  
A. Distribution list  
Stamp:  
Auschwitz (?) Marks

Certified a true copy of the original.

Nuremberg, 11 May 1948.

Signed: Karl HOFFMANN  
Attorney



DOCUMENT BOOK D AMBROS

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

1 July 1948

I, Audrey DOVEY, 20115, hereby certify that I am a duly appointed translator for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of the Document B. k D AMBROS.

Audrey DOVEY,  
No. 20115

CASE VI - TRIBUNAL VI

DEFENSE

AMBROS

Loose Copies of Documents separately distributed

English



Loose Copies of Documents  
Def. AMEROS

<u>Ambros Exh. No.</u>	<u>Doc. No.</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>
4	QA-4	Chart of monthly production
8	QA-8	Two pictures of plant shop at D.C. Monowitz
10	QA-10	Photos of Auschwitz inmates at work.
11	QA-11	Photos of Auschwitz inmates at work
12	QA-12	Schkopau Camp newspaper article
13	QA-13	Photo of French athletes at Schkopau
14	QA-14	Photo of French athletes team at Schkopau

Never distributed



NATIONAL ARCHIVES MICROFILM PUBLICATIONS

Roll 80

Target 2

Buergin(part)

1-5

NATIONAL ARCHIVES MICROFILM PUBLICATIONS

Case 6  
Defense

Military Tribunal No. VI

- Case 5 -

DOCUMENT BOOK I

for

Dr. Ernst HUNGER

-----  
Submitted by

Dr. Werner Schubert

Attorney-at-Law.

at present in Nurnberg  
-----

Gung





# INDEX

to

## Buergin Document Book I

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
<u>Character of the Defendant</u>			
42		Certificate of the Local Court of Frankfurt on Main dated 28 January 1948, recording the entry of Dr. Buergin in the Commercial Register: appointment as Deputy member of the Vorstand - powers of procura being withdrawn - on 15 January 1938, appointment as full Member of the Vorstand on 1 July 1938	1
20		Excerpt from Staub's Commentary on the Commercial Code: Paragraph 48 on the conferring of powers of procura, with explanations, in accordance with which a non-member of the Vorstand continues to be merely a Prokurist despite the conferring of the title of "Director".	2-3
44		Letter dated 26 February 1941 from the Commander of the Salla Defense Zone to Dr. Buergin, on his forthcoming appointment to the post of Military Economy Leader	4-5
43		Letter dated 2 September 1943 from Armaments Inspectorate XI b, Magdeburg, to the Directorate of I.G. Bitterfeld on Buergin's appointment to the post of Military Economy Leader	6
9		Affidavit by Fritz Frohr, Swiss Citizen, dated 4 December 1947: Dr. Buergin's censorious attitude towards National Socialism and the assistance rendered by him to persons subjected to political persecution, including the deponent of the affidavit himself.	7-10
56		Affidavit by Wilhelm Quack, dated 3 February 1948, in the support given to church and social welfare organizations by Dr. Buergin	11-13

# INDEX

to

Suergin Document Book I

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
----------	----------	----------	------

Connections with the Plenipotentiary  
General for Special Problems related  
to Chemical Production

- |   |  |   |  |
|---|--|---|--|
| 8 |  | Affidavit by Dr. Gerhard Ritter, dated 16 November 1947 on Suergin's connections with Frauch, the Plenipotentiary General for Special Problems related to Chemical Production, Suergin's work as Chief of the Technical Committee of a sub-section (Fachgruppe) of the Chemical Industry and his critical attitude thereto. |  |
|---|--|---|--|

# INDEX

to

## Buergin Document Book I

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
		"His work as consultant did not constitute even 1 % of his work as a whole."	14 - 15
		<u>Production of materials other than Magnesium</u>	
16		Affidavit by Dr. Bernhard Schoener dated 22 December 1947 on production in the Wolfen dyestuffs factory: dyestuffs, fertilizers, perfumes, cement, and on the production in one of the Reich-owned plants, of diglycol, phosgene, stabilizers, nitric acid etc. as ordered by the Wehrmacht. I.G.'s opposition to the manufacture of armaments.	19 - 25
69		Chart showing coloring distribution of I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft with affidavit by Karl von Heider, dated 31 January 1948. The chart shows the distribution of the coloring produced by the I.G. in 1934 and 1940, namely consumption within the I.G. and amounts sold to customers outside the firm. Peace-time planning for the distribution of coloring shows that all the coloring produced will be required to meet peace-time demands, even allowing for considerable increases in production.	27
3		Affidavit by Heinrich Baileaux, dated 20 November 1947 on the independence of the Bitterfeld aluminum works. The contribution made by the Bitterfeld works to Germany's total aluminum output varied from 1933 onwards, from 14.8 % to 18.1 % of the whole, and of this, one half can be attributed to the I.G. as partner.	28-30
		<u>Spying</u>	
50		Affidavit by Wilhelm von der Hey, dated 18 January 1948 on the information given by him in 1939 to General Loeb on British magnesium factories (Prosecution Exhibit 924, Document Book 49, English version, Page 93, German version, Page 128). Dr. Buergin had no knowledge of this information.	31

# INDEX

to -

## Buergin Document Book I

Exh.No.	Doc.No.	Document	Page
	81	Affidavit by Wilhelm von der Bey, dated 18 January 1946, being the explanation of the preceding document. Having examined the plans for the British magnesium works, the Reich Air Ministry raised no objection to its construction by I.G. experts, nor did they demand information on the subject prior to the outbreak of war.	33-33
		<u>Spoliation and Plunder</u>	
	4	Affidavit by Heinz Mayer-Wegelin, dated 11 November 1947 on the large quantities of machines and apparatus supplied by the I.G. to the AERON works of the NORDISK LUTHPALL, and on the supplementary ration of vegetables which it was planned to provide for the Norwegian building workers.	34-35
	64	Affidavit by Karl von Heider dated 30 January 1948 on the foundation, activities and dissolution of the Soda- und Alkali-Gesellschaft, from 1941 to 1944. The I.G. neither bought, undertook to administer as trustee, nor operated, the two Russian soda factories run by the Company. It drew no profit whatsoever from the Company, and removed nothing from its factories.	36-52

Order for making corrections filed after this page.

UNITED STATES MILITARY TRIBUNAL VI  
SITTING IN THE PALACE OF JUSTICE, NURNBERG, GERMANY  
22 JULY 1948

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA :

vs. :

CARL KRAUCH, et al., :

Defendants. :

Case No. 6

ORDER

The Prosecution and the Defense have joined in a joint motion to make certain corrections in the official mimeographed copies of the English document books of the Defendants Moerlein, von Krierem, Gattineau, Oster and Ruergin, and in Defense Document Book DEORUCH I, which said motion is in the nature of a stipulation and is dated 9 July 1948.

The Tribunal hereby approves said stipulation and the corrections contained therein are ordered to be made.

s/ CURTIS G. SHARR  
Presiding Judge

s/ PAUL W. HUBERT  
Judge

s/ JAMES MORGAN  
Judge

Dated this 22nd day of July 1948

Certified true copy.

*Barbara Skinner Mandell*  
Barbara Skinner Mandell  
Chief, Court Archives



Copy  
-----

7 FEB 400

Certificate.  
-----

By virtue of the entry in the local Commercial Register and the documents submitted for the registration records, it is herewith certified that the chemist, Dr. phil. Ernst Buergin of Bitterfeld was appointed as deputy member of the Vorstand (Board) as from 1 January 1938. The entry in the register was effected by simultaneously cancelling his power of procuration as from 15 January 1938. The said person was entered as ordinary Vorstand member on 1 July 1938.

Frankfort on Main, 28 January 1948

Lower Court  
Section 7

signed: Leber, Inspector of Justice  
in his capacity as Solicitor

Seal.

Issued.

signed: Lechner, Legal Clerk  
in his capacity as Document Official  
of the Office.

Charges: Fee according to per. 82 RO. RM 11.-  
Copying-fee                      " 1.-  
                                     RM 12.-

-----

It is hereby certified that this is a true and correct copy of the above document.

Buerberg, 2 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel for the defendant  
Buergin.

Excerpt from:

Staub's commentary on the Commercial Legal Code  
14th Edition

elaborated by Dr. jur. h.c. Albert Pinner, Justizrat  
(Counsellor of Justice)  
Dr. Felix Bondi, Gehelmer Justizrat  
(Privy Counsellor of Justice)  
Wilhelm Gellow, Reichsgerichtsrat (Supreme  
Appellate Court Counsellor)  
Dr. Eduard Weisichen, Reichsgerichtsrat  
(Supreme Appellate Court Counsellor)

First Volume (Par. Par. 1 - 177)

Introduction and par. par. 1 - 104 elaborated by  
Gen. Justizrat (Privy Counsellor of Justice) Dr.  
Felix Bondi

(Quotation method: Staub-Bondi)

Par. Par. 105 - 177 elaborated by Justizrat  
Dr. h. c. Albert Pinner

(Quotation method: Staub-Pinner)

Berlin and Leipzig 1932

Walter de Gruyter & Co., formerly G.J. Goeschen'sche  
Verlagsbuchhandlung (Publishers) - J. Guttentag  
Verlagsbuchhandlung (Publishers) - Georg Reimer  
Karl J. Trubner - Veit & Comp.

(Available at the Library of the Nuernberg-Fuerth Provincial Court  
P.V.J. V H 6)

.....

Page 300:

Fifth Section.

Procuration (Prokura) and "Handlungsvollmacht".

Par. 48

Procuration can be granted only by the owner of a business  
undertaking or by his legal representative, and only by way of a  
specific declaration.

It may be granted to several persons in common (joint  
procuration).

.....

1st remark. Preface relative to fifth section. The fifth section  
deals with the deputy according to the Commercial Code, the sixth  
section with the commercial clerk. In the fifth section the juridical  
representation, the power of attorney to act as deputy for the head of  
the firm in closing legal business contracts, are dealt with, and in  
the sixth section the contents of the contract of engagement.

.....

Page 301:

2nd remark. 1) The conception of procuration. The law quite rightly

(page 2 of original)

refrains from giving a definition. The procuration comes under the general term of "Handlungsvollmacht" (compare Supreme Court of Judicature in the Weekly Legal Periodical, Edition 1927, page 2433). Thus the proxy-holder is the agent and not the lawful representative of the head of the firm (Supreme Appellate Court 66, 244, Supreme Court of Judicature in JFG (?) 5, 338; compare Appendix concerning Par. 58, 1st remark).

.....

3rd remark. 2) To whom may procuration be granted? WHO CAN BECOME A PROXY - HOLDER? Any person to whom power of attorney can be given, may become a proxy-holder (Par. 54, 2nd remark; Appendix to Par. 58, remark 23); in accordance with the object of the law, however, only an individual (not a legal entity).

.....

.....In an AG. (Joint Stock Company) a member of the Vorstand (Board) cannot at the same time be a proxy-holder. But frequently the title of "Betriebsdirektor" (plant director) or "stellvertretender Direktor" (deputy director) or a similar title is given to a proxy-holder; in spite of this title, he still remains a proxy-holder. Such titles should not be entered in the Commercial Register (see also directives of the Saxonian Ministry of Justice, dated 14 January 1907 to the Lower Court in Dresden relative to Rega 10448 of the Commercial Register; compare also appendix to Par. 8, remark 5); they might be misleading and create the impression that the proxy-holder is a member of the Vorstand (Board).

.....

-----

12

It is hereby certified that this is a true and correct copy of the above document.

Muernberg, 26 January 1948 signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel for the Defendant  
Buergin.

Copy

SECRET  
-----

Office for the Allocation of  
Armament Orders for the Halle -  
District of the Armament Inspec-  
torate of the IVth Military Area

Halle, (Saale) 26 Feb. 1941  
Friedrichstr. 51  
Telephone: 33740, 33741,  
31231

Daybook No. 1517/41 secret, Group I Tres/ds.

Reference: none

Subject: Appointment as Military Economy Leader (Wehrwirtschafts-  
fuhrer - W Wi Fue.)

Please quote in reply.  
Enclosures: 7

To  
Director Dr. Buergin  
c/o I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.

Bitterfeld  
-----

It is intended to nominate you for the appointment of Military  
Economy Leader (W Wi Fue).

Military Economy Leaders are responsible cooperators with the  
Wehrmacht in preparing the mobilization of the armament industry  
and in guiding the industry in time of war.

You are requested to fill in all details carefully in the attached  
questionnaires and forms and to return them here as soon as possible  
with all the details asked for.

Enclosures: 1) Index showing what documents have to be submitted,  
2) Application  
3) Questionnaire  
4) Enclosures to questionnaire  
5) Declaration on Free Mason membership  
6) " " a clean police record  
7) " " political attitude.

When filling in the forms please note also the following:

1) the enclosures asked for in the questionnaire itself  
should be attached.

(page 2 of original)

The statement of career, which is requested under figure 20a, may be submitted in typed form,

- 2) in the declaration on Free Mason membership delete anything that does not apply. (it is not sufficient to strike it through).

The latest date for sending in the forms is 3 March 1941.

This Office requests you to send in immediately your personal particulars (family and Christian name - underline the name by which you are known - profession, domicile, street and house number) to enable us to pass on these details immediately to the Inspectorate.

signed: signature illegible    Ta F  
Colonel and Commander.

Secret

- 1) This is a secret matter within the meaning of Article 88 of the Reich Penal Code.
- 2) To be transmitted only under cover; if sent by post, to be registered.
- 3) To be kept, at the responsibility of addressee, under lock and key.

- - - -

It is hereby certified that this is a true and correct copy of the above document.

Muenberg, 3 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel for the defendant  
Buergin.



Copy -

3 submit to B.  
initials illegible

ARMAMENT INSPECTORATE XIIb  
of the Reich Minister for  
Armaments and Munitions.

Magdeburg, 2 Sept. 1943  
13 Zuckerbusch  
Telephone: 33713-15  
App. 14

File No. 62-1-  
Z. I a

No. 4967/43  
AP. 27.a.

Subject: Military Economy Leader Corps

Hubber-stamp:  
Bitterfeld Secretariat  
received 3 Sept. 43  
reply .....

Reference: Letter of 27 July 1943

To the  
Board of Directors  
of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.  
Bitterfeld

The Vorstand (Board) member of your company

Herr Direktor Dr. Ernst Buergin

has been appointed as Military Economy Leader by the Reich Minister  
of Economics and thus belongs to the Military Economy Leader Corps  
of the Magdeburg Regional Economic Office (Landeswirtschaftsamt).  
Dr. Buergin's name has been recorded as Military Economy Leader in  
the lists of that Office.

By designation

signed: Frohwein

Tr/Sy

T

It is hereby certified that this is a true and correct copy of  
the above document.

Muenberg, 2 February 1943

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert

Defense Counsel for the defendant

Buergin

- C O P Y -

- Affidavit -

I, the undersigned, Fritz Foehr, certified chemist and engineer, born on 20 July 1917 in Vienna, Swiss citizen from Basel-City, resident in Zurich, Fliederstr.22, Zurich 6, herewith make the following statement to be submitted to the Military Tribunal, Palace of Justice, Nuremberg:

1. I have known Dr. Baergin in his capacity as Generaldirector of the I.G.Farbenindustrie Werke, Bitterfeld, since 1940, when I took up my position at the I.G.Farbenindustrie, Bitterfeld plant. Dr. Baergin was my direct superior up to the time I left the firm in June 1944. Throughout the whole of this period he was, in my opinion, a loyal superior to both foreign and German employees, who, despite the fact that he was an official member of the NSDAP, was extremely critical of National-Socialism. Dr. Baergin retained this critical attitude during the whole period, although it meant endangering his own person, both politically and economically.

2. When in 1941 I was denounced because of my generally known critical attitude towards the regime, and later on when an investigation was made by the Secret Police at Bitterfeld and Halle as well as the Kreisleitung of the NSDAP Bitterfeld, it was due exclusively to Dr. Baergin's personal intervention that this investigation was dropped without any adverse consequences to me.

3. On 28 February 1944 I was again denounced for the same reasons,

and the informers also attacked Dr. Buergin, reproaching him for having wrongfully covered me in 1941. During the investigation, which lasted several months, Dr. Buergin again took my part, in spite of the increased danger in which he found himself. I owe it to him alone that on 1 June 1944 I was acquitted by the Special Court Halle (Document No. 2a/36 Ja/386/44) of the charge of seditious activities. Immediately after these proceedings I gave up my position as chemist at the I.G.. But again it was only due to Dr. Buergin's help that I was able to leave Germany unmolested.

4. I know from my own experience that in the years 1941 to 1944 Dr. Buergin in several other cases, in which the same accusations were made against foreign and German employees of the I.G. Farbenindustrie, stood up for these people. These people owe it to Dr. Buergin's intervention alone that they were acquitted or at least got away lightly.

I, Fritz Boehr, dipl. chem. & ing. Zurich 6, Fliegerstr. 22, after having first been warned that I am liable to punishment for making false statements, state herewith under oath and of my own free will the following, being aware of the fact, that my statements are to be submitted to the Military Tribunal, Palace of Justice, Nurnberg.

Zurich, December 4th 1947

signed: Fritz Boehr  
(Fritz Boehr, dipl. chem.)

Legalization  
-----

Seen for legalization of the above signature given in my presence  
by Mr. Friedrich FUER, a citizen of Basel, Switzerland, re-  
siding at Zurich, Fliederstrasse 22.

Zurich, December 4th, 1947

No. 16420, Fr. 2.-,

Notariat Zurich (Altstadt)

(Seal) signed Signature (illegible)

Seen for legalization

Zurich, 4 December 1947

Chancery of State

(Seal) signed Dr. Moesch  
(Dr. O. Moesch)

Control No. 5622  
Tax Fr. 5.-

Confederation of Switzerland }  
Canton and City of Zurich }  
Consulate General of the } ...  
United States of America }

Eugene W. Nabel, Vice Consul of the United States of America at  
Zurich, Switzerland, duly commissioned and qualified, do hereby  
certify that Oscar Moesch, whose name is subscribed to the fore-  
going paper, was at the time of subscribing the name Secretary of  
the State Chancery, Canton of Zurich, Confederation of Switzer-  
land, duly appointed and qualified, to whose official acts faith  
and credit are due.

In testimony whereof I have hereto subscribed my name and  
affixed the seal of the Consulate General this fourth day of  
December, 1947.

signed: Eugene W. Nabel  
(Eugene W. Nabel)  
(Consul of the United States of America,  
at Zurich, Switzerland)

Service No. 4040  
.....\$ 2.00 or Frs. 8.80

Stamp

Buergin-Document No. 9  
B.-Exhibit No.....

I herewith certify that this is a true and correct copy of  
the above document.

Nuremberg, 19 January 1948 \*

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the  
Defendant Buergin



- C o p y -

Affidavit

I, Wilhelm QUACK, born on 4 October 1876 at Ueberruhr near  
Essen, domiciled at Hahnenklee near Goslar, have been warned that  
I shall be liable to punishment for making a false statement.

I herewith declare under oath that my statement is true and  
was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military  
Tribunal No. VI - Case 6 - at the Palace of Justice, Muensterberg,  
Germany.

I should like to state that I was at no time a member of the  
NSDAP, as I was a Protestant. In my capacity as plant manager of  
the power-station of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Bitterfeld I was  
for a number of years, until I was pensioned off, directly subordinate  
to the director of the Bitterfeld plant, Dr. Ernst HUEGIN.

During my time of service at Bitterfeld I did a certain amount  
of church and welfare work on behalf of our staff.

For instance, I founded our own Evangelical-Lutheran parish  
for those employees and workers who lived in the <sup>plant</sup> new settlements  
located around the plant. Dr. Gustav PISTER, who was at that time  
director of our plant, granted this parish considerable financial  
support on behalf of the firm, <sup>after</sup> Dr. PISTER had been pensioned off,

His successor, Dr. Ernst BUERGIN, confirmed this financial support to the parish to the same extent, although, as far as I remember, he did not belong to the same confession. He even extended this help by getting the firm to pay for the costs of a parish nurses center, as well as the costs of a parish Kindergarten. These were useful institutions which the parish members could not afford to keep up by their own means. The staff of the plant on many occasions showed their appreciation of Dr. BUERGIN's interest in church and welfare questions, by sending him votes of thanks through the parish church committee and on behalf of the population.

When in the Bitterfeld industrial area unemployment became worse I set up work rooms for young unemployed workers. Dr. BUERGIN also took a great interest in this welfare work. He put several empty rooms on the factory site at my disposal and supported me with considerable funds, partly from his own pocket. Besides the funds which he made available to pay the salaries of the teachers who undertook the training, he also provided material and tools from factory stocks. This training saved about 500 young unemployed workers from falling into despair and becoming an easy prey to subversive radical elements.

I set up re-training workshops for a large number of these unemployed young workers.

for settlers and emigrants, and in this too Dr. BUECHIN gave me his support. He suggested giving assistance to the settlers by word and deed in their new homes until they could support themselves to some extent. For this purpose he set up a supervisory council (Kuratorium) in which he took over the main work.

Without Dr. BUECHIN's warm-hearted support I would have been unable to create and maintain the manifold church and welfare institutions.

Hahnorklee, 3 February 1948

signed: Wilhelm Quack

I herewith certify that the above is the signature of Mr. Wilhelm Quack.

signed: The Burgomaster of the municipality Hahnorklee.

Seal

By designation

signed: Schulze 5 February 1948

Stamp: RM -.50  
Municipality Hahnorklee-Bockswiese  
(Oberhars)

I herewith certify that this is a true and correct copy of the above document.

Nuremberg, 11 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Council of the Defendant  
BUECHIN

C o p y

A f f i d a v i t .

I, Dr. Phil. (Ph.D.) Gerhard R i t t e r , born 27 November 1902 in Berlin-Charlottenburg, at present in Nuremberg prison, have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement. I declare on oath that my statement is true and that it was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal, Case VI, in the Palace of Justice in Nuremberg, Germany.

I have been a member of the NSDAP since about the 1 May 1941. I held no party office and did not belong to any of the party's affiliations.

From 1926 on I was employed by the I.G. Farbenindustrie as a laboratory chemist in Oppau. Prof. K r a u c h was at that time head of the Oppau works. In 1934 Prof. Krauch became member of the Vorstand of the REAG (Braunkohlen - Benzol - Aktiengesellschaft), a company which had been formed at the instigation of Schacht, and which was a compulsory association of all owners of lignite mines, including also the I.G. Krauch opened a small office in Berlin at that time and sent me there as a kind of secretary. As I remained an employee of the I.G., for the sake of form I was assigned to the "Department Office", a sales division of the I.G. In reality, however, I worked on technical problems for Krauch, as member of the Vorstand of the REAG. My office was in the building of the Lenderbank, which housed the organisation Berlin No. 7 of the I.G. When in the fall of 1935 the Vermittlungsstelle W was established, I was transferred to this office to handle the affairs of Sparte I and at first I worked alone on any matters which cropped up there; later Dr. E c k e l joined me.

As far as I remember, Krauch started work as an expert on raw materials problems in about May 1936 on the Raw Material

and Foreign Exchange Staff of Colonel L o e b, and he took me along as his secretary. It was there that the preliminary work was done in the way of planning to make the German economy independent in various fields raw materials, in preparation for the subsequent Four Year Plan, which at that time was of course not yet known. The Office for German Raw and Industrial Materials was established in about the summer of 1937. Prof. Krauch's task in this office was to deal with research and development in all chemical fields. From May 1936 on I had no longer any contact with the internal affairs of the I.G., although I was still considered as their employee, and in 1941 was appointed as a "Prokurist."

At about the beginning of 1938 - if I remember rightly it was after L o b had left - , the Office for German Raw and Industrial Materials was transformed into the Reich Office for Economic Development, and came under the Reich Ministry of Economics. The head of the Reich Office was G e i m e l t s e ; Prof. Krauch's position and mine remained the same. I stayed on as technical secretary to Krauch.

In addition to that, Krauch was appointed in the summer of 1938 as Plenipotentiary General for Special Problems of Chemical Production (GKChemie). In this capacity he made use of the organization of the Reich Office for Economic Development. The allegedly general powers of Krauch, however, were soon considerably restricted, especially through the setting up of the Ministry for Armaments and War Production. "Plenipotentiary General" was only a fine title; it would have been more correct to call him "Expert General". Krauch's office had authority only for the planning and building; the regulation of production, as well as the plans for mobilization and the distribution of production were relegated to the authority of the Economic Group Chemical Industry which handled production orders also during the war. In my



position I had little immediate contact with the Economic Group.

I have known Dr. Buergin since the time of my activity on the Raw Materials and Foreign Exchange Staff. I saw him on my occasional visits in Bitterfeld, on the average about once a year, when I visited him as the manager of the plant before inspecting the factory. Afterwards he had me guided by specialists through the factory or through the new extensions which had been built at the instigation of the Reich Office. When Krauch became GBChem, he occasionally consulted, among the many other experts from the chemical industry, also Dr. Buergin as an expert for problems concerning chlorine. I saw Dr. Buergin about two or three times with Krauch and I know that he was called to Berlin very seldom. This work as a consultant did not take up even one per cent. of his entire activity. <sup>(It was</sup> ~~as a rule his place in the office was taken by~~ Dr. VORLAENDER <sup>who came into the office rather than he.</sup> from Bitterfeld, who was also an expert on chlorine. I do not know precisely how often he went to Berlin. The designation of Buergin as an "honorary consultant" to the GBChem (as used by Ilgner in Document NI-6713, Exhibit 512) is in any event restricted to the occasional conferences on the subject of chlorine. It was obvious that Krauch, within the wide scope of his activities, had to make occasional use of the services of specialists in industry. The "Contact with Krauch", which is mentioned by Ilgner in Document NI-6544, Exhibit 377, was, as already mentioned, a very superficial one.

Dr. Buergin was not considered by the Office of Krauch and by myself as a "specialist for light metals", (according to the explanation of ter Meer in Document NI-5181). Experts from the Vereinigte Aluminiumwerke were consulted as specialists for light metals.

The Economic Group Chemistry was a professional body composed of firms in the chemical industry,

it was a subdivision of the Reich Group Industry. The Economic Group was absolutely independent from the GBChe and, as intimated above, had entirely different tasks. In order to ensure, however, the uniform treatment of problems connected with planning which originated at the GBChe and of the problems connected with production- and consumption which were dealt with by the Economic Group, Dr. Krouch and the business manager of the Economic Group, Dr. U n g e w i t t e r , agreed sometime during the war, that the same persons should deal with the same field of raw materials. Thus divergent decisions were prevented. This explains why in Document NI-5934, Exhibit 478 the so-called "commissioners" (Fachbeauftragten) of the GBChe in July 1943, <sup>were/</sup>designated at the same time as chiefs of the Technical Committee of the respective sub-section (Fachgruppe) of the Economic Group. According to this list, which was shown to me, Dr. B u e r g i n was one of the 73 "Fachbeauftragten" of the GBChe, designated in the documents of the preceding years as "honorary consultant", namely for chlorine and caustic soda plants.- and at the same time chief of the Technical Committee of the corresponding sub-section. The fact that a second man, Dr. Varlander from Bitterfeld, is named as being under him, shows that Dr. Buergin had not been active very often in this capacity.

As to how far Dr. Buergin participated in the tasks of the sub-section at that late stage of the war, I cannot say, because he was first and foremost occupied with <sup>his</sup> own worries as a manager of plants.

The attitude of Dr. Buergin toward all these exaggerated organizations, with which one is beset, especially during a war, is best shown by the fact that Dr. Buergin in his discussions with me never restrained himself when criticizing German politics and especially the war. It is true that his criticisms were restricted - at that time one could do no more than that - to a few plainly spoken words when alone, but they showed his true attitude which was particularly

critical and sarcastic.

Nuremberg, 15 November 1947

signed : Dr. Gerhard Ritter

I herewith certify the above signature of Dr. Gerhard Ritter,  
at the present time in Nuremberg, which was rendered in my,  
Wolfgang Theobald's Assistant Defense Counsel for the Military  
Tribunal No. VI, presence.

Nuremberg, 15 November 1947

signed : Wolfgang Theobald.

I hereby certify that the above is true and correct copy .

Nuremberg, 5 January 1948

signed :

Dr. Werner Schubert,

Defense Counsel for the Defendant Burgin.

Copy

Affidavit

I, Dr. phil. Bernhard Schoener, born 30 May 1884 in Freyburg/Unstrut, domiciled in Ober-Ranstadt, Landkreis Darmstadt, have had my attention drawn to the fact that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement on oath. I declare on oath that my testimony corresponds to the truth, and that it was made in order to be presented as evidence before Military Tribunal No. VI in the Palace of Justice, Nurnberg, Germany.

- 1) I was a member of the NSDAP from 1 May 1937 onwards. I did not hold any Party office. From the end of 1934 I was a supporting member of the SS; I did not belong to any other Party organizations.

On 1 Jan. 1910 I entered the Wolfen Dye Factory of the Aktien-gesellschaft fuer Anilinfabrikation as a laboratory chemist. Since this date I have been continuously employed at the Wolfen Dye Factory. I became Foreman there on 1 April 1927, and factory manager on 1 March 1936 in succession to Dr. May. Dr. May was 100% Jewish, but in spite of this had been kept in office by Dr. Pistor up to then; after that he was still employed in Wolfen until 1938 in a scientific capacity, in spite of the fact that the Party and the Works Council constantly persecuted Dr. Pistor as well as Dr. Buergin and myself on account of the continued employment of Dr. May. Dr. May went to England in 1938 where he is now on the Board of Directors of ICI. I remained factory manager of Wolfen-Parben until the collapse of Germany, that is, until I was removed on 22 June 1945 by the U.S. Military Government.



2) The Wolfen Dye Factory produced primarily dyestuffs. After the first World War the factory was developed on the inorganic side, and subsequently also produced the acids for the dyestuffs. During the first World War an ammonia combustion apparatus was set up for the production of nitric acid and fertilisers, so that after the war fertilisers were produced in considerable quantities. The ammonia was obtained from Leuna. Wolfen-Farben also manufactured perfumes and photographic developers, and had a cement factory with a daily output of 500 tons, a factory which, along with other factories, has now been dismantled by the Russian occupation forces. In the second World War the production of the raw materials for washing agents was taken up as a substitute for fatty acid. The close connection with the Bitterfeld works dates only from 1930 after the founding of the Central German Works Combine.

3) On the subject of the production of primary products for the manufacture of explosives in Wolfen-Farben, I can state the following:

To begin with, trinitroanisol, an explosive used in particular by the navy, was produced during the First World War at the request of the military authorities. This was in violation of the law regulating Trade and Industry (Gewerbeordnung) in that production of this substance in the neighbourhood of other factories and important communications was too dangerous. When the Army Ordnance Branch, in the course of rearmament, again approached the factory with similar requests, this demand was flatly refused, on the grounds that Wolfen-Farben was not suitable for an explosives factory. The Navy later abandoned the idea of using Trinitroanisol. On the other hand, during the Second World War, Dinitroanisol was produced in the factory at the request of the Army Ordnance Branch, this being a preliminary product needed by the Wehrmacht for certain explosive mixtures.



The Allied Control Commission after the First World War

raised no objection to the plant in which the Trinitroanisol was produced, since preliminary products for sulphur and azo dyestuffs were produced in the same factory, mainly for export to China.

- 4) Glykol and Diglykol were produced in Wolfen-Farben from 1937 onwards at the request of the Army Ordnance Branch, in a plant which was set up after 1936. The Army Ordnance Branch official (Referent) who knew the factory from the First World War, wanted to force the Wolfen and Bitterfeld factories to undertake the production of various munition products, among which were also the preliminary products of irritants, poison gas, and trinitroanisol. Production was always refused, on the above-mentioned grounds, by my predecessor Dr. Kay in fact, who finally had to agree to the production of Diglykol. The works and the I.G. opposed the demands of the Army Ordnance Branch because no peace-time application of such products could be foreseen, and because the best chemists and <sup>skilled workers</sup> ~~artisans~~ would have had to be taken from the main factories and re-trained. To I.G.'s regret, this also happened in the case of the plant for intermediate products, built finally at the expense of the Reich, which the I.G. lease from the Montan, a company switched over by the Reich and in which they had to manufacture, among other things, Diglykol. The contract covering the construction and management of this plant was never drawn up or signed by either parties.

- 5) Negotiations took place in 1935 with the Army Ordnance Branch on the subject of the production of acetylphenol, also called Omegsalz, a preliminary product ~~of another preliminary product~~ of tear gas, but they did not even get as far as drawing up a construction plan. A production plant was never built nor was production ever taken up.

- 6) Phosgene had already been produced by the Bitterfeld plant in peacetime, as far as I know, for formic acid, that is, a purely peacetime product. The Army Ordnance Branch (K4) (Dr.ZAHN), also demanded that phosgene should be produced in the State-owned Z-Factory in Wolfen. It thus came about that the production of phosgene was taken up there in September 1939, primarily for stabilizers. In 1940/41, small numbers of flying bombs, delivered from upper Silesia, were filled in the plant with phosgene; this however was abandoned soon afterwards as such bombs were never used. Phosgene was however still necessary for stabilizers.
- 7) The capacity for the Verdinger Werks had been quite sufficient to meet the peacetime needs of the Wehrmacht and of export where stabilizers were concerned. After 1935 however, the Army Ordnance Branch demanded the setting-up of an alternative plant for the Verdinger plant, since the latter was in danger because of its frontier position, and the formation of a capacity reserve in Central Germany, and therefore had a stabilizer plant built in the state-owned Wolfen factory. This plant was completed just at the beginning of the war, and was coping with its own initial troubles in the first war months. It had been conceived as a stand-by plant, and would not have started up if the Second World War had not broken out at that time.
- 8) In 1938, in accordance with the Four Year Plan, the first part of a plant for <sup>sulphuric acid from</sup> calcium sulphate (Gipseschwefelsäure) had started up production, with the object of obviating the import of foreign iron pyrites. It was also rendered necessary by the increased demand for sulphuric acid in the cellulose <sup>wood</sup> industry - produced among other things in the Wolfen-Film factory - and for cement. The production of <sup>sulphuric acid from</sup> calcium sulphate has no connection with war preparations.

- 9) Although Losantin, a spraying agent, was produced in Bitterfeld very few arms decontamination agents were produced in Welfen-Farben for the Wehrmacht of that time after about 1935. At the request of the Army Ordnance Branch, arms decontamination agents were however produced during the war on a larger scale in the state-owned plant.
- 10) Picric acid had always been produced in Welfen-Farben for use in connection with dyestuffs, and delivered to various I.G. factories for that purpose. In 1925 or thereabouts, a certificate from the German Foreign Office was procured by the I.G., to the effect that picric acid in a moist state, as produced in Welfen, was not an explosive, and that its production was not a violation of the Treaty of Versailles. Then in 1936 the Reinsdorf explosives factory of theomag nearittenberg was involved in an explosion, the I.G. declined to produce pure picric acid as a supplementary measure in Welfen-Farben, but declared themselves prepared for the time being to increase the production of crude moist picric acid, and delivered excess production to the DAG Kruemmel Werke, where the picric acid was purified and thus made suitable for explosives. I remember that Dr.ter Meer, who in many conferences always spoke with decision against the extension of I.G. for armament production, also declined to produce pure picric acid.
- 11) Ever since the First World War, highly concentrated nitric  
hydrochloric acid had been produced in Welfen. In the post-war period production of highly concentrated nitric-hydrochloric acid (Hckc) was confined to the scant demands for the production of intermediate products for dyestuffs. Besides, nitro-hydrochloric acid in diluted form for fertilising agents, mainly calcium nitrate of ammonia, was used (daily production on an average

30 freight cars). In the Second World War, the production of Hoko in one of the Wolfen plants belonging to the Wifo was considerably increased. I know that at the present moment nitro-~~hydrochloric~~ acid is only produced in Wolfen-Farben for explosives.

12) Nitrate of ammonia was only produced as a temporary measure by Wolfen-Farben in the Second World war, and delivered to shell-filling installations. The delivery orders came from the Nitrogen Syndicate in Berlin.

13) On the question of the warehousing and storage of preliminary products connected with explosives the following may be said: The stabilizers which were first produced during the war, were always transported elsewhere immediately. For diglycol a store house was necessary during the war, because of the irregular demands on it. Since, however, the I.G. did not have aluminum containers at their disposal for this purpose, the Army Ordnance Branch built a small store house with aluminum containers on a state-owned site in 1940. All other preliminary products were delivered and removed immediately. The I.G. punctiliously avoided storing preliminary products in the dyes factory or in its neighbourhood.

14) The areginal which according to an I.G. Wolfen Farben Prosecution Document was delivered to Degesch, is an agent for the destruction of the corn-beetle and was <sup>and distilled in Wolfen</sup> manufactured in Ludwigshafen and placed on the market. areginal is the trade name for methyl formate. The agent was distributed by the <sup>Insecticide department</sup> ~~Pest Control Station~~ in Leverkusen to people not personally known to me who were owners of large corn silos, and similar corn store houses, which were treated with the gas. The Mag in Brunswick built the apparatus for the use of areginal. From about 1929 onwards production amounted to roughly 20 to 30 tons per month on the average, according to the available corn in individual years.



- 15) While dyestuffs and later also chemicals were sold from Frankfurt/Main, the Leverkusen organization distributed the ~~pest~~ <sup>insecticides</sup> ~~control agents~~; Berlin sold the perfumes, and the cement was sold according to the I.G. quota, by the German Cement Association. For the Wolfen Dye Factory and myself as its manager, the sales aspect was a matter of indifference. I knew the customers for our products only in the dyes field, and even there only some of them.
- 16) As already explained under 4), I, as well as my predecessor Dr. May, constantly strove against being burdened with armament products which were foreign to the whole character of the dyes factory. I occasionally, as a last resort, put forward the excessively high cost estimates, to prevent the factory having a new armaments product imposed upon it. When Dr. Buergin in 1938 became head of the Central German Works Combine, and thus also my superior, he was up against accomplished facts, as far as armaments production was concerned, for the arrangements and constructions for such products, wherever they did not arise for the first time during the war, had been <sup>finished</sup> ~~decided~~ at the beginning of 1938. With his special interest in the sphere of chemistry, in particular electrolysis, Dr. Buergin had, like myself, an expert in dyes, no interest or sympathy at all for this side line of armament production. Our modest contribution to rearmament could not induce either Dr. Buergin or myself to believe that a war of aggression was in the planning.

Ingersoll, 22 December 1947

signed: Bernhard Schoener



Document R. No. 1562

I herewith certify the genuineness of the signature on page  
1,2,3,4,5 and 6, of Dr. phil. Bernhard Schoener, chemist, of  
Ober-Ramstadt and Tegernsee, who today signed in my presence.

Tegernsee, the twenty-second of December nineteen hundred and  
forty-seven.

( Seal )

Signed: F. Soemer, Notary  
( Franz Soemer )

Notary Fee Regulation No. 1562

Notary fee, Par. 39  
Turnover tax

RM 4.-  
RM -. 12  
-----  
RM 4. 12

signed: F. Soemer, Notary

Certified to be a true and literal copy of the above document.

Munich, 20 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Werner Schabert  
Defense Counsel of Defendant  
Buergin

CHLORINE DISTRIBUTION OF I.G. FARBENINDUSTRIE

ANTHROPOLOGISCHE

1934\_ Erzeugung - Total produced Verbrauch - Total consumed

Salzsäure	Hydrochloric acid
Bleichmittel	Bleaching agents
Losantin	Losantin
Metalle	Metals
AlCl <sub>3</sub>	Aluminum chloride
Sonst. Anorgan.	Miscellaneous inorganic substances
Oxyd	Oxide
Lösungsmittel	Solvents
Chlorbenzol	Chlorobenzene
Sonst. Organ.	Miscellaneous organic products
Kunden	Supplied to customers
Vernichtung	Destroyed in processing

1940\_

Total produced: 246,000  
 Stocks in hand, excess supplies returned from consumers and  
 supplies received from outside firms: 7,000  
 Total consumed: 253,000

Salzsäure	Hydrochloric acid
Bleichmittel	Bleaching agents
Losantin	Losantin
Metalle	Metals
AlCl <sub>3</sub>	Aluminum chloride
Sonst. Anorgan.	Miscellaneous inorganic products
Ethylenoxyd	Ethylene oxide
Lösungsmittel	Solvents
Kunststoffe	Plastics
Chlorbenzol	Chlorobenzene
Mercel	Mercel
Sonst. Organ.	Miscellaneous organic products
Kunden	Supplied to customers
Vernichtung	Destroyed in processing

Production Statistics  
 (Future)

Production Potential: 410,000  
 Demand : 375,000

Salzsäure	Hydrochloric acid
Bleichmittel	Bleaching agents
Losantin	Losantin
Metalle	Metals
AlCl <sub>3</sub>	Aluminum chloride
Sonst. Anorgan.	Miscellaneous inorganic products
Ethylenoxyd	Ethylene oxide
(davon Huels - of which ... were supplied to Huels)	
Lösungsmittel	Solvents

Kunststoffe	Plastics
Chlorbenzol	Chlorobenzene
Kerosol	Kerosol
Sonst. Organ.	Miscellaneous organic products
Kunden	Supplied to customers

I, Karl von HEIDER, at present living at Frankfurt on Main, Grillparzerstrasse 83, German citizen, having been duly advised that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false statement and that the chart "Coloring Distribution of I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft" is to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal, Nuremberg, herewith depose the following on oath, of my own free will and without coercion: The chart is taken from the files of I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft.

Frankfurt on Main, 31 January 1943

Signature: Karl v. Heider  
KARL V. HEIDER

I herewith certify and attest the <sup>authenticity of the/</sup> above signature of Herr Karl von HEIDER, living at Frankfurt on Main, Grillparzerstrasse 83, which was appended here in my presence on 31 January 1943.

Frankfurt on Main, 31 January 1943

Signature:

Dr. Horner Schubert  
(Defense Counsel in Case VI of the  
Military Tribunal, Nuremberg)

- 2 -

It is herewith certified that the above is a true photostatic copy of the original document.

Mueraberg, 17 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Counsel for the Defense of the Defendant  
Suergin.

Copy

Affidavit

I, Heinrich ESULBAU, born on 1 January 1891 in Breslau, domiciled at Langensiebold, District Hannau, Hanaupstr. 24, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false statement. I herewith declare under oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI in the Palace of Justice at Nurnberg, Germany.

On 1 April 1941 I became a member of the NSDAP, but I did not belong to any of its affiliations.

The Aluminiumwerk Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung, Bitterfeld, was founded in 1926 for the purpose of operating the Aluminiumwerk which for many years had been in existence at Bitterfeld. The plant with all its installations was the property of a company run in accordance with the directives laid down in the Code of Civil Law. The partners of this company were the I.G. Farbenindustrie and the Metallgesellschaft A.G. in Frankfurt/Main which each owned half. Each of the two firms invested half of the stock capital of <sup>the</sup> newly founded Aluminiumwerk G.m.b.H.. In accordance with the articles of partnership this company had to operate the Aluminiumwerk for the account of and according to the directives of the owners and was to be regarded as an employee of the two owners. In 1936 the owners started to build a further plant in Bitterfeld and one at Aken, which latter started operations in 1941. These plants too were operated by the Aluminiumwerk G.m.b.H.

The plants of the Aluminiumwerk G.m.b.H. were built on sites which were the property of the "Company of Civil Law" (Gesellschaft des bürgerlichen Rechts).



The Aluminiumwerk had its own Betriebsfuhrer within the meaning of the Law for the Regulation of National Labor (Arbeitsordnungsgesetz) and thus had its own work's council (Vertrauensrat) and its own staff. The partners concluded agreements for the supply of electric power and raw materials of all kinds, for instance the Aluminiumwerk had a contract, according to which the neighboring I.G. Farbenindustrie Bitterfeld supplied it with electric power.

From 1941 on the management of the Aluminiumwerk was in the hands of two managers who were working at the plant, Dr. Friedbert Ritter as Betriebsfuhrer, and Heinrich Reuleaux. Besides these two gentlemen, Herr Meyer-Kuester from the I.G. Farbenindustrie, Berlin, also acted as part-time manager. The managers received their directives from the two partners of the G.m.b.H.

At certain intervals the two partners held company meetings of the Aluminiumwerk G.m.b.H.. At these meetings the I.G. Farbenindustrie as partner was represented by Herr Leber-Andreas and Dr. Fistor, and later on by Herr Kaefliger and Dr. Buergin.

Taking as guide the documents of the Aluminium Verkaufs Gesellschaft (Aluminum Sales Company) m.b.H. Berlin, concerning the entire German production of foundry aluminum, and the production of the plants operated by the Aluminiumwerk G.m.b.H., I gather that the plants of the Aluminiumwerk G.m.b.H. Bitterfeld and (from 1941 on) Aken accounted for the following percentage of the entire German production of foundry aluminum:

1933	15,5 %	1939	16,6 %
1934	15,8 %	1940	17,9 %
1935	14,8 %	1941	16,6 %
1936	17,0 %	1942	16,1 %
1937	15,3 %	1943	16,1 %
1938	16,1 %	1944	16,7 %
		(Jan. to Nov.)	

Half of these quantities can be attributed to the IG Farbenindustrie as partner of the Aluminiumwerke G.m.b.H.

~~It can be assumed that the I.G. Farbenindustrie, as partner of the Aluminiumwerke G.m.b.H., produced half of these quantities.~~

Accordingly, the share of the I.G. Farbenindustrie in the plants of the Aluminiumwerke G.m.b.H. Rittersfeld did not amount in any one year to more than approximately 9% of the German aluminum production.

Frankfurt/Main, 20 November 1947.

signed: Heinrich Heulesaux

No. 1283 of the document register for 1947.

I herewith certify that the above is the signature of Mr. Heinrich Heulesaux, domiciled at Langenselbold, district Hanau, Hanauerstr. 24.

Frankfurt/Main, 21 November 1947

Seal:

signed: Dr. Kar Hasor.

Bill of costs

Value: RM. 2000.-	
Fee paragraph 39 970.	3.- RM.
Turnover tax	<u>2.09 RM.</u>
Total:	<u>3.09 RM.</u>

I herewith certify that this is a true and correct copy of the above document.

Munich, 30 December 1947

signed: Dr. Turner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the defendant BUEGIN

Copy

Affidavit

I, Wilhelm von der BEY, born on 4 July 1891 at Huttrop, domiciled at Muttens, have been warned that I shall be liable to punishment for making a false statement. I herewith declare under oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice at Nuernberg, Germany.

The information contained in a letter dated 25 November 1939 and addressed to General IER was given by me at the time in my capacity as former sponsor in <sup>England</sup> ~~Germany~~ of the building project "Clifton" and in the special capacity in which I acted until my transfer to Norway by order of the Vorstand of the I.G. for the Reich Air Ministry. Dr. BUEKIN had no knowledge of the above mentioned letter, one reason being that General Loeb had bound me to secrecy when he requested the information on the above mentioned firms. I can no longer say why Herr von Heider again referred to this matter in 1942. I have not seen Herr von Heider since 1941.

signed: Wilhelm von der BEY

Muttens, 18 January 1948

Certificate

I herewith certify that the above is the signature of Herr Wilhelm von der BEY, who appeared here personally and identified himself.

Muttens, 2 February 1948.

The Gemeindepraesident:  
signed: Signature

(Gemeinde-  
praesidium  
Muttens -)  
SEAL

I herewith certify that this is a true and correct copy of the above document.

Nuernberg, 13 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the defendant BUEKIN

Copy

Affidavit

With reference to the attached affidavit dated 18 January 1948 I should like to make an additional statement in this matter.

The "Clifton" plant was built between 1935 - 1937. As magnesium was controlled by the Reich Air Ministry from 1934 on, it was necessary to obtain the permission of the Reich Air Ministry for the building licence in England. The Reich Air Ministry made its approval dependant on an application, which contained a description of the project, methods to be used, output, location, etc. This application was made in agreement with our English partners before the start of the construction work; this was submitted to Department D of the Reich Air Ministry. I pointed that out to General Loeb, who, however, insisted that a report be made. General Loeb might be in a position to make a statement on this.

The information regarding the other firms, which I did not know, was given by the manager of our Light Metals Department and was only forwarded by me.

I should like to add that between 1935 and November 1939 the Reich Air Ministry requested no information in regard to "Clifton", neither were any questions asked. We had only to report when the plant started operating because from then on the quantity of magnesium, which until then had been exported to England, would be at the disposal of the Reich Air Ministry for allocation.

signed: Wilhelm von der BEY

Mittenz, 18 January 1948

Certificate

I herewith certify that the above  
is the signature of Herr Wilhelm von der HEY  
who appeared here personally and identified  
himself.

(Seal)  
(Gemeindepraesidium  
Muttens)

Muttens, 2 February 1948

The Gemeindepraesident:  
signed: Signature

I herewith certify that this is a true and correct copy of the  
above document.

Nuernberg, 13 February 1948.

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the defendant BUEGIN



Copy

Affidavit

I, Heinz M A Y E R - W E G E L I N , born on 15 January 1903 in Lustrol/Augon, resident of Altweilnau (Taunus), have been duly warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I herewith declare on oath that my statements are true and were made in order to be submitted as evidence to Military Tribunal No VI in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

When I was working on the contracts for the foundation of the Nordisk Lotmetall A/S I was aware of the fact that the major part of the apparatus, electrolysis and machines set up in Hergen to operate the factories of this firm were imported from Germany. It was generally assumed that the IG raised the greater part of its invested capital with this equipment. I was moreover told the following in this connection:

These deliveries were so large in extent that the IG Bitterfeld stationed at the departure port of the ships a technical advisor who directed the lading of the ships in such a way that the parts needed first in Hergen were stowed on top and the parts needed last underneath. This was to avoid the necessity of depositing large quantities temporarily on the bank when the ships arrived in Hergen, until the parts needed first were reached in the ships hold. In addition to this, I myself heard Bitterfeld officials arranging with the engineers stationed in Hergen that they (the Bitterfeld officials) should procure a special allocation of vegetables etc, from a higher food office in Germany and stow these vegetables in the spaces between the apparatus. These vegetables were intended to improve the rations for the construction workers.

in Bergen who were almost all Norwegians. This method of shipping in the space between the apparatus obviated the necessity for the provision of special shipping space for the vegetables. Whether this plan was put into effect or not I cannot say. The former Dittorfeld Director Julius FRANK should have definite information on that, since he was in charge of the entire project.

Frankfurt/M., 11 November 1947

signed Heinz MAYER-WECHLIN

This is to certify and witness the above signature of Heinz MAYER-WECHLIN, made before Wolfgang THEOBALD, Assistant Defense Counsel with Military Tribunal VI.

Munich, 12 November 1947

signed: Wolfgang THEOBALD

-----  
The above copy is herewith certified true and correct.

Munich, 30 December 1947

signed Dr. Werner SCHUBERT  
Defense Counsel for the Defendant  
BUEHGIN

C o p y .

I, Karl v. H e i d o r , born 20 November 1888 in Ulm a/Danau, resident in Frankfurt a.M., Grillparzerstrasse 83, having first been warned that I shall render myself liable to punishment if I make a false affidavit, hereby declare on oath that my statement is in accordance with the truth and is made in order to be produced as evidence before the Military Tribunal No. VI in the Palace of Justice at Nuremberg, Germany.

In regard to the Soda- und Atzalkalien-Gesellschaft G.m.b.H., I declare as follows :

The Prosecution Exhibit 1568, Document NI-6790, Document Book 61, English Transcript page 36, German page 61, represents the reaction of one individual department of the I.G. Farbenindustrie in Leverkusen to a proposal of the Syndicate of German Caustic Soda Factories (Syndikat Deutscher Atzalkalienfabriken) of 6 September 1941, which I transmitted to Leverkusen and various other works of the I.G. on 9 September 1941. I hereby declare that the following represents a true and correct copy of the letter of the Syndicate of German Caustic Soda Factories of 6 September 1941 :

"Syndicate of German Caustic Soda Factories

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft

F r a n k f u r t (Main) 20

Bamberg, 6 September 1941

Subject : Soda- und Atzalkalien-Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung (Soda & Caustic Alkali Factory Limited Liability Company).

We refer to the statements made by the undersigned in the internal members' conference on 20 August last, concerning the new limited liability company to be established at the wish of the Reich Ministry of Economy

for the administration of the Soda and Caustic Alkali factories in the newly occupied Eastern territories.

The discussions with the Reich Economic Ministry have in the meantime progressed so far that we are in the position to send you a copy of the draft of the Company contract, which, however, to judge by past experience, cannot by any means be regarded as final. You will see from this that, compared with the draft read out to you in the above-mentioned meeting, certain alterations have been made in it. It is evident from Par. 2. that, for instance, the object of the limited liability company comprises not only the ~~administration~~ taking care of the Soda and Caustic Alkali factories, but is also to be extended to the business of chloroalkalyls. As to this, we would remark that there has as yet been no decision regarding the inclusion of chlorine and the subject is still under discussion with the agencies concerned.

p. 1

p. 2

With regard to the division of the original capital, which has been increased to RM 100,000, as against RM 20,000 in the first draft, we would remark that we have based the calculation of the capital shares of the individual partners, as set forth in the draft, on the voting quotas in the two syndicates, as discussed at that time.

At the desire of the Reich Economic Ministry, Direktor Krohske, at present Managing Director of the Ostdeutsche Chemische Werke G.m.b.H., Posen, is to be appointed as Managing Director (Par. 7). This gentleman is, as known, already in the newly occupied Eastern territories and is acting there as trustee of the Reich Economic Ministry for the

soda and caustic soda industry and by this means is to ensure from the very beginning direct connection with the "front-line industries", the administration of which will be the principal object of the new G.m.b.H. which is to be founded.

For the practical work, it is further provided that there shall be a so-called Work Committee, consisting of a representative of the Reich Ministry of Economy as chairman, and three further co-workers to be appointed by the general meeting. A decision to this effect is further to be entered into the Company Agreement.

Please be so good as to examine the draft immediately and let us have your agreement in principle with our proposal, or with that of the Reich Economic Ministry, respectively, as the Reich Economic Ministry attaches extreme importance to the speedy establishment of the "Soda- und Natralkalien-Ost Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung."

SYNDIKAT DEUTSCHE ALKALI-TRANSPORTBRIKEN  
G.m.b.H.

Signed : C.F. Clemm."

The draft for the Company Agreement mentioned in the second paragraph of this letter did not become reality and the Company Agreement was subsequently concluded in another form. I declare that the following is a true and correct copy of the Company Agreement concluded on the 7 November 1941 for the founding of the "Soda- und Natralkalien-Ost Gesellschaft mit



beschränkter Haftung" :

Copy

Number 214 of the Archive Roll for 1941

Negotiated in  
Berlin, 7 November 1941.

There appeared to-day before the undersigned Notary of the District Court in Berlin, Dr. Anton Stoeck, whose head office is situated in Berlin W 9, Hermann Goeringstrasse 7,

1. Gehobter Regierungsrat Dr. Hans Mehnke,  
Berlin W 9, Hermann Goeringstrasse 7,
2. Attorney Friedrich Silcher,  
Berlin-Zehlendorf, Hermannstrasse 2.

Both are personally known to the Notary.

- p. 3 Dr. Mehnke handed in 10 legally attested Powers of Attorney and Herr Silcher 2 legally attested Powers of Attorney.

Both declared :

I.

In the name of the firms which we represent and in which no Jew has any participation, we conclude the following

Company Agreement.

Par. 1

A company with limited liability with head office in Berlin is founded under the style of

"Soda-und Atzalkalien-Ost Gesellschaft mit be-  
schrankter Haftung."

Par. 2

(1) The object of the company is to support

in word and deed the works in the occupied Eastern territories or "sober" Soda, Caustic alkali and Chlorine of which the resumption of activity is decided by the German agencies concerned and which are managed by German Betriebsfuhrer. The support of electrolysis is, however, not the object of the company, in so far as it is carried on in direct connection with plants not belonging to the working scope of the company and the preponderant amount of the chlorine produced is further processed in its own plant. The object of the Company is also the carrying out of tasks which may in future be assigned to it by the Reich Minister of Economy.

- (2) The company will carry on its business as a trustee of the German Reich.
- (3) It is not the object of the Company to make profits.

Par.3

- (1) The original capital of the company amounts to RM 30,000.--. Of this, the firms named below will make the following capital investments :

1. The Syndikat Deutscher Sodafabriken  
Gesellschaft mit beschrankter Haftung  
in Bernburg RM 3,000.--
2. The Syndikat Deutscher Betatronfabriken  
Gesellschaft mit beschrankter Haftung  
in Bernburg RM 3,000.--
3. The Elektrochemische Produktion  
Gesellschaft mit beschrankter Haftung  
in Frankfurt (Main) RM 3,060.--
4. The I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft RM 5,000.--  
in Frankfurt (Main) acting for account,  
and as trustee of the Distribution Agency  
for Bleaching Powder in Frankfurt (Main),  
open partnership company in amount of  
RM 2,000.--.

p.4	5. The Chemische Fabrik von Heyden Aktien- gesellschaft in Radabaul-Dresden	RM 2,000.--
	6. The Chemische Fabrik Kalk Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung in Cologne	RM 2,000.--
	7. The Deutsche Solvay-Werke Aktiengesellschaft in Bernburg	RM 2,000.--
	8. The Feldmühle Papier- und Zellstoffwerke Aktiengesellschaft in Berlin	RM 2,000.--
	9. The Th. Goldschmidt Aktiengesellschaft in Essen	RM 2,000.--
	10. The Kali-Chemie Aktiengesellschaft in Berlin-Miederschoeneweide	RM 2,000.--
	11. E. Matthes & Wober Aktiengesellschaft in Duisburg	RM 2,000.--
	12. The Soda-Fabrik Stassfurt Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung in Stassfurt	RM 2,000.--
		<hr/> RM 30,000.--

(2) The capital investments are payable immediately.

(3) So far as the Company is not in a position to cover its current administration costs from its own incomes, the partners are obliged to supply the deficit by contributions in proportion to their capital investments, but not exceeding, however, an amount of RM 50,000 yearly for the entire Company. So far as the incomes of the Company suffice, the contributions must be repaid to the participating partners.

#### Par. 4

The financial year of the Company is the calendar year. The first financial year will end with the close of the calendar year in which registration takes place.

Par. 5

The approval of the business management and of the Reich Minister of Economy is required for the transfer and parcelling out of business shares. Transfer may be effected only to members of the Economic Group Chemistry Industry who produce soda, caustic alkali or chlorine.

Par. 6

The organs of the Company are :

1. The Business Management
2. The Verwaltungsrat
3. The General meeting.

Par. 7

(1) The Company shall have one or more business managers. These will be appointed and recalled by the Verwaltungsrat. The first business managers will be appointed by the partners.

p. 5

(2) If there are several business managers, the Company will be legally represented by two business managers or one business manager together with a prokurist.

(3) Procuration will be accorded and revoked by the business managers. It shall only be accorded as general procuration.

(4) The Verwaltungsrat can issue business regulations for the operation of the business.

Par. 8

(1) The Verwaltungsrat shall consist of at least twelve members. These will include a representative of the Reich Minister of Economy, a representative of the business management of the Economic Group Chemical Industry and a representative of the Economic Staff

East. The other members shall be proposed by the partners. All the members shall be appointed and recalled by the Reich Minister of Economy.

- (2) The representative of the Reich Minister of Economy shall be the chairman and his deputy shall be the representative of the business management of the Economic Group Chemical Industry.
- (3) The Verwaltungsrat effects its decisions by majority vote of the members present. In the event of even voting, the chairman has the casting vote.
- (4) The Verwaltungsrat shall regulate its activity by means of statutes. It will meet as often as the business requires or on the request of three members. The Verwaltungsrat will be summoned by the chairman. It will be competent to make decisions when all the members have been given at least one week's notice of the meeting by registered letter accompanied by the agenda, and there are at least three members present.
- (5) Decisions may also be formed by written or telegraphic vote when, in the opinion of the chairman, a condition of urgency exists. In such case, only those votes count which are received within the time limit fixed by the chairman. If a member before the expiry of such time limit raises objection to the written or telegraphic vote, any decision already formed by such written or telegraphic vote shall not be carried out and a meeting shall immediately be called.
- (6) The Verwaltungsrat has the right of supervision over the business management.



- (7) The Administrative Council ( Verwaltungsrat ) has the right to appoint a Working Committee from its own ranks and to transfer to it the whole or part of its functions. Decisions by this committee have the same validity as decisions by the Administrative Council, unless within one week after they have been communicated ... to the other members, objections are raised by any one of them. If an objection is raised, the Administrative Council must be convened.
- P.6(8) Members of the Administrative Council can only claim a refund of their expenses. Their work is of an honorary nature. They may resign from their office at any time by giving notice in writing.
- (9) The regulations in Par. 84, sections 2 through to 5, 87, 91, 92 section 1, 95 through to 98 of the Law on Shares do not apply to the Administrative Council.

Par. 9

- (1) The partners' meeting shall be convened by the chairman of the Administrative Council or by the business management one week in advance. Notice must be sent by registered letter and accompanied by the agenda. The period of one week excludes the day of dispatch and the day of the meeting.
- (2) The partners' meeting must fulfil the tasks assigned to it under this agreement or by law. In particular it has the right to alter the articles of Association, to establish the annual balance sheet, and to accept resignations.
- (3) Resolutions at <sup>the</sup> partners' meeting are passed by an ordinary majority of votes represented, in accordance with

the law. Resolutions which involve alterations to the Articles of Association require consent of the Reich Minister of Economics.

- (4) The partners may be represented at the partners' meeting by legal representatives or by employees from their own business, or from the affiliated enterprises of the Konzern.
- (5) The partners' meeting is presided over by the chairman of the Administrative Council or by his deputy.
- (6) At the partners' meeting each one-hundred Reich Marks worth of original stock gives the right to one vote.

#### Par. 10

- (1) The management must draw up the annual balance sheet within six months after the close of the business year and submit it to the Administrative Council. The Administrative Council must obtain the partners' confirmation of the balance sheet within two months after it has been submitted by the business management.
- (2) Bearing in mind Par. 2, section 3, the partners use their own discretion in deciding as to the use of the net profit shown in the balance sheet and how to deal with a loss.

#### Par. 11

The activities of the Company terminate on 31 December 1943, unless the partners' meeting decides, with the consent of Reich Minister of Economics on the dissolution of the Company before that date or on the prolongation of its activities beyond 31 December 1943. The Company shall also be dissolved if the Reich Minister of Economics demands its dissolution.

Page 7

Par. 12

- (1) In case of dissolution of the Company its liquidation shall be carried out by the business manager appointed by the Administrative Council, unless by decision of the Administrative Council the liquidation is entrusted to another person.
- (2) After hearing the Administrative Council the partners' meeting shall decide as to the use of the remaining property after settling the debts and repaying the original paid up investments and contributions of the partners.

Par. 13

The Company's notices are published in the "German Reich Gazette" only.

## II.

In accordance with Par. 7, section 1, 3rd sentence we appoint as business manager:

Herr Director Erich KRENSKE of Posen, 4 Dominsel.

## III.

As soon as the original investments have been paid in we propose to have the Company reported to the Commercial Register for registration, and to have one copy each issued to the Company, to the twelve partners and the business manager, as well as one certified copy each to the Reich Ministry of Economics and to the Stock Exchange Revenue Office.

The minutes of the transaction was read aloud in the presence of the notary, approved by the persons present

and signed in their own handwriting as follows:

Dr. Hans MAHNKE      Friedrich SILCHER

Dr. Anton STOR

Notary.

The capital of the Soda- and Natralkalien-Ost G.m.b.H. amounted to RM 30,000.— only and was never increased. Prosecution Exhibit 1569, Document NI-6729, Document Book 64, page 37 of the English and page 53 of the German version, does not give the number of the partners' shares in the company capital of the Soda- and Natralkalien-Ost G.m.b.H., but shows the shares of the partners in a counter-guarantee, which all the partners together had given to the Soda- and Natralkalien-Ost G.m.b.H. It was necessary to enter into this counter-guarantee, because the Soda- and Natralkalien-Ost G.m.b.H. had given security for the same amount of RM 150,000.— to the Reichskreditkasse (Reich Credit Fund) for the Ukraine for a credit from this financial institution to a soda factory located in the Ukraine, which funds were to provide the means required for restarting production.

Page 8

A "Report on the company's activities, dated 12 September 1943" shows that the business of the Soda- and Natralkalien-Ost G.m.b.H. was modest in extent and not very important. I give below the exact text of this report.

"Soda- and Natralkalien-Ost G.m.b.H.

Posen, 12 September 1943

R e p o r t

on the activity of the Association according to its position  
as of 1 September 1943.

The Soda and Caustic Alkalies East G.m.b.H. (Soda- und Letz-  
alkalien-Ost G.m.b.H.) began its activity at the beginning of  
1942. As at that time the Soda factory of Lissitschenak was still  
occupied by the enemy and the Soda factory of Slawienak also re-  
mained occupied for several months, our company could <sup>not take care of it</sup> ~~start its~~  
<sup>before</sup> ~~activity as a trustee only~~ in the second half of 1942. The journey  
of the business manager, Direktor Krohake, to Slawienak and Lissit-  
schenak in September 1942 gave the first general view of the kind  
and extent of activity possible for the Soda factories. By conferences  
with the official administrators, Dir. Dr. F o e h r e n b e c h  
for Lissitschenak and G e h e l m e r S t i e r for Slawienak, it was  
determined within what framework assistance <sup>could be given and care taken by</sup> ~~and trusteeship through~~  
the Soda and Caustic Alkalies-East G.m.b.H. ~~could take place.~~ In  
accordance with an order of the Economic Staff East, Chief Group V,  
<sup>commission (Kommissionen Wirtschaft)</sup>  
~~the official administrators~~ should send their demands to their compe-  
tent authority the W I Kdo (Economic Staff). This determines whether  
the acquisition of the requested materials is possible at the spot  
and in case this should not be possible, the W I Kdo channels the  
demand via the Economic Inspection Office, to the Economic Staff  
East, which then places the order with our company. While, at first  
we had to limit ourselves to putting at the disposal of the soda  
factories only vehicles, a few typewriters and the most necessary



office supplies, all the requirements of the Soda factories which could not be filled locally, were gradually filled by our deliveries. In this connection it is to be noted, however that, owing to the evacuation of Lissitschansk in the first months of this year, the deliveries were restricted to the Soda factory of Slawiansk only. In the meantime two wagon-loads were dispatched. The last one left Posen on 20 July. This shipment comprises principally a complete equipment of office supplies, including a manifold bookkeeping set-up, also laboratory apparatus, as well as chemicals (reagents); furthermore high-quality materials for tools, as well as

carbide, gasket sheets, filter-cloth, stramin, protecting goggles, additional stock supplies, electric bulbs and supplies for electrical installations.

In addition to this, several tons of soda were shipped for starting up the soda factories. Both wagon-loads were, for reasons of security, accompanied by Germans from the working staff of the Slawiansk Works, returning from leave. The arrival of the wagons has in the meantime been acknowledged.

- p.9 The orders received in the meantime were with the support of the Wi Stab East being continuously dealt with and as soon as a certain amount is ready for delivery, another boxcar will be dispatched.

The Soda and Caustic Alkali-East G.m.b.H. receives regularly the monthly reports of the <sup>commissioners (Kommissionärer Verwalter)</sup> ~~official administrators~~ and can, based on these reports, form a picture of the prevailing position of the installation work. Thus these monthly reports facilitate the necessary

~~trusteeship measures.~~ Steps necessary for them to discharge their duty.

Negotiations for the appointment of companies in Germany proper as trusteeship firms, have hitherto been conducted through the German Solvay-Werke A.G., Kali-Chemie A.G., and Henkel & Cie.

The Kali-Chemie has in the meantime sent two of its directors to study the conditions of operations in Slawiansk. No decisions were yet made about the assignment of one or more works to certain companies.

Soda and Caustic Alkali-East G.m.b.H.  
signed: Kerschke

The association has been working during its existence only at a loss. In accordance with Paragraph 11 of the charter of the company, it was liquidated in June 1944. This becomes apparent from the letter of the Chairman of the Verwaltungsrat of the G.m.b.H., dated 26 May 1944 which I herewith reproduce. I declare that it is a true and correct copy of the letter, dated 26 May 1944.

"Soda and Caustic Alkali-East  
G.m.b.H.  
The Chairman of the Verwaltungsrat

Berlin, 02. 26 May 1944  
Neue Koenigsstr. 27/37

Messrs.  
Elektrisch-chemische Produkte G.m.b.H.  
Frankfurt a.M.

Subject : General Meeting.

In view of the prevailing conditions, I would like - as in the past year, - to abstain from convoking a meeting of the partners of the Soda and Caustic Alkali-East G.m.b.H. for the approval of the year's balance. The necessary resolutions will

instead - if all partners agree to this - be taken in writing.

Enclosed I am forwarding you photostats of the report for the year 1943 which has been prepared by the management, the balance-sheet at 31 December 1943 with the profit and loss account, as well as the report of the *Virsschaftsberatung A.G.* concerning the audit of the balance-sheet of 1943.

The balance-sheet contains nothing outstanding as compared with the previous years. There is again a loss, i.e., in amount of RM 9,423.96 which results from the current office expenses.

p.10 Since the company is presumably going to be liquidated in 1944, I propose to bring forward the loss, as well as the loss of the previous year, to new account. After the final calculations, the advance payments of the partners would come up for settlement. Consequently, I propose the following resolution:

1.) The balance<sup>as</sup> of 31 December 1943 together with the profit and loss account shall be determined. The deficit of RM 9,423.96 together with the loss from the last year shall be carried forward to new account.

2.) The business manager and the *Verwaltungsrat* are given discharge for 1943.

3.) The company shall go into liquidation, in accordance with paragraph 11 of the business charter.

4.) The liquidator shall be the existing business manager. I herewith request the partners to vote on the proposed resolutions by the 15 June 1944 by registered letter sent to the association (Mail address: Posen 1, Kennenstr. 11).

Heil Hitler!  
The Chairman of the *Verwaltungsrat*  
Signed: Dr. Alfred Hoffmann.

Accordingly I declare comprehensively as follows : -

The I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft has not taken over the trusteeship over one of the only two factories (Slawiansk and Lisaltschansk) which were subject to the consultation and trusteeship of the Soda and Caustic Alkali-East G.m.b.H. The I.G. has also not purchased either of these factories from the German Reich or acquired it in any other way. The I.G. has also not supplied any workers, neither commercial nor technical personnel or any other kind, for any activity in these two plants; on the contrary, they have repeatedly declined to do so. Finally, the I.G. has not obtained any profits from the two factories which are the only ones concerned, or from its participation in the Soda and Caustic Alkali-East G.m.b.H.; on the contrary, they have almost completely lost the capital which they had invested in this company. The I.G. has also never obtained any apparatus or chlorine or any other products manufactured there by the two plants which were under the trusteeship of the Soda and Caustic Alkali-East G.m.b.H.

Frankfurt, on Main, 30 January 1948

signed: Karl v. Heider

I herewith certify the signature of Karl v. Heider, living in Frankfurt a.M., Grillparzerstr. 83, which was rendered in my, Dr. Helmuth Henze's, presence in Frankfurt a.M., on 30 January 1948.

Signed : Henze

Defense Counsel at the  
Military Tribunal No. VI.

Frankfurt a.M.,  
30 January 1948

I herewith certify that the above is a true and correct copy.

Nuremberg, 13 February 1948

Signed : Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel for the Defendant BUERGIN.

Buergin Document

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

27 February 1948

We,

Victoria ORTON, ETO # 20129,  
Brigitte TURK, ETO # 35130,  
Anne MARTIN, ETO # 20144,  
Beryl C. BESWICK, ETO # 20183,  
Phyllis RAY, ETO # 36287,  
Eugene H. KUN, D - 429798,

hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the  
German and English languages and that the above is a true and  
correct translation of the Document Book I Buergin.

.....  
Victoria ORTON  
ETO # 20129  
pages 1-6,44-47

.....  
Brigitte TURK  
ETO # 35130  
pages 7-13,38-33

.....  
Eugene H. KUN  
D - 429798  
pages 14-18,48-52

.....  
Phyllis RAY (for P.WOOD)  
ETO # 36287  
pages 19-25,34-35

.....  
Beryl C. BESWICK  
ETO # 20183  
page 27  
& Index

.....  
Anne MARTIN  
ETO # 20144  
pages 36-43



Case 6  
Defense

Military Tribunal No. VI

- Trial No. 6 -

Document Book II

for

Dr. Ernst B u e r g i n

Submitted by Dr. Werner  
Schubert, Attorney at  
Law, presently at  
Nurnberg

Long



## DOCUMENT BOOK II BUERGIN

Table of contents  
of  
Document Book II Buergin.

Exhibit No.	Document No.	Document	Page
	18	Excerpt from the Book "1909-1939, 30 Years of Elektro", published by the I.G. Farbenindustrie Bitterfeld. The book contains material from the history of the development of magnesium and its alloys. From the history of a German industrial product. Illustrations of the production of magnesium metal from the raw material to the finished product. Fields of application of Elektro, Hydromagium and Isodur (with many diagrams)	1-52
	38	Excerpt from the Book "Magnesium and its Alloys" published by Adolf BECK, honorary Dr. of Eng., Berlin, 1939.- The excerpt gives a description of the field of application of magnesium, with many illustrations	53-61

C C P Y

1909 - 1939

30 YEARS

OF ELEKTRON

AND NEW LIGHT METAL ALLOYS OF THE  
I.G.FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESellschaft

+

I.G.Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
Elektron-Metal Department, Bitterfeld

Arrangement and text by  
H. H. Roden

Colored plates and illustrations by  
Friedrich Wiesner

110 photographs by  
Fritz Gerl, Berlin

The single-color and multi-color presses were etched  
in Elektron by Rebner & Co., Leipzig. Printed by:  
B.G. Teubner, Leipzig-Dresden, and Wilhelm Kochsmuth,  
Bitterfeld

page 5:

TABLE OF CONTENTS

From magnesium to Elektron and Hydronium. Historical data of the development of two light metals (with 12 pages of illustrations)...	5
"30 Years of Elektron" . . . . .	52
Comparison of specific gravities (illustra- tion) . . . . .	57
Illustration of the different stages in the production of magnesium metal from the raw material to the finished product (colored plate) . . . . .	58

Page 5:

From the dolomite mine to the molten crude metal (6 pages of illustrations)	.....60
Fields of application of Elektron, Hydronalium and Igedur (with 145 illustrations)	.....67
Elektron - Publicity in recent years	.....113
Exhibitions (with 14 illustrations)	.....114
Publications (illustrated page)	.....118
Advertisements (three pages of illustrations)	.....119
Agencies of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktien- gesellschaft, Department of Elektronmetal, Bitterfeld (colored plate)	.....123

Page 6:

## FROM MAGNESIUM

## TO ELEKTRON AND HYDRONALIUM

Historical materials from the development of  
two light alloys.

The name "magnesium" is derived from the town  
of Magnesia in Asia Minor, which supplied mag-  
nesia salts to the whole world in ancient times

1695

Richard Grew investigates Epsom Salts, which he  
obtains from the mineral springs at Epsom, and  
he describes them in his treatise "de salis  
cathartici in aquis Epsomensibus et aliis  
contenti natura" (concerning cathartic salts  
in the Epsom waters and others of natural con-  
tent, published in London. Later "white magnesite"  
("magnesia alba") is adopted as a medicine, and  
is frequently confused with ordinary chalk, since  
no methodical means of making an analysis is  
known.

Page 7/8:

Upper picture: Robert Wilhelm Bunsen, inventor  
of the molten state magnesium  
electrolysis (also see the text on  
page 10)

Lower picture: First electrolysis in Griesheim  
near Frankfurt on Main

Page 9:

1707

Professor M.E. Valentini of Gießen succeeds in  
producing white magnesite from nitre mother solu-  
tion. ("dissertation de magnesia alba" - Treatise  
on White Magnesite).

Page 9:1709

Professor J.H. Slevogt of Jena succeeds in the same experiment.

1722

Friedrich Hoffmann, Halle, establishes the distinctive differences between white magnesite and ordinary lime, namely, that lime, in contrast to magnesite, in combination with sulphuric acid does not give a soluble, bitter-tasting, laxative salt. He characterizes the two substances as distinctly different.

1808

Humphry Davy (1778-1829) produces metallic magnesium with the aid of the voltaic cell and calls it "magnesium".

1825

Hans Christian Oerstedt (1777-1851), Copenhagen, produces for the first time potassium amalgam to aluminum by the reduction of  $AlCl_3$ .

1827

Inspired by the experiments of Oerstedt,

Page 10: Friedrich Wöhler (1800-1882) in the laboratory of the "Städtische Gewerbeschule" (City Technical School) in the Niederwallstrasse, Berlin, produces pure aluminum in the form of a gray powder through the conversion of anhydrous aluminum chloride with potassium.

1828

H. Bussy (France) succeeds in producing pure magnesium by heating magnesium chloride with potassium.

1850

Justus Liebig (1803-1873) repeats the experiments of Bussy and obtains several grams of magnesium metal, sufficient for the determination of certain physical and chemical constants.

1852

Robert Wilhelm Bunsen (1811-1899) produces in Breslau two grams of magnesium metal by the electrolysis of molten, anhydrous  $MgCl_2$  and lays the groundwork for modern methods of production.

1856

Founding of the "Frankfurter Aktiengesellschaft fuer Landwirt-



schaftliche chemische Fabriken". (Frankfurt Company for Agricultural Chemical Materials).

Page 11/12:

Picture: Booth of the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" at the "Ilr" (International Aeronautical Exhibition) in 1909 (also see the text on page 18).

Page 13:

1897

Factory production of magnesium in Paris according to process by Henri St. Claire-Deville and H. Cotton.

1862

At the London World Exhibition considerable quantities of magnesium are exhibited for the first time, and it thereby becomes extensively known.

2. September 1865

Registration with a capital of 100,000 florine, of the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim on Main", formerly the "Frankfurter Aktiengesellschaft fuer landwirtschaftliche chemische Fabriken," in the Commercial Register of the free city of Frankfurt on Main.

1865-1892

Factory production of magnesium by Johnson and Matthey in Boston, Massachusetts.

1866

In a cell developed by R. Grotzsch (Aluminium and Magnesium Factory Homelingen) the first German facilities for the electrolytic production of magnesium from carnallite are introduced.

1870

One kilogram of magnesium costs about 500 marks.

Page 14

1875

Magnesium is used for flash-lights and pyrotechnical purposes.

1881

The plants in Griesheim for the production of sulphuric acid,

Page 14: nitric acid and soda are also adapted for the production of organic nitrates, aniline oil and the related products used as starting materials in dye manufacture; further, for the production of a series of organic chlorine products, and later for the production of carbon.

1853

The introduction of electrolysis in the German large-scale chemical industry results in the erection of facilities for the electrolytic decomposition of common salt and potassium chloride, along with the exploitation of the lignite deposits. An electrolytic plant is set up in Bitterfeld with the name of "Chemische Fabrik Elektron A.G."

1894

The Prague physician, Ludwig Mond, produces the first aluminum-magnesium alloys

Pages 14/15:

Pictures: Bitterfeld Works of the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim - Elektron" in 1925

Page 17:

1896

The "Chemische Fabrik Elektron A.G.", Bitterfeld, adopts the production of magnesium by molten state electrolysis, as a reduction agent in the metallurgy of the heavy metals and as powder for pyrotechnical uses.

18 August 1898

Merging of the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim on Main" and the "Chemische Fabrik Elektron A.-G.", Bitterfeld, with the new firm name of "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" and an increase in the capital stock from 5,000,000 to 9,000,000 marks.

1898

The "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" leases the "Bitterfeld-Nord" Works, which belongs to the "Elektrochemische Werke A.-G.", and converts it into an electrolytic plant after the model of the Griesheim Works

1900

The world production of magnesium is about 10 tons annually,

- 6 -

Page 17:6 July 1905

Merging of the Firm of Karl Oehler, Aniline and Benzene-Dyes Factory in Offenbach on Main into the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron." Increase of the capital stock to 10,000,000 marks.

Page 18:1908

"Elektron" or elektron metal, the name of the magnesium alloys developed by the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" becomes well-known for the first time through publicity measures.

April 1909

Application for the first patent on magnesium alloys as development material.

July - October 1909

Elektron is exhibited for the first time at the "Ila" (International Aeronautical Exhibition) in Frankfurt on Main, and it is awarded the first prize in the "Prize Contest for Solid Light Metals."

1914

One kilogram of magnesium costs about 12 marks.

1915

In France the "Société d'Electro-Chimie, d'Electro-Metallurgie et des Acieries Electriques d'Ugine" takes up the production of magnesium

Pages 19/20

Picture: Sevoy Airship "Santa-Maria" of General de Pinedo (also see the text on page 29)

Page 21:1915

The Dow Chemical Company, Michigan, U.S.A., conducts experiments for the industrial production of magnesium by the electrolytic method.

1915

In the Bitterfeld Works of the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-

- 6 -

Page 21:

Elektron" the first light metal pressing plant for magnesium alloys is put in operation.

1916

The "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" enters the "Interessengemeinschaft der deutschen Teerfarbenfabriken" (Cartel of the German Aniline Dye Factories), set up in 1904, next to the other three firms of the large-scale chemical industry.

1919

Granting of the first patent for the rolling of magnesium alloys (Patent No. 358 598) to the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron".

1921

In the light metal piston contest of the Reich Transportation Ministry an Elektron piston is awarded the first prize (Patent No. 386 967).

Page 22:

1921

The "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" is granted the first patent for the use of sulphur in the casting of magnesium alloys in green sand (Patent No. 368 906).

1921

First successful attempts to introduce Elektron cast and pressed parts in the textile machine industry.

1921

The P.A. Hughes & Co., Ltd., London, which is closely associated with the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron", become the representative for Elektron.

1921-1922

Discovery by Dr. O. Bohn and August Meisenbach of the suitable qualities of Elektron for etching and printing techniques.

1921-1923

Development of the Elbroel process for the molten treatment

Page 22: of magnesium alloys. (Patent No. 403 802).

Pages 23/24:

Picture: The Balboa Squadron while  
alighting on the water off  
the South American Coast  
(also see the text on page 33)

Page 25:

1922

The "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" is granted the first patent for casting of magnesium alloys in green sand (Patent No. 384 137).

1923

The "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" issues the first license for the casting (of magnesium alloys) to the "Leipziger Eisengiesserei Becker & Co.," Leipzig. The "Brunschweiger Metallgiesserei", Brunschweig, requires the second license for casting the alloys.

1924

Founding of the "Elektronmetall G.m.b.H., Gonnstätt, with the intention of producing Elektron pistons.

1924

The first use of Elektron cast parts in large series is undertaken by the Bueessing Firm, Brunschweig, in its manufacture of trucks.

1924

The "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" issues the first license in England for casting the alloys to the Sterling Metals Ltd., Coventry.

1925

Walther Schmidt, Dr. of Eng., founds the "Leipziger Leichtmetall-Werk G.m.b.H., Rockwitz, with the object of producing rolled material from Elektron.

Page 26:

1925

At the Berlin Automobile Exhibition the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" is represented with its light metal alloys, which are particularly suited for the production of motor vehicles.



- 9 -

Page 26:

1925

The "Elektrometall GbmH", Canstatt, makes the first experiments in the use of elektron as raw material for die-casting.

1. Dec 1925

Establishment of the "I. G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft" through the merger of six leading plants of the chemical industry, among them the "Chemische Fabrik Rhein-Elektron". Total capital 645 000 000 Mks.

1925

1 kilogram of elektron casting material costs RM 2.50.

1925-29

The I. G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft develops a process for the production of anhydrous magnesium chloride from magnesite.

page 27/28

Illustration, Le Havilland "Comet" on their record flight to Australia (see text page 37).

page 29:

1926

The I. G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Elektron Department, Wittenfeld, grants a license for castings to the firm of Rudolph Lautenbach, Solingen.

1926

The firm of Ing. M. Isotta Fraschini, Milan, starts to use elektron castings <sup>and</sup> pressings for the construction of air planes in series.

- 5 -

- 9 -

1926

A milling machine was demonstrated at the Berlin automobile exhibition, which machines electron castings at a cutting velocity of 1500 meters a minute.

1927

The Adler works, Frankfurt on Main, develop a type of vehicle

- 9a -

- 10 -

page 29:

extensively employing elektron castings and pressings.

1927

The Italian General de Finco on his ocean flight flies 33, 000 kilometers with the Savoia plane "Santa Maria" which is furnished with "Asso 500" Isotta Fraschini engines with elektron crank-cases.

page 30:

1928:

The I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Elektron-Metall Department, Bitterfeld, grants the first license for castings to the firm of Centupet in Nogent near Paris, France.

1928

The British Truck and Bus Factory of Thornycroft makes a experimental series of 20 engines with crank cases cast in elektron.

1929

The Milan Streetcar (Company) tries out 20 cars which have wheels, chassis bracing, seats, baggage racks, and handles made of elektrons.

1930

The I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Elektrometall Department, Bitterfeld, brings out a magnesium containing alloy under the name of "Hydromagnium".

1930

The I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Bitterfeld, engages in the development of a process for the production of magnesium by thermic reduction.

- 10 -

pages 31/32

Illustration. Plaques of all kinds are being  
made of raw German elektron material.

page 33.

1930

For the round Europe flight, which represents a difficult  
technical practical test for light planes (maximum empty  
weight 400 kilograms) with small engines, elektron has been  
used extensively for various parts in numerous planes.

- 11 -

25 of the 31 engines have elektron blocs, 28 of the 31 planes have elektron fuel tanks.

7 Sep 1930

Four cars of the Italian Lazzarati automobile works which compete in the race for the "Dag Lanza Prize", are first, second, third and fifth winners. In all these cars the crank, compressor and gear cases, the brake shoes and drums, steering, differential and cam shaft housings, and various smaller parts are made of elektron.

1931

Salbo's first squadron flight to South America. The engines used here contain many elektron parts such as: housings for propeller shafts, oil sumps, distributor housings, magneto cradles, casings for oil pumps, mixing chambers, carburettor bodies, and various other small parts.

page 34:

1931

Formation of the Magnesium Development Corporation United States of America.

1931

The I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Elektrometall Department, Bitterfeld, grants the first licenses for rolling, pressing, and welding in England to the firm of James Booth & Co., Ltd., Birmingham.



- 11 -

1931

The "Societe Generale du Magnesium", Paris, takes over the French patents of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft for the production of magnesium and elektron.

1931/32

Development of the sheet metal production from noncorrosive magnesium- alloys.

1932

For the trip round Europe all the German machines are equipped with elektron propellers. On many of the German <sup>and</sup> foreign planes, particularly the Italian Breda machines, main parts consist of elektrons.

- 12 -

Pages 35/36

Illustration: Gossamer wins the race on the  
Roosevelt-Field-Track near New York (see text page 42)

page 37:

1932

Magnesium world production amounts to approx 1200 tons a year.

1934

The "Wintershall A.G.", Kassel, takes up Magnesium production.

1934

The Italian pilot, Lenati, establishes a world altitude record  
in Rome (peak altitude 14, 335 meters). The "Caproni 113" used  
here had elektron fuel and oil tanks as well as fuselage sheathing.

1934

Against very severe American competition the British Le Havre-Bland  
machine "Goset" piloted by G. A. Scott and J. Campbell Black  
flies from Wickenhall (England) to Melbourne (Australia) in the  
record time of 72 hours. This machine had 2 Gipsy VI engines  
and was equipped extensively with elektron parts (fuselage,  
chassis, wheel casings, instrument board, seats, wheels, steering  
lever, etc.)

page 38

28 Aug.-16 Sep 1934

Of the 34 machines participating in the flight round Europe 26  
are equipped with elektron air screws, among them the six planes  
considered to be the best.

25 Dec 1934

The French pilot, Raymond LeMotte, made an international speed  
record for land planes with 303 465 kilometers per hour at the  
Lisses air field. The "Caudron type 460" engine used had the  
cowling, body casings, fuel tanks, seat, fittings, wheels, compressor  
oil pump, carburettor, and many other small parts made of  
elektron.

- 13 -

page 35:

1935

The world production in magnesium amounts to approx. 15,000 tons a year.

1936

Establishment of the British Magnesium Elektron Ltd. who is working according to the process of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft.

page 39/40:

Illustration: Exhibition of the Magnesium Conference in Berlin in 1937 ( see text page 45)

page 41:

1936

The German Daimler Company for applied physical chemistry rewards Director Dr. Pistor its highest reward, the Daimler medal, for his merits in light metal technology.

February 1937

The Magnesium Elektron Ltd. in its new plant at Clifton Junction takes up the production of magnesium.

1 May 1937

The 12<sup>th</sup> plaque for the "National Holiday of the German People" consists of elektron. Approx 100 tons of magnesium are used for this purpose.

8 May 1937

" ....As a special material I should like to mention magnesium of which we have unlimited quantities at our disposal and with the use of which we can manufacture a great variety of alloys." (Minister President Goring in his address at the opening of the exhibition "The Nation at Work" in Düsseldorf.)

page 42:

3 July 1937

International auto mobile race for the Vanderbilt Cup on the Roosevelt-Field-Track near New York. Telegram: "First start of German racing cars in North America since 1918. Brilliant success of Auto Union. Rosenberger winning Vanderbilt Cup. Dolius fourth. Highly stressed elektron parts contributed to success. - Autounion."

- 13 -

- 14 -

24 July 1937

At the annual meeting of the Beirat (advisory Council) of the German Group Elektro Industry the chief of the "Office for German Research and Working Materials", Colonel Loeb, demonstrates, for the first time, an electro motor embodying a manifold application of elektro. (Motor capacity 5 hp, total weight 39 kilograms).

1 August 1937

The price for 1 kilo of elektro material amounts to RM 1.50

5 and 6 Nov. 1937

Magnesium Conference in Berlin.

page 43/44:

Illustration: Hydronelium motor-driven rail car  
(see text page 46)

page 45:

19 November 1937

Press report of 19 Nov. 1937:

"Magnesium as working material: The Chamber for Industry and Commerce of Solingen draws the attention of firms using iron and non-ferrous metals to the employment of magnesium and its alloys. The technical advantages of magnesium alloys are among other things their low weight, their high braking limit, their easy machinability, and their excellent suitability for casting. Magnesium, a purely German product, is available in sufficient quantities."

1937

At the Paris World Exhibition Elektro and Hydronelium, the world famous light metal alloys of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Bitterfeld, secure the Grand Prix.

1 Dec. 1937

The light metal plants of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Bitterfeld, send a radio commentary over the Deutschland Sender (Germany Radio).

- 14 -

- 15 -

page 45:

7 Dec. 1937

The Deutschland Sender brings a program "Magnesium, the German light metal".

page 46:

December 1937

Use of the first 2 Reich Railroad Hydramallum motor-driven rail cars built by H.A.M. in conjunction with the Elektronmetall. Light Construction Department of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Bitterfeld, on the Steinach-Rothenburg, and Rothenburg-Jombuchl lines.

1937

Since its foundation the Elektronmetall G.m.b.H., Cannstatt, which developed elektron die-casting, produced approx 4 million parts from elektron according to this process.

11 - 13 January 1938

Magnesium Conference in Frankfurt am Main.

14 February 1938

Opening of the new light metal laboratory of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Bitterfeld, which is one of the biggest and most modern research institutes of the world in this special field.

page 47/48

Illustration: Installation of a pressure mould and elektron pressure rods.

page 49:

1938:

Standardisation of the magnesium alloys according to German Industrial Standards No.1717.

August 1938

The Focke-Wulf plane Fw 200 "Condor" flies from Berlin to New York in the record time of 24 hours 54 minutes. The return flight made after but a short landing took only 19 hours 54 minutes.



- 16 -

page 49:

On this machine the various parts made from elektron with a total weight of 627 kilogram proved their high value as an excellent light construction material under greatly varying conditions of strain.

Sep 1938

In the light metal plants of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Bitterfeld, a 15,000 ton forging press is put into operation; it is one of the biggest light metal presses in the world.

13 Oct 1938

Director Adolf Beck, manager of the light metal plants of the I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Bitterfeld, is rewarded the Lilienthal medal for his achievements in the development of magnesium and aluminum alloys, and in 1939

page 50:

is appointed honorary doctor of the Aachen technical college.

February 1939

The raw material proportions of the alloy Ar 19 are 25% of elektron and 4.0% of magnesium; they prove their great efficiency and reliability during the world flight of 40,000 kilometers.

page 51/52

Illustration: Lockheed P-200 "Condor" over New York

(see text page 49)

- 16 -

- 17 -

page 55: 30 YEARS OF ELEKTRO

From the history of a German product.

Frankfurt on Main 1909

"We are in the year of 1909. "International Aircraft Exhibition, Frankfurt on Main" advertise by posters at home and abroad which invite people to the exhibition of the first fragile aeronautical machines made by human hand. Thousands follow the invitation, through the passage in order to see what was invented by a genius and fabricated by skilled hands.

The stand of the "Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron" is of particular attraction. There is metal, a gleaming silvery grey display on the tables. "Lead", thinks the spectator, and prepares himself to lift a heavy bar. But when he does lift one of the dull grey bars, he flies up at the unexpected lightness of the material. In fact the metal is lighter than aluminum known hitherto, and the spectator hears for the first time of the new product called "Elektron".

How highly the value of the new light alloy was estimated and what applications were prophesied for its future is reported by the "Ile Wochen Rundschau" (weekly) the official paper of the International airplane exhibition, on 25 August 1909. Although the project was viewed with too much understated optimism at that time concerning some points, it is remarkable that the developments of the last 30 years have not disappointed early expectations, although results were perhaps achieved by slightly different ways and means.

"The Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron on the Ile".

The attractive pavilion of the Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron, which towers above the exhibition hall 11/12 meters on the south side may be considered one of its main attractions. The goods on display are arranged in 5 show windows, and 4 big doors invite the visitor to enter and view the inside of the pavilion which is crowned by a cupola supported by slender metal pillars. In the middle window of the pavilion the new elektron metal of the Griesheim-Fabrik is exhibited . . . .

The elektron metal, patents for which have been registered in all civilized states, and which is exhibited by the Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron, is an extremely interesting material for the construction of airplanes and aero engines. The lightest metal used in this branch of engineering at present is aluminum and some aluminum alloys, the breaking and bending limits of which, however, lag far behind of the new metal since their specific weight, at approx 3,0, is 50% higher than that of the elektron metal.

- 17 -

The Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron found that magnesium can be used for technical purposes and that the figures for the material value of pure magnesium, which are not particularly high, can be considerably improved by the addition of one or more other metals; in this way alloys are obtained which combine great firmness, toughness and elasticity as well as machinability with an extremely low specific weight of 1.75 to 2.0. These alloys have a beautiful silvery colour, when they are polished, and a good sound. Their weather resistance complies with all possible demands, when exposed to the air forms a protective oxide skin. The cast elektron metal has a tensile strength up to 18 kilograms per square millimeter and an elongation of up to 5%. Under compression, such as pressing, drawing, rolling, etc. its physical properties particularly its breaking and elastic limits are considerably improved without the specific weight increasing to any appreciable extent. In this way a tensile of up to 35 kilograms per square millimeter can be obtained and an elongation of up to 18%. By means of the kind and quantity of the additional alloys the properties of elektron metal can be varied in wide limits.

page 54:

The applicability of elektron is, therefore, very considerable. The metal is particularly valuable whenever a low specific weight combined with high firmness is required. Its chief use will be for air transport but it will be very useful in the construction of automobiles, the production of all kinds of engines, and in many cases in the construction of various apparatus and instruments.

Since, as mentioned before, the elektron metal in its physical properties is superior to aluminum and its alloys, only 60% of the weight necessary when aluminum is used are required in construction. If, for instance, the frame-work of a Zeppelin air ship consisting of <sup>weighing 2500 kilograms</sup> ~~weighs 2500 kilograms~~, in the frame work of the same strength approx 2500 kilograms in weight would be saved, if elektron is used. This could be utilized either by carrying more gas and ballast, thereby increasing the radius of action, or by the installation of more powerful and heavier engines, or by a greater number of passengers. Nor would it be impossible to reduce the whole air ship in size and correspondingly in cost by using this metal. Similar results may be expected in the automobile industry. A large automobile motor at present contains approx 200 kilograms of aluminum which are equivalent to approx 125 kilograms of elektron. These examples may suffice to illustrate the uses of elektron metal.

The exhibition of the Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron shows the elektron metal as castings and as a pressed metal in all types of profiles and machined parts. The products exhibited give a good insight into its properties, applications and machinability."

page 54:

Already from the "Prize Competition for Strong, Light Metals" organized on the occasion of the "Ila" Elektron emerges as the winner and best complies with six specifications laid down for the contest:

1. Lowest possible specific weight
2. Extremely high breaking limit
3. Lowest possible elongation
4. Highest possible point
5. Highest possible machinability to be established by the submission of semi-finished and finished parts as used in aircraft and engine construction.
6. Highly non-corrosive (alkaline and acid reactions).

Right of way - for the lightest metal alloy.

With its first public appearance the new material is indicating an advance which countless practical difficulties for the time being in the most varied fields of application cannot hold up. Even though technical and economic progress was slowed down by the World War and its after effects, precisely the experiences gathering the war in the field of aeronautics and motor construction increasingly furthering the use of Elektron for multifarious purposes in both of these industrial branches. After the success in the competition of 1909 another one follows in 1921 when, at a light metal piston competition organized by the Reich Transportation Ministry an Elektron piston is awarded the first prize. But also in other fields not yet dominated by the slogan, "Flight the dead weight", Elektron, due to its predecessors, secures a firm footing. Already in 1921-1922 its advantageous etching and pressing properties were recognized by the well-known pressing specialists, August Leimbach and O. Kalm, and thereby the foundation was laid for the general utilization of Elektron in the making of printing blocks.

64,000 kilometers with Elektron.

Taken from an archive we have before us a small inconspicuous piece of paper dating from 1927 - the flight chart of the Italian general De Finetti.

On 13 Febr. the Savoia-flyingboat "Santa Maria" takes off from Olbia on the Sardinian Coast. The flight goes along West Africa: Kaniro, Villa Ciseros, Coloma. On 21 Febr. the Atlantic is crossed from Dakar. The Cape Verde Islands appear, silently greets the isolated and craggy island of Fern, da Noronha. Then Port Natal is reached. Pernambuco, Bahia, Rio de Janeiro, Santos, Porto Alegre, Buenos Aires, Montevideo - right across the endless expanse of land up to the northern coast over the island groups of the Atlantic and along the coasts and overland to Hot Springs in Mexico. And tanking on a distant cruising gasoline to escape sets the machine on fire. The continuation of the flight so brilliantly successful until then, seems doubtful. With a



- 20 -

page 55: reserve flying-boat of the same type put at the disposal of the daring pilot, by Mussolini the "Santa Lucia II" the flight across the United States to the Eastern point of America, the city of Trepassey, is continued. On 21 May 1927 the Pinedo crosses the Atlantic for the second time and on 23 May 1927 he reaches the vicinity of the Azores.

44,000 kilometers of total flying distance and now just before the goal the bad luck not to be able to find the island group somewhere in the vicinity and to have to descend on a tumultuous and open sea, and to have to abandon the machine leaked by high waves on all sides to its fate. But no misfortune can harm the two "Laso 500" -Isotta-Fraschini- engines, the cylinders, oil pumps and many detail parts of which are made of elektron. After eight difficult days the craft is towed to the Azores by a steamer. Hardly the engines start and the flight, continued according to schedule, ends with the landing in Reno on 16 June 1927, a complete success for pilot and material.

#### Elektron in England

In 1926 the working material of elektron achieves new success in the following connection:

The weight of vehicles limited by English law induces the designers to consider how, without prejudice to the rigidity of construction and the dependability of the propelling machinery the net weight of the vehicles can be reduced. Leading truck and bus works welcome the solution of the problem by an extensive use of elektron which from then on has remained the most important material for the construction of English vehicles.

#### Elektron for printing

Based upon the experiments dating from 1921 to 1922, to use elektron, the extremely light and exceptionally strong metal, well suited to etching, for the production of type sets, a special enterprise undertakes the manufacture of elektron blocks in 1929 and at the same time sets up an experimental laboratory in this field. This advance, moreover is not due to "lack of raw materials" nor to problems of the Four-Year Plan which at that time did not even exist, but only to the recognition that the use of elektron in the production of type sets was at least equal, if not superior from a practical point of view, to that of zinc and copper.

#### Structural material for aircraft engine ring.

To the successes of the flight around Europe in 1930, in which elektron, used for engine casings, gasoline tanks and many details, participated are appropriately added the successes



page 55: of the two flights of the Italian Air-Marshall Balbo. The Isotta-Fraschini engines used in the flight to South America in 1931 and in the flight to North America in 1933 have many essential detail parts made of elektron the properties of which are tested under difficult conditions. The world-record flight of the Italian Dornier, the flight of the De Havilland "Comet" from England to Australia in hardly 72 hours, the Round-Europe flight in 1934 and the international speed record of the Frenchman Delmotte - all these flights testify, to the universal usefulness of elektron which, because of its light weight and great strength, is especially suitable for these purposes.

page 56: 1. German Product

The economic revival starting in 1933 opens new vistas for the light alloy of elektron consisting exclusively of German raw materials. To answer increasing extent the reviving industry is employing the exceptionally light, strong and easily machined materials in air plane, motor vehicle and railroad construction, for portable machinery and equipment, textile machines, radio and long-distance transmitting apparatus, film, photo, optical instruments, in electrical engineering, for measuring instruments, for sanitary installations, for printing, agricultural and forestry equipment and machinery, for office supplies, domestic appliances etc. (See pages 68-112.)

With the elektron plaques issued on 1 May 1937, the "National Holiday of the German People", every German for the first time is given this light metal in his hands and a few days later on the occasion of the opening of the Düsseldorf exhibition "Schaffendes Volk" (Nation at Work) Minister president Goerring points to magnesium as a special material "which we have at our disposal in plenty and through the utilization of which we can produce the most varied alloys."

In the same year the international automobile races held at the Roosevelt Field Race Course in New York for the Vanderbilt Cup witness the victory of a German car appearing for the first time in North America - a victory which elektron parts helped to achieve.

A valuable international acknowledgment for elektron and hydraulium is the Grand Prix awarded at the World Exhibition in Paris in 1937 - the highest award for materials not considered to be "a first substitute" materials.

The magnesium conventions in Berlin of 1937 and in Frankfurt-am-Main in 1938 and the exhibitions in connection therewith which for the first time give a general survey of the manifold uses of magnesium alloys to-day in all fields, meet with the greatest interest not only in scientific circles but also among the public and in the press.

More and more the "field of usefulness" so essential to every material, is evidencing for elektron as well. Here, where only a few years ago the utilization of these

- 22 -

page 56:

light metal alloys was for one reason or another considered impossible, they gained a new time - 4400 - the position they deserve not only as an "alternative", but as a fully accepted raw material having supreme properties with special characteristics not to be surpassed by other materials. Tiringly work is being carried on in the laboratories and shops. It suffices for the many unknown, who, in quiet research work and with an iron sense of duty, are collaborating in this development, to know that every new success - a victory in an international automobile race - a world air record - is partly due to them. 30 years' work of pioneering and development have become a fine tradition and have made the lightest alloys a concept:

## ELEKTROL.

page 57:

Illustration: The accompanying table gives a survey of the specific weights of various metals and metal alloys, whereby the particularly low weight of Elektron and Hydronalium clearly demonstrates the expediency of using these light alloys. The Reichsbahn rail car selected as an example in the survey was constructed with the most extensive use of the material Hydronalium.

## Comparison of specific weights.

Elektron	Hydronalium	Aluminium	Isodur	Line	Iron	Nickel	Copper
1.6 g/cm <sup>3</sup>	2.6	2.7	2.8	7.1	7.9	8.6	8.9
Silver	Lead	Gold	Platinum				
10.5	11.3	19.3	21.4				

page 58:

## DIAGRAMATIC ILLUSTRATION

of the production of magnesium metal from the raw material to the finished product.

It is a long way from the raw materials and the production of magnesium to the motor vehicle oil pump cast in Elektron or the aeroplane cowling formed from Elektron sheets. What German chemists invented and German engineers are continually perfecting can be seen from the accompanying table and supplementary series of illustrations "From Lohmühle Mine Deposits to the Molten Metal State."

- 22 -

- 23 -

page 59: Table showing:

"Schematic illustration of the production of magnesium from the raw material to the finished product."

page 60:

"From Dolomite: Mine Deposits to the Molten Metal Stage."

page 61: Illustration 1:

In the German Dolomite the magnesium production finds one of its initial products, which is . . . .

page 62: Illustration 2:

processed by means of electrolysis . . . . .

page 63: Illustration 3:

a liquid metal in giant two-ton containers and brought to the casting machine. . . .

page 64: Illustration 4:

Unceasingly from the tilted container flows the silver-white liquid metal on the belt of the passing moulds . . .

page 65: Illustration 5:

which after a few minutes of the still hot but already set substance ready for shipment.

page 66: Illustration 6:

material which is not dispatched immediately is stored where diligent hands pile up the shining bars in rows.

- 24 -

page 67:

FIELDS OF APPLICATION OF ELEKTRON, HYDRAULIK AND  
IGODUR

The following data painstakingly compiled for the first time over a period of many years do not pretend to completeness; corrections and supplementary information are therefore requested, so that they can be included in a later edition.

page 68:

## List of Applications

E - Elektron	Hy - Hydraulik	Ig - Igodur
Airplane, airplane engine and airship construction		Page 69
Motor Vehicle Construction		Page 73
Motor Cycles - Bicycles		Page 77
Acillones-Structures		Page 78
Ship Construction		Page 80
Portable Machines and Equipment - Transportation means		Page 82
Textile Machines		Page 83
General Engineering Machine tools Fixtures		Page 85
Electro-technic		Page 89
Radio and transmitting equipment		Page 90
Film-Photo-Optical instruments		Page 91
Measuring instruments		Page 93
Printing equipment-Paper		Page 94
Chemical industry and related branches		Page 95
Domestic appliances -Food industry		Page 96
Agricultural and forestry equipment and machinery		Page 100
Fire fighting		Page 101
Sanitary equipment		Page 102

DOCUMENT BOOK II BUEGIE No. 18

- 25 -

Building - road construction	Page 103
Exterior and Interior architecture	Page 104
Aircraft	Page 109
Office Supplies	Page 110
Miscellaneous applications	Page 112

- 25 -



## Flugzeug-, Flugmotoren-, Luftschiffbau



### Motor

Ansaugrohre E  
 Armaturen für Treibstoffpumpen E  
 Gebläsegehäuse E  
 Gebläseräder E  
 Getriebegehäuse E  
 Kurbelgehäuse E und Ig  
 Kühlwasserpumpengehäuse Hy  
 Magnetgehäuse E  
 Motorkolben E  
 Ölpumpengehäuse E  
 Ölsumpte E  
 Spiralgehäuse E  
 Treibstoffbehälterkopfe E  
 Zylinderabdeckhauben E  
 Zylinderkopfe Hy

### Treibstoff- und Ölbehälter E

### Luftschauben Ig und E

### Steuerung

Bremsen E  
 Fußrasten für Seitensteuer E  
 Gehäuse E  
 Gehäuse für automatische Steuerungen E und Hy  
 Handgriffe E  
 Steuerungsteile E

1. Argus As 100 Motor mit Teilen aus Elzeon  
 2. BMW 321 14 A 8 Motor mit Teilen aus Elzeon  
 3. BMW 321 14 A 8 Motor mit Teilen aus Elzeon

aeroplane-, aeroplane engine-, an airship

motor

Exhaust tube E

Armatures for fuel pumps E

Blower casing E

Blower gears E

Gear case E

Crank-case<sup>3</sup> and lg

Cooling water pump case y

Pole frame E

Engine pistons E

Oil pump case E

Oil pipes E

Spiral casing E

Fuel tank heads E

Cylinder cover cowling E

Cylinder heads y

Fuel and Oil Containers E

Propellers 1 and E

Steering

Brakes E

Controls for lateral steering E

Casing E

Casing for automatic steering E and y

Land levers E

1. Argus as 100-horsepower with Steering parts E  
elektron parts
2. Bramo 3h 140-horsepower with elektron parts
3. Hirth H. 60 3/2-engine with elektron parts

## Flugzeug-, Flugmotoren-, Luftschiffbau



### Fahrgestell

- Anlaufräder E
- Fahrgestellprofilrippen E
- Fahrgestellverkleidungen E
- Radgabeln E
- Schwimmer Hy
- Sporne E
- Spornradgabeln E
- Spornräder E
- Traversen E



### Zelle - Flügel

- Fußböden E
- Motorträger E
- Motorverkleidungen E
- Rumpfverkleidungen E
- Sitzverteilungen E
- Teile für Flügelkonstruktionen E
- Tragwerkrippen E
- Türabnehmer E



1. Teil des Flugzeugbaus  
2. Teil des Flugzeugbaus  
3. Teil des Flugzeugbaus

## Flugzeug-, Flugmotoren-, Luftschiffbau



### Apparate

Apparatekästen E

Teile für Bordfunkgeräte E und Hy

Teile für Bordverständigungs-  
geräte E



### Verschiedenes

Deckel E

Einlaufbiegungen E

Fallschirmschlosser Hy

Flanschen E

Gewebe für Schalldämpfer Hy

Hebel E

Kabinensessel E und Hy

Lagerböcke E

Luftrohren E

Pendelrahmen E

Polgehausa E

Rohrverbindungen E

Signalpistolen Hy und Iz

Strebenverkleidungen E

Wärmeluftsammler E



Aeroplane-, aeroplane engine-, and airship construction

- 70 -

Carriage

Starting and gears E  
Chassis profile members E  
valances L  
Gear forks E  
Float valve ay  
Tail skis E  
Tail skid wheel forks E  
Tail skid wheels E  
Connecting ties E

Chamber-ence

Floors E  
Engine supports E  
Engine linings E  
Fuel-line linings E  
Seat stiffening E  
Parts for win construction E  
Rib supports E  
Door frames E

1. Diesel engine casing (1g)
2. Air-tube casing (E)
3. Engine supports (E)

- 71 -

Equipment and Parts

Equipment boxes E  
Parts for radio equipment  
E and Gy  
Parts for internal communi-  
cation equipment E

Miscellaneous

Cover lids E  
Flexure regulators E  
Parashute locks ay  
Flanges E  
Woven material for  
silencer Gy  
Levers E  
Cabin arm-chairs E and ay  
Peculiarities E  
Air tubes E  
Pendulum frames E  
Pole casing E  
Pipe fittings E  
Signal pistols Hy and Ig  
Strut linings E  
Hot air reservoir E  
1. Lie for panel molding (E)  
2. Molded panel parts  
3. Propellers (1g)



## Flugzeug-, Flugmotoren-, Luftschiffbau

### Luftschiffbau



1. Fahrgerüstteile (H)  
2. Kabineneinbauten (H)  
3. Signalpfeile (H)

Anrichtaschränke E

Bettische mit Schrank E

Bücherschränke E

Büroschränke E

Geschirrschränke E

Kuchenschränke E

Sanitätschränke E

Spülbecken für Anrichtaschränke E

Stühle Hy

Sessel E und Hy

Tischplatten E

Fensterbänke E

Fußböden E

Zwischenwände für Passagierräume E

Wandschutzeinlagen E

Verbindungsstücke E

Landeräder E

Verkleidungen für Landeräder E

## Kraftwagenbau

### Vergaser- und Dieselmotor

Ansaugrohre E

Benzinfilter Hy

Gehäuse und Flügelräder für Wassertropfen Hy

Kolben E

Kolbenbolzenplett E

Kurbelgehäuse-Ober- und Unterteile E

Ölpumpengehäuse und Deckel E

Ölwannen E

Riemenscheiben E

Stößstangen E und Hy

Stößelführungen E

Vergaserteile E und Hy

Verschiedene Deckel E

Windflügel E

Zylinderhauben E

### Getriebe

Gehäuse E

Gehäusedeckel E und Hy

Räderkastendeckel E

Teile für Flüssigkeitsgetriebe Hy

### Kupplung

Gehäuse E

Glocken E

Lamellenhalter E

Topfe E

### Hinterachse

Deckel E

Differentialgehäuse E

### Anlasser

Befestigungen E

Bügel E

Deckel E

Gehäuse E

Hebel E



1. Kurbelgehäuse (H)  
2. Pleuell (H)  
3. Pleuellbolzen (H)  
4. Pleuellplett (H)  
5. Pleuellplett (H)  
6. Pleuellplett (H)  
7. Pleuellplett (H)  
8. Pleuellplett (H)  
9. Pleuellplett (H)  
10. Pleuellplett (H)

-72-

aeroplane-, aero engine-,  
and airship construction.

Airship Construction.

Sideboard cabinets B

Plain tables with cabinet B

Book cases B

Office cabinets A

Crockery cabinets B

Kitchen cabinets B

First aid cabinets A

Wash-basins for sideboard  
cabinets B

Chairs B

Arm-chairs B and Ay

Table leaves B

Window seats B

Flooring B

Partitions for passenger  
rooms B

Protective layers for walls B

Connecting pieces B

Landing wheels B

Landing wheels jacks B

1. Chassis parts (B)
2. Cabinet arm-chairs (B)
3. Signal pistols (Ay)

-73-

Motor Vehicle Construction

Carburettor and Diesel Engines  
Injection tubes B

Injection Filters Ay

\* Casing and impellers for  
water pumps Ay

Pistons B

Piston bolt heads B

Crank-case, upper and lower parts B

Oil pump casings and covers B

Oil wells B

Pulleys B

Push rods B and Ay

Tappet guides B

Carburettor parts B and Ay

Miscellaneous cover lids B

Fan blades B

Cylinder heads B

Gears

Housing B

Housing covers B and Ay

Gear box covers B

Parts for fluid drive Ay

Clutches

Housing B

Bells B

Disc supports B

Pans B

Rear axle

Cover B

Differential housing B

Starter

Attachments B

Straps B

Covers B

Housing B

Pedals B

1. Crank-case (B)
2. Tetra 67 engine with  
elektron parts
3. Three pulleys for  
propeller fan (B)



1. Querschnitt des Feldes 18 (18)  
2. Ober- und Untergehäuse (18)  
3. Nockenmechanismus (18)

#### Zündung

Kupplungen E  
Zündverteilergehäuse E

#### Lenkung

Deckel E  
Gehäuse E und Hy  
Kontaktringe E und Hy  
Steuerräder E  
Steuerscheibenlager E

#### Bremsen

Becken E  
Nabe E  
Nockenhalter E  
Schilde E

#### Geschwindigkeitsmesser

Anlaufschalter E  
Gehäuse E und Hy  
Wellenlagerbuchsen E

#### Taxameter

Gehäuse E  
Gehäusedeckel E

#### Uhrgehäuse E und Hy

#### Wärmesensoren

Gehäuse E

#### Wasserpumpen

Flügelräder E  
Gehäuse E

#### Facettenringe für Anzeigergeräte Hy

#### Scheinwerfer

Gehäuse Hy  
Stützen Hy

#### Lichtmaschine

Naben für Keilriemenscheiben E

#### Schleiflampen

Gehäuse Hy



1. Beckenring (18)  
2. Nockenmechanismus mit Gehäuse und Nockenmechanismus  
3. Nockenmechanismus (18)

#### Leuchteleuchtungs-Armaturen Hy

#### Außen- und Innenarmaturen

Abdeckleisten Hy  
Blechhüllen für Türgummi-  
puffer Hy  
Deckel für Plakettenfassungen Hy  
Fahrtrichtungsanzeiger  
" - Gehäuse Hy  
" - Verstreuer Hy

#### Fensterkurbeln Hy

#### Firmenzeichen Hy

#### Glasschalter Hy

#### Griffe Hy

#### Haubenbüchsen Hy

#### Haubenhalter Hy

#### Kühlerfiguren Hy

#### Kühlerschutzgitter Hy

#### Nummernschildhalter E

#### Radzierleppen Hy

#### Regenleiten Hy

#### Reiterschutzhüllen Hy

#### Säulen für Fensterrahmen Hy

#### Seiten Spiegel Hy

#### Scheibenrahmen Hy

#### Scheibenwischer

" - Abdeckkappen Hy  
" - Gehäuse E  
" - Leisten Hy

#### Stoßbecken E

#### Stoßstangen Hy

#### Stützwinkel E

#### Trittbrettleisten Hy

#### Türdrücker Hy

#### Verdeckrahmen für Kabrioletts

E und Hy

#### Zierleisten Hy

-74-

## Motor Vehicle Construction

## Ignition

Couplings  
Distributor housing E

## Steering

Covers E  
Housings E and Hy  
Steering gears E  
Steering shaft bearings E

## Brakes

Blocks E  
Levers E  
Cam pivots E  
Drums E

## Speedometer

Starting discs  
Housing E and Hy  
Shaft bearing bushings E

## Taximeter

Housing E  
Housing cover E

## Clock Case E and Hy

## Seat Indicator

Case E

## Warning Sirens

Steel blades E  
Housing E

## Facet rings for indicators Hy

## Head lamps

Housing Hy  
Supports Hy

## Generator

Bands for key-pulleys E

## Rear lamps

Casing Hy

1. Oil wells of the Ford V8 (E)
2. Opel oil pump casing (E)
3. Rear axle housing (E)

-75-

## Motor Vehicle Construction

Internal lighting fittings Hy  
External and Internal fittings.

Leave covers Hy  
Casing plates for rubber door  
pads Hy  
Covers for plaque holders Hy  
Direction indicator  
" " casing Hy  
" " supports E

Window cranks Hy  
First-name plates Hy  
Glass holding rings Hy  
Candles Hy  
Lead staves Hy  
Supporting head arms Hy  
Radiator Ornamental figures Hy  
Radiator protective shield Hy  
Number plate holder E  
Ornamental hub caps Hy  
Rear ledges Hy  
Protective tire sheathing Hy  
Columns for window frames Hy  
Side mirrors Hy  
Window-pane frames Hy  
Window wipers  
" cover caps Hy  
" casing E  
" ledges Hy  
Fenders E  
Bumpers Hy  
Supporting elbows E  
Running board ledges Hy  
Door handles Hy  
Cover frames for convertibles  
E and Hy  
Ornamental ledges Hy

1. Mountings (Hy)
2. Fog lamp with housing, of  
Hydronelium
3. Side mirror (Hy)

## Kraftwagenbau



## Kingsley

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{1}{2} m v^2 \right) = \frac{1}{2} m \frac{d}{dt} (v^2) = \frac{1}{2} m \frac{d}{dt} (v_x^2 + v_y^2 + v_z^2)$$

1. *Chrysomelidae*: 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 2676, 2677, 2678, 267

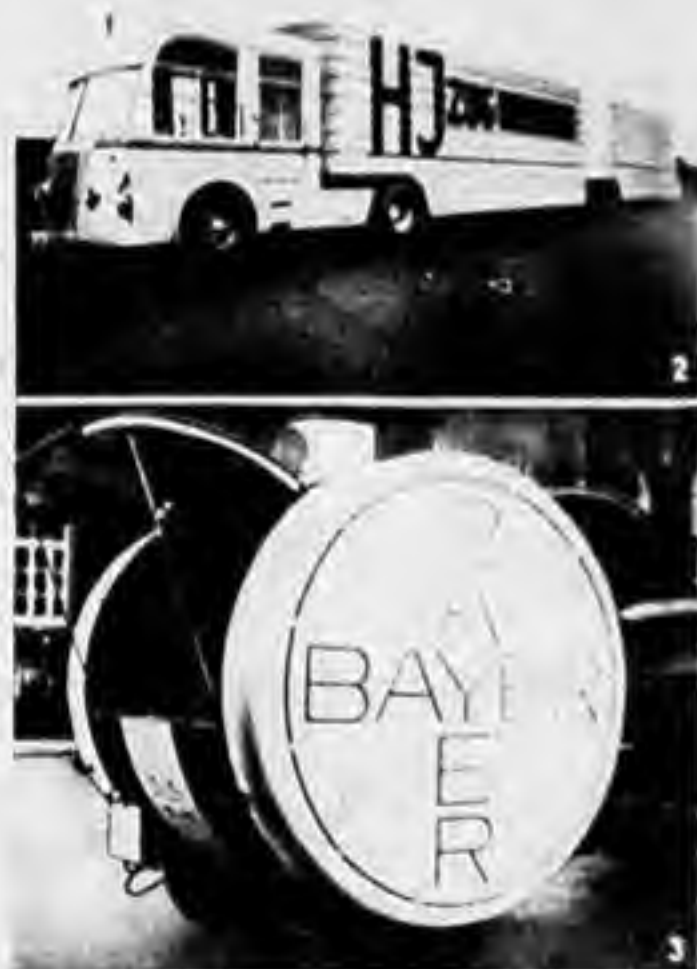
\* *Journal of Interpersonal Violence* 19(12):1353-1366, 2004.  
© 2004 Sage Publications. 10.1177/0886260504267004  
DOI: 10.1177/0886260504267004

Received 15 July 2004  
Accepted 29 July 2004

$$\frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} |f(re^{it})|^2 dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{f}(n)|^2 r^{2n},$$

$$R(r) = \left( \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\hat{f}(n)|^2 r^{2n} \right)^{1/2}.$$

$2.0 \times 10^{-4}$  g/l;  $5.0 \times 10^{-4}$  g/l;  
 $5.0 \times 10^{-4}$  g/l;  $5.0 \times 10^{-4}$  g/l



## Sätze

LIFE FORTHY

Sitzgesellshaft und Ethy

## Räder

### Experiments I

Leitwagenscheinpostkarte E

## Verschiedenes

### Appendix 1: Instructions E

Beholdungsreihe E

## Background

Docket 1

Durchführungsstange E

For  $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}^n$ , let  $\alpha^T = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)$ .

### Fugacity factor $\Gamma$

Holtz et al.

K. L. G. 1420064120 E

lagobuckel

Lagerschulden E

Luftdruckmessungen E

Verschlußklappen E

Zwischenfaktischen E

1. Sonderkategorie für Synthesen (1)
2. Aufbau des rel. Zugs aus Elektrolyt
3. Sonderkategorie für Feststoff-Elektrolytgewinnung (1)





-76-

## Motor Vehicle Construction

## Coach work

Body of the propaganda train\*  
of the Hitler Youth E  
Trailer body with loud-speaker  
equipment for the Meyer-Werk,  
Leverkusen, of the I.G.  
Farbenindustrie AktienGesell-  
schaft AG

Body for special cross-country  
Laimler-Benz sport car E

Panels for special bodies  
E and Hy

Delivery truck body for the Reich  
postal service E

Lies for Elektron and steel-  
plate molds E

## Seats

Bags E and Hy  
Seat frames E and Hy

## wheels

Truck wheels E  
Truck disk wheels E

## Miscellaneous

Closing flanges E  
Ventilator tubes E  
Stays E  
Covers E  
Lock rings E  
Protective spring covers E  
Impellers E  
Levers E  
Ball-bearing cages E  
Bearing blocks E  
Bearing shells E  
Air duct E  
Screw caps E  
Intermediate flanges E

1. Special coach work for sport  
car (E)
2. Bodies of the HJ-train, of  
Elektron
3. Special coach for sound-film  
trailer (Hy)

-77-

## Motorcycles - Bicycles

## Motorcycles.

Fuel tanks for racing models E

Cover for air escape E

" " gear housing E

" " engine housing E

" " oil trap E

" " oil pump E

" " gear housings E

" " gearchange E

" " guard tube E

" " steering housing E

" " overflow E

" " tool box E

Air escape cocks E

Gear housing E

Handle clamps Hy

Card levers Hy

Locking nuts Hy

Bent pipes E

Crank-case E

Oil pump housing E

Ornamental protective plates Hy

Protective bonnets for

gear-box covers E

Protective bonnets for pulleys E

" " " " cylinder

heads E

Flywheels E

Sprayed coatings for iron fuel

tanks Hy

Lost caps E

Tapet bushings E (boxes\*)

Tapet guides E

Fuel tanks Hy

Interrupter housing Hy

Cone screws E

Screw parts Hy

## Bicycles

Lynard box Hy

Rims E

Ornaments Hy

Wing-nuts Hy

Forks Hy

Auxiliary motor housing E and Hy

Lamp case Hy

Frames E

Seat supports E

Head lamp mirrors Hy

Steering head shields Hy (1)

1. Motorcycle parts (E)
2. Motorcycle parts (Hy)
3. Fuel tank sprayed with  
Hydronalium
4. Bicycle lamp and dynamo (Hy)



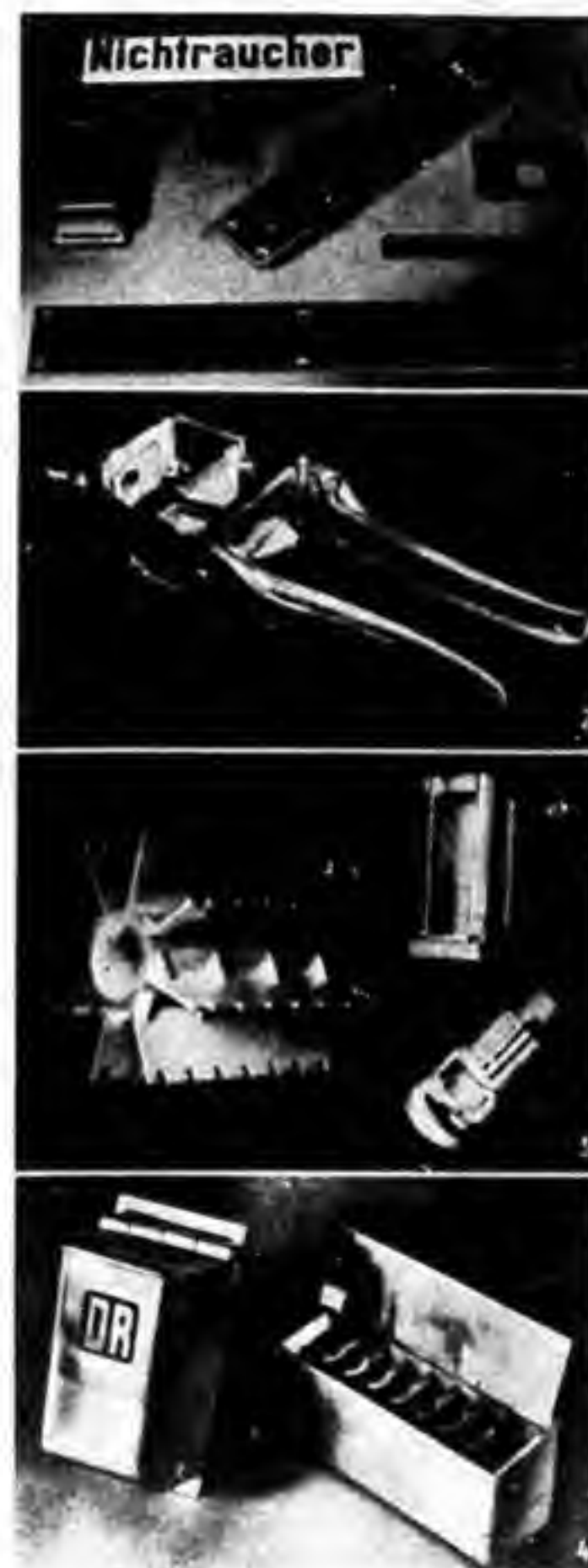
1. Triebwagen, weitgehend aus Hydranautum gebaut.  
2. Triebwagen-Drehgestell (Hy).  
3. Sitzgestelle, Gepäcknetzstützen, Fensterrahmen (Hy).  
4. Getriebegehäuse für Triebwagen (Hy).

### Triebwagen

Aufbauten Hy  
Untergestelle Hy  
Aschenbecher Hy  
Außenverkleidungen Hy  
Drehlürrme E  
Einsteiggriffe Hy  
Entlüfter Hy  
Federbruchstützen E  
Fensterkurbeln Hy  
Fensterrahmen Hy  
Gepäcknetzstützen E und Hy  
Handgriffe Hy  
Lüftergehäuse E  
Ölkühler E  
Pufferhülsen E  
Sandstreukästen E  
Schaltkästen für elektrische  
Widerstandsheizungen E  
Schilder Hy  
Sitzbankgestelle E und Hy  
Toilettenarmaturen Hy  
Türverschlüsse Hy  
Treibstoffbehälter E  
Ventilatorgehäuse mit Düse E  
Zierleisten Hy

### Dieselmotor

Abschlußdeckel E  
Einfüllstutzen E  
Entlüfterstutzen E  
Filtergehäuse und Deckel E  
Gehäuse E  
Getriebegehäuse E  
Kettenkästen E  
Kühler Hy  
Ölbehälter E  
Ölwannen E  
Pumpengehäuse E  
Pumpenkonsolen E  
Räderkästen E  
Reglergehäuse E  
Seitendeckel E  
Schwungradgehäuse E  
Treibstoffsammelbehälter E  
Ventilabdeckhauben E  
Ventilatorflügel E  
Verschalungsdeckel E  
Zwischenplatten E



1. Nichtraucher (Hy).  
2. Lokomotivmotor (Hy).  
3. Lokomotivboiler (Hy).  
4. Lokomotivtender (Hy).

### Lokomotiven

Heimatschilder Hy  
Hoheitszeichen Hy  
Triebwerksleuchten E  
Wasserstandanzeiger E

### Draisinen

Deckel E  
Deckel zum Antriebsgehäuse E  
Dichtungsflanschen E  
Laufnaben E  
Motorgehäuse E  
Motorträger E  
Radhaspeln E

### Küchen-, Speisewagen-, Bar- einrichtungen Hy

### Beleuchtungskörper Hy

### Lampen

Deckel E  
Gehäuse E  
Sockel E

### Schilder für Platzbelegung Hy

### Blechscharniere Hy

### Beschlagteile Hy

### Warnungstafeln E

### Fahrkarten-Lochzangen

Deckel Hy  
Gehäuse Hy  
Hebel Hy

### Fahrscheindrucker

Gehäuse E  
Klischeewalzen E  
Mantelrohr E  
Spinnen E

### Straßenbahnen

Aschenbecher Hy  
Außentüren Hy  
Beschlagteile Hy  
Bügel E  
Einsteiggriffe Hy  
Entlüfter Hy  
Fensterrahmen Hy  
Gepäcknetzstützen E und Hy  
Haltegriffe Hy  
Radscheiben E  
Schilder Hy  
Schilderhalter Hy  
Schleifkohlenhalter E  
Signalglocken Hy  
Sitzbankgestelle E  
Stromabnehmer  
Türverschlüsse Hy  
Zierleisten Hy



-78-

## Railway - Street-cars

## Power-driven cars

Bodies by  
 Undercarriage by  
 Ash-trays by  
 Outer covering by  
 Revolving-door arms 3  
 Entrance handles by  
 Air escapes by  
 Spring supports 2  
 Window crank handles by  
 Window frames by  
 Luggage-net holders 3 and by  
 Handles by  
 Ventilation box 3  
 Oil cooler 2  
 Buffer bushes 2  
 Sanding boxes 2  
 Switch boxes for electric resistance heating 2  
 Shields by  
 Bench-seats 2 and by  
 Toilet fittings by  
 Door locks by  
 Fuel tanks 2  
 Ventilator housing with nozzle 2  
 Ornamental ledges by  
 Diesel motor  
 Locking covers 2  
 Fillers 2  
 Air escape 2  
 Filter housing and covers 2  
 Housing 2  
 Gear housing 2  
 Chain box 2  
 Cooler by  
 Oil Containers 2  
 Oil wells 2  
 Pump housing 2  
 Pump consoles 2  
 Gear box  
 Governor housing 2  
 Side plates 2  
 Flywheel housing 2  
 Fuel collector tank 2  
 Valve-head caps 2  
 Ventilator leaves 2  
 Hatch covering 2  
 Diaphragm 2

1. Power-drive car, largely built of hydronalium
2. Oil cooler of power-driven car.
3. Seats, luggage-net holders, window frames (by).
4. Gear housing for power-driven cars (2).

-79-

## Railway - Street-cars

## Locomotives

Identity plates by  
 Identity symbols by  
 Driving wheel illumination 2  
 Water level indicator 2

## Trolley Cars

Covers 2  
 Covers for drive housing 2  
 Packing flanges 2  
 Running wheel hubs 3  
 Engine housing 2  
 Engine supports 2  
 Wheel chains 2  
 Kitchen, dining car, and bar equipment by

## Electroliner by

## Lamps

Covers 2  
 Housing 2  
 Bases 2

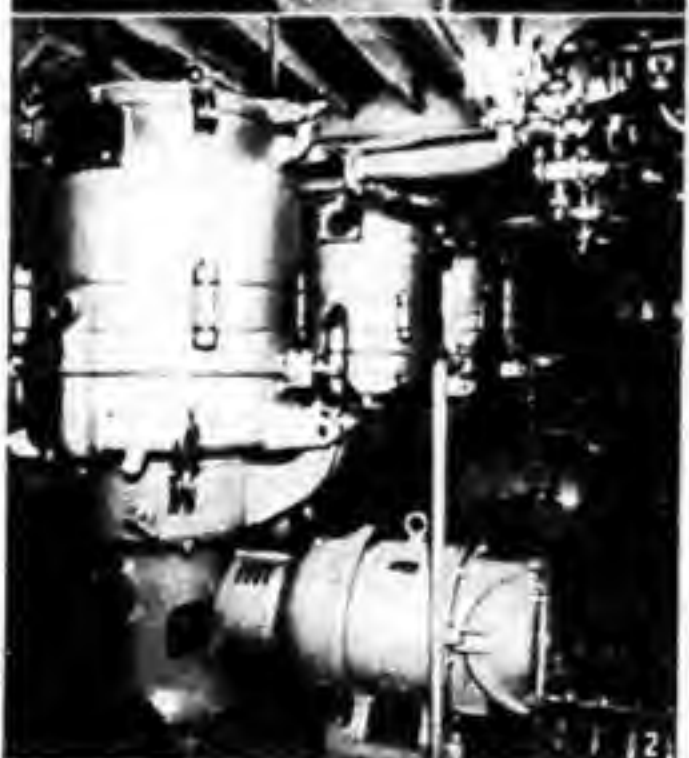
Plates to indicate occupied seats by

Line plates by  
 Accessories by  
 Warning notices 2  
 Ticket punches  
 Covers by  
 Body by  
 Levers by  
 Ticket printers  
 Casing 2  
 Block rollers 2  
 Tube enclosures 2  
 Guides 2

## Street cars

Ash-trays by  
 Outer doors by  
 Accessories by  
 Straps 2  
 Entrance handles by  
 Ventilators by  
 Window frames by  
 Luggage-net holders 2 and by  
 Handles by  
 Wheel discs 2  
 Shields by  
 Shield holders by  
 Carbon holder 2  
 Signal bells by  
 Bench frames 2  
 Collector (of current)  
 Door locks by  
 Ornamental ledges by

1. Accessories (by)
2. Ticket punch (by)
3. Parts for ticket printing device (2)
4. Ash-trays (by)



1. Gehäuse für Selbststeuer. mit Tochterkompaß (Hy)  
2. Separatorenanlage eines Walfangschiffes (Hy)

#### Motorjachten

Aufbauten hinter dem Steuerhaus Hy  
Motorfundamente Hy  
Schotten Hy  
Spanten Hy

#### Motorboote

Verkleidungsbleche Hy

#### Außenbordmotore

Auspuffrohre Hy  
Treibstoffbehälter Hy  
Treibstoffbehälter-  
verschraubungen Hy  
Unterwasserkörper Hy  
Antriebspropeller Hy

#### Pumpen

Gehäuse Hy

#### Ventile Hy

#### Schiffsfenster Hy

rund, rechteckig, fest, klappbar,  
schiebbar

#### Klüsen Hy

#### Poller Hy

#### Windstutzen für den Bootsbau Hy

#### Ventilatorflügel Hy

#### Schiffsglocken Hy

#### Geländerstützen Hy

#### Treppenschienen Hy



1. Bullauge (Hy)  
2. Schiffsglocke (Hy)  
3. Kompaßsaule (Hy)

#### Decksbehälter Hy

#### Decksverschraubungen Hy

#### Bootsbeschlagteile Hy

#### Faltbootbeschlagteile Hy

#### Bezeichnungsschilder Hy

#### Gehäuse f. Bootspositionslampen Hy

#### Gehäuse f. elektrische Armaturen Hy

#### Gehäuse für Selbststeuer. mit Tochterkompaß Hy

#### Kompaßsäulen Hy

#### Kompaßgehäuse E

#### Barometergehäuse Hy

#### Thermometergehäuse Hy

#### Nautische Instrumente

Halter Hy  
Kappen Hy  
Ringe Hy

#### Separatoren für Walfänger

Einlaufgefäße Hy  
Hauben Hy  
Haubendeckel Hy  
Ueberlaufkammern Hy



-80-

Ship Construction

Motor-driven yachts

Superstructure behind bridge (Hy)

Engine bed (Hy)

Bulkheads (Hy)

Frames (Hy)

Motor Boats

Panel coverings (Hy)

Out-board Motors

Exhaust pipes (Hy)

Fuel tanks (Hy)

Fuel tank couplings (Hy)

Under-water hull (Hy)

Propeller (Hy)

Pumps

Housing (Hy)

Valves (Hy)

Port-holes (Hy)

round, square, fixed, hinged,  
sliding

deck (Hy)

collars (Hy)

Wind-stays for boat building (Hy)

Fan blades (Hy)

Ship's bells (Hy)

Railing stanchions (Hy)

Stair rails (Hy)

1. Housing for automatic steering, complete with compass (Hy)
2. Separator installation in a whaling ship (Hy)

-81-

Ship Construction

Leak equipment

Leak couplings (Hy)

Boat fittings (Hy)

Folding boat accessories (Hy)

Identity plates (Hy)

Housing for navigation lights (Hy)

Housing for electric fittings (Hy)

Housing for automatic steering complete with compass (Hy)

Compass pedestal (Hy)

Compass box (Hy)

Barometer case (Hy)

Thermometer case (Hy)

Fautical Instruments

Holders (Hy)

Caps (Hy)

Rings (Hy)

Separators for whalers

inlet tanks (Hy)

Access (Hy)

Lead covers (Hy)

Overflow chambers (Hy)

1. Bells' eye (Hy)
2. Ship's bell (Hy)
3. Compass pedestal (Hy)



Handbohrmaschinen

Deckel E  
Gehäuse E  
Raderkasten E

Gehäuse für Preßluftwerkzeuge E

Tragbare Kompressoren für  
Preßluftbohrer E

Teile für Bohrmaschinen im  
Kalibergbau Hy



Motorgehäuse für Gesteinsbohr-  
maschinen E

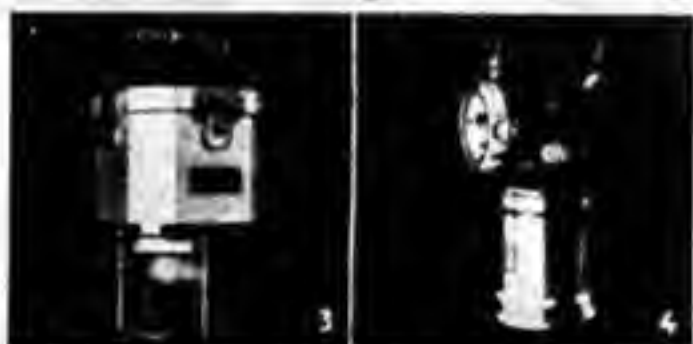
Mitnehmerhaspeln

Deckel E  
Gehäuse E  
Lager E  
Schutzkasten E  
Trommeln E

Förderkörbe Hy

Becherwerke

Becher Hy  
Deckel Hy  
Förderkörbe Hy  
Raderkasten Hy

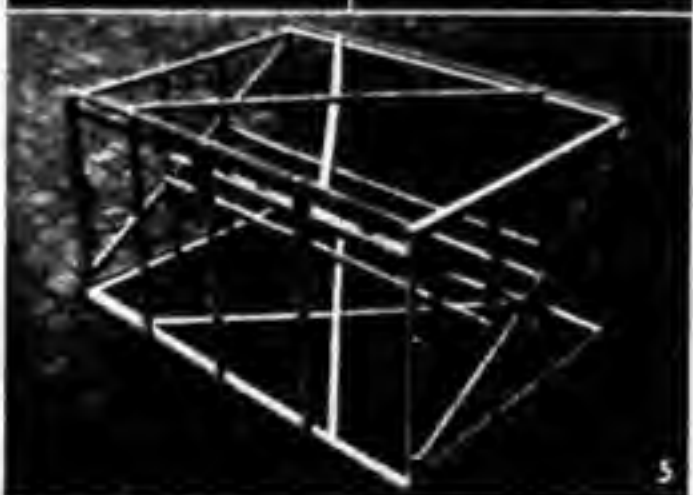


Bimsstein-Entlade-Anlagen E

Gehäuse für Sicherheitslampen E

Grubenlampen (englische) E

Schutzkörbe für elektrische Geräte Hy



Transportable Handmaschinen

Gehäuse E  
Handgriffe E  
Raderkastendeckel E  
Schutzdeckel E

Sackkarren E

Sackschnallen-Armaturen Hy

Verschlüsse für Möbelversand E

1. Hochfrequenz-Bohrmaschine (E)
2. Mitnehmerhaspel mit Teilen aus Elektron
3. 4. Grubenlampen (E)
5. Möbelversand-Vorschlag (E)



Abstreifsupports E  
Anstöße E  
Blockierhebel E  
Brettchenhalter E  
Brücken E  
Deckel E  
Durchzugwalzen E  
Fadenführer E und Hy  
Fadenführhalter E  
Fadenführungswalzen Hy  
Fadenknüpfapparate  
Gestelle E  
Laufschiene E



Fadenleitdoppelaugen E  
Fadenleitkränze E  
Fadenspanner E  
Fadentrenner E  
Fournisseurgehäuse E  
Fühlerhebel E  
Handräder Hy  
Haspelbrücken E  
Haspelkreuze E  
Haspeln E  
Haspelselle E  
Haspelnaben E  
Haubenflügel E  
Hebel E



Hesperisen E  
Jacquarddruckwalzen E  
Jacquardführungsschienen E  
Kantenrechen E  
Kantenrechendeckel E  
Kettenbäume E  
Kettenbaumdeckel E  
Kocken E  
Ladenbäume E  
Lager E  
Leisten E  
Leistenwände E  
Meßräder E  
Meßwalzen E  
Mundstücke E  
Nadelbarren E  
Nadelbarrendeckel E  
Nadelbäume E  
Platinenbäume f. Kettenwebstühle E  
Platten für Gebläse E  
Rahmen E  
Rechen E



1. Häubenflügel (E)
2. Kettenbaum (E)
3. Nadelbarren (E)
4. Rahmen für Spinnorelmaschinen (E)

-82-

Portable Machinery and Equipment -  
Conveyances

Hand-drilling machines  
Covers  
Housing  
Gear boxes  
Casing for compressed air tools  
Portable compressors for air  
drills  
Parts for drilling machines for  
potash mining  
Motor casing for rock drills  
Tappet winches  
Covers  
Housing  
Bearings  
Protective boxes  
Covers  
Transport box etc  
Bucket elevators  
Buckets  
Covers  
Transport baskets  
Gear boxes  
Fusible discharge installations  
Housing for safety lamps  
Mine lamps (English type)  
Protective baskets for electric  
equipment  
Mobile hand machines  
Housing  
Handles  
Gear box covers  
Protective covers  
Jack barrows  
Jack buckle fittings  
Crate for furniture  
shipping

1. High-frequency drill (E)
2. Tappet winches with  
Elektron parts.
3. 4. Mine lamps (E)
5. Furniture shipping crate (E)

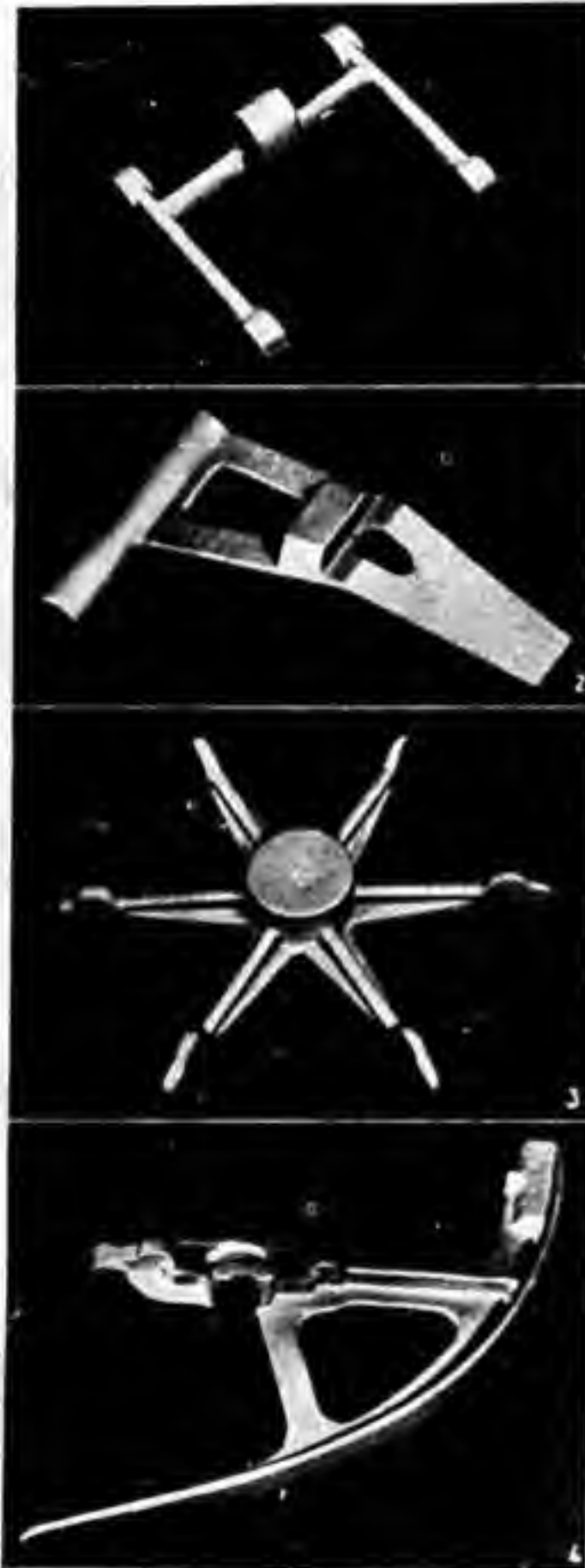
-83-

Textile Machinery

Strip supports  
Butt joints  
Clocking levers  
Board supports  
Arches  
Covers  
Girth rollers  
Yarn guides and  
Yarn guide holders  
Yarn guide rollers  
Yarn knotting apparatus  
Carriages  
Runway rails  
Yarn double-eye guides  
Yarn guide crowns  
Yarn tensioners  
Yarn separator  
Carnassier housing  
Reeler levers  
Lead gears  
Reel bringers  
Reel crossbeams  
Reels  
Sling ropes  
Reel hubs  
Sling heads  
Levers  
Suspended  
Jacquard pressing rollers  
Jacquard guide rails  
Rectangular rollers  
Rectangular roller covers  
Chain trees  
Chain tree covers  
Hooks  
Loading beams  
Bearings  
Ledges (leiston)  
Ledge walls  
Stein wheels  
Steering rollers  
Knuthpieces  
Needle bars (wedg?)  
Needle bar covers  
Needle trees  
Flat beams for chain looms  
Plates for blowers  
Frames  
Hooks  
1. Sling heads  
2. Chain spool  
3. Needle bars  
4. Frames for spinning machines



## Textilmaschinen



1. Textilmaschinenteil (E)  
2. Fadenführer (E)  
3. Haspelkreuz (E)  
4. Schlagarm (E)

Rinnen Hy  
Rohrböckchen E  
Rohre E  
Rollen Hy  
Seilrollen für Samt- und Gewebschneidemaschinen E  
Skalen Hy  
Schablonen E  
Schalthebel Hy  
Schlagarm E  
Schlaghebel E  
Schlagleisten E  
Schlitten E  
Schlitzhebel E  
Schützenträger E  
Spindelaufzüge E  
Spindelklappchen E  
Spindelwirtel E  
Spinnspulen Hy  
Spinnteller-Ober- und -Unterteile E  
Spinntöpfe E  
Spulen E  
Spulenhalter E  
Spulenkränze E  
Sternräder E  
Stirnplatten E  
Teile für Rundwirkmaschinen E  
Tische E  
Tragkörbe für Rundwirkmaschinen E  
Tragrahmen E  
Tragscheiben E  
Trommeln Hy  
Traversen E  
Walzen E  
Wannen Hy  
Weifenkreuze E  
Windenkreuze E  
Wippen Hy  
Zählräder E  
Zählscheiben E  
Zahnbogenarme E  
Zahnräder und Hobel für Zählwerke an Webstühlen E  
Zeiger E  
Zugbandhalter E  
Zwickeldecker E  
Zwirnbäume E  
Zwischensupports E  
Zwistwirtel E

- 34 -

## Allgemeiner Maschinenbau – Werkzeugmaschinen – Vorrichtungsbau



Drehbank mit Teilen aus Elektron  
Riemenscheiben (Hy)  
Radialbohrmaschine mit Teilen aus Elektron

Alarmsirenen  
Gehäuse Hy  
Laufträder Hy  
Bürstenherstellungsmaschinen  
Einzelteile E  
Dampfmaschinen  
Ölgefäße Hy  
Diamantfassungen für Werkzeuge E  
Draht- und Kabelmaschinen  
Spulenkörper E  
Drehbänke  
Drehbankbetten E  
Drehbankfüße E  
Handräder E  
Hebel E  
Lager E  
Räderkästen E  
Riemenscheiben E  
Spindelstöcke E  
Filter  
Luftfilter Hy  
Metalltücher Hy  
Staubfilter Hy  
Fräsmaschinen  
Bewegliche Teile E  
Fräsköpfe E  
Ständergrundplatten E  
Stützen E  
Getriebebau  
Deckel E  
Gehäuse E  
Getriebekästen E und Hy  
Gewindeschneidemaschinen  
Einzelteile E  
Glühlampenmaschinen  
Bewegliche Teile E  
Graviermaschinen  
Bewegliche Teile E  
Hämmer E  
Hochleistungs-  
Zapfenscheiben E  
Holzbearbeitungsmaschinen  
Bandsägeblattrollen E  
Getriebedeckel für Motorsägen E  
Sägegatterjoche E

-85-

Textile Machinery

Grooves *Hy*  
 Tube supports *E*  
 Tubes *E*  
 Rollers *Hy*  
 Thread-wheels for velvet and  
 textile cutting machinery *E*  
 Scales *Hy*  
 Templates *E*  
 Gear lever *Hy*  
 Scutching levers *Hy*  
 Scutching arms *E*  
 Scutching ledges *E*  
 Slide block *E*  
 Slotted lever *E*  
 Shuttle housings *E*  
 Spindle attachments *E*  
 Spindle caps *E*  
 Spindle whorls *E*  
 Spinning spools *Hy*  
 Top and bottom spinning discs *E*  
 Spinning cups *E*  
 Bobbins *E*  
 Bobbin holders *E*  
 Bobbin rims *E*  
 Hand wheels *E*  
 Front plates *E*  
 Parts for round looms *E*  
 Tables *E*  
 Transport baskets for round looms *E*  
 Carrying frames *E*  
 Carrying discs *E*  
 Crums *Hy*  
 Connecting ties *E*  
 Rollers *E*  
 Rells *Hy*  
 Reel crossheads *E*  
 Winch crossheads *E*  
 Tumbler switches *Hy*  
 Counting gears *E*  
 Counting discs *E*  
 Toothed elbows *E* (\*)  
 Tooth-wheels and levers for  
 counting mechanism on looms *E*  
 Pointers *E*  
 Connecting ribbon holder *E*  
 Clocking device *E*  
 Twisting trees *E*  
 Intermediate supports *E*  
 Sperring whorls *E*

1. Textile machinery part (*E*)
2. Yarn guide (*E*)
3. Reel crosshead (*E*)
4. Scutching arm (*E*)

-86-

General Engineering-Machine Tools -  
 Fixtures and Jigs

Alarm sirens  
 Housing *Hy*  
 Sound wheels *Hy*  
 Brush manufacturing machinery  
 Component parts *E*  
 Steam engines  
 Oil reservoirs *Hy*  
 Diamond holders for tools *E*  
 Wire and cable machinery  
 Spool bodies *E*  
 Lathes  
 Lathe frames *E*  
 Lathe legs *E*  
 Hand wheels *E*  
 Levers *E*  
 Bearings *E*  
 Wheel boxes *E*  
 Pulleys *E*  
 Lead stocks *E*  
 Filters  
 Air filters *Hy*  
 Metal cloth filters *Hy*  
 Dust filters *Hy*  
 Milling machines  
 Movable parts *E*  
 Milling heads *E*  
 Body plates *E* (\*)  
 Supports *E*  
 Gear Construction  
 Covers *E*  
 Housing *E*  
 Gear boxes *E* and *Hy*  
 Thread cutting machines  
 Component parts *E*  
 Electric Lamp machinery  
 Movable parts *E*  
 Engraving tools  
 Movable parts *E*  
 Hammers *E*  
 High-efficiency tenon cutting discs  
*E*  
 Wood-working tools  
 Band-saw blade rollers *E*  
 Gear covers for motor saws *E*  
 Saw-frame yokes *E*

1. Lathe with Elektron parts
2. Firm nameplates (*Hy*)
3. Radial drilling machine with  
 Elektron parts



## Allgemeiner Maschinenbau – Werkzeugmaschinen – Vorrichtungsbau



1. Separatorkessel (E)  
2. Teilerheizkörper (Hy)  
3. Bauvorrichtung (E)

Sägenschutz E  
Messerköpfe E  
Messerscheiben E  
Schablonen für Oberfräsmaschinen E  
Schutzhauben für Pendelfräsen E  
Schutzrahmen E  
Riemenscheiben für feststehende Holzbearbeitungsmaschinen E  
Rahmen für tragbare Holzbearbeitungsmaschinen E  
Rädergehäuse E  
Räderkastendeckel E  
Vergaserstutzen E  
Getriebegehäuse E  
Hebel E  
Kappen E  
Kupplungs-naben E  
Kurbelgehäuse E  
Lagerschilde E  
Zwischenbleche für Sperrholzfabrikation Hy

**Korkherstellungsmaschinen**  
Hülsen E

**Kreiselpumpen**  
Gehäuse Hy  
Laufräder Hy

**Kreis- und Längenteilmaschinen**  
Aufspannplatten E

**Lederindustrie**  
Aufrauhköpfe E  
Leisten E

**Maschinen zur Herstellung von  
Stahlfedern**  
Schnelllaufende Schlitten E  
Aufwickelringe E

**Metallgießereinrichtungen**  
Form- und Kernkästen E  
Metallmodelle E

**Ölzentrifugen**  
Vakuumdeckel E  
Vakuumkessel E

**Pressen**  
Einzelteile Hy  
Gesenke E

**Pumpen**  
Deckel Hy  
Gehäuse Hy  
Räderteile Hy

**Punktschweißmaschinen**  
Einzelteile E

- 35 -

## Allgemeiner Maschinenbau – Werkzeugmaschinen – Vorrichtungsbau



1. Alarmsirene (Hy)  
2. Schweißbronnergriff (E)  
3. Hubarm für Zahnradstoßmaschinen (E)  
4. Zigarettenschneidemaschine mit Teilen aus Elektron

**Radialbohrmaschinen**  
Gegenhalterstützen E

**Revolverköpfe E**  
**Rollbandständer E**  
**Schweißbronnergriffe E**  
**Schokoladenmaschinen**  
Einzelteile E

**Schrauben-Automaten**  
Einzelteile E

**Schuhmaschinen**  
Ständer E  
Bewegliche Teile E

**Spritzpistolen**  
Handgriffe E  
Kopfstücke E

**Tabak-schneidemaschinen**  
Messerhalter E

**Verpackungsmaschinen**  
Büchsen E  
Gehäuse E  
Griffe E  
Hebel E  
Lagerböcke E

**Vorrichtungsbau**  
Bauvorrichtungen für den  
Flugzeugbau E

**Werkzeugmaschinen**  
Deckel E  
Firmenzeichen Hy  
Führungen E  
Handräder E  
Hauben E  
Hebel E  
Kappen E  
Materialzuführungsrollen E  
Messerköpfe E  
Motorgehäuse E  
Räderkästen E  
Riemenscheiben E  
Schleuderlüfter E  
Schutzhäuser E  
Schwenkarme E  
Spritzdeckel E  
Vorrichtungskörper E  
Werkbankfüße E  
Verschiedene bewegliche oder  
abnehmbare Teile E

-86-

General Machinery Construction-  
Machine Tools-Figs and Fixtures

Saw guards E  
Cutter heads E  
Cutting discs E  
Complats for surface milling tools  
Protective heads for  
pendulum milling E  
Protective frames E  
Pulleys for stationary wood  
working machines E  
Frames for portable wood working  
machines E  
Gear housing E  
Gear box covers E  
Carburettor stages E  
Driving gear housing E  
Levers E  
Caps E  
Coupling hubs E  
Crank-axes E  
Bearing shields E  
Intermediate plates for plywood  
manufacture E  
Cork manufacturing tools  
Bushings E  
Centrifugal pumps  
housing E  
Pumping wheels E  
Circular and longitudinal  
separators  
Fixing plates E  
Leather Industry  
Doughing heads E  
Belts E  
Machines for steel spring manu-  
facture  
High-speed rolling slides E  
Winding rings E  
Metal casting equipment  
Cold and core boxes E  
Metal patterns E  
Centrifugal oil machines  
Vacuum covers E  
Vacuum vats E  
Presses  
Component parts E  
Lies E  
Pumps  
Covers E  
Casings E  
Gear parts E  
Spot-welding machines  
Component parts E

1. Separator vat (E)
2. Plate housing frame (E)
3. Jig (E)

-87-

General Machinery Construction-  
Machine Tools - Figs and Fixtures

Special drilling machines  
bracing E  
Revolving heads E  
Conveyor stands E  
Holding torch handles E  
Chocolate machines  
Component parts E  
Screw automatics  
Component parts E  
Shoe machines  
Stamps E  
Movable parts E  
Spray guns  
Handles E  
Lead pieces E  
Cigaret cutting machines  
Blade-holders E  
Pecking machines  
Bushings E  
Casings E  
Handles E  
Levers E  
Bearing stages E  
Fixture construction  
Fixtures for airplane construc-  
tion E  
Machine tools  
Covers E  
Firm nameplates E  
Guides E  
Gear wheels E  
Wheels E  
Levers E  
Caps E  
Material supply rollers E  
Cutting heads E  
Motor housing E  
Gear boxes E  
Pulleys E  
Centrifugal fans E  
Protective casings E  
Swivel arms E  
Spray covers E  
Fixtures E  
Workbench legs E  
Miscellaneous movable or detachable  
parts E

1. Alarm siren (E)
2. Holding torch handle (E)
3. Lifting arm for tooth-gear  
stamping machine (E)
4. Cigaret cutting machine with  
Elektron parts.





1. Motor-Kettensäge mit Teilen aus Elektron  
2. Motorsäge mit Teilen aus Elektron  
3. Motorsäge mit Teilen aus Elektron  
4. Motor-Kettensäge mit Teilen aus Elektron

**Zahnradstoßmaschinen**

Deckel E  
Hubarme E  
Hubarmverlängerungen E

**Zellophanherstellungsmaschinen**

Walzen E und Hy

**Zellwolleverarbeitungsanlagen**

Einzelteile Hy  
Registerwalzen Hy  
Siebtücher Hy

**Zigaretten-Schneidapparate**

Doppelkurbelzapfenköpfe E  
Kulissenböckchen E  
Messerschlittentraversen E  
Messerwellen E  
Nickelhebel E  
Schneidrubenschlitten E

**Zigarettenmaschinen**

Druckwalzen E  
Löffelscheiben E  
Nutenröhrchen E  
Stachelwalzen E

**Zuckermaschinen**

Filterhähne Hy  
Filterpressen Hy  
Filterrahmen Hy  
Siebmäntel Hy

**Einzelteile für Maschinen und Apparate**

Apparate- und Maschinen-  
schilder Hy  
Beslagteile Hy  
Deckel E und Hy  
Drahtgeflechte Hy  
Drähte Hy  
Gehäuse E und Hy  
Gewindeschrauben Hy  
Handgriffe E und Hy  
Handräder E  
Hebel E und Hy  
Lagerböcke E  
Lagerdeckel E  
Lagerschilde E und Hy  
Muttern Hy  
Naben E  
Nieten Hy  
Riemenscheiben E  
Schrauben Hy  
Schwungräder E  
Seile Hy  
Splinte Hy  
Steuerräder E und Hy  
Stifte (Tacks) Hy  
Zahnradlager E



1. Stromschienen (E)  
2. Motor mit Teilen aus Elektron

**Elektromotor**

Bürstenhalter Hy  
Gehäuse E  
Kappen E  
Lagerdeckel E  
Lagerschilde E  
Lüfter E  
Lüfterhauben E  
Riemenscheiben E  
Rippenmäntel E  
Ständergehäuse E  
Typenschilder Hy

**Tretmaschinen für Stromerzeugung**

Deckel E  
Distanzstücke E  
Gehäuse E  
Lagergehäuse E  
Lagerschilde E

**Gehäuse für Taschenlampen Hy**

**Umrandungen für Wärmplatten Hy**

**Tauchsieder Hy**

**Schwachstromlützen Hy**

**Kabelkästen und -deckel E**

**Kabeltrommeln Hy**

**Kabeleinführungen Hy**

**Kabelschuhe Hy**

**Stromschienen E**

**Gehäuse für Blitzschutzapparate Hy**

**Schalter**

Expansionskammern Hy  
Hebel Hy  
Kappen E  
Kulissen Hy  
Lagerböcke Hy  
Rahmen E

**Schaltkästen E und Hy**

**Steckergehäuse E und Hy**

**Steckkontaktapseln Hy**

**Apparatekappen E**

**Deckel E**

**Drehknöpfe E**

**Flügelräder E**

**Grundplatten E**

**Kollektorlager E**

**Kondensatorgehäuse Hy**

**Magnetgehäuse E**

**Lagerkörper Hy**

**Mengenschreiber E**

**Zählerschleiben Hy**

-88-

General Machinery Construction-  
Machine Tools, Fixtures and Figs

Tooth-gear slotting machine  
 Covers 2  
 Lifting arms 2  
 Lifting arm extensions 2  
 Cellophane manufacturing tools  
 rollers 2 and 2y  
 Cellulose processing tools  
 Component parts 2y  
 Register rollers 2y  
 Sieve cloths 2y  
 Cigaret cutting equipment  
 Double-rank pin heads 2  
 Link frames 2  
 Sliding knife connecting ties 2  
 Knife shafts 2  
 Nickel levers 2  
 Cutting tube slides 2  
 Cigaret machines  
 Pressure rollers 2  
 Center discs 2  
 Slotted drums 2  
 Barbed rollers 2  
 Sugar machinery  
 Filter cups 2y  
 Filter presses 2y  
 Filter frames 2y  
 Sieve casings 2y  
 Individual parts for machinery and  
 Equipment  
 Equipment and machinery shields 2y  
 Accessories 2y  
 Covers 2 and 2y  
 Wire gauges 2y  
 Wires 2y  
 Casing 2 and 2y  
 Thread screws 2y  
 Handles 2 and 2y  
 Hand wheels 2  
 Levers 2 and 2y  
 Pedestals 2  
 Pedestal covers 2  
 Pedestal shields 2 and 2y  
 Yoke screws 2y  
 Shafts 2  
 Rivets 2y  
 Pulleys 2  
 Screws 2y  
 Fly-wheels 2  
 Ropes 2y  
 Cotters 2y  
 Steering wheels 2 and 2y  
 Leeks 2y  
 Gear-wheel bearings 2

1. Motor chain saw with Elektron parts
2. Motor saw with elektron parts
3. Motor saw with elektron parts
4. Motor chain saw with elektron parts.

-89-

## Electrical Engineering

Electric motor 1  
 Brushholders 2y  
 Bearings 2  
 Caps 2  
 Searing covers 2  
 Sealing shields 2  
 Ventilators 2  
 Ventilator cover-plates 2  
 Pulleys 2  
 Ribbed casings 2  
 End-frames 2  
 Identification plates 2y  
 Thread machines for current genera-  
 tion  
 Covers 2  
 Discs and pieces 2  
 Housing 2  
 Bearing housing 2  
 Bearing shields 2  
 Housing for socket lamps 2y  
 Frames for heat plates 2y  
 Immersion heating unit 2y  
 Low tension current straws 2y  
 Cable boxes and covers 2  
 Cable drums 2y  
 Cable laces 2y  
 Cable joints 2y  
 Current coils 2  
 Housing for lightning conductor  
 Equipment 2y  
 Circuit closers  
 Expansion switches 2y  
 Levers 2y  
 Caps 2  
 Links 2y  
 Pedestals 2y  
 Frames 2  
 Switch boxes 2 and 2y  
 Plug housings 2 and 2y  
 Plug contact boxes 2y  
 Equipment caps 2  
 Covers 2  
 Switch buttons 2  
 Impellers 2  
 Base plates 2  
 Collector bearings 2  
 Condenser housing 2y  
 Pole frames 2  
 Bearing bodies 2y (?)  
 Volume recorder 2  
 Counting discs 2y

1. Current coils (2)
2. Motor with Elektron parts.



## Funk- und Fernmeldegeräte



1. Frontrahmen für Rundfunkempfänger (Hy)  
2. Gehäuse (E)  
3. Fernsprechgehäuse (E)

### Rundfunkapparate

Abdeckkappen Hy  
Drehknöpfe E und Hy  
Frontrahmen Hy  
Gehäuse E  
Gitterrahmen Hy  
Grundplatten E  
Hebel Hy  
Kondensatorgehäuse E  
Kondensatorwannen E  
Lagerböcke E  
Lautsprecheruntergestelle E  
Lautsprecherkörbe E  
Seilscheiben E  
Skalenträger E  
Unterstellteile E  
Verkleidungsrahmen Hy  
Zierleisten Hy

### Umformermaschinengestelle E

### Antennenlitzen Hy

### Antennenkreisschott E

### Träger für Antennenspulen E

### Verkleidungen für tragbare Fernsprechapparate Hy

### Fernsprechapparate

Teile für Wähler E  
Verkleidungen Hy

### Fernmeldegeräte E

Gehäuse E

### Fernschreibemaschinen

Grundplatten E  
Lager E

### Bildtelegraphen

Grundplatten E

### Glockenschalen für elektrische Meldegeräte Hy

## Film — Foto — Optik



1. Kameragehäuse (E)  
2. Kamerakörper (E)  
3. Kamerakopf (E)

### Filmtrommeln Hy

### Teile für Filmgroßmaschinen Hy

### Filmschneidemaschinen

Schneidmesserhalter und Rollen E

### Schallspiegel für Tonfilm-Aufnahmeapparate E

### Teile für Filmaufnahme- und Wiedergabeapparate E und Hy

### Bildwerfer E und Hy

### Photoapparate

Deckel E  
Kameragehäuse E  
Lagerböcke E

### Flugkameras

Gehäuse E  
Kassetten Hy

### Auslöser

Knöpfe Hy  
Glocken Hy

### Stative E

### Stativträger

Arretierteller Hy  
Höhenverstellungsräder Hy  
Kopiplatten Hy  
Schwungräder Hy

### Objektivstützen E



-50-

Radio and telephone equipment

Radio equipment  
 surface caps By  
 knobs 2 and By  
 front frames By  
 housing 2  
 screen frames By  
 base plates 2  
 levers By  
 Condenser housing 2  
 Condenser wells 2  
 Pedestals 2  
 Loud-speaker carriage 2  
 Loud-speaker baskets 2  
 thread pulleys 2  
 wheels 2  
 Carriage parts 2  
 Cover frames By  
 Ornamental pieces By  
  
 Transformer frames 2  
 aerial cable By  
 aerial circle Schott 2  
 Supports for aerial spools 2  
 Covers for portable telephone  
 equipment By  
 Telephone equipment  
 Parts for circle 2  
 Casings By  
 Long distance communicating  
 equipment 2  
 Casing 2  
 Teletype machines  
 base plates 2  
 Supports 2 (?)  
 Television equipment  
 base plates 2  
 Bell cases for electric  
 wireless equipment By

1. Front frame for radio receivers (By)
2. housing (2)
3. Telephone casing (2)

-91-

Films -Photography - Optics

Film drums By  
 Part for film-pouring machines By  
 Film-cutting machines  
 Blade holders and rolls 2  
 Sound plates for sound film  
 equipment 2  
 Parts for filming and projecting  
 equipment 2 and By  
 Projectors 2 and By  
 Cameras  
 covers 2  
 Camera casing 2  
 Supports 2  
 oval on oval  
 casing 2  
 Flattisholders By  
 Releases  
 knobs By  
 Bulls By  
 Tripods 2  
 Tripod supports  
 arresting plates By  
 Height control wheels By  
 head plates By  
 Fly wheels By  
 Objective supports 2  
 1. Camera casing (2)  
 2. Camera casing (2)  
 3. "Reuter" housing (2)



1. Fernglas mit Gehäuse aus Elektron  
2. Fernglasgehäuse (E)  
3. Sportokular mit Gehäuse aus Elektron

**Belichtungsmesser**

Gehäuse Hy  
Zahlentafeln Hy

**Teile für Entfernungsmesser E**

**Bildvergrößerungsapparate**

Deckel E  
Gehäuse E  
Grundplatten E  
Zahnstangen Hy

**Gehäuse für Projektionsapparate E**

**Spektographen**

Gehäuse Hy  
Rahmen Hy  
Träger Hy

**Ferngläser**

Brücken E  
Gehäuse E

**Fernrohrgehäuse E**

**Sportokulargehäuse E**

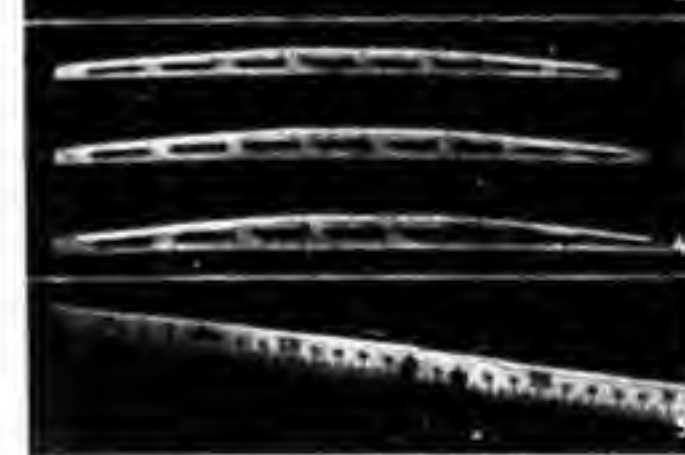
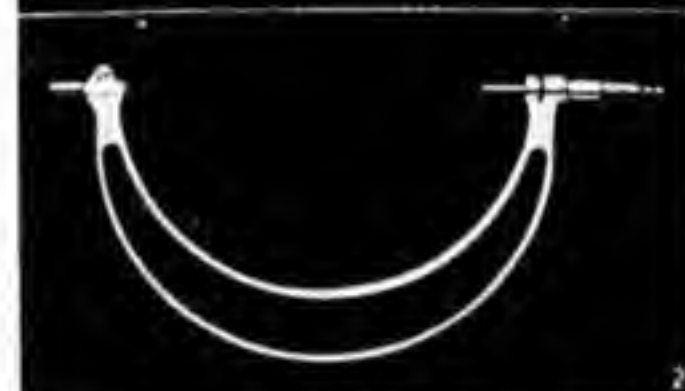
**Lesegläser**

Fassungen Hy  
Griffe Hy

**Linsontragsringe E**

**Tischplatten für Mikroskope Hy**

**Gehäuse für Taschenmikroskope E**



1. Grenzlehre mit Handgriff aus Elektron  
2. Bügel für Mikrometerschrauben (E)  
3. Rachenlehre (E)  
4. Waagebalken  
5. Zollstock

**Dampfmesser**  
Einzelteile Hy

**Elektrische Meßgeräte**  
Halteböcke E  
Lager Hy

**Feinmeßgeräte**  
Gehäuseteile E

**Geodätische Apparate**  
Deckel Hy  
Platten Hy  
Rahmen Hy

**Geräte zum Maßnehmen für  
Schneider E und Hy**

**Grenzlehrdorne**  
Handgriffe E

**Handtachometer**  
Gehäuse Hy

**Lehren**

Büchsen E  
Bügel E  
Einstellschieber E  
Körper E  
Schutzkästen E

**Manometertafeln**

Deckel Hy  
Gebergehäuse Hy  
Klemmringe Hy  
Mikrofongehäuse Hy  
Schaltringe Hy

**Mikrometerbügel E und Hy**

**Planimeter Hy**

**Rachenlehren**  
Bügel E und Hy

**Rauchgasprüfer**

Gehäusekästen E  
Grundplatten E

**Verschiedene Prüfmaschinen**

Getriebekästen E  
Lampengehäuse E  
Laschen E  
Messerscheiben E  
Pendelbalken E  
Schreibhebel E  
Schreibtrommelhalter E  
Schutzhauben E  
Skalenscheiben E  
Spannplatten E  
Stützen E  
Teller E  
Traversen E

**Waagebalken zur Messung  
gegerbter Häute E**

**Wassermesser Hy**  
Zollstöcke Hy

-52-

Film - Photo - Optics

Light meters

Casings by

Scopes by

Parts for Range-finders 3

Photo-enlarging equipment

Covers 2

Housings 3

Base plates 2

Toothed bars by

Housing for projectors 2

Spectographs

Housings by

Frames by

Supports by

Binoculars 2

Bridges 2

Casings 2

Telescope casings 2

Sportocular casings 3

Reading glasses

Frames by

Stems by

Lens holding rings 2

Table attachments for microscopes by

Casings for pocket microscopes 3

1. Binocular with Elektron casing  
2. Binocular casing (2)  
3. Sportocular with Elektron casing

-53-

Measuring instruments

Start motor

Component parts by

Electric measuring equipment

Holding stays 2

Supports by

Precision instruments

Casing parts 2

Geodetic instruments

Covers by

Plates by

Frames by

Measuring instruments for outcrops 3 and by

Plug limit gauges

Needles 2

Hard tachometer

Casing by

Auges

Bushes 2

Scopes 2

Adjusting (slide) valve 3

Scopes 2

Protective box 2

Steam pump, shoots

Covers by

Transmitter housing by

Wire clamps by

Lithophone casing by

Connecting rings by

Micrometer straps 2 and by

Flanometers by

Calipers

Loops 2 and by

Smoke testers

Housing boxes 2

Base plates 2

Various testing machines

Beer boxes 2

Lamp housings 2

Rich-plates 2

Cutting discs 2

Pendulum boxes 2

Scriber levers 2

Scribing drum holder 2

Protective heads 2 (cops) 1

Scale discs 2

Frame plates 2

Supports 2

Plates 2

Connecting ties 2

Balanced levers for measuring tanned hides 2

Hydrometer by

Rulers by

1. Plug limit gauges with Elektron handle  
2. Loop for micrometer screws (2)  
3. Caliper gauge (2)  
4. Balanced levers (2)  
5. Inch rulers (2)



## Druckereiwesen — Papierverarbeitungsmaschinen



1. Abplätzen aus Elektro in der Druckmaschine  
2. Druckwalze (E)  
3. Greiferstangen (E)  
4. Fundamentplatte (E)

### Ätzplatten E

### Füllmaterial für Drucksätze E

### Druckereimaschinen

Druckzylinder E  
Einzelteile Hy  
Fundamentplatten E  
Gehäuse Hy  
Greiferstangen E und Hy  
Halter E  
Hebel E  
Hebelführungen E  
Klemmen Hy  
Lagerböcke E  
Schalttrommeln  
Schenkel Hy  
Seitenwände E  
Stangendrucker Hy  
Stoßstangen E  
Traversen E  
Wischschlitten E

### Prägedruckmaschinen

Unterlagplatten E

### Schnellpressen

Ständer E

### Papiermaschinen

Förderwalzen Hy  
Gegenhalter E  
Hebel E  
Lager E  
Registerwalzen Hy  
Rollen E  
Trockenwalzen Hy

### Papierschnidemaschinen

Messerbalken E  
Messerhalter E  
Querschnidmesserbalken E

### Buchbindereimaschinen

Einzelteile E

## Chemische Industrie und verwandte Verwendungsgebiete



Deckenentlüftungsanlagen für  
chemische Laboratoriumsräume Hy

Türen für chemische Versuchs-  
laboratorien (Sprühaumanlagen) Hy

Wasserarmaturen für chemische  
Laboratorien Hy

Armaturen für Kühlflüssigkeit Hy

Behälter und Armaturen für  
Tankwagen und Tankstellen Hy

Fässer für konzentrierte Essigsäure Hy

Dorne zur Herstellung von  
Hartgummi-Batterieklappen Hy

Einrichtungen zur Herstellung von  
Zelluloid-, Kunstharz- und Gummi-  
gegenständen

Formplatten für Gummischwamm-  
herstellung E  
Heizformen Ig  
Matrizen E  
Preßplatten Hy  
Tauchformen Hy  
Vorpresseformen E  
Wickeldorne E

Schuhputzmitteldosen E und Hy



1. Deckenentlüftungsanlage (Hy)  
2. Tür für Sprühaumanlagen (Hy)  
3. Fässer für konzentrierte Essigsäure (Hy)

-94-

Printing - Paper processing  
machinery

Stoking Plates B

Rolling material for printing sets B

Printing machines

Printing cylinder B

Component parts ay

Base plates B

Coasting ay

Gripping rods B and Hy

Holders B

Lever B

Lever guides B

Clamps Hy

Podestals B

Connecting drums

ay

Side mills B

Per presses Hy

Push rods B

Connecting ties B

Wiper slide blocks B

Embossing presses

Base plates B

Fly-presses

Stands B

Paper machines

Supply rollers Hy

Holders up B

Lever B

Bearings B

Registering rollers Hy

Holders B

Wry rollers ay

Paper-cutting machines

Blade beams B

Blade holders B

Cross-cutting blade beams B

Book-binding machinery

Component parts B

1. Stoking plates of -lektron,

on the printing press

2. Printing rollers (B)

3. Gripping rods (B)

4. Base plate (B)

-95-

Chemical Industry and related  
uses.

Coiling ventilation for  
chemical laboratory Hy

Doors for chemical research  
laboratories (spray room in-  
stallations) ay

Hydro attachments for chemical  
laboratories Hy

Attachments for cooling  
liquides Hy

Containers and attachments for  
tanks ours and tank stations ay

Vats for concentrated acetic acid Hy

Frames for the production of  
ab- its battery ay

Equipment for the production of  
solvent, synthetic resin, and  
rubber articles

Guides for rubber spread pro-  
duction B

Coasting moulds Ig

Articles B

Press plates ay

Lipping moulds Hy

Provisionary moulds B

Winding bars B

Shoe polish tins B and Hy

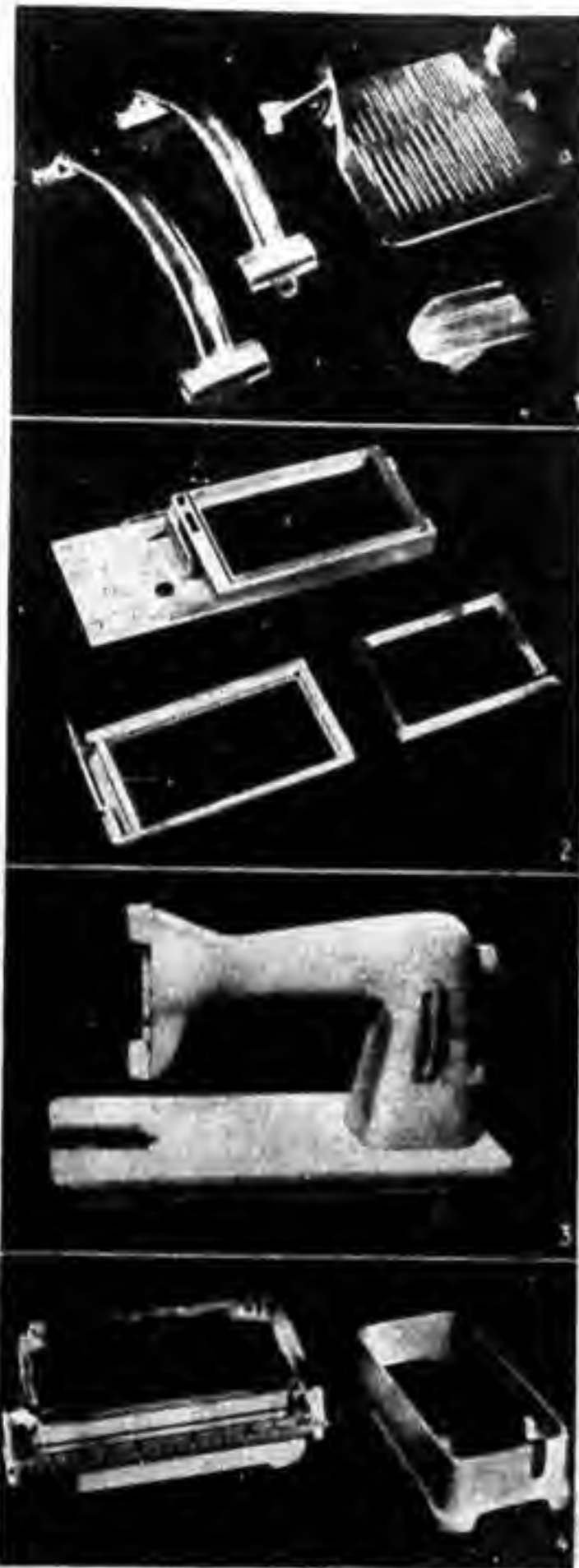
1. Coiling ventilation (ay)

2. Door for spray room  
installation (ay)

3. Drums for concentrated  
acetic acid (ay)



## Hauswirtschaftsgeräte — Nahrungsmittelgewerbe



1. Teile für Aufschnittschnellschneidemaschinen (E)  
2. Teile für Warenautomaten (Hy)  
3. Nähmaschinenarm (E)  
4. Haushaltswaage: Untergesäß (E), Waagschale (Hy)

### Kochherde

Beschläge Hy  
Fuße Hy  
Stangen Hy

### Backofenarmaturen Hy

### Bäckereimaschinen

Teigfülltrichter Hy  
Fallen Hy  
Teilscheiben für Brötchen-  
Teilmaschinen Hy

### Aufschnitt-Schnellschneidemaschinen

Grundplatten Hy  
Verschiedene Teile Hy

### Fleischhaken Hy

### Fleischmulden Hy

### Gehäuseteile für Fleischwölfe Hy

### Teile für Molkeergeräte und -maschinen Hy

### Brauereiwesen

Armaturen Hy  
Brauereiapparate Hy  
Flaschenabfülltanks Hy  
Gleitkörper für Flaschenpül-  
maschinen Hy  
Handräder Hy  
Heizteller Hy  
Lagertanks Hy  
Siphonoberteile Hy  
Werkzeugschränke Hy

## Hauswirtschaftsgeräte — Nahrungsmittelgewerbe



1. Kaffeemühle mit Mahlwerksgehäuse aus Elektron  
2. Dauerwellenwickel (E)  
3. Reißverschluß (Hy)

### Warenautomaten

Beschläge Hy  
Führungsschienen Hy  
Klappen Hy  
Zuggriffe Hy  
Zugkästen Hy

### Konserven-Herstellungsmaschinen

Ableitrommeln Hy  
Abwerfer Hy  
Auswerferfräser Hy  
Essiglänger Hy  
Führungen Hy  
Tragscheiben Hy  
Trichter Hy

### Kessel für Eismaschinen Hy

### Vorhänge für Kühlschränke E

### Teile für Geschirrspülmaschinen Hy

### Garnnadeln Hy

### Nähmaschinen

Arme E  
Deckel Hy

### Gleitbleche für Plättmaschinen Hy

### Waschmaschinen Hy

### Waschbretter Hy

### Behälter für Wasch- und Reinigungsmittel Hy

Household and Food Industry  
Stoves

Accessories Hy  
Legs Hy  
Rods Hy

Oven attachments Hy

## Baking machines

Drum hopper Hy  
Sluices Hy  
Division plates for rolls-  
Division machines Hy

Rapid slicing machines

Base plates Hy  
Miscellaneous parts Hy

Meat hooks Hy

Meat troughs Hy

Housing parts for meat  
mincers HyParts for dairy equipment  
and machinery Hy

## Breweries

Attachments Hy  
Brewery equipment Hy  
Bottling vats Hy  
Sliding bodies for bottle  
washers Hy  
Hand gears Hy  
Heating plates Hy  
Storage tanks Hy  
Upper siphon parts Hy  
Tool chests Hy

1. Parts for rapid slicing  
machine (B)
2. Parts for goods automata  
(Hy)
3. Sewing machine arm (B)
4. Kitchen scales: Base (B),  
tray (Hy)

Household and Kitchen equip-  
ment  
Goods automata

Accessories Hy  
Guide rails Hy  
Flags Hy  
Draw-handles Hy  
Draw-boxes Hy

Machinery for the production  
of canned food

Steaming drums Hy  
Refiners Hy  
Ejector cutters Hy  
Vinegar traps Hy  
Guets Hy  
Carrying discs Hy  
Hoppers Hy

Container for ice machines Hy

Linings for cooling chambers  
EParts for dish-washing  
machines Hy

Yarn needles Hy

Sewing machines

Arms E  
Covers Hy

Sliding plates for ironing  
machines Hy

Washing machines Hy

Washing boards Hy

Containers for washing and  
cleansing materials Hy

1. Coffee grinder with  
grinder casing of Elektron
2. Permanent wave curler (B)
3. Zipper (Hy)



## Hauswirtschaftsgeräte — Nahrungsmittelgewerbe



1. Weckeruhrgehäuse (Hy)  
2. Aschenbecher (Hy)  
3. Schlüssel (E)

Tuben Hy

Puderdosen Hy

Uhren

Gehäuse Hy  
Zahntriebräder Hy  
Zeiger Hy  
Zifferblätter Hy

Thermometer-Gehäuse Hy

Sockel für Tischthermometer Hy

Aschenbecher Hy

Feuerzeughölzer Hy

Zigaretten Dosen Hy

Hausschlüssel E

Reißverschlüsse für Schlüssel-  
taschen Hy

Reißverschlüsse f. Kleidungsstücke Hy

Lagerschilder für Haarschneide-  
maschinen Hy

Rasiergarnituren mit  
Schachtelverpackung Hy

Kämme Hy

Rasierpinselringe Hy

Rasierpinselkapseln Hy

Dauerwellenwickel E

Heizklammern für Dauerwell-  
apparate E und Hy

## Hauswirtschaftsgeräte — Nahrungsmittelgewerbe



1. Besteck mit Grillschalen aus Hydronatium  
2. Taschenmesser mit Schale aus Hydronatium  
3. Zigarettendose (Hy)

Staubsauger

Bürstenflansche Hy  
Bürstenhalter E  
Gehäuse E  
Griffe Hy  
Kniestücke Hy  
Lagerbügel E  
Lagerschilder E  
Mundstücke Hy  
Schaufelräder E

Reibelsen Hy

Reibapparate f. Küchenmaschinen Hy

Mahlwerksgehäuse f. Kaffeemühlen E

Haushaltswaagen

Beschlagteile Hy  
Untergestelle E  
Waagschalen E und Hy

Waagschalen für Fischwaagen Hy

Eßbestecke Hy

Schalen für Taschenmesser Hy

Kohlenträger E und Hy

Tabletts Hy

Sparbüchsen Hy

Halter für Speisezettel Hy

Halter für Zeitungen Hy

Halter für Zündsteine E

Kofferbeschläge Hy

Koffereinsätze Hy

Household and Food Industry  
Equipment

Tubes Hy

Powder boxes Hy

Clocks

Casings Hy

Tooth gears Hy

Hands Hy

Number dials Hy

Thermometer housings Hy

Socket for table thermometers  
Hy

Ash-trays Hy

Pocket lighter cases Hy

Cigarette cases Hy

House keys E

Zippers for zipper bags Hy

Clothing zippers Hy

Shields for hair-cutting  
machines HyShaving fitting with box-  
packing Hy

Combs Hy

Shaving brush rings Hy

Shaving brush cases Hy

Permanent wave curler E

Heat clasps for permanent  
wave devices E and Hy

1. Alarm-clock casing (Hy)

2. Ash-trays (Hy)

3. Keys (E)

Household and Food Industry  
Equipment

\*Vacuum cleaner

Brush flange Hy

Brushholder E

Casing E

Handles Hy

Elbow pieces Hy

Bearing straps E

Bearing shells E

Nouthpieces Hy

Paddle wheels E

Filing-iron (Reibeisen) Hy

Grinding devices for kitchen  
machinery Hy

Housing for coffee grinders E

Household scales

Accessories Hy

Bases E

Balance pans E and Hy

Balance trays for fish scales  
Hy

Silverware Hy

Cases for pocket knives Hy

Coal scoops E and Hy

Tablets Hy

Savings boxes Hy

Menu holders Hy

Newspaper holders Hy

Flint holders E

Luggage accessories Hy

Luggage linings Hy

1. Silverware with Hydrohalium  
handles2. Pocket knife with Hydro-  
nallium handle

3. Cigarette case (Hy)



## Land- und forstwirtschaftliche Geräte und Maschinen



Trensen Hy



Jagdstühle E



Tragbare Sägen

Führungsbügel E  
Getriebegehäuse E  
Handgriffe E  
Handräder E  
Lagerschilde E  
Motorgehäuse E  
Vergaserstutzen E

1. Trensen (Hy)  
2. Jagdstühle (E)  
3. Teile für tragbare Baumsägen (E)

## Feuerwehr



1. Teile für Feuerwehrfahrzeuge (E und Hy)  
2. Teile für tragbare Spritzen (Hy)  
3. Gehäuse für Feuerlöschkreiselpumpen (Hy)

### Teile für Feuerwehrfahrzeuge E und Hy

#### Tragbare Spritzen

Anpreßringe Hy  
Anschlußstutzen Hy  
Deckel Hy  
Füllschrauben Hy  
Füllstutzen Hy  
Gehäuse Hy  
Gehäusedeckel Hy  
Griffe Hy  
Hahngehäuse Hy  
Handräder Hy  
Knöpfe Hy  
Körper Hy  
Kühlerboden Hy  
Lagerdeckel Hy  
Lagereinsätze Hy  
Leiträder Hy  
Leitraddeckel Hy  
Leiträder Hy  
Mutter Hy  
Ringmutter Hy  
Saugsiebe Hy  
Spiralgehäuse Hy  
Schleifringe Hy  
Schweißflanschen Hy  
Ventildeckel Hy  
Ventilgehäuse Hy  
Ventilkörper Hy

#### Schaumlöscher

Düsenkörper E  
Hahnkegel E  
Verschlußdeckel E  
Verstärkerringe E

#### Kohlensäurefeuerlöscher

Führungsrollen Hy  
Hebel Hy

#### Schlauchverbindungstücke Hy

Kupplungen Hy  
Rohrstutzen Hy  
Schnellverschlüsse Hy  
Feuerhähne Hy

#### Strahlrohre Hy

Feuerwehrarbeitsboote  
Blechverkleidungen Hy

#### Leitern E

Steigseisen E  
Rampen für Feuerwehrhelme Hy  
Teile für Tauchretter Hy  
Teile für Atmungsgeräte Hy  
Teile für Motorpumpen Hy



100

Agricultural and Forestry  
Equipment and Machinery

Bridcons Hy (Snaffles)

Pistols and Humane Killers  
for small cattle E

Beet-leaf cutter

Component parts E

Gluten rinsing machines

Housing Hy

## Miscellaneous Machine Parts

Stays E

Covers E

Housing E

Holders E

Bearings E

Protective shields E

Hunters' stools E

## Portable saws

Guide hoops E

Transmission E

Handles E

Hand wheels E

Bearing shields E

Motor housing E

Carburettor props E

1. Bridcons (Hy)
2. Hunters' stools (E)
3. Parts for portable  
tree saws (E)

101

Fire Department  
ApparatusParts for fire dept. vehicles  
E and Hy

## Portable Sprayer

Bearing rings Hy

Attachment props Hy

Covers Hy

Filling socket pieces Hy

Housing Hy

Housing covers Hy

Handles Hy

Nozzle casing Hy

Hand wheels Hy

Knees Hy

Bodies Hy

Radiator base Hy

Bearing cover Hy

Bearing accessories Hy

Working wheels Hy

Female screws Hy

Ring screws Hy

Suction sleeve Hy

Spiral housing Hy

Slip rings Hy

Backing flanges Hy

Valve covers Hy

Valve cases Hy

Valve bodies Hy

## Foam extinguishers

Nozzles E

Cook cones E

Locking covers E

Amplifier rings E

## Carbonic Acid Fire Extinguishers

Guide rolls Hy

Lever Hy

Hose joints Hy

Couplings Hy

Hose supports Hy

Rapid locks Hy

Hydrants Hy

Jet nozzles Hy

Fire-engine boats

Plate valves Hy

Ladders E

Climbing hooks E

caterpillars for fire helmets

Hy

Parts for rescue diving Hy

Parts for breathing equipment Hy

Parts for motor pumps Hy

1. Parts for fire engine (E and Hy)

2. Parts for portable fire pumps (Hy)

3. Housing for rotary fire pumps (Hy)



1. Krankenfrage (E und Hy)  
2. Röntgenapparat mit Teilen aus Elektron  
3. Schuheinlagen (Hy)

Gußformen für künstliche Glieder E  
Künstliche Glieder und Gelenkteile E  
Verbandschienen E  
Streckschienen E  
Rockstühle E  
Schuheinlagen Hy  
Gummihandschuh-Tauchformen Hy  
Krankenträger E und Hy  
Moskitonetze Hy  
Spritzflaschen für Zahnärzte Hy  
Teile für Dentalapparate E  
Zahn-Prothesen Hy

#### Röntgenapparate

Einzelteile E  
Füße E  
Gabel für Röhrenhalter E  
Gleitmuffen E  
Horizontalwagen E  
Röhrenfassungen E  
Seitenstreben für Vertikalwagen E  
Stativwagen E  
Versteifungen, obere und untere E

#### Röntgendurchlässige Teile für Operationstische E

#### Beleuchtungskörper für Operations- lampen E

#### Höhensonnen

Armaturen Hy  
Reflektoren Hy  
Ständer Hy  
Tragarme E

#### Einzelteile

Drehknöpfe Hy  
Fassungen Hy  
Gehäuse E und Hy  
Haltearme E  
Halterungen mit geringer  
Wandstärke E  
Handgriffe Hy  
Kappen E  
Kurbeln Hy  
Flügelräder E  
Laufwagen und Muffen E  
Rahmen E  
Sitzscharniere für Klappdeckel Hy  
Skalenscheiben Hy  
Schnepper Hy  
Schutz- und Abdeckgehäuse Hy  
Schutz- und Zierleisten Hy  
Steuerungshebel Hy  
Stützen Hy  
Tragarme E  
Transformatorendeckel E



1. Kühlrippenmantel für Explosionsrammen (E)  
2. Abstützkörper für Explosionsrammen (E)  
3. Deckel für Verkehrsleuchtsäulen (Hy)  
4. Verkehrsnagel (Hy)

#### Explosionsrammen

Abstützkörper E  
Führungstrommeln E  
Kolben E  
Kolbenringe E  
Kühlrippenmäntel E  
Luftregulierungsschrauben E  
Pufferkolben E  
Treibstoffbehälter E  
Vergaser-Ober- und Unterteil E  
Verschlußschrauben E  
Zylinderdeckel E  
Zylinderdeckelaufsätze E  
Zylinderköpfe E

#### Verkehrsleuchtsäulen

Deckel Hy  
Gehäuse Hy

#### Blickfänger an Fußgängerinseln Hy

#### Verkehrsnagel Hy

#### Tragbare Warnungsschilder E

#### Besenwalzen für Straßenkehr- maschinen E

#### Türen und Leiterstützen mit Muffen für Schleuderbetonmasten Hy

102

## Medical Equipment

Moulds for artificial legs E  
 Artificial legs and joints E  
 Medical splints E  
 Stretching splints E  
 Stretching chairs E  
 Shoe inlays Hy  
 Rubber-glove immersion forms Hy  
 Stretchers E and Hy  
 Mosquito nets Hy  
 Sprayers for dentists Hy  
 Parts for dental apparatus E  
 Artificial teeth Hy

## X-ray equipment

Component parts E  
 Legs E  
 Fork for tube holder E  
 Slide sleeves E  
 Horizontal cars E  
 Tube attachments E  
 Side stays for vertical  
 carriages E  
 Tripod trolley E  
 Bracing, upper and lower E

X-ray filters for operating  
tables EElectrolier for operating  
lamps E

## Sun-ray-lamps

Attachments Hy  
 Reflectors Hy  
 Stands Hy  
 Support-arms E

## Component parts

Knobs Hy  
 Sockets Hy  
 Housing E and Hy  
 Holding arms E  
 Thin-walled brackets E  
 Handles Hy  
 Caps E  
 Cranks Hy  
 Impellers E

103

## Building-Street Construction

Explosion rams  
 Supporting body E  
 Guide drums E  
 Pistons E  
 Piston rings E  
 Cooling rib casings E  
 Air-regulating screws E  
 Buffer pistons E  
 Fuel containers E  
 Carburettor, upper and  
 lower part E  
 Lock screws E  
 Cylinder covers E  
 Cylinder cover attachments E  
 Cylinder heads E

## Traffic lamp posts

Covers Hy  
 Housing Hy

"View-catchers" on pedestrian  
islands Hy

## Traffic nails Hy

## Portable Warning Notices E

Roller brooms for street  
cleaners EDoor and ladder rests with  
bushes for centrifugal  
concrete masts Hy

1. Cooling rib casings for  
explosion rams (E)
2. Supporting body for  
explosion rams (E)
3. Cover for traffic lamp  
posts (Hy)
4. Traffic nails (Hy)



102

Slides and bushes E  
Frames E  
Hinges for lid-covers Hy  
Dials Hy  
Spring-lancets Hy  
Protective and cover casing Hy  
Protective and ornamental parts Hy  
Steering lever Hy  
Sockets Hy  
Brackets E  
Transformer covers E

1. Stretcher (E and Hy)
2. X-ray apparatus with Elektron parts
3. Shoe inlays (Hy)



Fensterrahmen Hy

Fensterriegel Hy

Fassungen für Butzenscheiben Hy

Schaufenstereinfassungen Hy

Schaufenstereinrichtungen Hy

**Ladeneinrichtungen**

Federscheiben Hy

Gehäuse Hy

Umstelltüllen Hy

Vitrinoneinfassungen Hy

Schanktischbedeckungen Hy

Schanktischaufbauten Hy

Türrahmen Hy



1. Treppengeländer (Hy)  
2. Tür zu einem Personenaufzug (Hy)



Türen E und Hy

Büchsen für Türrollen Hy

Türdrücker E und Hy



Türknoöpfe E und Hy

Türsicherungen Hy



Türschilder Hy

Buchstaben Hy

ABLIEFERUNG VON  
PROBEN U. WAREN  
NUR IM LAGER  
LINKS UM DIE ECKE

Klingelknöpfe Hy

Briefkästen Hy

Briefkastenbeschläge Hy

1. Tür und Wandleuchter (Hy)  
2. Türdrücker (Hy)  
3. Buchstaben (Hy)  
4. Türschild (Hy)



DOCUMENT BOOK II BUERGIN No. 18

Interior and Exterior  
Architecture

Window frames Hy

Window belts Hy

Leading for panes Hy

Show-window framing Hy

Show-window equipment Hy

Store equipment

Spring pulleys Hy  
Housing Hy  
Inter-change sockets Hy

Glass show-case framing Hy

Bar covering Hy

Bar structures Hy

Door frames Hy

1. Stair-case (Hy)
2. Door to passenger elevator (Hy)

Interior and Exterior  
Architecture

Doors E and Hy

Sockets for door casters Hy

Door handles E and Hy

Door knobs E and Hy

Door latches Hy

Door plates Hy

Letters Hy

Bell buttons Hy

Letter boxes Hy

Letter box accessories Hy

1. Door and wall lamps (Hy)
2. Door handles (Hy)
3. Letters (Hy)
4. Door plate (Hy)

## Außen- und Innenarchitektur



1. Tür zu einem Operationsaal (Hy)  
2. Fassung für Butzenscheiben (Hy)

### Personen- und Lastenaufzüge

Türen Hy  
Beschlagbleche Hy  
Einzelteile Hy  
Knopfschilder Hy

### Treppengeländer E und Hy

### Treppenstufenschienen Hy

### Brückengeländer E und Hy

### Gitter Hy

### Mauereckenleisten Hy

### Baubeschläge Hy

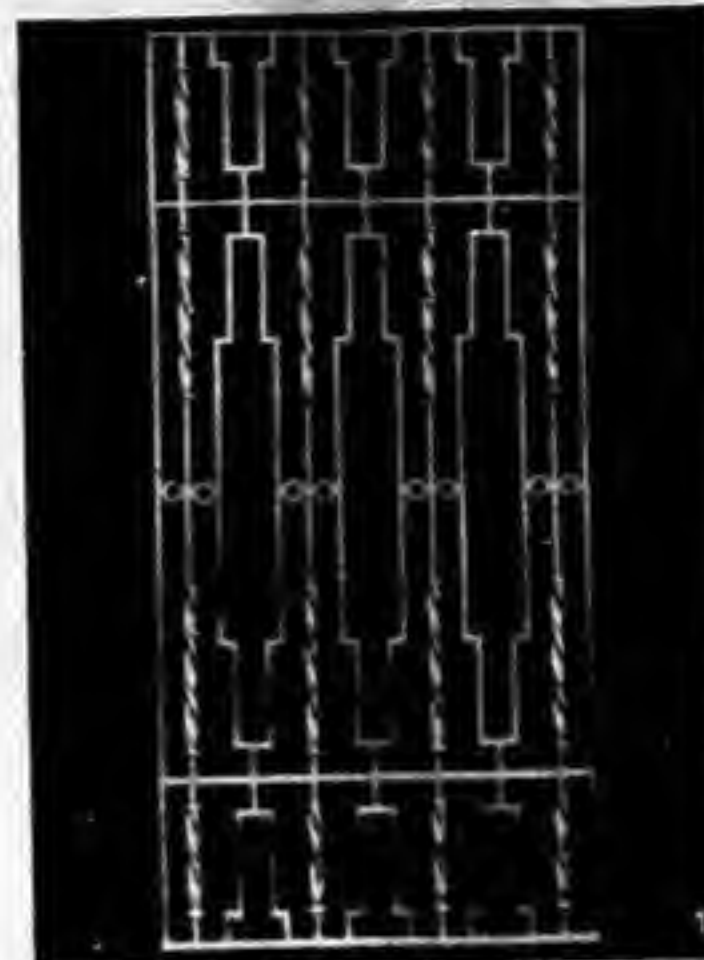
### Heizungsverkleidungen Hy

### Verkleidungen für Speisewärmanlagen Hy

### Kachelofenlüfter Hy

-45-

## Außen- und Innenarchitektur



1. Gitter (Hy)  
2. Speisewärmanlage mit Verkleidung aus Hydronalium  
3. Gardinenstangen für Bad-Vorhänge (Hy)

### Plakatträger für Archive E

### Zugvorrichtungen für Wasserspülung Hy

### Badewannenfüße E

### Einfassungen für Waschbecken Hy

### Ständer für Reihenwaschanlagen E

### Wasser-Armaturen Hy

### Gardinenstangen für Bad-Vorhänge Hy

### Sitzmöbel Hy

### Möbelbeschläge Hy

### Türverschlußschieber für Möbel Hy

106

Interior and Exterior  
Architecture

## Passenger and Freight Elevators

Doors Hy  
 Plate fittings Hy  
 Detail parts Hy  
 Button plates Hy

Stair-railings E and Hy

Step rails Hy

Bridge parapets E and Hy

Lattice Hy

Quoin battens for walls Hy

Builders fittings Hy

Heating shrouds Hy

Linings for food-warming  
installations Hy

Tile stove ventilators Hy

1. Door to operating room (Hy)
2. Leading for panes (Hy)

107

Interior and Exterior  
Architecture

Tubs for archives E

Water flushing pulls Hy

Bath-tub legs E

Stands for wash bowls Hy

Stands for bulk washing  
facilities E

Water fittings Hy

Curtain-poles for bath  
curtains Hy

Furniture seats Hy

Furniture fittings Hy

Sliding doors for  
furniture Hy

1. Lattice (Hy)
2. Food-warming instal-  
lation with Hydronelium  
lining
3. Curtain-poles for  
bath curtains (Hy)



## Außen- und Innenarchitektur



Wandgarderobenhalter Hy



Garderobenständer Hy

Einsätze für Garderobenständer Hy



Schirmhalter Hy

Gardinenstangen Hy

Schnallen und Gardinenarmaturen Hy

Leuchter Hy

Tischlampen Hy

Wanduhren Hy

1. Lampe (Hy)
2. Wanduhr (Hy)
3. Wandleuchter (Hy)

-46-

## Kunstgewerbe



Deckenleuchter Hy

Dokumentenkassetten Hy

Hoheitszeichen Hy

Kunstgitter Hy

Reliefs Hy



Schalen Hy

Schatullen Hy

Skulpturen Hy

Treibarbeiten Hy

1. Relief (Hy)
2. Schale (Hy)
3. Kassetten mit Beschlägen aus Hydranallum

-108-

## Interior and Exterior Architecture

Wall clothes hangers sy

Clothes racks sy

Accessories for clothes racks sy

Umbrella stands sy

Curtain-poles sy

Clasps and curtain fittings sy

Lamps sy

Table lamps sy

Wall clocks sy

1. Lamp (sy)
2. Wall clock (sy)
3. Wall lamp (sy)

-109-

## Art objects

Ceiling lamps sy

Strong box for documents sy

Emblems of rank sy

Artistic lattice work sy

Reliefs sy

Bowls sy

Strong-boxes sy

Sculptures sy

Lark sy

1. Relief (sy)
2. Bowl (sy)
3. Strong box with apertures  
fittings.



## Bürobedarfsartikel



1. Gerüst für Hollerith-Buchungsmaschinen (E)  
2. Schreibmaschinen-Tastwerkträger (E)  
3. Wanduhr, Leiter, Beschlagteile in einem Büro (Hy)

### Adressmaschinen

Grundplatten E  
Typenführungsteile E

### Durchschreibebuchhaltungsgeräte

Grundplatten E  
Schienen E

### Franklmaschinen

Einzelteile E

### Hollerith-Buchungsmaschinen

Gleitschienen E  
Grundplatten und Füße E  
Ölbremshalter E  
Versteifungsstützen E  
Kleinere Maschinenelemente E

### Rechenmaschinen

Einzelteile E

### Registrierkassen

Beschlagteile Hy  
Gehäuse E  
Grundplatten E  
Hebel E  
Lagerböcke E  
Triebwerkteile E  
Zahnräder E

### Sortiermaschinen

Grundplatten E  
Typenführungsteile E

### Schreibmaschinen

Abdeckungen, vordere E  
Endkapseln E  
Fassungsringe Hy  
Gestellseitenwände E  
Grundgestelle E  
Hebel Hy  
Reiterstangen E

## Bürobedarfsartikel



1. Bleistift und Füllhalter (Hy)  
2. Bleistiftspitzer (E)  
3. Rechenscheiben (E und Hy)  
4. Rechenschieber (E und Hy)

Schalthebel E  
Stechwalzenschrauben E  
Tasterringe Hy  
Tastwerkträger E  
Umschlaghebel Hy  
Verbindungen, vordere und hintere E  
Walzenflanschen Hy  
Walzenrahmen E  
Walzenrohre E  
Zwischenhebellager E  
Zwischenschalthebel Hy

### Verschiedene Büromaschinen

Grundplatten E  
Kappen E  
Rückwände E  
Schaltbrücken E  
Seitenrahmen E  
Tischständer E

### Aktenordner

Einzelteile Hy

### Bleistiftspitzer E

### Brieföffner Hy

### Deckel für „Loose-Blatt-Bücher“ E

### Füllhalter Hy

### Gehäuse für Datumstempel Hy

### Kippkalender Hy

### Konzepthalter E und Hy

### Mantel f. Vierfarb- u. Füllbleistifte Hy

### Notizbuchrücken E

### Rechenscheiben E und Hy

### Rechenschieber E und Hy

### Reißzeuge Hy

### Schreibzeuge Hy

### Zeichenschienen Hy

- 110 -

## Office Supplies

Dressing machines  
Base plates E  
Type-guide parts E

Copy bookkeeping equipment  
Base plates E  
Rails E

Stamping machines  
Component parts E

Rollerith posting machines  
Slide rails E  
Base plates and legs E  
Oil brake holders E  
Props E  
Smaller machine parts E  
Calculating machines  
Component parts E

Dash registers  
Accessories E  
Housing E  
Base plates E  
Levers E  
Bearing blocks E  
Driving gear E  
Tooth-gears E

Sorting machines  
Base plates E  
Type-guide parts E

Typewriters  
Front cover plates E  
End cases E  
Holding rings E  
Frame walls E  
Frame bases E  
Levers E  
Rider rods E

1. Stand for rollerith-posting machine (E)
2. Typewriter key frame (E)
3. Wall clock, ladder, accessories, in an office (E).

- 111 -

## Office Supplies

Switch levers E  
Flange roller screws E  
Key rings E  
Key frames E  
Trunked levers E  
Non-spring pieces, front and rear E  
Roller flanges E  
Roller frames E  
Roller tubes E  
Intermediate lever bearings E  
Intermediate switch levers E

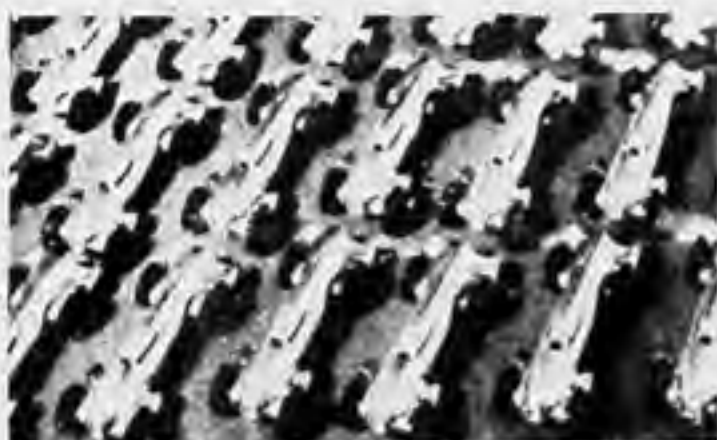
Various office machinery  
Base plates E  
Caps E  
Rear walls E  
Switch bridges E  
Slide frames E  
Slide stops E

File arranger  
Component parts E

Pencil sharpener E  
Letter openers E  
Cover for loose-leaf-notebooks E  
Pen - holders E  
Base for date stamps E  
Felt-eraser E  
Crabbling-paper holders E and E  
Body for four-color and filler pencil E  
Note-book holders E  
Calculating discs E and E  
Slide rules E and E  
 draughtsman's instrument boxes E  
Writing materials E  
Ironing squares E

1. Pencil and Pen (E)
2. Pencil sharpener (E)
3. Calculating discs (E and E)
4. Slide rules (E and E)

## Verschiedene Verwendungsgebiete



### Musikinstrumentenbau

Notenpulte E und Hy

Saiten Hy

Stimmlatten E

Teile für Laufmaschinen

Gelenkstützen E

Kniestützen E

Nadelbecher E

Platinen E

Schalldosen E

Tonarme Hy

### Spielwaren und Reklamegegenstände

Kindereisenbahnen

Grundplatten E

Zierteile E

Rennwagenmodelle E

Teile für Metallbaukästen E

### Abzeichen

Abzeichen E und Hy

Erkennungsmarken Hy

Fahnenringe Hy

Fahnen spitzen Hy

Knopfformen E und Hy

Knöpfe E und Hy

Litzen Hy

Plaketten E

Tressen Hy

1. Rennwagenmodelle (E)
2. Abzeichen (E)
3. Knöpfe (E und Hy)
4. Plaketten (E)



- 112 -

Miscellaneous Applications

Manufacture of musical instruments

Music stands E and Hy

Strings Hy

Records E

Parts for gramophones

Joint supports E

Base supports E

Saddle cups E

Record discs E

Sound boxes E

Sound arms Hy

Toys and

Amusement articles

Toy trains

Base plates E

Ornamental parts E

Racing-car models E

Parts for boys' metal building sets E

Emblems

Emblems A and Hy

Distinctive Tokens Hy

Flag rings Hy

Flag points Hy

Button molds A and Hy

Buttons E and Hy

Cords and braids Hy

Medallions E

Balloons Hy

1. Racing-car models (E)

2. Emblems (E)

3. Buttons (E and Hy)

4. Medallions (E)

DOCUMENT BOOK II BUSHIN No. 18

Page 113:

ELEKTRON PUBLICITY OF RECENT YEARS

Exhibitions - Printed Material - Advertisements





Internationale Automobil-  
Ausstellung, Berlin  
20. Februar bis 7. März 1937  
Bild 1



Weltausstellung, Paris  
März bis Dezember 1937  
Bild 4-6



Mustermesse Plovdiv (Bulgarien)  
3. bis 6. Mai 1937

„Schaffendes Volk“, Düsseldorf  
8. Mai bis 8. Oktober 1937  
Bild 2

„Reichstagung für Freizeit und  
Erholung“, Hamburg  
13. Juni 1937  
Bild 3

Magnesium-Tagung, Berlin  
5. bis 6. November 1937  
Bild 7-9

Magnesium-Tagung, Frankfurt a. M.  
11. bis 13. Januar 1938  
Bild 9-10

Die I. G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
Abt. Elektronmetall Bitterfeld  
war u. a. auf nachstehenden  
Ausstellungen vertreten:

Internationale Automobil-  
Ausstellung, Berlin  
18. Februar bis 4. März 1938

Frühjahrsmesse, Leipzig  
6. bis 14. März 1938  
Bild 11

Frühjahrsmesse, Utrecht,  
15. bis 24. März 1938

Mustermesse, Plovdiv (Bulgarien)  
25. April bis 8. Mai 1938

Internationale Luftfahrtausstellung,  
Helsinki  
14. bis 22. Mai 1938  
Bild 12

Internationale Luftfahrtausstellung  
Belgrad,  
28. Mai bis 13. Juni 1938

„750 Jahre Deutscher Erzbergbau“,  
Freiberg,  
19. Juni bis 15. August 1938

Werkstoff-Ausstellung, Rostock  
30. Juni bis 7. Juli 1938



The I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft,

Dept. Elektron Metal,

was represented at exhibitions i.e. as follows:

1. International Automobile Exhibition, Berlin, 20 February to 7 March 1937, illustration 1
2. World Exhibition, Paris, March to December 1937, illustrations 4 to 6.
- Sample Fair Plovdiv (Bulgaria) 3 to 6 May 1937
- "Nation at Work", Duesseldorf, 8 May to 8 October 1937, illustration 2
- "A National Convention for Leisure and Recreation", Hamburg, 13 June 1937, illustration 3
3. Magnesium Convention, Berlin, 5 to 6 November 1937, illustrations 7 to 9.
- Magnesium Convention, Frankfurt on the Main, 11 to 13 January 1938, illustrations 9 and 10
4. International Automobile Exhibition, Berlin, 18 February to 6 March 1938
- Spring Fair, Leipzig, 6 to 14 March 1938, illustration 11
5. Spring Fair, Utrecht, 15 to 24 March 1938
- Sample Fair, Plovdiv (Bulgaria), 25 April to 8 May 1938
- International Aviation Exhibition, Helsinki, 14 to 22 May 1938, illustration 12
6. International Aviation Exhibition, Belgrade, 28 May to 13 June 1938
- "750 Years of German Ore Mining, Freiburg, 19 June to 15 August 1938.
- Working Material Exhibition, Rostock, 30 June to 7 July 1938





Internationale Messe, Izmir (Türkei)  
20. August bis 30. September 1958

Herbstmesse, Wien  
11. bis 18. September 1958  
Bild 13

Internationale Ostmesse, Lemberg  
5. bis 19. September 1958

Bau- und Siedlungsausstellung  
Frankfurt a. M.  
5. September bis 9. Oktober 1958

Herbstmesse, Belgrad  
11. bis 25. September 1958

Industrierausstellung „Wille und  
Work“, Halle  
25. September bis 16. Oktober 1958

Leichtbautagung, Essen  
17. bis 27. Oktober 1958

Internationale Luftfahrtausstellung  
Paris  
25. November bis 11. Dezember 1958

-51-

Internationale Automobil-  
Ausstellung, Berlin  
17. Februar bis 5. März 1959

Frühjahrsmesse, Leipzig  
5. bis 15. März 1959  
Bild 14

Frühjahrsmesse, Wien  
12. bis 18. März 1959

Frühjahrsmesse, Utrecht  
14. bis 25. März 1959

Mustermesse Plovdiv (Bulgarien),  
10. bis 25. April 1959

Korrosions-Ausstellung, Lüttich  
16. bis 23. April 1959

Internationaler Kongreß der privaten  
Krankenanstalten und Sanatorien,  
Baden-Baden  
25. bis 28. April 1959

Internationale Ausstellung „Das  
Wasser“, Lüttich  
20. Mai bis Oktober 1959



7. International Fair, Izmir  
(Turkey) 20 August to  
30 September 1938  
  
Autumn Fair, Vienna,  
11 to 18 September 1938,  
illustration 13
8. International Eastern  
Fair, Lemberg,  
3 to 19 September 1938  
  
Building and Settlement  
Exhibition, Frankfurt  
on the Main,  
3 September to 9 October  
1938
9. Autumn Fair, Belgrade,  
11 to 23 September 1938  
  
Industrial Exhibition  
"Determination to Work",  
Halle, 23 September to  
16 October 1938
10. Convention for Light Weight Con-  
struction, Essen,  
17 to 27 October 1938  
  
International Aviation  
Exhibition, Paris, 25 No-  
vember to 11 December  
1938
11. International Auto-  
mobile Exhibition,  
Berlin, 17 February  
to 5 March 1939
12. Spring Fair, Leipzig,  
5 to 13 March 1939  
illustration 14  
  
Spring Fair, Vienna,  
12 to 18 March 1939
13. Spring Fair, Utrecht  
14 to 23 March 1939  
  
Sample Fair, Plovdiv  
(Bulgaria)  
10 to 23 April 1939  
  
Exhibition to show  
the Effects of Corro-  
sion, Liège, 16 to  
23 April 1939
14. International Congress  
of Private Hospitals  
and Sanatoria, Baden-  
Baden, 23 to 28 April  
1939  
  
International Exhibition  
"Water", Liège, 20 May  
to October 1939

DOCUMENT BOOK II BUEGIN No. 18

I hereby certify that above copy and photostatic  
copies correspond to the original.

Muenberg, 10 February 1948

signed: Dr. Verner Schubert  
Defense Counsel for the defendant  
Buegin



DOCUMENT BOOK II EUBIGIN No. 38

Excerpt from:

"Magnesium and its Alloys"

Revised by

H. Altwicker. A. Bauer. A. Beck. H. Bohner.  
W. Buchmann. R. Fiedler. G. Gossrau. O. Heinert.  
P. Menzen. W. Moschel. E. Nechtigall. E.J. de  
Ridder. W. Schultze. H. Seliger. G. Siebel.  
P. Spitaler. R. Suchy. H. Vosskuhler.  
W.H.O. Ziegler.

Edited by Dr.-Ing. E.h. Adolf Beck  
with 524 illustrations

---.

Berlin Verlag of Julius Springer 1939  
(Publishers)

(Origin: In possession of the defense).



## K. Applications.

367

## 1. Automobile and Motor-Cycle Industry.

Light weight, excellent wear, mass production and permanently identical castings of different types have caused the motorcar and motor-cycle industries to fit Magnesium die-castings as early as 1928-1930. Today the use of Magnesium die-castings in this branch of the industry is very extensive and there is hardly a passenger car today not having some Magnesium die-castings. This is exemplified by the great number of parts listed below (also see illustration 398):

Oil pump housings and covers, oil pump covers, gear casing covers, oil filter casings, oil control sockets, gear parts and casings, brackets for ignition distributors, crank cases and crank shaft bearing covers, instrument casings, holders for crank shaft bearing covers, overflow channel covers, gear box lids, brackets for starters and ignition distributor, cam shaft bearings, tappet guides, impellers, fan blades, packing- and jointing rings, pulleys, brackets for headlights, stop-lights and tail-lights.

Illustration 395: Various detail parts from the automobile industry.

From top left:

Steering housing, crank shaft bearing-covers, oil pump casing, gear casing cover, twin-pulley with steel reinforcement, bracket for ignition distributor, oil pump casing, jointing ring, cam shaft bearing, fan blade, tappet guides, pulley fan.





## Technology of die-casting.

368

## 2. Aircraft Industry.

For parts which are used several times on one machine the manufacture of tools is worth while in aircraft construction as well. Preferably only such parts should be made from magnesium die-castings which will not be subjected to too great a strain. At present the following parts are being manufactured from magnesium die-casting (also see illustration 399):

Tail skid wheels, brake shoes, brake levers, brake pistons, screw joints, covers, hinged covers, valve chamber covers, pipe clips, joints and screw joints.

## Illustration 399:

Die-castings from the aircraft industry. From left: tail skid wheel-tac halves, small brake shoes, large brake shoes, brake disc.

## Illustration 400:

Portable typewriter castings, screwed together, consisting of altogether 7 magnesium die-castings. The visible slots have been cast with a tolerance of  $\pm 0.02$  mm.

## Optical Industry.

369

## 3. Office Machinery Industry.

Die-castings are especially suited to the typewriter industry with its large-series production, where Magnesium die-castings has been employed there as early as since 1929. Their special advantages, apart from light weight, are their great precision which makes it possible for the slots for the key and crank levers to be cast about 1,5 mm thick and with a tolerance of  $\pm 0.02$  mm. There are typewriters today of which all castings are made of magnesium die-castings.

Illustration 400 shows 7 die-castings of a portable typewriter assembled, which form the frame for the entire interior operation of the typewriter. The precision-cast slots are visible.

Illustration 401: Base for a cash register. Weight of die-casting about 1.6 kg.

In the case of cash register - and calculating machines production in series have assumed such proportions lately that a change-over to magnesium die-casting was warranted. Illustration 401 shows the base frame of a cash register die-cast in magnesium.

Parts which are used in the office machinery industry so far are:

a) For typewriters: Base frames, side walls and gussets, carriage frames, covers, stop rod casings,



small bearings, switch mechanism plates, key boards, segment bearings, intermediate lever bearings, roller tubes and flanges.

b) For cash registers, adding machines, accounting machines:

Base frame, side walls, gear casings, paper press-roller housings, press joints, levers, slides, bearing blocks, crank bearings, type rings.

#### 4. Optical industry.

Light weight for photo- and telescope casings is decisive in the use of magnesium - die-castings. In this branch of industry as well

zweig ist Magnesiumspritzguß schon seit 1930 eingeführt. Ein Paar Fernglasgehäuse und ein Photogehäuse schwieriger Ausführung zeigt Abb. 402. Geliefert werden zur Zeit folgende Teile:

Körper, Arme und Konen für Fernglasgehäuse, Photogehäuse, Gehäuse für Vergrößerungsapparate, Gehäuse für Projektionsapparate.



Abb. 402. Fernglasgehäuse und Photogehäuse.

### 5. Elektroindustrie.

Glatte Oberfläche, Gleichmäßigkeit im Guß und damit Vermeidung von Schwerpunktsverlagerungen sind ausschlaggebend für die Verwendung von Magnesiumspritzguß bei allen rotierenden Teilen der Elektroindustrie.



Abb. 403. Kleiner Elektromotor, bestehend aus 3 Magnesiumspritzgußteilen.

Für stehende Teile wird er dann bevorzugt, wenn große Serien vorhanden sind oder das geringe Gewicht maßgebend für die Verwendung ist. Abb. 403 zeigt einen kompletten Elektromotor, bestehend aus Gehäuse mit Fuß, einem vorderen und einem hinteren Lagerschild aus Magnesiumspritzguß. Diejenigen Teile, die für die Elektroindustrie zur Zeit in Magnesiumspritzguß geliefert werden, lassen sich zusammenfassen in:

Gehäuse, Lagerschilde und Deckel für Motoren, Grundplatten, Polgehäuse, Lager, Lagerböcke, Ständerpakete, Hebel, Laufrollen.

### 6. Staubsaugerindustrie.

Magnesiumspritzguß wird für Staubsauger schon seit dem Jahre 1929 serienmäßig verwendet. Vorteile bieten die Dünnwandigkeit und Gleichmäßigkeit des Gusses, die glatte und saubere Oberfläche. Die Abb. 404 zeigt ein Motorgehäuse und ein Lagerschild für einen Staubsauger. Neben diesen Teilen eignen sich zur Herstellung in Magnesiumspritzguß noch:

Gehäuse, Grundplatten, Lagerkörper, Naben, Flügelräder, Bürstenscheiben, Leitrinne usw., Rollen, Hebel, Anschlußstücke.



Abb. 404. Motorgehäuse und Lagerschild für Staubsauger. Die beiden seitlichen Bohrungen des Lagerschildes sind mit einer Ringverankerung versehen.

### 7. Funkindustrie.

Magnesium-Spritzgußteile sind steifer und genauer als kombinierte Blechkonstruktionen. Da Magnesiumspritzguß außerdem keine Alterungserscheinungen zeigt, wird er in der Funkindustrie vorzugsweise für besonders schwierige und genaue Teile eingesetzt. Das geringe Gewicht kommt nur bei tragbaren Geräten der drahtlosen Funkindustrie zur Geltung. Die Abb. 405 zeigt ein Gehäuse für die Funkindustrie, das durch seine Dünnwandigkeit und nach allen Seiten notwendigen Kerne in der Herstellung besonders schwierig ist. Geliefert werden zur Zeit folgende Teile:

a) Für Rundfunkgeräte: Kondensatorwannen, Skalenträger, Seilscheiben, Rollenträger, Lagerböcke, Grundplatten, Abdeckkappen.

b) Für tragbare Stationen: Gehäuse, Gestelle, Steckergehäuse, Kupplungsgehäuse, Anschlußböden, Platten, Zahnräder, Hebel, Klemmschellen.



Abb. 405. Gehäuse für tragbare Funkgeräte.



370

magnesium die-castings have been introduced as early as 1930. Illustration 402 shows a binocular body and a complicated camera casing. The following parts can be supplied at present:

Body, arms and cones for binocular frames, camera casings, casings for magnifying instruments, casings for projectors.

Illustration 402; Binocular frame and camera casing.

#### 5. Electrical Industry.

Smooth surfaces, uniformity of castings and therefore accurate center of gravity are the decisive factors in the use of magnesium die-castings for all rotating parts in the electrical industry. For stationary parts it is preferred whenever large series are manufactured or whenever the light weight is the important factor. Illustration 403 shows a complete electric motor, consisting of housing with pedestal, a front and rear bearing block die-cast in magnesium. The magnesium die-cast parts which can be supplied at present to the electrical industry are:

Housings, bearing blocks, and covers for motors, base plates, pole casings, bearings, brackets, supports, levers, bushings.

Illustration 403, small electric motor, consisting of 3 magnesium die-castings.

#### The Radio Industry.

371

#### 6. The vacuum-cleaner industry.

Magnesium die-castings have been used for vacuum-cleaners since 1929. The advantages are: thin walls, uniform castings, and smooth, clean surfaces. Illustration 404 shows a motor housing and a bearing-block for a vacuum cleaner. Besides these the following parts are also suited to magnesium die-castings:

Casings, base plates, bearings, hubs, fans, brushes, guide rings, etc., rollers, levers and connecting pieces.

Illustration 404. Motor Housing and Bearing Block for Vacuum Cleaner. Both bores of the bearing block are provided with a Rudge tooth fitting.

#### 7. Radio Industry.

Illustration 405. Frame for a portable wireless set.

Magnesium die-castings are more rigid and accurate than sheet-metal parts. Moreover, since a magnesium die-casting is not subject to deterioration from fatigue, it is preferred for delicate and high-precision parts. The light-weight is of advantage for the portable instruments of the radio industry. Illustration 405 shows a radio set frame which is particularly difficult to make because of the thin walls and the requisite cores on all sides. The following parts are now being supplied:

DOCUMENT BOOK II BUEGIN No. 38

a) For wireless sets: condenser plates, dial supports, pulleys, bearing blocks, base plates, covers.

b) For portable sets: Frame, chassis, plug sockets, coupling casings, connecting sockets, plates, gear wheels, levers, clips.

## 8. Apparatebau.

Der tragbare Apparat wirkt sich das geringe Gewicht des Magnesiums sehr vorteilhaft aus. Im allgemeinen aber gibt die Dünnwandigkeit des Magnesiumspritzgusses und seine hohe Maßhaltigkeit

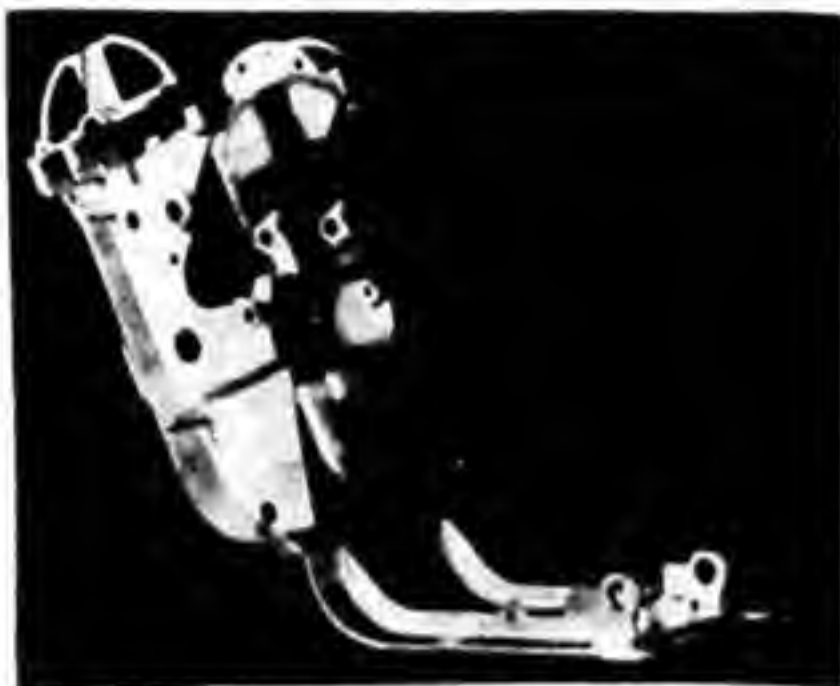


Abb. 100. Gehäuse des tragbaren Apparates, hergestellt aus Magnesiumspritzguss für tragbare Faltkarten-drucker.

die Möglichkeit der Herstellung schwerster Gußstücke. Die Abb. 100 zeigt die aufgeklappte Gußstücke eines tragbaren Faltkartendrucker.



Abb. 101. Gehäuse des tragbaren Apparates, hergestellt aus Magnesiumspritzguss für tragbare Faltkarten-drucker.

dessen scharfe Kanten und das geringe Gewicht aus Magnesiumspritzguss ist. Die aufgeklappte Verwendung im Apparatebau gibt die nachfolgende Abbildung.

Gehäuse für Faltkartendrucker, Hebel, Druckstücke, Lagerbocke, Deckel, Gehäuse und Fahnen für Taxameteruhren.

## 9. Allgemeiner Maschinenbau und andere Industriezweige.

Im allgemeinen Maschinenbau und in den nichterwähnten Industriezweigen größeren selten auftreten, ist Magnesiumspritzguss in diesen Gebieten weniger eingeführt. Trotzdem wird er auch im allgemeinen Maschinenbau heute schon verwendet für komplizierte Gehäuse mit vielen Kernzügen, also bei Teilen, bei denen durch Verwendung von Spritzguss hohe Bearbeitungskosten eingespart werden können.

Ein solches Gehäuse, das insgesamt 72 Kernzüge hat, ist in der Abb. 107 dargestellt. Weiter werden folgende Teile verwendet: Vertriebsgehäuse, Grundplatten, Deckel, Lagerbocke, Riemenscheiben, Hebel.



## 372 Technology of Die-Casting.

Illustration 406. Frame and cover, with built-in bearing blocks, cast in magnesium, for a portable ticket printer.

Illustration 407. Gear casing with 72 core holes on all sides. About one kilogram in weight.

## 8. Instrument construction.

For portable instruments the lightness of magnesium is a great advantage. However, the general advantage is that the thin walls of a magnesium die-casting and its ability to retain its shape make it possible to make the most difficult cast parts. Illustration 406 shows the dismantled cast parts of a portable ticket printer, all the castings of which were die-cast in magnesium because of the light weight.

The following list indicates the wide application in instrument construction:

General apparatus construction and other branches  
of industry. 373

Chassis for portable ticket printer, levers, printing presses, bearing blocks, covers, casings and flags for taxicab meters.

## 9. General machine construction and other branches of industry.

Since it is rare to have production in large series in general machinery construction and in the other branches of industry referred to (not mentioned), there has been less use made of magnesium die-castings in these fields. But even in the field of general engineering it is already being used at present for complicated casings with many cores, i.e., for parts where heavy machining costs can be avoided by the use of die-castings.

Illustration shows such a casing, which has 72 cores in all. Further, the following parts provide a field of application:

Gear cases, base plates, covers, bearing blocks, pulleys and levers.

## H. Die Anwendungsmöglichkeiten des Magnesiums als Konstruktionsbaustoff.

Infolge seines geringen spezifischen Gewichtes haben Magnesiumlegierungen ausgedehnte Anwendung im Flugzeugbau gefunden. Hier bewährte sich der Baustoff in mehr oder weniger beanspruchten und teils lebenswichtigen Bauteilen bei geringstem Gewicht in jahrelangem



Abb. 496. Großverkehrsflugzeug „Condor“.

praktischem Betrieb. Abb. 496 zeigt das moderne Großverkehrsflugzeug „Condor“. An ihm sind die Verkleidungen der Motoren, die untere „Condor“. An ihm sind die Verkleidungen der Motoren, die untere Beplankungsfläche vom Rumpf und Flügel, die Übergangsverkleidungen vom Flügel in das Leitwerk sowie die Brennstoffbehälter und verschiedene andere Verkleidungsteile in Magnesiumblech teils durch Nietung,



Abb. 497. Flugzeugrumpf in Magnesiumblech.

teils durch Schweißung hergestellt. Außerdem sind in größeren Abmessungen Gußteile im Fahrwerk und in der Steuerung verwendet. An den Flugmotoren werden vielfach eine Anzahl von Bauteilen, u. a. auch das Kurbelgehäuse, in Magnesiumguß hergestellt. Auch bei kleineren Flugzeugen, die mit Rücksicht auf ein ziviles Auslandsge-  
schäft sehr wirtschaftlich hergestellt werden müssen, hat sich die Verwendung von Magnesiumlegierungen bewährt. Die Abb. 497 zeigt einen ganz in Magnesiumblech hergestellten Flugzeugrumpf. Er wurde aus Blechtafeln mit nach dem Rumpfe abnehmenden Wandstärken in zwei Hälften antogen geschweißt und anschließend zusammenge-  
nietet. Die infolge des geringen spezifischen Gewichtes mög-

liche Wandstärkenvergrößerung erlaubte es, eine Vielzahl von inneren Aussteifungsprofilen, die bei tragenden Schalenkonstruktionen zur Unterstützung der dünnen Bleche notwendig sind, wegfällen zu lassen, da die Knicksteifigkeit derartiger Schalen mit zunehmender Wandstärke stark zunimmt. Hierdurch wurden beträchtliche Arbeitsstunden für die Herstellung des Rumpfes eingespart. Für Verkehrsflugzeuge werden vielfach die Gerüste der Passagiersitze gemäß Abb. 498 aus Leichtmetallrohren in der Elektronlegierung AZM (FIW 3510.2) geschweißt, wobei man unter Einhaltung der



Abb. 498. Kabinengerüst für ein Verkehrsflugzeug in Elektronmetallrohren geschweißt.



Abb. 499. Aufbau eines Omnibusanhängers in Magnesiummetall.



Constructional principles, correct treatment of the material in the workshop.

H. Applications of Magnesium as <sup>con</sup>struction material.

Owing to its low specific gravity magnesium alloys have found wide use in airplane construction. In years of practical use this construction material has proved its merits for constructional purposes some of them of vital importance, subject to more or less strain and with a minimum of weight. Illustration 496 shows the large modern airliner "Condor". The cowling of the motors, the bottom covering of fuselage and wings, the streamlining cowlings from the wings to the tail as well as the fuel containers and various other cowlings parts have been manufactured from magnesium sheets partly by riveting and partly by welding. Die-castings have also been used in fairly large sizes in the motor parts and in the steering mechanism. A number of airplane engine parts, including the crank case, is frequently cast of magnesium. Also in the case of smaller airplanes where great economy of production is necessary in the interests of commercial export, the use of magnesium alloys has proved successful. Illustration 497 shows an airplane fuselage made entirely of magnesium sheets. It was built by oxyacetylene welding in two sections made of sheet metal which becomes thinner toward the fuselage end, and subsequently riveted together. The greater wall thickness, which is possible due to the small specific gravity, made it possible to dispense with much of the interior bracing, which is necessary to support the thin sheets of the structure subject to strain, since the resistance to bending of such structures increases considerably as the wall thickness increases. In this way considerable man-hours were saved in the manufacture of the fuselage. For passenger planes the frames of the passenger seats, according to illustration 498 are frequently made of welded light metal tubes of elektron alloy AZM (FTW 3510.2), which has a light construction weight, combined with the specified high rigidity.

Illustration 496. Giant passenger plane "Condor".

Illustration 497. Plane fuselage from magnesium sheeting.

Illustration 498. Cabin chair for a passenger plane made from welded elektron tubes.

Illustration 499. Construction of a bus trailer from magnesium metal.

vorgeschriebenem hohen Bruchzähigkeit ein geringes Baugewicht erzielt. Eine sehr ausgedehnte Verwendung haben die Magnesiumlegierungen im Automobilwesen gefunden. Hier werden vor allen Dingen Kurbelgehäuse, Getriebegehäuse, Ölpumpen u. a. m. in Guß hergestellt. Auch im Omnibus-



Abb. 500. Knotenpunkt eines Fahrradrahmens.



Abb. 501. Hochfrequenz Bohrmaschine.

Straßenbahn- und Eisenbahnfahrzeugbau verwendet man dieses Leichtmetall. Abb. 499 zeigt den Aufbau eines Omnibusanhängers, der neuerdings serienmäßig hergestellt wird und gegenüber dem Stahlbau ein um 30% niedrigeres Gewicht aufweist. Außer der bereits geschilderten Anwendung von Magnesiumguß für Kanonenräder hat dieser Werkstoff

im ausgedehnten Maße Eingang in die Rüstungsindustrie gefunden, wo er sich unter schwersten Beanspruchungen im praktischen Betrieb be-

währt. Die Abb. 500 zeigt den Knotenpunkt eines Fahrradrahmens, der aus Leichtmetallrohren und Guß besteht. Die bis heute durchgeführte Erprobung läßt erwarten, daß hier ein leichtes Fahrrad wirtschaftlich auf den Markt gebracht werden kann. Besonders wertvoll erscheint die Anwendung dieses Materials für transportable Maschinen. Abb. 501 zeigt als Beispiel eine Hochfrequenz-Bohrmaschine, deren Gehäuse mit Griff in Magnesiumguß ausgeführt wurde. Die Abb. 502 zeigt eine tragbare Kraftspritze für die Zwecke der Feuerwehr. Hier sind verschiedene Gehäuse in Magnesiumguß und der Tragkörper selbst aus gepreßten Rohren der Elektronlegierung AZM (FW 3510.2) geschweißt.



Abb. 502. Tragbare Kraftspritze für Feuerwehr mit Magnesiumbauteilen.



Abb. 503. Straßenraume mit Magnesiumgüßteilen.

Abb. 503 zeigt eine Straßenraume, bei der der Hauptgußkörper in Magnesiumguß hergestellt wurde. Sie hat sich in langjährigem Betrieb gegenüber den hohen Stoß- und Schlagbeanspruchungen bewährt. Auch

of

Constructional principles; correct handling/the  
working material in manufacture.

Magnesium alloys have found extensive use in the motorcar industry. Here mainly crank cases, gear casings, oil pumps and other parts are cast. This light metal is also being used in the construction of buses, street cars and railway cars. Illustration 499 shows the body of a bus trailer which is recently being built in series and which is 30 % lighter than a steel body. Besides the use of cast magnesium for gun wheels already described, this material

456  
The Possibilities of Magnesium as a Constructional  
Material.

has found wide application in the armament industry, where it has proved its value in practical operations under conditions of the severest strain. Illustration 500 shows the junction points of a bicycle frame which consists of light-metal tubes and castings. The tests carried out so far show that there are good prospects for a light bicycle to be put on the market. The use of this material for portable machines seems to be particularly promising. Illustration 501 shows, as an example, a high-frequency hand drill, the frame of which has a cast magnesium handle. Illustration 502 shows a portable power spray for fire-fighting. Here various types of framework are cast in magnesium, and the carrying piece consists of welded pressed tubes of the Elektron alloy AZH (P17 3510.2). Illustration 503 shows a pile driver for highway construction in which the main casting was cast in magnesium. It has stood up for many years to the severe strains of driving and ramming operations.

Illustration 503 Road Ram having Magnesium Castings.



an ortsfesten Maschinen führt die Verwendung von Magnesiumlegierungen an hin- und hergehenden Teilen zu technischen Fortschritten. Die Abb. 504 zeigt Nadelbarren einer Textilmaschine, die aus gepreßten



Abb. 504. Nadelbarren für Textilmaschinen.



Abb. 505. Zigarettenmaschine mit Magnesiumbauteilen.

Magnesiumprofilen bestehen. Welche Vorteile auf diesem Gebiet erzielt werden können, zeigt Abb. 505 an einer Zigarettenmaschine, deren Leistungsfähigkeit durch Verwendung von Bauteilen in Magnesiumlegierungen vervielfacht werden konnte. In Fällen, wo Werkzeugmaschinen in fahrbaren Werkstätten oder Etagen mit Rücksicht auf geringe Belastung des Baugerüsts mit besonders leichtem Gewicht hergestellt werden

müssen, hat die Anwendung von Magnesiumguß sich als zweckmäßig erwiesen. Die Abb. 506 stellt eine Drehbank dar, an der der Hauptkörper in Sandguß ausgeführt wurde. Die Umkonstruktion wurde mit Rücksicht auf gleiche Elastizität gegenüber der Ausführung in Grauguß, bzw. geschweißter Stahlkonstruktion vorgenommen. Die Feinmessungen bei größter Spanstärke ergaben ein gleiches Verhalten wie die Schwer-



Abb. 506. Präzisionsdrehbank aus Eläktroguß.

metallausführung. Die Laufschienen am Drehbankbett wurden mit Rücksicht auf die geringere Oberflächenhärte des Leichtmetalles mit Schwermetall-Leisten bewehrt.

Die angeführten Bauteile stellen nur einen kleinen Ausschnitt aus der vielseitigen Anwendungsmöglichkeit der Magnesiumlegierungen dar. Überall dort, wo Magnesiumlegierungen in stoffgerechter Konstruktion und Werkstattverarbeitung eingesetzt wurden, haben sie sich bewährt und technische Fortschritte ermöglicht.

The use of magnesium alloys for the reciprocating parts of stationary engines likewise has led to technical advances. Illustration 504 shows the needle bars of a textile machine which consist of pressed magnesium profiles. What advantages may be obtained in this field is shown by a cigaret machine in illustration 505, the capacity of which has been trebled by the employment of magnesium alloy parts.

Illustration 504 Needle Arm for Textile Machines.  
Illustration 505 Cigaret Machine having magnesium parts.  
Illustration 506 High-Precision Lathe Cast in Ziektron.

In cases where machine tools installed in mobile workshops or on upper floors have to be of a particularly light weight, magnesium castings have proved eminently satisfactory. Illustration 506 shows a lathe the main casting of which was cast in sand. The conversion was carried out with due regard to the same elasticity as that of cast iron or fabricated steel. Precision measurements produced the same behavior as that of heavy metal under maximum stress. The slides on the lathe table were reinforced with heavy metal rails in view of the lower surface hardness of the light alloy.

The constructional parts enumerated above represent but a small section out of the numerous possibilities for the employment of magnesium alloys. Wherever magnesium alloys are utilized in a constructionally suitable manner and correctly worked in the shops, they have proved themselves and brought about technical progress.

DOCUMENT BOOK II BUEGIN No. 38

I hereby certify that above copy and photostatic  
copies correspond to the original.

Muenberg, 2 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel for the defendant  
Buegin

DOCUMENT BOOK II BUEGIN

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

27 February 1948

I, George GOODMAN, No. 34789, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document Book II BUEGIN.

George GOODMAN,  
No. 34789.



Case 6  
Defense

Military Tribunal No. VI  
- Case No. 6 -

DOCUMENT BOOK No. III

for

Dr. Ernst B u e r g i n

Submitted by  
Attorney-at-Law  
Dr. Werner Schubert  
at present at  
Nurnberg.

Gung





# Table of Contents

for

Document Book III Auerbach

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
		<u>Magnesium production at Litterfeld and Aken.</u>	
		<u>Connections with foreign countries</u>	
17		Affidavit by Dr. Ing. Gustav RIST, dated 18 November 1947. RIST, R. proceeded the defendant QUERIN as head of the plant community of Central Germany until 1937. Querin's main tasks were, at that time, electrolysis and inorganic substances; he was not particularly interested in magnesium and did not take part in the contracts with the Reich concerning Aken, Stassfurt and Teutschenthal. History of magnesium production and of the aforementioned factories. History of business connections with American, English and French industry and of the large-scale communication, by IG, of knowledge acquired in the field of magnesium, in particular an explanation of the All-contract of 1931, restricting initial production to 3,000 tons per year. QUERIN did not take part in the establishment of the electrolytic and stabilizer-plant at Aken.	1 - 20
63		Affidavit by Karl von HEDER, dated 3 February 1948 concerning the minutes of the enlarged Inorganic Committee of the IG on 27 March 1933. At the meeting, 500 tons monthly production was envisaged for Litterfeld as IG's provisional target in Electro-metall.	21
46		Excerpt from the contract between the German Reich and the IG dated 13/14 June 1934 concerning construction of the Aken Magnesium Factory (Prosecution Exhibit NI-4497, Doc. Book 33, English page 3, German page 4). It follows from parts of the contract, left out in the Prosecution document (Art. 5-10) that the IG, apart from deliveries for the Reich, was allowed to carry out orders for third parties also. In connection with such deliveries to private customers.	

# Table of Contents

for

Document Book III - WERGIN

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
		the IG had to refund the amortization sums paid by the Reich to IG in the form of duties for Essen metal delivery. Should there be no work at the plant after 1935, the Reich has the right to take over the plant against compensation for the remaining expenses; otherwise the plant belongs to the IG, to dispose of it as it pleases.	22 - 37
5		Affidavit by Hans FRIEDRICH, dated 12 November 1947, concerning the choice of the building site and the construction of the Aken magnesium factory. When the factory was built, Dr. WERGIN evidently kept in the background; neither was he much interested in the factory afterwards. He did not participate in the conclusion of the contract concerning Aken. This statement was made by a man who was in England from 1936 to 1938 in order to build a magnesium factory. The entire knowledge acquired from the magnesium production at Litterfeld and Aken was placed at the disposal of the English.	36 - 47
56		Affidavit by Albert KESSELRING, dated 6 February 1946, concerning the construction, by IG, of auxiliary plants for magnesium demanded by the Reich, the overrating of incendiary bombs in the first years of re-armament, and the IG's resistance against the participation of the Intershall firm in magnesium production.	51 - 66
45		Affidavit by Dr. Hermann Alfred LUCH, chemist and Patent-Ingenieur (patent attorney) at Litterfeld, dated 16 October 1947. From 1922 onwards he was employed for the development of a world-wide market for magnesium produced at Litterfeld. He describes the connections with US firms, Johns, Ford and Alcoa among others, and explains the meaning of the Ali contract of 1931 (Prosecution-Exhibit 898, Document Book 43, English page 126, German page 121), and in particular the reason	

# Table of Contents

for

## Document Book III BUREAU

Doc. No. Exh. No.	Document	Page
	for the limitation of the initial capacity for production of magnesium to 4000 tons, or 6000 tons for 2 companies which were to be founded. In accordance with the contract, the IG furnished the partners in the States with all technical information dealing with magnesium, by sending experts, by surrendering patent rights and knowledge acquired. The same applied to the English partners.	45 - 55
73	Main Chart, containing the important parts of a contract, dated 24/28 November 1931, between IG and: 1) Compagnie des Produits Chimiques et Electrometallurgiques Alais, France at Cambruge, Paris, 2) Societe d'Electro-Chimie, d'Electro-Metallurgie et des Acieries Electriques d'Alais, Paris 3) Societe Generale du Magnesium, Paris. In the contract the IG promises, among other things, to surrender to the French group all documents pertaining to the production of magnesium, and to grant to the group an exclusive license for France for all existing and future patents, experience and processes connected with production, processing and treatment of magnesium and its alloys. The spheres of interest of the French Group and the IG in France, Germany and the rest of Europe are fixed, the export conditions determined, furthermore a permanent future exchange of knowledge acquired is arranged.	56 - 63
71	Main Chart containing the important parts of a contract dated 30 December 1933/12 April 1935, between the IG and F. & M. Ltd., Ltd., London.	

# Table of Contents

For

Document Book III HURGIN

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
		In this contract the IG grants to the Hughes firm the monopoly within the British Empire and binds itself to transfer its patents in the British Empire to Hughes, and to give them technical assistance, while the Hughes firm undertakes to cover their requirements in light metal by purchases from the IG.	64 - 66
72		Main Court contains the important parts of several contracts between IG, F.A. Hughes & Co., Ltd. and the British Magnesium Co., dated 1934 and 1935, in connection with the planned construction of a magnesium factory in England.	67 - 69
74		Memorandum by IG, Litterfeld, Dr. DUCH, dated 3 January 1939, regarding the amendment of the contract with the MAGNESIUM DEVELOPMENT CORPORATION in matters connected with magnesium. The report shows that after 1931, because of the poor development of the magnesium field in the United States, the IG could not expect to receive the share of profits granted to her by the Lig-contract in the near future, and that the Lig-contract provided for unilateral communication of patents and knowledge acquired by the IG to the American partners.	70 - 75
87		Affidavit by Earl Hermann HUBER, dated 7 February 1940, concerning the active exchange of knowledge acquired in the field of magnesium between IG Litterfeld and the United States, Great Britain and France. The exchange of knowledge acquired consisted of transmission of IG test reports, assignment of fully conversant experts to the firms abroad, advising of foreign visitors, surrendering of finished products.	

Table of Contents  
for  
Document Book III PURGIN

Exh. No. Doc. No.	Document	Page
	and assistance in the building and putting into operation of magnesium factories abroad. The statement also mentions the employment of prisoners of war and civilian foreign workers in the magnesium factory at Witterfeld.	76 - 87
15	Affidavit by Hans BETHMANN, dated 13 December 1947, about a visit to Witterfeld of Mr. BETHMANN from the Alcoa, when he was shown all important production sites and when technical problems were discussed with him.	88 - 89
6	Affidavit by Hubert LUGACK, dated 13 November 1947, about a visit of Mr. BETHMANN to the IG at Witterfeld and Alcoa. The whole Alcoa plant was shown to Mr. BETHMANN by order of Mr. FISTER and Mr. PURGIN, despite the fact that armament material was produced there.	90 - 92
41	Affidavit by Clifford I. ANDREAE, dated 22 January 1948, concerning the brisk business activity and exchange of experience between the IG and its English licensees. The British Air Ministry had had some influence in the construction of the magnesium factory at Clifton Junction which had been carried out by German specialists.	93 - 94
75	Letter from the IG Witterfeld to the AEC, dated 12 January 1948, concerning magnesium production in the United States. The IG requests permission to continue fulfilling its stipulated obligations towards the American partners with regard to surrendering knowledge acquired in tests.	95 - 96
73	Affidavit by Herman E. PURGIN, Director of the American Magnesium Corporation, dated 26 January 1948. The writer states	



Table of Contents  
for  
Document Book III DUEGIN

Exh. No. Doc. No.	Document	Page
	that the limitation of production as laid down in the Ali.-contract was removed by a later alteration of the contract, and that the IG fulfilled its obligations to surrender know-how until the outbreak of war in 1939. He describes his own visits and the visits of his colleagues to Germany until 1939, and the absolutely frank information which he was given by IG on those occasions.	99 - 101

Order for making corrections filed in  
BBC. 8h I after the index.

Copy.  
Affidavit.

I, Dr. phil., Dr.-Ing. Gustav FIST, born 13 July 1872 in Elberfeld, resident in Tegernsee-Sued, Niedersteinstrasse 16a 1/5, have first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by making a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement conforms to the truth and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. 6 at the Palace of Justice, Nurnberg, Germany.

I entered the Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron (CFGE) at Griesheim/Hain in 1915. I became a member of the Vorstand of the CFGE in 1919 and when this firm was absorbed by the IG Farbenindustrie AG (IG), I was a member of the Vorstand of the latter from 1926 until 1937. I retired from business in 1938 and was appointed to the Aufsichtsrat of the IG in the same year. Having filed an application for admission to the Party, I was advised that I had been admitted at the end of July 1939. Having been a member of the Deutsche Automobilklub and the Bitterfelder Motorsportverein for many years, I became a member of the NSKK (National Socialist Motor Corps) and the NSFK (National Socialist Aviation Corps). I had no functions nor did I hold any rank.

I am making a great part of the following statements from memory, as I have only a small amount of written material at my disposal.

1.

My successor in the management of the Bitterfeld-Wolfen works, of the plant community Central Germany of the IG, is from 1 January 1939 was Dr. Ernst URGIN. This plant community was formed in 1933 by the Bitterfeld-Sued works, Bitterfeld-Nord works and the Farbenfabrik Wolfen. Subsidiary works belonging to this community were the Rheinfelden (Rhine) and Bitterfeld plants, the phosphoric acid plant in Hockeritz and later on the

works at Aken, Teutschenthal, Stassfurt and Scharsfeld.

Dr. DUEGIN joined the Rheinfelden plant in 1920 and was put in charge of its management some years later. In 1931, Dr. DUEGIN was called to Litterfeld and took over the management of the Litterfeld-Sued works. Dr. DUEGIN, like myself, is a specialist for inorganic and electro-chemistry and his work at the Sued works at that time was mainly concerned with the electrolysis and the inorganic operations, to which also belonged the production of magnesium. However, during the first years of his work there, Dr. DUEGIN devoted his efforts above all to making improvements in the older operations at Litterfeld-Sued, chloralkali electrolysis and the production of potassium bichromate. The work-shops concerned with alloys and the processing of magnesium at the Sued works, called Department E, retained their independence for a number of years, as before, and Dr. DUEGIN did not take any great interest in this Department E, even during the last years of my activity in Litterfeld.

In about 1933, Dr. DUEGIN, in addition to the functions he had carried out until then, was also entrusted with the management of the inorganic operations of the other works in the plant community, and if I remember rightly, at the Aken and Teutschenthal works also, which had, however, already been in operation for approximately one year. The Stassfurt works were not ready for production at that time.

Dr. DUEGIN was not at all with the management of the organic operations in the nitric acid fertilizer plants of the plant community Central Germany until the end of 1937. All the organic operations were managed by Dr. R. MEY until 1935; his successor for the organic operations at the Sued works and Nord-works was Dr. SOHLENBERG, and the Wolfen works Dr. SOHLENBERG. Dr. I. ISTRASSEN was in charge of the fertilizer acid nitric plants

- 3 -

at the Sued works and Wolfen.

Dr. UERGIN was a procurist until 31 December 1937 and was given the title of "Director", without his position - as defined by commercial law - being affected. Dr. UERGIN was not a member of the IG Technical Committee (TEA) up to the time when I resigned.

Dr. UERGIN was - as far as I remember - not connected with the conclusion of the contracts signed by the IG and the Reich concerning the Alzen, Teutschenthal and Staasfurt works; he had nothing or hardly anything to do with the erection of these plants. At any rate Dr. UERGIN was not responsible for the conclusion of the contract concerning the erection of these new plants. On the commercial side Herr Paul HUEBLICH is not - as far as I remember - responsible for the conclusion of these contracts either.

## II.

General information about magnesium and the contract concerning Alzen and Staasfurt.

The OSGE, one of the founder firms of the IG, has been carrying on the production of magnesium in Litterfeld ever since about 1900, and from 1905 onwards set itself the task of processing magnesium for alloys and for metal for practical use, which up to then had been unknown. In contrast to all other metals, Germany has inexhaustible deposits of magnesium salt and minerals, and is by no means second to other countries in this respect. This fact, and the small specific weight of only 1.7 (compared with aluminium 2.7) and good properties of strength had an encouraging effect on the development. The new light metal called Elektron - metall, was patented in 1908 and was shown for the first time at the Frankfurt Aviation Exhibition in the same year.

In 1916 the Litterfeld plant was extended for a production of approximately 2000 tons per year, and magnesium alloys were obtained in a smelting process in a new processing workshop and were worked up to semi-finished products.



- 4 -

As the metal had proved its worth - though it still called for considerable improvements - research work and endeavors to perfect it were continued after 1918, by a large staff of specialists.

The installations in Bitterfeld were thoroughly examined in 1919 by the interallied control commission, which had to carry out the demobilization of the German industries, and no objections were raised.

In 1920 a magnesium factory was erected in Bitterfeld on the basis of a new production process with a potential capacity of 3500 tons per year, though at the beginning it was equipped only 5% of this. The new production process proved to be successful and no further changes were made during all the time that followed. Entirely new processing methods were also developed for the magnesium alloys. On the basis of IG licenses and IG experience, 5 large foundries in Germany and 1 large foundry in 7 foreign countries had by 1926 begun to manufacture castings from Elektronmetall. The number of manufacturers had increased considerably by 1933, and forgings and pressings were also being made. Many industries began to use Elektronmetall: the automobile and aircraft industry, the machine industry, the optical industry, the camera industry, telephone and telegraph service, the textile industry, printing, etc. It is worthy of note that the Italian firm of Isotta Fraschini at once began to use castings and pressings made of Elektronmetall in the production of aircraft engines as early as in 1926. Parts made of Elektronmetall proved their worth on the occasion of record flights made by Italians, for instance when General Salandieri made his squadron flight to South America in 1931. In 1931 the IG took up business relations with English aircraft factories by making sample deliveries of Elektronmetall propellers to the firm of



- 5 -

Bristol. The English aeroplane which made a record flight from England to Australia in 1934 had many parts made of this metal.

Extensive overall licenses for the production of magnesium and its processing were granted to the United States and France even before 1933, and it was also employed successfully in England. These relations were diligently fostered by the IG after 1933 also.

Products made of Elektrometall were regularly shown at German and foreign exhibitions and fairs from 1925 onwards, and they stood the test in motorcar races and flights. The metal had been familiar to experts throughout the whole world even before 1933.

Towards the end of 1933 or the beginning of 1934 the German Government approached the IG in the matter of the erection of a new plant, with a capacity of approximately 5000 to 7000 tons per year. As the Reich had promised to support the IG's endeavors in the utilization of Elektrometall in the industry, the IG complied with the Reich's demand for the erection of a new magnesium plant. We knew that this plant was destined to contribute to the rebuilding of the German Wehrmacht, yet my colleagues and I myself did not find any fault with that. We did not know and actually could not know that the production of this plant would some day be used in a war of aggression. But we considered it right that Germany should organize a Wehrmacht again, since the countries bordering on Germany also maintained standing armies.

The location of the new plant, Alsen on the Elbe, was suggested by the director of the Bitterfeld IG power plant, which had the task of supplying the new magnesium plant with electric current. Alsen could easily be supplied with electric current from Bitterfeld, by means of an overhead cable, and it is favorably situated on the river and near the railway.

- 5 -

- 5 -

As far as I remember, the project for the erection of the Aken plant was submitted for approval in the usual way to the Vorstand of the IG. It is quite possible that a preliminary discussion about the subject was held with Geheimrat Prof. Dr. Carl FUSCH, president of the Vorstand of the IG at that time, as was sometimes done.

It is correct that - as far as I can remember - the Reich authorities had sometimes talked of camouflage. But camouflage was not made a condition, and I do not remember that any sum of money worth mentioning had to be expended for that. The Aken plant was built in a small, thinly set pinewood. Pine-trees die within a short time from the effects of the waste gases containing hydrochloric acid which result from magnesium production. So it was almost Aken. This had already happened at Litterfeld, and the IG was prompted to make arrangements for indemnity straight away with the owners of woods situated near the Aken works; these in turn desisted from claiming compensation.

It would have been impossible to keep the erection of the Aken plant and the magnesium production there secret. Instructions to that effect could not have been enforced in view of the many subcontract firms which worked on the construction and the numerous staff personnel and laborers necessary for construction and production; many of these lived in the large town of Aachen, which was only 16 kilometers away from Aken. Secrecy was stipulated, however, as regards the contents of the contract, if I remember rightly. This is customary also in many cases where delivery contracts in the industry are concerned.

It is correct that slugs were produced for incendiary bombs; these were known of even shortly before the end of the first world war, but as far as I remember a considerable part of the production was sold to customers as pipe or other semi-finished material. Orders from abroad were also - if I remember - 6 -

rightly - executed by the Alcoa works. The Reich had promised the IG to promote sales to general industry as much as possible. The Reich gave its ample support in connection with magnesium meetings and large special exhibitions solely for products made from magnesium alloys, and for instance, helped the IG a great deal in introducing Elektronmetall in the Volkswagen production.

In any case I give the assurance that the IG had considered it its task even after 1933 to promote the use of Elektronmetall in all industries at home and abroad. The reduced production costs, resulting from the new production process introduced in 1928, encouraged these endeavors. After 1933 also, products of all kinds made of Elektronmetall, were shown at exhibitions at home and abroad, for instance at the World Fair in Paris in 1937; they were severely tested in all kinds of competitions. The IG did not spare any pains in giving advice to consumers at home and abroad; they always did so with the firm conviction that this metal was destined to play an important part in technical matters, and there was reason to believe that after the rebuilding of the army had been concluded a considerable part of the requirements of the Reich would be used in the industry.

The fact that these endeavors of the IG are remembered abroad today is evident from the aims pronounced at the "First International Magnesium Congress" which was held in New York at the end of 1945. I learnt from a speech made there by Major G.I.F. Coll, the English magnesium expert, which he kindly sent me, that at this congress a "Magnesium Association" had been established in order "to create an ever-increasing consumption of magnesium products."

The aluminum works at Alcoa were - to my knowledge - erected only during the war. It was a plant belonging to the Aluminium GmbH, Altkrefeld, a firm which is not identical with the IG and has its own administration.

- 8 -

The IG and the Metall-gesellschaft, Frankfurt/Main, each owned half of the capital and the plant exists since 1918. The share of this company in the German aluminum production was approximately one sixth.

Towards the middle of 1935, if I remember correctly, the IG began the construction of another magnesium plant as demanded by the Reich authorities. It was erected at Stassfurt. Out of three building sites, Stassfurt was proposed by the IG on account of its favorable technical position. Here in the potash plant, mine Aschontsch of the Preussische Bergbau A.G., magnesium chloride lye was obtained as a spent lye and conducted to the rivers without being utilized. That is a suitable raw material for the production of magnesium, it could be conveyed to the new plant by a relatively short pipe-line and was available in ample quantities. On the part of the Reich the three sites proposed were reconnoitred by air-plane and, for some reason which I no longer remember, the airplane was unable to spot the Stassfurt site, possibly even the town as such. The site is located right on the outskirts of the town, directly next to a large soda factory and not far away from another potash plant. The magnesium plant was erected on an open field and was, as far as I know, to produce approximately 4000 tons p.a. to start with and was enlarged after a few years. Up to the end of 1937, the Stassfurt plant had not taken up operations; this had not been expected when the plant was under construction.

### III.

Relations of the I.G. to the USA in the field  
of magnesium.

As early as in the middle of the 1920s the I.G. attempted to introduce electron metal in the industries of the United



- 9 -

States. Negotiations took place with Dow and Ford, and in 1928 with the Alcoa Aluminum and Brass Corporation, Detroit. In the latter, the Englishman Major G.J.P. Ball, who was interested in magnesium, participated at the request of the I.G. Unfortunately the endeavors were without any success.

Later on a discussion took place with the Aluminum Company of America (Alcoa), which was located in Pittsburgh. In 1930 approximately, Mr. LAMER, an agent of the Alcoa, visited Dittorf; he was accompanied by Mr. Fitzgerald of Niagara Falls, an independent expert. According to information received by the I.G., Mr. FITZGERALD, at the request of the Alcoa, had previously inspected the magnesium plant of the Dow Chemical Co. in Midland (Michigan) as expert. A thorough examination by Messrs. LAMER and FITZGERALD of the production- and manufacturing (processes) plants and the production methods applied by the I.G. for magnesium and alloys took place at Dittorf. The I.G. welcomed this examination and submitted to the expert judgment of Mr. FITZGERALD who had to decide which processing method he was to recommend to the Alcoa. The choice was made in favor of the I.G. processing method and led to the conclusion of an agreement, the so-called alloy-agreement. The I.G. and the Alcoa pooled their present and future patent rights and experiences in the field of magnesium production and manufacturing in a newly formed American corporation, the Magnesium Development Co. (MDC).

The object of this agreement concluded in 1931 was "the greatest possible development in the field of magnesium". According to the agreement, two magnesium production plants could be erected right at the Dittorf, one by the Alcoa and one by the I.G., with a maximum initial capacity of 4000 tons p.a. each, i.e. a maximum initial capacity of 8000 tons p.a. In addition to



- 10 -

this, the agreement provided that production and processing licenses could be granted to five of the largest American consumers for their own requirements, without fixing the maximum capacity in regard to production. This was agreed upon at the request of the IG, which knew the interests of Ford.

The Alig agreement was concluded at a time of acute economical depression, a maximum initial capacity of 4000 tons p.a. each was a high estimate at that time; as far as I remember, it was the well justified desire of both partners, that in case only one of them should establish a production plant at first, the other should be given the opportunity of participating after a certain production level had been reached and the required increase of production was effected, which led to the stipulation of the initial capacity. I believe I also remember that in view of the high initial capital required, currency reasons were also decisive for the IG. Especially if the installation is to be erected without utilizing an existing plant - as was originally intended - the costs of construction are considerable on account of the required auxiliary plants. Since the new metal in question was not yet employed to a great extent in the USA, it was more difficult to carry out the original plan to erect a plant without utilizing an existing installation.

Therefore the I.G. welcomed the proposal which the Alcoa made in 1933 inviting it to become a partner with equal rights in the American Magnesium Corporation (AMC) founded by the Alcoa some time ago. The Alcoa agreed now to place its large resources at net cost prices at the disposal of the joint enterprise, the AMC. The agreement of 1933 placed the manufacturing and practically also the production of magnesium in the USA in the hands of the AMC and no longer stipulated any limitation in regard to the initial production. The IG was convinced that now

- 11 -

the difficulties in taking up the production of magnesium had been overcome and facilitated the conclusion of the agreement by renouncing the additional indemnity of one million dollars out of surplus profits of the IGC agreed upon in 1931 (Alig agreement). Surely this is a proof of how greatly IG was interested in promoting the production of magnesium and the sale of electron metal in the USA.

In order to facilitate and expedite the introduction, IG gave its consent for AEC to conclude the pending negotiations with the IGC concerning purchases. The purchase was however not to exceed 700 tons (1,5 million lbs), and was to be made in the course of 5 years. This purchase, as is apparent from the small quantity, by no means constituted the renunciation of own productions by the AEC.

The fact that the IG still had the best intentions for promoting the sale of magnesium in the USA is shown by the agreement between IGC, IGC and AEC concluded in 1934 with the IG's approval. This provided for the reciprocal licensing of USA patent rights in the field of magnesium processing (not production). IGC now also derived benefit from the valuable IG patent rights for processing. The current disputes on patent rights in the field of processing were settled, they certainly did not promote development. Now, after the interests of the two largest and sole producers of light metal in the USA had been established and adjusted, the IG was highly confident of a speedy and favorable development in the market.

The first visits of Mr. ALLEN of the Alcoa and Mr. FITZGERALD were followed by further visits of the gentlemen from the Alcoa and the AEC. Director WILSON and Mr. FIDAY, the chief of the scientific

Laboratory of the Alcoa were also in Bitterfeld, as far as I remember, apart from frequent visits of Mr. SAXSEN whose duty it was to foster the relations between IG and Alcoa in the technical field. On the occasion of these visits, thorough inspections of production and processing plants always took place, followed by discussions of a scientific and technical character. The IG showed everything to the American gentlemen and also made it possible for them to visit the plants of German firms, where electron metal was used for the manufacture of finished articles. An experienced expert of the IG was a permanent consultant with the AMC in the USA and often experienced IG specialists for production and processing were in the USA to give advice. I still remember exactly that in 1937, the last year of my activity, the IG sent its chief of the magnesium production plant to the USA for renewed discussions with the gentlemen of the Alcoa and the AMC concerning the erection of a new magnesium production plant. On this occasion, negotiations took place amongst others also with the Marine Chemical Co., San Francisco, which was in possession of a process for producing magnesia (magnesium oxide) from seawater. The magnesia produced from sea-water is a good raw material for the production of magnesium and the Marine Chemical Co was prepared to grant a licence for the purpose of producing magnesium in the USA. On the occasion of this visit, a report was also made on the tests conducted in Bitterfeld for production of magnesium according to the silicate-thermal process. Mr. SAXSEN came to Bitterfeld soon afterward for a re-examination I was informed. However, all investigations and calculations which were carried out jointly, again revealed that, in view of the price at which BCI is supplying AMC with magnesium and the still insignificant sales, no economic advantages would be gained by the erection of a new plant for own production.

- 13 -

DCI even delivered magnesium to AMC at a lower price than it would have been possible for AMC to produce in a new plant of its own. The reason for this was not the superiority of the DCI processing method compared to that of the IG. DCI, in its magnesium production plant, operating at Milano since 1916, had the cheapest raw-material at disposal - as was the case nowhere else -; chloride magnesium as spent lye from its own production of bromine and cheapest power from natural gas. In France and England the process of the IG had already asserted itself successfully against DCI's. Thus the gentlemen of the Alcoa could not recommend the taking up of production this time either and the IG had to give up the plan. The silico-thermal processing method established at Bitterfeld experimentally was not yet sufficiently developed and the proposed installation of equipment on a small scale at the AMC was postponed.

The endeavors of the AMC in regard to the utilization of magnesium for alloys and semi-manufactured goods as well as their sale were successful, even if the sales were considerably lower than expected, especially as compared to the sales in England. The magnesium required by the AMC was supplied by the IG. As a chemist I am unable to judge the cause of the limited sales, and I do not know whether the information I had received was correct, for instance that the high technical requirements for airplane construction were an obstacle, or that the motor-car industry did not attach much importance to saving weight, as it was the case in Europe.

As I am told, Alcoa and AMC were also kept informed on further technical developments after 1937.

## IV.

Relations of the IG to Monsanto Chemical Company  
in St. Louis, USA.

It seems important to me to make a statement about a further



license granted by IG in the field of electro-chemistry to another important firm of the USA, the Monsanto Chemical Company in St. Louis. This license was granted in 1935 and concerned a product, which in wartime plays a big role in air-attacks; it is the production of phosphorus in the electric oven and the production of phosphoric acid.

As early as 1900 the predecessor of the IG, the Chemische Fabrik Griesheim Elektron in Bitterfeld, produced, as was also the case in other countries, phosphorus and phosphoric acid by electro-thermal process. Towards the middle of the 1920s, endeavors were made simultaneously in USA and Germany to utilize phosphoric acid to the greatest extent for the production of cleaning and washing agents as well as for the production of a full fertilizer. The IG, as well as a few American firms interested in it, applied the electro-thermal process for the production of phosphoric acid, by which yellow phosphorus is at first produced in the electric oven, which is then burned to phosphoric acid. For this processing method the IG erected a large plant in Bitterfeld on the Elbe in 1925 and produced full-fertilizer and phosphoric acid for washing agents there. This plant was administered by the Betriebsgemeinschaft Mitteldeutsche Land (plant community of central Germany) in Bitterfeld. On the occasion of a visit to the USA, I called on the Federal Phosphorus Co. in Birmingham, Alabama, which produced phosphorus and phosphoric acid according to its own processing method. The manager of this plant reciprocated this visit in Bitterfeld and Bitterfeld soon afterwards. A few years later the Monsanto Chemical Co. took up the production of phosphoric according to the electro-thermal processing method in its plant in Columbia, Tennessee; its plants for phosphoric acids are located in St. Louis, where the phosphorus was shipped



- 15 -

to Monsanto purchased the Federal Phosphorus Co., visited us for the first time in 1937, and in 1938 an agreement was made between Monsanto and IG. The Monsanto acquired all current and future USA patent rights of the IG pertaining to this subject, and every technical assistance was promised by the IG.

After a thorough study of the Pisteritz IG plants by a number of gentlemen from Monsanto and after they had been acquainted with all the details of the phosphorus and phosphoric acid production plant, after the necessary calculations and blue-prints had been surrendered, the Monsanto Chemical Co. changed the installations of its plant to suit the IG processing method; at the invitation of the Monsanto, Dr. Friedbert RITTER, the chief of the Pisteritz IG plant, visited Columbia and St. Louis on behalf of the IG at the end of 1938. After Dr. RITTER's return the exchange of experiences between the two firms, the IG and Monsanto, was continued, for a time after the outbreak of war even via Switzerland.

V.

Relations of the IG with England and France in the field of magnesium.

England: As early as the beginning of the 1920's, Messrs. HUGHES & Co. Ltd, Abbey House, Abchurch Lane, London W.C.1, took charge of the sale of electron metal in England on the basis of an agreement with the CPGE (Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron), which afterwards merged with the IG. Major G.J.P. DALL, the manager of Messrs. HUGHES, successfully devoted all his energy to this task. As early as 1924, the CPGE - at the request of Major DALL - granted a license for the manufacture of casting products of electron metal to the large English firm of Sterling Metals Ltd., Coventry; in 1931 the important English firm, Messrs. James DUTH & Co. Ltd., Birmingham, was granted a license by the IG for the manufacture of rolled, pressed and forged products of electron metal. Messrs. HUGHES furthermore introduced electron-metal in many

other industries in England; in this the firm was always assisted by the IG to the best of its ability. The magnesium or the alloy electron metal required in England was supplied by the IG or, occasionally through its intermediary, the I.C.I.

The IGCE, respectively IG, had assumed the obligation towards Messrs. HUGHES, to erect a plant for the production of magnesium in England as soon as the English market would make such an enterprise worth while. This was the case towards 1935. The IG made all the necessary drawings and other help available, its engineers and master craftsmen went to England for the construction of the new plant, even the specialists of a Ditterfeld building firm who were acquainted with the intricate lining of the machinery with acid-proof material and had performed this work at all IG magnesium plants, were sent to England. The English magnesium production plant was erected at Clifton Junction, near Manchester, with a capacity of 4000 tons p.a., and was put into operation in 1937 with the help of IG employees from Ditterfeld. All present and future experiences and English patent rights of the IG in the field of the production and processing of magnesium and its alloys were invested in a newly formed English company, the Magnesium Electron Limited (MEL), the shareholders of which were the well-known English chemical concern the I.C.I., Messrs HUGHES and the IG.

The intercourse between IG and Hughes and Co. was a very lively one, frequently employees of the IG stayed in England and gave advice to Hughes and their clients and very often Major BALL, his co-workers and his English clients stayed in Ditterfeld over a longer period for inspections and discussions and, through the IG, also with German firms which processed electron metal. Such visits and informations on important new experiments and results of research work to the English friends took place as late as 1938 and 1939. This is apparent from a lecture held by Major BALL

- 17 -

on the occasion of the first International Magnesium Congress on magnesium alloys with addition of zirconium metal held in New York at the end of 1945. In this lecture Major BALL says: "Experimental research by IG Farbenindustrie in 1938 and 1939 disclosed to AML that zirconium used as an alloying element..." and elsewhere "Experimental lots of IG zirconium alloys were brought to England by AML in 1938 and 1939..." I am assured that Major BALL stayed in Bitterfeld as late as July 1939. As far as I know, Major BALL was granted extensive assistance by the English authorities for the sale of the electron metal.

France. Also here the best relations existed between IG and the French parties interested. In 1928 a license was granted to the Montepet firm at Nogent, near Paris, by IG, for the production of castings of electron metal. In 1931 the IG surrendered all present and future experiences and French patents in the field of magnesium production and processing to the two large French aluminium manufacturers, the Compagnie des Produits Chimiques et Electrometallurgiques, Alais, Froges et Camargue in Paris and the Societe d'Electrochimie, d'Electrometallurgie et des Adiers Electriques d'Ugine in Paris. Both firms jointly formed the Societe Generale du Magnesium.

Two magnesium production plants were erected in France with the full support of the IG, one in St. Lubin and one in Arris and both were put into operation by employees of the IG in 1934, if I remember correctly. Along with the Frenchmen a constant exchange of experiences was maintained up to then and in the following years. The French gentlemen were often in Bitterfeld and they were shown everything, just like the Americans and Englishmen; they were able to make a thorough inspection and study of production, processing and laboratories.

- 17 -

VI.

Miscellaneous.

a) Contract for the Joint use of Patents.

I know that a contract for the joint use of patents had to be concluded with various other German light metal works. This contract was only made at the time at the express wish of the Reich. I.G. participated in this contract only unwillingly. Neither Herr Dr. Ernst BUECHER nor, as far as I know, Herr Paul HAEFLIGER who represented the commercial side, played any part in the conclusion of the contract.

b) Sale of electron metal, ~~aluminum~~

As already described in general terms under II, all efforts were made in order to promote the use of magnesium. The research into alloys which are used for aeroplane construction also widened the knowledge of various other magnesium alloys; thus they benefitted the industry in general and led to the increase in sales.

As far as I know Herr v. SCHMITZ only took over the commercial direction of the Chemical Section - which included the sale of magnesium - after Herr BEER indeed had died during the war.

c) Gypsum Sulphuric Acid.

A plant was set up in the Farben factory at Wolfen for the production of Sulphuric acid from gypsum; its erection was connected with the efforts which were being made in Germany to gain independence from foreign raw materials. The Farben factory at Wolfen had been producing sulphuric acid from foreign pyrites for several years. The process of producing sulphuric acid from gypsum had been discovered and tested in Leverkusen in the nineteen-twenties and the I.G. had long desired



to exploit this process on a large scale. As far as I know the I.G. also installed a gypsum Sulphuric acid plant in the chemical factories of Kuhlmann in France, and if I remember rightly, it also granted a licence to the British chemical industry for the use of this process.

d) Plants for Organic Chemical Processes.

It is correct that a diolcol and stabilizer plant was erected in the Farben factory at Wolfen; this was done at the request of the Reich. For many years diolcol had been produced in Ludwigshafen and stabilizers in Uerdingen. As I am not a specialist for organic chemistry I am not in a position to say very much more about this. Here Dr. Ernst BURGIN had nothing to do with the erection of this plant nor, as far as I know, had Herr Paul HAEFLIGER.

Tegernsee, 16 November 1947

Signed: Dr. Gustav PISTOR

Document Register No. 1474

I herewith certify that the signatures affixed before me today which are to be found

- 1) on this page 11 and
- 2) at the end of the text on each of the pages 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10

are those of the industrial chemist Dr. phil. Dr. Ing. Gustav PISTOR, resident at Tegernsee-Siedl, Richtersteinstrasse 190 1/5.

Tegernsee, twenty first November nineteen hundred and forty seven.

(Seal) Signed Fr. SCHER (Notary)  
Franz SCHER

Fee Register No. 1474

Value 3000.-

Notary Fee Article 39 Reich Fee Order 4.-

Turnover Tax

	4.12
paid	4.12

Signed: F. SCHER  
Notary



DOCUMENT BACK III BUEGIN  
BUEGIN DOCUMENT No. 17

This is to certify that the Above is a correct and true copy  
of the original document.

Muenberg, 21 January 1948

Signed Dr. Werner SCHUBERT  
Counsel for the Defense of the  
Defendant BUEGIN

Copy

A F F I D A V I T

I Karl v. HEIDER, resident in Frankfurt/Main, Grillparzerstrasse 83, have been warned that I make myself liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I declare on oath that my statement is true and has been made in order to be submitted in evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

In the minutes of the meeting of the extended Inorganic Chemistry Committee (at that time the "Chemical Committee" was still being called the "Inorganic Chemistry Committee") held on 27 March 1930, the following was said about electron-metal in connection with a discussion of the sales policy for aluminum and electron metal:

"Our aim for electron metal is first of all to reach a production of 500 tons per month in Bitterfeld. The erection of factories abroad, which will be unavoidable, is not economically feasible until markets have been found for a production of 150 - 200 tons per month."

Frankfurt/Main 3 February 1948.

Signed Karl v. HEIDER

.....  
(Karl v. HEIDER)

The above signature which I recognize to be that made by Karl v. HEIDER resident at Frankfurt/Main Grillparzerstrasse 83, was affixed before me, Wolfgang THEOBALD on 3 February 1948 in Frankfurt/Main and is herewith certified by me.

Signed Wolfgang THEOBALD

.....  
Assistant to Counsel for the Defense  
at the Military Tribunal No. VI

-----  
This is to certify that the above is a correct and true copy of the original document.

Nuernberg, 11 February 1948

Signed Dr. Werner SCHUBERT  
Counsel for the Defense for the Defendant  
BURGIN.

Copy of Excerpts from  
Prosecution Exhibit 573, Document NI-4497

(Stamp)

C o n t r a c t

between the German Reich, represented by the Reich Minister of Defense, hereinafter referred to as Reich,

and I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G., Frankfurt/Main, hereinafter referred to as I.G.

Section 1.

(1) In order to ensure the Hydronalium B requirements of the Reich, I.G. shall open a new factory with a productive capacity of 500 tons of crude metal a month and a processing capacity of 625 tons per month of semi-finished products by utilization of the backflow of shavings; at the request of the Reich, a site near Aken/Elbe has been selected. This installation requires the construction of an electricity transmission line from Bitterfeld to Aken as well as a connecting line for emergency electricity to the transmission line of the Elektrizitätsgesellschaft Sachsen-Anhalt, Halle/S., which goes past Aken. It is further agreed that a new pressing <sup>machine</sup> ~~plant~~ shall be set up in Bitterfeld two thirds of the productive capacity of which shall be available for purposes of the Aken plant. (compare Section 3, para. 3).

(2) Since the Reich desires the substitution of German raw material for those until now imported from abroad, I.G. must make a further plant available for the processing of this German raw material; for this purpose, I.G. shall offer its Teutschenthal plant, which is at present not operating.

Section 2.

(1) I.G. shall be obliged to set up the installations mentioned in Section 1 as speedily as possible and to start their operation by 1 November

1934 at the latest.

(2) I.G. shall construct the installation, including equipment, with the greatest possible economy, giving due consideration to the Reich's instructions for building and to the latest developments in technology.

### Section 3.

(1) Costs of setting up the installations mentioned in Section I, including the site required, shall be borne by I.G. for the time being. According to Appendix I, cost, exclusive of the purchase of the site, are estimated at 21.48 million Reichsmark at the present rate of prices and wages. The Reich shall have authority to audit this preliminary estimate in detail. Any excess, which, reckoned on an average, exceeds the reviewed and approved estimate by more than 6%, requires Reich authorization.

(2) Installation costs shall be separated into normal installation costs and excess costs (Übertauerkosten). Excess costs of the Aken installation as compared with costs of an installation at Bitterfeld, including the additional costs of transmission lines, as well as costs of the Teutschenthal processing plant, shall be considered as excess.

(3) All other costs shall be considered normal installation costs; a pressing <sup>machine</sup> ~~plant~~ to be set up in Bitterfeld, as authorized in Section I, para. 1, at a construction cost of RM 713,000 shall be included in the normal installation cost with two thirds of its cost, i.e. RM 475,000.- these RM 475,000.- are included in the total amount of 21.48 million Reichsmark. At the request of the Reich the building housing the presses in Aken is to be constructed in such dimensions that if any future addition of a third pressing machine is necessary it will be possible without requiring any extension of the building.

Normal installation costs and excess costs - the latter is estimated at 7.6 million Reichsmark in appendix II - shall be carried separately. Both normal and excess costs are subject to Reich auditing.

(4) Excluding costs of the purchase of a site the Reich shall pay the normal installation costs in 16 equal quarterly installments, beginning on 1 January 1935 and ending with the payment due on 1 October 1938; the excess costs, as far as the Aken plant, including transmission lines, is concerned, in 4 equal installments on 1 February 1934, 1 May 1934, 1 August 1934 and 1 November 1934, as far as the Teutschenthal processing plant is concerned, in 8 equal installments on 1 March 1934, 1 June 1934, 1 September 1934, 1 December 1934, 1 March 1935, 1 June 1935, 1 September 1935 and 1 December 1935.

(5) The Reich agrees to pay interest on all installation costs which have not been paid at a rate exceeding the Reichsbank discount by 2%, and to pay the Reichsbank discount rates of interest on the costs of the requisition of the site. Payments of interest shall become due at the same time as the installments. In as far as the Reich has advanced installments, I.G. shall pay interest at an equal rate. The obligation to pay interest on the costs of the site purchased shall end as soon as the Aken plant ceases working for the Reich and the Reich states that it no longer has any interest in keeping this plant operating at its expense; (compare Section 6, paragraphs 2 and 5), no later than that date, however, on which the plant will be freely available to I.G., according to Section 8, para 5. After 31 December 1938 furthermore, the Reich may end interest payments on the cost of the site purchase by refunding the cost to I.G. This shall not affect the property rights of I.G.

(6) It is agreed that, after payment of the installments and interest rates as stated in this Section 3, I.G. may only account for payments and interest rates for installation costs of new investments



(apart from the payment of interest rates on the cost of the site purchase, according to para. 5)."

(7) It is stated beforehand that the financial actions of the Reich on the basis of this contract are not financial support in the meaning of the first part of Chapter V, Section 1, of the Reich President's decree of 4 September 1932 for the revival of the economy (Reich Law Gazette, page 425) and can in no event be considered a state subsidy.

Section 4.

(1) I.G. undertakes to produce 5,200 tons Hydronallium E in its new installations by 1 November 1935 and to deliver it in equal shipments, according to the provisions for delivery agreements to be concluded, to the Reich and/or to the office or firm to be designated by the Reich, whereby delays resulting from the opening shall be permissible for the period from 1 November until 31 December 1934; however, half of the yearly quantity, 2,600 of semi-finished products, shall have been shipped from the Iken consignment by 30 April 1935. The Reich guarantees a regulated sale in equal monthly quantities and payment of an equivalent value, to be fixed according to Section 5, within one month of the date of the invoice.

(2) The quality of the Hydronallium E shall comply with the provisions of Appendices 3 and 4.

(3) The Reich further guarantees that it will place, or permit to be placed, orders for equal quantities in the three years from 1 November 1935 until 31 October 1938 according to the provisions fixed in this contract, unless prevented in this by the political situation or by an act of God. I.G. undertakes delivery of such orders placed on the basis of these guarantees.

(4) The Reich undertakes to have the waste material (shavings and pieces) resulting from the processing of the products returned to I.G. at current prices, as determined by general market conditions, quality and quantity of the waste material and competitive price for metal waste material, that is to say, the Reich shall obligate the processing party accordingly, reserving the right to check the price establishment. I.G. shall undertake to re-use the shavings and waste pieces in Aken, as far as practicable, for purposes of the Reich and to include them in their calculations as raw material according to Section 5, para. 2a, as far as paid for at current prices by I.G. Where the shavings cannot be used in Aken and cannot be used by I.G. without prejudicing the production interests of Bitterfeld, no compensation will be granted.

(5) If the processing of the products is stopped for lack of utilization possibilities or the products already processed are diverted from their purpose, the products already delivered by I.G. shall be returned to I.G. as waste products at prices to be fixed later on.

(6) The shipping agreements shall be based on the Contractual Provisions for Orders - except building orders - for the Wehrmacht (VO) of 16 December 1932, in as far as this contract contains no other stipulation.

(7) In case I.G.'s monthly shipments become overdue 2 weeks the Reich may demand 1/2% of the value of that part of the shipments which is overdue for each full week after the first 2 weeks, if the final delivery of 1 November 1935 is delayed by more than 2 months, the Reich shall no longer be obliged to accept the overdue amounts of the order for that year.

Art. 5.

(1) Up to the expiration of the contract the price will be calculated in advance for one year at a time by I.G., re-examined by the Reich and, thereupon, finally fixed by mutual agreement. For the first year of delivery the price has been fixed by mutual agreement in accordance with the declaration of the firm, dated 16 March 1934.

(2) The price of the products to be supplied is comprised of the following:

a) The cost price to I.G. Farben, consisting of raw-material-, wage-, and overhead expenses for the plants referred to in Art. 1. The overhead expenses are calculated on the basis of previous experiences. Of course, apart from current repairs and current minor improvements (plant improvements), the expenses for extraordinary repairs, too, may be included in the calculations on the basis of previous experience, also the special research costs for the use of German raw-materials.

As for the raw-materials, including electric current and intermediate products are supplied by other I.G. branches than those of Altona and Teutschenthal, the prices which I.G. charges for them will be equivalent to the cheapest rate at which approximately similar quantities are sold to German customers. According to this concept the electric current will at present be supplied as 5000 Volt 3-phase current off Bitterfeld station, at the rate of 1.24 Pf. per 1000 kWh.

b) General overhead expenses of I.G., including general development- and research expenses and sales expenses. For the first year of delivery these general overhead expenses will be fixed at 6% of the cost price, deducting sub-deliveries from other I.G. branches

In other words, to obtain the cost price according to a), the sums for sub-deliveries according to the second par. of c) will be deducted. For the subsequent years of delivery the general rate of expenses shall be fixed each time when prices are fixed in accordance with sect. 1, with the proviso that it may not be less than 40, and not more than 80 of the cost price, except under circumstances as given in the following sentence. It is understood that when smaller quantities are purchased the ratio of the general overhead expenses will be higher, the extent of the increase will be agreed upon when prices are being fixed.

e) Taxes on the plant, the plant management, and other public expenses, including turnover tax.

d) Payment of interest at the rate of 2% above the Reichsbank rate on the average floating capital (working capital) which is not covered by payments. The Reich reserves for itself the right to supply the whole or part of the necessary working capital.

(3) The mortification of and payment of interests on the plant costs has been fixed in art. 3.

(4) Extraordinary, unforeseen circumstances give either of the contracting parties the right to demand a reasonable revision of prices even before the expiration of the current year of delivery if, in accordance with the principle of good faith, one party cannot be expected to maintain the agreed price.

Art. 6

I.G. undertakes to execute all orders placed at the instigation of the Reich in the plants mentioned in art. 1 even after 31 October 1938, should the Reich so demand, and in each case to put these plants at its disposal for these orders, up to the limit of their capacity.



(2) Should the plants mentioned in article <sup>1</sup> be closed down either partially or completely, the Reich is entitled to demand that the buildings and equipment be maintained in working order. In this event the Reich is under obligation to repay I.G. for personnel expenses and costs of material, including those costs of the real estate not paid off (according art. 3, sect. 5) and including taxes and public expenses on the plant; the Reich is entitled to demand proof of these expenses and may re-examine same.

(3) The I.G. is obliged to give preference to deliveries for the Reich before executing orders for third parties in the plants mentioned under art. 1. Before I.G. executes orders for third parties in these plants they have to inform the Reich. The Reich is entitled to object to the execution of these orders within 4 weeks after notification, however, only for political or other important reasons; the Reich will endeavor to give its decision as soon as possible.

(4) The I.G. may only erect additional plants on the site of the works at Aken, subject to the previous approval of the Reich. The Reich will not refuse permission for the construction of such plants except for important reasons; it lies within the jurisdiction of the Reich, which will consider the interests of both parties, to decide whether an important reason does exist; the decision cannot be re-examined by a court of arbitration or a court of law.



Unless sanctioned by the Reich the I.G. will not erect plants in the immediate vicinity of the works at Aken which might endanger the <sup>said works</sup> security from air raids.

(5) The obligation of I.G. as per sections 1, 3 and 4 lapses in the event of the Reich declaring that it no longer has any further interests in maintaining the plants in working order at its own expense, but, not later than the date at which the works at Aken return to the I.G. for their free use in accordance with art. 8, section 5; however, it is understood that, up to 31 October 1938, the plants have to be maintained, within the meaning of sect. 2, at the expense of the Reich, even if the plant should be closed down before 31 October 1938 because of extraordinary reasons as per art. 4, sect. 3.

Art. 7.

(1) If I.G. carries out orders for third parties in the plant at Aken up to 31 December 1950, they are under obligation to pay to the Reich 10 Pfg. for each kilo-gram of raw metal produced, and 5 Pfg. for each kilo-gram of semi-finished goods (tubes or bars) as repayment for the amortization advanced by the Reich. The Reich is entitled to re-examine the number of orders for third parties for the purpose of keeping a check on the amounts which have to be repaid. The deadline of 31 October 1950, advanced to cover that period during which the plant, whilst it is closed down, is maintained in working order at the expense of the Reich, but the period shall not exceed 4 years.

(2) The I.G. is also entitled to any higher rates of amortization to the Reich in the event of Aken executing orders for third parties. The sum total of the amounts to be repaid to the Reich by I.G.

does not exceed the sum which is obtained when the ordinary construction expenses for the works at Aken (see. to appendix 2 - RM 13,405 Million) are reduced by 1/10 for each year during which the Aken plant works for the Reich. Partial or only occasional employment will count as Reich employment, if the plant is not otherwise employed; if, in any one year, the plant is working for the Reich and for third parties at the same time the whole 1/10 will not be deducted but only that part of the 1/10 which corresponds to the quantitative share of the Reich in proportion to the quantitative share of third parties for that year. If I.G. repays the Reich before 1 October 1944, half of the sum due for repayment after 31 October 1938, then the remainder will be reduced by 20%.

(3) A repayment of the excess costs (Uebersteuerungskosten) within the meaning of art. 3, sect 2 will not be made.

Art. 8

(1) In case the hydronalium works at Aken (as distinct from other plants on the Aken site, as per art. 6, sect. 4, and as distinct from the works at Teutechenthal and excluding the press erected in Bitterfeld (compare art. 3, sect. 3)) is no longer engaged in production after 31 October 1938,

a) because of lack of orders from the Reich (see art. 6, sect. 1) and

b) also because of lack of orders from third parties (see art. 6, sect. 3, and art. 7) and

c) if no agreement is reached between I.G. and the Reich

on the utilization of the works for other purposes

d) or if the I.G. is not prepared to maintain the plant in working order at its own expense,

then the Reich is entitled to take over this plant, including the electric power line, against payment of the costs of the plant still outstanding inclusive of the costs for the requisition of the site, advances by I.G., and the interests (compare art. 3, sect. 5).

(2) If, <sup>in</sup> the event of such conditions arising as mentioned in sect. 1 and a) and b), I.G. wishes to use the works at Aken for other purposes, they will enter into negotiations with the Reich for the release of the plant. On the other hand, in the same circumstances (sect. 1 a) and b)), the Reich is entitled to take over the plant under the conditions of sect. 1, if I.G. does not suitably comply with the demand of the Reich to change over the plant to the manufacture of different products.

(3) In the event of the works being taken over in accordance with sections 1 or 2, the Reich is under no obligation either to manufacture or to permit third parties to manufacture in the plant any products which represent competition for the products hitherto manufactured in the plant, or manufactured by any other I.G. plant (including its combine plants). In case the Aken works are resold by the Reich, this condition is also to be imposed on the legal successor in that case I.G. may demand that this condition be entered into the deeds as a limited personal covenant. Should the Reich require products which come under the sphere of work carried out by I.G., and I.G. is not prepared to supply the Reich with those products

or suitable products from their works, or, if those works are not in a position to produce supplies from the Aken works, which are again to be put at its disposal for this purpose, then the Reich, so far as this is concerned, is at liberty <sup>to</sup> manufacture or allow these products to be manufactured, for its own purposes in the works at Aken. Furthermore, the Reich is entitled to operate a training school within the works for the purpose of being able to operate the plant taken over, in case of special need. However, as far as the concern falls into the sphere of activity of I.G., the Reich has to let I.G. conduct the training school, should I.G. be prepared to do so under reasonable terms. The possible supply of electric power by I.G. for the works taken over by the Reich will be settled by separate agreement. As far as the power supply line is not required for Aken, I.G. is also at liberty to use the line for other purposes on payment of a proportionate share of the current maintenance costs.

(4) In case the works are ~~not~~ taken over by the Reich in accordance with sections 1 and 2, I.G. is entitled to demand that special machines and equipment for the manufacture of hydronalium E which I.G. created in the Aken plant (meaning the machines and equipment enumerated in appendix 1, para. 1) be left to them at the basic price, which, however, must not be higher than the rest book value resulting from ordinary 10 year amortization.

(5) In case the Reich does not take over the works as per sections 1 and 2, it will be at the free disposal of I.G., except in the event of sect. 2, first sentence applying, as soon as the Reich declares not to have any further interest in maintaining the plant in working order at its own expense in case of the premises as per sect. 1 a) and b) applying, however, at the latest on 31 December 1950.



This deadline will be extended by three years and in each case by another three years, if the Reich - in response to a reminder sent by the I.G. at least 7 months before the date of expiration - reaffirms at least half a year before the date of expiration, that it is interested in continuing to maintain the plant in working order at its own expense. Failure to make such a declaration will result in the final deadline becoming effective, provided that a reminder was given in time.

Article 9.

The I.G. will make arrangements for separate book-keeping for the plant mentioned under Article 4.

Article 10.

(1) In as far as the competence of a court of arbitration is not given as per appended agreement of arbitration (appendix 5), the District Court at Berlin is competent in case of litigation arising out of this contract, irrespective of the value of the object to be contested.

(2) Immediately after the beginning of a law suit, the parties must submit an application for the exclusion of the public and for the obligation to secrecy of those participating in accordance with Article 172 and 174 of the *Gerichtsverfahrensgesetz* (law concerning the structure of the judiciary), as well as for a careful keeping under lock and key of all documents.

Article 11.

(1) I.G. binds itself to keep this contract and the correspondence leading to its conclusion secret, as well as all lists and files pertaining to it. Any knowledge of it and/or individual provisions thereof shall only be revealed to the absolutely necessary extent and only to those persons who must be employed, directly or indirectly, for the processing and execution of the contracts.



(2) I.G. shall pledge such persons to the strictest secrecy and call to their attention Section 68 II of the Reich Penal Code in the version of 24 April 1934.

Section 12.

(1) This contract is issued in duplicate and executed by both parties as follows. Each party receives one copy. The firm is obliged to deposit its copy, including the pertinent files, in Berlin.

(2) The Reich shall guarantee that no charges will be made for stamps.

Appendices, forming parts of this contract:

Appendix 1, Preliminary Estimate of Installation Costs, dated 16 January 1934 (1 Sheet)

Appendix 2, Preliminary Estimate of Overcharge Costs, dated 16 January 1934 (1 Sheet)

Appendix 3, Excerpts from Provisional Conditions of delivery of March 1932 (1 Sheet)

Appendix 4, Test of Industrial Materials. Chemical and Mechanical Tests of January 1934 (1 double sheet, both pages printed)

Appendix 5, Arbitration Agreement (2 Sheets).

Berlin, 14 June 1934

Frankfurt a/M. 13 June 1934

The Reich Minister of Defense

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktien-  
gesellschaft

(Signature) GIESS  
Major General and Chief of  
the Army Ordnance Office.

(Signatures) G. PISTON BUHL

DOCUMENT BOOK III BUEGIN  
BUEGIN DOCUMENT No. 46

Enclosure 1.

Estimate  
of the plant costs of 16 January 1934.  
(Normal plant costs plus excess costs)

I. Chemical installations and Rectifiers .....	RM 9,235,000.-
II. Processing.....	RM 4,150,000.-
III. Power.....	RM 2,635,000.-
IV. Superposition plant (Teutschenthal).....	RM 1,600,000.-
V. General expenses.....	RM 3,860,000.-
Total amount	<u>RM 21,480,000.-</u>

Enclosure 2.

Estimate  
of the excess costs of 16 January 1934.

For the Alton plant including power feeding line:

I. Chemical installation and Rectifiers.....	RM 900,000.-
II. Processing.....	RM 100,000.-
III. Power.....	RM 2,000,000.-
V. General expenses.....	RM 3,000,000.-
	<u>RM 6,000,000.-</u>

For the dressing plant at Teutschenthal:

IV. Superposition plant.....	RM 1,600,000.-
Total:	<u>RM 7,600,000.-</u>

DOCUMENT BOOK III BIERGIN  
BIERGIN DOCUMENT NO. 46

---

Investment costs as per enclosure 1	RM 21,460,000.-
Excess costs as per enclosure 2	<u>RM 7,500,000.-</u>
Normal plant costs	RM 13,880,000.-
Share in the press in Bitterfeld	<u>RM 475,000.-</u>
Normal plants costs for the Aken plant	<u>RM 13,405,000.-</u>

---

I hereby certify the above to be a true copy of the original.

Nuernberg, 4 February 1948.

Dr. Werner SCHUBERT  
Counsel for the Defendant BIERGIN

Copy

Affidavit.

I, Hans FRIEDRICH, born on 28 September 1907 at Osnabrueck, resident of Seelte near Hannover, Kuntorferstr. 23, have first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by giving a false affidavit. I state on oath that my statement is true and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice Nuremberg, Germany.

I am Diplom-Ingenieur by profession. In April 1932 I joined the NSDAP as an aspirant and I withdrew from the Party at the end of 1937. I was a member of the NSV (National Socialist Welfare Association) and DAF (German Labor Front).

At the time Aken was planned and built, namely in 1934/35, Dr. BUEGIN was plant manager of Werk Bued, Bitterfeld. The preliminary work and the planning of the building was naturally done by specialists for magnesium production and processing; Dr. BUEGIN was not one of them. I also remember that at the time we younger IG engineers and chemists noticed Dr. BUEGIN's obvious reserve as far as the Aken construction was concerned. I only knew of one superficial visit of his after production had been assumed; in view of the size of the project, probably every one of the executives in Bitterfeld paid such a visit. He ascribed this lack of interest to differences of opinion between Dr. BUEGIN, the Chief of the engineering administration, and the Chief of the magnesium production department.

I know nothing of any attempt by the Air Force to camouflage the Aken plant. All I know is that after a lesson plane had flown over the plant, it was said

DOCUMENT BUCK III B. ERGIN  
BUERGIN DOCUMENT No. 5

- 2 -

that the fence in the sandhills looked like a line from above,  
production  
When a building site for the second magnesium plant was chosen,  
the Staassfurt site was preferred because it was the one site  
out of the three under consideration, which could not be spotted  
by the plane that had been dispatched to observe the camouflage.

As the members of the plant, fully realized however, that  
the pine forest, which surrounded the Aken plant, was no camouflage,  
since the coniferous trees would shortly be destroyed by the  
escaping hydrochloric gas which was particularly dangerous to  
them. I do not know whether any indemnification agreement  
was reached with the owners of the adjoining woods - to my  
knowledge the wood in which the plant was situated had been  
bought by the IG itself. It is certain that the IG anticipated  
this damage, for Prof. LIESE and of the Institute for the  
Preservation of the Fertility of the Soil (Bodenhygiene) Berlin,  
was asked to give his opinion on the condition of the surrounding  
woods just before and immediately after the plant was opened,  
so as to protect the IG from being imposed on in any possible  
law suit for damages.

I did not participate in negotiations concerning the  
conclusion of the Aken contract with the Luftwaffe (Air Force).  
As far as I know, Dr. BUERGIN did not take part in the negotiations  
either.

In April 1936 I went to Clifton-Junction/Manchester (England)  
where a magnesium installation was being constructed; I returned  
in June 1936. All experience I had gained in magnesium production  
in Bitterfeld and Aken, was placed at the disposal of the English.  
The first unit which started operations late in 1936, comprised  
27, the second which started operations early in 1936, comprised  
40 baths. This total of 67 baths represented a capacity of 4,000  
4,500 tons per year. The first plant was installed in a former



power station; the second; next door in a new building.  
Until the beginning of the war, experience was exchanged with  
the English executives of the MEL. Even after I had returned  
from England and had assumed my work at the Stassfurt Magnesium  
Plant, which started operations early in 1939, I repeatedly  
met MEL executives who visited Litterfeld for the purpose of  
obtaining information.

Seelze, 12 November 1947

signed Hans FRIEDRICH

No. 467 of the document register for 1947

I hereby certify that the above signature of the Dipl. Ing.  
Hans FRIEDRICH, Seelze near Hannover, Wunstorferstr. 23 was  
affixed before me.

Hannover, 13 November 1947

signed Dr. Herbert ZEYHER  
(Dr. Herbert Zeyher)  
Attorney

Officially appointed Deputy of the  
Notary Dr. Hans FIEHN

seal;

Fees

Value according to par. 24 of the	
Reich Fee Regulations	RM 3.00
Tax par. 39 Reich Fee Regulations	RM 1.--
3% turnover tax	RM 0.12
	RM 4.12

Dr. ZEYHER  
Deputy of the Notary

Certified a true and correct copy.

Munich, 4 January 1948

signed Dr. Werner SCHUBERT  
Counsel for the defense of the defendant  
IBERGIN

C O P Y .

A f f i d a v i t .

1) I, Albert KESSELING, born on 13 Novem. 1885 at Marktstaft/Main, Lower Franconia, at present in jail at Berlin, have first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by giving a false affidavit. I state on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI - case 6 - in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

2) I was neither a member of the NSDAP nor of any of its affiliations.

I was a soldier by profession and was appointed General-feldmarschall effective as of the middle of 1940.

3) Ad rem:

From the end of 1939 to the middle of 1946 I was Chief of the Administrative Office of the Reich Air Ministry. In Department D 1 (Min.Bir.De (name illegible)), which was subordinated to me, economic questions as well as questions of administrative law concerning the Air Armament Industry, were dealt with among other subjects.

The technical side (construction and procurement) was handled by the technical (C-) Office of the R.L.M. (Reich Air Ministry).

The Reich Air Minister determined the quantities to be procured.

4) I know about electron production and matters connected therewith, particularly as far as my Office was concerned.

Before I discuss these matters in detail, I should like to make a few

basic statements beforehand:

a) The IG Farben concern was an organization run on a profit basis. Like every other German industrial enterprise, IG.F. declined any enlargement of the enterprise without safe prospects from the point of view of private economy.

Consequently, IG Farben did not effect any enlargement of its own accord, particularly not an enlargement of its enterprise which would be unproductive in a peacetime economy; it was forced to do so by the authorities. The production capacity was ~~limited~~<sup>ordered</sup> by the Reich Air Ministry.

b) In as far as the Reich demanded the construction of ~~expanding~~<sup>expanding-by</sup> plants (Lernschaffswerke), the Reich financed them directly or indirectly.

The parent plant, in this case IG Farben, was however urged by the R.L.M. - and supervised constantly in this respect - to take every opportunity of transforming the unprofitable enterprise into a profitable concern. In the electron sector, this meant enlargement of peacetime markets at home and abroad.

c) The electron business, too, was built up on the above general basis.

d) The effect of incendiary bombs - as they were at that time - and thus the probable future use of incendiary bombs, was overrated by the R.L.M. during the first years. Interest was already being focused on other types of bombs while I worked at the R.L.M. (until 1937). This meant - as opposed to the original tendency - a decrease in demand, as far as the authorities were concerned, fewer projects for construction and a decrease in production, as far as the firms were concerned.

6) Under the circumstances and in my capacity as Chief of the Administrative Office, I did not see fit to have a competitor established through Wintershall. My intention to transform IG Farben gradually into a profitable enterprise would thereby be thwarted; no economic effect could be expected from this competitor, the less so, since for a long time to come, Wintershall's production costs were bound to be excessive for the Reich, since the expenses of the plant construction would be included therein. If one were to speak of an excessive production at all, then the cause of this might possibly be attributed to the establishment of the new Wintershall plant, as ordered by the Army Ordnance Office.

7) The disagreement IG Farben-Wintershall was of a purely economic nature; whoever knew Wintershall, knows that this man had the means to become a potential danger even to a firm like IG Farben. Wintershall's appearance on the scene was intolerable to IG Farben. Here was a peacetime competitor who was able to impair IG Farben's peacetime sales. That is why Dr. FISTON, a man well versed technically and commercially, immediately and energetically intervened in order to eliminate this competitor with the assistance of the R.L.M. The figures were misrepresented. The figure of 150 t as Germany's peacetime requirements was chosen arbitrarily in my opinion, in order to render the example of the 150 t order for Wintershall more drastic. In this way Dr. FISTON wanted to make it clear to the R.L.M. that IG Farben might lose its entire domestic business to Wintershall and

- 4 -

that as a result the financial burden caused by IO-~~Farben~~ plants Aken and to which I continuously objected, might further increase. Dr. PISTON knew that this development was incompatible with my ideas and was sure that in this way he would induce the Administrative Office to side with him. In reality the annual sale for the German territory was undoubtedly higher.

5) As far as I know, IO Farben manufactured only the incendiary bomb casings which were sent to the Air Ordnance Officer for further processing and thereafter kept in the air ammunition depots.

Werl, 5 February 1948

signed JEPSENZING  
General, lifelong  
of the former German Wehrmacht

Subscribed and sworn before me.

This day of 5.2.48

Verwaltungsreferatsinspektor

(Seal)  
Allied National Prison Werl  
Allied Prison  
Werl

-----  
Certified a true and correct copy.

Muerberg, 10 February 1948

signed Dr. Werner Schubert  
Counsel for the defense of the defendant  
BUEGIN

- 4 -



Copy.

Affidavit.

I, Hermann Alfred DUEB, born 15 August 1895, at present of Bitterfeld, Mindenstrasse 7, after having been advised that my present statement is intended for use as evidence in the proceedings of the Military Court of Justice No. VI in Nuerenberg (Germany) and that I will be subject to penalty by law if my statement is not in accordance with what I believe to be true, hereby solemnly and sincerely declare as follows: -

(1) I have not at any time been a member of the Nazi Party (NSDAP) or of any of its suborganizations of a political character.

(2) I am a Doctor of Philosophy (Chemical Section) of the University of Berlin (Germany) and a Doctor of Law of the University of Leipzig (Germany), and was from 1922 to 1946 in the employment of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. or her predecessor in rights the Chemische Fabrik Griesheim Elektron, at their Bitterfeld works, first in the capacity of Chemist and Metallurgist, and from 1923 onwards, also as a Patent Engineer. My engagement in 1922 originally took place with a view of employing my services in developing a market for magnesium and magnesium base alloys in the U.S.A., a scheme which at about that time was just being more closely envisaged by my employers, and it is for this reason that I always took an interest in the relevant developments and became regularly acquainted therewith in the due course of my firm's business.

In 1922, the magnesium production plants at Bitterfeld and Hammelungen (which latter was also owned by my firm) were the only ones in the whole world producing

- 2 -

magnesium on a commercial scale. At that time it was realized that in order to develop a world-wide market for magnesium it would first be necessary to create a demand therefore in the various prospective consuming countries. In respect of the U.S.A. this meant that the knowledge of the various possible applications of the metal and its alloys and of their methods of fabrication would have to be spread systematically among the possible consumers. For a number of years this was carried out by an agent of I.G.'s residing in the U.S.A. without appreciable success, until in or about 1937 contact was established with the John Aluminum and Brass Corporation, Detroit, and the Ford Motor Company of Detroit. The ensuing negotiations which were, on behalf of I.G., carried out at first by a subsidiary company in Stuttgart, resulted in a visit of Mr. Henry FORD to the Gammstatt works of the said company, during which he was shown in detail their plant for fabricating and especially pressure die-casting magnesium base alloys by a method which then had only quite recently been developed. From these discussions with prospective licensees in U.S.A. it was gathered however that owing to the high import duty on magnesium and magnesium base alloys in the U.S.A., imports of these metals on a <sup>price</sup> commercial basis were impossible, and that production of magnesium in the U.S.A. themselves would have to be included in any commercial scheme for turning the I.G.'s assets in the magnesium field to account in the U.S.A.. As a next step it thus was deemed advisable to seek contact with the greatest Light Metal (viz. aluminium) producer in the U.S.A., namely the Aluminium Company of

**Alcoa (Aluminum).**

Negotiations between I.G. and Alcoa lasted from about 1928 to 1931 and ultimately resulted in an agreement dated 12 October 1931 ("Alig Agreement"). While I myself did not actually take part in the discussions with the Alcoa representatives leading up to this agreement, I was present at quite a number of the more important conferences of the responsible managing directors of I.G. held with the object of drafting and revising the wording of the agreement, and am therefore in a position to state authoritatively what was in I.G.'s mind in laying down the wording of the different clauses contained therein.

According to the agreement, a company - referred to as "Alig" - was to be formed forthwith by I.G. and Alig jointly, each of the said firms taking over 50 % of its shares. Each of the partners were, in addition to a cash payment of £ 50,000 each, to assign all their U.S. patents in and relating to the magnesium field to the said company and to furnish the same with all technical experience and general know-how relating thereto and at their disposal (Clause 3). Since, however, the value of I.G.'s patents was far in excess of those of Alcoa, I.G. was to receive a sum of £ 1,000,000 out of the company's profits before any dividends were paid out to the shareholders. (Clause 6.) The agreement then proceeds to deal with certain provisions to be incorporated in the by-laws of Alig, and under this heading also with the manner in which Alig shall turn its assets to account (Clause 7). Since it was anticipated that during the first few years of Alig's activities, magnesium metal

- 4 -

supplies from the Dow Chemical Co., the then sole producer of magnesium in the U.S.A., would be ample to meet the requirements of Ali's prospective fabricating licensees, the main importance was attached to the granting of fabricating licenses by Ali. But the granting of producing licenses under the patents to be owned by Ali was by no means excluded from the provisions of the agreement: in clause 4, subclause (g) it is stipulated that licenses for the production of magnesium under the patents held by Ali shall take place upon the approval of a majority of the directors and subject to the payment of certain minimum royalties, and immediately subsequent thereto there is a provision that shop licenses including a license to produce magnesium shall be granted to any of a number of specified U.S.A. firms upon the request of the owners of I.G.'s shares only, i.e. without requiring a majority of directors in favor of such scheme. It is noted that with respect to the producing licenses referred to in clause 4 (g) there is no restriction whatever as to general capacity of plant.

Clauses 10 and following of the Agreement deal with matters arising in the event that either I.G. or Alcoa or both of them desire to form a company in the U.S.A. for the production of magnesium of their own. It is in this connection only that a limitation of plant capacity for the production of magnesium (viz. to 2,000 tons p.a.) is referred to at all, a limitation which I am informed is construed as being the outcome of a desire, on the part of I.G., to restrict the production of magnesium metal in the U.S.A. under I.G.'s patents generally. This construction must fail already upon con-



- 5 -

consideration of the fact set forth at the end of the preceding paragraph of this statement with reference to the granting, by Alcoa, of producing licenses to third parties under the Alig agreement. It must equally fail, however, upon a fair reading of the wording of clause 10 itself when bearing in mind the considerations in the minds of I.G.'s directors during the negotiations of the Alig Agreement which led up to such wording, and which I am in a position to state as having been substantially the following: -

Reconsidering the production of magnesium in the U.S.A. by a jointly owned separate company it was realized

(1) that Alcoa was an undertaking dealing with Light Metal interests only, while I.G. was a chemical concern in whose business the light metal section formed a comparatively small fraction only of the aggregate,

(2) that the formation of a producing company in the U.S.A. by Alcoa and I.G. jointly on a parity basis would, on the part of I.G., require a considerable amount of capital which, on occasion arising, might be more profitably spent on improvements and extensions of domestic plant (i.e. in Germany) than in an undertaking abroad, whereas for Alcoa such capital expenditure would in any case be an investment in domestic plant (i.e. in the U.S.A.).

(3) that owing to the currency restrictions introduced by the German Government in the summer of 1931 there was no longer afforded to I.G. a possibility of freely converting marks into dollars which latter would be required to meet the capital demands of a company for the production of magnesium in the U.S.A.; under the same restrictions



- 6 -

I.G. was prevented from disposing of her foreign currency accounts abroad for the purpose, as also these were placed under the control of the German Government.

It was clear therefore that if a parity basis for a joint undertaking to produce magnesium in the U.S.A. was to be maintained, then the capital requirements of such undertaking upon I.G.'s resources would have to be accordingly limited, and this meant, that also the initial production capacity of the plant to be erected would have to be correspondingly restricted. In fixing such capacity, a figure of 4,000 tons p.a. was eventually arrived at, it being considered that the expenditure involved upon I.G. for a plant of that size was still just compatible with I.G.'s resources while at the same time such size of plant was sufficient to ensure its working on a commercially remunerative basis and also ample when bearing in mind the prospective demands of the U.S.A. market; in the latter connection it is noted that the capacity of the Lutterfold works of I.G. which were then supplying the whole of the European market demands, was in those days only about 1800 to 2000 tons p.a.

As it was, however, further considered that circumstances might arise which would notwithstanding prevent I.G.'s participation in such first producing company, it was further provided in clause 12 that if such first company was formed by only one of the partners, the other partner should have the right at any time to form a producing company of his own "with an initial production capacity not greater" than the production capacity of the first company. This clause thus brings the potential total of "initial production capacities" up to 4,000 tons p.a.. Moreover it is provided in clause 15 of the Agreement that in the

- 7 -

event of a desire of the first producing company to increase its production capacity (i.e. in excess of the 4,000 tons p.a. initial capacity set forth in clause 12), the other party may participate in the whole of the first company's undertaking by taking over and paying for one half of the monies hitherto spent by the first party on such producing company. This simply means that a desire to increase the producing capacity of the first company hitherto owned by the first partner alone acts as a revival of the other party's participating rights. It is thus seen that only the initial production capacity is limited by the Agreement, but that the aggregate total production capacity is not so limited. It would, incidentally, have also been quite contrary to I.G.'s interests if the production of magnesium in the U.S.A. had been hampered by contractual restrictions, since I.G. as a shareholder in Alii had an interest in Alii's making a maximum profit by way of fabricating licensee royalties, and the latter being based on pounds of metal worked (clause 3 sub-clause (g)) must necessarily be kept low if there were not sufficient metal supplies to meet the demands of the fabricating licensees. In view of the import duty position such supplies could however only be met by domestic (i.e. U.S.A.) production.

The company referred to in the Alii Agreement as Alii, on its formation adopted the style of "American Magnesium Corporation" (AMC). Shortly after the Agreement had begun to operate it transpired that it would be impossible to produce magnesium in the U.S.A. at a price capable of competing with the Dow Chemical Co's price.

- 81 -

at least during the next few years; an amendment of the Alig agreement therefore provided for the I.G. to renounce her right to a set-off payment of \$ 1,000,000 and to receive instead, and upon payment of the regular purchase price, 50 per cent of the shares in a subsidiary company of Alcoa's dealing with the fabrication of magnesium base alloys, viz. the American Magnesium Company (AMC).

Pursuant to her contractual obligations, the I.G. in the following years did her utmost to develop the Magnesium Field in the U.S.A. by establishing cooperation with Alcoa on technical matters and by promoting the conveyance of technical information. To this end, one of the I.G.'s most capable engineers, Dipl. Ing. Heinz ARKHEIM, who had been specially trained for the purpose in matters relating to the Magnesium Field, was sent to the U.S.A. to be at the permanent disposal of AMC for purposes of consultation and practical assistance. Further, several works managers of I.G., i.e. Fros. WOSTEMEL and SCHMIDT made extensive visits to the U.S.A. in order to inform the AMC representatives on the more important aspects of research and development work in the Magnesium Field recently undertaken. Moreover, AMC was regularly supplied with copies of all applications for patents in or relating to the Magnesium Field shortly after they had been filed in the German Patent Office together with an authorisation, on behalf of I.G., to apply for corresponding patent rights in the U.S.A. Thus after the signing of the Alig agreement, no further patents in or relating to the said field were taken out in

the name of I.G., all such patents based on I.G. inventions bearing the name of MDC; this transmission of patent specifications to MDC was even continued after the outbreak of the war in 1939 and until the fall of 1941 by all available channels, such as via neutral European countries, in a regular manner. Further an extensive correspondence with MDC representatives on technical matters was conducted. At regular intervals, visits of I.G. technical representatives to MDC, and of MDC representatives to I.G. were paid in order to complete the interchange of technical information on the spot, and to instruct MDC in the actual operation of I.G.'s most recent technical processes. Messrs. Herman A. BARKER of MDC and Earl RICHSCHEIDER of MDC visited I.G.'s Bitterfeld works dealing with the Magnesium Vield as late as in the summer of 1939 and were acquainted with the most recent developments in the production of magnesium metal by a thermal method devised by I.G. According to my recollection, the said two gentlemen were also shown, on this occasion, I.G.'s most modern plant for the production of magnesium by the electrolytic method in Aken, which then had only recently started operation.

Summing up, I am not aware of any technical information relating to the Magnesium Vield which had been deliberately withheld from MDC until late in 1941, and as far as patent applications and matters directly connected therewith are concerned, I am in a position to state positively that no such information was withheld until late in 1939, as I myself was during all relevant times in charge of the Patent Department of I.G.'s Bitterfeld Works and directly responsible for the forwarding of such



applications.

The exchange of technical information relating to the Magnesium field with England, where I.G. had an agreement of many years standing with the firm of L.A. Hughes, and later also with Magnesium Elektron Limited, was even more intimate. Thus one of the latter firm's metallurgists, one Mr. Lewis, in or about 1938, was received in the I.G.'s plant at Bitterfeld working the thermal process for the production of magnesium above referred to on an experimental scale, and spent several months therein studying the process and actually sharing the work of the plant's manager. Moreover Magnesium Elektron Limited were constantly kept advised on all new developments and results of research work relating to the production as well as the fabrication of magnesium and magnesium base alloys. This exchange took place partly in writing, but to a very large extent also by means of frequent visits of leading representatives of the firms concerned, especially of Major C.P. Bell of Magnesium Elektron Ltd. to Bitterfeld, where they were given full liberty to inspect I.G.'s plant under actual working conditions. According to my recollection, Major Bell was also shown I.G.'s Alton plant for the production of magnesium on at least one occasion.

With the I.G.'s French licensee in the Magnesium field, The Societe Generale du Magnesium, exchange of information was not quite as intimate as with the U.S.A. and the British groups for reasons which lay more on the part of the French themselves than otherwise; nevertheless also in this case, there was no deliberate restriction of information on the part of I.G. whatsoever.

In testimony of this statement I hereunder affix



my signature, conscientiously believing the same to be true.

Bitterfeld, 15th of December 1947

signed: Dr. Hermann SUCH

I hereby certify that the above signature, affixed before me, is that of the chemist Dr. Hermann SUCH in Bitterfeld, Linienstrasse 7, who is personally known to me.

No. 20 of the Document Register for 1948.  
Halle S., 9 January 1948

(seal)

The Notary public  
signed: Dr. rich MAUR

Calculation of Fee

Value 3,000 R.Mk.-

Fee for certification  
according to article 79 RMO R.Mk. 3.00

signed: Dr. MAUR, notary

a certified true copy.

Auerberg, 4 January 1948

signed: Dr. Hermann SUCH  
Counsel for the Defendant BU BIR

Cony.

MAIS CARD

Date of Agreement: 24/26 November 1941

Type of Agreement:  
 License Agreement.

Parties: I.G.  
./.

Office: Frankfurt/Main  
 Sales Syndicate  
 Chemicals

- 1) Compagnie des Produits Chimiques et  
 Electrometallurgiques Alsais,  
 Proges & Camargue, Paris;
- 2) Société d'Electro-Chimie, d'Electro-  
 Metallurgie et des Aciers Electriques  
 d'Ugine, Paris;

Referents: Director Dr. Pitt  
 Director Ex. Pistor  
 Director Robert-  
 Andreas

- 3) Société Général du Magnesium, Paris.

I.G. Participation:

1-3) - "French Group" -

Object	Connection	Countries	Period of agreement and notice
Magnesium metal	643	France	26 November 1946
raw	859	inclusive of	
refined,	1084	Colonies,	
Magnesium alloys,		Protectorates,	
Aluminium,		Mandates.	
Glucobrite,			
Raw magnesite,		Belgium,	
Electron metal,		Yugoslavia,	
DCM process,		Poland.	
Magnesium chloride		Czechoslovakia	
		Germany,	
		Austria,	
		Switzerland,	
		Italy,	
		England.	
		Europe	118
		- Russia -	574

5339/40553 8.30 see back page  
 500

Basis of the Agreement.

The agreement refers to  
Magnesium metal and its alloys with a  
magnesium content of more than 50%.

By "magnesium metal" the raw metal or the "refined metal" (pure metal), usual in trade is meant.

"France" in this agreement constitutes

"France with her colonies, protectorates and mandates" and

"Continental France"

is the "European France".

The I.G. disposes of

Patents,

Trade marks and

Experiences

in the field of

Magnesium production,

on the basis of which the I.G. is able to produce 100 tons of  
magnesium per month in Bitterfeld at a price of RM 1,30 per  
kilogram.

The I.G. assumes the obligation  
of coding to the French group

all data referring to the production of Magnesium.

Though the I.G. is not in a position to guarantee the produc-  
tion cost of magnesium in France, it vouches for the correctness  
of the figures submitted.

The I.G. furthermore assumes the obligation  
of giving the French Group the chance of purchasing  
raw magnesite as well as special equipment for the  
production of magnesium on the same price basis  
as the I.G. itself. This refers in particular to  
"Chloretite".

The I.G. furthermore owns

Patents,

Processes,

Trade marks and experience

on the production, processing,

utilization and treatment of magnesium and its  
alloys.

as well as the composition, manufacture and utilization of  
chemical products used as protective agents and fluxes.

For all present and future patents, experiences, methods and processes the French Group receives  
for France  
an exclusive license namely  
in the field of production as well as  
conversion and treatment of magnesium and its alloys.

The French Group also receives a  
licence

for the trade marks in the same sphere,

which are registered or to be registered in France.

The French Group takes over the agreements,  
which refer to the treatment and processing of magnesium and  
its alloys in France, made by I.G. with other French firms  
prior to the conclusion of this contract.

During the period covered by this agree-  
ment the I.G. may not

Article 1 (page 5) own or acquire any interests in the field  
of magnesium in France.

On the other hand the French Group may not

participate in the production of magnesium  
and its alloys in the areas exclusively reserved  
for the I.G.

The French Group

has an exclusive licence

for France - as already mentioned - .

✓ With regard to the  
supply of the other European countries with magnesium and its  
alloys the following is agreed upon:

1a) Belgium	Yugoslavia	Poland
I.G. ....2/3 )	of the total supplies.	
French Group .....1/3 )		

b) Czechoslovakia:

as under a),

the I.G., however, is entitled to a special prior  
delivery (bondervorgabe) of 100 tons per year.

./ 576

2a) Germany, Austria, Switzerland, Italy and England

are reserved for the I.G. and its licensees.

b) In the supply of the rest of Europe

the French group participates with the following quotas:

for the first 5 years ..... with 15%

for the next 5 years ..... with 20% and

for the rest of the period covered by the agreement with 25%.

These quotas will be supplied only if the sales of I.G. in the countries listed under 2a) and 2b) exceed 300 tons per month (~ 3600 tons y.a.).

The magnesium produced on the basis of I.G. licenses in the countries listed under 2a), will be charged against the 300 tons in a manner still to be agreed upon.

The quotas will be fixed quarterly. The quotas of supply will be calculated separately for pure magnesium and raw magnesium. With regard to the calculation of the quotas of alloys, those alloys containing more than 98% pure magnesium will be counted as pure magnesium.

If the French group does not fulfill its quotas, it may either have the deficiency transferred within the fiscal year, or it may demand within three months after the date of the fiscal report that the I.G. effect the supply in its place. In the latter case, the French group receives a compensation still to be agreed upon (with at least 8% of the prices ex works).

Granting of licences in the rest of Europe.

If

plants for the production of magnesium have to be erected in

Belgium,

Poland,

Yugoslavia or

Czechoslovakia,

the licences required are to be granted jointly,

and the construction of the plants is to be effected jointly (in accordance with the ratio of the quotas).

Proceeds from licences will be distributed according to the ratio of the quota. The

possible granting of a licence for the production of magnesium in

Switzerland and

Russia

will also be effected jointly on the basis of a quota of

90% for I.G. and

30% for the French group.

577



Illegible Letter

Sales,

Propaganda,

and the granting of processing licences  
in the restricted countries

are to be effected jointly by both parties.

Terms of delivery and prices are to be fixed on the basis of  
mutual agreement.

Conditions of the licence:

I.G. will receive

single

and current royalties

(For further particulars see Article 3 and 4 of the agreement).

New processes of outsiders:

If a third party develops

a new process,

which improves the production or processing of magnesium very considerably, the parties will contact each other regarding the purchase of such a process. The French group will share the costs of a possible purchase in the individual countries according to its quota.

6) Import of magnesium and magnesium alloys.

The import of magnesium and magnesium alloys  
into France

by the I.G., in the form of raw metal and semi-finished  
products, as well as special products destined for  
the processing of magnesium, as for smelting for

instance, is only admissible through the sales organisation  
of the French group. The I.G. will impose this same obligation  
on all their customers and licensees, with the exception of  
those cases, which are provided under the A. G. agreement up  
to 1933.

Both contracting parties will forbid their processing  
licensees to sell finished single parts in the territory reserved  
for the other party under this agreement. (Exception: above-  
contract-E.K. 1034).

The markets not listed in the agreement concerning the  
quotas (see column of countries) are to be considered un-  
restricted up to the time, when the I.G. concludes agreements  
with corresponding prohibitions, in force for the countries  
referred to, and informs the French group of this fact.

electron metal.

When granting new licenses, the French group will take the obligations of the I.G. in the sphere of electron metal in France, of which it has been informed by the I.G. into consideration.

8)

Exchange of experiences:

The I.G. and its subsidiaries assume the obligation to make all the experiences concerning the production and processing of magnesium and magnesium alloys available to the French group.

Dispatch of technicians.

The I.G. will also inform the French group of the composition of the special products, which are used by I.G. in the application of processes licensed by them, and will make the production method known to the French group, if the corresponding products are not manufactured in continental France. In such a case the manufacture and utilization must, however, remain limited to the use and the manufacture of magnesium and alloys in France.

All present and future experiences of the I.G. and its subsidiaries in the field covered by this agreement, and all experiences obtained by the I.G. from its licensees on the basis of reciprocity obligations will be made available to the French group.

The French group on its part will place all its present and future experiences in the field covered by this agreement, as well as those of its subsidiary companies and the experiences obtained from its licensees on the basis of reciprocity obligations

at the unrestricted disposal of the I.G. outside France, with the exception of the IGI properties. The IGB processes will possibly be utilized by the French group in France only.

Right of inspection of the French factories by I.G. technicians.

Obligation to secrecy.

9) agreements concerning patents.

The methods for the production of magnesium chloride

and magnesium metal and for its processing are contained in a special list of patents, which forms a supplement to this agreement; additions in this list may not be applied in case of the French group.

The I.G. assumes the obligation, if requested by the French group, to maintain all patents, which are necessary for an effective protection of the methods, license for which has been granted to the French group, in

France, as well as in  
Belgium,  
Yugoslavia,  
Poland and  
Czechoslovakia,

and, if the French group should demand it, to take action in case of infringements.

If the French group is essentially impaired in its activity in the above-mentioned countries by a verdict concerning patents, an amicable understanding must be reached with regard to the consequences of such a verdict and the change of the license conditions connected therewith, possibly by a court of arbitration.

The parties assume the obligation of informing each other at once of all improvements and inventions obtained by them or their licensees and to grant each other the right to apply them themselves or for their licensees in the countries reserved to them, with the exception of inventions made in laboratories of the state, which concern the processing of magnesium; these are transferable only with the approval of the government concerned.

The taking out of patents for inventions and improvements is to be affected by mutual agreement in the countries covered by this agreement.

If the French group makes an invention, which is obviously independent from the information obtained from the I.G., then the I.G. has a right to a license against payment of a compensation, which has to be fixed by a court of arbitration, if necessary.

The parties assume the mutual obligation to inform each other within two months of any patents granted in the field covered by this agreement.

The French group has the right of unrestricted utilization of these patents in France.

whilst the same rights are held by

I.G. for the other countries.

If there is a possibility of patents in other work spheres besides the one covered by the contract, I.G. retains the license monopoly for these foreign fields.

Upon termination of the contract,  
the French Group  
has the free utilization of all patents taken out subsequent to the signing of the contract, regardless of the original of these patents,

for France  
and the countries to which it is authorized to send exports.

The French Group does not have to pay a license fee, but if it makes use of the patents it does have to share in the annual expenditure for the maintenance of these patents in the said countries, in proportion to its quota.

Temporary regulations see par. 10.

Sale of magnesite and Electron metals by I.G. to  
the French Group, see par. 11.

Court of Arbitration!

12) Duration:

The contract is valid until  
30 November 1946!

Frankfurt/Main, 6 April 1934 Addendum on reduction of  
fees (discount) up to end of 1937.

581.

Certified & True Copy.

Munich, 2 February 1946.

signed: Dr. Werner SCHUBERT.

Defense Counsel for the Defendant I.G. IGIL

Copy.

I.G. Ludwigshafen

10/0207  
 MAIN INDEX

No. 423

Parties I.G. Day: 30 December 1933 / 13 April 1935  
 ./. Subject: Concession contract  
 F.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd, London Processing Department and referenced:  
 Legal Department Frankfurt/Main  
 I.G. participation

Subject	Reference	Countries	Validity and Termination of contract
Light metal	423	Great Britain	31 December 1930
Electro metal	423A	Northern Ireland and Irish Free State	1936;
Magnoxium Flux		British Dominions British Colonies British Protectorates British Mandate Areas Possible later includ- ing Canada	valid extension for 3 years each time, if notice is not given 6 months before expiry Par. 10 Premature Termination Par. 11/12

726

117



Par. 1) "Light Metal" in this contract means

- a) "electron metal", i.e. light metal and light metal compounds, containing not less than 80% magnesium, and manufactured goods made entirely or partly of same.
- b) "Magnesium" in any shape, except wire, strips, powder and foil.
- c) "Manufactured Goods", i.e. castings, forgings, rolled sheets, profiles or punched out parts of light metal in the original state, but not if joined together in a finished product, such as an internal combustion engine or an airplane.

Par. 2) The sole monopoly for the light metal manufactured by them by I.G. on the firm of Hughes within the area covered by the contract (see countries column). As long as Hughes themselves do not start, on the strength of their contract rights, to manufacture light metal in the area covered by the contract, they will buy their entire requirement from I.G., and after beginning production they will buy at least 25% of their requirement from I.G.

Par. 3) I.G. having transferred their British patents to Hughes, undertakes to transfer to Hughes their other patents in the British Empire also, should Hughes desire this.

Par. 4) I.G. undertakes to meet Hughes' light metal requirements.

Par. 5) Fixing of purchase prices.

Par. 8) Most-favored-nation-clause.

Par. 6) All inquiries reaching I.G. from the contract area, shall be forwarded to Hughes by I.G.; the latter will not sell any light metal to third parties in the contract area without the consent of Hughes.

Par. 9) Hughes undertakes not to engage in the sale of rival products, either directly or indirectly, and they will not participate in any rival enterprise until the term of contract; for the time being this does not apply to the products of Birmingham Ltd., Birmingham.

DOCUMENT BOOK III, SURGEON  
GENERAL DOCUMENT No. 71

- Par. 13)  
Hughes is obliged to refrain from entering rival enterprises  
for two years  
Par. 14)  
after expiry of the agreement. I.G. will pay a certain compensa-  
tion.  
Par. 15)  
I.G. will give technical aid, if Hughes so desires.

Addendum 12 April 1935: The agreement is extended until  
the end of 1950.

Certified A True Copy.  
Fuernberg, 30 January 1948

signed: Dr. Werner JOHANNES  
Refused Counsel for the Defendant  
SUNSHINE

DOCUMENT BOX III, BU 2014  
BU 2014 DOCUMENT No. 72

Copy.

MAIN INDEX I.G. Ludwigshafen No. 436 A  
I./S.  
Parties I.G. Subject Frankfurt/Main  
Legal Department  
C.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd. London Processing Department and Referent  
British Magnesium (Electrometall)  
Co. Ltd. I.G. Participation

Subject	Reference	Countries	Duration of contract and Termination
Electrometall,	433,	Great Britain	see reversed page
Light Metal	434,	Northern Ireland	
Magnesium,	435b,	Irish Free State	
Pure Magnesium,	953,	Isle of Man	
"Pig" Metal,			
Ingot,			
Magnesium Alloys,			
Combustion Power Engines			
Hydrohelium			

733 116

Frankfurt/Main (Exposé by Dr. BULL) 15 June 1935:

As certain English firms intend to produce magnesium, I.G. had to erect a magnesium plant in England so as not to lose the hard won British market.

It is proposed to build up a plant with a capacity of 100 tons per month. I.G. authorized Hughes to register a company under the name of

British Magnesium (Electronmetal)  
with a nominal capital of £ 40 000.—, on condition that the shares of this new company are issued and utilized only with the consent of I.G.

Hughes gives this British Magnesium Co.  
an exclusive license for the production patents  
against free shares amounting to £ 16 000.—

which Hughes will deposit with an English attorney with a blank transfer to I.G.

Further, Major BULL, shareholder and head of the firm of Hughes, made I.G. an option offer for purchase of the shares majority of the firm of Hughes in case he leaves the firm.

(For particulars see detailed exposé of Herr Dr. BULL and the various contracts namely:

- 1) I.G. ././ F.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd.  
dated 13 July 1933/adendum of 13 April 1935 regarding  
transfer of the electron metal patents.  
Duration: i n d e f i n i t e.
- 2) I.G. ././ F.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd.  
dated 10 August 1934/adendum of 13 April 1935 regarding  
transfer of the hydronallium patents.  
Duration: i n d e f i n i t e.
- 3) I.G. ././ F.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd.  
dated 20 December 1933/adendum of 13 April 1935  
regarding concession contract (see also BK. 465-b.)  
Duration: end of 1950.  
Tacit extension for two years each time, if  
notice is not received 6 months before  
expiry.

4) Hughes & Co. Ltd. / . British Magnesium Co.

dated 26 April 1935  
regarding issue of license.  
Duration: Until 31 December 1950  
possibly longer, according to duration of patent.

5) F.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd. / . British Magnesium Co.

dated 26 April 1935  
regarding sole sales concession  
Duration: Until 31 December 1950.  
Tacit extension for two years each time, if notice  
is not received 6 months before expiry.

6) a) Ch. James Prior Ball,  
b) The Parklands Company,  
c) I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G.,  
d) F.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd.

dated 26 April 1935  
regarding o p t i o n.

Duration: Until 31 December 1950

Certified A True Copy.

Muenberg, 30 January 1945.

signed: Dr. Verner GUEHRKE  
Defense Counsel for the defendant GUEHRKE.



Copy.

Carbon Copy

Memorandum

concerning

Amendment of our contract with the Magnesium Development Corporation with reference to Magnesium.

By our agreement with Alcoa of 23 October 1931 with reference to the foundation and organization of "Mig", later named "Magnesium Development Corporation", provision was made for Alcoa and I.G. to participate, in equal shares, in M.D.C., preferential treatment, however, being granted to I.G. with regard to profit-sharing in so much as of the M.D.C.'s available net-profits, I.G. should receive a priority payment of \$1,000,000 in instalments of \$250,000 each. At the same time I.G. and Alcoa undertook to

Marginal  
note:

Ø Wolfen-Fa.

Ø Herr Ziegler

Ø Dr. Buhl

Ø Director

Dr. Moschel

Transfer to M.D. C., for their exclusive use in the U.S.A., their present and future patent-right and knowledge acquired in the sphere of magnesium. In this connection the advantage enjoyed by I.G. with regard to its participation in the

profits of M.D.C., was to represent an additional compensation for the patents and knowledge which the I.G. placed at M.D.C.'s disposal. (Article 6 of foundation-agreement). This can only

3 January  
1939

HB/Ko.  
D.10.

signify that the difference in Patent rights and knowledge of the I.G. on the one hand and of the Alcoa on the other was, at the time of foundation, already of sufficient importance to justify such an additional indemnification; it must, however, be taken into consideration whether the technical "good will" of I.G. (capital invested in research laboratories and scientific experiments), which would only take effect in future patents and scientific experience

did not, in part at least, contribute to this priority.

The granting of such an advantageous position to the I.G. with regard to profit sharing might also be explained as a proposition that M.D.C. should buy from I.G. the latter's present and future patent-rights and knowledge acquired, unless Alcoa disposed of

corresponding possessions. This explains the omission of a clause from the agreement to the effect that inventions and results achieved by M.D.C. or only derived from their patentees should in exchange be made over to I.G. for use outside the U.S.A., especially also in Germany. M.D.C. is, in fact, so far entirely free as to their use of knowledge acquired and the taking out and use of patents outside the U.S.A.

In view of the fact that the development at that time of the magnesium-business did not offer the I.G. any prospects of enjoying, within a reasonable space of time, the privileged profit-participation conceded to them by article 6 of the foundation-agreement, negotiations later took place between I.G. and Alcoa, leading finally to the conclusion of an agreement on 8 February 1933. According to this agreement I.G. renounced their preferential treatment with regard to profit-sharing in the M.D.C. (Article 2 of agreement dated 8 February 1933); in exchange I.G. acquired the right to purchase at a special price 50% of American Magnesium Corporation Stock until then held exclusively by Alcoa. (Article 1, section 2, of the agreement dated 8 February 1933). Apart from this, no change of importance was made in the contract between I.G. and M.D.C.

For some time past, this complete independence so far enjoyed by M.D.C., that is to say, by A.M.C. with regard to the use, outside the U.S.A., of their patents and knowledge acquired had been felt by us

as an inconvenience. With most countries where our magnesium-increments have been realized en bloc there are agreements providing for a reciprocal exchange of inventions and knowledge acquired, the U.S.A. being the one exception. To remove this inconvenience, an attempt was already made in the course of 1937 to secure for us at least a certain influence on the use of these rights, by negotiating with A.M.C. regarding a contract, seeing to us as trustees, the use - in favor of A.M.C. - of this company's patents all over the world with the exception of North America. Partly on account of formal difficulties, this agreement, has so far not been concluded. In the meantime Magnesium Electron Limited has/ of patents and knowledge acquired between the British Empire on the one hand and the U.S.A. on the other. An agreement is about to be concluded.

Apart from the fact that negotiations between I.G. and A.M.C. with regard to the use of A.M.C. patents outside North America were already broken off some time ago, we are no longer satisfied, in view of the present position, with the use of these patents by the I.G. acting merely as trustees, in favor of A.M.C. It must be taken into consideration that the subject of magnesium during the last years has received such an impetus in Germany that by no means the least effect has been that we have very considerably enlarged our installations for the technical development of this matter (Research laboratories and so on). We have also in the meantime solved the problem, scientifically and in its large-scale technical application, of thermal production of magnesium

which, in 1931, had not passed its initial stages. If, at the moment, this solution is not yet of actual importance to the U.S.A., the reason must be seen in the fact that the Dow Chemical Company is in a position to produce, at a minimum price, magnesium by electrolysis from magnesium chloride alkalies which as scrap are at their disposal in considerable amounts. It is by no means assured, however, that this latter price can sustain prolonged competition with magnesium produced from Dolomite by a thermal process; should this not be the case and should, in particular, the difference provide the means for the payment of interest on the capital to be invested for the thermal production, then the process developed by us for the thermal production of magnesium would become of immediate importance also for the U.S.A.

Marginal note: Thermal production of magnesium not being within the M.D.C.'s This might be a reason to foundation-agreement, most valuable advances have in the meantime been made by us in this sphere, latterly especially in the matter of alloys. However, as these results are more or less the consequence of natural developments, it is doubtful whether they could be made the basis of amendments to the present agreement with M.D.C. <sup>and</sup> ~~that is to say~~ A.M.C.

Of farther importance is the extension of our research-establishments here which have been realized in the meantime, and which represent an increase, by leaps and bounds, of our technical "good will" in the sphere of magnesium such as had never been foreseen at the time the M.D.C. foundation-agreement was concluded.

Finally, it must be pointed out that I.G., too, also benefits by inventions and knowledge acquired from abroad due to agreements concluded in the meantime



between I.G. on the one hand and other foreign parties on the other, (France, England possibly also Italy), a factor which could not have been indicated at the conclusion of the A.D.C. agreement. For the full effect of this argument it is, however, inconvenient that the I.E.L. (England) has in the meantime entered direct negotiations with A.D.C. on an exchange of knowledge acquired, so that inventions and knowledge which we obtained from England will no longer be available to us as counter-offer in a renewal of negotiations with A.D.C. and ~~that is to say~~ A.D.C.

Literally interpreted, present agreements do not entitle us to demand that the A.D.C., ~~that is to say~~ <sup>and</sup> A.D.C., cede to us, free of charge, their foreign patents and knowledge required, unless the interpretation has been adopted, that the compensation of \$ 1,000,000 (and consequently also the substitute for this compensation, namely I.G.'s participation in the A.D.C. by requiring 50% of its stock at special prices) referred exclusively to patents and knowledge required, which were in I.G.'s possession at the time the foundation agreement was concluded. On the other hand the above considerations may well serve as basis for a moral claim by I.G. to the cession, free of charge, of A.D.C.-patents knowledge for the Continent of Europe, particularly in view of the fact that the profits so far derived by I.G. from A.D.C., after deduction of interests for the amount paid by I.G. as purchase price on participation, are considerably below the originally planned compensation amount of \$ 1,000,000.

Signed: Dr. BUCH



DOCUMENT PAGE III BUEGIN  
BUEGIN DOCUMENT II. 74

I certify this to be a true and verbatim copy of above document.

Nuernberg, 25 January 1948

Signed: Dr. Werner SCHUBERT

Counsel for the Defendant BUEGIN

DOCUMENT BOOK III BIERGIN  
BIERGIN DOCUMENT No. 67

Copy.

Affidavit.

I, Karl Hermann KEEFER, born on 20 January 1906 at Huelva (Spain) living at Schlodern an der Sieg, administrative district (Reg-Bez) Koeln, have been duly warned that I render myself liable to punishment by making a false declaration. I declare on oath that my statement is true and was made to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. 71 at the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

1) With reference to myself, I further state that I have never been a member of the NSDAP, and am in possession of a Clearance Certificate of the German Denazification-Board, administr. district Cologne, issued at Siegburg on 4 September 1947, of which I enclose a photostat.

2) I made the acquaintance of Dr. Ernst BIERGIN on taking up employment with I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. at Bitterfeld on 1 December 1934. I was, at that time, assigned to the section light metals and was employed in the smelting and casting of light metals. During the time from 1 December 1934 until 31 December 1940 I was the assistant and deputy of the manager in charge of the light metal-block casting at Bitterfeld. From 1 January 1941 until my departure from Bitterfeld on 27 June 1945 I was the manager of light-metal block casting.

As for Dr. BIERGIN's attitude with regard to the passing on of technical information in connection with explosives-production and treatment, I can state that I was never deterred by Dr. BIERGIN or, at his order by one of his subordinates, from passing on to foreign visitors

the technical results achieved in I.G. On the contrary, knowledge acquired was freely exchanged with foreign countries. As I have hardly any of the documents in this connection, I can only report the following from memory:

3) Concerning the exchange of experience with the United States of America (U.S.A.)

Such information was given to the American Magnesium Corporation, Cleveland, Ohio, U.S.A. by the transmission of reports on tests, as well as by the transfer and instruction of experienced personnel. In this way Diplom-Ingenieur HENKING was trained in the Magnesium works at Bitterfeld and transferred to the American Magnesium Corporation at Cleveland, Ohio, U.S.A. after a few years. I am unable to make a statement on the duration of his training at Bitterfeld and the time of his emigration to the U.S.A., both belonging to the period prior to the commencement of my own activity in the light metal establishments of Bitterfeld, that is to say before 1 December 1934. I can, however, state that the personal transfer to the American Magnesium Corporation at Cleveland of knowledge acquired was also continued after 1 December 1934, as I myself met Mr. HENKING at Bitterfeld on the occasion of his visit there and assisted in the transmission of research results in connection with magnesium alloys. The time was between 1 December 1934 and 1 September 1939. As I lack all data, it is impossible for me to define the period more closely.

4) Concerning the exchange of experience with Great Britain.

Reports of results were transmitted to the following firms;

- 1) F.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd. Abbey House  
Baker Street, London N.W. 1

- 2) Magnesium Electron Ltd. Clifton Junction, Manchester
- 3) The Birmingham Aluminium Casting (1903) Co. Ltd.  
Birmingham
- 4) Birmabals Ltd. Woodgate, Edgbaston, Birmingham
- 5) Sterling Metals Ltd. Coventry

A lively exchange of knowledge required took place with all the above-named firms, as well as with several others whose name and addresses I do not remember, and visits were made to the magnesium establishments at Bitterfeld and the above-mentioned works in Great Britain. I particularly recollect <sup>the visit to Bitterfeld of</sup> the following English members of the afore-mentioned firms:

- 1) Major Charles James Prior BILL
- 2) Mr. Arthur Battershill LITTLE
- 3) Mr. MITCHELL, Christian name unknown
- 4) Mr. WINTER, Christian name unknown
- 5) Mr. Harry R. LEECH
- 6) Mr. CHARLES, Christian name unknown
- 7) Mr. Dr. Gordon J. LEWIS
- 8) Mr. Eric Whineray FELL
- 9) Mr. FOX, Christian name unknown
- 10) Mr. J.C.T. BLAKE
- 11) Mr. J.G. BULGER
- 12) Mr. Frank BOYLES

The above-mentioned 12 gentlemen received information in the light metal establishments and laboratories of Bitterfeld during the period from 1 December 1934 until 1 September 1939. Lack of data makes it impossible for me to estimate the period more closely. Special reference should, in my opinion, be made to the visits of Messrs. MITCHELL and WINTER.

In his capacity as referent for patents with the firm F.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd., Mr. Matthews gained full insight into the latest development in the field of magnesium and was able to utilize the data received and applications for patents to the advantage of his mother country.

Mr. Winter repeatedly stayed in Bitterfeld for weeks in order to study the possibilities of utilization of light metal in Germany, for the purpose of transmitting the information to Great Britain.

5) Information of the progress made was not only imparted by the 12 English visitors mentioned above and by many others, whose names and addresses I can no longer recollect, but especially through the surrender of perfected projects, machines and experienced personnel for the establishment and putting into operation of magnesium enterprises in Great Britain.

6) The I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. played a considerable part in the planning, establishment and putting into operation of the magnesium producing and processing installations of the Magnesium Elektron Ltd., Clifton Junction, Manchester and played an almost equally important part in the planning, establishment and putting into operation of the Birmetals Ltd., Woodgate, Quinton, Birmingham. From Germany the following former Bitterfeld chemists and engineers co-operated amongst others in the preliminary tasks for the production of magnesium in Great Britain:

- 1) Dr. Wilhelm Moschel
  - 2) Dr. Ing. Erich Jauer
  - 3) Dr. Ing. Hans Odothor Gruetener
  - 4) Dipl. Ing. Fritz Roewe
  - 5) Dr. Ing. Schiller, first name unknown
  - 6) Dipl. Ing. Hans Friedrich
  - 7) Dr. Goserau, first name unknown
  - 8) Dipl. Ing. Wilhelm von der Hey
- The 8 gentlemen listed above myself



co-operated, in the establishment and getting into operation of the magnesium installations in Clifton Junction, Manchester and we were supported in this by a team of experienced workmen, foremen, master craftsmen and technicians from the Bitterfeld magnesium enterprises. For a long time, especially in the years 1936, 1937 and 1938, the Germans in Clifton Junction numbered 20 - 30. This assistance was granted despite the conviction of the German experts, who had been sent from Bitterfeld, that a part of the magnesium produced in the installations, which we were helping to establish, would be used for armament purposes by Great Britain; this trend of thought was supported particularly by the fact that with the assistance of Dr. Gessner, Bitterfeld, Werk Nord, a large installation for the production of magnesium powder was built and put into operation in Clifton. In our expert opinion, such large amounts of magnesium powder as were demanded and produced in Clifton, could only be used for pyrotechnic acid (Brandactac) and therefore probably for the manufacture of incendiary bombs.

7) Particularly Dr. Ing. Ernst Weiss

and I assisted in the planning, establishment and getting into operation of the plant installations of the

Birmetals Ltd., Woodgate, Quinton, Birmingham.

In the years 1937 and 1938, Dr. Weiss spent many months in Birmingham and participated in the establishment and getting into operation of the plant installations and in 1938 I too was occupied for some time with putting the light metal foundry of that enterprise into operation.

It was part of the Austrian

Dipl. Ing. Paul Spitaler's

sphere of tasks to advise on the light metal die-casting process mainly the sandcasting in Great Britain.

For this purpose Mr. Spitaler made trips to Great Britain.

8) On the exchange of experience with France.

Of the French magnesium producing enterprises, it was particularly the two plants in Jarris near Grenoble (Societe d'Electrochimie et d'Aleries d'Urgine) and in St. Auban Durance (Alais, Troies et Camargue) which were currently advised from Bitterfeld. Before my activities commenced, that is before 1 December 1936, the following gentlemen were already there, co-operating in the reconstruction of old and the establishment of new magnesium producing installations in France:

- 1) Dr. Wilhelm Moschel
- 2) Dr. Ing. Erich Bauer and
- 3) Dr. phil. Schoppe, first name unknown of Bitterfeld.

During the time of my own activity in Bitterfeld in the field of light metal, I am quite certain that Dr. Schoppe visited France, for the transmission of experience gained in the field of magnesium production to the two above mentioned plants in France, was part of his job. On the other hand, French experts often came to Bitterfeld on short or longer visits in order to obtain information.

Apart from the plants producing magnesium, the processors of the metal in France were also advised by the I.G. Farbwerke AG in Bitterfeld. As a rule the information was transmitted through the

Societe Generale du Magnesium, Paris,

from where, I remember, visits were made by the following gentlemen:

- 1) Mr. de Verdolhan, first name unknown
- 2) M. Harduin, first name unknown

Through the interposition of the Sec.Gen. du Magnesium, Paris, the following gentlemen from the automobile firm CIEZEL also visited the plants in Bitterfeld:

- 3) M. Henri Rosenfeld  
55 Boulevard Victor Hugo  
Clichy-sur-Seine

- 4) M. Digne  
    ) first name and address are not known to me.
- 5) M. Denis

The visits of the above named 5 gentlemen from France took place between 1 December 1934 and 1 September 1939. I am unable to give a more exact date as the records are not at my disposal.

9) To summarize I may say that the interchange of experience in the field of magnesium with countries abroad - as described above - represents only a fraction of the information actually transmitted to foreign countries, as I limited myself to the territories U.S.A., Great Britain and France, covering the period between 1 December 1934 and 1 September 1939 and even then I was only able to give a brief outline. I merely mention as incidental the advice given Italian firms since the 1930s, among others the firm Isotta Fraschini. The visits in Germany took place in the plants Bitterfeld-Süd and Bitterfeld-Nord as well as in the Leinzeiser Leuchtstoff-Werke G.m.b.H., Rackwitz near Leipzig, all according to the visitor's special interest. The entire research and development in the field of magnesium

was conducted in Bitterfeld.

10) On the employment and treatment of prisoners of war and foreign civilian workers.

As far as I remember the employment of foreign labor in the light metal enterprises of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. in Bitterfeld <sup>any</sup> to/extent worthy of mention commenced approximately in 1940, namely with the assignment of Slovak civilian workers. Later Italian, French and Russian civilian workers were added and a number of other nationalities, these, however, were outnumbered by the aforementioned.

As far as I know, the foreign workers, with few exceptions, were housed and fed in communal quarters. These communal quarters in Bitterfeld were a joint foundation by the various employers, such as industry, the city and other parties interested in the employment of foreign workers. Germans and foreigners whose native tongue was German were also housed in these quarters at times. The I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. was only under certain circumstances and in part responsible for these quarters. I have visited these quarters repeatedly and have partaken of the food supplied there. I am convinced that many of the foreign workers lived a better life there than they used to in their home countries. This conviction was strengthened by the fact that numerous foreign workers attempted to induce friends, acquaintances and relatives to follow them to Bitterfeld. I admit on the other hand, that many foreign workers - but not by any means the majority - took the opportunity of spending the leave, which they had been granted, at home, never to

return to their place of employment.

11) As a rule there was no difference in the employment of German and German labor, i.e., the foreigners had an 8 hour working day if the Germans worked 8 hours and if the working hours had to be extended either with approval or by order of the authorities, then this also applied to all nationalities. The tasks carried out by foreign workers in the plant directed by me - of which I naturally have the best knowledge - were approximately the following:

- 1) Loading and unloading of railroad trucks and motor vehicles
- 2) Marking and piling up of light metal blocks
- 3) Sawing, drilling and turning of light metal blocks
- 4) Weighing of metals, additional alloys and refining salts
- 5) Feeding and stirring the smelting furnaces
- 6) Alloying, refining and tapping of light metal melt
- 7) Servicing of cranes and vehicles of all types
- 8) Emptying and cleaning of melting pots
- 9) Processing the residue of molten metal
- 10) Repairs of smelting furnaces, casting installations, mills, drilling machines, turning lathes, cranes and vehicles of all types, blast apparatus, compressors, cables and machines of all types, buildings, chimneys etc.

In the remaining enterprises of the light metal department of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. in Bitterfeld, the following tasks, among others, were typical:

- 11) Production of sand moulds as well as melting and tapping of light metals therein



- 12) Polishing of sand mould castings from light metal
- 13) Production of sand moulds as well as melting and pouring of light metal therein
- 14) Extrusion processing of bars, profiles, strips and tubing and other semi-finished products of light metal
- 15) Heat treatment of light metal semi-finished products by annealing, cooling etc.
- 16) Pressing and forging of light metal forgings, such as sectional radial engine casings, propeller discs, wheelhubs for wheels with rubber tyres, motor chassis etc.

The above mentioned examples are only part of the manifold products, which were often, varied, and all of which I no longer remember.

I can however state that I never heard of a single case where a prisoner of war was assigned tasks which were directly connected with acts of war, unless the rescue and clearing operations following an air raid attack on the quarters of the prisoners are to be interpreted as such. I can furthermore state that I never heard of a single case where a prisoner of war was used for the production and transport of arms or munition of any type or the transport of materials destined for the fighting forces. My conviction is also supported by the fact that according to my knowledge arms and munition were not even produced in the plants of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. in Bitterfeld.

- 12) With regard to the employment of prisoners of war, little difference was made between prisoners of war and civilian workers. The prisoners of war were housed in prison camps by the Deutsche Wehrmacht. From there the prisoners of war were escorted to their place of work,

guarded while they worked and taken back to their barracks by military personnel. Later on the practice of guarding them at their place of work by military personnel was abandoned and civilian supervisors, such as foremen, master craftsmen issued with armlets by the Deutsche Wehrmacht and put in charge of the prisoners of war during the working hours as auxiliary guards. The prisoners of war had the opportunity of submitting their requests to the management of the plants where they were employed through the German military authorities. I myself have received such requests from prisoners of war; as far as I remember, they concerned a change of working hours. I do not recall however, that the prisoners of war had refused to work because it was incompatible with their status.

Eitdorf, 7 February 1948.

signed: Karl Hermann Weeber

Documentary Register Number 148/48

The above signature of Dipl. Ing. Karl Hermann Weeber of Schladern/Sieg, and his signature on the preceding eight pages were affixed before me, after Mr. Weeber had been told of the significance of an affidavit and the result of a false statement. Mr. Weeber identified himself by submitting his identity card for the British Zone, issued at the office Dattenfeld under the number AI Nr. 324900 BHF. The signatures are likewise attested by the undersigned notary.

Eitdorf, 7 February 1948.

The Notary:

signed: Groidenbach

Seal:

Gerts:

Value 3,000.— RM

Fee according to articles 36 & 42 Reich

of Regulations

16.— RM

Turnover tax

— 48 RM

16.48 RM

signed: BEINHARDT

Notary

SS-214/235

Entlassungsbescheinigung  
(Discharge Certificate)

hiermit wird bescheinigt, dass  
(It is hereby certified that)

Name (spelt)

Karl EISEN,  
born on 20 January 08

resident at

Schillerstr.  
company dwelling

Identification Card No. A 375 900 DEM

unter den Bestimmungen der Verordnung Nr. 79 der Militärregierung  
entlassen worden ist.

(Has been cleared under the provisions of Military Government  
Ordinance No. 79).

Date 4 September 1947

place Eisenburg

Stempel  
(stamp)

Unterschrift: signed illegible  
(signed)

Chairman of the Denazification Court

Bitte eine Unterschrift zu streichen (Delete whichever does  
not apply).

I hereby certify that the above is a correct copy of the  
original end of the photostat

Munich, 12 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner SCHULZ

Counsel for the Defense of the Defendant  
SCHULZ

Copy.

Affidavit.

I, Hans BUTHARDT, born on 22 January 1900 at Hamburg, resident at Nachrodt/Vestehalle, have first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by giving a false affidavit. I state on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice, Auerberg, Germany.

I was a member of the SDAP from 1 May 1937 onwards and a member of the SA reserve from 1934 onwards.

As a former employee of the I.G. Farben plant at Aken, I definitely remember that Dr. BAKKE from the Aken, came to see the plant. All important workshops were shown to Herr BAKKE. Furthermore various technical problems connected with production were discussed. I do not quite remember the year of this visit: it was however probably 1938 or 1939.

Nachrodt, 13 December 1947

signed: Hans BUTHARDT

I hereby certify the above signature, affixed before me this day, to be that of the 1st. Insp. Hans BUTHARDT, Nachrodt/1, 111 Hagenstrasse, identified by identification card no 086310 FBG of the British Zone.

No. 428 of the document register for 1947

Leerlohn, 19 December 1947

(seal) signed Dr. Georg JOHANN  
Notary

DOCUMENT BOOK III, BURGIE  
BURGIE DOCUMENT No. 15

Costs:

Value: 3,000.-- RM	
Tax according to article 89 of Reich	
Tax Regulations	4.-- RM
Turnover tax	0.12 RM
total	<u>4.12 RM</u>

The totary: signed Dr. G. JOE BIEL

I hereby certify that the above is a correct copy of the original.

Muenberg, 19 January 1948

signed: Dr. Werner SCHULZ ST  
Counsel for the Defense of the  
Defendant BURGIE



Copy:  
Affidavit.

I, Hubert LUDWIG, born on 4 June 1896 at Fr. Holland, resident at Altenkirchen (Westerwald), Quangelstrasse 21, have first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by giving a false affidavit. I state on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal VI at the Palace of Justice Saarbrück, Germany.

My profession is Diplomingenieur (graduated engineer). I was a member of the NSDAP from 1 May 1933 onwards. Furthermore of the following affiliations of the NSDAP: SA.

I was employed by IG Farben as an engineer from 5 July 1921 to 13 April 1945. Among others I worked in the plant at Aken/Silbe which was built in 1934. In this plant magnesium was produced and, to a small extent, also used in subsequent processes. A major part of the production was destined for buyers named by the Reich Air Ministry. Consequently, the plant was obliged to enforce certain secrecy regulations. Prior to the beginning of the war - it may have been in 1937, however, I do not remember the exact date - Mr. Hermann S. RAKEN of the Aluminium Company of America, American Magnesium Corporation, who had been a correspondent of the IG for many years, came from America to pay a visit to Bitterfeld. Mr. RAKEN was interested in the developments in the field of magnesium. The people at Bitterfeld sent him to Aken to look at production and manufacturing methods. As chief engineer of Aken I was instructed by Dr. PISTOR and Dr. BUEHN to let him have full insight into the installations of the plant and its manufacturing methods and not to conceal anything from him. I was given to understand

that Mr. BAKEN was an influential person and that it was hoped, that as a result of his visit new business connections would be established in the United States.

Thereupon I showed the whole plant to Mr. BAKEN and explained everything to him. In spite of certain language difficulties we succeeded in understanding each other very well. Mr. BAKEN was given the opportunity of looking at the whole plant and he took advantage of it.

Following the inspection I invited Mr. BAKEN to a luncheon in our club-house; I also asked the leading officials of the plant to join us so as to give Mr. BAKEN an opportunity of interchanging ideas with the representatives of the other departments of the plant. There is a comprehensive entry in the plant's guest book about this visit.

I know that at that time Mr. BAKEN was staying in Germany for some considerable period and that, under Director von der Y's guidance, he had the opportunity of seeing other works too.

I remember also that in the spring of 1940 Russian experts paid a visit to Alken; that they, too, had to be shown everything, that they saw all magnesium plants and received detailed information on production and manufacture.

Altenkirchen, 18 November 1947. signed Hubert D'ORACK

Document Register No. 342/47

I certify the above signature - affixed before me this day - to be that of the engineer Hubert D'ORACK from Altenkirchen/Vestertwald, 31 Quangelstr., who is personally known to me.

Altenkirchen, 18 November 1947

signed: Karl R. RIFERATH  
Notary

seal:

Costs:

Valued 3,000 RM

Fee according to articles 144, 26, 39

Reich Fee Regulations

4. -- RM

signed: Karl R. RIFERATH  
Notary

DOCUMENT BOOK III, BUREAU  
BU-2-15 DOCUMENT No. 67

I certify that the above is a correct copy of the original  
document.

Thornberg, 5 January 1948

signed: Dr. Werner Sandert  
Counsel for the Defense of  
the Defendant BURGIS

Copy.

Affidavit.

1. I, Clifford J. ANDREAS, born on 26 July 1910 at Vienna, resident at Jed Homburg v.d.H., 3, Kantstrasse, have first been warned that I render myself liable to punishment by giving a false affidavit. I state on oath that my statement is true and was made in order to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice, Duerenber, Germany.

2. By decision of the Denazification Court Trennstein/Upper Bavaria, dated 12 December 1947, I was classified as a minor offender; the amnesty of Christmas 1946 applies to me.

3. I was employed by IG Farben from May 1928 until the beginning of the liquidation. My last post was that of a Prokurist. I am well informed on IG's connections with England, as regards magnesium, particularly with Major Ball of the firm P.A. Hughes & Co. Ltd., London. The period concerned was, according to what I saw and heard, approximately from the end of 1933 to the end of 1939 when I was called up. - On the occasion of various visits to England, of meetings in Germany as well as in the correspondence during that time, our English correspondents informed us repeatedly that the British Air Ministry took a great interest in the jointly owned part of the M.D.L. at Clifton-Junction and that in all negotiations concerning choice of sites, capacity etc. the British Air Ministry had been sounded by our English partners.

I do not know whether incendiary bombs or preliminary products were manufactured at Clifton-Junction. Being however to the transfer of our methods, which had been utilized for years, the requirements for pressing of casings

for incendiary bombs were fulfilled and it was easily possible for specialists to find appropriate mixtures on the basis of Mg-powder. The more so since there was a particularly close and friendly connection between the English licensee, the import firm of Hughes which looked after our interests in the Mg field in England, and the Bitterfeld IG group. In personal contacts at such meetings in Germany or England many points were discussed in addition to the official correspondence and this loyal frankness could be found in the whole hierarchy of the light metal sector up to the factory management, and broad-minded interpretation of agreements certainly sometimes prevailed over possible scruples connected with State Policy.

signed: Clifford J. ASHES

Bad Homburg v.d.H. 23 January 1948  
Clifford J. ASHES

Bad Homburg, 23 January 1948

Herr Clifford J. ASHES at Bad Homburg - personally known to me - executed above signature before me, which is hereby certified.

signed: KUNZELMEIER

Sotary

seal:

I certify that this is a literal and correct copy of above document.

Muenberg, 27 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Werner SCHUBERT

Counsel for the Defense  
of the defendant BURGIN



Copy.

Carbon copy.

8 January 1940

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft, Bitterfeld

Confidential!

To the  
Wehrmacht High Command  
Military Economy Staff  
c/o Colonel BLUM,

Berlin W 35

Tirpitzufer 72-76

13 January 1940

Subject: Magnesium Manufacture in the U.S.A.

We have been asked by our partners in the magnesium business, the Aluminium Company of America, New Kensington, to let them have the results of our experiments in developing a process for the thermic manufacture of magnesium, which would be particularly well suited to the American raw material situation. We are bound by contract, concluded with Aluminium Co. in 1931, and approved at the time by competent Wehrmacht authorities, to comply with this request. On account of the present political situation we feel we must briefly explain the position to you once more.

In the course of the systematic extension of our business, manufacture of magnesium, its alloys and all kinds of semi-finished products of such materials, over the world market, we came upon customs barriers closing off much of the large economic field of the US to imports of our products from Germany. Under this customs protection, the American firm Dow Chemical Company, Midland, was able to make rapid strides in development, as the sole manufacturer of magnesium in the US, forcing us to aim at manufacturing according to our process within American territory if we did not wish to give up our share of profits realized in the American market, and which were due to us for our technical

capabilities.

We looked for a suitable partner, and, having negotiated with other large companies who were interested such as Bohn Aluminium and Brass Corp., Ford Corp., etc., we concluded a contract with Aluminium Company of America, which is still the leading US firm in aluminium production, and we thus founded a joint company, the Magnesium Development Corporation, (holding company). Both partners, namely Alcoa and I.G., transferred all patent and invention rights, plus all experiences, knowledge and data for exploitation of these inventions in the American market, to this company.

As it proved impracticable to let this company take up production according to the said processes on its own, in 1933 the same partners founded a second company namely the American Magnesium Corporation; this company concerned itself exclusively with processing, buying its metal from the firm of Dow Chemical. Foreign exchange difficulties prevented I.G. from paying their share into the corporation at that stage, and the American I.G. advanced the money, giving I.G. an option for their shares. In 1937 the American I.G. made I.G. an offer to buy this option against payment of \$ 223,000.-, the dividends to be shared equally between the two after previous deduction of  $\frac{1}{2}$  p interest. Though it was considered at that time that there were very good openings in this field, I.G. accepted the offer in view of the German Foreign Currency Guarantee, and the American I.G. agreed to obtain I.G.'s approval when selling

their share. - Thus our interests in magnesium development are 50% of the Magnesium Development Corporation (holding company), and the financial participation in the proceeds of the American Magnesium Corporation (super-dividend).

However, the economic importance of the US market is such, that in spite of these reduced interests, we helped to increase magnesium alloy consumption in the US by keeping up a flow of technical suggestions and experiments. Above all we wanted to secure the still untapped source of income which the manufacture of magnesium by our process offered, through a license income according to the original agreement of 1931. The moment for this had come in spring 1938. Extensive negotiations for pertinent agreements were made on the occasion of the visit of leading Alcoa officials last summer. The present request for data is by way of being a continuation of this cooperation, which has entered an acute stage, especially since, in view of the increased consumption in the US, the above-mentioned rival firm Dow Chemical will more than double its present output.

If we do not keep the conditions of our contract now, the development in US magnesium business will nevertheless continue and will play entirely into the hands of Dow, whose position would become so strong, that he would represent serious competition for us in other export markets. If, on the other hand, we manage to secure a fair slice of the US requirements to our associated group, this danger is, to a great extent, avoided and besides, quite considerable compensations from our

DOCUMENT BOOK III, BURGIN  
BURGIN DOCUMENT No. 75

participation in the Magnesium Development Corporation are due to us, apart from the above-mentioned takings from the American Magnesium Corporation.

We now ask you to give your sanction, so that we may fulfil our contract obligations toward our American partners.

Heil Hitler!

I.G. FARBEINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

signed: BURGIS

signed: MOSCHEL

Certified A True Copy.

Munich, 27 January 1948

signed: Dr. Werner SCHULZET  
Counsel for the defendant  
BURGIN

Copy.

United States of America, :  
Commonwealth of Pennsylvania : ss.  
County of Allegheny

I, H. R. S. R. R. S., a citizen of the United States of America, born on September 13, 1892, in Caribault, Minnesota, U.S.A., now living in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, U.S.A., have first of all been advised that I will be liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I declare under oath that my statements are true and are made in order to be submitted as evidence to Military Tribunal VI, Luernberg, Germany, Palace of Justice.

I am Associate Director of Research, Aluminum Company of America and a Director of the American Magnesium Corporation.

I am familiar with the so-called "Alig" agreement of October 23, 1931, and the provision in Article 14 thereof restricting production of magnesium under certain patents mentioned in said agreement to 4,000 tons per annum as therein stated. This restriction was eliminated in 1933, when the so-called "Alig" agreement was amended, because the restriction served no useful purpose and was by us always considered far in excess of any contemplated production at that time and we had no reason to believe that the restriction provision would ever be invoked.

Dr. Ernst BUENIG was not present during the original negotiations of the Alig agreement nor during these negotiations as a result of which the agreement was amended, at which time the aforesaid provision restricting production to 4,000 tons per annum under the I.G. was rescinded.

It is my belief that I.G. Farbenindustrie fulfilled all of its obligations with respect to the delivery of knowhow, at least until the war broke out in 1939, and I have never heard any expression to the contrary by any of my associates.

I visited the I.G. Farbenindustrie magnesium plants and the plants of others manufacturing under license from I.G.



under their magnesium patents prior to the beginning of the war on three occasions, once in 1929, once in 1937 and during the summer of 1939. During my visits, particularly during the visits of 1937 and 1939, I was shown those plants in a fair and frank way and was given free access to all of the magnesium plants which I desired to see. Full information and technique concerning magnesium was made available to me in a frank and fair way. My last visit to Bitterfeld was in July of 1939.

Mr. Rollesen of our Company was also in Germany during the summer of 1939, at which time I.G. Farbenindustrie also arranged for Mr. Rollesen and me to visit the Kalle Die Casting Works located at Solibach, Stuttgart, Germany, where we spent two days and made an extensive visit through this large magnesium plant and all questions which we asked were answered in a frank and fair way.

To the best of my knowledge, Mr. Norton of our Company was never at Bitterfeld.

To the best of my recollection, Mr. HIGLER of the Bitterfeld Plant of I.G. Farbenindustrie was in the United States during the summer of 1938 and so far as is known to me that is the last trip that Mr. HIGLER made to the United States. I do not recall that Mr. HIGLER participated in the negotiations in connection with the "Alig" agreement, but on the occasion of my visits to Germany and his visit to this country he was helpful and contributed to us the benefit of his experiences in connection with magnesium. Sworn to and subscribed before me:

this 26th day of January: signed Herman S. BARNES  
1948.

signed: David L. BOLLING S.  
Notary Public

(seal)  
David S. Bollinger  
Pittsburgh  
Notary Public  
Allegheny Co.  
PENNSYLVANIA

(stamp)  
David S. Bollinger, Notary Public  
My Commission Expires  
January 2, 1951

State of Pennsylvania } ss.  
Allegheny County }

John J. McLean, Clerk of Court

(seal)  
Court of Quarter Sessions  
Allegheny County PA  
3454

I, John J. McLean, Clerk of the Court of Quarter Sessions in and for the County of Allegheny, in the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, the same being a Court of Law and Record, do by these presents Certify that David S. Bollinger Esquire, before whom the foregoing Affidavit was taken, and who has hereunto, in his own proper handwriting, subscribed his name, was at that time and is a Notary Public in and for said County of Allegheny, duly commissioned and sworn, and authorized by law of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania to take affidavits and acknowledgements of deeds for lands and real estate in said Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, and to all those acts as such due faith and credit are, and of right ought to be, given throughout the United States and elsewhere. And further, that I am acquainted with his handwriting, and verily believe the signature thereto to be his genuine signature.

I further certify that the foregoing Affidavit was taken in accordance with the laws of the State of Pennsylvania.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand and affixed the seal of the Court, at Pittsburgh this 26 day of January A.D. 1948.

signed: John J. McLean, Clerk  
Copy of Impression of Seal of Notary Public not  
required to be filed in this office  
John J. McLean, Clerk.

A Certified True Copy.

Warrenburg, 16 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner SCHUBERT  
Counsel for the Defendant SCHUBERT

## DOCUMENT BOOK III PURGIN

-----  
 CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION  
 -----

2 March 1948

We, HERMANN STERNFELD, MINICA ELL COO, ADOLF LIEBER, I  
 AUBREY AVEY, W.E. S.E. and ANNETTE JAC. SMEN, hereby certify  
 that we are duly appointed translators for the English and  
 German languages and that the above is a true and correct  
 translation of the Document Book III PURGIN.

pages I - VI

HERMANN STERNFELD  
ETC No. 35129

" 1 - 7

MINICA ELL COO  
ETC No. 20146

" 8 - 17

ADOLF LIEBER  
ETC No. 25967

38 - 44

54 - 62

" 63 - 69

AUBREY AVEY  
ETC No. 20116

71 - 76

86 - 101

27 - 37

" 73 - 78

W.E. S.E.  
ETC No. 6176

" 18 - 26

27 - 34

ANNETTE JAC. SMEN  
ETC No. 20146

" END "

Case 6  
Defense

Military Tribunal No. VI

- Case 6 -

Document Book IV

for

Dr. Ernst BURGIN

submitted by  
Attorney  
Dr. Werner SCHUBERT  
at present  
in Nurnberg

Young



# INDEX

to

## Document Book IV BURGON

Exhibit No.	Document No.	Document	Page
-	-	<u>Foreign publications about pioneer work of the I.G. Farben in the field of Magnesium.</u>	
76	-	Excerpt from the essay "The Magnesium Industry in Great Britain" by Major C.J.P. BALL, published in "Light Metals" in April 1938. The author describes, among other things, the development of Magnesium by German firms and Dr. PISTON's untiring work in this connection, patent rights of the I.G. given to English firms and the planning of the CLIFTON Junction factory by engineers of the I.G. in accordance with the latest experience gained in production.	1 - 5
77	-	Excerpt from the essay "The Progress of Magnesium and its Alloys in Britain 1924 to 1945" by Major C.J.P. BALL, published in Metallurgia in August 1945. From 1919 to 1935 Magnesium was imported into England mainly from Germany and the U.S.A.; a market for Magnesium and Magnesium alloys of the I.G. was developed in England. In 1935 the English firm HUGHES & Co. persuaded the I.G. to help the firm HUGHES in the construction of a factory in England. Up to the time of the completion of this construction MAGNESIUM ELECTRON LTD. bought Magnesium from Germany for the British Air Force which armed itself with this Magnesium and brought it back "literally as coals of fire on German heads". The British firm translated Adolf BECK's book "Magnesium and its Alloys" which was published in 1939 and depicted the latest stage of German scientific work in this respect. The participation of the MEE in the construction of the largest Magnesium factory in the U.S.A. is described, furthermore the British production of incendiary bomb casings (47,000,000 casings during the war) and the significance in connection with powder, of Magnesium and its alloys.	6-15
78	-	Excerpt from the essay "Outstanding Properties of the Magnesium-Zirconium Alloys" by Major C.J.P. BALL, copied from Metallurgia	



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

for

## EXHIBIT B-2 IV BURGESS

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
		January 1947. "The excerpt shows that in 1938 I.G. was trying out new Magnesium-Alloys and communicated their experiences to an English firm.	16 - 17
85		Excerpt from the book "WEL The Magazine of Magnesium Elektro III," Easter 1940, describing the friendly cooperation which existed between Englishmen and Germans while the Clifton Junction Plant was under construction.	18 - 21
17		Treatise "British Magnesium Production" from the English magazine "Engineering" dated 18 February 1944. The story deals with the technical processes of the 4 Magnesium-producing plants in Great Britain. The process of the firm which has the cheapest manufacture and which was founded in 1935, originates from an I.G. process. The production capacity of the British firms was increased greatly since 1936, and to a large extent subsidized by the British Government.	22 - 26
64		Excerpt from the book "Elektro" Magnesium-Alloys, 4th Edition, 1947. Letter of appreciation by the Defense Plant Corporation, Washington dated 1 August 1943, addressed to Major C. J. A. Hill in Clifton Junction, for his cooperation in planning and helping to construct the largest Magnesium plant in the world, in Las Vegas, Nevada, U.S.A.	27 - 31
70		Excerpt from the "Additional Report of the Special Committee Investigating the National Defense Program, Washington, 1944". In the report of the Committee, which was under the chairmanship of Harry C. TRUMAN, the 1941 agreement of 1941 is discussed, among other matters pertaining to development in the field of Magnesium in the U.S.A. The preliminary production restrictions of this agreement were lifted in 1939. This agreement only made the one-sided provision that I.G. should supply Alcoa with data obtained in the course of research. In the years prior to the war, U.S.A. firms constantly sold Magnesium abroad, among other countries, to Germany and Japan. Even in 1939, Magnesium was hardly used in the U.S.A. by either industry or the War or Naval Department; quite in contrast to the usages to which it was put in England and in Germany.	

TABLE OF CONTENTS  
for  
DOCUMENT BOOK IV BIERGIN

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
----------	----------	----------	------

Among the methods of production, the "Magnesium Elektron-process" is being specially grobed, which process the I.G. had already tried to introduce to the U.S.A. by means of the Lize-agreement. By virtue of the British License-holders of the I.G., the largest Magnesium plant in the U.S.A. was initiated during the construction and this plant's facilities of this project are being described in detail. A chart showing the sale of U.S. Magnesium abroad from 1921 to 1934 is attached.

92 - 98

DECLARATION

16 February 1943

We hereby certify that we are duly appointed translators for the German and English languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of the Document Book IV BIERGIN.

Gerdard FISCHER, Civ. No. 17 397, (Cover, page I)

.....

Ursula RUTMAN, Civ. No. 28 13, (page II - III)

.....

~~SECRET~~

## Light Metals

April 1938

75

(Sunstall: in Besitz der Vereinigten)

THE MAGNESIUM INDUSTRY IN GREAT BRITAIN

by Major C.J.P. BALL

Chairman of Magnesium Elektron, Ltd.

S.79 THE OUTSTANDING ADV. ASPECTS OF MAGNESIUM IN HIGH-TEMPERATURE  
CORROSION HAVE LED TO A RAPID DEVELOPMENT IN THE  
OF A SUBSTITUTION AND ALSO IN THE

Just 130 years ago (in 1808) an Englishman, Sir Humphrey Davy, succeeded in isolating a new element, magnesium, by reducing magnesium oxide with potassium vapour. Thus Great Britain became connected at a very early date with the magnesium industry. During the 30 years following, chemists whose names are well known to history, amongst them Bussy, Sonnet, Gay-Lussac and Deville, discovered methods by which magnesium could be isolated from the chloride.

Magnesium was first produced on an industrial scale in Paris, but towards the middle of the last century the famous concerns of Potellurists, Johnson Matthey and Co., Ltd., succeeded in manufacturing the metal at Patricroft, near Manchester. The reducing agent used in this work was sodium, to which  $\text{CaF}_2$  was added to facilitate agglomeration of the magnesium particles.

About the year 1896, two German companies, The Chemische Fabrik Griesheim-Elektron and Aluminium und Magnesium Fabrik in Hütten, worked out processes by which the production of magnesium on a commercial scale became possible. In their processes the metal was obtained by the electrolysis of molten chlorides. In the course of time the two companies merged, and the major task of overcoming the inherent problems of this molten-electrolysis

method was left in the capable hands of Dr. Pieter at the Bitterfeld Works of the Griesheim company.

#### DEVELOPMENT OF PROCESS

With great courage and tireless energy Dr. Pieter and his staff attacked the problems of improvement, process stabilisation and cost reduction, and finally, about 1926, succeeded in establishing the oxide process by which the greater part of the world's supply of magnesium metal is now produced. This oxide process is based upon the use of magnesium-oxide ore obtained by the calcination of magnesium carbonate, the magnesium oxide then being converted to anhydrous magnesium chloride for reduction in electrolytic cells.

.....

#### MAGNESIUM ELEKTROLIT ALLOYS

Between 1908 and 1920 the first magnesium base alloys, for which the trade mark "Elektron" was adopted, were developed in Germany by the Chemische Fabrik Griesheim Elektron. It is of interest to note that large quantities of Elektron magnesium alloys were used by the Germans during the war for the manufacture of munitions.

In view of the difficulties of avoiding extensive oxidation of the metal in melting, experiments for the working of these alloys were mainly confined to operations involving only elastic deformation. In spite of the very obvious advantages of the new metal, particularly in light weight and comparatively high strength, its industrial exploitation made slow headway, the reason being partly the high price of the metal and partly the low resistance to corrosion of the first alloys.

.....



# FURTHER DEVELOPMENTS

S.80.....

In 1925 a few large crankshafts and axles in Elektron were produced and tried out by important automobile-producing companies. By continuous research at Bitterfeld, in Germany, and at Coventry, in this country, methods were evolved which overcame in a satisfactory and economic manner the problem of protecting the metal against chemical action when in the molten condition, thus eliminating the risk of oxide and nitride inclusions and ensuring the production of sound ingots. Similarly, it was discovered how to avoid the dangers of oxidation inherent in the use of green-sand moulds.

Then in 1926 Dr. Bach, of Griseheim, discovered that the addition of manganese to Magnesium alloy greatly improved the corrosion-resisting properties of the alloy. By this time the Griseheim Co. had so improved its production methods that the metal produced by its electrolytic processes and refined by its new methods could be accurately described as "pure Magnesium."

It is interesting to note that an alloy of Magnesium containing 1.6 per cent. of manganese is probably the most corrosion-resistant Magnesium alloy yet known.

This progress gained the approval of the Air Ministry, which in 1926 issued a provisional specification, D.F.W. 59, for Elektron Magnesium alloy. In 1927 further advances were made in corrosion protection. These took the form of surface treatments and included the chromate dips which give that familiar golden-bronze finish by which Elektron Magnesium castings are usually recognized.



INDUSTRIAL EXPLOITATION

.....

The increased demand for Magnesium alloys had been materially supported by the ability of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.-G., the successors to the Kriesheim company, to supply at prices greatly below those prevailing in the early days of the industry, this resulting from the economies effected in the improved methods of electrolytic production.

As the demand for these alloys increased, licences were granted as follow: -

For castings: Birmingham Aluminium Casting (1903) Co., Ltd., Smethwick, Birmingham, in 1930; J. Stone and Col, Ltd., Westford, S.-E. 14, in 1934.

For wrought and forged products: James Booth and Co. (1915), Ltd., Wexhells, Birmingham, in 1931.

For sheet, sections and other wrought products: Birdetels, Ltd., Birmingham, in 1937.

F.A. Hughes and Co., Ltd., had, in 1928, given an undertaking to the British Government that as and when consumption warranted, the company would erect a plant for the manufacture of magnesium in this country. Consequently, in 1935 the Magnesium Elektro Co. was formed and a works site was acquired at Clifton Junction, near Manchester.

BRITISH PRODUCTION

.....

The plant itself was initially designed by the engineers of the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.-G., and incorporates the latest developments in production methods known to date. The process employed is the Oxide, magnesium oxide being converted to anhydrous magnesium chloride in electric

-5-

furnaces of special design. The anhydrous magnesium chloride is then fed into the electrolytic cells, metallic magnesium being liberated at the cathode and chlorine at the anode, this gas being recovered and reused in the process.

A large foundry equipped with the most modern labour-saving devices known to those handling large tonnages of magnesium has been erected and is now satisfactorily supplying ingots, billets, etc., to suit all requirements.

Rapid progress has been made with the erection of the plant, which produced its first metallic magnesium on December 12, 1936, the first British made Elektron alloys becoming available for distribution in January, 1937.

Continuous progress has been made and the plant has been largely extended, with the result that the quantities of Elektron alloys now being produced at the Clifton Junction Works are sufficient to meet present requirements of British consumers.

....

Die sorgfältige und richtige Abschrift des obigen Schriftstückes wird hiermit bescheinigt.

Munich, den 27. Januar 1948.

gez. Dr. Werner Schubert  
VERSTANDIGER DES KUNSTALBERGWERKS BUNAGIN.

ANZEIGE SUB:

THE

PROCESS OF MAGNESIUM AND ITS ALLOYS IN  
BRITAIN

1924 - 1945 by

Major G.J.P. BALL, D.S.O., M.D., F.R.Ne.S.  
Chairman: Magnesium Elektron Limited.  
Managing Director: F.W. Hughes & Co.Ltd.

Please circulate to your  
Design and Drawing Office  
staff:

Mr. ....  
Mr. ....  
Mr. ....  
Mr. ....  
Mr. ....

With the Compliments of:  
F.W. Hughes & Co., Ltd.  
Abbey House, Baker Street,  
London, W.1.

Reprinted from METALLURGIA, August, 1945.

(Fundstelle: Im Besitze der Verteidigung)

THE PROCESS OF MAGNESIUM AND ITS ALLOYS IN  
BRITAIN - 1924 - 1945

By Major G.J.P. Ball, D.S.O.,  
M.D., F.R.Ne.S.  
Chairman: Magnesium Elektron Limited,  
Managing Director: F.W. Hughes and Co., Ltd.

....

- S.2: The last war saw the erection of a small plant by Johnson Matthey and Vickers at Colverhampton to provide the magnesium powder required for flares and breachers, but the process employed was too costly to permit of the use of the materials for commercial purposes, and the material itself too unsatisfactory in its properties for engineers to use for constructional purposes; soon after the end of that war, therefore, the plant was closed down.
- From 1919 onwards till 1936 Britain imported most of its magnesium requirements, mainly from Germany, but

-2-

some from the Dow Company of America.

In 1920, F. A. Hughes and Co., Ltd., the parent company of Magnesium Elektron Limited, began to try to find a market in Britain for the magnesium and magnesium alloys produced by the I.G. Farbenindustrie, of Germany, the largest manufacturers of magnesium in Europe. The road was long and hard. At that time the magnesium alloys then available were still too subject to corrosion. No technical books or data were available for designers, and fabricators in the wrought or cast field had little, if any, knowledge of the special techniques required to produce sound and satisfactory wrought or cast materials for consumers. To engineers generally magnesium was almost an unknown material, and unlikely to be of interest to them in their construction problems.

With the object of improving this position and placing available information in a practical form at the disposal of engineers and fabricators, Hughes began to collect data to prepare a technical handbook. Meantime, substantial progress had been made by I.G. in improving its magnesium alloys and technique of fabrication, and in lowering the initial cost of the metal. In England, Hughes had been greatly assisted in the cast field by the support of and work done by Mr. D. Player, managing director of Sterling Metals, Ltd., light alloy founders, of Coventry.

.....

- S.3: The Finance Act of 1928 passed Regulations licensing motor-transport vehicles by weights, and as a result all users and manufacturers of heavy vehicles sought to reduce unsprung weight. This resulted in a large demand



-3-

for castings, such as oven cases, gear boxes, back axle castings, etc. The castings were sold at prices per piece which compared favourably with those then ruling for aluminium.

Licensing weight restrictions on transport vehicles were not an unmixd evil. The necessity for lightening the dead weight referred to above inevitably resulted in better running efficiency, exemplified by longer tyre life, higher braking efficiency, lower fuel consumption, etc., or conversely, by heavier pay loads. These improvements in performance, of undoubted and important advantage to all transport operators, were obtained by making free use of the ultra light "Elektron" magnesium alloys in the construction of the vehicle.

Sales grew steadily and in 1934 Hughes published the second edition of its technical handbook.

#### PRODUCTION FROM THE ORES

By 1935 Hughes' sales of pure magnesium and Elektron alloys had reached a figure of around 100 tons per month, which appeared to warrant the erection of a metal extraction plant, and in view of the "red light" showing politically in Germany, and the vital need for magnesium production in Britain, Hughes decided to try to persuade I.I.S. (Imperial Industries) to assist them to build a plant in England to extract the metal from its ores.

Magnesium Elektron Limited, with a capital of £ 400,000 was formed by Hughes for this purpose, and proceeded to arrange to purchase outright all the

8.4:



-4-

patents and "know how" of the I.G. for the magnesium field within the British Empire.

A site was found at Clifton Junction, near Manchester, and contracts arranged for supply of electric power, chlorine and magnesite at prices which compared reasonably well with those of the I.G. and capital provided to buy the patents, processes and "know how" from I.G. for the British Empire, and to erect and operate a plant of capacity of 1,500 tons of magnesium metal per annum.

Work was started in March, 1936, and the first metal was produced in December, 1936; the magnitude of this undertaking can be gauged from the fact that it involved the expenditure within the period named of about £ 250,000.

H.M. Air Ministry shortly thereafter instructed H.C.I. immediately to extend its plant by 2,500 tons annual capacity, the Government providing the capital, and H.C.I. leasing and operating the plant. Using the facilities and staff of I.C.I., work was commenced in January, 1937, and the new extension which cost approximately £ 475,000 started production in January, 1938.

During this period Hughes, at the request of the Air Ministry negotiated the purchase of 4,250 tons of magnesium from Germany for our own R.A.F. re-armament programme and most of this was delivered from shadow factories of the German Government re-armament programme. It is now interesting to recall that this material was converted into: (a) incendiary bombs and (b) the aircraft that carried them was later returned by the R.A.F. literally as "coals of fire on German heads."

-5-

In 1936, Hurex Limited commenced production of magnesium metal by a thermal process using calcium carbide as a reducing agent. This plant was to have a capacity of 1,000 tons per annum, later increased to 2,000. During the period 1936 and 1938, the Magnesium Metal Corporation were erecting a plant to operate a carbo-thermic process at Swansea, but owing to technical problems with the plant and process production was slow in commencing.

In 1937 Hughes issued a 3rd edition of the Handbook. In the same year the Department for Scientific and Industrial Research issued a valuable monograph, "Magnesium and Its Alloys," by Mr. J.L. Haughton and W.E. Prytherch.

Between 1939-40, realising the increasing need of designers and engineers for authoritative information and data about magnesium and its alloys, the technical staffs of F.W. Hughes and Co., Ltd. and Magnesium Elektron Limited translated and published with comments Adolf Bock's "Magnesium und seine Legierungen (Technology of Magnesium and its Alloys)" a work which contained most of the German technique available at that time. In 1944 Bullen and Prytherch's "Metallographie des Magnesiums und seiner technischen Legierungen (Metallography of Magnesium and its Alloys)" was similarly translated and published.

.....

Realising that war with a Continental power would probably prevent any importation of magnesite from Greece, in 1937 M.E.L. sought the co-operation of British Periodicals in solving the problem of extracting magnesite

-6-

(MgO) from dolomite deposits in Britain.

The problem was solved successfully and the first supplies of magnesia for magnesium extraction were recovered from dolomite and sea-water in 1936. Despite U.S. claims, M.B.I. first extracted magnesium metal from the sea and thus made the British magnesium industry independent of supplies of imported raw materials.

The vital importance to Britain of this success cannot be too heavily stressed because it makes available for Britain's future air fleets unlimited supplies of magnesium metal, the lightest of all materials available to aircraft constructors.

S. 5: In 1940, because of the acute world shortage of magnesium and its alloys the following additional productive capacity was authorized by the Ministry of Aircraft Production to be built as shadow factories as rapidly as possible: -

- (1) M.B.I. was instructed to build additional plant to produce 5,000 tons per annum at Clifton Junction.
- (2) Marox Limited was instructed to produce 5,000 tons per annum at Moss End.
- (3) International Alloys Limited, with a new thermal distillation process using aluminium ferro-silicon reducing agent, was instructed to produce 5,000 tons near Cardiff.

All three plants were intended to come into production in early 1941 as supplies of magnesium alloys were urgently needed to meet H.A.F. expanded requirements of aero engines and air frames, aircraft landing wheels, incendiary bombs, and magnesium powders

-7-

for Flores and tracer ammunition.

These extensions actually reached full operation approximately as follows: -

M.E.L. . . . . 1941  
 Hurox . . . . . 1942  
 International Alloys . 1943

In 1941 Magnesium Elektron Limited was requested by the U.S. Government to design, build, train the operating staff for, and bring into operation, a magnesium metal and alloy production plant near Boulder Dam in the State of Nevada making use of the cheap power available from Boulder Dam and Magnesite deposits at Gabbs. The largest Magnesium production unit in the world, designed to produce 50,000 tons per annum of metal alloys was built under M.E.L. technical direction, and produced its first metal in the astonishingly short period of ten months from the day the ground was broken. This was a great feat of rapid construction in a desert country. Under the direction of Basic Magnesium Inc., a company controlled by the well-known Anaconda Copper Mining Company, the plant operated successfully and ran throughout its life at roughly 10% above estimates. It produced nearly 50,000 tons of metal and alloys was then shut down by the U.S. authorities because production exceeded demand. A general view of this huge plant is reproduced in Fig. 3. THIS WAS A MAJOR CONTRIBUTION BY BRITAIN TO THE UNITED STATES WAR EFFORT.

In 1942-3 Magnesium Elektron Limited designed, built and operated a 10,000 tons production plant at Lowerhouse, near Burnley, for M.E.L. The completion of this unit brought the total possible production of



-8-

magnesium metal in Britain to around 33,000 tons annual capacity.

.....

# FABRICATION

.....

S. 6: By far the largest proportion of magnesium fabricated parts, produced in Britain during the war for the R.A.F. and other services (a proportion believed to exceed 80% of the whole) was supplied by the "Elektron Group" consisting of Magnesium Elektron Limited, and its licensees, Messrs. Sterling Metals Ltd., Birmingham Aluminium Casting (1903) Co., Ltd., James Booth and Co. Ltd., J. Stone and Co. Ltd.; Birme-  
tals Ltd., in addition L. A. Rimbold and Co. Ltd. were users of the Elektron Trade Mark, and Essex Aero Ltd. mainly used Elektron alloys in their constructions.

Other companies who fabricated magnesium alloy castings were: -

Magnesium Castings and Products Ltd.,  
Aeroplane and Motor Aluminium Castings Co.,  
Ltd.,  
Magna Products Limited,  
Leyland Motors Limited,  
Airedale Light Alloys Ltd.  
Kent Alloys Ltd.

In his address to the shareholders of British Industries Mr. Cyril Maudeley, the chairman, gave the following interesting figures: "Our Elektron magnesium foundries, the largest in the country, have worked under high pressure, producing 16,079 tons of Elektron castings for aero engine and aeroplane constructors from their sand foundries alone, added to which they made 4,247 tons of gravity and pressure die castings, giving a grand total of magnesium Elektron castings in all forms



-9-

of 20,326 tons- a great achievement when it is remembered that magnesium, weight for weight, is four times the bulk of steel.

This leads me to the mention of one service in which our Group was pre-eminent-I allude to the supply of aircraft landing wheels to the extent of 98% of the total requirements of the British Aviation Industry. Of these, Sterling Metals made approximately 700,000 and Birmingham Aluminium casting 230,000, giving a grand total of 930,000 landing wheels, with practically no service failures under the most severe conditions. Another striking contribution was the supply by Birm and Sterling Companies of 47,000,000 of pressed incendiary bomb castings during the war period, at a peak production rate of over 2,000,000 per month.

Here I would like to make some special remarks on Elektron magnesium. It can be said that, in the national interest, there should be a wide expansion in the post-war world in the use of magnesium alloys. It cannot be too often pointed out that magnesium is the only engineering constructional metal in which this country is, and can be, WHOLLY SELF-SUFFICIENT. This can be said of no other metal in extensive use. The use of Elektron magnesium is of the first importance in all forms of transport where the power weight ratio is a serious factor."

.....

S. 7: Before the commercial usage of Elektron magnesium alloys was prohibited by the Air Ministry, because all supplies were required for the R.A.F., these alloys were being employed successfully for a wide variety of purposes:

-10-

"In the private car, motor-bicycle and heavy vehicle industry for parts and pieces of all kinds, gear, crank, axle, oil, pump, etc."

In the aircraft industry for engine parts and accessories, for landing wheels, for welded petrol and oil tanks, for cabin furniture (tubes), for fairings and cowlings.

In the electrical industries for parts of motors, trams and buses, with the object of achieving improvement in the power: weight ratio with an increase in acceleration and maximum dry load.

In the machine tool industry for portable tools, reamers, compressors, and various parts of machine tools and welding sets.

In the textile industry for high-speed moving parts of standard weaving and knitting machines.

In the wireless industry for portable receiving sets and mobile transmitters.

In the scientific industries for field glasses, cameras, surgical and optical instruments.

For industrial and household equipment, such as air conditioning, conveyors, elevators, excavating equipment, foundry equipment, hoists, oil mill equipment, scaffolds, furniture, office equipment, photographic and printing equipment, business machines, ladders, lawn mowers, sporting goods and toys."

.....

- - - -

Die fortgesetzte und richtige Abschrift des obigen Schriftstückes wird hiemit beschwätet.

Murnberg, den 25. Januar 1948.

gez. Dr. Werner Schubert  
Verteidiger des Angeklagten BUL. GIL.

ABSTRACT ENG:

OUTSTANDING PROBLEMS OF THE  
MAGNESIUM-ZIRCONIUM ALLOYS

by Major C.J.P. Bell, D.S.O., M.C., F.R.M.S.

Reprinted from "Metallurgia"  
Vol. 35 No. 207-8 Jan. and Feb. 1947

(Fundstelle: Im Besitze der Vert. id. lang)

S.5

SUMMARY OF FACTS

It is a most interesting commentary upon the magnitude of the problems involved that although magnesium alloys have been accepted as engineering materials for more than twenty years, yet, during the whole of that period, scarcely any new alloys of outstanding merit have been discovered and developed. It is certainly not for want of trying, as the patents in all countries, both past and present, clearly indicate; but, as few of the new ideas have proved successful in practice, the alloy systems in general use remain the magnesium-aluminum-zinc series, and the magnesium-manganese series, sometimes with third or fourth elements added.

Experimental research by I. J. Ferbentindes in 1935 and 1939 disclosed to M.I.I., that zirconium used as an alloying element conferred to extruded a most intensive grain-refining effect on magnesium. For example, the grain size of ordinary pure magnesium when chill cast can vary from say 2 mm. to a much greater size, while the same metal containing an effective zirconium addition of 0.55%, in the case of the very massive chill casting shown in Fig. 3 having dimensions approximately 70 in. x 20 in. x 20 in., will have a grain size of 0.05 mm. to 0.15 mm. It was soon found that this grain

S.6

-2-

refining effect can be further intensified by the addition of other alloying elements at the same time as zirconium. For example, the grain size of an alloy containing about 0.65% zirconium and 4% zinc in the chill cast form would be about 0.03 mm.

Although I.G. had made the initial discovery, they found that the problems of effectively and economically introducing zirconium into magnesium alloys were not easily to be solved, and early in 1939 they dropped all work on the subject and recommended K.W.L. to do the same. Experimental lots of I.G. zirconium alloys were brought to England by K.W.L. in 1935 and 1936, but the lack of effective fabricating technique prevented successful usage consumers.

Because the results of these early experiments appeared to support the belief that the physical and mechanical properties of magnesium alloys could be greatly improved by reduction in grain size, and disclosed that the zirconium alloys might provide, in both the wrought and cast states, considerably higher proof and ultimate stresses with good elongations, then were so far obtainable with the known magnesium-base alloys, K.W.L. decided to disregard I.G.'s advice, and to continue to try to solve this most interesting problem.

.....

- - -

Die fortgetriebene und richtige Abschrift des obigen Schriftstücks wird hiemit bescholmigt.

Munich, den 29. Januar 1948.

gez. Dr. Werner Schubert  
Verteidiger des Angeklagten BUNGLIN.



RUSSUS BUS:

S.3

1. APRIL 1939

N.L. MAGAZINE

INTERNATIONAL REVIEW OF LIFE,

CLIFTON JUNCTION

No. 2

Easter, 1939

(Fundstelle: Im Besitze der Verteidigung)

Three years ago there was no magnesium factory at Clifton Junction-the site was nothing but a wilderness, rank with weeds and unkempt bushes amongst which stood a few dilapidated buildings !

.....

The development, under the direction of Major Bell, of the market for magnesium alloys in this country to a degree which justified the erection of our works is in itself a remarkable story. We hope one day our Chairman will tell it through the medium of these columns, for it is the story of the teamwork which went into the digging of the foundations on which N.L. is built.

.....

But by far the most outstanding feature of the erection of this works was the happy, friendly co-operation between the men of two nations who built it and got it into production. For those who envisioned it, be they consultants, engineers, chemists, fitters or boilermakers - German or English-the spirit of friendliness and understanding which ran through work and play at that time will never be forgotten. When the job was finished it was not merely a factory which had been built -it was a monument-a concrete example of what can be achieved



-2-

by true international co-operation in an atmosphere of harmony and friendliness. As such, its significance extends far beyond the boundaries of the site, beyond even the boundaries set by nature and language into the realm of factors which control relations between nations. May the example never be forgotten.

THE LION.

THE BIRTH OF E. T. L.

S.11

By H. J. L. L.

.....

There came a time when the usage of "Elektron" in England had developed to an extent that justified the creation of a word for the production of the permanent metal and its alloys. That stage about the end of 1934 - coincided with the arrival at Abbey House of the writer of these notes in which an attempt is made to give some idea of the initial developments of the company leading up to the creation of the Clifton Junction factory.

.....

That, in a tangible sense, was the beginning of the Clifton Junction factory but many succeeding visits were held and many difficult negotiations carried through before the site was finally taken over by E. T. L. Friendly and very helpful men of that period were Messrs. Fritz, Smith, Leslie, Adams, Dennis, Watkinson, Roberts, Owsen, Leslie, Ogden and Thomas and many others. Our German friends, Dr. Pistor, Dr. Loeschel, Herron Von der Golt, Kasper and others also gave invaluable advice based on their first-hand experience, and were very active in planning the first

-5-

real British magnesium plant.

S.12

H. E. L. RIGGS Off

By Mr. J. A. CHAMBERS

S.13 THE PIONEERS

.....

Mr. Friedlich arrived with a number of officials. At that time he wore a bandage over one eye which was troubling him. He eyed each other, probably each thinking, "So that's the bloke I've to work with!" No soon

S.14 became good friends and were working happily together, he attempted to improve my German and I his English.

.....

Tschnitz, Johann, and Egon came over and so began to organize our construction squads; copper-work was taken in hand, wire-work and machinery installed - not forgetting the "Redlars!"

.....

Soon a start was made on cell lining and chlorinator brickwork. Some consternation being caused by the unusual practice of bricklaying on three shifts.

About now Mr. Schill came down to Lancaster from London and continued to push out the work quicker than Contractors could supply.

.....

S.15 The co-operation, advice and practical help by our German friends is most valued by all our staff who worked so hard and interestedly to give us, three years after the first outbreak, this huge 40,000 ton factory.

-4-

It was good fun in those early days, little rest,  
plenty of rushing about and not - happy memories.

\*\*\*\*\*

Die fortgetragene und wichtige Abschrift des  
oben in Schriftstücken wird hiermit bescheinigt.

Buchh. Nr. 65, den 11. Februar 1946.

Prof. Dr. Johann Schubert  
Wirt 1611, den 11. Februar 1946.

-4-

It was good fun in those early days, little rest,  
plenty of rushing about, and now - happy memories.

\*\*\*\*\*

Die wortgetreue und wichtige Abschrift des  
oben in Schriftstucke wird hiermit bescheinigt.

Muenchen, den 11. Februar 1948.

gez. Dr. Werner Schubert  
Wirt 1613, den 11. Februar 1948.

Auszug aus:

S.131

ENGINEERING  
 Friday, February 18, 1944.  
 Vol.167 No.4e75.

(Fundstelle: Befindet sich im Besitz der  
 Verteidigung)

## BRITISH MAGNIFICENT PRODUCTION.

It is axiomatic that war is wasteful, and a matter of common observation that, as the processes of waging war become more and more scientific and even, in points of detail, scientifically precise, so does the waste assume ever more colossal proportions. Nevertheless, this inescapable fact is no argument against the pursuit of efficiency in the many processes which, in these days, are pressed into the service of war organisations; for the efficiency of production may exercise a crucial and deciding influence on the ability of one or another of the contestants to press the conflict to a conclusion and, in any case, bears a direct relation to the quantity in which armaments may be provided and the speed with which losses can be made good. In particular do the speed and quantity of production become significant when the nation concerned has been caught, relatively unprepared for war and must, as it were, fight off a well-armed assailant with one hand while forging new weapons with the other. Such has been the position of Britain from the outset of the present struggle, and, for that reason, many, who might have been inclined to criticise severely the situation disclosed in the recent report (Second Report



-2-

from the Select Committee on National Expenditure, Session 1943-44: Production of Magnesium and Magnesite. London: H.M. Stationery Office. (Price 2d.net.) ) of the Select Committee on National Expenditure on the production of magnesium and magnesite in this country, may be disposed to admit that, unsatisfactory as are some of the disclosures from the point of view of the expenditure of money, time, materials and labour, there may be extenuating circumstances to be taken into account in determining any absolute levels of blame or thinness.

Magnesium is used, as the report observes, in the production of aircraft and aero engines, and in the manufacture of incendiary bombs, etc.; and it is produced in this country by four firms, each employing a different process. The names of the firms are not mentioned, and though it would not be difficult to identify three of them- if not all four- from internal evidence and published works of reference, it is convenient as well as discreet to adopt the indicating letters by which they are designated in the report. "Firm A," since 1935, uses a process which it had developed before that date, and which required a large gas supply and employs calcium carbide as the reducing agent. In the six months ended September 30, 1943, it produced magnesium at a cost of 3s.1ed. a pound in its own factory and 4s.3d. a pound in another factory which it operated on behalf of the Ministry of Aircraft Production.

"Firm B" was formed in 1935 to operate an electrolytic process, the British Empire rights of

which were acquired from the I.G. Farbenindustrie A.G. This process requires "a very large supply" of electric power, chlorine, small ("pellet") coal, and peat, and is used also in the United States; the report adds, the largest magnesium plant in the world is now producing in excess of its rated capacity. During the same accounting period as in the case of Firm A., Firm B produced magnesium at a cost of 1s.7d. a pound. Firm C operates a plant using aluminium powder as the reducing agent, though designed to use ferro-silicon aluminium. The process was acquired from a French source in 1936, when it was still only in the experimental stage. It has since been brought into use on a production scale and shows an average production cost of 3s.11d. a pound.

Firm D's process uses carbon, in the form of anthracite waste, as the reducing agent, and acquired the patent rights for the British Empire from an American corporation in 1936. Development has been slow and the plant is not yet on a regular production basis, but it is believed that, when a substantial output is achieved, the cost will be of the order of 1s.6d. a pound. It is stated that, in the United States, a process based on the same patents, but using natural gas instead of hydrogen, is producing on a large scale. The method produces magnesium in the form of a dust which can be handled only in a hydrogen (or natural gas) atmosphere, and redistillation is necessary to enable the metal to be cast into ingots.

Until 1935, British magnesium requirements

-4-

were met entirely by importation, mainly from Germany; and in 1936, when the expansion of the Royal Air Force began, only one small plant, operated by Firm A, was actually producing the metal in this country, though another small factory, which commenced production in December, 1936, was under construction by Firm B. At about the latter date, the Air Ministry authorized Firm B to triple its capacity at the Government's expense; this was done, and the enlarged plant began to produce magnesium in January, 1938. In 1937, Firm A made a small extension of their plant at their own expense. When war broke out in September, 1939, Firm B was instructed to work to full capacity and entered into an agreement with Firm A, whereby the latter firm extended their plant by 50 per cent, the Government providing the equipment and the necessary buildings; but this extension was not in full operation until February, 1941. Firms C and D were still not in a position to produce the metal in quantity.

In April, 1940, it was borne in upon the Government that the output was insufficient to meet even the aircraft building programme, and Firm B was instructed to find sites for three large-scale factories and to put in hand the construction of one of them. A couple of months later, "the then Minister of Aircraft Production" (presently, Lord Beaverbrook) decided that Firm A should provide the second factory, and Firm C the third, though, at that time, the process adopted by the last-named firm had not been proved on

-5-

a production scale. Firm A's new factory came into full operation in July, 1942, but that of Firm C, not until the end of 1943. Further extensions of capacity were planned, but were abandoned in favour of imported supplies from Canada. Meanwhile, however, the United States had come into the war and had made plans for a great increase of magnesium production in that country; which, incidentally, set a total production in 1939 of 2,410 short tons. Germany's output in the same year was estimated at 12,000 metric tons - more than half the world production.

4.132

Continuing research on incendiary bombs enabled the magnesium content to be reduced considerably, and this factor, combined with the great increase of American production, resulted in the excessive capacity of Britain and the United States exceeding the probable demand. It was decided, therefore, to close down part of the British plant, the first factory selected being the shadow factory operated by Firm A, as this had the highest production cost and used substantial quantities of imported materials. The firm was notified accordingly; but, in September, 1943, on the recommendation of the Ministry of Labour, it was decided to close the firm's own factory and to restrict the shadow factory to two-fifths of its capacity. In December, it was decided to close the works of Firm C.

The foregoing is a brief outline of the history of magnesium production in this country during the war years, but the report also is also with three other firms, designated B, F and G, concerned in the production of



-6-

magnesia, the raw material from which the metal is obtained. Before the war, it is stated, the requisite supplies of magnesia were obtained almost entirely by extracting magnesite, which was imported from Austria, Greece, India and Manchuria. Since the outbreak of war, it has been made mainly from materials obtained within the British Isles. Firm E, on the initiative of the steel industry, which uses magnesia as a refractory, had built a plant for extracting it from sea water, using dolomite for precipitation. Firm F had a pilot plant, using lime; and Firm G was concerned only with the production of high-grade pharmaceutical magnesia. A considerable expansion of capacity has decided upon by the Government, and new factories were built, to be operated by these three firms. The output by Firm E, using their own process, appears to have been satisfactory, but the operations of the factory and process by Firm F cannot be so regarded, if only on a financial basis. The cost of the plant, originally estimated at 300,000 l., actually reached some 1,600,000 l.; production was still only at half the rated output in the quarter ended September 30, 1943; and the cost of the product per ton, originally expected to be 5 l. 10 s. 6 d., at that time, 24 l. 12 s. 5 d.

The Select Committee inclined to discount the arguments of the Ministry of Labour, which led to the decision to retain Firm A's shadow factory at two-fifths output, and recommend that it should be closed in view of its high production costs; but the validity of those arguments can hardly be judged by anyone who is not in



-7-

possession of the full facts. The Committee's comments on the closing of the factory operated by Firm A, however, are clear cut and emphatic. They point out that this factory is to be closed on the ground that its output is no longer required, but express the opinion that "the truth of the matter is, it should never have been built on its present scale, "because, when it was ordered in May, 1940, the process had never reached the stage of commercial production. The Ministry of Aircraft Production estimated that the expenditure on this plant, to October 11, 1943, was 850,000 L.; on which the Committee comment that, "so far as the taxpayer is concerned, a large proportion of this expenditure must be written off as a sheer loss." Similar criticisms are applied to the plant of Firm B, though this was much smaller.

On the evidence of the report alone, it would seem that the real blame for this waste must belong to a fairly high administrative level; in the first place, because "in spite of repeated warnings from the industry it was not until April, 1940, that it became known to the Government that there was not sufficient tonnage even, to meet the needs of the increased aircraft programme," let alone the bombs that the aircraft were to carry; and, secondly, because of the obvious failure of the much-loaded co-ordinating organisation, which should have been capable of seeing, or, at any rate, of trying to ensure, that aircraft were not ordered to be built of materials which were not obtainable. In short, the basic difficulty seems to have been that the scale of modern warfare requires supervision in greater numbers than the more leisurely

-8-

teme of peace officers to produce; and that, when men who are less than "super" are given almost absolute authority to order large-scale plant "straight off the drawing board," large-scale mistakes are inevitable.

-----  
Die Hoytgetraue und fiktive Abschrift des obigen Schriftstückes bescheinigt.

Hamburg, den 21. Januar 194

gez. Dr. Werner Schubert  
Verteidiger des Angeklagten BU 413

LETTER CASE:

"ELECTRON"  
Registered Trade Mark

TRADE MARKS AND ALLOYS

THE  
Compiled for the use of Engineers and  
Designers

by

The Producers, Suppliers & Manufacturers of Electron  
Alloys

(Fundstellen: In Beilagen der Westdeutschen)

\$,24 D. 157 ALLOY CORPORATION WASHINGTON

S. H. HUBBARD  
President

August 1, 1943

Major C. J. P. Bell  
Francium Electron Ltd.  
Clifton Junction  
St. Helens, England

Dear Major Bell:

The magnesium plant located at Las Vegas,  
Nevada and owned by Defense Plant Corporation, has  
now come into full production. We are pleased to  
note that the results of the first month's full  
production operations indicate that the plant will  
produce at the rate of 120,000,000 pounds per year,  
which is about 8% in excess of its rated capacity.  
Thus it is the largest magnesium plant in the world.

You and your associates played a large part  
in designing and bringing this plant to completion  
and are to be congratulated on this contribution to

-2-

the joint effort of the United Nations.

Sincerely yours,

Gen. Sir H. R. D. S. J. J. J.

Gen. H. R. D. S. J. J. J.

President

FO 21-Lokument  
EUY  
BU 21-Lokument  
21-Lokument  
21-Lokument

-----

Wie Sie sehen, ist die folgende Abschrift des  
obigen Schriftstückes mit der hier beschriebenen

Kurze, am 11. Februar 1948.

Gen. Sir H. R. D. S. J. J. J.  
Vertreter der englischen BU GIL.

BUCHSIN 203:

78th Congress) (Report No. 10  
2d Session) S. 247 (Part 17)

INVESTIGATION OF THE NATIONAL  
DEFENSE PROGRAM

-----

ADDITIONAL REPORT

of the  
SPECIAL COMMITTEE INVESTIGATING THE  
NATIONAL DEFENSE PROGRAM

Pursuant to

S. Res. 71 (77th Congress,  
and S. Res. 5, 78th Congress)

Resolutions authorizing and directing  
an investigation of the National Defense  
Program

-----  
LEGISLATION  
-----

March 15 (Legislative Day February 7), 1944,-  
Ordered to be printed

-----

United States  
Government Printing Office  
Washington: 1944

SPECIAL COMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE THE NATIONAL DEFENSE  
PROGRAM

Harry S. Truman, Missouri, Chairman

Tom Connally, Texas      Owen Brewster, Maine  
James A. East, New York      Harold H. Burton, Ohio  
Don C. Wallgren, Washington      Joseph R. Ball, Minnesota  
Carl A. Hatch, New Mexico      Homer Ferguson, Michigan  
Harley M. Kilgore, West Virginia

Hugh Fulton, Chief Counsel

(Fundstelle: In Besitze der Verteidigung)



-2-

S.1 76th Congress) SER. 13 (Part 10  
2d Session ) (Part 17)

INVESTIGATION OF THE NATIONAL DEFENSE PROGRAM

March 13 (Legislative Day February 7),  
1944-Ordered to be printed

Mr. THOMAS (for Mr. H. L. HART) from the Special  
Committee to Investigate the National Defense  
Program, submitted the following

ADDITIONAL REPORT

(Pursuant to S. Res. 71, 77th Cong., and  
S. Res. 6, 78th Cong.)

S.2

MAGNESIUM DEVELOPMENT BEFORE AND AFTER THE WAR

Prior to the First World War, there was very  
little production of magnesium because it was a difficult  
metal to produce and very serious problems existed with  
respect to its fabrication.

S.3

The scarcity of copper and aluminum and other  
critical materials in Germany during the last World  
War afforded an artificial stimulus to the production of  
magnesium and its use as a structural metal. After the  
war, Germany continued to make progress with respect to  
magnesium, and in 1939 produced 16,500 tons, compared to  
only 3,350 tons produced in the United States, of which  
2,100 tons were exported from the United States, mostly  
to England.

I. G. Farben Co. of Germany in 1931 entered into an  
agreement (a license agreement) with Aluminum Co. of America  
(Alcoa), by the terms of which the Magnesium Development  
Corporation was formed, to which both Alcoa and I. G. Farben  
assigned both their production and fabrication patents.  
Alcoa was the owner of the American Magnesium Corporation,

-3-

which, together with the Dow Chemical Co. (Dow Chemical), had been the only producers of magnesium in the United States.

Alcoa states that American Magnesium and Alcoa had lost over a million dollars in trying to promote magnesium and in trying to produce it at a cost competitive with Dow Chemical's cost. Both Dow Chemical and Alcoa point out that American Magnesium Corporation ceased producing magnesium in 1927 solely because it could buy its requirements cheaper from Dow Chemical than it could produce them, and that there was no agreement by American Magnesium Corporation or by Alcoa not to resume production if it should become advantageous to do so.

Dow Chemical had pioneered in a new field to learn how to produce and fabricate magnesium and consistently had incurred losses in every year except 1927 (the profit then was only 1 percent), because the high cost of production and the very limited market in those early years made it impossible to make a commercial profit. These losses aggregated over a million dollars, but a portion of them would have been incurred whether Dow Chemical produced any magnesium or not. For example, magnesium was properly charged with part of the cost of operating the brine wells, which would have had to have been operated anyhow. If fact, if magnesium had not been produced from the magnesium chloride, it could have been necessary for Dow Chemical to have incurred expense in order to dispose of it without polluting the river. Similarly, magnesium was charged with cost of the sales and

-4-

administrative expense of Dow Chemical and a very large part of that, such as the overhead for the sales organization and the salaries of the principal officials of the company would have had to be paid anyhow. Also, the loss on magnesium was deducted from the profit made on other products such as bromine, and thereby reduced the amount of profits on which taxes had to be paid.

However, the scientific interest displayed by Dow Chemical in the future commercial possibilities of the metal was of great importance in the development of metal. Without that interest the production of magnesium in the United States might not have been as great. Dow Chemical conducted its experimental and development work under handicaps, and together with Alcoa has pointed out that the armed services, particularly the Navy, were unwilling to use magnesium until Dow Chemical and Alcoa had borne the burden of proving beyond question that it could safely be used. However, in this connection, Rear Admiral Cook, Chief  
S.4 of the Bureau of Aeronautics, on April 27, 1939, informed Dr. Dow that the failure to use more magnesium alloys in naval aircraft was due in part to the fact that -

Research on alloying this light element has lagged in comparison with the research conducted on other basic materials in this country and in comparison with reported research and technical developments of magnesium abroad.

Dr. Dow, president of Dow Chemical Co., admitted at a hearing before the committee not only that the British had made progress superior to that of the United States in the use of magnesium in aircraft but

-5-

that the Germans were far ahead of the British.

The fabrication patents owned by Dow Chemical and by American Magnesium Corporation were cross-licensed to each other. The market and the future possibilities for the metal depended largely upon whether fabrication procedures could be devised to handle a difficult and unstable metal. Both companies had made some valuable discoveries, and both desired to use the discoveries of the other.

Dow Chemical granted a special price to American Magnesium Corporation, but it contends that the discount was not as great as the cost to Dow Chemical of selling and servicing sales to others in smaller quantities.

\*\*\*\*\*

The American Magnesium Corporation and Alcoa did investigate the possibility of procuring magnesium cheaper from sources other than Dow Chemical, as they had a right to do under the agreement with Dow Chemical. The possibility of this and the desire to obtain the right to use fabricating patents, particularly those controlling the use of sulfur in making magnesium castings, were the chief reasons why American Magnesium Corporation and Alcoa were interested in negotiating with I.G. Farben Co., of Germany. They concluded, after exploration, that the German production methods were not sufficiently attractive to make it worth while to produce magnesium instead of purchasing it from Dow Chemical. However, they concluded that the fabrication patents were valuable.

S.5

Consequently, in 1931 and while Germany was



-6-

still in good standing in the family of nations, Alcoa and Parben created an American corporation, Magnesium Development Corporation, the stock of which was held in equal shares, and transferred to it the American patents for production and fabrication of magnesium held by both companies. In this connection, Alcoa and Parben did agree as follows:

As long as magnesium is produced by any such Producing Company under a license or licenses granted under Paragraph Thirteenth hereof, the holders of the U.S. patents in Alig. except as provided in Paragraph Twelfth hereof shall have the right to limit the increases in production capacity of every such Producing Company after the initial contemplated production capacity shall have been reached. The initial contemplated production capacity shall in no case be more than four thousand (4,000) tons per annum.

Dow Chemical was not a party to this contract. It denies that it even knew that such a contract was entered into, but the Department of Justice disputes this and asserts that Dow Chemical not only knew that such a contract was to be negotiated but even was offered an opportunity to participate in it.

The above-quoted excerpt of the Alig agreement limits the production capacity only of licenses of production patents owned by Magnesium Development Corporation pursuant to the assignment to it by Alcoa and Parben. Dow Chemical never has become licensee of Magnesium Development Corporation production patents but only of fabrication patents, under a cross-licensing agreement. Therefore, Dow Chemical was never limited in the volume of its production by the terms of the above-quoted paragraph. The effect of the limitation was solely to prevent Alcoa, or any licensee of Magnesium Development Corporation from producing within the United States more



-7-

than 4,000 tons of magnesium per annum through the use of patents belonging to Magnesium Development Corporation, without first obtaining the consent of Farben.

Alcoa stresses that Farben was unwilling to grant a license to use its fabricating patents without a limitation on the quantity of magnesium to be made in the United States under Farben's production patents; that Alcoa had already decided that it was cheaper to buy magnesium from Dow Chemical than to attempt to produce it competitively by using Farben's production patents, at least in the then state of the art; that 4,000 tons per year was a smaller amount than had then been produced in our country in any year; and that the limitation to 4,000 tons was withdrawn in 1933.

Alcoa also stresses that under the 1931 contract, Farben agreed to furnish the jointly owned Magnesium Development Corporation all its technique and know-how, but that neither Alcoa nor American Magnesium Corporation was under any obligation to furnish technique or know-how or American-owned patents in Germany to Farben.

This agreement between Alcoa and Farben, of course, favored Dow Chemical at a disadvantage because Alcoa and its affiliate could use the valuable Farben fabrication patents and Dow Chemical could not.

3.8 .....

Dow Chemical understood that Farben and Alcoa might produce magnesium under the Farben patents and thereby both deprive Dow Chemical of its largest customer and subject it to a price war. It understood also that Farben held valuable fabrication patents, but it asserts that it was ready to meet any competition that was offered.

-8-

Neither Magnesium Development Corporation, nor any other company sought to produce magnesium in the United States under Farben's patents, until Basic Magnesium Corporation was created in the present war emergency.

The Magnesium Development Corporation, however, did contend that Dow Chemical could not make magnesium castings without infringing the Farben sulfur patents and in 1932 filed an infringement suit against Dow Chemical. Dow Chemical regarded this action as an attempt to club it into granting a lower price on magnesium ingot produced by it and sold to American Magnesium Corporation. Also on the other hand asserts that the suit was well founded.

Dow Chemical was in need of a large, steady customer, especially as the contract between Dow Chemical and the Ford Motor Co. had not resulted in substantial sales. Dow Chemical also believed that some of Farben's fabrication patents, particularly those with respect to alloys of magnesium with aluminum and zinc, were valuable.

On June 24, 1933, Dow Chemical entered into a sales contract with American Magnesium Corporation providing for large purchases at prices 4 cents per pound below the prices at which Dow Chemical would sell its metal to other customers and at which it would determine its own costs in pricing castings produced by Dow Chemical from its own metal. However, the differential of 4 cents would have been reduced to 2 cents and even 1 cent if the customer's purchases exceeded certain limits. This was inserted largely to

-9-

enable Dow Chemical to seek to interfere with Henry Ford in using Magnesium in his automobiles.

About 5 months later, on January 1, 1934, Magnesium Development Corporation, American Magnesium Corporation, and Dow Chemical settled their patent difficulties by a cross-licensing agreement. The suit was withdrawn. Dow Chemical agreed to pay a royalty of 1 cent a pound on its domestic sales of Magnesium with the exception of sales for unpurified metal.

On September 5, 1934, and while Ford was in good standing in the family of nations, Dow Chemical and Farben concluded a sales contract whereby Farben agreed to buy 350 tons of Magnesium in 1934 and 600 tons in 1935 at a price of 21 cents per pound, C.I.F. Hamburg. The prices realized in 1935 from sales to domestic purchasers of Magnesium other than the American Magnesium Corporation were \$ 0.2817 per pound.

The agreement provided that Dow Chemical was to confine its sales in Europe solely to Farben with the exception of the right to sell a British concern or its successors not more than 150 tons per annum at a price not lower than that charged to Farben, plus an extra charge of not less than 4 cents a pound.

Dow Chemical pointed out that the limitation on quantity exceeded the amount that it had previously sold in England and that the agreement enabled Dow Chemical to dispose of a surplus of Magnesium and better to balance its production.

In 1934 and 1935 Dow Chemical delivered to I.G. Farben, the principal producer of Magnesium in the world, or its nominees, 3,840,633 pounds of Magnesium while produc-

ing only 4,035,231 pounds, at a price approximately 30 percent below that which Dow Chemical realized from magnesium that was being sold to customers in the United States other than American Magnesium Corporation.

During this same period, the sales manager of Dow Chemical made a trip to England and wrote a memorandum reading as follows:

They (British Magnesium) are very much in need of additional magnesium for the balance of 1935, but they understand our position perfectly well and do not blame us at all because we are not in a position to furnish them the metal they want. They were at fault in not getting in touch with us sooner regarding their increased demands. They advised us that they had exported 20 tons of metal to Europe, but I later obtained definite proof from Mr. Ziegler of the I.C. that they had exported 60 tons to Europe. If they had kept this metal in England, they would have had sufficient supplies for this year. (Matter in brackets added.)

The sales manager could not recollect the facts or interpret this memorandum for the committee. Mr. Dow however did state that he believed that any inability to furnish more magnesium was due to low inventories after the deliveries to Farben rather than to the prohibition in the contract with Farben against delivering more than 300,000 pounds to this particular British company. An examination of the inventory records, as furnished by Dow Chemical, indicates, however, that there is some inventory out of which deliveries could have been made.

.....

In 1935 Dow Chemical sold 1,525,027 pounds of magnesium to Mitsui & Co. of Japan. This was equal to approximately 25 percent of all of the magnesium produced by Dow Chemical in that year. The price obtained from



-11-

Japan was 22.1 cents per pound as contrasted to 26.1 cents per pound obtained from England for 488,045 pounds sold to it in 1938 and a price of \$ 0.2544 per pound realized from sales of magnesium in the United States to customers other than American Magnesium Corporation.

.....

S.8 Dr. Don pointed out that in 1938 Japan was what he termed "a favored nation" and that scrap iron and other commodities were being sold to it by others with the knowledge of the State Department.

In 1939, 448,527 pounds of magnesium was sold to a Netherlands firm at a price of \$ 0.285 per pound and 358,542 pounds were sold to a Polish firm at a price of \$ 0.246 per pound as compared to prices realized in the United States from sales in 1939 to customers other than the American Magnesium Corporation of \$ 0.2551 per pound. Here again the records have been destroyed, and there is no information from which a determination can be made as to whether these purchases were made through brokers in neutral countries for the account of Germany. Again, Dr. Chandler asserts that it did not ask for information as to the uses to which this magnesium was to be put because it was not interested. ...

...

On January 30, 1941, the Department of Justice obtained original indictments, in the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, under the antitrust laws against Alcoa, I. G. Farben, the American Magnesium Corporation, Don Chandler,



-12-

Magnesium Development Corporation, General Aniline & Film Corporation, and a number of individuals. On April 15, 1942, a plea of nolo contendere (I do not wish to fight) was filed in the criminal proceedings by all the companies except Farben, and a civil action was instituted against the American defendants, in which a consent decree was obtained.

Under this decree all cross-licensing agreements were annulled, and all of the companies were required to grant a right to use, without royalty, any fabrication patent held prior to the date of the decree, and all further relations with Farben of Germany were enjoined. It was further required that a royalty-free right be granted to use any production patent, which right is limited to the duration of the present emergency and is limited to the United States. Fines of \$ 140,000 were imposed and paid in the criminal proceeding.

Both Dow Chemical and Alcoa point out that a plea of nolo contendere is not an admission of guilt, even though it does permit the court to enter the same judgment that it could have the right to enter upon a plea of guilty or a conviction. Each asserts complete confidence that it would have obtained judgment in its favor if it had defended the case, and claims that it entered the plea primarily to conserve its energies so that it might increase the facilities to produce and fabricate magnesium and thereby to contribute to the war effort...

....

The committee is concerned because...

-18-

industry failed to catch the progress of German industry in exploiting magnesite. Our production in 1939, entirely by Dow Chemical, was about 7,000,000 pounds, of which about 4,200,000 pounds were sold abroad, mostly to England. Germany's production in 1939 is estimated to have been about 33,000,000 pounds.

Dow Chemical explained that it has not interested in making capital expenditures to increase the capacity for producing magnesite beyond the extent justified by profits. The following questions and answers are significant:

Mr. FULTON. In other words, you weren't interested in how much Germany was producing or whether the U. S. States was keeping up with Germany unless you could see a market for profit on this domestic production?

Mr. DOW. You have to justify your investment.

Mr. FULTON. That was your primary consideration?

Mr. DOW. That is the primary consideration of business (hearing, p. 1243).

.....

Both Dow Chemical and Alcoa stress that:

- (1) Germany had carnallite deposits favorable to cheap production of magnesium;
- (2) The lack of domestic ore, bauxite (for aluminum), and other metallic resources led Germany to make special efforts to develop magnesium;
- (3) The German aircraft program was greater than ours;
- (4) Our industries, particularly aircraft and automobiles, were slow to use magnesium; and
- (5) The War and Navy Departments did not recognize fully the value of magnesium and did not encourage its use or even act quickly to remove specifications which blocked its use by industry or military contracts.

S.10

#### MAGNESIUM MARKET OF 1940-45

#### S.21 BASIC MAGNESIUM, INC.

The demand for magnesium as part of the defense

-14-

program far exceeded both the existing capacity and the increased capacity of Dow Chemical, the only domestic producer. There was grave doubt as to whether the demand could be met by the creation of new facilities by operators new in the field without any previous manufacturing experience and predicated upon processes as yet untried and unproven.

The Government at that time was searching for new processes and new operators to relieve the critical situation. Needless to say, the Government was besieged by a number of people with deposits of magnesite-bearing ores which they sought to exploit, or with ideas for processes to manufacture magnesium which had been demonstrated only in laboratory operations, if they had been developed even that far. The necessity for evaluating all of the proposals presented a large undertaking, which had to be handled rapidly in order that new production could be obtained at the earliest possible moment.

S.22 One of the projects so presented to the Government was sponsored by the Basic Refractories Corporation of Cleveland, Ohio. The proposal was accepted and resulted in the establishment of the Basic Magnesium Project at Las Vegas, Nev., for the production of 112,000,000 pounds of magnesium per year. The cost of constructing this project will be in excess of \$133,000,000, or roughly twice the original estimate.

The numerous problems and inefficiencies incident to the construction of a project of this magnitude have engaged the committee's attention since early in 1942. From time to time the committee has sent

-15-

subcommittees or investigators to Las Vegas to ascertain the details of the construction and operation of the project. Hearings have been held on the matter in Las Vegas in March 1942 and in May 1943 by subcommittees, and recently in Washington by the full committee in executive session. Because of the large expenditure involved in this project, the inefficient performance of the original operator, and the task confronting the present operator of bringing this project within competitive range, the matter is being discussed in detail in this report.

#### HISTORY AND BACKGROUND OF OPERATORS

Basic Refractories, Inc., of Cleveland, Ohio, hereinafter referred to as Basic Refractories, was a company engaged in the manufacture of granular magnesite refractories used in the lining of basic steel furnaces. . . .

S.23 The company had a working capital at the start of the year of 1941 of only \$ 774,000.

Through an affiliated company, Canadian Refractories, Ltd., Basic Refractories learned that a project for the manufacture of magnesite to relieve the critical shortage in Great Britain was under consideration by the Canadian and British Governments. The plant was to have been located in Canada and was to be designed and constructed by Magnesium Electrode, Ltd., an English company. The negotiations with respect to it had collapsed. On January 21, 1941, some of the officials of Basic Refractories proceeded to Canada to explore the possibilities of collaboration between Magnesium Electrode and Basic Refractories in projecting a proposal for the manufacture



-16-

of magnesium in the United States. On that same date other officials of Basic Refractories, Inc., contacted an official of the Iron and Steel Branch of the Office of Production Management, who in his private business capacity maintained offices in the same building with Basic Refractories in Cleveland. The purpose of this contact was to sound out the attitude of the Office of Production Management with respect to the manufacture of magnesium.

Thereafter on February 12, 1941, Magnesium Elektron authorized negotiations for further collaboration between the two companies for the expansion of magnesium production in the United States. These negotiations culminated in an agreement dated April 3, 1941, and on April 15 a project for the production of 40,000,000 pounds per year of magnesium was presented to the Office of Production Management by Basic Magnesium, Inc. It was advised 3 days later that the Office of Production Management was giving favorable consideration to the project. Arrangements were started immediately to obtain the passage to the United States of Magnesium Elektron officials and technicians. They arrived on May 20, 1941.

The result of the agreement between Basic Refractories and Magnesium Elektron is outlined by Basic Refractories as follows:

Magnesium Elektron, Ltd., possesses the knowledge and proven experience essential to rendering useful our own resources to produce a strategically vital metal. It was to be Basic Refractories' obligation to provide management and ore deposits, and Magnesium Elektron's with all the technical knowledge and skill required to produce and fabricate the metal, including complete detailed design of its English plants and all staff necessary to implement these provisions. (Italics supplied.)



-17-

The prior experience of Magnesium Elektron is indicated by the following comment of its chairman appearing in the Metal Industry of February 13, 1941:

By 1935 the demand in Britain for magnesium alloys had grown to such an extent that the main importers and suppliers, Messrs. F. C. Hughes & Co., Ltd., decided to attempt production on a large scale and to that end Magnesium Elektron, Ltd., was formed and a plant erected near Manchester to extract magnesium from the ore by the electrolytic process. The plant which produced its first metal in December 1936 was initially designed for 3,000,000 pounds capacity but was almost immediately increased to 8,000,000 pounds and is today the largest producer in the world, outside Germany.

The process used by Magnesium Elektron is a German process obtained from Imperial Chemical Industries through a patent pool with I. G. Farben. This process is covered by patents owned but never exploited or developed in the United States by the Ingersoll Development Co., formerly jointly owned by I. G. Farben of Germany and Alcoa. The patent restrictions with respect to the use of the process in this country existed at the start of this project and negotiations were then under way for royalty agreements with the Ingersoll Development Co., involving a tentative consideration of \$ 100,000. These negotiations continued until the consent decree was obtained in 1942, as previously outlined. This decree apparently removed some of the restrictions, but it is limited only to the duration of the war. There was always a possibility of post-war claims and complications over royalties under patents, the post-war utilization of which has not been entirely clarified up to the present time. It appears that responsibility for contesting this liability falls on the United States Government, the owners of the plant which will use this

-15-

process and upon whose authority the process is being used. The Defense Plant Corporation believed that it was imperative that patent restrictions and possible post-war claims should not hold up the necessary production of magnesium and that the project should not be delayed by negotiations with respect to the terms of a license to use this process.

The Magnesium Elektron process is based upon the production of magnesium by the electrolysis of anhydrous magnesium chloride, the magnesium chloride being obtained from magnesium oxide, which in turn is obtained from magnesium-bearing ores, such as magnesite and dolomite.

.....

The foregoing background should be fully considered in the light of the fact that Basic Refractories' only contribution to the proposal would be the claims containing magnesite (not dolomite) deposits in New York, New York. The contribution by Magnesium Elektron was to be the "know-how" and technical assistance in establishing a project for the manufacture of magnesium. They had obtained this "know-how" a few years previously from common interests which had aided them in establishing, in Ireland, a project one-tenth the size of the Las Vegas project, and the current operations of which were predicated upon an altogether different type of raw material. Officials of both companies also conceded that neither company had had any previous experience in the construction of a project for the extraction of magnesium metal.

#### S.25 THE APPROVAL OF THE PROJECT

On April 22, 1941, Mr. Sidney Hillman, then Acting

-18-

Director General of the Office of Production Management, advised Under Secretary of War Robert S. Patterson that further expansion of magnesium-metal production was necessary in the interests of national defense; that the only company then producing magnesium in this country was Dow Chemical, and that other companies should be enlisted in the operation of magnesium-producing facilities. A list of companies was attached to Mr. Hillman's communication. Basic Refractories, which had presented its original proposal one week before, was included among these companies.

The amount of new magnesium capacity which was to be created by this project was 89,000,000 pounds per year. All of the companies evidencing an interest were interviewed by officials of the War Department and by experts in the industry charged with the responsibility for magnesium production facilities in the Office of Production Management. It was decided to allocate 12,000,000 pounds of this program to Basic Refractories and Magnesium Elektron. This was in excess of Magnesium Elektron's production at that time.

On May 17, 1941, the War Department arranged conferences at Wright Field with Mr. Howard Galle of Basic Refractories and Mr. C.J. Hall and Mr. Garner of Magnesium Elektron.

.....

In presenting details with respect to their proposal to the War Department, Basic Refractories and Magnesium Elektron indicated that a jointly owned company to be known as Basic Magnesium, Inc., would be formed for

S.26 the purpose of constructing and operating the project.

....

Basic Magnesium was incorporated and its stock was distributed 55 percent to Basic Refractories and 45 percent to Mannesmann Elektron. The initial contribution in exchange for this stock was the ore leases, carried on the books at \$ 25,000 and the "know how" and technical knowledge acquired a short time previously from the German interests, respectively.

The company advised the Defense Plant Corporation that it contemplated that the working capital requirements would be obtained through the sale of stock to the general public and that the "initial substance" of the company would be created by the contract with the Defense Plant Corporation and the ore leases, the consummation of which would result in "substantial values" accruing with respect to its ore deposits.

On July 5, a contract for the construction and lease of a plant to produce 33,600,000 pounds of magnesium was under negotiation by Basic Magnesium, Inc., and the Defense Plant Corporation. Prior to the date of these negotiations (June 12, 1941) the War Department had advised WRI as follows:

Although you have no green light on Basic Refractories, there could appear no reason for not obtaining a preliminary proposal for 108,000,000 pounds. Mr. Washington's rep has drawn up an detailed plan to cover the proposed expansion of magnesium metal to a total capacity of 400,000,000 pounds. This is your problem provided you stay in line with the total capacity as indicated in Mr. Knudsen's letter of June 6.

The action of the War Department was based on a letter from Mr. William Knudsen, Vice Chairman of



-21-

the Office of Production Management, dated June 6, 1941.

Again on June 30 the War Department advised Wright Field as follows:

"Mr. Lewis, of the office of the Under Secretary of War, requests that you proceed immediately with processing teletype to this office based on 112,000,000 pounds capacity per year."

At the time the scope of the project was increased to 112,000,000 pounds, the Defense Plant Corporation advised of its preference for a management type of contract in place of the lease contract previously contemplated, and negotiations were inaugurated for a contract S.27 of this type on July 21, 1941, the Under Secretary of War having made the following comment with respect thereto on July 19:

It is recommended that an agreement be negotiated between the War Department, Defense Plant Corporation, and Basic Refractories for a project of a capacity of 112,000,000 pounds to cost \$ 63,320,883.

On August 13, 1941, but as of August 1, 1941, Basic Refractories contracted with the Defense Plant Corporation to provide the designs for and to manage the construction and operation of the plants for the production of magnesia at an annual rate of 112,000,000 pounds. Basic Refractories was to supervise the construction of the plant, for which it would receive a fixed fee of one-half of 1 percent of the cost to a maximum of \$ 300,000, and thereafter its income would be a royalty on the magnesia produced which would be 2 percent of the sales value and in no event less than one-half cent per pound.

Discussion of the lease for the ore operations



-22-

contributed by Basic Refractories was predicated upon a consideration being paid in the form of a royalty on the ore mined of 1 percent of the metal produced with a minimum of one-fourth cent per pound of magnesium. Such contract for the royalty on the ore, although drafted, was never negotiated for reasons hereinafter indicated.

Converting these figures, it is found that, based on annual production of 112,000,000 pounds, the minimum royalty accruing to Basic Magnesium in any 1 year would have been \$ 500,000 for operating the plant and \$ 280,000 to Basic Refractories for the royalty on the ore.

The ore deposits transferred to Basic Magnesium for which royalties of \$ 280,000 per year were to be paid by the Government, were those which had been held in the name of another subsidiary, Basic Ore, Inc., and concerning which ore deposits the War Department made the following comment:

Basic Refractories now operates a magnesite mine at Gibbs, Nev., extracting magnesite ore from 25 claims owned in fee simple by Basic Ore, Inc., a fully owned subsidiary. Investment in this company is about \$ 20,000 and it will be expanded to provide magnesite for the proposed production of 112,000,000 pounds.

The contract further provided that the Defense Plant Corporation could sell the plant at the end of 3 years, but Basic Magnesium, Inc., would have the first option to buy it, and if it failed to exercise the option and the plant was sold or leased to others, it would receive a cash consideration of \$ 1,000,000 and royalties at double rates on the ore mined, and it could be protected from any new entrant entering the refractory business. ...

S.29 ....

In addition, it should be noted that the plant of Basic Magnesium Corporation is a copy of an English plant, licensed under German patents and that Basic Magnesium had no license to use those patents in the United States. Consequently, it was not selling the Government any right to operate and was not even in a position to protect the Government against claims of the owners of the patents. ...

S.43 ....

It is the committee's opinion that the present operators (Ansoconda) deserve commendation for their efforts to reduce the present operating costs, but the fact remains that the capital expenditures and expenses of transporting the 550 miles places a handicap on this project, which alone will make it difficult to operate it in competition with other projects.

The entire question of ore deposits can be summed up in a comment made by H.L. Bakken of the Aluminum Co. of America on January 24, 1931, which comment now appears to have been prophetic and was made at the time that consideration was given by H.L. Forben to the possibility of entering the magnesium manufacturing field in this country.

It must be recognized that in the United States the bulk of natural occurring magnesite is located in the extreme West, such as California and Washington. There is an extensive deposit of brucite in Nevada. Our information regarding this deposit, however, shows that it is unfortunately located and that the character of the deposit is such that the material is not uniform. A vertical drawback is the relatively high lime content.

S.44....

It is not possible for this committee to determine the exact requirements of the British technicians in regard to the material necessary to make to process work. When the extensive deposits of peat available in this country are considered and when it is considered further that the Magnesium Elektron process originates from the I.G. Farben process, the following comment would appear pertinent. This comment is contained in a memorandum submitted by H.E. Bokken of the Aluminum Co. of America on May 17, 1930, as a result of a survey made to determine the probability of I.G. Farben entering the magnesium-producing field in this country:

In order to operate the I.G. Farben process it is essential to use carbonaceous material of relatively low ash. In Germany, best and best coke is employed. If the process were operated in this country it is proposed to use petroleum coke and sawdust (the sawdust is employed to provide porous briquettes) according to Mr. Litchfield's report both petroleum coke and sawdust are available in a western location at prices which are considerably below the figures used in the conversion cost prepared by Mr. Litchfield and the writer.

S.50....

ACCO FILM INT.

The plant of the Basic Magnesium Corporation has been completed and is in operation. Its capacity of 112,000,000 pounds is the largest in the United States and is believed to be the largest in the world. The first of the 10 units was completed on August 21, 1942, and the second on October 26, 1942, the date when American Copper took over the management of Basic Magnesium Corporation from the Basic Magnesium Corporation.

-25-

During the 4 months of operation in 1942, the project produced 1,299,714 pounds of magnesium metal. In the succeeding 13 months to February 1944, the project produced an additional 102,520,762 pounds of metal, having reached and exceeded capacity operations by July 1943.

The metal produced at this project since the start of operations accounts for about 25 percent of all the metal produced in all Government-owned facilities since their inception. It produced about 39 percent of all the magnesium produced in all plants in the United States, both private and public, in the year 1943. The exact production of suitable refined metal and the quantity of cell metal from which it was produced is set forth in Appendix.

The magnesium produced by this plant was of great value to the war effort.

Although the cost of production, especially in the initial months, was high, successful operation through improved methods consistently has reduced the cost per pound. By June 1943 the cost had been reduced to \$ 0.316 per pound and, by November 1943, to \$ 0.235. It should be noted that the foregoing costs do not include amortization of plant facilities, which of course are borne by both Los Alamos and Permanent Metals Corporation in the operation of their privately owned plants. Although the cost is still above the \$ 0.205 per pound at which Los Alamos is selling magnesium produced in its privately owned plants and the \$ 0.124 per pound cost of producing magnesium in the

-26-

plant operated for the Government by Dow Chemical at Velasco, Tex., it is substantially lower than the cost of producing magnesium to date by either the ferro-silicon or the carbothermic processes.

The present cost of production at Dow Magnesium Corporation is low enough to enable the project to produce the metal at a profit if capacity operations are permitted, thereby accelerating the rate of repayment of Government operating advances.

The committee desires to emphasize the above points because of the necessity for criticizing in detail many of the facts with respect to the origin of the project and the construction of the plant.

.....



S.55 ....

## APPENDIX III

DCA CRIMINAL CO., - DEFENSES IN OT AND OTHER FORMS  
S.I. 38

(Large shipments - accounting department  
records )

Year	Germany	England	Mexico	Others	Total
	Pounds	Pounds	Pounds	Pounds	Pounds
1926					
1927					
1928	5,000				5,000
1929	2,955	44,806		67,201 P	114,963
1930		60,806		22,386 P	82,892
1931		127,983			127,983
1932		110,715	60,171		170,886
1933	34,077	190,005	90,486	124,408 H	439,976
1934	2,359,318	249,930	120,607	56,195 H	2,846,051
1935	1,481,315	349,401	271,013		2,101,731
1936	112,333	376,473	371,997		860,793
1937		225,948	322,759		608,707
1938		498,045	341,711	1,525,027 J	2,465,443
				11,209 S	
				6,594 S	
				22,063 P	
1939		3,288,827	321,254	445,427 H	4,444,093
				26,743 S	
				358,442 P	
1940		89,600	261,332	47,976 G	398,956
1941		3,505,272		767,520 G	4,272,792
1942		9,189,556		328,210 G	10,038,368

Letters in column headed "Others" refer to countries:

S-Belgium  
G-Greece  
F-France  
J-Japan  
H-Holland  
P-Poland  
R-Russia  
S-Sweden

- - - - -

Die wortgetreue und richtige Abschrift des  
oben Schriftstuecke wird hi mit besch inist.

Muenberg, den 30. Januar 1948.

Dr. Dr. Werner Schubert  
Vertreter der Angeklagten B. 1315.

Case 6  
Defense

DOCUMENT BOOK V BUEGIN

Military Tribunal No. VI

- Case 6 -

Document Book V

for

Dr. Ernst BUEGIN

-----  
Submitted by Dr. Werner  
Schubert  
Attorney at Law,  
Presently at Nuernberg  
-----

Long



## DOCUMENT BOOK V BUEGIN

Table of Contents  
to

## Document Book V Buegin

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
----------	----------	----------	------

Foreign workers in Bitterfeld

- 54 Affidavit of 29 January 1948 by Karl Friedrich Tschertter on the foreign workers in I.G. Bitterfeld. No influence by the Works on the assignment of foreigners. No difference was made between German and foreigners in employment conditions, so far as the laws allowed. Careful supervision of the employment of prisoners of war. Home leaves. Buegin's liberal and humanitarian attitude. 1 -14
- 11 Affidavit of 24 November 1947 by Dr. Hermann Lang, head of the Bitterfeld-North Works, on the establishment and course of development of the Worker's Camps. The relaxation of the proscribed guard duties in the Russian Camp. Freedom of movement and home leaves. System of re-positioning workers. Training and retraining, education of young persons, hygiene and health measures. Buegin insisted on an understanding treatment of the foreigners and a policy of payment commensurate with their output. The resultant willingness of the foreigners to work in most cases, often to a considerable extent on their own initiative. 15 -23
- 55 Affidavit of 5 February 1948 by Dr. Karl Hencky, head of the power plant in Bitterfeld. Fruitless endeavor of the Works manager to keep the German workers. Best possible care and provisions for the foreign workers, the allocation of whom the management could not prevent. Buegin arranged for a reduced number of occupants in the camps, avoided severe measures to increase the level of production, put through the policy of constructing air-raid shelter for the foreign workers also. 24 -29

## DOCUMENT BOOK V EMBLEM

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
----------	----------	----------	------

21		Letter of July 1941 by the Plenipotentiary General for Special Questions of Chemical Production to I.C. Bitterfeld on the subject of the allocation of Belgian and French installation and construction work squads in the chemical production plan. It contains orders	
----	--	---	--

## DOCUMENT BOOK V MURKIN

Exh. No.	Doc. No.	Document	Page
		concerning the contracts with foreign firms which send their workers to Germany in integrated units, with a sample contract. "The foreign workers are thus to be treated like comparable German workers."	30-39
51		Affidavit of 28 January 1948 by Friedrich Drebes, former chief of the remaining Workshop, of psycho-technical qualification tests and of the piece-work office at I.G. Bitterfeld, on the careful selection and training of foreign workers, especially on the training of semi-skilled craftsmen in the instruction shop and on the increases in their pay.	40-43
47		Affidavit of 23 February 1948 by Dr. Gustav Siebel, on the employment of foreigners as chemists, engineers, metallurgists and craftsmen in the scientific laboratory in Bitterfeld; further, on Luergins ironic attitude towards the NSDAP.	44-46
53		Affidavit of 6 February 1948 by Dr. Kurt Schneider on the employment of foreign workers in the scrap metal processing department, on their working hours and on the good relationships with them.	47-51
68		12 photographs of parts of the Marie and Antonio camps for foreign workers of the I.G. Farben in Bitterfeld, with affidavits by Hans Joerer dated 12 February 1948.	52-54
22		Letter, dated 10 August 1943 from the Administration of the Marie Communal Camp to I.G. Bitterfeld, on the subject of the number of beds available and occupied in the eight working camps in Bitterfeld	55-56
82		Affidavit of 9 February 1948 by Carl Nebelung former camp leader in the workers' camps in Bitterfeld, on the installations of the workers' camps and on	



## DOCUMENT BOOK-V BUEGIN

Exh.No.	Doc.No.	Document	Page
---------	---------	----------	------

- the duties of a camp leader.  
 "The management always accepted without regard to expense all suggestions which were good, useful and advantageous to the camp inmates - a policy which was particularly due to Dr. Buegin." -  
 Arbitrary measures by the Gestapo sometimes lead to controversies with the camp leaders, whereupon the Gestapo would maintain its despotic attitude." 57-62
- 60 Affidavit of 28 January 1946 by Wilhelm Fuerber, formerly administrator of the labor camps at Bitterfeld  
 The development of hut construction, the particularly pretentious facilities of the huts, the lavatories, kitchen and stores in the camps; the foreign firms which made Bonna; health service, camp leaders of the German Labor Front and their conduct. No employment of children or concentration camp prisoners in Bitterfeld and Wolfen Butten. 63-68
- 7 Affidavit of 7 November 1947 by Karl Zabel on the Larks Security Police  
 the treatment of the foreign workers in Bitterfeld, their freedom of movement and their cultural activities and the part the German Labor Front played in the camp administration. Buegin was in no way a National Socialist; he repudiated political interference with everything in his power. 69-72
- 26 Announcement of 21 July 1943 by I.G. Bitterfeld concerning transferring wages to Slovakia 74
- 35 Circular letter of 22 December 1943 by I.G. Bitterfeld on the annual bonuses for Eastern workers for satisfactory work performance. 75-76
- 27 Health Measures  
 Announcement of 5 August 1944 by I.G. Bitterfeld

## DOCUMENT BOOK V. BUEGIN

Exh.No.	Doc.No.	Document	Page
---------	---------	----------	------

on the mass X-ray examinations of all workers, including the foreigners, with the schedule of dates for the examinations. 77-80

- 28 Announcement of 5 February 1944 by I.G. Bitterfeld on medical consultations, especially to include foreign workers, male and female. 81-82

Vacations

- 29 Circular letter of 22 August 1942 by I.G. Bitterfeld on paid vacations for foreigners. Explanation of the Reich Labor Ruling for the regulation of vacations for foreign workers. Discontinuation of the waiting period for leave; home leave (Familienheimfahrten) for married and single foreigners and payments during leave. 83-85

- 30 Announcement of 13 April 1943 of I.G. Bitterfeld on special workers'-leave trains to Italy, Belgium, France, Slovakia, Holland, Croatia, Bulgaria, and the Protectorate of Bohemia-Moravia. 86-87

- 31 Circular letter of 23 March 1944 by the I.G. Bitterfeld on home leave. "a draw particular attention to the fact that uniform regulations will henceforth prevail ....for Germans and foreigners." The plant sets the date for the leave within the period claimed. Home leave in the case of special events in the family. 88-91

Order for making corrections filed in Bk. I after the index.

CopyAFFIDAVIT

I, Karl Friedrich Tscharter, born on 1 April 1896 in Eichen, Kreis Loerrach, residing in Ettshelm near Lahr (Baden), have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I hereby declare on oath that my statements are the truth and that they were made in order to be submitted as evidence to Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice, Nurnberg, Germany.

I belonged to the NSDAP since May 1935, but held no office in the party. I was a member of the German Labor Front (DAF) and for a time a member of the National Socialist People's Welfare (NS-Volkswohlfahrt).

1.) Since June 1938 I was employed in the Bitterfeld Works of the I.G. Farbenindustrie, and since 1 January 1940 I was "Referent" for questions of labor law and wages, vacations for workers, etc. At that time Herr Jores was still the head of the social welfare department of the Betriebsgemeinschaft <sup>Works Combine</sup> ~~(Arbeitgemeinschaft)~~ Central Germany at the Farben Factory of Wolfen. Since 1942 this department was under the supervision of Dr. Perschmann, and since then it was usually referred to as "Raum Perschmann" (Perschmann's Office). I also had to work in accordance with the directives given by the Raum Perschmann. These directives were co-ordinated in the entire I.G. The following persons had special assignments in the Bitterfeld Works under Dr. Perschmann: Dr. Walther, who was in charge of real estate administration, housing, pensioning, relief, works food administration, etc. Herr Frey, a former Handlungsbevollmachtigter who had been works Procurist in 1945 and who was in charge of matters concerning salaried employees in the

Personnel Department; and myself. Later Herr Boshu handled camp matters, among other things. I do not remember whether or not he received instructions from Dr. Perschmann in this respect. Since I also was responsible for questions of labor law affecting foreign workers, I saw enough of their social conditions and the treatment they received the camps and works so as to be able to pass an opinion relative thereto.

2.) After the requirements of the plants had been checked, the requests for fresh allocation of workers were forwarded by my office to the Dr. Perschmann for negotiation with the competent authorities. He simply requested manpower, i.e. skilled workers or unskilled labor according to needs, but never expressly foreigners, for we took it for granted that German workers were more suitable for our needs than foreigners, for various reasons. He had, then, no influence on the assignment of foreign workers; they were simply allocated to us because of the shortage of German personnel during the war, after the voluntary flow of German workers from the Rhineland, from Thuringia and from other districts had ceased and after it was likewise impossible to obtain German workers by compulsory methods. Consequently, my concern in regard to possible sabotage on the part of the authorities and the Security Officer became an increasingly secondary consideration as time went on, and the Security Officer gradually had to prevail on the competent authorities in Hesse to have certain relaxations made in the security regulations for the different plants, for only

foreign workers were being allocated, except in individual cases of German specialist workers subject to compulsory labor. To my knowledge Dr. Ferschmann, at the request of the Plenipotentiary General for the Chemical Industry, occasionally had to send personnel to assist in the transports of laborers from foreign territory, or to help select the workers recruited there on the basis of whether or not they were suited to class of <sup>our</sup> work.

3.) In regard to the general terms of employment, no differences were made between German and foreign workers even if discrimination was permissible at all under German law. Since the time when foreign workers were first employed Dr. Durgin stressed the policy that these workers, whether they had come of their own free will or whether they had been procured ~~through~~ <sup>by recruiting or</sup> ~~compulsorily~~ <sup>measures unknown to us,</sup> were to be

p.3 treated just as correctly and properly as German workers. He even considered it advisable to obtain interpreters from the foreigners in order to ensure that the wishes of the foreigners could obtain proper hearing. Accordingly, foreigners were used as interpreters from the very beginning. As a wise and understanding works manager he demanded that the foreigners be furnished with working clothes and proper food, and he required his department heads and other subordinates to take special concern in such welfare measures. This was in harmony with my own personal views, and it made my work as official in charge of questions of labor regulations and wages a great deal easier.

4.) Naturally, there were jobs in Bitterfeld for the



foreigners, just as for the Germans, which were not easy. But in general the work in a chemical factory is not hard, and this was especially the case in the Bitterfeld Works, with its elaborate modern equipment, as evidenced by the fact that the allocation of female labor resulted in no difficulties, and the fact that far more workers received extra rations for overtime than for heavy work. Helpers' jobs, such as loading and shipping, were the same as those in other industries. In every case the foreign workers had the same work to do as the Germans when they had replaced, in other words, no heavier work. Every worker was examined by the works physician in order to determine his suitability for a particular kind of work. Further, the health of the workers and effect of the work on their health were constantly watched over by the physician and the Gewerbeaufsichtszamt (Office for the Supervision of Industry for Workers' Protection). The fact that our plant employed very many workers who had been on the job for 25 and even 40 years shows that the possibility of the work being detrimental to health is out of the question. Since sometimes no medical examinations were given when voluntary or compulsory labor was obtained in France, it often happened that

p. 4 workers had to be sent back again when they were found, upon medical examination, to be unsuitable for employment in Bitterfeld. Dr. Michaelis, the works physician in Bitterfeld and a most meticulous industrial physician, had already been with the plant for 25 years at the time of the war, and he was accurately

informed about the demands of the work in the plant and its health requirements. He made repeated visits to the plant sections and he had to report regularly to the management on the health conditions of the employees. On instructions from Dr. BUECHER the principle had to be maintained of allocating the personnel according to their aptitudes and their physical fitness. If the physician found, upon a complaint being made, that a worker could not perform a particular job for health reasons, he was transferred to some other plant section. Such transfers were also made if the worker was unsuitable for a particular job and though the transfer entailed various extra work of administration.

8.) All the way through the employment of female workers, both German and foreign, was governed by the principle that women should only be employed in work for which they were suited. Naturally - as was probably also the case in all other countries in the war - they had to take the place of men for various jobs. My own wife also had to go to work when female labor was introduced in 1943. She was employed as a driver. Dr. BUECHER's wife also had to work. I do not know whether or not she took a man's job, for she did not work in our plant. The orders of the Gewerbeaufsichtsausschuss were always followed in all respects in the employment of women. To supervise the proper employment and treatment of the women <sup>and</sup> to receive their complaints, a special "works female social worker" was employed. It was her duty to supervise the employment of women in every respect. She could submit her wishes and requests at any time to the Gewerbeaufsichtsausschuss or to the management.

and I know that she had direct access to Dr. BUERGHE. She would never have permitted women in the Works to be badly treated or to be ill-treated. The plant social worker, Fraulein Heidelberg, lived herself for a considerable length of time in a hut in which p.5 foreign women were housed, and, consequently, she was accurately informed as to conditions for the foreign women. Furthermore, the plant works manager would have forbidden if the plant complement or the works security police had beaten female workers. I know that exactly the work of most of the Russian female workers was very satisfactory.

6.) Although only manpower over 18 years was requested, the first Russian transports included also persons of school age, some of whom came with their families. They were turned to the Labor Office, however. No children were put to work. Moreover, the Gouvernementsrat would under no circumstances have permitted this, and in any case there were no suitable jobs for them. A number of Russian youths - between 14 and 21 years - were employed at jobs suitable for them. The more apt among them were given training in a workshop, particularly in auxiliary handicrafts.

7.) Prisoners of war were employed in the Bitterfeld Works, partly at loading and other auxiliary jobs, partly also in the plants, where, so far as I am informed, their employment required the approval of the Security Agencies for the different plant offices. I know nothing of the production of gun-powder in the Bitterfeld Works; likewise have no knowledge about any employment of prisoners of war for such a purpose.

8.) With the exception of the Russians, the foreigners, especially the French, received leave according to the regulations in force for the German workers. In addition they received home leave in the form of a number of extra days of leave without pay. The trips home were regulated by special regulations of the Reich Trustee of Labor. For a long time every married foreigner, with the exception of the Russians, was eligible to make a trip home after six months' employment; single workers were only eligible after a year's work. The trips by foreign workers were set up in an organized method in 1943 or 1944 by the German Labor Front with the help of so-called Transportation Staffs (Transportstaffe). The Transportation Staffs arranged the leave trains, and their departures and returns were announced in the works. Because of the severe damage to transportation facilities from the air war the number of leave trains in the last year of the war steadily decreased, until finally the trips had to be entirely discontinued. In granting leave in each particular case ~~it was~~ <sup>one had</sup> <sup>to take into consideration the needs</sup> <sup>of the worker</sup> naturally, both for the Germans and for the foreigners; <sup>the date</sup> <sup>for both the Germans and the foreigners was, of course,</sup> of the leave ~~was~~ determined in accordance therewith. For the French in particular, however, Studienrat Breiter intervened indefatigably. He was a man of about 60 years who had been removed from school service by the Nazis and employed by Dr. BUECHIN for humanitarian reasons. This Studienrat, who was described to me as a particularly sensible and considerate person and whom I later found to be such upon making his



acquaintance, was first employed in the payroll office. When the French and Italian workers were allocated to us, he was used as an interpreter. He ceaselessly and energetically offered his help in response to requests for leave by the French in particular, and they were properly complied with. It was hardly possible for any complaints to arise, for the plant managers had already been instructed by Dr. Bulgin to proceed conscientiously and justly when turning in the leave lists, subject to the legal regulations. Most of the requests concerned the granting of compassionate leave before the regular time, and this was approved when credible reasons were given.

9.) Punishments, both for the German and the foreign workers, were regulated by the provisions of Reich laws. Violations of the plant regulations, especially absenteeism was first dealt with by reprimand and then by progressively higher fines. In the later period of the war, when fines as high as a day's pay had no effect, higher fines were also allowed and were imposed in various individual cases. Page 7. This was always done in express agreement with the responsible works manager in order to avoid injustice. The fines imposed were then made known to the worker in writing with the signatures of the responsible plant and department manager, so that the department chief had the opportunity of checking the action taken by his works manager. By this method irregularities were practically impossible. Out and out slackers,



- 9 -

who could not be gotten to do their duty even by means of fines, had to be reported pursuant to an order of the Reichstreuhänder, (Reich Trustee), who exercised control over the proper measures for labor allocation and employment. The reports had to go to the Reich Trustee or to the Labor Office which represented him; later, in the case of foreigners, to the police. Ordinarily they were made at the request of the particular section in which the idler was employed, and they were not turned in until the justification for the report had first been checked against a conscientiously kept card index in regard to the fines previously imposed. As I remember, the necessary authority was given in decrees by the Plenipotentiary General for Labor Mobilization or by the Reich Trustee, and during the course of the war, these decrees were amended. Such decrees were made known to us in each case by the Büro Perckmann. The I.G. had no influence on the further action taken or on the punishment, when such was imposed on the worker by the office to which the report had to be made. The Gestapo never heard me, for example, in connection with the punishment to be imposed. The reprimands and the fines were carefully recorded in a card index, so that the justification for increasing the penalties for invertebrate slackers could be definitely shown from the files. These files were always carefully preserved.

As a further corrective measure the withholding Page 8. of bonus payments was used, especially the annual New Year bonus, if a worker had been absent without leave for a number of days or had been fined several times in a year.

- 9 -

- 10 -

This action was taken at the end of the year by a small committee with the help of a card index, and then discussed in <sup>the</sup> Confidential Council (Vertrauensrat). In order to avoid any injustice and excessive severity the decision of the Confidential Council was then made known to the worker's place of employment for a second consideration, in order to allow for any improvement in the conduct or the work of the person concerned, for the Works had no interest in merely meting out punishment to the workers or even in saving money; its sole interest was in maintaining an orderly flow of production, which could only be attained through a just treatment of the workers. In all these matters - as I wish to emphasize once more - the Germans and the foreigners were treated alike so far as there were no legal objections to such like treatment by the works.

Pursuant to an express order of the works manager no one was allowed to strike the workers. As I know, the camp leaders (Lagerfuehrer) were also subject to this prohibition by the German Labor Front, and under the strictest terms. Neither Dr. Burgin nor his deputy, who was a person of kindness, would have tolerated such illtreatment had they learned of it.

19.) I had nothing to do with the details of the foreigners' camps. I merely knew that, particularly during the war, the German Labor Front were greatly concerned about the camps and frequently inspected them in the interest of good order which were constructed on an exemplary standard by the I.G. and were constantly enlarged with the increasing supply of foreign labor during the war.

- 10 -

- 11 -

Unfortunately, vermin sometimes appeared in the older huts, as is unavoidable when many people live together - probably because some of the foreigners neglected to bath and tried to avoid delousing, in spite of the availability of showers and baths in the camp and in the factory itself. It was often found that inhabitants of the huts did not bring their belongings to be deloused, so that the vermin soon appeared again after the extermination process. The delousing facilities were certainly large enough, for the workers of other plants were also occasionally deloused in our installation. The plant even had suitable persons undergo special training as delousers for the camp; in other words, it took special pains in every way to control the vermin in the camp in order to prevent disease. Special bathhouse custodians were kept for the baths, but even so the baths were not sufficiently used in spite of every encouragement. I recall particularly in this connection the complaint of the works manager of the permanganate plant that his excellent bathing facilities were not being used sufficiently. I also know that the younger foreigners in the light-metal department did not want to bath and at first avoided the showers, although they knew that the bathing facilities in question were practically new.

It is true that the Eastern workers were housed in a special camp. This was in compliance with a government order, and by order of the Gestapo, so far as I remember. When I once passed a camp for the Russians, it was fenced in with barbed wire. I do not know, however, whether the barbed wire was installed by special order, or

- 11 -

- 12 -

whether it was merely there because prisoners of war might once have been kept in this camp. In any case Dr. Buergin did not order the barbed wire put up on his own initiative, for he was too much in favor of freedom to support such a measure. In his orders he never went further than was absolutely necessary for the maintenance of order. A freedom-loving and humanitarian spirit always ruled his actions, and this is understandable when one realizes that his forefathers were free Swiss citizens and that he himself attended school in Basel and, as I recall, also attended a university for several terms in

P.10 Switzerland. I never heard of a single case in which he failed to give consideration to proposals in the interest of the complement's welfare. His principles were always of a social and humanitarian character. I remember that the Dietrichsbaumann (plant DAF official), who also was the Ortsgruppenleiter (local NSDAP leader) in the city of Bitterfeld, wanted to have a worker reported to the criminal police, with the certain result that the man would have been punished by confinement for a long period. Dr. Buergin refused to have the report made, however, after reviewing the information in the files.

11.) In connection with the treatment of the foreigners Dr. Buergin, as the top chief of all these foreign workers, once expressed himself as follows: "We are no slaveholders". This statement characterized his entire attitude toward the employment of foreigners. In the meetings of the works and the shop managers he incessantly urged the construction engineers to equip the camps in the best way and to keep them in order. He was glad when he could procure clothing

- 12 -



- 13 -

and better food for the foreigners, even by evading the rationing regulations if necessary. He granted a hearing to every employee who pleaded for the interests of the foreigners, and especially to the plant social worker in regard to the women employed. He never greeted me with "Heil Hitler" when I called on him in his office, and he received with severe criticism the National Socialist demands of the Betriebsobmann and likewise any production demands which could only have been met by means of an unreasonable exploitation of the workers. The fact that he did not become Military Economy Leader (Johr-wirtschaftsfuehrer) until after a number of directors who were under him had already received this title, speaks for itself.

All in all I can say that Dr. Buehrgin always had a warm and sympathetic heart for all the members, Page 11 of the works. Toward all persons who came into contact with him he gave the same just treatment, and therein lay his special strength. He was loyal and generous, and these qualities, inherent in him, had a lasting effect on the people who worked with him. As a particular credit to be recorded in his favor is that it was his liberal and always broad-minded point of view that made it unnecessary for a single dispute involving labor law to be brought before the authorities or the courts during the entire period of the war, and this with between 12,000 to 14,000 men nearly half of whom were foreigners ! ! ! As a leader of men he was always master and king of his professional honor!

- 13 -



- 14 -

Ettenheim, 29 January 1948.

(signed): Karl Friedrich Tschertor

Signature certification.

The above signature was executed on this date in my presence by Herr Karl Friedrich Tschertor in person, political economist in Ettenheim, Luisenstr. 4a, whose identity was proven by identification card No. 63110 with photograph.

The signature is officially certified to be genuine.

Lahr, 31 January 1948

Notary Office I, Baden

L.S. Justizrat Richter (signature)  
as Notary

Article 39 of the Costs Regulations 2.- Reichsmarks  
GR No. 48/I.

2.- Reichsmarks in stamps

Notary office of Baden

Lahr - Schw.

entered, 31 January 1948.

- - - - -

Certified true copy of above document hereby certified.

Kuernberg, 10 February 1948.

(signed): Dr. Werner Schubert

Defense Counsel of the defendant Buegin.

- 14 -

## C O P Y

AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr.phil.Hermann L a n g , born on 15 July 1892 in Wuerzburg, at present in the Internment and Labor Camp at Dachau, have been warned that I render myself liable to punishment for making a false statement on oath.I declare on oath that my testimony is the truth and that it was given to be submitted as evidence to the Military Tribunal No.VI, in the Palace of Justice at Nuremberg, Germany.

1) From January 1933 I worked in the technical secretariat of the Directorate of I.G.Farbenindustrie,Bitterfeld, under Dr.Gustav Pistor, my superior, who at that time was the head of the Works Combine (Betriebsgemeinschaft), Central Germany. In January 1936 I became chief of the Bitterfeld North Works, as successor to Dr.Jager. In 1941 I became the deputy of Dr.Ernst Buergin who at that time was the head of the Works Combine,Central Germany,nominally of the Works Combine in its entirety for all practical purposes, however, I exercised my authority only to a limited extent, being particularly careful not to infringe upon the interests of the older chief of the Wolfen Plant, and acted as representative of Dr.Buergin mainly in the control of the Bitterfeld Works. Apart from that I was also the head of the Scientific (inorganic) Research Laboratory for the Bitterfeld Works from 1942. From 1941 I was also chairman of the Metal Sub-Committee of I.G.Farbenindustrie, of which I had been a committee member since 1936. The Sub-Committee dealt with metal and ore problems,among other things also making decisions on new constructions and new production proposals affecting the field of metal.

2) The Bitterfeld North Works which I headed until 1945 produced essentially chlorine and caustic soda,

hypochlorite of lime, Calcium perchloride, Losantin, precious stones (rough stones) ferro-alloys (Tungsten, Molybdenum), steel refining and reagents, compressed Hydrogen, Calcium Chloride, Zirconium metal, Magnesia, Formic Acid, Formates and Oxalates, Calcium, Barium, and various metal alloys, as well as Oxygen cylinders in the Nascogen plant not owned by I.G. Munitions or gunpowder were not manufactured.

3) As head of the Bitterfeld North Works I was not a "Betriebsfuehrer according to concepts of labor law." In that respect the Bitterfeld North plants were merely considered as a department of the Bitterfeld Works as a whole. The Bitterfeld Works and the Wolfen Dyestuffs Factory had a common Confidential Council (Vertrauensrat) whose chairman was Dr. Buergin. In that capacity I was his deputy. The meetings of the Confidential Council in which, according to the law of national labor personnel matters were dealt with, were attended - in addition to Dr. Buergin and the confidential representatives of the personnel - by the head of the Wolfen Dyestuffs Plant and by the managers of the personnel departments.

Personnel problems were also discussed during meetings of the plant chiefs which were convened as necessary, on the average once a month. The plants located at a great distance were represented by their plant heads only and from the works in the vicinity the department chiefs also attended, as well as the engineers in charge and the officials responsible for social matters.

4) As regards the employment of foreign labor in Bitterfeld and camps which housed foreigners I may say the following:

The first camp in Bitterfeld, the so-called Camp Marie, was originally a camp for workers in the Voluntary Labor Service which was, I believe, set up prior to 1933 by the "Stahlhelm". It had been built with

I.G. aid on land belonging to the plant, and initially it consisted of one or two huts. I do not know whether members of the Voluntary Labor Service were employed by the I.G. After 1933 the camp was used for accommodating unemployed <sup>people</sup> from the Rhineland who came to Bitterfeld because at that time there was already a shortage of manpower there. For the administration of the camp an association was founded whose members were from I.G. and other Bitterfeld industrialists. I have but little knowledge of the administration and population of the camp at that time. When, in 1942, I.G. took the camp over and the association was disbanded the camp leaders were appointed by the I.G., on the recommendations and approval of the German Labor Front. Also the procuring and administration of food supplies are now in the hands of I.G. The German Labor Front extended its control even to matters concerning the camp so that at times a rather undesirable dualism resulted, the camp leaders were inclined to pay more heed <sup>to</sup> the DAF because, as a rule, they came from its ranks.

5) I am not familiar with details regarding the various camps which, one after another, were subsequently erected. I still remember the camp for military prison ers. These prisoners were transferred to another locality during the war because it did not seem expedient to keep them under constant surveillance during work, in contrast with the complete freedom of movement enjoyed by the foreign laborers. One camp for Russians came into being in the first place by cutting off a portion of the prisoner of war camp which explains why, in the beginning, it was fenced off with barbed wire. Soon afterwards, however, the barbed wire was removed and progressively less severity was applied to fencing, with the result that finally only one barbed wire fence was left, just as in all other camps. The Russian laborers were never guarded by soldiers while it is true that, for a year or two, they were escorted to and from work by the plant security police (Werkschutz); finally that escort was



also done away with. The plant security service consisted of the doorkeepers at the plant gates and of patrol guards whose purpose was primarily to combat theft.

The various nationalities were separated in the camps. This explains why a camp was frequently not occupied to full capacity because it was neither desirable nor permissible to admit members of other nations into the camp. The relevant instructions of the Reich Labor Minister and of the German Labor Front were painstakingly observed just as on all other questions.

6) There was no police surveillance in the camp. I do recollect that a police guard service existed in Camp Marie but it was to handle criminal cases exclusively. As far as I know the foreign laborers had complete liberty of movement. They also experienced no difficulty in taking trips to nearby places; the railway trains to Leipzig, for instance, were overcrowded on Saturdays and Sundays with foreign laborers, who went there for amusements of all sorts. It is correct that without specific permission a foreign laborer could not travel to his home country for otherwise he would have attracted attention to himself when a check was made. Nevertheless, the number of those who left their place of work without obtaining leave or without dismissal continued to increase. I know nothing of reprisals against workers who were caught. In any case they were not taken back to the same plant.

Permission for travel to home countries was granted according to instructions from higher offices although the number of workers who failed to return increased. As far as I know it was not until towards the end of the war that on instructions from central government authorities, trips into some countries were restricted or entirely prohibited.



The Secret State Police refused to have anything to do with foreign workers' crises except in the event of a plant breakdown when sabotage was suspected. In that case it participated in investigations. In the disciplinary treatment of foreign laborers maltreatment of any kind was entirely out of the question. Every superior plant official, and every camp leader was bound to know that the directors had repeatedly strictly forbidden such action.

7) I do not know how the recruiting and allocation of foreign laborers individually was handled. In particular I never knew that, purportedly, employees of the Bitterfeld plant went abroad themselves for the purpose of recruiting foreign labor. When a plant leader was unable to cover his labor requirements by means of exchanges within the plant itself, the personnel departments tried to make adjustments within Bitterfeld, or between Bitterfeld and Wolfen. If that, too, failed, the required laborers were asked for from the Labor Office by means of reports which were made at prescribed intervals. Labor requirements arising from orders for new production were discussed with the Plenipotentiary General for Chemical Production. He gave the necessary instructions to the Labor Office through the customary channels.

The greatest shortage was of tradesmen. To a considerable extent the plants helped themselves, in that they arranged for retraining or for the training of foreign laborers for handicraft work, especially in the case of suitable young Eastern workers. The young German laborers frequently resented this preference given to foreigners because they themselves had to join the Wehrmacht (Armed Forces) and were thus deprived of the chance for vocational training.

8) Neither as regards working hours nor as regards work protection were conditions applying for foreign laborers more unfavorable.

then those for the corresponding German workers. It frequently happened that with the exchange of shifts Germans and foreigners worked alternately. Where occupational diseases might be contracted in certain plants more medical examinations were made of foreign laborers and German laborers alike.

Also the so-called Eastern workers were not expected to do special work, of an unpleasant nature. Women were assigned to work according to their physical strength; the Eastern female workers frequently proved to be particularly strong. It is natural that an attempt was made to assign to individual nationalities work for which, according to experience, they proved particularly suitable, digging to the Italians, for example. Insofar as juveniles up to 16 years of age were available, nearly all of them were given work in training workshops where they were trained to become skilled workers or tradesmen. Their treatment was excellent and, generally speaking, they <sup>enjoyed</sup> selected easy tasks.

9) As regards food I remember that, from 1942 on, the camp inmates received all meals in their camps. All of them had ration cards for long-shift or heavy workers, which means they received more than any German employee. As far as I know the workers were entirely free to use those supplementary food tickets as they wished. Purchases of food in the black market were therefore entirely unnecessary. Nevertheless, however, black market and barter deals of all kinds were the general practice, also gambling for high stakes. Eastern workers received food which was at least commensurate with general regulations, in many instances they fared better. The calorie content of their diet was the same as that of all other foreigners. As a matter of fact I do remember that they received less fat and meat, but more carbohydrates instead.

10) As regards hygiene in the camps everything possible was done. It never happened rather frequently - as can hardly be avoided when people coming from different families and places live together -

that vermin made their appearance. Vigorous attempts to combat this were made at all times, and finally one hut was always kept free for emergency purposes in order to quarter workers there who had to be removed from their own quarters while they were being disinfected.

The model-type infirmary - I can no longer recall how many beds it contained - intended for the treatment of sick persons was destroyed in an air raid, in January 1945, at which time a camp physician on duty and a nurse were also killed. In addition there was, in every camp, at least one sick-bay hut. One chief physician, responsible for all the camps, had his headquarters at Wolfen. He had several physicians under him; in addition, the foreign laborers went to Bitterfeld, for treatment by the plant physician and his Russian lady assistant.

11) The unrestricted freedom of movement of foreign laborers is proven by the fact that they repeatedly held celebrations in the camp, both serious and gay, depending upon their national characteristics. Such celebrations - evenings devoted to theater, music, or concert - continued to take place until 1945. I attended such gatherings, to which I was frequently invited, about eight times. On each occasion there prevailed an atmosphere which was gay, unrestrained and absolutely peaceful, and there was no indication that the workers felt they were living under compulsion. Until the end of the war there was no sign of revolutionary feelings. I also cannot remember any serious complaint about pronouncedly bad conditions in the camps. Only the Eastern workers complained on some occasions of being used in industry after being recruited for agricultural work.

12) It was the general opinion in the Bitterfeld plant, - and Dr. Buegin also repeatedly stressed that fact in meetings of the plant chiefs and on other occasions - that something ought to be done to strengthen the spirit of confidence in foreign workers, that their



accomplishments should be recognised and maintained at that level by giving them fair treatment and that, as far as possible, allowances should be made for their national peculiarities. The reports of officials in charge of social questions were also discussed in that light. Dr. Buergin also insisted, at all times, that the pay was to be proportionate to the output and that, even in the case of work which did not come up to par, the payment must not be lower than that fixed by tariff, that, rather, it should represent the minimum wage and exceptional output should be rewarded with an output bonus. I have always applied these directives, because of human sympathy for the foreign laborers as well as because I deemed it expedient.

As a result of such treatment there were really but very few loafers; the majority worked willingly although their output was lower than that of the Germans. Some of them were very good, too, and they worked entirely independently. As an example, there were a few Frenchmen who had given proof of being exceptionally adroit and reliable who, during day shift as well as night shift, worked on chlorine production entirely without supervision by a German worker. I remember that before they left and without any request foreigners who had worked on light metal processing expressed their thanks in a letter to Dipl. Engineer Ehrlich for the good treatment accorded to workers of all nationalities. They certainly would not have done it had they - though treated well themselves - seen their work comrades, in other places of the plant treated badly.

Dachau, 24 November 1947

(sig.) Dr. Hermann Long

DOCUMENT BOOK V - BUEGIN No. 11

Authenticity of the signature  
is hereby certified.

Dachau, 24 November 1947

Internment and labor camp

The Camp Leader  
(by order)

(signed.) Kulpok

(sent)

(signature)(Kulpok)  
Business Manager

I herewith certify that this is true and correct  
copy of the above document.

Muenberg, 19 January 1948

(signed.) Dr. Warner Schubert  
Defense Counsel for the Defendant Buegin



COPY.

A f f i d a v i t

I, Prof. Dr. Ing. Karl H o p m a n n , born on 3 April 1889 at Ansbach, residing at Muenich Zweibrueckenstrasse 33a, have been warned that I am liable to punishment for making a false statement on oath. I declare on oath that my testimony is the truth and that it was given for submission as evidence to Military Tribunal VI in the Palace of Justice, Nuremberg, Germany.

1) I was not a member of the NSDAP (National Socialist German Labor Party) nor of any of its organizations and, according to a decision of the public prosecutor in the Muenich IV Spruchkammer on 27 March 1946 I do not come under the law for the eradication of National Socialism and Militarism.

As head of the Powerplant installations of the Central German I.G. Works Group I worked for I.G. Farbenindustrie, Bitterfeld, from 1 April 1938 until the end of June 1945; during the last years I also had to act on behalf of the chief engineer, Dr. Buergin, ~~my colleague in the Vorstand~~ <sup>in the Vorstand.</sup> At my own request I was transferred from Leverkusen, where I had worked previously, to Bitterfeld because that post seemed desirable to me in order to make headway in my career as a power engineer and because as a human being Dr. Buergin was known to me as one of our most congenial members of the Vorstand. In that respect I was not disappointed in any respect.

2) While I attended the official conferences of plant and department heads I was not present during important special conferences held by the directors on labor questions.

That phase did not comprise part of my duties. However, on the basis of the practical handling of social policies and their effects I am able to make the following statements:

All of the important officials of the Bitterfeld plants, for a variety of self-evident reasons, constantly fought to retain as many of the German employees and laborers as possible. Because of heavy recruiting of German men for the Wehrmacht (Armed Forces) these efforts did not meet with permanent success. By the same token we were also unable to ward off the allocation of foreign labor. Directors and Betriebsfuehrer protested frequently when the promises which the foreigners claimed had been made to them at the time of their being recruited proved incompatible with provisions permitted and possible P.2 to the plants, as regards quartering, food and wages.

All of the I.G. Plants, and Leverkusen and Bitterfeld in particular, followed at all times the practice of giving the best in terms of care and food to the personnel and I never heard of an order in Bitterfeld which would have meant worse treatment for the foreigners. The camps were furnished as well as possible and Dr. Bulgin convinced himself of their being kept in good condition and, in particular, he ordered provisions for protective measures against air attacks as far as this was permitted by the authorities. The number of occupants was prescribed by the German Labor Front. I was once present during a conversation when Dr. Bulgin gave orders for reducing the number of occupants. In its general aspects the camp supervision was not in the hands of the plant, the Directors,

however, consistently tried to bring their influence to bear in a favorable manner and insofar as the Party approved of them tried to introduce members of their own plant staff into the administration, in order to bring in persons who, from the human point of view, were desirable and reliable. This did not meet with complete success, of course.

The kitchens were fitted out in an exemplary manner; there was a theater and a dining hall, washrooms, etc. The plant physician was known to me as a humane person, medical care was excellently organized. I never heard of special diseases, and I think I remember that there was, at times, less sickness among the foreigners than among the Germans.

3) The firm never raised difficulties with regard to vacations for foreigners. The number of those who returned was great, from which it can be concluded that the treatment was found to be satisfactory.

4) Some incidents came to my attention. In the winter of 1944 I learned from the acting works manager, Dr. Lang, - Dr. Buegin was away - that the Gestapo wanted to hang several men - I do not know whether they were prisoners of war, Eastern workers or other foreigners, and had asked of the plant management that gallows be erected and that they participate in the execution. This was rejected. I did not hear that action was taken along other lines. Since I lived in Leipzig and left the plant after office hours I do not know who witnessed the execution; in any case Dr. Buegin certainly did not.

5) The output of foreigners was, on the average, low. However, I have never noticed that Berlin or the Directorate

P.3 recommended other than normal measures for improving the output. Training courses were arranged, language guide manuals were prepared, and piece work was introduced as customary for the Germans. We were satisfied with whatever improvement could be achieved.

As an example that the plant management was not in favor of severe measures, reference may be made to the treatment of the Indians. Notwithstanding a genuine desire to comprehend them their laziness was unwarrantable. The plant management unsuccessfully made attempts to get rid of them. Because of its effect on the German workers it proved not annoying to view the slowness of the Indians. They also refused many types of work altogether. From negotiations with the interpreters it transpired that some god would forbid it. We gave up and left the selection of work to them. From time to time a certain output per day was agreed upon - actually a very moderate output - after the accomplishment of which the Indians would be permitted to return to the camp.

Many Germans complained because the foreigners were treated unduly well. Had the Directors wished to satisfy these elements they would have had to take drastic measures against the foreigners. They did not do so.

6) As regards Dr.Buergin's conduct in other respects I might say the following:

When questioned Dr.Buergin always told me that he did not attach any value to my being a Party member. At all times he also supported all the officials who, for reasons of race, were discriminated against by the Party; they were kept.

I remember that the secretary told me that Dr.Buergin would not



call for the decoration of a war economy leader or for the certificate which people were frequently urged to accept.

As far as I know the Bitterfeld production had been based upon peace requirements. Dr. Buegin was also of the opinion that the war was not necessary and that it was the greatest misfortune for the I.G. For power plant construction jobs over which I had jurisdiction the decisive consideration was always that they must be necessary, expedient and economically sound for peace-time production; in that case the construction was recommended by us. Beyond that power requirements - caused by compulsory production assignments - were covered by purchases from Reich power stations which had to build the plants.

The trench shelters against air attacks very soon proved inadequate and the building of bunkers was contemplated and also supported by Dr. Buegin. ~~The Organisation Todt (OT) did not authorize it.~~ <sup>Krauch</sup> Nevertheless I received the order from Dr. Buegin to take all necessary steps for the bunker construction. Several bunkers for approximately 10,000 men were then built and many thousands of tons of cement were used from our own factory which should have been made available by us to OT, and many laborers were kept away from working on construction jobs intended for production. The serious difficulties arising in that connection for individuals might possibly have led to very deplorable results had it not been for the fact that Dr. Krauch also covered us as far as he possibly could.

The air raid defenses thus created were available to everybody, also to the foreigners.

7) When the end of the war was definitely fore-shadowed Dr. Buegin did everything in order to avoid further losses of human life on both sides, in which respect he fully succeeded.



Orders to destroy and to paralyze plants were disregarded; I learned that no German troops were to be permitted to enter the plant and this was carried through.

8) I cannot remember having heard at any time a political speech by Dr. Baergin in favor of the NSDAP, which I must qualify by stating that my opportunities for making observations along such lines were altogether very limited because, whenever possible, I refrained from attending any meetings.

Muenich, 5 February 1948

(signed.) Karl Honcky

Doc. Record No. 929

This is to certify that the signatures as above appended by Professor Dr. Ing. Karl Honcky, Director of the Stadt. Elektrizitaetswerk (Municipal Power Works), 33r Zweibrueckenstrasse, Muenchen, are authentic, and that he identified himself to be that person by producing his "Komm-Karte" (identification certificate).

Muenich, 5 February 1948

The Notary's Deputy

(signed.) Max Voigert

the officially appointed deputy for  
Justizrat Heinrich Hippler, a Notary.

(encl)

Doc. Rec. No. 929

fee 4,00 RM

doc. stamp 0,12

total 4,12 RM

(signed.) Voigert

This is to certify that this is a true and correct copy of the above document.

Nuremberg, 10 February 1948

(signed.) Dr. Werner Schubert

Defense Counsel of the Defendant Baergin

COPY

A c1

A.21 4

The Delegate for the Four Year Plan

Illegible

The Plenipotentiary General  
for Special Problems of Chemical  
Production.Berlin W 9, the  
Saarlandstrasse 128  
Tel. 120048 Hand-  
written  
Teletype: K 1 - 113  
Telegram address:  
Gebechem

Sign: I T 1c Dr.Sdl/Stz

Diary No. 93 202/41

Ref. to:

Post stamped I.G. Bitterfeld  
21 July 1941Re: Employment of Belgian and French Fitter and Building  
Worker Squads in the Chemical Production Plan.S.V. Social Dept. Bivu.Welfen ari.  
To theI.G. Farbenindustrie  
AktiengesellschaftBitterfeld

1.) Contracts: Since, in spite of detailed instructions to the plants by division T and by my representatives, there seem to be still some doubts, it is pointed out once more that - as far as possible - the fitters and building workers contracts have to be concluded prior to the employment of the squads and to be sent in triplicate with both signatures to division T for the purpose of presenting them for approval to the Reich Labor Ministry. A further copy of the contract is given to the competent representative of the Gebechem (Plenipotentiary General for Special Problems of Chemical Production) for his information.

The contract has to remain within the specimen contract sent to you which was authorized by the Reich Ministry for Labor and has to contain at least the following passage unabridged and literally: "Foreign manpower employed is subject, for the duration of employment, to the German rules regarding labor law,

- 2 -

social insurance law and tax law, in force within the German Reich territory, including the German tariff regulations applying to the working locality in question. The payment of wages, therefore to every foreign worker, in accordance with the German respective regulations, has to take place at the place of work. The contributions to German social insurance and taxes are to be remitted by the employer for account of the loaning firm to the competent German offices. The foreign workers, therefore, are to be treated like German workers of identical standing; also during an air raid alarm they are to be paid in accordance with the rules applying to German workers.

Illegible handwritten  
Remark.

-2-

In many cases contracts are sent in which have been signed by only one party. In one case even the figures for the number of workers are missing in a contract sent in. Things like that must be avoided at all cost. As far as no contracts exist as yet in regard to fitters with the division T or have been returned for the purpose of alteration, they are to be handed <sup>in</sup> keeping with regulations, as quickly as possible, since otherwise difficulties with the Reich Labor Ministries must be expected.

## 2.) Signing of Contracts:

As a rule once the preliminary discussions in Brussels or Paris are over, a request is made to the works concerned to send a representative with the necessary specialized knowledge and powers of attorney to Brussels or Paris for conclusion of the contract. It is advisable - as far as justified by requirements - to take along also a works doctor, so that the examination of the workers

- 3 -

may take place on the spot.

### 3.) Billetting and Messing:

On employing the workers billets must be assured and there must be the authorization of the competent defense office. In <sup>the</sup> case of French workers it is necessary that, for the preparation of the food, which has to be suited to French taste, a special cooking stove should be made available. If a large scale employment of fitters or building workers takes place, then, as a rule, the workers bring along their own cook. On conclusion of a contract care has to be taken, if necessary, to send along also one or several interpreters.

The food ration of the Frenchmen contains every day a certain quantity of wine (half a liter to one liter). The works have to see to it that corresponding quantities of wine and tobacco are available. Supply difficulties as far as they cannot be dealt with by the works themselves, are to be reported to my division T.

### 4.) Employment:

Under all circumstances strict attention must be paid to the employment of foreign workers in accordance with their trade experience. In one case the lack of linguistic knowledge on the part of the personnel of the firm responsible has led to the employment in wrong occupations on starting work and to correspondingly futile employment of the workers.

As a rule the employment of foreigners has to take place under the immediate direction, instruction and supervision of the works management in charge. Should it be unavoidable that the squads have to be



- 4 -

- partly or fully employed with a German assembly or building firm engaged on the building site, then the responsible firm (the German contracting party) must not leave the foreign workers to the arbitrary disposal of the German building or assembly firm working on the building site, but care must be taken that the foreigners, also in this case, remain employed according to their occupational suitability. In two cases in which there were serious complaints about the qualifications of foreign group workers, the examination on the building site showed that the foreign workers allocated had been sent to the German building and assembly firms without any detailed information and owing to lack of information were employed as helpers, woodcutters and such. If such false directions are not being stopped immediately withdrawal and employment elsewhere of the groups may be expected.

#### 5.) Leave Questions:

The French and Belgian fitters and building workers will be treated like German workers in comparable jobs as groups also with regard to the right to paid leave. However, the foreign employer frequently can persuade his men to work in German only, if he promises them certain unpaid leave, special leave or journeys home for family visits. In the contract between the order firm and the foreign firm the following has been provided relative thereto:



- 5 -

"If, through any measures taken by the foreign firm, there is a temporary shortage of men, the firm can be forced to provide replacements in order to prevent work being held up."

It is in the interest of keeping up the willingness to work on the part of the group workers, to meet the foreign employer as far as possible in the question of the short-term unpaid leave. This may be done for instance, by making an agreement with the foreign employer that no demand will be made for the putting up of replacements for loss of workers as long as this loss does not exceed 10% of the group total. Should it be possible to obtain a special ruling in the leave question with the Belgian and French fitters squads, this will be announced in due time.

#### 6.) Foreign Currency Permits:

As soon as the contract has been signed and you know when and how many men will be employed on the building site, a corresponding application for foreign exchange in duplicate, is to be made regarding the sums to be transferred calculated by you from wage rates and bonuses (including travel expenses). In <sup>the</sup> case of periodic remittances it is advisable to remit regularly, at the proper dates, a fixed percentage of the probable total amounts (70 - 80%) and to transfer the balances only at longer intervals. This will prevent delays.

-4- The applications for foreign exchange are to be sent

- 6 -

in the prescribed form (see inclosed specimen), in triplicate, to my division T and from there they will immediately be forwarded to the Reich Ministry for economics for ratification. This office will notify within a few days the competent foreign exchange office, to whom you have sent a copy of the foreign exchange application you handed in, for their information. In this way the authorisation for a transfer can be obtained in the shortest possible time.

#### 7.) Remittances Procedure:

After receipt of the permit to remit, the remittance due is to be made by telegram immediately (the first time including any traveling expenses incurred). Since as a rule, up to the arrival of the first remittances abroad, advance payments are being made from a special account to the foreign firms, repayable by the German firms, as a matter of principle, in every case, a foreign exchange application has to be made for transfer to the account of the Belgian or French firm and simultaneously to one of the accounts listed below, depending on whether the payments are to be made in Belgium or in France.

- a) Belgium: Continental Bank, account "België-remittances", Dr. Handloser or Dr. von Schalling.
- b) France: Banque de Paris et des Pays Bas S.A., Paris, A.G. Parbenindustrie, compte special "allemands" Dr. Feitscher or Dr. Handloser.

All amounts which have been paid in advance from one of the two mentioned special accounts for the German firm are to be refunded immediately by telegram.

The method of transfer mentioned to you earlier

- 7 -

to France, by way of account 1006 of the Reich Credit Bank, can no longer be used. As far as payments were applied for in this way in previous applications for foreign exchange, your competent foreign exchange office is to be notified that this is to be replaced by the normal telegraphic remittance to the above mentioned Paris account.

8.) Special matters:

A number of fitting squad contracts, especially in work in the defense district VI, had to be changed by the beginning of June 1941 to the new principle, which is in keeping with the new regulations of the Reich Labor Ministry. As to the question of <sup>social</sup> contributions and taxes for the period prior to the beginning of June 1941 special orders will be given to the firms in question. As far as in such cases, prior to the alteration of contracts, the German firm made deductions for taxes and social contributions which had not yet been transferred to the competent governmental offices, this has to be done forthwith, irrespective of the final settlement of these questions.

By order  
signed: Signature (illegible)

## C o n t r a t .

- 1) German Firm: In the following called "employer"
- 2) Foreign Firm: In the following called "leasing firm".

The employer gives to the leasing firm the execution of fitters' work in particular

.....

As far as it is not possible to fix a fixed amount for the work to be done, payment of the workers provided by the leasing firm will be made according to hours worked. As the rate of pay to the leasing firm the following is agreed upon in this case:

Foreman fitter	RM	per hour
Mechanic	"	" "
Welder	"	" "
Fitters' mates etc.	"	" "

In addition the following extra allowance will be paid to the leasing firm:

Foreman fitter	RM	per day
all others	"	" "

The leasing firm undertakes to provide the following workers for the completion of the work assigned to it:

Foreman fitters  
Mechanics  
A-Welders  
B-Welders  
Fitters' mates.

The work of the fitters groups will be done according to orders by the employer.

Billposting and feeding of the workers will be undertaken by the employer. For this the leasing



- 9 -

firm will be charged per day RM ..... The rations will comply with the German regulations in force.

- 2- The costs for the journey there and back will be borne by the employer. The leasing firm undertakes to let the workers supplied by it work up to 60 hours per week. For additional work above 48 hours per week they will receive, in addition to the pay rates mentioned in the beginning, for every additional hour an extra <sup>payment</sup> of 25 %, for work on Sun- and holidays an extra <sup>payment</sup> of 50 % for the first 8 working hours and one of 75 % for each additional working hour.

In the case of loss of workers (through leave, sickness of long duration etc.) the following applies: The leasing firm undertakes to promote the work assigned to it with all the resources available; to it; should, through some measure of the leasing firm, a temporary shortage of workers arise, <sup>it</sup> can be forced to furnish replacements in order to prevent working delays.

Foreign workers employed are subject, for the duration of their employment, to the German regulations regarding labor law, social insurance law and tax law in force within the German Reich territory, including the German tariff applying to the working place in question. The payment of wages, therefore, to all foreign workers has to be made in accordance with the local German wage regulations. The contributions



- 10 -

to the German social insurance and the taxes are to be remitted by the employer for account of the loaning firm to the competent German offices. The foreign workers, therefore, are to be treated like German workers of identical standing; also during air-raid alarms they are to be paid in accordance with the regulations applying to German workers.

All disputes arising out of these agreements will be subject to jurisdiction by

The literal and correct copy of the above document is certified.

Nuremberg, 21 January 1948

signed: Dr. Erner Schubert

Defense Counsel to the

defendant EMBERG

Copy

Affidavit.

I, Dipl.-Ingénieur Friedrich D r e s b e r g , born 18 February 1910 at Herborn (Dillkreis) resident of Delitzsch, Aug. Bebelstrasse 17, have been duly warned that I render myself liable to punishment in case of false statements on my part. I declare hereby on oath that my statements conform with the truth and were made in order to be presented as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI - Case 6 - at the Palace of Justice Nuremberg, Germany.

1) I was a member of the NSDAP since 1931. As former head of the retraining workshop for foreigners, of psychotechnical suitability testing and of the piece-work rate-fixing-department (Akkordstelle) of the former I.G. Farbenindustrie, Werk Sued at Bitterfeld, I make the following statement regarding the training of foreign civilian workers:

2) The foreigners arriving at Bitterfeld for our works were first of all questioned by the employee department about their personal data and then billeted according to nationality in one of the hut camps, which were situated in the vicinity of the plant. Then the workers were examined by the plant doctor. Physical weaknesses and shortcomings ascertained there were taken into account in the distribution to the various places of work or led to the rejection of the worker. After that the men came in groups of 20 to 40 to the labor office, of which I was in charge, for the psychotechnical suitability test. For about 2 hours with the help of interpreters and printed forms the various mental and, with the help of simple technical means, also the physical abilities, such as general intelligence, proficiency in arithmetic co-ordinating ability, ability to recognize form as well as manual dexterity were tested. After

evaluation of the test-sheets, a division of the examinees into two groups took place. Those men who had mechanical knowledge or manual dexterity - about 20% of the total number - were put down for employment in the plants with mechanical production and for the repair shops, while the majority of the foreigners according to ability, medical report and needs were allocated to the chemical plants.

3.) Those men who stated that they had learned a trade which was of interest to us were then instructed in our training workshop, to produce a piece of work typical of their trade. If the proficiency shown there came up to our standards, the men were immediately transferred to one of our workshops or mechanical plants and there they received the same hourly wage as the German workers employed on similar work.

4.) Those who possessed manual dexterity, but were without the necessary practice, were transferred to our training workshop and there received a methodical training as <sup>semi-</sup>unskilled workers. This workshop comprised, according to requirements, 60 to 80 places of work with one training foreman and several training journeymen. One of the training journeymen was a foreigner whose special duty it was to bring to the attention of the head of the shop requests and complaints of the trainees

- 3 -

regarding food, billets, clothing and other personal worries. As far as possible these wishes were fulfilled. In the workshop we manufactured cooking and messing instruments ourselves as well as other articles for daily needs, and every trainee was given the opportunity, outside the planned training, to make for himself some sort of useful article. During the training course,

p.3 which took, according to the progress of the worker, 6 to 10 weeks, a number of pieces of work were produced and evaluated. During that period the foreigners, to improve their conversation with German workers, were given simple German language instruction. For the period of their training they were paid the wage of an unskilled worker (0.68 RM per hour).

5.) After completion of the training course the foreigners went into our mechanical shops and started productive work. Regarding payment and the issue of additional food ration cards they were put on equal footing with German workers. In consideration of their low initial output they did not do piece work in the beginning. Once their output rose to about 60-80 % of the comparable German average, the hourly wage was raised to that of a skilled worker. On passing the 80% mark of the German normal output the hourly wage rose to that of a skilled craftsman (0.85 RM per hour) and the foreigners were given a share, just as the German craftsmen, in the piece rate and in the piece rate extra wages reached.

Bitlarfeld, 28 January 1948

signed: Friedrich D r e h o s.

- 42 -

- 4 -

Number 199 of the document roll for 1948.

I hereby certify the above signature of the diploma  
engineer Friedrich Dretes of Dellitzsch, August Bebelstr.  
17, identified by his labor card No. 2200 of the  
district office for labor and social welfare in  
Dellitzsch of 8 January 1947.

Dittorfeld, 28 January 1948

signed: Dr. Albert Bohlen

(seal)

(notary)

Statement of Charges:

Value: 3000.-- RM  
Doc article 39 AKO 4.-- RM  
Turnover tax -.12 RM  
4.12 RM

signed: Dr. Bohlen  
Notary

- - - -

The literal and correct copy of the above document  
is herewith certified.

Munich, 4 February 1948.

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the  
Defendant BIERGIE



C o p yA F F I D A V I T .

I, Dr. Gustav Siebel, born 12 June 1900 at Freudenberg/ Westphalia, resident of Gosspingen, have been duly warned that I render myself liable to punishment in case of false statements on my part. I declare hereby on oath that my statements conform with the truth and were made in order to be presented as evidence to the Military Tribunal No. VI - Case 9 - at the Palace of Justice, Munsterberg, Germany.

Since 1937 I was a member of the NSDAP, in July 1947 the denazification board classified me as a follower (Hitlaeufer).

Concerning the employment of foreigners in Bitterfeld during the war I can state the following:

In my scientific laboratory (called metal laboratory) were 15 foreigners out of a complement of about 120 persons. Among them were 5 Russian chemists, 7 Russian female chemists, 1 Spanish engineer, 1 Czech metallurgist and 2 Dutchmen, who were turners and mechanics. Since our requests for German workers could not be fulfilled, these workers were allocated to us by our social department. The Russian workers, who for the greater part had come from Cherecow and had brought along their families, stressed again and again that they had come voluntarily and wanted to help us.

The Russians lived with their families in huts. At the beginning, of course, they complained about various hardships such as a curfew, wearing of the eastern-badge, etc., which were prescribed by the governmental labor offices.

- 2 -

The works time and again insisted that these rules <sup>should be</sup> relaxed so that after a while the foreigners, for all practical purposes, had the same rights as our German workers. We were very content with the work and the behavior of the Russians. They were later on treated and paid like technical employees. On their national holidays they had leave.

Also the other foreigners were employed according to their skills. With the exception of the two Dutchmen their work was satisfactory. The Spaniard and the Czech lived privately in the town while the Dutchmen were billeted in a camp. The foreigners in my metal laboratory had the same working hours and generally the same privileges as German workers of identical standing; also in regarding food, for instance, they received as I was told, the same allocation of milk as our men for their work in the metal laboratory.

Dr. BUEGIN demanded this equality and, generally, the decent treatment of the foreign co-workers in every way. From many examples it transpires that Dr. BUEGIN was in no way a convinced National Socialist.

It was known generally in our circle that Dr. BUEGIN did not get on with the district leader (Kreisleiter).

Dr. BUEGIN liked to make ironical remarks about the party, so that a party member once proposed the concentration camp for him.

I can not recall that Dr. BUEGIN personally once held a big works rally.

- 3 -

Goeppingen, 23 February 1948

signed: Mr. Gustav Siebel

The above signature executed in my presence, by Mr. Gustav Siebel in Goeppingen, known to me personally and as being capable of transacting business, I hereby certify.

Goeppingen, 23 February 1948

signed: Mr. Theodor Pressler

Seal

Public Notary

U.S. No. 124

Estimated value R. 3 000.--

According to Article 35 RKQ R. 2.--  
147

Turnover tax " 0.24

---

R. 2.24

I hereby certify the literal and correct copy of the above document.

Muenberg, 25 February 1948.

signed: Mr. Werner Schubert

Defense Counsel for the defendant Buegin.

AFFIDAVIT

I, Dr. Kurt Schneider, born in Nuernberg on 1 May 1902, residing in Nuernberg, have first been warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I hereby declare on oath that my statements are the truth and that they were made in order to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI - Case 6 - in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

1) I wish to state at the outset that I was not a member of the NSDAP or of any of its formations. As a result, and also because of my non-Aryan wife, I was exposed to many attacks by the Party. Dr. Buergin always took my part in such attacks and he kept me in my position with the I.G. Farbenindustrie.

2) I was chief of the department for scrap metal processing in the Bitterfeld-South Works of the I.G. Farbenindustrie. In this department which was put in operation in August 1939, mostly aluminum scrap was processed - although a very small amount of magnesium scrap was also processed there - and alloys were made out of it. The persons who worked in this department numbered 587 wage-workers and 39 salaried employees on 1 January 1945, according to the data which I took from the report on my activity in this department for 1944. The employees included 195 male and 62 female foreign workers and 62 prisoners of war. The foreigners belonged to about 9 different nations. There also were Eastern workers among them. The Croatian women were outstandingly good at work.

3) Some foreigners were employed in the scrap metal

- 2 -

processing department at statistical work (including a Russian for mathematical evaluations), and at commercial office work. Some foreigners were employed in the metallurgical laboratory, including a university professor. The foreign women, most of whom worked only for half a day, did the same work as the more numerous German women, namely, the sorting of metal, cleaning, and work on the ~~puddle~~ <sup>ingot-casting</sup> ~~pouring~~ equipment. The heavier and more responsible jobs, however, which were given to women because of the man-shortage, were performed by the German women. For example, some of the German women were crane operators. Children were not employed in my department. At first, it was also intended that prisoners of war should not be used in the plant for security reasons; later they were used, however, in individual cases. Most of them were employed in unloading squads and similar yard work. Prisoners of concentration camps were not employed in my department; moreover, I have no knowledge of their having been employed at all in the Bitterfeld Works.

P. 2

4) The workers were requisitioned by the plant at the Personnel Department of the Bitterfeld Works, which, in turn, forwarded the requisitions to the general Social Welfare Department in Weifen (Dr. Forschmann). Their negotiations with the labor authorities decided what workers were allocated to me. I had no influence in this matter. Since there was no piece-work in my department, the foreigners, just like the Germans



- 3 -

received production bonuses for certain pay periods - about RM 10.- per week. The working hours in the plant were distributed as follows, according to my records in December 1944:

Of the persons working 20.1 % had 12 hours  
 7.1 % had 10 hours  
 6.8 % had 9 hours  
 53.4 % had 8 hours  
 and 12.8 % had half-day work.

During the course of the war the head authorities in Berlin once prescribed a 72-hour week for reasons of war economy. This met strong opposition in general at the very beginning, and the I.G. soon dropped it, after it found that ~~German~~<sup>obviously</sup> production decreased under such protracted working hours.

5) As to vacations, I remember that, while previously leaves and home-trips could be regularly granted, from 1944 on a general ban on leave was introduced, for Germans as well as for foreigners. In this ban on leave we had far greater difficulties with the Rhinelanders who had been transferred to Bitterfeld than with the foreign workers.

I know from observation something about Camp "Marie" and Camp "Antonia" where foreign workers were housed. In view of the constantly worsening conditions of food supply during the war I found the provisions there very satisfactory. Naturally, the Germans complained just as much as the foreigners over the food, which became worse in the later years of the war. From the orders of Dr. Buehrig I know that

- 4 -

the best obtainable food was procured for the foreign workers in the camps. They had it better than the native German workers to the extent that they were able to buy extra food in the black market. On the other hand, they resold the food to the Germans, and besides that, all sorts of other things, such as shoes, could be bought in the camps for the foreigners. The money that circulated among the foreigners, who required only a very small part of their wages for their daily existence, was extraordinarily large. They also gambled for very large sums on a comparable scale. This frequently became known through requests for wage advances.

7) Apart from such trouble the foreign workers were visibly satisfied in my department; until the last they remained peaceful and trustworthy and the best of terms prevailed between the foreigners and the Germans, both on the job and in private. Even after the capitulation the foreign workers maintained good behaviour in all respects until their departure. In the further work, however, which then consisted in the taking of inventories for the most part, they naturally had no great interest. During the war their work was better than the work of the Germans to a certain extent.

8) In regard to the hanging of a Russian in the vicinity of our labor camp, I certainly heard of this subsequently, but I do not know anything concerning the motives for it or about its perpetration. Furthermore, I do not know whether workers of the I.G. were involved, or who the persons were who had

- 5 -

a hand in the hanging. I know definitely that Dr. Buehrgin was absent from Bitterfeld on the day in question.

Muornberg, 6 February 1948

(signed): Dr. Kurt Schneider

I hereby certify and attest the above signature of Dr. Kurt Schneider, residing in Muornberg, which was executed before Wolfgang Thuebald, defense clerk in Military Tribunal VI.

Muornberg, 6 February 1948.

(signed): Wolfgang Thuebald

- - - - -

Certified true copy of above document.

Muornberg, 9 February 1948

(signed): Dr. Werner Schabert  
Defense Counsel for the  
Defendant Buehrgin

- 51 -

- 1 -

AFFIDAVIT

I, Hans Hoerse, born on 9 February 1899 in Sensbeck, residing in Lebmachtorsen, have duly been warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I heroby declare on oath that my statements are the truth and that they were made in order to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI - Case 6 - in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

The photographs Nos. 1 - 12 are photostats of original pictures which show parts of the shelter camps Marie and Antonio for the foreign workers of the I.G. Farben in Bitterfeld.

The photographs on the opposite side show:

- 1) Lavatory equipment with hot and cold water in the huts of Camp Antonio;
- 2) Small instruction and recreation room in Camp Antonio;
- 3) First-aid room in Camp Antonio;
- 4) Sick quarters in Camp Antonio.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948

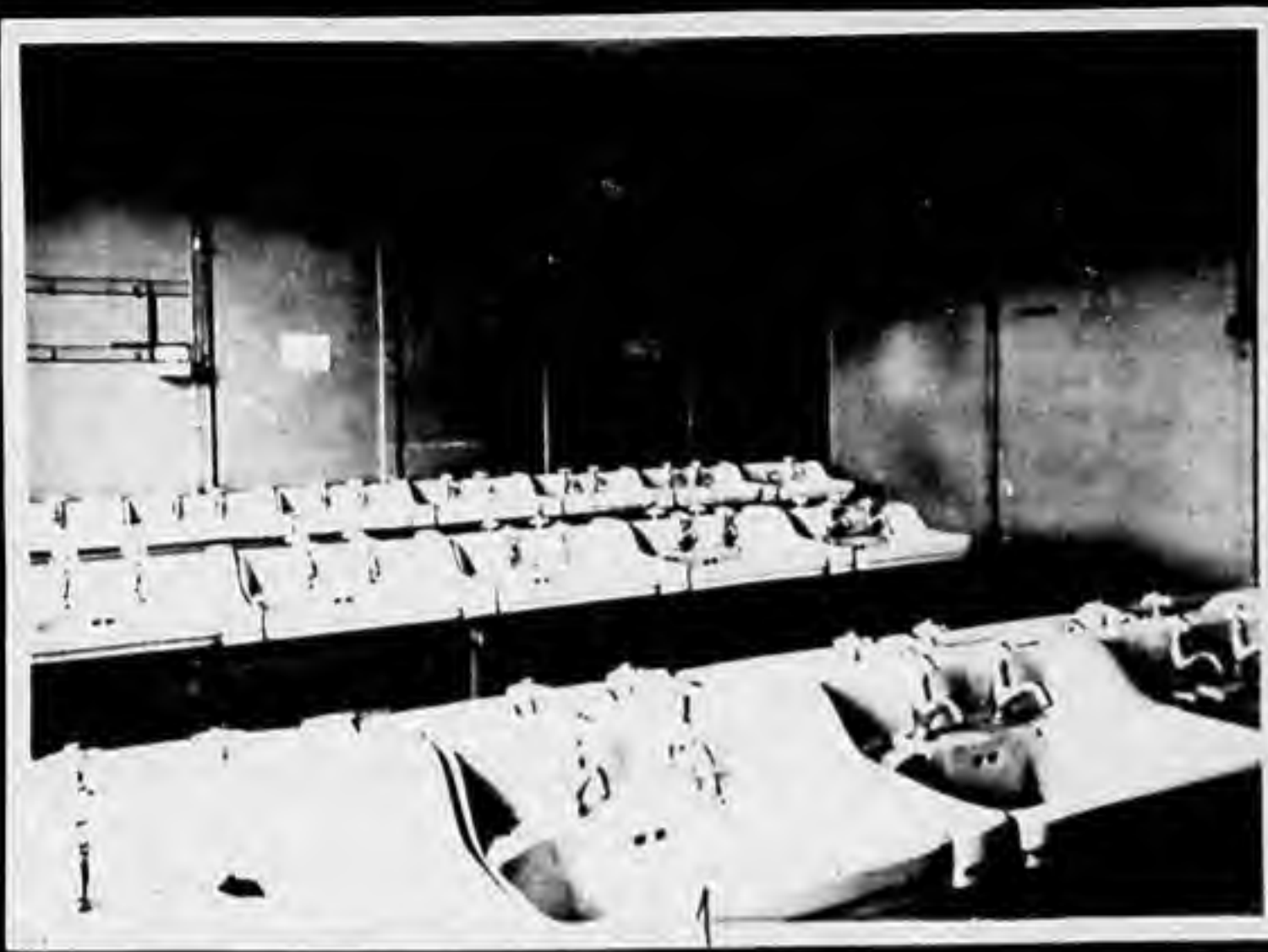
(signed) : Hans Hoerse

I heroby certify and attest the above signature of Herr Hans Hoerse, residing in Lebmachtorsen, which was executed before me, Wolfgang Theobald, defense clerk in Military Tribunal No. VI.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948

(signed): Wolfgang Theobald.







- 2 -

AFFIDAVIT

I, Hans Hoeras, born on 9 September 1899 in Sensbeck, residing in Lebnachterson, have been duly warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I hereby declare on oath that my statements are the truth and that they were made in order to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI - Case 6 - in the Palace of Justice, Nuernberg, Germany.

The photographs Nos. 1 - 12 are photostats of original pictures which show parts of the shelter camps Mario and Antonio for foreign workers of the I.G. Farben in Bitterfeld.

The photographs on the opposite side show:

- 5) Canton in Camp Antonio
- 6) Preparation and distribution of the cold rations in Camp Antonio
- 7) Barbershop in Camp Antonio
- 8) Food rations being issued in the community mess-hall of Camp Antonio.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948.

(signed): Hans Hoeras

I hereby certify and attest the above signature of Herr Hans Hoeras, residing in Lebnachterson, which was executed before me, Wolfgang Theobald, defense clerk in Military Tribunal No. VI.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948

(signed): Wolfgang Theobald.



- 3 -

AFFIDAVIT

I, Hans Jaerze, born on 9 September 1899 in Sens-  
beck, residing in Lebmachterson, have been duly warned  
that I shall be liable to punishment if I give a  
false affidavit. I hereby declare on oath that my  
statements are the truth and that they were made in  
order to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal  
No. VI - Case 6 - in the Palace of Justice, Nuern-  
berg, Germany.

The photographs Nos. 1 - 12 are photostats of  
original pictures, which show parts of the shelter  
camps Mario and Antonio for foreign workers of the  
I.G. Farben in Bitterfeld.

The photographs on the opposite side show :

- 9) Community hall in Camp Mario,
- 10) Kitchen in Camp Mario,
- 11) View of Camp Mario,
- 12) Community hall in Camp Mario.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948

(signed): Hans Jaerze

I hereby certify and attest the above signature  
of Herr Hans Jaerze, residing in Lebmachterson, which  
was executed before me, Wolfgang Theobald, defense  
clerk in Military Tribunal No. VI.

Nuernberg, 12 February 1948

(signed): Wolfgang Theobald

Certified true copy of above document.

Nuernberg, 16 February 1948

(signed) Dr. Verner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the defendant  
Buergin





270 L25

Copy. I 9 A 35 244  
illegible Initials

ADMINISTRATION Bitterfeld, 10 August 1943  
OF THE (GEMEINSCHAFTSLAGER)  
CAMP COMMUNITY MARIE (stamp):  
CAMP MARIE BITTERFELD  
over Bitterfeld Secretariat

Received: 10 August 1943  
Answered:

1/2

To  
I.G. Farbenindustrie  
Directorate Secretariat

Bitterfeld.

Subject: Ordinance of 14 July 1943 on the housing in  
camps of labor forces during the war.

Specifically: Obligation to submit information according  
to Article 2 of the Ordinance.

According to Article 2 of the above Ordinance the  
following information must be submitted without delay  
to the competent supervising authorities (Gewerbeauf-  
sichtsamt), Wittenberg):

- a) Location of the accommodation
- b) Number of the workers who are to be housed in  
camps or who are already so accommodated
- c) Name of the person responsible for maintaining  
the regulations of the above Ordinance.

Kindly take the necessary action to have the infor-  
mation submitted, either through your office or Dr.  
Porschmann's Office at Gelsen.

Below are given the numbers of beds available and  
occupied as of 1 August 1943:

Camp	Available beds	Occupied beds as of 1 August 1943
I	3 800	3 358
II	1 000	800
IV	2 000	1 458
V	1 000	922
VI	1 300	1 028
VII	130	103
VIII	700	625
IX	900	850
total:	10 830	9 144

Illegible  
writing

Illegible  
initials

over



- 2 -

The mail addresses of our camps are:

Community Camp (Gemein-  
schaftsleager) I Marie  
Camp Marie  
over Bitterfeld

Community Camp II Marie  
Camp Marie  
over Bitterfeld

Community Camp IV Antonio  
Camp Antonio  
over Bitterfeld

Community Camp V Elsa  
Camp Elsa  
over Bitterfeld

Community Camp VI  
for Eastern workers  
Camp Marie  
over Bitterfeld

Community Camp VII KHD  
Bitterfeld  
Zoppolinstr.

Community Camp VIII  
Hermine  
Camp Hermine  
over Bitterfeld

Community Camp IX  
Women's Camp  
Bitterfeld  
Auss. Zorbliger Strasse

ADMINISTRATION  
OF THE MARIE CAMP COMMUNITY  
CAMP MARIE  
over Bitterfeld

by order (signed) illegible  
signature

-----

Certified true copy of above document.

Mueraberg, 23 January 1948

(signed): Dr. Lerner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the defendant  
Buegin.

Copy  
AFFIDAVIT  
-----

I, Carl Nobelung, born on 14 June 1882 in Wettelredo, residing in Weidenhausen, Kreis Biedenkopf, have been duly warned that I shall be liable to punishment if I give a false affidavit. I hereby declare on oath that my statements are the truth and that they have been made in order to be submitted in evidence to Military Tribunal No. VI - Case 6 - in the Palace of Justice, Muensterberg, Germany.

I was a member of the NSDAP since 1 May 1937; I hold no office (Amt). I was also<sup>3</sup> member of the DAP and the German Red Cross. I was de-Nazified by the B procedure.

1) For 38 years I was a plant manager at home and abroad. When the department of which I had charge had to be shut down pursuant to the war measures of 1942, the German Labor Front decided to use me as a camp leader for foreign workers' camps because of my many years' experience in leadership and my knowledge of foreign countries and languages. The Regional Labor Office (Landesarbeitsamt) in Frankfurt on Main drafted me for compulsory service and assigned me to a course of training for camp leaders which lasted several weeks. I finished this course with excellent results. Then, after the Reich headquarters of the German Labor Front had given me a compulsory service assignment, I trained at a large camp for foreigners, later took charge of this camp, and, after a while, I was transferred to Ludwigschan to take over a camp for Italians of the I.G. Farbenindustrie which was occupied by 1,400 men. This entire camp with 5,000 inmates in all was totally destroyed by an air raid.

P.2 2) From 1 November 1943 I served as a camp leader with I.G. in Bitterfeld, first in Camp "Antonio" for two months,

- 2 -

and then in the Main Camp "Mario" for one month. Then I became deputy Oberlagerführer (Senior Camp Leader). Near the end of the war I had to take over Camp "Antonio", which was occupied by 5,000 men, and I was in charge of it until 21 April 1945. In this position I was hired and paid by the I.G., like all other salaried employees in the camp. In disciplinary matters the Camp personnel was subject to the I.G. according to the employment contract; in practice, however, the instructions for our work came from the German Labor Front, which exercised supervision over all the community camps for indigenous and foreign personnel, in agreement with the Government. The functionaries of the DAF frequently visited and inspected the I.G. camps. The DAF issued many orders, some of which were impractical and many of which went beyond, or interfered with, the interests of the Werke. The Werke management, however, always accepted all suggestions which were sound, useful, or advantageous to the camp inmates, a policy which was particularly due to Dr. Baergin. In such cases no regard was given to expense, for altogether things were always done with surprising generosity in the camp administration at the I.G. in Bitterfeld as in Ludwigshafen. Moreover, the interest and the practical measures taken by the I.G. for the welfare of the camp inmates were properly recognized at the frequent inspections of the Bitterfeld Camps by the Gau and Reich inspectors of the DAF.

3) The following belonged to Camp Community "Mario": Camps "Mario", "Antonio", "Hermine", "Elsa", the camp for Eastern workers, and the Women's Camp. The POW camps P.3 were located on the same site; these were under the supervision of the Wehrmacht. Camp "Mario" was the base camp, and supplied all the camps with food, canteen goods, kitchen equipment, linen, etc. It had, for the use of all the camp inmates, a well-equipped shoe-repair shop, a tailor shop, machine shop, carpenter shop, a large laundry,

- 3 -

central canteen, a storeroom for food, vegetables and potatoes, very efficient and modern disinfecting equipment, a large infirmary, and, finally, a children's home and a large and very modern hospital. In addition each camp had an infirmary with separate rooms for contagious diseases, a canteen, a large kitchen, and a community hall. The medical service and nursing personnel was of the highest standard. Furthermore, all the camp inmates, especially the seriously-ill and the pregnant women, had access to the I.G. Clinic in Lelien and to the hospitals in Bitterfeld. Thus the medical care was exemplary. The garbage and waste disposal services were also carefully and efficiently administered.

4.) The camp inmates were sheltered in huts of various sizes, with 100 to 160 beds and with dormitories for 8 to 20 persons. Private rooms were available for families. Every person had a locker. Each hut had central heating, flush toilets, shower and tub baths, and convenient washing facilities with hot and cold water. Only a few older huts of previous times had the toilets outside; these were excellently installed, however. Bathhouse attendants looked after the large bathing facilities. In respect of sanitary and hygienic conditions the I.G. camps at Bitterfeld were of the highest standard.

5) The food provisions for the foreigners were the same as for the Germans; with a few exceptions the P.4 large kitchens of the camps provided the full rations. A diet kitchen was maintained for sick persons. Everywhere in the huts were small kitchens, where everyone could do his own cooking to his particular liking. The foreigners who had extra-ration cards for heavy workers and very heavy workers - and these were the majority - could purchase good, fresh supplies in the camp canteens.



- 4 -

In general the camp rations were good, ample and tasty, so that all the people were healthy and in a well-nourished condition. The I.G. also gave out an extra ration of soup in the Works. Only when the bread rations had to be curtailed and the evening soup dispensed with, upon an order by the Reich because of the increasing food shortage, did the situation become somewhat critical. But even so the camp inmates remained orderly and tractable, although the black market activities became more flourishing. Stealing and cheating then began to spread.

6) Special attention and considerable funds were devoted to leisure-time activities. There were many performances given by the German Labor Front, but also by the inmates of the camps themselves, in wholesome competition among the different nationalities. Furthermore, the camp inmates had complete liberty in coming and going, and they were allowed to attend the cinemas and the restaurants and bars in town. I always took particular pleasure in lending the fullest assistance to the people of the various countries in their free-time activities. Activities in sports were also not lacking; the main sports were boxing, soccer, football, handball and gymnastics. The inmates of the camps participated in hobbies extensively, and in all kinds of handicrafts, the products of which they demonstrated in exhibitions.

7) The base camp "Mario" used the office of the village community of Sandersdorf, in the district of which it was located; it also had an office for the P.5 Security Police and one for the Criminal Police. These police stations were urgently needed in view of the many different nationalities and their different mentalities. For it was serious fact that the worst elements with criminal records, some of them with long imprisonments, had been gotten rid of by many countries for labor recruitment to Germany. These people gave the police organizations a great deal of trouble by their behavior.



- 5 -

Nevertheless, I vouch for the fact that the police were very humane in their measures and prosecuted only the really serious cases, which they turned over to the regular courts.

The Gestapo and the Security Service (Sicherheitsdienst) were also concerned with the camps. They had confidence men and spies, who were unknown to the camp leaders, everywhere among the foreigners. Arbitrary action on the part of the Gestapo sometimes led to controversies with the camp leaders, whereupon the Gestapo would assert its despotic attitude. For example, the Gestapo caused certain people to disappear if they were suspicious, especially at night, without informing the camp management. The camp leader would then report these people as "absorbed" until the real cause for their disappearance was discovered. Upon inquiry at the Gestapo an evasive answer would be received. Then if the people returned after several weeks, it was found that they had served a sentence.

8. The camp leader used few disciplinary measures. In the case of serious violations fines were imposed, which went to the Red Cross or the US People's Welfare; usually, however, only reprimands were given. Extremely serious cases had to be reported to the Security Police P.6 or the Criminal Police. On the whole their officials were very humane and considerate, and they always cooperated satisfactorily with the camp management. The camp leader brought quarrelling foreigners to reason by talking to them. No camp leader ever used a fire-arm in self-defense, although a number of times very rebellious elements provoked such action. A good camp leader would take pride in living in peace and friendship with the inmates. Poorly qualified camp leaders were eliminated in good time by the Oberlegetimehrung (Main Administration for Workers' Camps) or by the DAF, partly at my instigation.

- 61 -

- 6 -

9) If the duty of a camp leader was properly conceived and performed, it was very strenuous and called for great sacrifices; he had no rest by day or night, and he was overburdened with duties. He was a prisoner in his own camp. A person who had a knowledge of foreign countries and languages, of human nature, a sense of justice, a good general education and a clean character, would have the most success<sup>in</sup> maintaining conditions of peace and contentment in a camp. The camp leaders were aided in carrying out their duties by the splendid cooperation of the management of the I.G., especially Dr. Buergin, who rendered exceptional service for the welfare of the foreigners in every way.

Heidenhausen, 9 February 1948.

(signed): Carl Hebelung

Authenticity of signature hereby certified.

Heidenhausen, 10 February 1948

The Buergemeister

(signed): signature

Certified true copy of above document.

Baernborg, 14 February 1948

(signed): Dr. Werner Schubert

Defense Counsel of the defendant Buergin.

- 62 -

AFFIDAVIT

I, Wilhelm Paerber, born on 22 September 1903 in Wiesdorf, residing at Bitterfeld, have been told that I am liable for punishment for giving false testimony. I hereby declare under oath that my statement conforms to the truth and was made to furnish evidence for Military Tribunal VI at the Palace of Justice, Wuerzburg, Germany.

I was a member of the NSDAP since 1935 and member of the SA since 1933 the last rank I held being that of a Truppfuehrer.

1) At the I.G. Farben-Works Bitterfeld I was entrusted with the administration of the workers' camps until the middle of 1943. Then, due to over-exertion, I had to take a long rest after which my duties in the camps were not again conferred upon me. Upon the basis of my activity as administrator of the camps I can give the following information:

The beginnings of the main camp Marie go back to 1937, when German workers came from elsewhere to Bitterfeld. The huts of the RAD type (Reich Labor Service type) though larger, were delivered by the firm Kaemper & Seeborg in Berlin. Even though the space for the individual man was considerably larger than the airspace of the RAD huts, there were a number of disagreeable features; for instance the toilets and wash-rooms could only be reached from the outside and the stove heating caused smoke and presented a fire danger. When, before the beginning of the war in 1939, it was necessary to enlarge the main camp and when later new camps became necessary, the administration succeeded in obtaining huts from the firm Holzbau G.m.b.H. in Berlin and the firm Hammer in Bitterfeld which had an interior access to the toilets and wash-rooms so that bothersome trips

- 2 -

through the open were eliminated. Only 8 instead of P.2 12 men could now be put into a room. Camp Maria, little by little, was equipped with remote control steam heating; the new camps were, from the start, equipped with central heating. It was not easy to convince the competent authorities of the expediency of these innovations and often the work had to be carried out by the management in Bitterfeld in the face of the prohibition and in circumvention of the prescribed orders. Although the new huts <sup>and</sup> were considerably more expensive than the RAD huts <sup>and</sup> needed much more wood, no means were spared to continue obtaining this type exclusively. And we succeeded in this in spite of a number of warnings that we would be punished, until later this was no longer possible due to the appointment of the General Plenipotentiary for hut construction by the Reich authorities and RAD huts then could no longer be obtained except through the Wehrmacht. We then helped ourselves along by constructing stone huts of a similar type with rooms for 12 - 15 men each.

2) All the wooden huts had double walls and were insulated internally with cardboard and glass wadding. Every room inhabitant had his bed and closet. Electric lighting, tables, foot stools and chairs were the furnishings. Bed sheets could be distributed until 1942, in some camps until even 1944. All the rooms were painted in a light color and here and there <sup>there</sup> were pictures on the walls. Every camp had wash-benches, individual wash-basins, shower, tub and foot bathes. Almost all camps had interior toilets flushed with water.

Each camp was equipped with kitchens <sup>and</sup> connecting with the mess rooms. The communal management, under which the camps stood at that time, equipped these kitchens with all modern



- 3 -

equipment.

3) The I.G. direction under Dr. Buergin did everything possible to equip the camps as comfortably and expediently as the difficult supply in war-time would permit. For example I shall mention the following installation of several disinfection centers, canalisation of all huts, barber shops, tailor and shoe repair shops, laundry, canteens for utility articles, camp book-shop for foreign languages, offices for legal information, branch offices of the various municipalities, camp post-offices, construction of paved streets and side-walks, air raid shelters.

4) The workers of the various nationalities were visibly impressed with the new accommodation. Some of the first arriving Slovaks in 1939 shed tears of joy when they saw that they could sleep in beds covered with white sheets and could have other ~~bed~~ <sup>blankets</sup> with which they were unacquainted at home where they even had to pay the Czechs the rental price of a crown for living in stables. Although, according to authoritative regulations, foreigners, on principle, could not live outside the camps in the municipalities, these regulations were later on relaxed for various nations. In many cases, however, these camp inmates preferred to continue living in camp and enjoy the comforts of the same.

5) French and Belgian firms sent workers whom they had recruited in their countries in a unit to Bitterfeld (so-called loan workers) and put them in our camps. These firms were, in the main, the following:

Jean Favre, Registration of Workers,  
Paris 18, 19, rue de la Nation,  
Unic, A. Petro, proprietor, Brussels



- 4 -

C.R. van Regenmontel, Antwerp,  
 Wals & Meyer, Electricité, à Blain-Mesnil,  
 22 Avenue du Suffren, (Seine et Oise)

5) The entire camp personnel was at first furnished by the direction of the camp community of Marie and after it was dissolved, by the I.G. Later, however, only camp leaders could be employed who were gotten through the German Labor Front. Camp leader activities were determined by the DAF (German Labor Front) according to regulations, and all our camp leaders worked according to these precepts. The camps were regularly visited by the DAF by virtue of legally granted rights. Deficiencies were P.4 immediately criticized and then eliminated by the firm as soon as possible.

According to the regulations of the health authorities 4 hospital and 2 epidemic beds had to be available for every 100 camp inmates. Every camp therefore had a model, clean and agreeably furnished dispensary. In addition to this in the main camp Marie a hospital containing 150 beds and a dentists clinic was constructed, which, however, was destroyed during the air raid on 16 January 1945. All camp inmates regularly underwent medical examinations by the regional doctor Medizinsirat Dr. Bochnke, and by Doctor Milzenfeldt from Wolfen, Dr. Einscke and Dr. Schubardt from Bitterfeld. They also paid special attention to the entire camp hygiene and regularly examined the food. Dr. Einscke was killed during the air raid on 16 January 1945.

8) Penal regulations for the camp inmates within the camps were not known to me. In camp Marie there was one arrest cell and in the camp for Eastern workers there were 8 arrest cells in which, however, only excessively drunk people and incurable thieves were

- 5 -

occasionally held until they were given over to the police or until they became sober again. It is true that the firm punished slackers with deductions of one-days' wages up to one-weeks' pay after preliminary warnings. Entirely incorrigible people had to be reported to the police.

9) In spite of constant warning and in spite of the precepts of the German Labor Front several camp leaders occasionally were guilty of misdeeds. But in their defense I must say that the foreign workers were not, from a point of view of character, at all the best and that even many camp inmates themselves were ashamed of their compatriots who, to an unbelievable extent, indulged in gambling and laziness and committed thefts and frauds. Whenever the I.G. heard about inappropriate treatment of camp inmates by the camp leaders, it or the community leadership noted out punishment and if necessary relieved the camp leaders of their duties and also reported punishable acts to the police. All in all the communal leadership and the works management did everything in their power to make the foreigners' stay in the camps as agreeable as possible.

10) Children were not employed in the works Bitterfeld and Wolfen-Parben, but juvenile Eastern workers of at least 15 years of age, were. Prisoners of concentration camps were never employed at Bitterfeld and Wolfen-Parben.

Bitterfeld, 28 January 1948  
signed: Wilhelm Paerbor

- 67 -

- 6 -

I hereby certify that the above signature executed in my presence by the commercial employee Wilhelm Paerber of Bitterfeld, Flechinger Ufer 20 is genuine on hand of the registration card,

Bitterfeld, 28 January 1948

signed:

(Seal): Sauermilch, ap., Justiz-Inspektor  
as document officer of the Secretariat  
of the Lower Court.

-----  
The literal and correct copy of the above document is hereby certified.

Nuernberg, 11 February 1948

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the defendant  
Buegin.

Copy.

APPIDAVIT

I, Karl Zabel, born on 29 September 1897 at Halle/Saale, residing at Cologne-Deutz, Mathildenstr.

45, have been told that I am liable to punishment for giving false testimony. I hereby declare under oath that my statement is conform to the truth and was made to furnish evidence for Military Tribunal No. VI at the Palace of Justice in Nuernberg, Germany.

I was<sup>a</sup> member of the NSDAP since 1 May 1933; I did not have any official position within the party. I was not a member of any of the affiliated organizations of the party. Until 1937 I was Police Commissioner and, as such, chief of the police administration<sup>at Bitterfeld.</sup> For years I was exposed to attacks because at the time of the tracking down of the murderers of Rathenau in the summer of 1922 I had shot one of the murderers named Kern when he was caught at Castle Samloek. Finally I was ordered to go to Halle and threatened with being put into a concentration camp if I should ever again say anything about the case. Thereupon, renouncing all civil servant rights including old age pensions, I resigned from the police and on 1 May 1937 I became an employee of the I.G. in Bitterfeld. I was utilized as the head of the Plant Guard, existing already at that time on a limited scale, for the Werke Bitterfeld South and North and for the Welfen dye works. The plant guard consisted of the doorkeepers and other inquiry officials (Ermittlungsbeamten) at the plant and was responsible for proper handling of the plant identification cards, for the supervision of the stamp cards which controlled the entries and exits of the workers at the plant gates, for order and security in the plant, that is, for control of the out-going and in-coming goods, for the prosecution of criminal deeds,



for supervising the obeying of fire and security police regulations, for keeping the plant streets clear and for counter-intelligence against industrial espionage.

From 2 March 1942 until the end of the war I was a soldier. I can report the following about the camps in which foreigners were kept and about the treatment of the foreigners:

The camp Marie in Bitterfeld already existed at the time of my entry in 1937. Later it was extended. When I began work the camp contained workers from the Rhineland, from Sudeten<sup>land</sup> and from Czechoslovakia, who came to Bitterfeld as voluntary workers and who were occupied in the Bitterfeld and Wolfen-Works. The camp at that time belonged to a registered society in which various industrialists participated. The plant guard had to do with the camp in so far as it occasionally had to investigate cases of theft by workers there.

During my time of service at the I.G. the new camp Antonio and a women's camp in the immediate vicinity of the works Bitterfeld South were added. Among other conveniences a sewing-room was installed in the women's camp; much was done to further the domestic training of the women. Sewing-courses were introduced, feminine employees looked after the welfare of the women and the entire camp made an extremely clean and well-kept impression.

During the war workers of quite a number of nationalities were little by little employed in Bitterfeld, in the main Dutchmen, Frenchmen, Italians, Czechs, then Poles and at the end of my time of service even a few voluntary Ukrainian workers. German workers, who had no accommodations elsewhere, also lived in the camp.

At the time there also existed a small camp which contained about 80 - 100 French prisoners of war. Of these about 30 were utilized in the light metal plant where they polished light metal moulded parts, work which can be really considered as light



- 3 -

The others were used for outside work, that is, for loading and unloading goods and for transportation purposes within the works. Until I became a soldier there were no Russian prisoners of war in Bitterfeld. Nor were there any prisoners from concentration camps there.

The foreign workers were, wherever possible, grouped according to nationality in the camp in different huts, at any rate the larger national groups. They lived in barrack rooms large enough to contain 12 beds, cupboards, one or two food-sized tables. Rooms and corridors were decorated with pictures and were well furnished. Bedding was furnished by the camp. Every week the workers received clean working clothes. They could take hot and cold showers daily at the plants and in addition there were baths at the camp.

The foreign workers received camp food and food was given them during work at the plant. The heavy, very heavy and long-shift workers received supplementary cards at that time, to do with as they saw fit and they did an active trade with the same. In the city word went around that in order to buy supplementary food cards one had to go to Camp Marie. Foreigners took narcotics or money for the cards in order to be able to pay for amusements in Bitterfeld and its vicinity. The German population actively protested that the foreign workers were fed so well that they could sell their supplementary cards on the black-market.

The camp inmates, except for the French prisoners of war, were given complete freedom in their relation with the outside world; only as far as accommodations were concerned were they tied to the camp. Only the holes were identification marks, but only on their civilian clothes, not on the working clothes. Outside of this foreigners were only identified

- 4 -

as such through their plant identification card. At the plant no distinction was made between German and foreign workers, for instance, there were no special mess, bath and dressing rooms for foreigners.

The camp had its own police reporting office, a post office and a branch of the Savings Bank (Sparkasse). Due to their liberty of movement the foreign workers could leave the camp at any time outside of work hours, have recreations in the city and make trips into the surrounding <sup>area</sup>. They often took the train to make pleasure trips to Leipzig, Halle or Magdeburg and even to Berlin (over 100 km). They could be seen in big numbers at the movies, in restaurants and at swimming pools.

At the camp cultural activities of every sort were provided for. Concerts, moving pictures and theatrical shows were presented. Artists' troupes of the various home-lands of the workers were sent for and gave shows which the workers welcomed with much joy.

The supreme camp supervision was entrusted by the German Labor Front (LAF) to camp leader Hertel and a number of other camp leaders who were also proposed or had to be approved by the LAF. It was difficult for the I.G. to juggle off the numerous encroachments of the LAF on the camps.

In official matters I mainly had to deal with Mr. Dalthen, the head of the social department in Eitterfeld and under whom were the <sup>and</sup> Finance Office, the billeting office and who was responsible for matters pertaining to labor law and social administration. I also became acquainted with Mr. Euerlein in the course of many discussions and I, as leader of the plant guard, was immediately subordinate to him. I know that he did not tolerate abuses in the treatment of the foreigners and immediately remedied the same whenever he heard about

- 5 -

them. In no wise was he a National-Socialist and he fought off all political encroachments in the plant management with all in his power. Cases of abuse of foreign workers were not noticed by me nor brought to my attention.

Nuernberg, 7 November 1947

signed: Karl Zabel

The above signature of Karl Zabel, residing at Cologne-Letz, Mathildenstrasse 45, executed in the presence of Wolfgang Theebald, Defense assistant at Military Tribunal No. VI, is hereby certified by me to be genuine.

signed: Wolfgang Theebald

The literal and correct copy of the foregoing document is hereby certified.

Nuernberg, 5 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Werner Gehubert  
Defense Counsel for the  
Defendant BUECHER

N o t i c e

Re: Wage Remittances to Slovakia

As of 1 May 1943 new transfer rates for wages to be remitted have been put into effect. Our Slovakian workers can now send each month:

Married R 80.- Single RM 65.-

Workers who have been working for at least six months in the Reich can, in addition, send RM 50.- for each minor child once every calendar year. For married couples working in the Reich only the rates permitted to single persons will apply.

Means of payment which, within the limits of the sum permitted on the trip home or on leave trips, may be carried, can be obtained in Slovakian currency in so far as the latter is available from the Reichsbank.

Bitterfeld, 21 July 1943

I.G. Farbenindustrie Aktiengesellschaft  
signed (signatures)

I hereby certify that the above photostat copy conforms with the original.

Nuremberg, 2 February 1948

(signed) Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel for the Defendant  
Buerger

Copy

1/2 Circular Letter No. 183/43

A 42

1523

234

To the  
Plant Manager.

Re.: Yearly premiums for Eastern Workers.

By virtue of a decree by the General Plenipotentiary for Labor issued on 6 December 1943 we are authorized, within the scope of our pertinent regulation, to also pay the Eastern workers an annual premium. We intend to make use of the possibility.

As a general rule only those Eastern workers, male and female, are eligible to receive the yearly premium who

- 1.) at the beginning of January 1944 will have been employed in our works for at least one year;
- 2.) achieve at least a good average output;
- 3.) have shown good conduct, and who through their entire department have proven that they have conscientiously fulfilled all their duties.

Eligibility is, therefore, above all, dependent on efficiency.

In the interest of making preparations for the payment of the premiums the plant managers are requested to give the personnel and workers department by 30 December 1943 the names of those Eastern workers, male and female, who, in the light of a severe but just evaluation of their efficiency and deportment, merit the distinction of being given a premium. The proposals must contain last name, first name, control number, as well as the indication whether the yearly premium is to be paid out in full or to what percent.

If there should be persons among these Eastern workers, male and female, who have not been with us a year as yet,



- 2 -

who stand out through conspicuously high efficiency and who are ~~much~~ above the average, we request that they, too, be mentioned, stating at the same time their date of entry. These special premiums are subject to taxation on Eastern workers. The taxes will be paid by the works.

I.G. Farbenindustrie  
Aktiengesellschaft  
illegible signed signature.

Bitterfeld, 22 December 1943.  
Tsch/Di.

The literal and correct copy of the above document is hereby certified.

Mernberg, 27 January 1948.

signed: Dr. Werner Schabert  
Defense Counsel of the defendant Buegin.

C o p y

A 59

Illegible handwriting

211

1/2

Stamp:

BITTERFELD

Secretariat

Received 8 August 1944

Replied . . .

P U B L I C A T I O N No. 40/44

Subject: Ray Examination.

In our works, as in many German industrial plants, upon a suggestion of the German Labor Front all plant employees will undergo an X-ray examination (lungs and heart) in the period from Thursday 10 August to Saturday 12 August 1944.

Every member of the complement (including foreigners) will be notified, and the X-ray examination is compulsory for everybody. The wording of the notice is incorrect with regard to the charge for the examination which will be born by the plant.

Women should appear in skirts and blouses; prior to the examination they will be given paper blouses to wear during the examination.

Professional secrecy of the physician applies to the whole examination procedure.

Every member of the works complement is to be given time-off to enable him to appear at the place of examination at the time stipulated in the enclosed schedule. Section chiefs and plant managers who are likewise subject to examination, will work out a schedule.

-2-

The examination can only work smoothly and without unnecessary loss of time if everybody appears punctually. Everybody will produce their notice. Anybody not having received his notice one day before the examination in question will report this to his plant which will immediately apply for a card at the personnel section (Bureau Telle). Cards for employees who have left or have been transferred elsewhere will be returned to the personnel section right away.

Examinations suspended because of, say, an air-raid alarm will take place later: the time will be announced over the plant radio.

Examination schedule attached.

Bitterfeld, 5 August 1944

I.O. FARBENINDUSTRIE  
ATTENTION: ALLGEMEIN

illegible handwritten remarks

693

EXAMINATION SCHEDULE

In the welfare building of the power plant for electric current, Mainthel plant, Magnesium South, Graphite, Phosphorus, E'metal (not including the metal laboratory) Kitchen East, Main Work shops I and II, Workshop O, Chemical disintegration I and II, Vitriolic Acid, Smelting plant, Liquefaction of Chloride, and Ferroc Chloride.

Thursday, 10 August 1944

5.30 to 7.00 hours Night shift (German and foreign workers)  
 7.30 " 8.45 " Female employees  
 9.30 " 11.00 " Male employees (not incl. power plant and Mainthel)  
 11.00 " 12.00 " " " (Power plant and Mainthel)  
 13.00 " 15.00 " Female German workers 1st and 2nd shift

Friday 11 August 1944

7.00 to 9.15 hours German workers day shift  
 9.30 " 11.00 " Female German workers day shift  
 11.00 " 12.00 " Foreign Female Workers day shift  
 13.00 " 14.00 " Foreign workers 1st shift  
 14.00 " 15.00 " " " 2nd "  
 15.00 " 16.00 " " " day shift

Saturday 12 August 1944

At the Mario camp for the Mario and Antonio camps: 7.00 - 12.00 hours, arrangements to be made locally.

Monday 14 August 1944, again in the welfare building of the power plants for plants as indicated on 10 and 11 August.

8.00 to 8.45 hours German Female workers left over from 10 and 11 August  
 9.00 to 9.45 " Foreign Female workers 1st shift and remainder day shift  
 10.00 " 12.00 " Remaining foreign workers and Poles  
 13.00 " 14.00 " German workers 1st shift  
 14.00 " 15.00 " " " 2nd shift and remainder  
 16.15 " 17.00 " Foreign Female workers 2nd shift and remainder.

The hall at Anusoro Zuerbigstr. 41 for South and Acid plants beside the above mentioned plants.

Tuesday 15 August 1944

9.00 " 10.00 " K=10 "

213

7.00 to 9.15	hours	German workers, day shift
9.30 " 11.00	"	German female workers, day shift
11.00 " 12.00	"	Foreign female workers, day shift
13.00 " 14.00	"	Foreign workers, 1st shift
14.00 " 16.00	"	" " 2nd "
16.00 " 18.00	"	" " day shift end remainder

5.30 to 7.00 hours	German and foreign workers, night shift
7.30 " 9.00 "	Foreign workers day shift and Poles
9.15 " 10.00 "	Foreign female workers 1st shift, and remainder of day shift
10.15 " 11.00 "	German female workers remainder
12.00 " 13.00 "	German workers 1st shift and remainder
13.15 " 15.00 "	Foreign female workers remainder

Friday, 10 August 1944

Dining room Thalheim for Thalheim plant

Saturday 19 August 1964

7.00 to 10.00 hours Local arrangements.

— ○ — ○ — ○ —

This is to certify that the above is a true and complete copy of the original document.

Nuremberg, 23 January 1946

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of the  
Defendant ENERGIN



1/2

Copy

1219

A 57

Notice No.5/44

This is to announce that the daily consulting hours will be

from 7.30 to 10 hours except on Wed. and Friday

and from 14 to 18 hours except on Wednesday and Thursday.

For foreigners the daily consulting hours are

from 15 to 16 hours except Wed. and Thursday.

We also announce that a Russian female physician will hold consulting hours daily

from 9.30 to 12 hours

for foreign female workers.

Bitterfeld, 5 February 1944

Joh./E.

I.G.FARBEINDUSTRIE ANTIERGESSCHAFT

signed along signed: illegible

Notice No.5/44

This is to announce that the daily consulting hours will be

from 7.30 hours to 10 hours except on Wed. and Friday

and from 14 - 18 hours except on Wed. and Thursday.

For foreigners the daily consulting hours

from 15 to 16 hours except Wed. and Thursday.

We also announce that a Russian female physician will hold consulting hours daily

-2-

from 9.30 to 12 hours

for foreign female workers.

Bitterfeld, 5 February 1944

Joh. C.

I.G.FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESellschaft

illegible handwritten  
remarks

signed Lang signed illegible

This is to certify that the above is a true and complete  
copy of the original document.

Wernberg, 23 January 1944.

signed Dr. Werner Schubert  
Deputy Counsel of the defendant  
BUREAU

Copy

R I

251

A 28  
1/1Circular No. 100/42

To the Plant Managers

Subject: Paid leave for foreigners

The Reich Labor Ruling with regard to leave for foreign workers has been adjusted to the peculiarities in the employment of foreigners.

Accordingly foreign workers are entitled to leave:

- 1) if it becomes necessary for them to visit their families;
- 2) upon discharge.

Foreigners forfeit their leave privilege if they are dismissed without notice for some fault of their own or if they terminate employment to the terms of contract. The regulation in our Reich Labor Ruling concerning the waiting period prior to leave is not applicable. The period of leave amounts to 1/12th of the annual leave <sup>month during which the worker concerned was fully occupied in the plant.</sup> for every ~~whole time spent working~~ (then the accrued leave is being worked out, odd hours are to be rounded off to full or half days. Less than half a day will be ignored.

Our present rulings apply to the calculation of leave pay.

The plant determines when leave can be taken. Married foreigners are entitled to go home on leave after 6 months, unmarried foreigners after 12 months.

Subsequent to these periods there are the so-called periods during which a claim to leave is established which amount to 6 months for married and 12 months for unmarried workers. In this period prior to the claim to leave (*Anspruchsstadium*)<sup>the</sup> worker is to be granted leave to go home for family reasons in all cases. As far as possible paid leave is to be combined with such compassionate leave. Hence, married people will take half their leave with their first compassionate leave and take the rest on their second home leave. Since, however, the return of a foreigner is never certain and breach of contract on his part is possible he will be given leave pay only upon his return from home. For this reason we recommend that the plants surrender the appropriate papers for paid leave to the pay office only when a foreigner returns from his home leave; this will save time for both the plant and the pay office.

Leave according to this ruling will be granted those foreigners who entered the plant on 1 July 1941 or later as from the date they started work, <sup>these</sup> since foreigners will not have had any leave in 1941. If leave had already been granted in 1941 or earlier the above leave ruling will apply as from 1 January 1942.

It is emphasized that these regulations apply to foreigners only. Leave for German workers is determined exclusively in accordance with the Reich Labor Ruling for skilled workers.

-3-

of the chemical industry. (see yellow pamphlet).

Bitterfeld, 22 August 1942

Tsch./Dr.  
M.

I.G.FARBENINDUSTRIE AKTIEGESELLSCHAFT

signed: BUELOW signed: pp Breter

illegible hand-  
written remark:

U 6

This is to certify that the above is a true and complete  
copy of the original document.

Munich, 23 January 1943

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert

Defense Counsel for the  
defendant BUELOW



1/1

C O P Y

A 30

If handwritten  
remark illegible

248

Notice andCircular No. 135/43List of "W" (workers') special trains (May  
to September 1943)To ItalyDeparture27/28 May  
6/8 June  
17/18 June  
26/27 June  
6/7 July  
16/17 July  
26/27 JulyReturn10/12 June  
19/21 June  
1/5 July  
10/12 July  
20/22 July  
30/July 1 Aug.  
9/11 AugustTo BelgiumDeparture24/25 May  
2/3 June  
10/11 June  
20/21 June  
29/30 June  
6/8 July  
13/14 July  
20/21 July  
28/29 JulyReturn8/9 June  
14/15 June  
22/23 June  
2/3 July  
11/12 July  
17/18 July  
25/26 July  
1/2 August  
9/10 AugustTo FranceDeparture27/28 May  
17/18 June  
1/2 July  
15/16 July  
29/30 July  
12/13 August  
26/27 AugustReturn8/9 June  
29/30 June  
15/16 July  
27/28 July  
10/11 August  
24/25 August  
7/8 SeptemberTo CroatiaDeparture8/9 June  
12/13 JulyReturn23/26 June  
28/31 JulyTo BulgariaDeparture

16/18 July

Return

5/8 August

To CzechoslovakiaDeparture6/7 June  
11/12 July  
8/9 AugustReturn13/20 June  
24/25 July  
21/22 AugustTo the ProtectorateDeparture27/28 May  
17/18 June  
8/9 July  
29/30 JulyReturn10/11 June  
1/2 July  
22/23 July  
12/13 AugustTo HollandDeparture4/5 June  
25/26 June  
16/17 JulyReturn16/17 June  
7/8 July  
28/29 July

Absolutely no leave will be granted during the periods of

-2-

of 21 - 28 April 1943  
and " 11 - 16 June 1943

Applications for train reservations must be lodged with the  
personnel section 5 weeks in advance.

With regard to some of the trains slight changes of 2 - 3 days  
may occur.

Bitterfeld, 13 April 1943

I.G.FARBEINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

signed: signatures illegible

illegible handwritten remark

To Herr Hein

This is to certify that the above is a true and complete  
copy of the original document.

Nuremberg, 24 January 1946

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert

Defense Counsel for the  
defendant BUEGIN

A/2  
1/1775  
51C o p yCircular No. 20/44To  
Section and Plant ManagersSubject: Home leave to visit families for Germans and foreigners  
in time of war as from 1 January 19441) Claim to home leave.

Married people. They are entitled to home leave after they have been working continuously for 6 months abroad. Such leave must be taken within the 6 months following the period in which the claim becomes valid (anspruchszeitraum). If employment is terminated before the end of the first half of this period the claim lapses.

Married complement members who live together or work in the same place are entitled to leave for unmarried people only, even if they maintain their original home, unless there are children under 16, which has to be proved.

Single members of the complement, widowers, or divorcees do not have the same privileges as married people but are entitled to leave after 12 months. This leave is to be taken within the 12 months following (period of claim). This claim is not established if employment is terminated before the end of half of this period.

We point out that a uniform ruling applies to Germans and foreigners alike.

Members of the complement are not entitled to choose the date for their leave.

-2-

within the claim period. The date is determined by the plant but besides the interests of the plant personnel wished are to be considered as well.

Members of the complement who want to visit avaroused members of their families lose their claim to home leave for the claim period in which such leave is taken.

## 2.) Combination of Home Leaves.

Upon request by a complement member two successive trips home may be combined into one. In this case the complement member is entitled to as many free days as are due to him for the two trips. When starting his home leave a complement member will receive the following pay for the following distances of his place of work from his home.

Up to 150 kilometers	a sum of RM 10.--
" " 300	" " " " 15.--
over 300	" " " " 25.--

A member of the complement may forgo leave to which he is entitled. In this case he is entitled to the lump sum appropriate to the distance of his place of work from home which he would have been paid if actually on leave.

## 3.) Traveling time

This amounts for a distance of up to 300 km to 6 calendar days  
 from 300 to 1000 kilometers " 8 " "  
 above 1000 " " 10 " "

For a distance up to 1000 kilometers up to 2 calendar days may be

29 March 44  
2x25  
illegible  
handwrit-  
ten re-  
mark

allowed if train connections are particularly unsatis-  
factory. If a member of the complement works for at least  
6 hours on the day he leaves this day will not be counted as  
traveling time. 3 days of traveling time for each home leave  
are to be charged against recreational leave. There is no  
further claim for payment of wages or salaries for traveling  
time. Accrued leave is to be taken in combination with home  
leave where ever possible.

If traveling time for home leave is exceeded without  
permission or sufficient excuse, the excess time taken can  
be charged against traveling time for the next home leave,  
and, in very serious cases, the next home leave may be refused  
altogether.

#### 4.) Compassionate leave.

In cases of disease or dangerous illness of husband or wife,  
parents or children, complement members are entitled to home  
leave, but the facts will have to be officially certified; by  
the local police station in case of complement members from  
the Protectorate.

Compassionate leave because of illness of the above mentioned  
family members will be charged against regular home leave  
except in fatal cases.

#### 5.) Rulings for transition period.

For complement members whose claim period is already run-  
ning on 1 January 1944 according to existing leave regula-  
tions, the first claim period in accordance with this tar-  
rif will start only after expiration of the claim period



-4-

Under the old ruling. This means that a claim for home leave not yet taken during this period remains valid.

We add that all foreign home leave is suspended until 15 May 1944 (see notice and circular No. 13/44 of 8 March 1944).

Mitterfold, 23 March 1944

Tech./Vo.

I.G. FARBEINDUSTRIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT

signed: BIERGIN signed: signature  
illegible

illegible handwritten remark

This is to certify that the above is a true and complete copy of the original document.

Marzberg, 24 January 1945.

signed: Dr. Werner Schubert  
Defense Counsel of  
defendant BIERGIN

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION

27 February 1946

John Fosterberry, No. 20 179, and  
George Goodman, No. 34 789,

hereby certify that we are thoroughly conversant with the  
English and German languages and that the above is a true  
and correct translation of Document Book V SURGIV.

John FOSTERBERRY,  
No. 20 179

George GOODMAN,  
No. 34 789.

MICROCOPY

892

ROLL

80

